



*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 231

**EVIDENCE FOR CONTROL OF NYSTAGMIC  
HABITUATION BY FOLIUM TUBER VERMIS  
AND FASTIGIAL NUCLEI**

**JAMES W WOLFE**



ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

SUPPLEMENTUM 231

---

*From the University of Rochester Rochester New York, U.S.A.*

EVIDENCE FOR CONTROL OF NYSTAGMIC  
HABITUATION BY FOLIUM TUBER VERMIS  
AND FASTIGIAL NUCLEI

JAMES W WOLFE



This research was submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the Ph.D. degree at the University of Rochester and was conducted while the author held United States Public Health Service Predoctoral Research Fellowship No. 5 FL3111 23 100. It was in part supported by funds from a contract between the University of Rochester and the Office of The Surgeon General (Army), Contract number D 4-49-193-MD-21. The author wishes to thank Drs. G. R. Wendt and Ray S. Sneider for their assistance throughout the course of this research.

Present address, Experimental Psychology Division, US Army Medical Research Laboratory Fort Knox Kentucky 40121

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell's*

BOK TRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG

UPPÅ 4 1

# CONTENTS

Introduction	5
Methods	8
Results	12
Discussion	31
Conclusions	38
Zusammenfassung	39
Resume	40
Summary	41
References	42
Appendix	45



Although habituation of vestibular nystagmus has been extensively studied, the primary neural elements underlying this process have not been delineated.

There is no clear-cut answer as to whether habituation of nystagmus is due to interactions between brain stem and cortical levels, or takes place as a function of any specific neural structure. In fact, there is even disagreement as to the site of origin of the fast and slow phase. According to Spiegel & Price (1942) the vestibular nuclei may produce both components. Germandt (1964) is of the opinion that the labyrinth initiates the slow phase of nystagmus, but the center for control is in the vestibular nuclei. Szentágothai (1943, 1950) has proposed the mesencephalic reticular formation as the center for control of horizontal eye movements.

Experimentation with barbiturate anesthetics has tended to support the view that the mesencephalic reticular formation is involved with the habituation process. This structure is known to be particularly sensitive to barbiturates, and animals do not habituate when stimulated under barbiturate anesthesia (Fearing & Mowrer 1934). However it is a well known clinical fact that the cerebellum also is highly sensitive to barbiturate anesthetics. Halstead (1935 p 115) found that birds with cerebellar lesions habituated less than normal control animals. Although the effects of barbiturate anesthetics on habituation have been examined, determining the sites of action of the barbiturate remains a problem.

### *Effects of Arousal Level*

One of the many problems in the investigation of the habituation of vestibular nystagmus has been adequate control of arousal. In 1914 Guttlich reported that repeated exposure to the Bárány rotation test usually results in a marked decrement in nystagmus duration. He attributed this to a decline in the general nervous tension which subjects usually display during the first few trials of the test, rather than to any actual decrement in the strength of the reflex (Mowrer 1934 b p 10). Wendt (1951 p 1215) later emphasized the importance of maintaining "an environment directed orientation" in vestibular studies employing both animals and man.

The more recent methods of controlling arousal level have been fairly well standardized. With humans, mental arithmetic has been used in an attempt to maintain a state of alertness (Collins, Crampton & Posner 1961; Collins, 1962; Collins, Guedry & Posner 1962). Although amphetamines have been used with humans (Collins & Poe, 1962) this technique has been

more commonly employed with animals (Crampton, 1961-1964). There is some question as to the appropriateness of this method since with the high dosage levels used, some animals are ataxic and appear to have vestibulo-cerebellar impairment.

### *Stimulus Alternatives*

A potential error in the results of vestibular experiments has been the restriction in the choice of a stimulus. With the exception of a very few studies (e.g. Wendt, 1964; Jones, 1965) constant angular acceleration has been used as the stimulus: the subject is rotated at continuously increasing speed in a given direction to a pre-determined terminal velocity. The stimulus lasts only for the brief period of acceleration, and it is usually necessary to employ a five minute inter-trial interval to avoid interactive effects of secondary nystagmus. Also, long duration constant angular acceleration is an unusual stimulus, in that most voluntary head movements involve a short acceleration followed by an immediate deceleration (Wendt, 1961). In the present study a stimulus was used which approximates normal head movements. The subject was continuously oscillated in the horizontal plane about the vertical axis. Sinusoidal oscillation offers distinct methodological advantages since the subject is stimulated continuously and there is no need for long inter-trial intervals. Furthermore since the stimulus can be analyzed in degrees of displacement/unit time, sinusoidal stimulation permits closer correlation of the stimulus with evoked potentials, and allows for within subjects controls such as responses to auditory or electrical stimulation.

### *Venophysiology and Anatomy*

Cray (1926, p. 321) attempted to determine if anatomical evidence supported the theory of reciprocal innervation of the two halves of the body and further whether mediation was by the vestibular nuclei and their fiber tracts. His conclusion was that the major influence seemed to be via the uncinate fasciculus (hooked bundle of Russell) from the isthmial to the vestibular nuclei. This connection suggests that the vermal cortex, under afferent stimulation from the muscle spindles, may normally exercise a tonic influence on the vestibular nuclei. This view would explain forced movements and disturbances of equilibrium after median cerebellar injuries and stimulations. It would account for 'decerebrate rigidity' and for the fact that this rigidity can be inhibited by stimulation of the cerebellar cortex" (Cray 1926, p. 323). In addition, Devito *et al* (1963, p. 233) found that cerebellar polarization not only inhibited decerebrate rigidity but also blocked spike discharges from the lateral vestibular nucleus. Gerhardt & Cline (1939), Cohen *et al* (1938) and Fernández & Fredrickson (1964) have also shown with stimulation and ablation techniques the inhibitory influence of the cerebellum upon vestibular activity.

Cohen *et al* (1963, p. 157) were able to induce a wide range of con-

jugate eye movements by cerebellar stimulation in the cat. Except for minor differences, these responses were very similar to those obtained from stimulation of the semicircular canals. They concluded that the cerebellum, when stimulated, has a topographic representation for eye movements. Electrical stimulation of the tuber vermis and fastigial nuclei led to conjugate horizontal eye movements, whereas in the more lateral and dorsal structures, it led to vertical eye movements. These physiological findings clearly support Gray's conclusions based on anatomy.

Generally physiological and psychological investigations of the vestibular and cerebellar systems have employed one of three major methods: electrical recording, electrical stimulation or ablation. The present research was an attempt to bring these three methods together to investigate the functional relationships between habituation to sinusoidal vestibular stimulation and the cerebellar posterior vermis, fastigial nuclei, uncinate fasciculus, mesencephalic reticular formation and centrum medianum.

## METHODS

### *Subjects*

Fifteen cats—10 females, three males and two castrated males ranging in weight from 6 to 8 lbs. were used

### *Apparatus for Stimulation*

Sinusoidal stimulation was provided by a turntable which could be mechanically oscillated 30° around the vertical axis. The turntable consisted of a platform approximately  $2\frac{1}{2} \times 4\frac{1}{2}$  mounted on a 360° bearing system. Power was provided by a  $\frac{1}{2}$ -horsepower 115 vac motor. The output from the motor was delivered by a V belt drive to a 7.5:1 gear box. In addition to increasing the torque, the gear box allowed for a 90° shift in output power from the horizontal to the vertical axis. Frequency of oscillation was kept constant at .33 cps. The turntable was housed in a light tight room. *S* was separated from the electronic stimulating and recording equipment.

The sinusoidal stimulus was converted to an electrical impulse by mounting a sine-cosine resolver potentiometer (clarostat SG 42-070 16k) at the center of rotation. Power to the potentiometer was provided by a 6 V D.C. battery. The signal was led out through slip rings and displayed on the ink writer.

### *Calibration Lights*

A row of three lights, 4" apart was placed approximately 10" in front of the animal at eye level (10" between lights) to permit calibrated eye movements. The three lights could be individually controlled for brightness.

### *Tone Generator*

Seventy to 80 db (SPL) tones of 400, 500 and 900 cycles were generated by amplifying the output from a Grass S4G stimulator with a Heathkit Model EA-3 amplifier. The signal from the amplifier was transmitted to a 5" speaker located approximately 3" from the *S*.

### *Restraint Apparatus*

Pilot work with the method of animal restraint developed by Henriksson, Fernandez and Kohut (1961) proved the technique to be inadequate for artifact free recording. The *Ss* were continually licking at the wire through their teeth, leading to artifacts on the FEG recordings. Consequently, the cats were restrained in a wooden box adjustable to the size of the animal.

All animals had head pedestals that were firmly anchored both in the frontal sinus cavity and over the skull. A headholder consisting of a clamp arrangement was designed to hold the animal firmly by this pedestal. This technique proved eminently satisfactory in that it provided firm restraint and recording essentially free of licking movement, and other artifacts.

### *Recording Apparatus*

All EOG and electrophysiological potentials were recorded on an Offner Type R Dynograph. Sinusoidal oscillation was monitored with a 50k ohm resistor across the input cable and slip ring assembly. Since both the resistor and cable act as transducers, any vibration or nonsymmetrical cable sway would be detected by the differential amplifiers. Periodic checks throughout the experiment insured maintenance of low noise levels (2-4  $\mu$ V input shorted).

### *Electrical Stimulator*

Sub-cortical electrical stimulation was delivered from either a Grass S4G constant voltage source or a constant current device (Model 150) manufactured by Nuclear Chicago, Chicago, Illinois.

### *Recording Electrodes*

Three different types of electrodes were used.

1) Electro-oculographic (EOG) electrodes. These consisted of a 4" strip of no. 30 gauge stainless steel, formvar coated wire that was welded or soldered to a .000-120  $\times$  1/8" stainless steel screw for permanent attachment to the skull.

2) Silver ball electrodes for surface recording. Twenty-eight gauge pure silver wire was cut into 4"-5" lengths, and then heated in a gas or alcohol flame until a small ball (.5-1.0 mm diameter) was formed. Each wire was then painted with four five coats of inslx. Cortical electrode placement is shown in Fig. 8.

3) Bipolar electrodes for deep brain implantation. Thirty gauge no. 304 stainless steel formvar coated wire was used in the construction of these electrodes. A pair of these wires was aligned with a longitudinal tip separation of 1.0-1.5 mm. The wires were fastened together by applying four-five coats of inslx, and allowing them to dry for at least 24 hours.

### *Preoperative Training*

Prior to surgery, all Ss were given a week's training (one session/day) in the restraint apparatus to adapt them to the restraint.

### *Surgery*

Surgery was performed under sterile conditions. Following surgery, all Ss received 300,000 units (intramuscularly) of crystalline, an antibiotic. The Ss were anesthetized with intra-peritoneal injections of sodium pento-



barbital (60 mg/cc solution Nembutal). The first six *Ss* were implanted using electrophysiological monitoring. However variability in the anesthetic levels produced extreme variation in the electrical activity of the brain and made it impossible to identify true evoked responses. Since the electrodes were almost always set at the stereotaxic coordinates, monitoring was discontinued in subsequent operations.

After placing *S* in a stereotaxic instrument, a midline incision was made from the frontal sinus to the region of the first cervical vertebrae. At the time of the initial incision while the bone was still translucent, it was possible to visualize the frontal air sinus, and a mark was made over this region. After rongeur-ing away the bone the sinus epithelium was aspirated and all sinus passages blocked with sterile bone wax. A no. 1/2 dental drill was used to bore into the medial surface of each bony orbit to permit placement of the EOG electrode. A small shelf of bone was isolated on the midline, and the reference electrode for the eyes was placed at this point. The sinus was allowed to dry and then filled with dental acrylic.

The neck muscles were reflected from the lambdoidal crest, and the bone overlying the cerebellar vermis and pyramids exposed. Silver ball electrodes were placed at various locations on the surface of this area. Deep brain electrodes were implanted stereotaxically to avoid the tentorium. Electrodes intended for the fastigial and medial vestibular nuclei were inclined at an angle of 30°. Electrodes were implanted in the following sites: anterior ectosylvian gyrus, nucleus centrum medianum (centralis centralis of Snider & Nelmar 1961), lateral geniculate body, mesencephalic reticular formation, medial vestibular nucleus, nucleus fastigius, cerebellar tuber vermis, cerebellar pyramids, and striate cortex.

All electrode leads were anchored to the skull using dental acrylic. A layer of acrylic was then built up along the midline and a 20 pin miniature female plug was embedded in place. The leads were then led across the skull and soldered to the wires on the plug. The pedestal was formed by building acrylic around the wires and plug. This also provided insulation of individual wires. The wound edges were brought together around the pedestal by means of gut sutures.

In two *Ss*, cerebellar ablations were performed by means of subpial aspiration. In one surgery was performed 2 1/2 months after the *S* had been implanted with recording electrodes. The bone was then rongeur-ed away and a lesion of the tuber vermis performed. In the second case the lesion was made (tuber vermis) and surface recording electrodes implanted during the same operation.

### *Postoperative Procedure*

Following surgery the *Ss* were allowed to recover for four-five days, and then were restrained in the restraint box. The head clamp was placed around the pedestal and a male plug attached. The *S* was kept in the box for 12-20 minutes and then released and rewarded. A minimum of 10 days

elapsed before Ss were tested in the actual experimental situation. All Ss were tested on a random schedule with at least one day elapsing between sessions. The experiment involved seven different conditions.

1) Calibration of EOG—S was placed in the dark and the calibration lights were turned on and off in sequence. A stimulus mark was made on the EEG during the period in which the light was on.

2) Zero-degree condition—S was oscillated with the head in a level plane.

3) Nineteen degree condition—S was oscillated with the head inclined forward at this angle.

4) Auditory alert (dishabituation)—Tones of various frequencies (400, 500 and 900 cps) were sounded during the period in which the S appeared to have habituated.

5) Mesencephalic reticular stimulation—Ss were stimulated electrically at various times during the recording session.

6) Auditory control—Ss were suspended on a platform and the turntable oscillated beneath them.

7) Nembutal—Before perfusion, Ss were oscillated under varying levels of sodium pentobarbital and one S under chloralose. Stimulation of the reticular formation, centrum medianum and fastigial nuclei was also used under this condition.

### *Histology*

At the conclusion of the study all Ss were given a lethal dose of sodium pentobarbital, and perfused through the heart with 10% formalin solution in saline. Brain tissue was sectioned (40 microns) using the frozen method, and every tenth and eleventh section was alternately stained with cresyl violet or iron hematoxylin.

### *General Recording Procedure*

Pilot work with humans (Wolfe & Wendt, 1966) indicates that during the first 10-15 minutes in the dark, there is no significant change in the amplitude of the corneo-retinal potential. Since no information is available with respect to the effects of dark-adaptation on the corneo-retinal potential in the cat, an attempt was made to keep conditions constant for all Ss. The Ss were exposed to room level illumination for 10-15 minutes prior to each recording session. After being placed in the restraint box, a record (1-5 min) was taken from each S before stimulus onset, while the animal was voluntarily looking around the room.

## RESULTS

Behavioral observations which may be relevant to the results have been included.

The results of electrical stimulation during oscillation are organized into unanesthetized and anesthetized conditions. Tables 1 and 2 are summaries of EOG responses to electrical stimulation under both conditions. Finally the effects of lesions of the tuber vermis are considered with respect to their immediate and long term effects.

### *Behavioral Observations*

After recovery from the anesthesia (12-24 hours) Ss typically displayed hypermetria of the hind leg ipsilateral to the fastigial electrode site. If Ss were pushed lightly they fell to this side. Placing reflexes of the front legs were intact in all Ss, but, for the first three-five days postoperatively placing of the ipsilateral hind leg (either right or left depending on implant) was partially impaired.

S 428 inadvertently was given an injection of heparin (40 cc) prior to surgery. Subsequently the animal lost a great deal of blood and sustained varying subcortical damage with electrode implantation. This animal had more pronounced signs of cerebellar damage. Both hind legs were "stiff" and the animal was unable to stand for 48 hours.

No attempt was made to check righting reflexes by dropping the animals, since this could have damaged their electrode pedestals. However checks for postural nystagmus were made one-two days postoperatively by placing each animal on its sides and back and examining its eyes. Although an occasional beat was seen in some of the animals, there was nothing which could be considered abnormal. Two Ss (S 394 and S 402) had a transient (two-three day) strabismus of the eyes, but other than this, none of the animals showed oculomotor deficits.

At the beginning of the first recording session Ss were highly emotional as reflected in pupillary dilation. As a result, with the first stimulus onset most of them struggled for a few seconds leading to artifacts on the EEG. With the exception of S 388, there was little or no struggling during subsequent recording sessions.

### *Recording of the FOC*

*Calibration.* In cats, the amplitude of the EOG for a known eye displacement has not been precisely determined. Since cats show few voluntary eye movement in the dark, an attempt was made to obtain a calibration

by having them look at a light (a novel stimulus). This approach proved fairly successful. In the case of S 409 (Fig. 1) the first two responses were almost identical in amplitude. The drift of the EOG back to the baseline is due to the 3-second time constant indicating that S maintains a fairly good fixation of the light and holds this position when the light is turned off. As soon as the EOG returned to the baseline the next light in the series (10 to the right) was turned on. The next two responses were not as discrete. Therefore, the experimenter must use some judgment as to which of the measures to use in the final calculation. Animal 400 (Fig. 1) reflected a similar response pattern. It was found that the amplitude of the EOG was fairly constant for a given eye displacement. For example, the computed displacement per degree of eye movement was .85 mm for S 409 and .90 mm in the case of S 400. The average for all Ss was .92 mm/degree. Periodic calibration checks showed no significant changes. As with any other calibration, this value may be influenced by electrode placement, particularly with acute needle electrodes, and therefore should be computed before each experimental session.

### *Habituation to Oscillation*

On the first trial, before habituation, all animals excepting S 428 displayed a normal nystagmus (compensatory eye movement with fast phases in the direction of displacement). As habituation occurred systematic changes in responses were evident both within and between trials. Two quite different changes were noted.

The first change is best characterized as an almost complete loss of the fast phase of nystagmus, with no change in the amount of compensatory slow phase. Inspection of Fig. 2 illustrates the form of the response in an habituated animal. Had visual surrounds been available to the cat, this change would have been in the direction of greater functional adequacy i.e. maintenance of visual fixation.

The second change involves the appearance of episodes when normal compensatory eye movements do not occur for varying periods of time. In the intact, unanesthetized cat, subjected to 30° of oscillation these phase shifts normally occur as a slow drift of the eyes (often somewhat uneven in rate) toward the direction of rotation. Thus, they are opposite to the reflex compensatory response required by the oscillation and for maintenance of visual fixation. A curious feature of these episodes is that they most commonly occur not at the turning points of the oscillatory stimulus, but during the intermediate periods when the velocity of motion of the platform (and of the unhabituated eye movement) is greatest. At the turn, and just before and after the turn, normal reflex compensatory eye movements usually occur.

One cannot make the generalization that during the episodes of loss of compensatory movements the eyes always drift toward the direction of

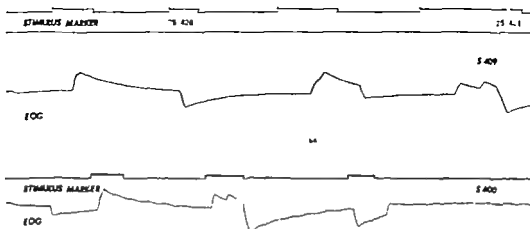


FIG. 1 Calibration of cat FOG by lust ry cy mo menta.  $\nabla = 500 \mu\text{v/cm}$ , 25 mm/sec

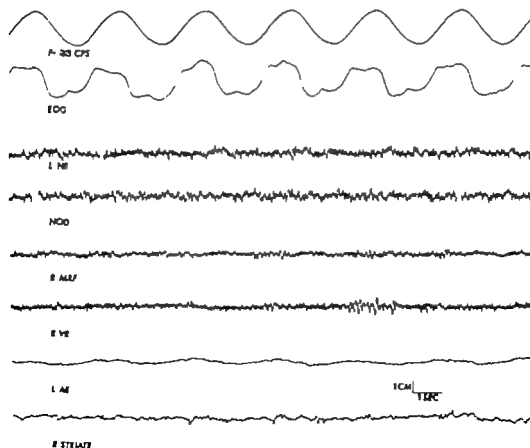


FIG. 2 Calibration record from S 400. Not almost complete absence of f l phases. FOG  $\nabla = 500 \mu\text{v/cm}$ , 25 mm/sec

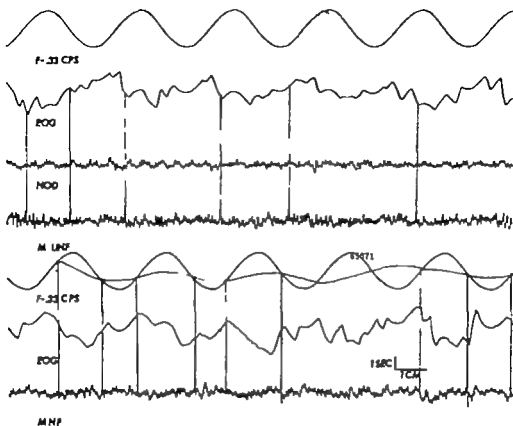


FIG. 3. Bottom record shows drift of eyes past turn on third cycle alternations of MNF from HV'S to LVF appears to be related to left-right reversals. Top record reflects 1 eye monophasic phases from the MNF EOG X=800  $\mu$  cm, all others 50  $\mu$  m, 250 mm/sec

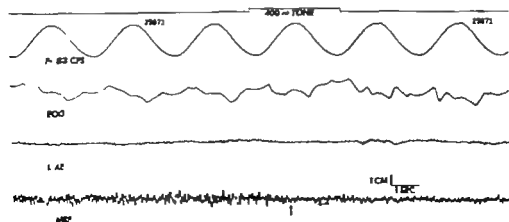


FIG. 4. Effect of disabbling stimulus. No change in MNF from HV'S to LVF and increase in intensity of nystagmic response EOG 800  $\mu$  cm, all others 50  $\mu$  m, 25 mm/sec

rotation. Sometimes a drift continues past the point of the turn (see Fig 3)

Another completely different change is seen for the so-called "unilateral" habituation found after cerebellar lesions (see below p 27) The eyes do not drift, but maintain essentially a fixed position (see Fig 20)

These phenomena in the cat are in some ways the same and in some ways different from those reported by Wendt (1951 1963) for man and for monkey. They are similar in that the eyes sometimes drift toward the direction of head movement and that this motion is often tremulous. They are different in that in man and monkey the periods of non-compensatory eye movement are usually continuous, whereas in cats they are usually not present during the turns.

### *Effects of a Dishabituating Stimulus*

After the animals had habituated to the vestibular stimulus, a brief tone (2-5 sec.) led to an almost immediate increase in the frequency or amplitude of the vestibular nystagmus. This dishabituation was also apparent with other electrophysiological measures

1) The mesencephalic reticular formation (MRF) changed from a pattern of high voltage slow (HVS) to low voltage fast (LVF) activity (Fig 4)

2) In all Ss, there were changes in the infraslow potentials from the cerebellar cortex. This was reflected as either an increase in amplitude or a disruption in period of the IFSPs.

The auditory stimulus typically caused a very brief dishabituation which only outlasted the tone for a few seconds. With a few repetitions of the tone, Ss soon became habituated to it. As even with changes in frequency there was little or no effect on the vestibular response

### *Conditioning of Fast Phase*

Some evidence for conditioning was obtained in the auditory control situation (animal suspended above the apparatus) These data agree with those of Wendt (1936 b) in response to the sound of the drive system, a conditioned stimulus, one sees only anticipatory responses. The Ss showed no eye-movements which could be interpreted as the slow phase of nystagmus. Typically a fast phase was seen in response to stimulus onset. Sometimes, these were in the direction of oscillation. Throughout the trial period Ss showed random rapid eye movements. The record from S 400 (Fig. 5) shows some of the neural responses that may be involved in the conditioned anticipatory response. If one looks closely at the record, it can be seen that the first fast phase was preceded by an increase in the potential from the cerebellar vermis and the right fastigial nucleus. This was followed by a diphasic spike in the left medial vestibular nucleus which was almost simultaneous with the eye movement. This animal had received six trials distributed over a period of 21 days prior to the auditory control trial.

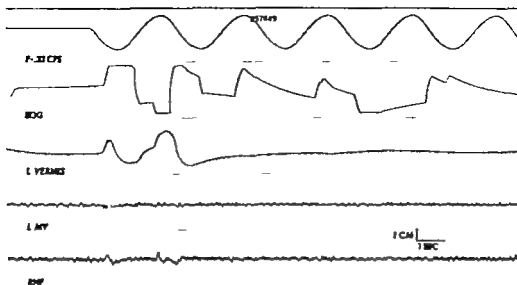


FIG. 5 Auditory control trial. With stimulus onset, increase in potential from L vermis followed by RNF LMV and eye movement. Left, EOG 500  $\mu$  cm, L vermis 100  $\mu$  cm, all others 50  $\mu$  cm, 23 mm sec

### Cortical Potentials

In the present study infralow potential changes (IFSPC) were recorded from various regions of the tuber vermis of the cerebellum (Fig 6 shows electrode placement) Records were obtained with silver ball electrodes and recorded using a 1 or 3-sec time constant. Infralow oscillations are sinusoidal in form, either with a period of 7-8 sec (A rhythm) and an amplitude of 0.3-0.8 mv or with a period of 0.2-2 min (B rhythm) and an amplitude of 0.5-1.5 mv there are also intermediate values (Aladjalova, 1964 p 1) Infralow potentials appeared in all animals before stimulus onset Fig 7 indicates a few of the various forms of these potentials prior to stimulus onset Both frequency and amplitude varied as a function of electrode placement and subject The range was from 200-800  $\mu$ v with a period of 7-10 sec., approximating the A rhythm.

With stimulus onset there was an increase in both the frequency and amplitude of the infralow potentials. In some cases, changes which appeared to be related to the eye movement responses were superimposed on the slower potential The potential from the vermis of S 329 (Fig 8) on the first trial reflects an almost perfect correlation with the EOG. If one aligns the peaks of the vermal response with the eye movements, it can be seen that, when the cerebellar potential reaches its maximum, there is a reversal in the direction of nystagmus As the animal's eye movement response habituated (decrement in amplitude and decrease in the number of fast phases) there was a corresponding decrease in the amplitude of the IFSP and in most Ss, an increase in the period of this sinusoidal



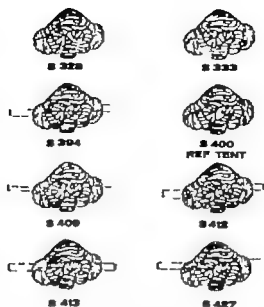


FIG. 6 Cerebella cortical electrode loci. Common reference L indicated. All electrodes were 5-1.0 mm silver ball

wave. This dramatic reduction in amplitude was maintained as long as the animal was periodically stimulated (every three-seven days). In the case of S 328, a period of 15 days was allowed to elapse between trials. As can be seen in Fig. 9 the IFSP was re-established and in this S was higher in amplitude than on the first day of exposure. The S also displayed a normal (non-habituated) nystagmic response which again, was more vigorous than the original response on day 1.

In some of the earlier operations, recording electrodes were implanted in the bone overlying the cerebellar cortex. In an attempt to obtain higher level and "more accurate" signals from this region the last six Ss were implanted with cerebellar leads placed directly on the dura. This led to an increase in amplitude and better definition of the vermal response. Figs. 10 and 11 show more clearly the relationship between the cerebellar response and the eye movement reversals. In many cases, the vermal potential increased to a maximum just prior to, or almost simultaneously with changes in the EOG. In some instances, monophasic and diphasic spikes in the sagittal and medial vestibular nuclei were apparent at the peaks of the vermal response. As the data indicate the left and right vermal responses are not the same. Since both records from the vermis were taken across a common reference (see Fig. 6) it is possible to localize the response to a specific recording electrode. Furthermore, the difference between the two responses helps rule out the probability of eye-movement artifact.

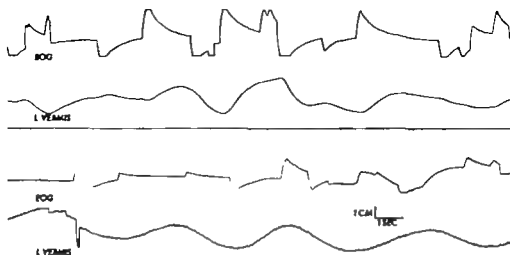


FIG. 7 I frasl w potential from cerebella vermis. Recorded before stimulus onset. EOG 500  $\mu$ /cm (rm) 100  $\mu$ /cm (3 sec T.C.) 25 mm/sec

### *EEG Changes Associated with Voluntary Eye Movements*

Potentials from the visual radiations did not reflect a 1:1 correspondence with rapid eye movements as has been found in some primates (Perachio 1966). Although this structure responded to changes in eye position, the response was not discrete but usually a phasic burst of activity. Cortical leads over primary visual cortex, showed a large amplitude (200–300  $\mu$ V) monophasic spike which was correlated almost 1:1 with the fast phase of voluntary eye movement (Fig 12). Fig 12 also shows that this potential is not due to changes in neck muscle potential, since the EMG amplitude in this case is only approximately 20 microvolts and does not reflect a temporal relationship with the EOG. Electrical stimulation of the visual radiations (10/sec 3 volts, 1 msec.) led to a cortical response but did not cause eye movements in the one subject stimulated.

### *Sub-Cortical Potentials*

Histological study revealed that three of the animals had electrode placements exactly between the two fastigial nuclei and a fourth S with an electrode on the midline in the dorsal uncinate fasciculus (see Table 3). Those animals with the midline fastigial electrodes showed an alternation in potential from HVS to LVF activity which appeared to be related to the reversal points of the eyes (Fig 3). The responses from the uncinate fasciculus in S XYZ were more discrete and easier to identify. In many cases, they were bracketed by large monophasic spikes. In all animals these changes came at two intervals 37–38 mm (1.5 sec) and 45–47 mm (1.7 sec) the former period being equal to one-half of the oscillation

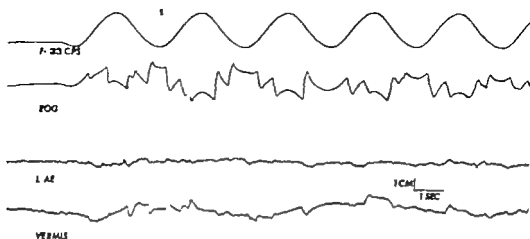


FIG. 2. Record of EOG and vermal potential taken on first trial. Peaks of vermal potential correlated with EOG reversal. EOG 500  $\mu$ /cm, LAE and vermis 100  $\mu$ v/cm.

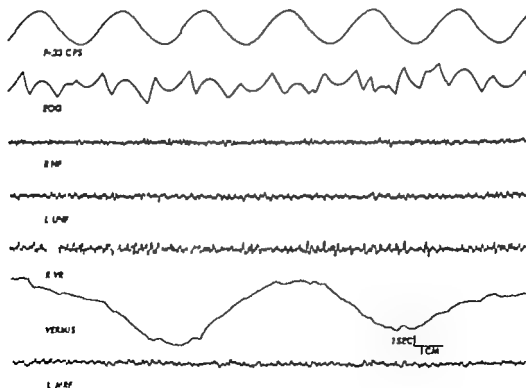


FIG. 3. Continuous record of EOG and vermal responses after 15 day period between trials. EOG 500  $\mu$ /cm, vermis 100  $\mu$ v/cm, RMP and LAMP 20  $\mu$ v/cm.

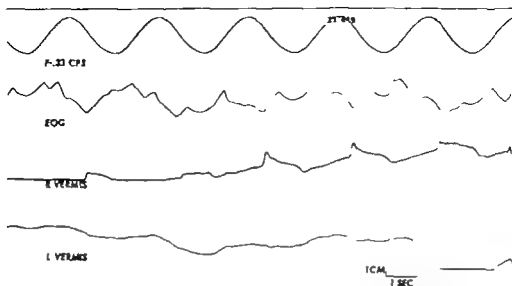


FIG. 10 S 427 Pole tilting from the R vermis reaches maximum just prior to the EOG reversal to the left. The small step denotes adjustment of the zero point by E. Note the pen was at electrical limit prior to this. EOG  $500 \mu\text{cm}$ , vermis  $100 \mu\text{cm}$ , 25 mm/sec

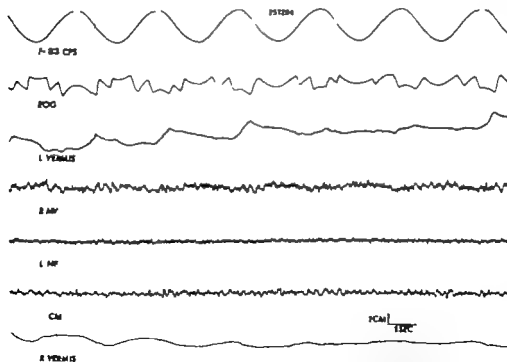


FIG. 11 S 409 Ag In, L. vermal potential increases to max. prior to EOG reversal to left. Note alternations RMV from LVP to HV8 to peaks of the vermal potential. Left and right are only used to denote electrode location (see Fig. 6) EOG  $500 \mu\text{cm}$ , vermal  $100 \mu\text{cm}$ , all others  $50 \mu\text{cm}$ , 25 mm/sec.

37-44

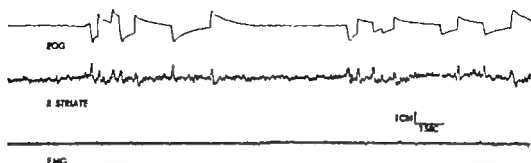


FIG 12 S 406 Relationship of striate potential to EOG Amplitude (striate response appears to be related to velocity and not amplitude of the fast phase; striate potential may possibly be related to saccadic depression. EOG 500  $\mu$ /cm, striate 100  $\mu$ /cm, EMG 20  $\mu$ /cm, 25 mm/sec

cycle. This same patterning was also seen in the medial vestibular nucleus (Fig 11) and nucleus fastigius (Fig 13).

All leads showed a change in activity with stimulus onset. The fastigial and medial vestibular nuclei reflected the greatest change in activity and was often correlated with changes in the EOG.

### *Electrical Brain Stimulation During Oscillation*

*Stimulation in the unanesthetized S.* No attempts were made to stimulate the fastigial nuclei in the unanesthetized animal since numerous studies indicate that seizures often result (Dow & Moruzzi 1958). Histological study showed that two of the Ss had placement in the superior colliculus and another animal had electrodes in the fornix commissure. One would expect that stimulation in these sites would lead to arousal of the animal and in fact changes in the nystagmic response reflected the anticipated alerting.

S 421 (Fig 14) had a good placement in the VFR. In this case a stimulus of only 10 microamps caused an increase in intensity of the nystagmic response and a simultaneous change in the vertical potential. Fig 14 substantiates the fact that this cerebellar potential leads the eye-movement reversal. With stimulus offset there also was an increase in frequency and amplitude of the response.

S 328 showed the most dramatic change in response to VRF stimulation (Fig 15). Based on voltage across a 1k resistor it was estimated that the stimulus was approximately 250 microamps. However stimulus duration was only 1 msec. Prior to stimulation, S had habituated to the vestibular stimulus and the IFSP had almost returned to the baseline. With stimulus offset there was an increase in the amplitude of the IFSP but little or no

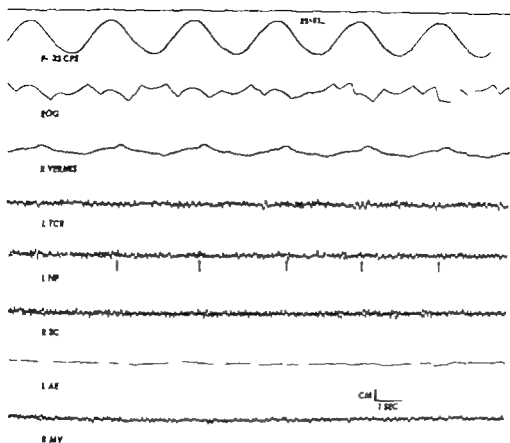


FIG. 12. Arrows denote alternations in potential from cerebellar fastigial nucleus and the peaks of the vermal response EOG 500  $\mu$  cm, stimuli AE 100  $\mu$  cm, all others 50  $\mu$  cm. 25 mm/sec

change in the nystagmic response. However  $5 \frac{1}{2}$  sec. after the stimulus, there was a spontaneous discharge in the fastigial nucleus and an increase in the nystagmus. This lasted approximately 4 sec., after which time both the nystagmus and the IFSP became more regular in form.

Stimulation of the superior colliculus required slightly higher parameters to elicit a change in the nystagmic and cerebellar response. In S 412 (Fig. 16) there was inhibition of both potentials during the period of stimulation. With stimulus offset, there was an increase in the nystagmic response and a return of the IFSP.

#### *Stimulation in the Anesthetized S*

In an attempt to separate the effects of cortical (Cohen *et al.*, 1965) and sub-cortical electrical stimulation, *Ss* were stimulated while under sodium pentobarbital. Each *S* was run at only one of five dosage levels ranging from 20 mg/kg–45 mg/kg. The animals were placed in the apparatus within 20 sec. of the injection, making it possible to monitor the immediate effects

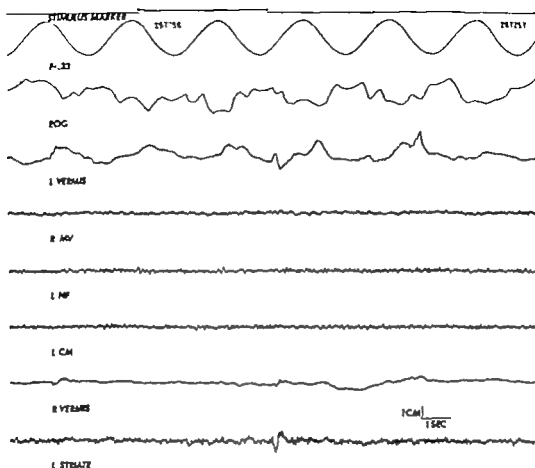


FIG. 14 S 427 Stim lat = 1 MRF (10  $\mu$  cps., 250/sec 1 msec) Stim 1 tl led t increase 1 the nystagmic response and verm 1 potential. EOG 500  $\mu$ /cm, verm 1 100  $\mu$ /cm, all others 50  $\mu$ /cm, 25 mm/sec

of the drug on the nystagmic and EEG responses. Even with the lowest dosage level there was complete suppression of all vestibular nystagmus. This was true for all Ss in which anesthetic induction was complete. In those Ss with good (MRF) electrode implants, a brief stimulus (1-3 sec.) resulted in an almost immediate return of the slow phase of nystagmus. S 333 was run under the highest level of the drug (45 mg/kg) and as shown in Fig 17 stimulation of the mesencephalic reticular formation led to a return of the slow phase. The slow phase was always compensatory and as long as the animal was being oscillated, showed no decrement in amplitude. If the oscillation were discontinued for a period of 5 min. or more and then reinitiated, there was again complete absence of nystagmus until the MRF was stimulated electrically. With shorter inter trial intervals the slow phase of nystagmus would reappear with stimulus onset. In S 413 (Fig 1) the MRF was stimulated before nystagmus was completely suppressed. This caused an immediate increase in the potential from the left

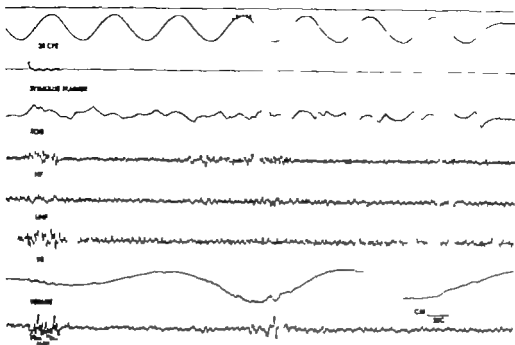


FIG. 15. S 323. Stimulation of NMF during habituation. Stimulus (current 250  $\mu$  mps., 1 msec., 250 sec.) led to little or no change in EOG vertical response. Five and one-half sec. after stimulus offset, IFSP increased following spontaneous discharge of RNF. Nystagmic response also showed subsequent increase in intensity. EOG 500  $\mu$  cm, crm 100  $\mu$  cm, 11 others 50  $\mu$  cm, 25 mm sec.

vermis. When this potential reached its maximum, there was a correlated change in the EOG. Stimulus offset led to a reversal in polarity of the cerebellar potentials and a shift in eye position to the opposite side.

As in the unanesthetized situation, stimulation of the superior colliculus (SC) led to changes in the cerebellar and nystagmic responses. One must bear in mind the possibility of responses being due to current spread to the NMF or brachium conjunctivum. During the period of stimulation, there were no apparent changes in the EEG, except for some suppression of the striate cortical response. With stimulus offset, there was a large amplitude increase from the left vermis and a corresponding (although lower voltage) change in the EOG.

The most clear-cut and consistent results were obtained with electrical stimulation of the fastigial nuclei. Many unsuccessful exploratory trials were conducted until it was discovered that rapid eye movements could be readily elicited with very brief high frequency (250/sec.) stimulation of these nuclei. Stimuli as low as 20 microamps were effective and as the stimulus was increased in intensity there was an obvious gradation in the magnitude of the response. Stimulation of the right fastigial nucleus in S 409 led to an immediate rapid eye movement to the left. With a current



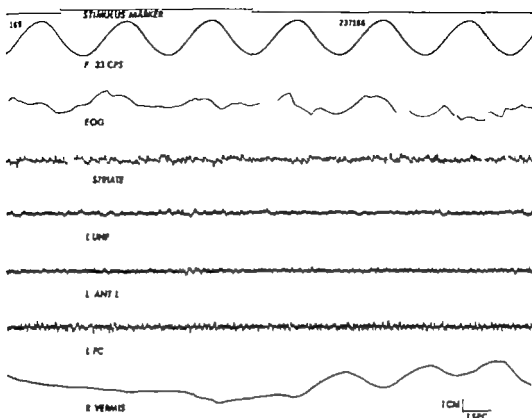


FIG. 18 S 412. Stimulation of SC in the unanesthetized S (50  $\mu$ amps, 1 msec 100/sec) Stimulation led to inhibition of the nystagmic response and the thermal potential. With stimulus offset there was an increase in both of these responses. EOG 500  $\mu$ v/cm, thermal 100  $\mu$  cm, 11 there 50  $\mu$  /cm, 23 mm sec

Increase of only 10 microamps there was a slight but noticeable increase in the velocity and amplitude of the response (Fig 18). The record from S 413 (Fig 18) shows the effect of higher current stimulation. There is some variability in the amplitude of the FOG and this is probably due to the repetitive stimulation and the fact that the stimulus was applied at different points of the oscillation cycle.

The artifacts seen on some of the channels during stimulation are caused by poor stimulus isolation. This is characteristic of the constant current stimulator when low current values are used. However the record from S 413 (Fig 18) shows clear evoked potentials in centrum medianum in response to the fastigial stimulation.

None of the S was stimulated in centrum medianum while under Nembutal. Although two S were stimulated in what was believed to be centrum medianum histological study showed the electrodes were actually in the mesencephalic reticular formation. Stimulation of the anterior lobe of the

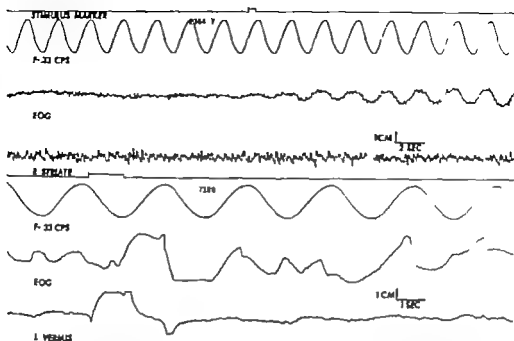


FIG. 17 Stimulation of MRF in anesthetized Ss 333 and 413. In the top record, brief stimulus (75 sec, 200  $\mu$ amps, 1 msec 300 sec) led to a return of the slow phase of nystagmus for S 333. In the bottom record S 413 was stimulated before complete anesthetic induction had taken place so that the vermal response precedes the EOG change. This record also shows that the vermal potentials are not eye movement artifacts, since subsequent wandering eye movements are not reflected on the record from the vermis. Top record EOG 200  $\mu$  cm, trial 50  $\mu$  cm, 10 mm/sec. bottom trace—EOG 500  $\mu$  cm, vermis 50  $\mu$  cm, 25 mm/sec.

cerebellar vermis, dorsal uncinate fasciculus, and the nodulus did not cause changes in the EOG. A complete summary of the stimulation sites and results are given in Table 2.

### Effects of Cerebellar Lesions on Habituation

It was predicted that partial lesions of the tuber vermis should lead to marked changes in the habituation of vestibular nystagmus, for the following reasons:

- 1) The cerebellar infraslow potentials decreased in amplitude as S habituated.
- 2) The correlation between the faster vermal potentials and the EOG tended to indicate some primary vestibular control function for this structure. This was further supported by the correlated loss of the fast phase of nystagmus and the cerebellar potentials while under Nembutal.

Following surgery S 328 displayed marked hypermetria of the right hindleg, which is typical of a lesion of the tuber vermis. Other than this, the animal was in good physical condition and began eating the day after

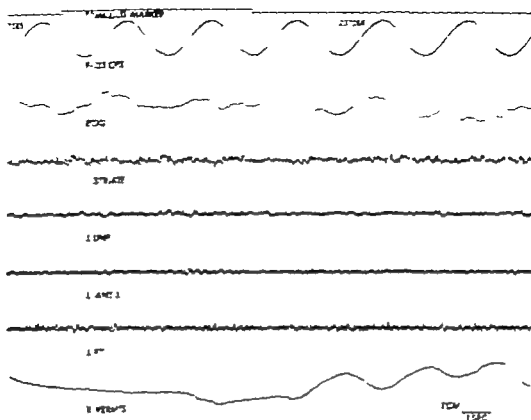


FIG. 16 5412 Stimulation of SC in the unanesthetized S (100 ampere, 1 msec 100 sec stimulus) resulted in inhibition of the synaptic response and the normal potential. With 5412 stimulus there was an increase in both of these responses. EOG 100  $\mu$  cm. 100  $\mu$  cm. all others 100  $\mu$  cm. 25 mm sec.

increase of only 10 microamps there was a slight, but noticeable increase in the delay and amplitude of the response (Fig. 18). The record from 5412 Fig. 14 shows the effect of higher current stimulation. There is some variation in the amplitude of the EOG and this is probably due to the repetitive stimulation and the fact that the stimulus was applied at different points of the oscillation cycle.

The artifact seen in some of the channels during stimulation are caused by the stimulation. This is characteristic of the constant current stimulator when low current values are used. However the record from 5412 Fig. 14 shows clear evoked potential in centrum medianum in response to the focal stimulation.

When the S was stimulated in centrum medianum while under Nembutal anesthesia S were stimulated in what was believed to be centrum medianum. Later post mortem showed the electrodes were actually in the mesencephalic trunk. Stimulation of the anterior lobe of the

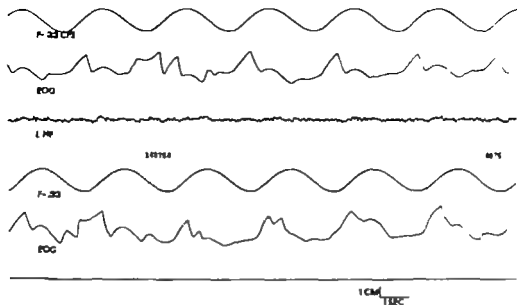


FIG. 20. Ss 335 and 1358. Top record taken after 31 trials (1 trial/day) showing bidirectional habituation. Bottom record from S 1358 taken after eight days of stimulation (1 trial/day). Note almost complete absence of the response to the left toward the end of the record. EOG 500  $\mu$ V m. LVP 50  $\mu$ V cm. 25 mm/sec



(A) Reconstructive lesion on S 335



(B) Reconstructive lesion on S 1358

FIG. 21. Reconstructive lesions. (A) Lesion showed slight invasion of pyramid VII B was completely removed. (B) No element with pyramid or parafloccular; VII B was completely removed.

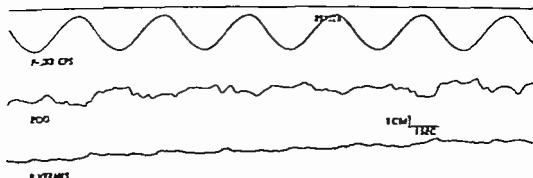


FIG. 22. Habituated record from S 428 taken on the first trial. Note the distortion of the first phases to the left, and flattening of the compensatory movement on the fifth cycle to the left. EOG  $500 \mu\text{V cm}$ , N. Vest.  $100 \mu\text{V cm}$ , 25 mm sec

surgery. Fig. 19 shows a continuous strip of record taken 32 hours postoperatively. At the beginning of the oscillation, S displayed a normal nystagmus, with the exception that there was approximately a 30% increase in the overall amplitude of the nystagmus as compared to the preoperative level. The most dramatic change took place approximately 24 sec. after stimulus onset, at which time S habituated to rotation to the left while maintaining nystagmus in response to rotation to the right. To further confirm this finding, the same operation was performed on another animal. Because S 1388 was more debilitated by the surgery, it was not run until 48 hours postoperatively. However, an almost identical response pattern was obtained. The animal had a normal nystagmus for the first 30 sec. and then habituated unidirectionally to rotation to the left.

On the second day (24 and 72 hours postoperatively) both Ss had a "normal" vestibular response to oscillation. S 328 did not habituate in either direction, and S 1388 showed only a brief (2 sec.) habituation to rotation to the left. Subsequently, both Ss were run for varying periods (2-8 mins. every day) until bilateral habituation took place. S 328 showed little or no sign of habituation for a period of 18 days. At this time there was a return to the pattern seen 32 hours postoperatively (Fig. 20). The S showed habituation when accelerated to the left and an "overcompensation" to the right. It was not until the twenty-first day of stimulation that the animal showed habituation in both directions. In the case of S 1388, there was complete breakdown in the vestibular response to rotation to the left after eight days of stimulation (Fig. 20). Again, the animal reflected an overcompensation in the opposite direction. On the twelfth day of stimulation, this S also showed habituation in both directions. Fig. 21 shows histological reconstructions of the lesions in these two Ss.

Histological study revealed that S 428 had a lesion of the rostral medial portion of the left facial nucleus, and some tissue destruction in the right facial nucleus. As mentioned, this animal did not have a normal nystagmus, and the record from the first trial indicates marked habituation (Fig. 22). There are very few satisfactory phases to the left, and those that can be identified are of low amplitude. In addition, the compensatory movement is irregular.

## DISCUSSION

### *Slow Potentials*

One of the most dramatic findings in the present experiments was the slow potentials recorded from the cerebellar tuber vermis. As early as 1890 Beck had been able to record slow potential changes from both cerebellar and cerebral cortex. More recently Arduini (1961) found that slow potentials could be recorded from the cerebellar cortex in response to sensory nerve or midbrain reticular stimulation. Prior to this, Dondey & Solder (1955) found that electrical stimulation of the cerebellum led to changes in slow D.C. potentials recorded from the cerebral cortex. Although Russian investigators have done extensive research on cerebral slow potentials (Aladjalova, 1964) little is known of the functional significance of cerebellar slow potentials.

Typically slow potentials are recorded with D.C. amplification since this permits greater amplitude and lower frequency recording. However one is always faced with the problems of electrode polarization and amplifier drift. Before turning to a discussion of slow potentials and their relevance to vestibulo-cerebellar function, it is best to consider artifacts which could give rise to such potentials.

1) The IFSPs were not due to respiration, since they decreased in amplitude with time and had a very low frequency (5-7/min).

2) They were probably not the result of varying blood flow. This change in blood supply would have to be very discrete since the potentials varied over a few millimeters of recording area.

3) A.C. amplification was used in the present experiments and therefore any D.C. shifts in potential would be blocked by the capacitance coupling. Furthermore Ss were not run until 10 days postoperatively leading to a polarized silver-silver chloride electrode.

4) The most likely consideration is that the potentials were due to volume conduction from the electrical field of the eyes. However as the records indicate the IFSP was often of a higher amplitude than the eye-movement potential and was usually not in phase with the eye movement potentials. The fact that the cerebellar potentials often led the eye movements by one-half second also argues against their being artifacts due to volume conduction from the eyes.

The physical basis of slow potentials is, in itself a difficult problem to assess. It has been proposed that they are due to large changes in metabolic rate in response to sensory stimulation (Aladjalova, 1964). These changes are then reflected as impedance variations at the cortex. The present discussion, however will be limited to the possible significance of these potentials in vestibulo-cerebellar function.

### *Overlap of Sensory Function at the Cerebellum*

The thesis that the cerebellum exerts a major control over vestibular function is not new for example Flourens work in the early 19th century Halstead (1935) was the first investigator to propose that habituation of vestibular nystagmus in the pigeon was under cerebellar control. Unfortunately he did not report adequate histological data. His proposal was, however confirmed indirectly by DiGiorgio & Pestellini in 1948 when they found that guinea pigs with lesions of the tuber vermis did not show habituation to a rotatory stimulus. The fact that the present results are similar for carnivores further supports these data.

Slow potentials appeared in all animals prior to stimulus onset, thus indicating that they were related to other sensory inputs. The tuber vermis of the cerebellum receives sensory information from the spinal system via the spino-cerebellar tract. Input from the labyrinth is by way of projections from the Purkinje cells of the flocculonodular lobe and fibers which pass directly from the labyrinth to the fastigial nuclei as the vestibulo-cerebellar fasciculus (Ranson, 1939) Snider & Stowell (1942, 1944) Snider & Eldred (1952) Deura & Snider (1964) have shown the overlap of visual auditory and somatosensory inputs on the cerebellar tuber vermis. These results were supported (in the cat) by Munson's (1963) establishment of a direct tecto-cerebellar tract. This polysensory overlap is relevant to the data obtained in the present experiments.

Much of the research on the vestibular system has been hampered by the assumption that nystagmus and other eye-movement responses are the result of a specific neural structure. For example research on thresholds of the semicircular canals is often interpreted as though these were the only sensory structures being stimulated. Dodge (1923a) was one of the early investigators to emphasize the problems of proprioceptive auditory and visual inputs confounding threshold determinations. Although some investigators have paid token attention to isolated factors, yet they have ignored the potential interactions of these sensory systems. This same research attitude has prevailed in some cases with "pure" cerebellar research. Responses to electrical stimulation of the cerebellum have been interpreted independent of the possible interaction of the vestibular apparatus. Though evidence now exists (Carpenter & Strominger 1964) for direct connections from the cerebellum to the oculomotor nuclei the major influence on the oculomotor system does appear to be mediated by the vestibular nuclei.

It can be argued that the vermal slow potentials recorded in the present experiments reflect an integrated measure of the tonic and phasic activity of the muscular proprioceptive and kinesthetic systems of the organism. The large amplitude sinusoidal wave activity seen in the early trials may in part be related to the degree of immobility which the animals displayed. The factors related to the response to the vestibular stimulation reflect phasic reaction related to the nystagmic response. Although no direct

quantitative measures were made the potentials were indicative of the result. Since almost all of the records were taken from the second turn of the tuber vermis, the fast phase eye movements to the left were primarily related to stimulation with Cohen *et al* (1965) who have shown that electrical stimulation of this portion of the vermis leads to conjugate horizontal movements to the left. Stimulation of the more medial portion of the vermis leads to rapid conjugate deviations to the right.

Cohen *et al* (1965) also believe that there is a three dimensional topographic representation for eye movements at both the cortical and subcortical level of the cerebellum. Stimulation of different cortical points leads to eye movements in three phases which closely approximate those eye movements elicited by electrical stimulation of the semicircular canals. This representation is also maintained at the level of the roof nuclei.

#### *Relationships of the Tuber Vermis and Fastigial Nuclei to Nystagmus*

The projections from the vermal cortex to the fastigial nuclei are further supported by the electrophysiological results of the present experiments. Increased firing and alternations in voltage of the fastigial nuclei and initiation fasciculus were associated with the peak of the vermal potentials. It is especially interesting that these were correlated with right vestibular nuclei and initiation of a fast phase to the right. The fact that these Ss with lesions displayed a type of "over-compensation" to the right is also in agreement with the theory of neural summation by the vermis.

Fernández and Fredrickson (1961 p. 61) found that stimulation of the nodulus in the cat led to partial inhibition of nystagmus, and ablation of this structure resulted in prolonged vestibular reaction to stimulation. These investigators postulated the nodulus acting as an inhibitory input to the vestibular nuclei and the reticular formation. In the changes in the nystagmus during stimulation, they also concluded that impulses from the nodulus were affecting the neural mechanism of the fast phase. An extremely relevant consideration is that the nodulus, in addition to sending efferent fibers to the vestibular nuclei and the reticular formation, also sends inhibitory fibers to the fastigial nuclei (Fredrickson, 1958). It is interesting to note that the one S (428) with a partial lesion of the left fastigial nuclei (showed an initial experiment with a partial lesion of the left fastigial nuclei and some slight involvement of the right side) showed an initial fast phase from the beginning. This further supports the hypothesis that the fastigial nuclei are the final control mechanism for the fast phase of nystagmus.

The two Ss with vermal lesions also showed an occurrence of the compensatory phase of nystagmus to the left. In 1 S the compensatory movement became distorted and in phase 3. This type of response was never seen in over 100 trials.



(Wendt (1965) has postulated that distortions of the slow phase which are often seen during habituation in primates, are due to an active intrusion of the fast phase mechanism upon the compensatory pattern. The data from the present experiments can be interpreted to support this theory.

### *Role of the Reticular Formation in Habituation of Nystagmus*

One of the major problems in understanding habituation of vestibular nystagmus has been the necessity for invoking the reticular formation as the probable control center of the fast phase of nystagmus. There is a great deal of literature in support of this theory but it has been based on highly tenuous premises which may not be valid. There is little doubt that habituation is an active central process. Thompson & Shaw (1965) have established that for the auditory system there is no fatigue at the sensory end organ or relay nuclei in response to 74 hours of continuous stimulation. Therefore any modifications in the response must take place "more centrally." This also appears to be true for the vestibular apparatus. In the present experiment, there was no decrement in the compensatory phase of nystagmus after three hours of continuous stimulation (animals under Nembutal and one S under chloralose). The fact that animals under deep barbiturates and ether anesthesia display no fast phases has been used as one argument for reticular formation control (Szecitagothai, 1943; Hood & Pfaltz, 1954). In the present experiments, the potentials from the cerebellar tuber vermis also disappeared under Nembutal. Stimulation of the reticular formation in the unanesthetized S led to an increase in the fast phase frequency (i.e., loss of habituation) of the nystagmic response but also caused a simultaneous increase in the potentials from the cerebellum. However reticular stimulation under deep Nembutal never elicited a rapid eye movement but only a return of the slow phase of nystagmus. Low current stimulation of the fastigial nuclei, under the same conditions, always elicited a contralateral fast phase. In the lightly anesthetized S MRF electrical stimulation led to a sharp increase in the vermal potentials which preceded the FOC change by as much as one half second.

Another argument for reticular control of nystagmus has been that completely decorticated (neocortex) cats show normal habituation to a rotatory stimulus (Fernández & Schmidt, 1963; Hernandez Peón & Brust Carmona, 1961). Fernández & Schmidt (p. 16) conclude "the phenomenon apparently takes place in lower centers, probably in the vestibular nuclei, the reticular formation of both medulla and pons or in both these centers." What is important in their discussion of the problem is the qualification which they subsequently make "These structures, however, seem to be under a strong cerebellar influence because localized or extensive cerebellar lesions (1-16) or ablation of the nodulus (45) prevent acquisition until the system compensates for cerebellar deficiency." (The relationhip between the nodulus and the fastigial nuclei has already been discussed.) This is in contrast to the finding of Halstead and of DiGiorgio &

Pestellini) As the authors imply the findings of habituation in decorticate cats does not provide a conclusive argument for reticular control, since the cerebellum was 100% intact in these Ss. The present data also bring into question the conclusion that an animal does not habituate until it compensates for cerebellar deficiency. Ss 328 and 1388 could not have been more deficient than they were 32 and 48 hours postoperatively yet both showed rapid unidirectional habituation. Secondly these Ss never compensated for the deficiency based on their nystagmic or behavioral responses. Both showed a preponderance of nystagmus to the right, and over stepped until sacrificed 30 and 26 days postoperatively.

A third, and probably the most valid, argument for the importance of the reticular formation in habituation of vestibular nystagmus is that the state of alertness appears to be related to the process of habituation. Manipulation of arousal such as by drugs or in the case of humans, by mental tasks, has an effect on the process of habituation. Amphetamines are believed to act on the reticular formation, but in the high doses commonly used in vestibular studies with animals they sometimes cause ataxia which may be cerebellar in origin. The question arises concerning the effects of this drug on potentials at the cerebellar cortex. The fact that dishabituation took place in the present experiments in response to auditory and visual stimuli lends support to the reticular hypothesis, but is again confounded by the associated changes which take place at the cerebellum. The fastigial nuclei and reticular formation reciprocally innervate each other thereby making it difficult to separate cause and effect. A useful experiment which would aid in answering this question would be to ablate or stimulate the tuber vermis to see if there are changes in the degree of habituation to a stimulus of some modality other than vestibular.

#### *Vestibulo-Cerebellar Interactions with Sensory Stimuli*

If the cerebellum is a major link in the control of vestibular nystagmus, then one should be able to logically explain vestibular interactions with other sensory modalities. The tuber vermis responds to auditory visual and somatosensory input (Deura & Snider 1964) and, as these authors point out, other investigations have obtained data which support this convergence of sensory input. Clark & Graybiel (1948 p. 6) found that a S's ability to localize a sound coming from a source directly in front of him was impaired if S were rotated and then brought to an abrupt stop. The sound was displaced, an average of 17° in the direction of the slow phase. This displacement gradually decreased to 0° 25 to 30 sec. later. This period is approximately how long it would take for the sensation of rotation to run its course. These authors conclude "this constant error in sound localization, or what might be termed the *audilogical illusion*, is based upon the complex interaction of two sensory systems and the resultant perception is the S's reaction to this total situation which produces gross constant errors in the localization of sounds.

## RÉSUMÉ

Les enregistrements faits électrophysiologiques de la structure cérébellovestibulaire dans non-anesthésiés et anesthésiés chats indiquent que le *cerebellum folium tuber vermis* et *noyaux fastigiaux* jouent un rôle primaire dans le contrôle de la phase ferme nystagmique et dans le processus de la habitude vestibulaire. Quinze chats ont été implantés avec les électrodes chroniques dans la structure cérébellovestibulaire et répétés exposés à la oscillation horizontale. Les intralents potentiels enregistrés de cortex cérébelleux se diminuent en amplitude quand les sujets se habituaient à la stimulation vestibulaire. La stimulation électrique de la formation mésentéphalique réticulaire sous Nembutal conduisait au retourner de la phase lente de nystagmus (les animaux ont été oscillés) pendant que la stimulation électrique de *noyau fastigial* sous les mêmes conditions toujours portait dehors la phase ferme contralatérale. Une blessure discrète de *tuber vermis* conduisait à rapide habitude unidirectionnelle à la stimulation vestibulaire. Ces faits (évidences) supportent la hypothèse de Brodal (1960) que le *noyau fastigial* exerce le contrôle sur les *noyaux vestibulaires* et en résultant les réponses oculomotrices. De plus, le *folium tuber vermis* paraît d'être la structure primaire contrôlant la habitude par son action directe inhibitrice sur le *noyau fastigial*.

## SUMMARY

Electrophysiological recordings from cerebello-vestibular structures in unanesthetized and anesthetized cats indicates the cerebellar folium tuber vermis and fastigial nuclei play a primary role in control of the nystagmic fast phase and the process of vestibular habituation. Fifteen normal cats were implanted with chronic electrodes in cerebello-vestibular structures and repeatedly exposed to horizontal oscillation. Infraslow potentials recorded from cerebellar cortex decreased in amplitude as the subjects habituated to the vestibular stimulation. Electrical stimulation of the mesencephalic reticular formation under Nembutal, led to a return of the slow phase of nystagmus (animal being oscillated) whereas electrical stimulation of a fastigial nucleus under the same conditions always elicited a contralateral fast phase. A discrete lesion of the tuber vermis led to rapid unidirectional habituation to vestibular stimulation. These data support Brodal's (1980) hypothesis that the fastigial nuclei exert control over the vestibular nuclei and resulting oculomotor responses. Furthermore the folium-tuber vermis appears to be the primary structure controlling habituation through its direct inhibitory action on the fastigial nuclei.

## REFERENCES

- Aladjova, V. A. 1961: *Slow electrical processes in the brain*. Progress in Brain Research, Vol. 7. New York: American Elsevier.
- Arduini, A. 1941: Slow potential changes evoked by sensory and reticular stimulation. In D. Sheer (Ed.) *Electrical Stimulation of the Brain*. Austin: University of Texas Press.
- Beck, A. 1890: Die Bestimmung der Lokalisation der Gehirn- und Rückenmark funktionen vermittelt der elektrischen Erscheinungen. *Zbl. Physiol.* 4: 473-476.
- Brodie, A. 1960: Fiber connections of the vestibular nuclei. In Grant, L. Ramoa (Ed.) *Vestibular Mechanism of the Auditory and Vestibular System*. Springfield: Thomas, Pp. 221-246.
- Brookhardt, J. M. 1960: The cerebellum. In J. Field (Ed.) *Handbook of Physiology*. Washington: American Physiological Society.
- Carpenter, M. B., and Strominger, N. L. 1964: Cerebellocculomotor fibers in the rhombencephalon. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 123, 211-230.
- Clark, B., and Graybiel, A. 1948: The effect of angular acceleration on localization (the otolith organ illusion). *XMAS* (45-4-3) Report, 21-112.
- Cohen, H., Chambers, W. W., and Sprague, J. M. 1958: Experimental study of the efferent projection from the cerebellar nuclei to the brain stem of the cat. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 100: 233-250.
- Cohen, B. G. to, H., Sherr, G., and Wilson, A. H. 1963: Eye movement induced by electric stimulation of the cerebellum in the alert cat. *J. Exp. Neurol.* 13: 145-162.
- Collier, W. L. 1962: Effect of mental set upon vestibular nystagmus. *J. Exp. Psychol.* 63: 101-107.
- Collier, W. L., Crampton, G. H., and Posner, J. H. 1961: Effect of mental activity on vestibular nystagmus and the electroencephalogram. *Nature* 190: 104-105.
- Collier, W. L., Reddy, P. L., and Posner, J. H. 1962: Control of electric nystagmus by manipulative gross and fine motor activity. *Ann. Otol. Rhin. & Laryngol.* 71: 187-202.
- Collier, W. L., and Lee, R. H. 1962: Amphetamine arousal and human vestibular nystagmus. *J. Pharmacol. Exptl. Therap.* 138: 120-125.
- Crampton, G. H. 1941: The stimulation of vestibular nystagmus in the cat during unilateral muscular produced by d-amphetamine. *USMRL Rept.* 458, Fort Knox, K.
- 1941: The stimulation of ocular nystagmus of vestibular origin. In M. B. P. (Ed.) *The Vestibular System*. New York: Harper and Row. Pp. 222-246.
- Deurne, S., and Snel, R. S. 1961: The interaction of vision impulses in the cerebellum. *J. Neurol. Sci.* 1: 18-196.
- Devito, R. V., Bursa, A., and Arl, L. A. 1963: Cerebellar vestibular influences. *Ann. N.Y. Acad. Sci.* 118: 214-253.
- Digirola, A. M. 1918: Postural and reflexive adaptation of the vestibular system. *Arch. Physiol.* 49: 84-110.
- Dodge, R. 1923: The stimulation of rotation. *J. Exp. Psychol.* 6: 1-35.
- Donders, M., and Sander, R. S. 1955: Slow potential shift following cerebellar stimulation. *EEG Clin. Neurophysiol.* 7: 265-272.
- Dow, R. S., and Moru, I. G. 1958: *The Physiology and Pathology of the Cerebellum*. Minneapolis: University of Minnesota Press.
- Fearl, G. F., and Fenn, O. H. 1931: The effect of general anesthesia upon the peripheral red reflex. *J. C. Psychol.* 11: 133-141.



- Rose J. E., and Woolsey C. V. 1949: Organization of the mammalian thalamus and its relationships to the cerebral cortex. *EFC Clin Neurophysiol* 11: 291-402.
- Rowlett, M. M., and Solder R. S. 1936: Projections of vestibular area of cerebellum to the cerebrum. *J Comp. Neurol* 101: 287-402.
- Solder R. S., and Eldred, E. 1932: Cerebro-cerebellar relationships in the monkey. *J Neurophysiol* 1: 27-40.
- Solder R. S., and Stowell A. 1942: Evidence of projection of the optic system to the cerebellum. *Anat Rec* 82: 448-449.
- 1944: Receiving area of the tactile-diffractory and visual areas in the cerebellum. *J Neurophysiol* 7: 331-337.
- Solder R. S., and Wolman W. T. 1961: *A Stereotaxic Atlas of the Cat Brain* Chicago: Univ. of Chicago Press.
- Spiegel, E. A. 1932b: Cortical centers of the labyrinth. *J Neurophysiol* 7: 501-512.
- Spiegel, E. A., and Price J. B. 1930: Origin of the vestibular component of labyrinthine nystagmus. *Arch Otolaryng* 30: 376-383.
- Szentágothai, J. 1943: Die Zentrale Innervation der Augenbewegungen. *Arch Psychiat Nervenheilk* 116: 721-760.
- 1950: The elementary vestibulo-ocular reflex arc. *J Neurophysiol* 13: 393-407.
- Thompson, R. F., Johnson, R. H., and Hoopes, J. 1963: Organization of auditory-somatosensory and visual projection to a vocalization field of cerebral cortex of the cat. *J Neurophysiol* 26: 343-364.
- Wendt, G. R. 1936b: The form of the vestibular eye movement response in man. *Psychol Monographs* 4: 311-328.
- 1951: Vestibular functions. In S. S. Stevens (Ed.) *Handbook of Experimental Psychology* New York: Wiley. Pp. 1191-1223.
- 1963: Man and motion. In J. Field and H. W. Magill (Eds.) *Handbook of Physiology* Washington, D.C.: American Physiological Society. Pp. 999-1004.
- 1965: The nature of adaptation to oscillatory rotation. In *The Role of the Vestibular Organ in the Exploration of Space* Washington, D.C.: National Aeronautics and Space Administration. Pp. 133-159.
- Witt J. W., and Wendt, G. R. 1966: Effect of light and dark adaptation on the magnitude of the human electro-oculogram. Unpublished.

## APPENDIX

### *Instructions for reading EOG records*

Note In all records, the decreasing cosine wave (90–270 degrees) indicates acceleration to the left while the increasing cosine wave (270–90 degrees) indicates acceleration to the right. This can also be interpreted as movements up being equal to acceleration to the right and deflection downward acceleration to the left.

In the case of the EOG there is an exact 180 degree reversal. Upward movement indicates an eye movement to the left, and a downward deflection an eye movement to the right. The eyes typically reverse direction around the points of zero acceleration (maximum velocity) at 0 and 180 degrees. Due to the low velocity of the cat's saccadic eye movements, there is often difficulty in determining a "true" fast phase.

### *List of Abbreviations*

AE	Atrial Ectosylvian Gyrus	SC	Superior Colliculus
CM	Nucleus Centram Medianum	SN	Substantia Nigra
DE	Dorsal Hippocampus	TCR	Thalamocortical Radiations
FC	Fornix Commissure	UNF	Uncinate Fasciculus
HC	Hippocampal Commissure	VH	Ventral Hippocampus
MMB	Mammillary Body	VL	Nucleus Ventralis Lateralis
MRF	Mesencephalic Reticular Formation	VR	Visual Radiations
MV	Medial Vestibular Nucleus	WMP	White Matter Parahippocampus
NOD	Nodulus		



TABLE 1 *Effects of Electrical Stimulation in the Un-anesthetized Animal*

Subject	Histological Locus	Parameters	Results
328	MRP	250 microamps, 1 msec 300/sec.	5 seconds post-stimulation, increase in IFSP and nystagmus
333	MRP	200 microamps, 1 msec 300/sec	Immediate increase in fast phase frequency and decrease in amplitude of the nystagmus
400	MRP	30 microamps, 1 msec 250/sec	Immediate increase in fast phase frequency and decrease in amplitude of the nystagmus, disruption of IFSP
413	MRP	75 microamps, 1 msec 300/sec.	Immediate increase in fast phase frequency and decrease in amplitude of the nystagmus, disruption of IFSP
427	MRP	10 microamps, 1 msec 100/sec	Increase in overall frequency and amplitude of the nystagmus, increase in frequency of the IFSP with stimulus offset
412	SC	50 microamps, 1 msec	Inhibition of nystagmus and IFSP with stimulus offset increase in nystagmus and IFSP
402	SC	150 microamps, 1 msec	Increase in frequency of nystagmus and IFSP
391	PH	70 microamps, 1 msec 100/sec	Increase in amplitude and frequency of nystagmus, preceded by change in IFSP

TABLE 2 *Effects of Electrical Stimulation in the Anesthetized Animal*

Subject	Histological Locu	Parameters	Drug	Result
228	L MRF	100 microamps. 1 msec. 300/sec.	30 mg/kg	Almost immediate return of slow phase of nystagmus
333	L MRF	200 microamps. 1 msec. 300/sec.	45 mg/kg	Almost immediate return of slow phase of nystagmus
409	L MRF	40 microamps. 1 msec. 250/sec.	45 mg/kg	3 second burst of random eye movements
413	R MRF	100 microamps. 1 msec. 250/sec.	20 mg/kg	Almost immediate return of slow phase of nystagmus
427	R MRF	100 microamps. 1 msec. 300/sec.	25 mg/kg	Slight increase in amplitude of slow phase of nystagmus
412	L FC	100 microamps. 1 msec. 300/sec.	36 mg/kg	No change in any leads
412	R SC	75 microamps. 1 msec. 300/sec.	36 mg/kg	Increase in slow phase of nystagmus, and return of IFSP
391	L PH	20 microamps. 1 msec. 100/sec.	45 mg/kg	Return of IFSP preceding slow eye movement by 1/2 sec.
400	R MRF	50 microamps. 1 msec. 250/sec.	25 mg/kg	Inhibition of slow phase of nystagmus with stimulus offset
400	NOD	25-300 microamps. 1 msec. 300/sec.	25 mg/kg	No change in any leads
400	L NF	20 microamps. 1 msec. 250/sec.	25 mg/kg	Rapid eye movement to right
400	R NF	40 microamps. 1 msec. 250/sec.	25 mg/kg	Rapid eye movement to left
413	R NF	100 microamps. 1 msec. 250/sec.	20 mg/kg	Rapid eye movement to left
427	L NT	75 microamps. 1 msec. 250/sec.	25 mg/kg	Rapid eye movement to right
412	Ant L	10-100 microamps. 1 msec. 300/sec.	36 mg/kg	No change in any leads
412	L NF	50-100 microamps. 1 msec. 10-300/sec.	36 mg/kg	No change in any leads
328	R NF	75 microamps. 1 msec. 250/sec.	30 mg/kg	Rapid eye movement to left

TABLE 3. *Sub Cortical Electrode Sites (Histologically Verified)*

328	R NF P 8.5 L 1.5 H 0.0	L UNF P 8.5 L 3.5 H -2.0	L MRF A 2.5 L 1.0 H 0.0	L MRF A 6.0 L 2.5 H 1.0	R VR A 6.0 L 12.0 H 6.0
333	M NF P 8.5 L 0.0	R UNF P 8.5 L 3.0 H -2.0	L MRF electro- physiological	L CM A 8.0-8.5 L 3.0 H 1.0	
348	M NF I 8.5 L 0.0 H 0.0	L MV P 8.0 L 3.0 H -3.5	L MRF A 2.0 L 3.0 H 0.0	M SN A 6.0 L 5.0 H 4.0	
391	M NF I 8.5 L 0.0 H 0.0	A t Lobe Cir. P 8.5 L 3.0 H 5.0	W MP A 2.0 L 2.5 H 1.0		DH A 6.5 L 3.0 H 8.0
400	L NF P 9.5 L 1.0 H 0.0	Nodulus P 0.5 L 1.0 H -1.0	R MRF A 5.0 L 1.0 H .5	L VH A 6.0 L 11.0 H -2.0	R VR A 6.0 L 12.0 H 7.0
102	L NF P 0.0 L 1.0 H 1.5	R MV P 7.5 L 2.0 H -3.0	L SC A 2.0 L 3.5 H 3.0	R MMB A 8.5 L 0.5 H -6.5	TCR A 7.5 L 13.0 H 7.0
108	R NF P 9.0 L 2.5 H 2.0	L MV P 9.0 L 3.0 H 4.0	L MRF A 3.0 L 4.0 H -.5	R MRF A 5.0 L 3.0 H 1.0	L HC A 3.5 L 11.0 H 7.0
11	A t Lobe Cir. I 8.0 L 1.0 H 6.0	L UNF P 8.0 L 2.0 H 3.0	R SC A 3.5 L 3.0 H 1.0	L FC A 3.5 L 3.0 H 2.0	
413	R NF I 8.5 L 1.0 H 1.0	L MV P 8.0 L 3.0 H -1.0	R MRF A 3.5 L 1.0 H 1.0	L CM A 7.0 L 3.0 H 1.0	R VH A 1.5 L 11.0 H 8.5
127	L NF P 8.5 L 2.0 H 1.0	R MV I 8.0 L 3.0 H 1.0	R MRF A 3.0 L 4.0 H .5	L CM A 7.0 L 2.5 H .5	
128	L NF I 9.0 L 1.5 H 1.0	Nod. lns I 9.0 L 1.5 H 2.0	L MRF A 2.0 L 4.0 H 1.0	R CM A 7.0 L 1.0 H 1.0	
557	M UNF I 8.5 L 0.0 H 2.0	Nod & I NF I 8.0 L 1.0 H 0.0	R CM A 6.5 L 5.0 H 2.0	R VL A 10.0 L 1.5 H 1.5	



PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wikströms Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1967

*Acta*  
OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

S U P P L E M E N T U M 232

GENETIC HEARING IMPAIRMENT IN  
THE DALMATIAN DOG

*An audiometric, genetic and morphologic study in 53 dogs*

H. ANDERSON B HENRICSON P-G LUNDQUIST  
E. WEDENBERG and J WERSÄLL

ACTA OTO-LARYNGOLOGICA NARVAVÄGEN 16, STOCKHOLM NO



ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

SUPPLEMENTUM 132

---

*From the Departments of Otolaryngology and Audiology Karolinska  
Hospital, the department of animal genetics, nutrition and hygiene the Royal Veterinary College  
and King Gustaf V Research Institute, Stockholm, Sweden*

GENETIC HEARING IMPAIRMENT IN  
THE DALMATIAN DOG

*An audiometric, genetic and morphologic study in 53 dogs*

H. ANDERSON B HENRICSON P G LUNDQUIST  
E WEDENBERG and J WERSÄLL

UPPSALA 1968



PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY  
*Almqvist & Wiksells*  
BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG  
UPPSALA 1968

## CONTENTS

Introduction	5
Audiometric and Genetical Investigation	8
Morphologic Examination	13
Discussion	29
Summary	32
Acknowledgements	33
References	34



## INTRODUCTION

For the study of many problems on the mode of inheritance and pathogenesis of genetic hearing defects it is necessary to rely on animal experiments. In man the slow reproduction governed as it is by various uncontrollable social factors render incidence analyses hazardous to this difficulty must be added the well known insurmountable one of obtaining specimens in good enough condition to permit histologic studies. The indirect approach via laboratory animals is therefore inescapable. It would seem reasonable to suppose that certain types of hearing degeneration in man have exact counterparts in the usual laboratory animals.

It is well established that genetic deafness occurs in many animals, including the mouse, guinea pig, cat and dog (Altmann, 1950). In the mouse and guinea pig deafness is often combined with locomotive disturbances of various types and grades. The deaf mouse displays no less than 11 variants of such disorders. In genetic deafness in the guinea pig they are manifested as walking. In the cat and dog deafness is often combined with pigmentation anomalies: deaf cats are often white with blue eyes (Bamber, 1933) and deafness in the dog not infrequently occurs in races with a white or merle colour including the collie, Shetland sheepdog, old English sheepdog, Norwegian dummerhound, great Dane, dachshund, foxhound and bull terrier. Hereditary deafness occurs also in races without pigmentation anomalies, including the Dalmatian, poodle, dachshund and Rottweiler. The Dalmatian is not a merle dog, for though the patches vary in size and number the colour is always a uniform dark shade in contrast to the piebald, dirty looking anomalous pigmentation of the merle dog. Deafness in the dog and cat is rarely if ever combined with locomotive disturbances.

Genetically deaf animals have rarely been subjected to careful hearing studies to ascertain the type and degree of the hearing impairment. Observations of the hearing capacity of the mouse suggest, however, that in many kinds the faculty of hearing is lost, partly or completely, relatively early in life. Confirmation has been obtained in electrophysiological and light and electron microscopic studies, especially on the so-called shaker I mouse.

It has been shown in a light microscopic study by Grüneberg *et al.* (1940) and in a light and electron microscopic study by Mikuchi & Hilding (1965) that in the normal mouse the cochlea and the hair cells are not fully developed until 12 days after birth. In the shaker I mouse, however, degenerative changes could be observed by electron microscopy from the 12th day after which they progressed rapidly.

Using the Preyer reflex as a rough test of the hearing Mikaelian & Ruben (1964) found that cochlear potentials could be recorded from normal mice on the eighth day but in shaker I mice not until the ninth and never through out the normal frequency range. After 21 days the cochlear potentials could no longer be recorded, nor could the action potentials these did not attain the same magnitude as in the normal animal and disappeared on the twentieth day. The Preyer reflex, which normally appeared on the tenth day was not recorded until the twelfth, and disappeared on the twenty second.

The literature contains no evidence of a similar early disappearance of the hearing in cats with genetic hearing defects. Histologic studies by Bosher & Hallpike (1963) show that in the cat with normal hearing the cochlea and hair cells are not fully developed until the twenty-first day of postnatal life. In the deaf white cat degeneration of the inner ear begins at only 4-6 days of age and then progresses. Since the degeneration begins so early it is hardly surprising that there are no reports on the hearing in kittens. The degeneration is, according to Bosher & Hallpike limited to the cochlea and sacculle and can be unilateral.

Nor in the case of the dog is there any reported evidence of such early deterioration of hearing, or surprisingly enough any histologic study of the time at which the organ of Corti is fully developed.

In a histologic study of an unspecified number of clinically deaf collies and Dalmatians 2-4 months old, Lurie (1948) found no anomalies of the temporal bone or middle ear but there were degeneration of Corti's organ and atrophy of the cochlear nerve, spiral ganglion and partial collapse of the sacculle. The nerve degeneration however was not as great as might be expected from the cochlear conditions. The remaining parts of the vestibular labyrinth were normal.

In two 2 month-old deaf Dalmatian pups with no electrical response to sound, either pure tone or click, Hudson Durham & Ruben (1962) performed light microscope examinations. The histologic alterations consisted in degeneration of hair cells and collapse of the sacculle but there was no change in the spiral ganglion cells, the VIII nerve or segments in the central auditory system, such as previous reports had indicated. This was interpreted as indicating that the neural degeneration has still not developed at this early age.

To summarize, no systematic audiometric examination or studies of the mode of inheritance seem to have been performed on dogs with genetic hearing impairment. The few animals that have been examined have been judged to be clinically deaf and therefore no audiometric study was considered indicated. The studies that have been carried out have been limited to electrophysiologic and histologic observations.

The hereditary hearing defects in both animals and man can be divided into two main groups (I) pure bone malformations, which affect conductive or neurogenic mechanisms or both, and (II) those defects that occur

as a result of a degenerative process in the fully developed cochlea. This degeneration, the cause of which is obscure, can begin as early as in the foetal stage or at any subsequent time in life.

The damage that inflicts the genetically deaf Dalmatian is of the degenerative type. It is known from experience, moreover, that there is no dominant mode of inheritance. In these two aspects the genetic conditions resemble the most common hereditary deafness pattern in man, and the Dalmatian would therefore seem to be highly suitable for parallel studies.

Of the greatest interest are the time and site at which the degenerative process in the cochlea begins. To ascertain the time of onset some form of hearing test is extremely difficult, as it requires measurement of the hearing acuity of the animal in the first weeks, or even days, of life—perhaps even prenatally.

The question of where in the cochlea the process begins is of particular interest because current studies on man have shown that a large number of the genetic hearing impairments begin in the middle range of hearing. This suggests a pattern of cochlear destruction quite different from the more basal location of defects caused by the usual exogenous agents. It was manifestly of the greatest interest to clarify whether a tendency towards a corresponding degeneration pattern could be found in the dog.

The objects of the study reported in this paper were

- (1) To examine the mode of inheritance of deafness in a genetically and biologically well defined group of genetically tainted Dalmatian dogs and
- (ii) to compare the audiometric and histologic findings with respect to the initial site and extent of the defect in the organ of Corti

# AUDIOMETRIC AND GENETICAL INVESTIGATION

## *Breeding material*

The breeding experiments were started with two 18-month-old dogs (nos. 1 and 2, Fig. 1) both discarded for deafness by a breeder and related (coefficient of relationship 0.188 Wright). After producing two litters they were sacrificed and used in the study of the histology and ultrastructure of the cochlea. The breeding experiments were extended to two more dogs (nos. 11 and 15) related to nos. 1 and 2. The breeding programme is presented in Fig. 1. In addition to the 4 breeders, the experimental group consisted of 12 litters with 49 dogs (23 males, 26 females). All the dogs appeared to be in good health: none showed signs of vestibular disorders, middle ear infection or pigmentation anomalies.

Hearing tests were performed on all the offspring at the age of 4-6 months, and on the breeders (nos. 1, 2, 11 and 15) at 12-18 months. After the tests representative cases were sacrificed for histological studies.

## *Equipment*

To achieve the highest possible accuracy in the hearing tests it is essential to keep the animal's head situated at a definite point in the sound field of the loudspeaker. For this purpose a stand was constructed in which the dog was firmly shackled by the neck (Fig. 2). If required the legs and body could also be strapped to the stand. The stimulus tones were presented through a loudspeaker attached to the stand and placed in front of the dog and 40 cm distant from the head.

An audiometer was used as a tone generator which provided a click-free onset and decay of the tone and the necessary attenuator over a range of 100 dB in 5 dB steps. The frequencies of the test tone were 500, 1000, 2000, 3000, 4000 and 6000 Hz. To obtain the required sound intensity a power amplifier was connected between audiometer and loudspeaker. The acoustic calibration of the arrangement was made with a half-inch condenser microphone (Brüel & Kjær) placed in the presumed centre of the animal's head. The maximum obtainable sound pressure level was slightly different for the various test frequencies ranging from 95 to 110 dB SPL.

The electric conditioning shock was applied to the dog's pinnae via two clip electrodes. The shock stimulus consisted of faradic pulses presented at a rate of 100 per second, and continuously adjustable in intensity up to 50 volts. The acoustic conditions of the test room were not satisfactory and a limit was set below which no safe threshold determination could be expected (see under Test method).

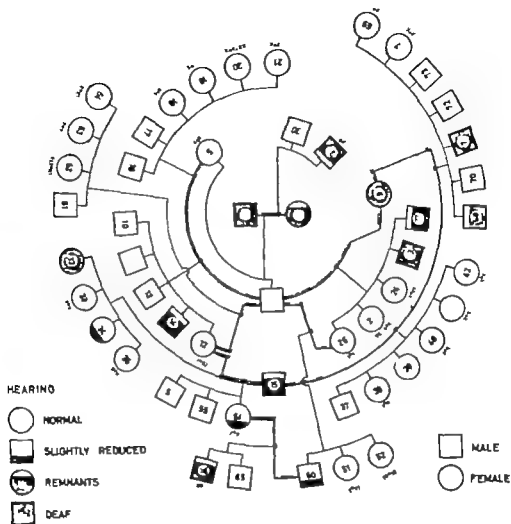


FIG. 1 Pedigree of the 89 dogs bred in the study.  $X$ -chromosome with normal allele;  $X$ -chromosome with defective allele not manifested phenotypically;  $X$ -chromosome with defective allele giving various degrees of deafness.



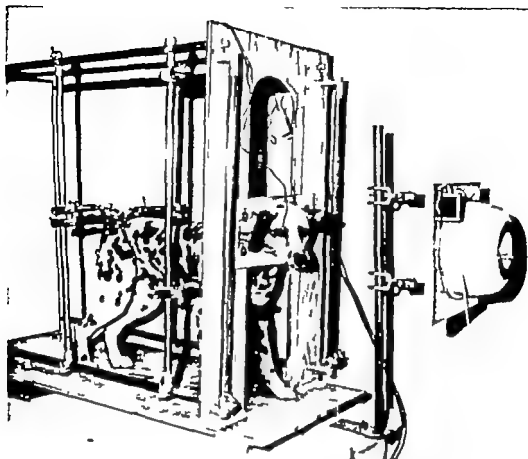


FIG. 2. Hearing test arrangement

### *Test method*

Attempts were made at first to test the hearing in the puppies when only 2-3 weeks old. In these experiments the lowest level of the test tones required to wake up the puppies was examined but the depth of sleep was found to introduce too great a variation. It was therefore necessary to rely upon conditioned audiometry. The conditioning procedure was as follows: with the dog placed in the stand and the shock electrodes fitted to the auricles, test tones were delivered at random until a level and frequency were found at which the dog seemed to be aware of the sound. The avoidance conditioning was carried out by presenting shock-terminated tones at this level until the dog showed signs of anxiety each time the tone was presented. The shock was then omitted and the intensity of the test tone decreased in 5 dB steps. The threshold for each tested frequency was taken as the lowest tone level at which the dog responded with anxiety whether in the form of whining, barking or general agitation. The conditioning procedure usually required 10-20 repetitions and the result showed generalization with respect to the different test tone frequencies.

This technique proved suitable for dogs from about 4 months of age and the first tests were therefore performed at this age.

The acoustic conditions of the test room with respect to reverberation and noise level were unsatisfactory. On the basis of noise measurements and hearing tests in dogs of other breeds with clinically normal hearing the lowest safe limit of the threshold test was set at 35 dB SPL, below which no attempts to determine thresholds were made. All the animals were tested at least twice at an interval of one week. Several of them required more than two tests before reliable results could be obtained. The main difficulty encountered was the tendency for some animals to disturb the test by whining and agitation, and the test conditions in this respect were much improved by the use of a tranquilizer.

Dogs nos. 65, 66, 68, 71, 72 and 73 were tested under the influence of Bulbocapnine (de Jong 1945) a drug that induces a cataleptic condition. The intention was to exploit this effect to reduce the interference due to general agitation. A dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of Bulbocapnine hydrochloride was administered by intravenous injection.

The six dogs tested under the influence of Bulbocapnine reacted somewhat differently during the hearing test. The initial reactions to the drug were fairly uniform—salivation and agitation at the end of injection, whining and tremor (in one case aggressive tendencies) after 10–15 minutes and catalepsy after 15–30 minutes. In two cases catalepsy appeared earlier and passed into a somnambulistic condition; these dogs were almost apathetic and reacted indistinctly to electric shock and tone; the dose was evidently too high. For four of the dogs the drug greatly facilitated the hearing test as the whining, barking or general agitation disappeared. In two of the dogs (65 and 66) the tests were impossible to carry out without this treatment.

### *Results of hearing tests*

All 53 dogs were tested by the described method. 38 responded to tones at all the applied frequencies down to a level of 35 dB SPL, and their hearing was thus regarded as clinically normal. Five dogs (nos. 1, 9, 23, 32, 31) did not react to tones of the maximum intensity—95–110 dB SPL—at frequencies 500–600 c/s. Seven dogs (nos. 2, 14, 15, 27, 31, 66, 68) had residual hearing and reacted only in the proximity of the maximum intensities and 3 dogs (nos. 34, 50, 54) responded to tones at 55–70 dB SPL. Typical audiograms are shown in Fig. 3.

### *Genetic interpretation*

Among dog breeders deafness is said to be quite common in the Dalmatian. A recessive mode of inheritance has been proposed but there would seem to be no scientific confirmation.

It is evident from Fig. 1 that the deafness cannot be ascribed to either a dominant or a recessive autosomal gene with complete penetrance. The

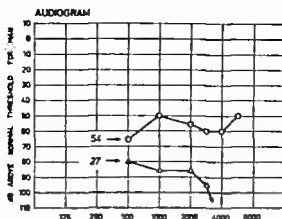


FIG. 3 Type 1 di metric recordl gs (dogs nos. 27 and 54)

fact the matings between defective parents gave both normal and defective offspring, as did matings between normal parents, is inconsistent with the classical monogenous pattern

The evidence would indicate the action of a sex linked gene. Among the total offspring 8 out of 23 (i.e. 0.35) of the males and 3 out of 26 of the females (0.12) had hearing loss. The difference is not significant ( $\chi^2 = 2.0$ ). Also interesting is the fact that no mating combination gave both deaf males and females.

If an X linked gene is assumed the results are consistent with theory only if this gene displays incomplete penetrance in the female heterozygotes. In the males, however the penetrance might well be complete. The proposed genotypes have been entered in Fig. 1 in accordance with this hypothesis. There is one mating that is in some measure inconsistent with the hypothesis. It has to be assumed that all female offspring of the mating between nos. 15 and 9 must be unmanifested carriers of the defect gene.

Since different degrees of hearing loss were observed, the gene must be assumed to display varying expressivity.

## MORPHOLOGIC EXAMINATION

### *Light microscopy*

The thoracic aortas of 5 dogs (nos. 1 9 14 23 24) with a hearing loss ranging from 90 dB to total deafness were perfused with Susa's Heidenhain fluid. The temporal bones were then removed, decalcified and embedded in celloidin. Serial sections were cut and stained with haematoxyline and eosin and by Mallory's method.

*Cochlear duct.* The lumen of the basal and second coil of all the totally deaf animals (nos. 1 9 23) had almost completely disappeared and Reissner's membrane was collapsed and adherent to the stria vascularis and the remnants of the organ of Corti (Fig. 4). In the animals with residual hearing (nos. 14 27) Reissner's membrane was collapsed but not adherent to the stria vascularis of the organ of Corti.

*Organ of Corti.* In most specimens the organ of Corti was completely destroyed in the basal and second coil and only remnants of hair cells were seen. The tunnel of Corti was collapsed and the tectorial membrane dislodged from the organ of Corti; this membrane has often collapsed and was found to be adherent to the limbus region (Figs. 5-7).

In the apical portions of the cochlea of the animals with residual hearing an apparently normal tunnel of Corti and distinct rows of outer hair cells were found.

*Stria vascularis.* The thickness of the stria vascularis and its vascularity were often greatly reduced. In the regions where the Reissner's membrane was attached to the stria this was thin and sclerotic but never completely absent.

*Spiral ganglion.* In some of the animals with a hearing loss of more than 90 dB there was a marked reduction in the number of ganglion cells of the second turn and only fibrous connective tissue was seen in this region. It is in these animals that the most advanced changes in the organ of Corti were found. All the other spiral ganglion cells were normal (Figs. 8 and 9).

*Vestibular labyrinth.* In all animals the sensory and ganglion cells of the saccules, utricles, semicircular canals and the ampullas were normal in appearance (Figs. 10 and 11). In some ears there was slight shrinkage of the saccular lumen.

*Endolymphatic sac.* In a few ears there were signs of hyperactivity of the endolymphatic sac, dense staining of the endolymph, and the lumen of the sac was filled with floating cells and debris.



FIG. 4 Light microscopical survey of totally deaf dog showing degeneration of the cochlear duct and coils. Dog no. 133

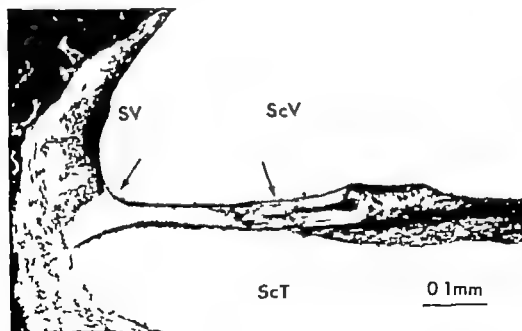


FIG. 5 Apical turn of dog with completely degenerated organ of Corti. The stria vascularis is thin and sclerotic (St) and thin, sclerotic membranes (arrows) are attached to the stria vascularis and the collapsed organ of Corti. ScV: Scala vestibuli; ScT: scala tympani. 130

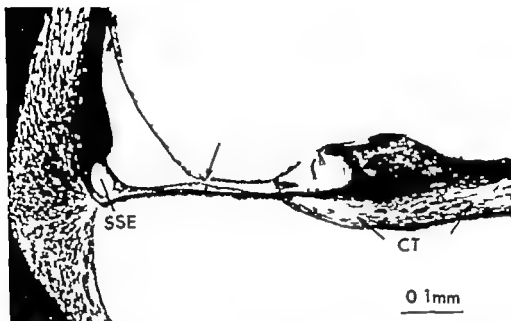


FIG. 6 Second coil of dog no. 1 with poorly differentiated epithelium in the place of the organ of Corti (arrow). Only the lamina propria with collapsed tectorial membrane is still recognizable. The inner spiral nerve cells have completely disappeared (SSE). Nerve fibres running through the habenula perforata cannot be found in this coil. Only fibrous connective tissue is present (CT). Compare the same region of the spiral coil, Fig. 5 and basal coil, Fig. 7.

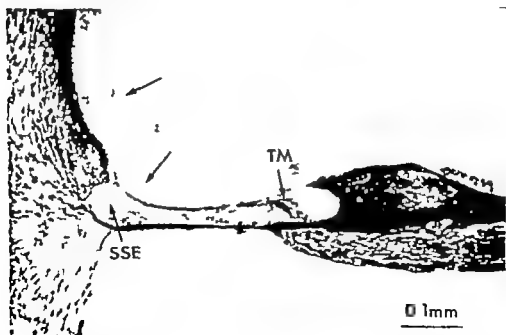


FIG. 7 Basal coil of dog no. 1 displaying the same changes as the spiral coil (Fig. 6). A massive degeneration of the sulcus spiralis externus (SSE) is found together with collapsed tectorial membrane (TM). There is fibrous interstitial tissue in the peripheral space close to the 'Reissner' membrane (arrow).

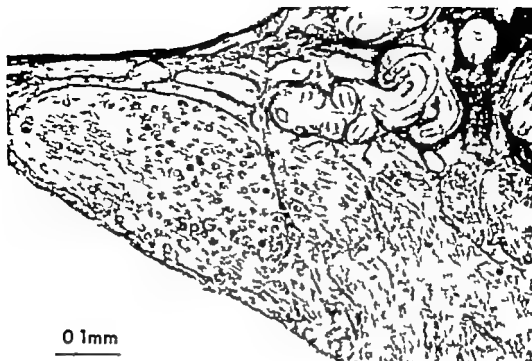


FIG. 8 Detail of normal parasympathetic ganglion cell from the basal coil of dog no. 1 (SpG)  $\times 150$

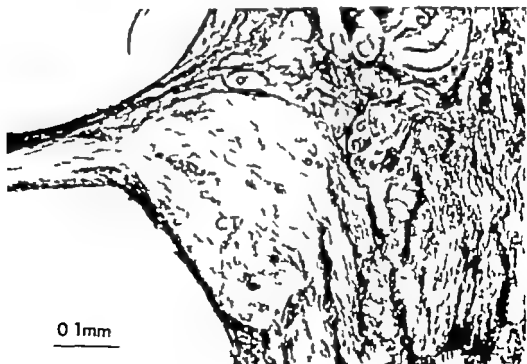


FIG. 9 Detail of parasympathetic ganglion cell from the second coil of dog no. 1. The ganglion cells have disappeared and only fibrous connective tissue is present (CT)  $\times 150$

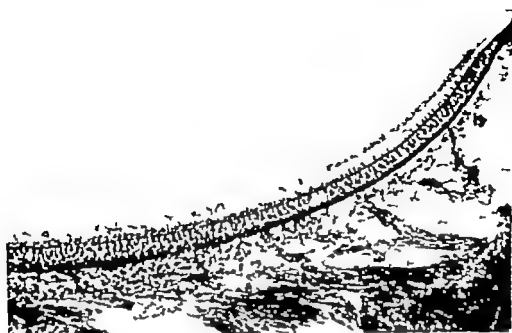


FIG 10 The macula utriculi of dog no. 1. The sensory epithelium with cristae and the connecting nerve fibres are normal. 150



FIG 11 The crista ampullaris from dog no. 1 horizontal ampulla. The sensory epithelium of all the ampullae, even those of the totally deaf animals, were normal. 150.





FIG. 12. Dog no. 14 with a hearing loss of 90 dB the organ of Corti of the left cochlea was completely degenerated. In the second coil, illustrated here, only remnants of hair cells are present and the stria vascularis is thin and sclerotic. There is no edema or shrinkage of the labyrinth, as illustrated by the normal position of Reissner's membrane. 150

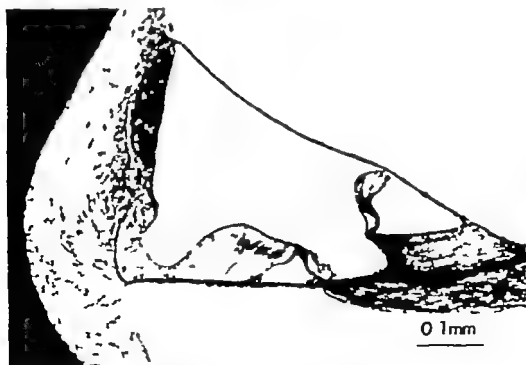


FIG. 13. Dog no. 14 right side, 2nd coil. This ear appears to be almost normal (cf. Fig. 12). All the hair cells are present and the bundles of sensory hairs can be seen. The stria vascularis and Reissner's membrane are apparently normal. 150

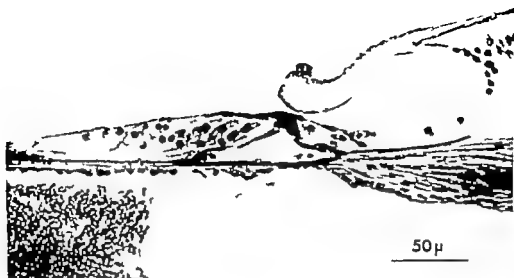


FIG. 14 Dog no. 27 basal coil. Although this animal recorded only residual hearing (cf. Fig. 3) the organ of Corti appeared to be normal under the light microscope (40 $\times$ ).

*Slight damage to the labyrinth* In two dogs (nos. 14 and 2) one ear showed complete degeneration and the other slight damage (Figs. 12 and 13). The hair cells of the organ of Corti could be recognized in all the turns, although slightly distorted, and there was apparently no degeneration of the stria vascularis or the cochlear spiral ganglion cells (Fig. 14). The vestibular part of the labyrinth in these ears was normal.

#### *Electron microscopy*

In four animals (nos. 2, 31, 32, 34) with a hearing loss ranging from 35 dB to total deafness the temporal bones were removed under general anesthesia. The middle ear and the round and oval windows were opened and the cochlea was perfused with osmium tetroxide solution through a hole in the apex. The specimens were dehydrated and embedded in Epon epoxy resin by the method of Luft (1961). The labyrinths of these animals were removed with a small rotating saw under an operating microscope; the various turns of the cochlea were mounted for electron microscopy and thin sections were cut with an LKB-Ultratome. These were stained with uranyl acetate and lead acetate by Watson (1958) and Karnovsky's (1961) methods. For purposes of orientation 1  $\mu$  sections were cut with an Ultratome, stained with toluidine blue and examined under the light microscope.

Owing to the extensive degeneration of the organ of Corti of the animals with a hearing loss of 35 dB or more the electron microscopic study of

these ears did not yield more information than that obtained by light microscopy.

In one dog (no 34) with a hearing loss of 55-70 dB the changes in the hair cells described below were found. One ear was completely degenerated but the other appeared to be almost normal under the light microscope but the electron microscope disclosed severely degenerated hair cells.

*Outer hair cells* Most of the outer hair cells displayed severe oedematous vacuolar degeneration of the cytoplasm sometimes with rupture of the cell walls (Fig 15). The mitochondria exhibited various stages of degeneration such as swollen membranes, absence of the mitochondrial cristae and sometimes, rupture of their outer membranes. The ground substance of the cytoplasm was "vitreous" in appearance and there were few ribosomes (Fig 16). Their nuclei were swollen and irregular in shape and there was a marked reduction of the chromatin content (Fig 17). Intact cuticles with attached sensory hairs were still present in spite of the severe degeneration of the cytoplasm and its organelles.

*Inner hair cells* The inner hair cells were also degenerated although to a much lesser extent. There were an accumulation of the vesicles in the cytoplasm, early signs of degeneration of the mitochondria, swollen mitochondrial cristae and changes in volume (Fig 18). The nuclei were rounded and normal in size but the chromatin content was low. In these cells the sensory hairs and cuticular portion were apparently normal (Fig 19).

*Nerves and nerve endings* No efferent nerve endings were found. The afferent nerve endings were slightly swollen but most of the mitochondria were normal in appearance (Fig 20). The nerve fibers of the spiral bundle were present in the tunnel of Corti.

*Stria vascularis and Reissner's membrane* The stria vascularis seemed to be poorly developed with sparse capillaries and few cells of the dark type (Fig 21). The protrusions from these cells, however, were seen to extend into the capillary region in the deeper part of the stria. In some parts of the stria vascularis dense inclusion bodies were found and there was an accumulation of an extremely dense amorphous material in the zone of contact between the stria cells and Reissner's membrane (Fig 22). Often adherent to the stria cells down to the region to the external sulcus cells, this membrane itself appeared not to be impaired (Fig 21).

*Supporting structures* In the advanced stages of degeneration the cells of Deiters were severely degenerated, with oedematous cytoplasm and swollen, disintegrating mitochondria. Although collapsed, the fibrillar content of the pillar cells was normal.

*Basilar membrane* The basilar membrane was apparently normal but the vas spirale was not demonstrable.

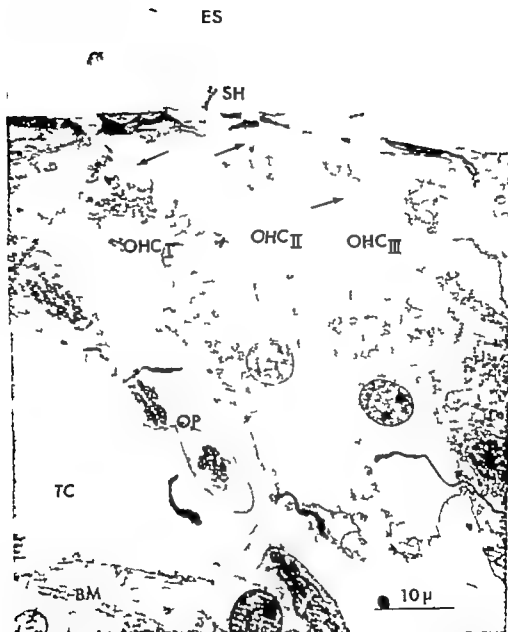


FIG. 18. Electron microscopic survey of outer hair-cell region, dog no. 34. The three rows of outer hair cells (OHC I-III) and the outer pillar cell can be seen (OP). TC, Tunnel of Corti; BM, basilar membrane; ES, endolymphatic space. Note the heavily calcified cytoplasm of the outer hair cells (arrows).  $\times 2000$ .



FIG. 16. Detail from Fig. 15, dog. 34 demonstrating the heavily vesiculated cytoplasm (Ves) of a hair cell (1st row) almost devoid of ribosomes and filled with degenerating mitochondria (2nd row). 28,000



FIG. 17 A common finding in the degenerating hair cells, dog no. 34 is irregular nuclei (N) with low chromatin content (arrow). Degenerating mitochondria are also present (M). 22,000



FIG. 18. The inner hair cell (IHC) dog no. 34 appears to be almost normal, although the external hair cells are degenerated. The nucleus (Nu) is not irregular and the cytoplasm is evenly distributed. The sensory hairs (SH) are normal. The tectorial membrane (TC) is present. The tectorial membrane is normal. The inner pillar cells are present (IP). The tectorial membrane is Corti (TC)  $\times 3500$ .



FIG. 18 Detail of Fig. 18, dog no. 34 showing the cuticle (C) with sensory hairs (SH) of the hair cell. In this region (Ves) there is slight incipient calcification of the cytoplasm and slight swelling of the mitochondria with separation of the mitochondrial cristae (arrow). Dense bodies with irregular myelin-like degenerative patterns are also seen (DB).  $\times 23,000$



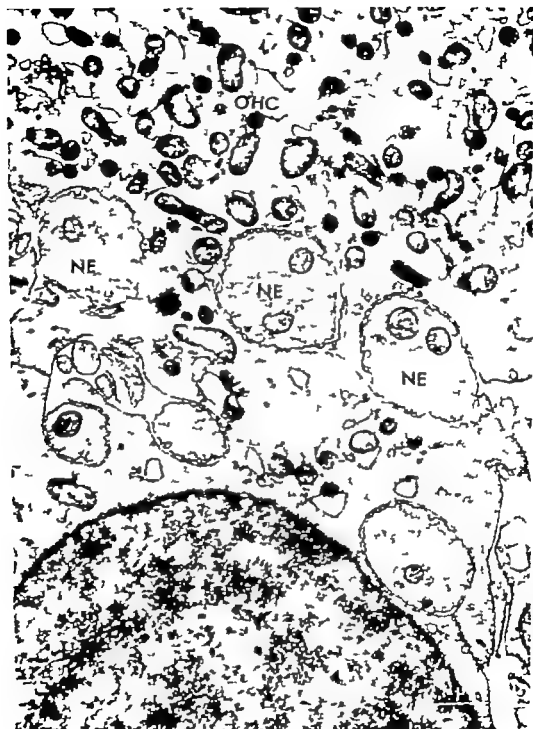


FIG. 20 The basal part of heavily degenerated outer hair cell (OHC) dog no. 34 E en in this advanced stage there are afferent nerve endings (NE with mitochondria) of almost normal appearance. The cell of Deiters cell is normal (Xm 18,000)

# Hearing Impairment in Dalmatian Dog



FIG. 21 The trisaccular part of dog no. 31 is thin and developed. It has few dark cells (DC) and apparently few large supranuclear cells (the pillar cells depleted (Cap) or the large cells occupied by red blood cells (RBC)).

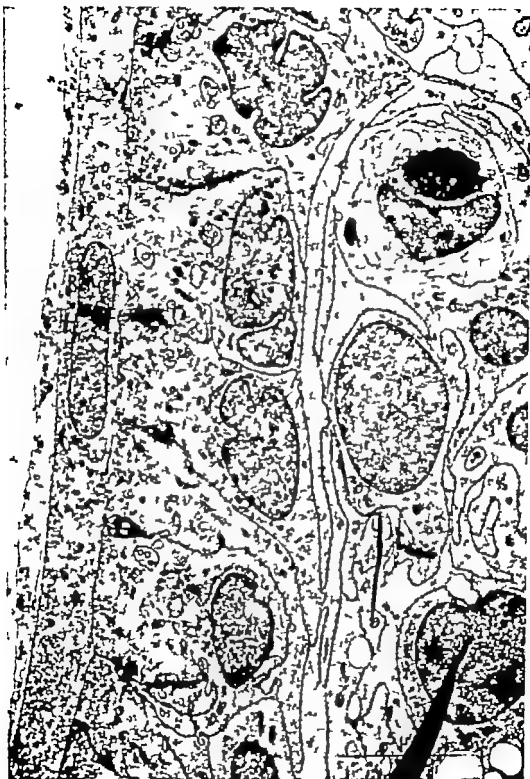


FIG. 22. Rissner's membrane (RM) is collapsed on to the tri-laminar structure, and there is dense morphological material in the pars intermedia. Rissner's membrane itself is normal. In this part of the tri-laminar structure there are no dark cells. Dog no 34. 8000

## DISCUSSION

To examine the mode of inheritance of the hearing impairments, the dogs were paired in all combinations of affected and normal animals. The results strongly indicate the presence of a sex linked mode of inheritance with a varying penetrance and expressivity. If the sex-linked factor is disregarded, there were no obvious differences from man here by far the most common combination, namely children with impaired hearing and normal parents, is represented in the dogs by the pairings 4 × 5 and 4 × 26 (Fig. 1). To judge from the different degrees of severity at any particular age it would seem that in the dogs, too, there was a variable expressivity of the genes.

Attempts to determine the hearing of the dogs within the first weeks of life with various tests yielded no consistent results. Not until 4 months were the animals mature enough for conventional conditioning audiometry to be used. This loss of time is regrettable for it makes it impossible to establish whether the hearing organ is fully developed before the onset of the process of degeneration, and therefore prevents a thorough audiometric study of the rapidly progressing early hearing deterioration. Future analyses, which will thus have to be conducted on older dogs, will apparently be most time-consuming, since, as in the case of man, the progress in the later stages will presumably be fairly slow and highly sporadic.

In all except two dogs—nos. 14 and 27—there were injuries that were visible under the light microscope and that varied in extent with the hearing loss. For instance the two totally deaf dogs (nos. 1 and 23) showed a complete degeneration of all the cell elements of the organ of Corti.

In the hearing measurements the loudspeaker was placed in front of the head, so that in reality only the hearing of the best ear was measured. The consequence of this procedure is evident from the results for two dogs (nos. 14 and 2) with a hearing loss of 95–110 dB, where the light microscope disclosed total degeneration of the cochlear part of the labyrinth on one side but less severe damage to the organ of Corti on the other—an asymmetry reminiscent of the results reported by Bosher & Hallpike on deaf cats (1965). It is possible however that cochleas that appear to be normal under the light microscope might still have cytologic changes. This is illustrated by dog no. 34 where a greatly vesiculated cytoplasm, together with disintegrated mitochondria and nuclear changes were found in specimens where light microscopic sections gave no definite indication of degeneration. From the electron microscopic findings—severe degeneration of the outer hair cells but practically normal internal hair cells—it is

evident that the latter cells must have been responsible for the tone perception in this dog.

The cytoplasmic changes disclosed by electron microscopy including swollen vacuolar cytoplasm and degenerating mitochondria, and the absence of efferent nerve endings bear a close similarity to those found by Hikuchi & Hilding (1965) in the defective organ of Corti of shaker I mice. The nuclear changes in the mice were however less marked than those in the dogs. The vesicular type of degeneration of the cytoplasm and the nuclear changes in some measure resemble the late stage of degeneration in kanamycin intoxication of the organ of Corti (Lundquist & Wersäll 1966) where an observed blockage of the protein synthesis was probably due to degeneration of the ribosomes.

All the earlier investigators have found atrophy of the stria vascularis. In the early stages of degeneration the stria vascularis appeared not to be fully matured, there being poorly developed dark cells and capillary network. The cell cytoplasm however was apparently normal, with numerous mitochondria and pinocytotic vesicles close to the endolymphatic surfaces. It is interesting to note that the vas spirale below the basilar membrane was absent.

An interesting electron microscopic finding in many animals was that the degeneration of the hair cells in the organ of Corti was complete in the second coil while residues of such cells were found in the apical and basal coils. The light microscope disclosed a marked reduction in the number of ganglion cells in the second turn and the presence of fibrous connective tissue in this region. The observations point to general destruction of hair and ganglion cells and stria vascularis in a definite region of the second coil. A similar histologic pattern has been demonstrated in guinea pigs with genetic hearing loss—waltzers (Lurie 1941).

The audiometric analysis is complicated by the fact that the normal hearing threshold for the dog is not known. For this reason as a reference in figure 3 the human threshold was used, as determined under similar conditions (ISO R 226). As it is unlikely that there are any critical differences within the relevant frequency range, this reference may probably be regarded as tentatively acceptable.

In general the audiometric findings in the dogs is not inconsistent with the location of the centre of degeneration in the organ of Corti, as is indicated by the histological examination. Nor is there evidence conflicting with the view that in an early stage this hearing defect may have had the basin shaped appearance so common in hereditary hearing impairment in man. This frequently begins in the range 1000–2000 Hz and then progresses, via a rather flat loss curve into a general high tone loss of an audiometrically fairly unspecific nature.

Against the background of these histologic and audiometric observations it is conceivable that this type of genetic hearing impairments has a similar origin in animals and man. The typical histologic and audiometric pattern

differs distinctly from that of the usual exogenous damage which is first found audiometrically only in a higher frequency range and where the organic changes are encountered in a more basal part of the cochlea,—the first coil

The explanation of this is probably to be found in the embryonic development of the cochlea which most likely begins in the described region, to extend both apically and basally. This course of development finds support in histologic observations on the rat (Lorente de Nó, 1933) and cat (Bosher & Hallpike, 1964) histologic and audiometric studies on the opossum (Larsell *et al.* 1935, 1944) electrophysiologic studies on the rabbit (Ånggård, 1965) and audiometric analysis in man (Johansson, Wedenberg & Westin, 1964). The reason for the degeneration beginning in this area is obscure. It may be associated with the fact that it is here that the cells first attain a high degree of differentiation which may be a prerequisite for the initiation of the degenerative process.

## SUMMARY

The objects of the study reported in this paper were

(i) To breed a genetically well defined group of hereditary deaf Dalmatian dogs in order to study the mode of inheritance.

(ii) To perform hearing tests and carry out histological investigations of the inner ear and to compare audiometric and histologic findings with respect to the site and extent of the defects

In the resultant group consisting of 53 dogs, five were totally deaf seven had hearing remnants and three moderate impairments, as determined by conditioning audiometry performed from an age of about 4 months. The genetic analysis shows that the deafness cannot be ascribed either to a dominant or a recessive gene with complete penetration. It rather indicates the action of a sex linked gene with varying expressivity. Apart from this, the mode of inheritance seems to correspond to the most common combination in man i.e. normal hearing parents-deaf offspring.

The audiometric patterns show a flat or gradual loss. In the moderate cases a tendency towards a basin shaped curve can be seen.

The histologic findings are rather consistent with the audiometric observations. In some cases, where only minor changes could be seen with light microscopy the electron microscopy did disclose severe intracytoplasmatic degeneration of the outer hair cells. In the moderate impairments a total degeneration of the hair cells and ganglion cells in the second turn was observed, the destruction, however being much less pronounced in the apical and basal turn of the cochlea.

This audiometric and histologic pattern differs distinctly from that of the usual exogenous damage which is first found audiometrically in the highest frequency range and where the organic changes are encountered in the extreme basal part of the first coil. The explanation is probably to be found in the embryonic development of the cochlea which most likely begins in the described region, extending both apically and basally. The reason for the degeneration beginning in this area may be associated with the fact that it is here that the cells first attain a high degree of differentiation which may be a prerequisite for the initiation of the degenerative process.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This investigation is supported by grants nos B67 12x 720-02 and B67-14x 742-02 from the Swedish Medical Research Council Harald and Greta Jeansson's Stiftelse Johan and Therese Anderssons Minne and the National Institutes of Health, USA grant no NB 03956-04-03



# REFERENCES

- A THAY, F. 1950 Histologic picture of inherited nerve deafness in man and animals. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 51 232.
- BANKS, R., 1933: Correlation between white coat colour, blue eyes and deafness in cats. *J. Gen. Hyg.* 27 407.
- BOSHER, S. K. and HALLPETER, C. S. 1945 Observations on the histological features, development and pathogenesis of the inner ear degeneration of the deaf white cat. *Proc. Royal Soc. B* 162 147.
- GRÜNKEMER, H., HALLPETER, C. S., and LUDOW, A. 1940 Observation on the structure, development and electrical reactions of the internal ear of the shaker-I mouse (*mus musculus*). *Proc. Royal Soc. London*, 129 154.
- HUDSON, W. R., DUNN, N. C., and RUBIN, J. 1962: Hereditary deafness in the dalmatian dog. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 75, 213.
- JONATHAN, B., WEDENBERG, E., and WESTER, B., 1964: Measurement of the response by the human fetus. *Acta Otolaryng.* 57 188.
- JOJO, H. H. 1945 *Experiment in Cytology*. William & Wilkins Co., Baltimore.
- KAROVITZ, M. J. 1961: Simple method for "staining with lead" at high pH for electron microscopy. *J. Biophys. Biochem. Cytol.* 11 720.
- KIKUCHI, K. and HILGUND, D. 1963: The development of the organ of Corti in the mouse. *Acta Otolaryng.* 60 207.
- LARSELL, O. McCRAVE, E., JR., and ZIMMERMAN, A. A., 1935 Morphological and functional development of the membranous labyrinth in the possum. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 23 93.
- LARSELL, O. McCRAVE, E., JR., and LARSELL, J. F. 1944 The development of the organ of Corti in relation to the inception of hearing. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 40 223 1944 *Trans. Am. Acad. Ophthalmol. Otolaryng.* 237.
- LORENTE DE NÓ, R. 1933 Anatomy of VIII nerve. *Laryngoscope* 43 1.
- LUFT, J. H., 1961 Improvement in epoxy resin embedding methods. *J. Biophys. Biochem. Cytol.* 9 409.
- LEADQUIST, P.-O. and WERRELL, J. 1966 Kanamycin-induced changes in cochlear hair cells of the guinea pig. *J. Ill. Res.* 72 848.
- LURIE, M. H., 1941 The whistling (chreling) guinea pig. *Am. J. Otol. Rhinol. and Laryngol.* 50 112.
- 1948 The membranous labyrinth in the congenitally deaf collie and dalmatian dog. *Laryngoscope* 58 279.
- MIKAKI, B. O. and RUBIN, R. J. 1964 Hearing degeneration in shaker-I mouse. Correlation of physiological observations with behavioral responses and with cochlear anatomy. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 80 418.
- WATSON, M. L., 1958 Staining tissue sections for electron microscopy with heavy metals. *J. Biophys. Biochem. Cytol.* 4 478.
- WIGGAND, L. 1963 A electrophysiological study of the development of cochlear functions in the rabbit. *Act. Otolaryng. Suppl.* 203.







PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell's Boktryckeri Abtelsning*

UPPSALA 1948

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 233

**NEURO OTOLOGICAL STUDIES  
ON BRAIN INJURED EX SERVICEMEN**

*Follow-up of 256 cases*

**SEPPO KIRJAVAINEN**

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVAYGORN 14, STOCKHOLM NO**



NEURO-OTOLOGICAL STUDIES ON  
BRAIN INJURED EX-SERVICEMEN  
FOLLOW-UP OF 256 CASES





FROM THE OTOLARYNGOLOGICAL HOSPITAL, UNIVERSITY OF HELSINKI  
(HEAD PROFESSOR URPO SIIRALA, M.D) AND FROM THE INSTITUTE FOR THE  
REHABILITATION OF BRAIN INJURED VETERANS (HEAD: PROFESSOR EERO  
HILBOM, M.D) HELSINKI, FINLAND

---

ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

SUPPLEMENTUM 255

NEURO OTOLOGICAL STUDIES ON  
BRAIN INJURED EX SERVICEMEN

Follow up of 256 cases

*by*

SEPPO KIRJAVAINEN

PRINTED IN FINLAND 1

PAPERI JA PAINOTUOTE

HELSINKI 1960

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

*Professor Urpo Sürälä, M.D., head of the Otolaryngological Hospital, University of Helsinki, has provided me with excellent opportunities for the conduct of my research project. I wish to thank him for this and for his support in the course of my study*

*I would like to thank Docent Jankko S. Lounus neuro-otologist at the Otolaryngological Hospital, University of Helsinki. His was the inspiration for the present study. He has guided and advised me throughout with a generous disregard for his time and trouble.*

*My thanks are due also to Professor Eero Hillbom, M.D. chief of the Institute for the Rehabilitation of Brain Injured Veterans. My material consists in fact of patients from his hospital. His advice has been of great value to me in planning the study*

*Miss Aino Aikupainen M.A., has given me great help in collecting the necessary literature and compiling the references, for which I am grateful.*

*I wish to thank the nurses of the Audiological Outpatient Department of the Otolaryngological Hospital, University of Helsinki, who helped me with the examinations of the patients.*

*Mr Erkki Järvinen, M.A., did the statistical calculations and graphs, for which I thank him.*

*My manuscript was translated into English by Miss Paavikki Ojanen, M.A., and Mr L. A. Keyworth, M.A. (Cantab) whom I thank.*

Helsinki February 1968

*Seppo Kirjavainen*



# CONTENTS

I	INTRODUCTION	9
II	REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE	10
	A. Hearing damage	10
	B. Vestibular damage	14
	C. War injuries	19
III	PURPOSE OF THE INVESTIGATION	20
IV	MATERIAL	21
V	METHODS OF INVESTIGATION	24
	A. Early symptoms	24
	B. Present symptoms	24
	C. Otoscopy and clinical inspection of the nose mouth, pharynx, nasopharynx and larynx	24
	D. Audiologic studies	24
	E. General neuro-otological tests	25
	F. Vestibular special studies	26
	1. Spontaneous and postural nystagmus	26
	2. Caloric test	26
VI	RESULTS	28
	A. Early symptoms	28
	B. Present symptoms	28
	C. The otoscopic finding and clinical examination of the nose mouth, pharynx, nasopharynx and larynx	29
	D. Audiologic studies	29
	E. Results of the general neuro-otological tests	35
	F. Vestibular special studies	35
	1. Spontaneous and postural nystagmus	35
	2. Results of the caloric test	36
VII	OTHER REASONS EXTRA TO TRAUMA FOR HEARING AND VESTIBULAR DEFECTS	42
	A. Factors affecting hearing before the wound	42
	B. Injuries after the wound	42
	C. Diseases	43
	D. Ototoxic drugs	43
VIII	CORRELATION BETWEEN THE NEURO-OTOLOGICAL STATUS AND LOCALISATION OF THE INJURY	44
IX	DISCUSSION	46
X	SUMMARY	51
	REFERENCES	53



# I INTRODUCTION

Wartime skull injuries differ in type from peacetime injuries in many ways. Traffic accidents are the commonest causes of skull brain injuries in times of peace. Traumas that originate in this way are usually injuries of concussion-contusion type. Penetrating injuries are less frequent and generally different in character from traumas sustained in war. The incidence of wartime open perforating and penetrating injuries is high. Bullets and shell splinters cause considerable tissue damage owing to their high kinetic energy. In addition, shell splinters because of their shape often have lacerating effect on tissues. On the other hand, tissue damage caused by bullets in particular may be much more topical than in closed commotion-contusion traumas. Skull traumas which resemble those originating in times of peace naturally occur also during wars.

Quite a number of studies on skull injuries have been published. Detailed audiometric studies have been conducted. The introduction especially of electronystagmography has made it possible to perform more accurate vestibular studies. The majority of the investigations have, however, concerned traumas sustained in peacetime.

Attention was paid back in World War I to the high incidence of hearing defects in war wounded. The literature of that time contains hearing studies and vestibular studies of patients with head wounds. However the studies are strikingly imprecise. Hearing examinations, for instance, were done by studying speech and whisper hearing. More reliable audiometric studies were performed on the wounded of World War II. Nevertheless, vestibular studies have received less consideration. Therefore a neuro-otological study of persons sustaining brain damage in war seemed to be indicated, especially as good facilities were available for its performance.



## II REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

As the studies on auditory and vestibular lesions caused by war injuries are relatively few in number the review of the literature deals chiefly with hearing and vestibular lesions caused by skull damage in general.

### A Hearing Damage

Skull injuries are known to cause auditory lesions. Hearing damage was established in 33 per cent of the patients in the large skull trauma series presented by *Alexander and Scholl* (1938). In the material of *Schuknecht and Darison* (1956) hearing damage was established in 50 per cent of the patients who had suffered primary loss of consciousness because of the trauma. Impaired hearing as the result of skull trauma was established in 45 per cent of the patients constituting the post traumatic encephalopathy material of *Lumio and Aho* (1962). The interval between the trauma and the examination varied in this series from six months to 12 years. *Ey* (1966) reported hearing damage in 44 per cent of his extensive series of 1 000 patients. The examination was made an average of three years after the trauma. At a rough estimate, then, about a half of the persons with skull injuries who are examined suffer from hearing damage. The variations in the different series are readily understandable when it is considered that the nature of the material varies considerably with the different authors. All the materials mentioned consisted of traumas sustained during times of peace.

In their study of 1954 *Piquet and Decroix* stated that a sensori-neural hearing deficiency usually originates as the sequela of skull injury even if there is no fracture of the labyrinthine capsule. They also encountered combined forms fairly frequently. In contrast, a purely conductive hearing impairment was rare. A hearing defect may be manifested as only a slight notch at 4000 Hz. However a skull injury often causes a more marked impairment of hearing over a wider range. Yet, the maximum hearing deficiency is usually established for higher tones. The hearing curve of the pure tone audiogram is thus usually of the descending type (*Schuknecht and Darison* 1956, *Proctor et al.* 1956, *Lumio and Aho* 1962). *Kecht* (1965) established instances of profound hearing loss in both ears or severe hearing deficiency as the result of even a relatively slight blunt skull trauma. The trauma was mostly a blow on the occiput. Taking everything into consideration, the audiogram produced by a skull injury may vary considerably. Indeed, *Manzini and Acella* (1957) stated that there is no typical audiogram for skull trauma.

Skull injury mostly produces an inner ear lesion, but the middle ear may also be damaged. Middle ear lesions usually originate from fracture of the temporal bone but the middle ear may be damaged also by other types of skull trauma. *Sakai* (1911) published studies of auditory ossicles damaged as a result of a skull injury. Many investigators today have established lesions in the middle ear especially in the auditory ossicles, in connection with skull traumas. These injuries are manifested most commonly as displacements of the long process of the incus, but every now and then fractures of the auditory ossicles, above all the stapes, are also encountered. Ruptures of the ligaments of the auditory ossicles are also common (*Robinson* 1961 *Arraga and Paparella* 1964 *Hammond* 1964 *Does and Bottema* 1965, *Kley* 1966).

Ever since the beginning of the 20th century the pathoanatomical reasons have been sought for deafness of inner ear type caused by skull injuries. Opinions have differed appreciably. Most studies have been on experimental animals, but temporal bone from dead human beings has also been used, bone from men and women who had sustained during life a skull trauma resulting in permanent deafness. The inadequacy of the methods used has certainly contributed to the divergent investigation results. Modern methods using electron microscopic studies could have given more reliable and consistent results.

Hemorrhages into the perilymph were regarded by *Nager* (1907) and *Warc* (1910) as the primary reason. Connective tissue and bone originated in consequence of the bleeding. They regarded the degenerative changes in Corti's organ as the result of this connective tissue and bone formation. *Stenger* (1909) established hemorrhages in the scala tympani, especially in the vicinity of the round window. He encountered hemorrhages also in the cochlear and vestibular nerve. The histologic finding by *Theodore* (1910) was a prevalence of atrophic-degenerative changes in the nerve elements, first and foremost in the spiral ganglion. Corti's organ was less damaged. Many investigators have considered laceration of nerve fibres of the eighth cranial nerve to be a probable sequela of trauma (*Ulrich* 1926, *Grove* 1939 *Eckert* 1948).

Damage to the finer labyrinthine structure was considered to be a primary event by *Wittmaack* (1952). He established the most severe changes in Corti's ganglion of the second turn, whereas severe lesions were more rare in the region of the first turn. *Wittmaack* believed that the changes were caused by pressure which originates in the labyrinthine fluid.

The damaging effect of labyrinthine fluid which is suddenly set in motion suggested by *Schulnecht Neff* and *Pertmann* (1951). They noted only a few hair cells in mild cases in their experiments on cats. Destruction of hair cells and degeneration of Deiter cells were seen in cases of medium severity. Corti's organ was totally destroyed in the most severe cases. Animals decapitated only a few days after the trauma displayed degeneration of nerve terminal which was also seen in animals sacrificed immediately after the trauma. The most severe changes were encountered in the upper part of the basal turn which corresponds to the high frequency. This theory was considered correct also by *Proctor* (1955). It has in fact gained the most support today.

A great many investigators attribute sensori neural deafness most commonly to the traumatization of an end organ or auditory nerve. Of course, a more central affection may also be involved. Zange (1915) for example believed that a skull injury may lead to a hearing defect without peripheral trauma in consequence of damage to the cochlear nucleus or more central nerve fibres. He had encountered traumatic hemorrhages in war injured most frequently just in the brain stem region. Lesion of the brain stem was regarded by Kecht (1965) too as a potential reason for hardness of hearing of inner-ear type. However it has been contended in recent times that lesions of the central nervous system often do not exert any appreciable effect on the hearing threshold, but that they do affect speech discrimination (Fowler *et al.* 1966, Benitez *et al.* 1966)

The lesion in a sensori-neural hearing defect may in any case be located at a different level. It may be found in the end organ, in the spiral ganglia, the nerve trunk, cochlear nuclei or central fibres from nuclei to the auditory cortex.

Dix, Hallpike and Hood (1948) came to the conclusion that positive recruitment is a sign of a lesion of Corti's organ. Present research concurs with this view. Fowler's test is regarded today as the most reliable test for distinguishing between a cochlear and retrocochlear lesion. Partial or complete recruitment is established usually in end organ lesions, while absence of recruitment suggests a retrocochlear lesion. However the use of Fowler's tests is considerably limited by the condition that the hearing threshold difference between the ears must be sufficiently great and that the fellow ear must not be deaf.

Nerve lesions often produce a discrepancy between the threshold for pure tones and the threshold for speech discrimination, in other words the speech threshold is not proportionate to the threshold for pure tones. Discrimination score deficiency is also encountered in these lesions as a rule, that is the patient's maximal discrimination score does not amount to 100 per cent. Discrepancy is usually not encountered in end organ lesions and the patient's discrimination score is good (Harbert and Young 1964, Fowler and Altmann 1966, Benitez *et al.* 1966, Eschel *et al.* 1966)

Adaptation means the temporary change of the hearing threshold to a new level as the result of tonal stimulation. Pathologic adaptation has been taken as a sign of different diseases. Some claim that it signifies end-organ deafness, others that it denotes a hearing impairment of nervous origin or a central hearing defect. However most investigators today consider it to be an indication of hearing deficiency of the eighth cerebral nerve or a central hearing defect. For instance, Benitez *et al.* (1966) generally established marked adaptation in lesions of the first neuron and the nerve trunk. They also demonstrated moderate adaptation in both ears in brain stem lesions. Similarly they noted moderate adaptation in the contralateral ear in auditory cortical lesions. It was also reported by Palva (1964) and Palva and Palva (1966) in their studies that pathologic adaptation was much more rare in end-organ diseases than in central lesions and those of the eighth cerebral nerve. However they encountered moderate adaptation in both cochlear and retrocochlear lesions, though not of diagnostic significance. Hence too categorical conclusions should not be drawn from the degree of adaptation. Traumatization of the corpus trapezoides of the brain stem can cause

bilateral hardness of hearing. Lesions higher up the brain stem or in the midbrain may cause hearing loss in the contralateral ear. This applies especially to lesions of the lemniscus lateralis. The hearing defect is manifested chiefly as a deterioration of speech discrimination. Pure-tone hearing function is usually preserved. The threshold for pure tones has been found to remain normal also in auditory cortical lesions. The principal auditory impairment encountered in lesions of the central nervous system appears to occur in speech discrimination, localisation of the voice and auditory images (Fowler and Altmann 1966, Benitez et al. 1966).

The localisation of a trauma usually requires several tests. Fowler's test is regarded as the most reliable, although it too has been found to be positive in 1-2 cases out of 10 in retrocochlear lesions (Portmann 1964). In addition to the methods already mentioned, Bekésy audiometry with both continuous and interrupted sound is employed for localisation of the lesion (Jerger 1962). Another is the SISI test in which the patient's ability to perceive small changes in intensity is tested. Perception of small intensity changes is often associated with cochlear diseases (Jerger 1962).

No direct relationship has been established between the severity of the skull injury and the neuro-otological finding (Kecht 1965). Fractures of the temporal bone, however constitute something of an exception. They almost always damage hearing. About 80 per cent of temporal bone fractures are longitudinal (Schuknecht and Harrison 1956). Most of them originate from a blow to the temporal or parietal region. The fracture line passes along the anterior margin of the pyramid and then across the roof of the middle ear or the mastoid cells. The tympanic membrane is often ruptured and there is bleeding from the ear. Displacement of the incus, fracturing of the auditory ossicles and laceration of the ligaments are sometimes seen in the middle ear. A deformity develops occasionally in the external auditory canal. Facial paresis occurs in less than 25 per cent of the cases. Conductive hearing loss originates from injury to the tympanic membrane and middle ear. Schuknecht (1950) and Proctor et al. (1956) found, however, that mere conductive hearing loss was rare in a fractured ear. There is always also some degree of sensori-neural deafness. Some sensori-neural hearing loss is often established in the contralateral ear as well. As regards improvement of hearing, recovery of middle-ear type hearing loss is often good. For sensori-neural hearing loss the prognosis is the same as for other inner ear lesions caused by skull injury. Mild cases showing only a minor notch at 4000 Hz may be cured. A great proportion, however remains stationary and makes no progress (Müller 1965).

Transverse fractures of the temporal bone are much less common and generally originate from a trauma to the occipital region. The fracture line runs at right angles to the pyramid via the vestibule and the internal acoustic meatus. The facial nerve is injured in c. 50 per cent of the cases and there is usually damage in the region of the ganglion geniculi. There is often haemotympanum and discharge of cerebrospinal fluid. The membranous labyrinth is destroyed completely by the fracture. The consequence is complete extinction of both hearing function and vestibular function. The material reported by Gyor (1939) comprised 17 transverse fractures with complete hearing loss in the fractured ear in all the cases. In addition, considerable hearing loss of inner ear type was established in the contralateral ear of 65 per

cent of the patients. *Proctor* and his co-workers (1956) described a series of the same size of transverse fractures: homolateral deafness was noted in every case. Further a sensor neural hearing deficiency was demonstrated in the contralateral ear in 50 per cent.

Thus, both cochlear and vestibular function are usually extinguished in transverse fracture of the temporal bone. However *Klingenberg* (1929) described two cases in which a separate fracture was established in the cochlea, causing deafness in that ear but vestibular function was preserved. *Schluttler* (1936) reported quite the reverse, a case of a separate fracture of the vestibular organ. It caused complete extinction of vestibular function, but some hearing function was preserved. Cases like this are very rare.

ringing in the ears or tinnitus is often a subjective symptom following skull trauma. Tinnitus is usually the result of injury to an end organ. *Gurdjian* and *Webster* (1958) reported that 30–40 per cent of the patients with cochleovestibular symptoms as sequelae of skull injury complained of tinnitus. Some patients have continuous tinnitus which may become a very disturbing symptom.

## B Vestibular Damage

A high incidence of vestibular lesions resulting from skull injury has been reported. Often, it is even higher than the incidence of hearing damage. For example, the study by *Lumio* and *Aho* (1962) on skull traumas revealed a clearly higher incidence of vestibular than of hearing damage.

Vestibular damage may be peripheral or central. The central portion comprises the four nuclei in the fundus of the fourth ventricle and their connecting fibres to the other centres, above all to the cerebellum, the cortex of the posterior part of the temporal lobe, the optic nerve nuclei of the brain stem and the motor centres of the spinal cord. Scarpa's ganglion in the internal acoustic canal is usually regarded as the boundary between the central and peripheral part.

*Windle et al.* (1944) stated on the basis of their experiments on pigs that central vestibular lesions may originate as the result of skull trauma. They demonstrated pathologic changes in the fundus of the fourth ventricle. All blows caused chromatolysis in the neuron of the lateral vestibular nucleus. It was believed by *Proctor et al.* (1956) that a peripheral vestibular lesion may originate as the direct consequence of a pressure wave of the labyrinthine fluid or as the result of bleeding. However they regarded damage to the nuclei and central nerve fibres as a more probable cause. *Piquet* and *Piquet* (1958) also held that the majority of the cases involved a central vestibular trauma which would be caused by direct injury to the brain stem or one produced indirectly by circulatory disorders. Similar results were published by *Pirodda* and *Cenacchi* (1964). *Lehnhardt* (1965) reported that central vestibular lesions are much more common than central hearing damage in blunt skull injuries. Contradic-

ting this, animal experiments have shown that a mere cortical lesion does not influence vestibular function provided that the other parts of the brain were protected against damage (Hofman 1961).

The origination of a peripheral vestibular injury is axiomatic when a fracture of the bony labyrinthine capsule and destruction of the membranous labyrinth are involved. This is the case in transverse fractures of the temporal bone. The most probable reason for a peripheral trauma in other cases is held to be the sudden setting in motion of the labyrinthine fluid. The same thing is believed to cause peripheral hearing damage. Separation of the otolithic membrane from the utricle and saccule has been demonstrated in histologic studies of the damaged vestibular end organ. Shallowing of sensory epithelium has been seen in the maculae of the utricle and saccule as well as in the crista ampullaris. Nerve fibres are degenerated later (Nassirpour 1946, Proctor et al. 1956)

Vertigo is a very common complaint by patients with skull injuries. Fifty per cent of the patients had vertigo in the material described by Gurdjian and Webster (1958). In Eys series (1966) the percentage was 61. Shambaugh (1967) defined vertigo as a sensation of rotation in which either the patient is turning round or surrounding objects appear to be spinning round him. It originates from both peripheral and central vestibular lesions. The sensation of weakness caused by cerebral ischemia must be distinguished from true vertigo.

Vertigo of peripheral etiology is usually manifested as short episodes of rotatory vertigo. This condition is often accompanied by spontaneous nystagmus. Symptoms emanating from the autonomous nervous system, such as nausea and vomiting, are common. Destruction of the vestibular end organ occurs in connection with transverse fracture of the temporal bone. Vertigo associated with it represents in fact typical peripheral vertigo. It usually disappears in a couple of weeks. The transient nature of the symptoms is possibly due to the ability of the vestibular nuclei to compensate the disturbed impulses departing from the damaged labyrinth (Gurdjian and Webster 1958). The sense of sight and sense of touch also play an important part in the compensation process. On the other hand, central compensation occurs alongside the slow gradual destruction of the vestibular organ, and the symptoms remain slight. Hearing loss associated with vertigo generally indicates a peripheral etiology (Jongkees 1965). The auditory and vestibular pathways meet in a small area in the region of the corpora quadrigemina, and if the lesion is localised in this tract other neurologic symptoms are also involved.

A lesion of the nuclei and central fibres generally does not cause episodic rotary vertigo: the disturbance of equilibrium is more diffuse (Jongkees 1965). Nor is vertigo of central origin commonly as intense as vertigo caused by an end organ (Altmann 1964). It is, however, often difficult to infer the origin of vertigo from its character. Peripheral and central factors may lie concurrently behind the symptoms of vertigo.

Spontaneous nystagmus is one of the main symptoms of a vestibular disturbance. Its incidence in connection with skull trauma depends, naturally, on the type of injury in question. Transverse fracture of the temporal bone causes sudden destruction

of the vestibular end organ. Spontaneous nystagmus almost always occurs in such cases. *Lange and Kornhuber* (1962) established spontaneous nystagmus in 11 per cent of patients who had sustained cerebral concussion. Spontaneous nystagmus is generally indicative of a pathologic condition. Some investigators, however, hold that it may sometimes occur also in healthy people. For instance, *Jongkees and Philipszoon* (1964) established weak spontaneous nystagmus in a normal series in the ratio 1:85.

Both a peripheral and a central lesion may be the etiology of spontaneous nystagmus. Horizontal rotatory nystagmus is considered to suggest a peripheral etiology. In contrast, many investigators regard purely horizontal, vertical or rotatory nystagmus as indicating a central lesion (*Van Egmond et al.* 1949 *Jongkees* 1965). It has been sought to determine the origin of nystagmus from its direction. The direction of peripheral spontaneous nystagmus is generally towards the healthy ear. However *Jongkees and Philipszoon* (1964) are of the opinion that it is not possible in peripheral lesions to decide the injured side from the direction of spontaneous nystagmus.

Peripheral spontaneous nystagmus generally disappears in a few weeks. Spontaneous nystagmus of long duration is regarded by the majority of investigators as a sign of a central vestibular lesion (*Van Egmond et al.* 1949 *Altmann* 1964 *Cabersck and Jobert* 1965, *Buis* 1965).

Spontaneous nystagmus of peripheral origin is often accompanied by severe vertigo. The vertigo is considerably milder or absent in connection with spontaneous nystagmus of central origin (*Altmann* 1964 *Buis* 1965).

Impaired hearing and tinnitus are often associated with peripheral spontaneous nystagmus. Normal hearing and spontaneous nystagmus suggest a central lesion (*Altmann* 1964 *Buis* 1965 *Fowler and Altmann* 1966).

Post traumatic spontaneous nystagmus is often difficult to establish by mere inspection. *Pirodda and Cenacchi* (1964) observed that spontaneous nystagmus established a long time after the trauma is often of low amplitude and difficult to diagnose.

*Lange and Kornhuber* (1962) stated that spontaneous nystagmus may at intervals become latent spontaneous nystagmus, which means that spontaneous nystagmus would not be established at every examination and that e.g. stimulation of the central nervous system, psychic excitation, physical strain and especially irritation of the vestibular organ provoke spontaneous nystagmus.

Postural nystagmus refers to nystagmus which occurs only in a certain position of the head or to nystagmus that is decisively connected with the position of the head. It is often noted after skull injuries. *Cavithorne* (1954) considers skull trauma to be the most common etiological factor in postural nystagmus. *Proctor et al.* (1956) demonstrated postural nystagmus in 25 per cent of their skull injury series. As high a percentage as 50 was reported by *Pfaller* (1956). He found that it disappeared fairly rapidly post traumatically and rarely remained a permanent condition. *Barber* (1964) noted postural nystagmus in 25 per cent of his material. It was twice as common in skull fractures as in the cases with no skull fracture. He found that a longitudinal fracture of the temporal bone caused postural nystagmus especially frequently (47 per cent).

Some authors have taken postural nystagmus to be a lesion caused by otoliths (Dir and Hallpike 1952, Cawthorne 1954). Fogel (1931) attributed it to the semicircular canals. Michlike (1952) ascribed peripheral postural nystagmus to injury of the semicircular canal. Vogt (1954) believed traumatic postural nystagmus to be of central origin, caused by circulatory disturbances due to trauma. It is held today that postural nystagmus may be caused by both peripheral and central factors (Frenzel 1961, Henriksson 1966).

An endeavour has been made to localise the trauma on the basis of the direction of postural nystagmus. Three different types of postural nystagmus were distinguished by Nylen (1958) direction-changing (type I), fixed-direction (type II) and irregular postural nystagmus (type III). He considered types I and III to indicate a central lesion, type II a peripheral lesion. Proctor *et al.* (1956) also stated that peripheral vestibular injury causes postural nystagmus which has a static, fixed direction. If the nystagmus changes direction, a disturbance must be suspected in the vestibular nuclei or central pathways. However Litton and McCabe (1966) among others, believe that the direction of nystagmus or a change in its direction give no indication of the localisation of the lesion.

The duration of postural nystagmus is now considered to play an important role in the localisation of a lesion. A latent period is characteristic of transitory postural nystagmus. The duration of the nystagmus is also limited. Lindsay (1931) considered 60 seconds to be the limit. A feeling of vertigo usually accompanies the nystagmus. Another typical feature of this nystagmus is that it cannot be provoked repeatedly. Transient postural nystagmus is generally held to signify a peripheral lesion. Persistent postural nystagmus suggests a central injury (Frenzel 1961, Busis 1965, Litton and McCabe 1966). This assumption is reinforced by the circumstance that persistent postural nystagmus without a latent period is often noted in diseases of the central nervous system (Cawthorne 1954).

Normal hearing associated with postural nystagmus suggests a central lesion (Gurdjian and Webster 1958, Milojevic 1967).

The most important part of the vestibular examination is the caloric test by means of which the ears can be examined separately. Electronystagmography which is based on the registration of the electric impulses which originate in nystagmus, is used now for objective recording of nystagmus. Man has a positive electric potential in the cornea and a negative one in the retina. The bulbar movements which are produced in nystagmus cause variations in potential. The electric impulses are led via electrodes and an amplifier into the electronystagmograph which records the result. The method has the great advantage of registering even slight nystagmus that might otherwise escape detection. Jorgensen and Philipszoon (1964) found it impossible to detect nystagmus under 7 deg. by inspection, but nystagmus of 2–3 deg. was easy to observe electronically. As the examination is performed with the patient keeping his eyes closed, the effect of fixation of gaze on the reaction is a hindered. Various parameters such as duration, velocity of the slow component, latency, total amplitude, total frequency and total number of strokes can be calculated from the curve obtained. The best possible result is achieved by using different parameters (Gulick and Pfaltz 1964).



Rotatory nystagmus does not cause fluctuations in potential and cannot be registered. The functions of the vestibular organ can be evaluated from the electronystagmogram with the help of parameters. Especially the duration and the speed of the slow component are important (*Aschan et al.* 1956 *Stahle* 1958). Latency is no longer held to be of any great importance in assessing the result of the caloric test (*Riesco-MacClure* 1964).

Unilateral vestibular weakness has been held to point to peripheral lesion (*Milojevic* 1967). *Gulich* and *Pfaltz* (1964) found that the intensity of the reaction always decreases in peripheral lesions. They stated that intensification of the reaction is proof of a central lesion.

*Lumio* and *Aho* (1962) used an electronystagmograph for vestibular studies on patients diagnosed as having post traumatic encephalopathy. They observed that the nature of the vestibular disturbance varied. The commonest type of reaction in their series was one in which the variation of both the amplitude and the frequency of the nystagmus was quite irregular. There were also many cases in which the caloric test elicited no reaction at all.

The result of the caloric test is sometimes dysrhythmia, i.e. periodic nystagmus. Intensive nystagmus and a latent period alternate. This is considered to indicate central vestibular lesion. *Aschan et al.* (1956) noted that dysrhythmia sometimes occurred after skull injuries. They also found that electroencephalography revealed disturbed electric activity of the brains in every case of electronystagmographic dysrhythmia. The disturbance was mostly localised in the temporal lobe. In their experiments on cats, *Fredrickson* and *Fernandez* (1964) concluded that both dysrhythmia and vestibular hyperactivity might be caused by the liberation of vestibular nuclei from cerebellar inhibition.

Alternating nystagmus is a very rare vestibular disorder. The direction of the nystagmus varies. Skull injury has been found to be the etiologic factor in at least a part of the cases (*Gramowski* and *Unger* 1965).

Directional preponderance means that reaction develops more readily in one direction than another. Cold water caloricisation of e.g. the left ear and hot water caloricisation of the right ear provokes a stronger reaction than cold water irrigation of the right ear and hot water irrigation of the left ear. Thus, both cold and hot water caloricisation are necessary to demonstrate the phenomenon. *Fitzgerald* and *Hallpike* (1942) held that directional preponderance was a manifestation of central vestibular lesion. They observed directional preponderance to the side of the lesion in all temporal lobe injuries. Since then, however, many workers have found that directional preponderance may be associated also with peripheral traumas (*Hart* 1965, *Coats* 1965). *Gulich* and *Pfaltz* (1964) too, mentioned that directional preponderance may be associated with peripheral injuries as well, although this is not common. It was reported by *Coats* (1965) that spontaneous nystagmus to the side of the healthy ear in peripheral vestibular injuries can gradually change into directional preponderance to the same direction. He reported an incidence of 17.5 per cent for directional preponderance in a normal material. *Mehra* (1964) mentioned however that directional preponderance is not general in a normal material, and he reported an incidence of only 5.2 per cent.

As mentioned, normal hearing in connection with vestibular symptoms such as spontaneous or postural nystagmus is regarded as evidence of central vestibular lesion. The association of bilateral vestibular lesion with normal hearing is also taken to denote a trauma in the vestibular nuclei (*Ruesco-MacClure 1964*)

## C War Injuries

There are a few hearing and vestibular studies from World War I dealing with persons wounded in the head (*Goerke 1924*). But they are very imprecise because investigation methods at that time were still inadequate.

Audiometric studies were conducted during World War II and revealed numerous hearing defects. Head injuries usually caused deafness of inner ear type (*Sürala 1945*). *Hormia (1959)* observed that audiograms of war-injured usually showed a declining type of curve. The decline was recorded at 4000 Hz in third of the cases.

Apart from head wounds, acoustic traumas and hearing damage caused by explosion must be borne in mind as war time factors causing hardness of hearing. Their great role in the etiology of hearing defects was established clearly during World War II (*Sürala 1945*).

Hearing damage caused by detonation causes chiefly a unilateral sensor-neural hearing deficiency which is often manifested as a Cs notch in the audiogram. The tympanic membrane is usually not ruptured. Detonation damages chiefly the external hair cells and the recruitment phenomenon is therefore positive on the whole. Nerv. fibres and the cells of the ganglion spirale are damaged only after the internal hair cells are already destroyed (*Lehnhardt 1965*).

The pressure peak is longer in explosion than in detonation damage. The hearing defect is mostly bilateral. Rupture of the tympanic membrane is common. It was observed during the war that damage caused by explosion resulted in a much more severe cochlear lesion if there was no rupture of the tympanic membrane (*Kacht 1964*). If the tympanic membrane remains intact, all the energy passes into the inner ear through the chain of auditory ossicles. When the tympanic membrane ruptures, the pressure is exerted simultaneously on both windows, the energy entering the inner ear is smaller and the damage to it is less severe. The deafness caused by explosion is combined hearing defect. Damage to the tympanic membrane and the middle ear causes a conductive hearing loss. Sensor-neural hearing impairment was manifested in the audiogram as a depression at the high tone level the hearing deficiency is often also pancochlear (*Lehnhardt 1965*).

### III PURPOSE OF THE INVESTIGATION

The object of the present investigation was to establish the incidence and nature of hearing and vestibular defects in 256 brain injured ex servicemen on the basis of a neuro-otological study

Additionally the aim was to

- (1) study the proportion of peripheral and central lesions in the material and
- (2) seek possible correlations between the neuro-otological finding and localisation of the trauma.

## IV MATERIAL

The material consisted of 256 patients who had been wounded in the Finnish wars of 1939–1940 and 1941–1944. The investigation was conducted at the Otolaryngological Hospital, University of Helsinki, in 1965–1966. The interval between the occurrence of the trauma and the investigation was thus c. 25 years on an average. The patients were referred for examination by the Institute for the Rehabilitation of Brain Injured Veterans (Sotain vammautuneiden Valtionvammalaitos H-1 Tutkimuslaitos). This is a neurological clinic which specialises in the examination and treatment of ex-servicemen who sustained head injuries during the war. The patients stay in hospital a few weeks and are called for follow-up studies at regular intervals. The only criterion followed in selecting the material was that all the patients had a brain injury diagnosed at neurologic examination at the Institute for the Rehabilitation of Brain Injured Veterans. The series was otherwise unselected. It is not, however, perhaps fully representative of a wartime brain injury material: patients who were under examination in the institute at the time were included in the study for practical reasons.

The age of the patients at the time of wounding is given in Table 1.

TABLE 1 — Age when wounded

Age	Number of cases	Per cent
under 20 years	17	6.6
20–24 years	29	10.9
25–34 years	198	50.0
over 35 years	52	12.5
Total	256	100.0

The above age classification was employed by *Hillborn* (1959) in his studies of brain injured ex-servicemen.

Fifty per cent of the patients in the present series were wounded between 25 and 34 years of age. Patients under 20 years (6.6 per cent) constituted the smallest group. Patients over 35 accounted for only 12.5 per cent.

The cause of the wound was splinter in 143 cases (55.9 per cent), a bullet in 59 cases (23.0 per cent). In 54 cases (21.1 per cent) the cause was something other than such as the patient being blown over by the air pressure from an explosion, traffic accident, or fall, mostly from a moving vehicle.

The localisation of the injury was decided according to the site of impact, the information available on the mechanism of the trauma and the neurologic findings. The localisation of the injury is shown in Table 2.

TABLE 2 — *Localisation of the injury*

Localisation	Number	Per cent
Parietal traumas	65	23.1
Frontal traumas	61	21.7
Temporal traumas	48	17.1
Facial traumas	25	8.9
Occipital traumas	22	7.8
Concussion-contusion injuries impossible to localise more precisely	62	22.1
Total	281	100.0

The trauma had directly affected the aural region in eight of the 48 cases with a temporal injury. It was not possible to decide the localisation in 62 cases (22.1 per cent). In most of these cases the injury was caused by another agent than a splinter or a bullet. A total of 219 different localisations were established in 194 cases. In other words, an individual patient may have had several localisations.

*Type of injury* The wound was open in 112 cases (43.8 per cent) and closed in 154 cases (52.5 per cent). Open injuries refer to traumas which penetrated the cerebral tissue causing both fracture of the bone and laceration of the dura. It was impossible in 10 cases (3.9 per cent) to decide whether the injury was open or closed.

Table 3 gives the data on *primary unconsciousness* due to the trauma and its duration.

TABLE 3 — *Primary loss of consciousness and its duration*

Unconsciousness	Number of cases	Per cent
No loss of consciousness	57	22.5
Unconscious for under 1 hour	66	25.8
Unconscious for 1-24 hours	39	15.2
Unconscious for over 24 hours	29	11.5
History of primary loss of consciousness but no information as to its duration	50	11.7
No information on primary loss of consciousness	35	13.7
Total	256	100.0

Primary unconsciousness following the trauma occurred in at least 164 cases (64.0 per cent). No primary loss of consciousness was caused in 57 cases (22.5 per cent). The result is in good agreement with Hillborn's (1959) findings. There was no loss of

consciousness in 23.6 per cent of his material of brain-injured ex-servicemen. Twenty nine patients (11.3 per cent) were unconscious for over 24 hours. The corresponding percentage in *Hillborn's* material was 10.2.

*Primary revision* was performed in 158 patients (53.9 per cent). Head operations were performed later on 37 patients (14.4 per cent). The main indications for surgery were removal of foreign body, drainage of a focus of infection and epilepsy. In some cases a plastic operation was performed for an extensive skull defect.

The injuries were divided into the following *severity groups* on the basis of the invalidity degree set by the State Casualty Office: mild (invalidity under 50 per cent), medium (invalidity 50–65 per cent) and severe (invalidity 70–100 per cent). The severity grading for each patient was taken from the case reports of the Institute for the Rehabilitation of Brain Injured Veterans. The distribution according to invalidity is, naturally, open to argument, but it probably gives some idea of the severity of the injuries in question. Mild traumas in the material totalled 69 (27.0 per cent), traumas of medium severity 148 (57.8 per cent) and severe traumas 59 (15.2 per cent). Traumas of medium severity were thus in the majority. In *Hillborn* (1959) basic material of brain-injured ex-servicemen (3552 cases) mild traumas accounted for 18.8, medium severe for 59.3 and severe for 21.8 per cent. The number of mild traumas in the present series was greater than in *Hillborn's* material (27.0 per cent > 18.8 per cent) and that of severe traumas smaller (15.2 per cent < 21.8 per cent). This may be because some of the severely injured patients had already died or were under continuous institutional treatment, leaving fewer who attended the Institute for the Rehabilitation of Brain Injured Veterans in recent years.

*Traumatic epilepsy* developed in 87 cases (34.0 per cent). It was established in 50.9 per cent of open and 18.6 per cent of closed injuries. These figures concur well with those presented in the literature. *Gurdjian* and *Webster* (1958) reported the incidence of traumatic epilepsy in peacetime injuries to be 15–22 per cent and in wartime traumas 18.9–45 per cent. The incidence is generally much lower in closed than in open wounds. Epilepsy was established in 30.4 per cent of *Hillborn's* basic material of brain-injured ex-servicemen: the ratio was 44.2 per cent for open and 20.5 per cent for closed wounds.

*Monoparesis or hemiparesis* was established post-traumatically in 49 cases (19.1 per cent). *Aphasia* was present in 17 cases (6.6 per cent). Recovery from aphasia was generally excellent. The prognosis for patients with traumatic aphasia is generally good (*Gurdjian* and *Webster* 1958, *Hillborn* 1959).

*Electroencephalography* was performed on 252 patients (98.4 per cent). The finding was normal in 86 cases (34.1 per cent). Diffuse dysrhythmia was established in 114 cases (45.2 per cent) and focal dysrhythmia in 52 cases (20.6 per cent). This modal distribution was used by *Hillborn* (1959).

*Psychoneurophalography* was performed on 170 patients (66.4 per cent). The finding was normal in 57 cases (33.5 per cent) and pathologic in the remaining 113 (66.5 per cent).

## V METHODS OF INVESTIGATION

### A Early Symptoms

Early symptoms refer to aural symptoms such as bleeding from the ear suppuration, hardness of hearing and vertigo established immediately or soon after being wounded. The data are based on old field hospital and military hospital case reports which were, understandably often rather incomplete.

### B Present Symptoms

The patients were asked to state their own opinion of the present state of their hearing. They were also asked about the presence of tinnitus. They were asked to try and distinguish between actual ringing in the ears and a sensation of humming in the head. The occurrence of disturbances of equilibrium was inquired about. Attention was also paid to their nature. The patients were also asked about headache and nausea. However only more frequent than normal headache was considered, that is almost daily or constant headache.

### C Otoscopy and Clinical Inspection of the Nose Mouth Pharynx Nasopharynx and Larynx

The initial examinations were otoscopy and clinical inspection of the nose mouth, pharynx, nasopharynx, and larynx.

### D Audiologic Studies

As the object was to ascertain the incidence of hearing and vestibular defects and the proportion of peripheral and central lesions in the material, in analysing the results the material was not divided into groups according to the type of hearing deficiency but treated as a whole.

*Madsen* and *Belton's* audiometers were used, calibrated according to the NPL standard. A pure tone audiogram with air and bone conduction threshold determinations was taken from all the patients. Hearing defects were distributed into conductive sensori-neural and combined defects.

A pure tone audiogram in which the hearing threshold was in the frequency range of audiometer 20 dB at the most was considered normal.

The average hearing loss was calculated as the mean of the hearing thresholds at 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz.

Although the actual upper limit of hearing was not determined, the highest frequency heard by the patient was determined from the pure tone audiogram to an accuracy of one octave.

The shape of the hearing curve was also obtained from the pure tone audiogram. The starting point of the depression in the hearing curve was taken as the frequency from which the curve was depressed for a minimum of 10 dB over the range of one octave. A hearing curve in which the hearing loss was fairly even in all the frequencies was interpreted as horizontal.

Speech audiometry was also performed on all the patients. The threshold for speech discrimination was determined first, i.e. the intensity of the tone at which the patient heard a half of the 10 test words correctly. After that, maximal discrimination score was determined in per cent by increasing the intensity of the threshold for speech discrimination by 30 dB. The speech audiometer was calibrated so that the threshold of a patient with normal hearing for speech discrimination was a maximum of 55 dB.

The mean of the pure tone hearing threshold and the threshold for speech discrimination were compared for possible discrepancy. If the difference between these thresholds was 55 dB or more, discrepancy was considered to exist.

For study of loudness recruitment, Fowler's test was performed in all the cases with a definite difference in hearing ability between the ears at the hearing threshold level. The test sound was given alternately into each ear.

The adaptation test was performed by the method introduced by Palva and Palva (1966) in which adaptation is measured at the threshold level. The subject listens at the 5 dB sensation level to a continuous sound which is amplified in 5 dB degrees when it ceases to be heard. A change in the hearing threshold is established after three min. The test was performed at 1000 and 4000 Hz. However, it could not be performed at 4000 Hz in all the cases because the hearing threshold in this range was so high that adaptation could not be observed for a full three min. Nor could the hearing threshold be measured at 4000 Hz in all the cases. In addition, it was not possible to perform the test on ears with very poor hearing.

The maximum hearing threshold shift recorded at either of the frequencies mentioned was noted.

The possibility of simulated hearing loss was also taken into consideration during the examination. Suitable methods were employed in some cases in order to disclose the simulation.

## E General Neuro-otological Tests

Romberg's test, the stepping test and the past pointing test were the common neuro-otological tests employed in the present study.

In Romberg's test, definite tendency to fall was denoted as positive. The stepping test generally involves 50 pairs of steps. Owing to the poor condition of many of the



present patients, however 50 single steps were used. As far as possible the effect of environmental sound or sources of light on rotation were eliminated during the test. The angle of rotation was calculated.

In the past pointing test the patient, eyes closed, held his arms stretched straight out and moved them in the sagittal plane with the extended fingers pointing at the examiner's extended fingers. Past pointing was considered to be involved when the deviation of the hands was at least 5 cm in two past pointing tests (Nylen 1958)

## F Vestibular Special Studies

### 1 SPONTANEOUS AND POSTURAL NYSTAGMUS

*Spontaneous nystagmus* was studied by inspection without Frenzel's spectacles, with the patient looking straight ahead and then fixing his gaze to each side in turn. In addition, spontaneous nystagmus was studied and recorded by electronystagmography before the caloric test with the patient's eyes closed and then gazing to each side in turn.

*Postural nystagmus* was verified by inspection. The patient was placed on his back and his head was turned from one side to another. The same turning of the head was repeated with the head hanging down. Frenzel (1961) found that this simple method of examination sometimes gives an even clearer idea of postural nystagmus than moving the patient as a whole. The same conclusion was reached by Cauthorne (1954)

### 2. CALORIC TEST

The caloric test was made according to the method of Fitzgerald and Hallpike (1942) using both 30°C and 44°C water but with 50-second instead of 40-second calorisation. It has also been used by Aschan *et al.* (1956). Stronger calorisation, e.g. iced water was not used because it might have strained these patients excessively and provoked an epileptic attack in some of them. The water used in the calorisation process was taken from a thermostatically controlled vessel, accuracy  $\pm 0.2^\circ\text{C}$ .

Instead of water calorisation, 60-second air calorisation with air of room temperature was performed in cases with dry perforation of the tympanic membrane. A 5-minute interval was observed after each calorisation. The patient lay on his back during the test with his head bent c. 50 deg forward. The horizontal semicircular canals are in the vertical plane in this position. The calorisation was performed in a semi-dark room. The patient's eyes were closed during the procedure. The result of the caloric test was recorded by electronystagmography. Concave electrodes, 10 mm in diameter filled with electrode paste were fixed to the patient's temples close to the lateral corners of the eyes. Electric impulses were led via an alternating current pre-amplifier into the electronystagmograph which recorded the result on paper tape. A 1-channel ELEMA mungograph was the electronystagmograph used. The time

constant was two seconds. The speed of the paper was 12.5 mm/sec. It was possible to register only horizontal nystagmus with this method. Calorisation was preceded by calibration during which the patient fixed his eyes in turn on two lamps placed at an angle of 10 deg.

The period of latency, duration and maximum intensity were calculated from the different parameters.

For determination of the latent period attention was paid to the time of onset of the reaction and whether it began during calorisation or only after it.

Latency was determined only by cold water and air calorisation.

The duration was measured in seconds from the onset of reaction. Ormerod (1963) stated that it is often difficult to observe the time of termination of nystagmus for the amplitude and frequency of nystagmus become irregular towards the end. A series of after nystagmus may also appear. For this reason attention was paid in the present study to whether the termination of the reaction could be fixed accurately. Maximum intensity refers to the speed of the slow phase of nystagmus when the reaction is at its maximum, which happens generally 60–90 sec. after the beginning of the calorisation. Maximum intensity was calculated according to Stahle (1958, 1964). The amplitudes of all strokes were added together for 10 sec. cycle at the maximum range of the reaction and the length was converted to degrees on the basis of calibration. The result was expressed in degrees per second. The standard deviation of the maximum intensity is greater than the duration. Ten per cent is taken as the permissible difference in duration between the right and left ear and 20 per cent for the maximum intensity (Aschan *et al.* 1956, Stahle 1958).

In evaluating the type of electronystagmogram, the amplitude and frequency of nystagmus and their variations were noted.

The type of the electronystagmogram and the parameters mentioned, above, duration and maximum intensity were taken into consideration in evaluating the calor reaction.

The variations from normal for both duration and maximum intensity that have been reported in the literature are very great and vary with the different investigators. The bilateral-symmetrical reaction is often extremely difficult to assess because of the great fluctuations in normal values. Normal vestibular reactions in the present material fulfilled the following requirements: the electronystagmogram was regular in type in regard to both amplitude and frequency; the duration was minimum of 80 sec. and maximum intensity at least 5 deg./sec. Thus the requirements for normal reaction were set fairly high.

For directional preponderance the requirement was that the difference between the cold water calorisation of the right ear + the hot water calorisation of the left ear and the cold water calorisation of the left ear + the hot water calorisation of the right ear must be over 10 per cent for duration and over 20 per cent for maximum intensity.

The following indications were taken as suggestive of a central vestibular lesion: spontaneous nystagmus of long duration (an average of about 25 years in the patients of this series); directional preponderance; electronystagmographic dysrhythmia and association of normal hearing with bilateral vestibular lesion. Any one of these symptoms was taken to suggest central lesion.

## VI RESULTS

### A Early Symptoms

It appears from the field hospital and military hospital case reports that a post traumatic otological examination was performed on 75 patients (24.2 per cent). It was done in 39 cases by an otological specialist.

Table 4 shows the aural symptoms established after the wound.

TABLE 4 - *Ear symptoms*

Symptoms	Number of patients	Per cent
Hemorrhage	15	6.1
Discharge of pus	19	4.7
Impaired hearing	80	51.2

Thus, 51.2 per cent complained of impaired hearing immediately after they were wounded. Hemorrhage and discharge of pus from the ear were established objectively. Five patients had had both bleeding and discharge of pus from the ear. In addition, 104 patients (40.6 per cent) had vertigo, but its nature is not defined in the case reports.

### B Present Symptoms

In the inquiry conducted in the present study 170 patients (66.4 per cent) reported that their present hearing was distinctly impaired. Tinnitus was a complaint with 126 patients (49.2 per cent). It was continuous in 45 and intermittent in 83 cases. Sixty-seven patients had tinnitus in one ear only, 59 bilaterally.

Humming in the head was reported by 35 patients (15.7 per cent). Disturbances of equilibrium were mentioned by 183 patients (71.5 per cent). Table 5 shows the type of disturbed balance reported by the patients.

TABLE 5 - *Type of equilibrium disturbance*

Type of disturbance	Number	Per cent
Disturbed balance in sudden movements	151	66.5
Occasional difficulty in walking	46	20.5
Episodes of rotary vertigo	17	7.5
Vertigo of ship-deck type	13	5.7
Total	227	100.0

The commonest type was disturbance of equilibrium on making sudden movements. It can also be seen that the same patient may have complained of several different types balance disturbances.

Unusually frequent headache was the complaint of 213 patients (83.2 per cent) and 89 patients (34.8 per cent) suffered from nausea.

## C The Otoscopic Finding and Clinical Examination of the Nose Mouth Pharynx Nasopharynx and Larynx

The otoscopy finding is given in Table 6

TABLE 6 — *Otoscopy finding*

Finding	Number of patients	Per cent
Normal	199	77.7
Perforation of tympanic membrane and discharge of pus from the ear	5	2.0
Dry perforation or secondary membrane in the tympanic membrane	29	11.3
Tympanic membrane intact but cicatrised or atrophic	11	4.3
Adhesive tympanic membranes	5	2.0
Ear operated on	7	2.7
Total	256	100.0

The otoscopy finding was normal in the majority of the cases (77.7 per cent). Twenty per cent of the patients had perforation of the tympanic membrane and discharge of pus from the ear. These cases included chronic, suppurative middle ear inflammation.

Clinical examination of the nose, mouth, pharynx, nasopharynx and larynx revealed nothing noteworthy in hearing with the exception of one case of congenital hardlip and cleft palate.

## D Audiologic Studies

Table 7 shows the mean hearing loss according to the pure tone audiogram.

There were no totally deaf patients. In the other hand, patient with profound hearing loss totalled 23 (9.8 per cent).

The pure tone audiogram was normal for 79 ears (15.4 per cent). Twenty per cent audiogram was normal for both ears of 28 patients (10.9 per cent).

TABLE - Average hearing loss according to the pure tone audiogram

Mean hearing loss (500-1000-2000 Hz)	Number of cases	
	better ear	poorer ear
20 dB or under	156	89
21-50 dB	62	69
51-70 dB	29	42
71-90 dB	7	20
over 91 dB	3	11
totally deaf	0	25
Total	256	256

Table 8 shows the nature of the hearing defect revealed by the pure tone audiogram

TABLE 8 - Nature of the hearing defect

Nature of defect	Number of ears
Conductive	12
Sensori-neural	336
Combined	60
Total	408

The hearing defect was of purely middle ear type in only 12 ears (2.9 per cent). A purely inner ear type of hearing defect was encountered in as many as 336 ears (82.4 per cent).

The numerical distribution of the mean air conduction of the pure tone audiogram (500-1000-2000 Hz) is given in Fig. 1. All 487 ears tested for air conduction are included. In other words, the mean air conduction could be determined for all except the deaf ears. The figure shows that the mean air conduction was in the range 5-25 dB for the majority of the ears. There were relatively few with a mean of over 40 dB.

The corresponding percentual accumulation curve is drawn in Fig. 2. Roughly 60 per cent of the ears had a mean of 25 dB or better.

The numerical distribution of the mean bone conduction of the pure tone audiogram (500-1000-2000 Hz) is shown in Fig. 3. All 468 ears for which the test was possible are included. In other words, bone conduction hearing was so poor in 19 ears although the mean air conduction could be determined that the mean could not be calculated. The distribution resembles that of air conduction, but reveals that particularly good means were definitely more numerous for bone than for air conduction. However a lower mean was accompanied by a distinctly sharper decrease in number than for the patients with a corresponding air conduction mean.

The corresponding percentual accumulation curve is presented in Fig. 4. Almost 90 per cent of the ears had a mean of 25 dB or better.

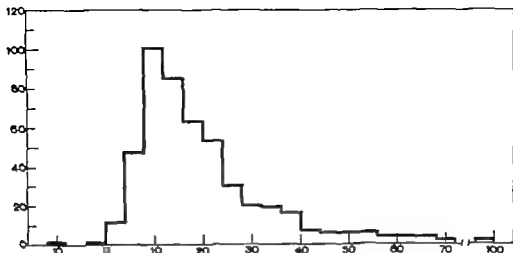


FIG. 1 - Numerical distribution of the mean air conduction (500-1000-2000 Hz) for pure tone audiogram. 48 ears. The number of ears is the ordinate and the mean in decibels the abscissa.

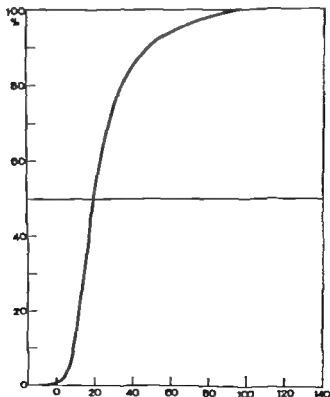


FIG. 2 - Percentual accumulation curve 48 ears. The number of ears in per cent is the ordinate and the mean air conduction in decibels the abscissa.

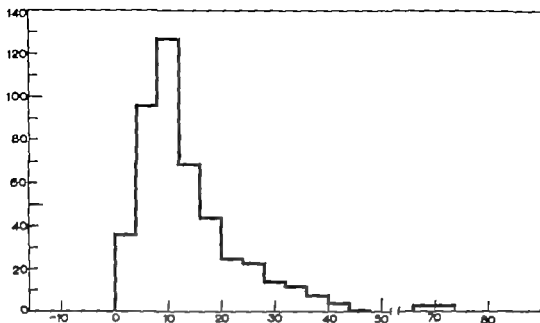


FIG 3. — Numerical distribution of the mean bone conduction (100—1000—2000 H) of the pure tone audiogram 468 ears. The number of ears the ordinate and the mean in decibel the abscissa.

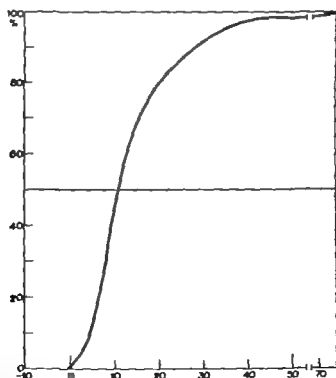


FIG 4. — Percentual accumulation curve 468 ears. The number of ears in per cent is the ordinate and the mean bone conduction in decibels the abscissa.

Table 9 gives the highest frequency heard by the patients. It was determined to an accuracy of one octave from the pure tone audiograms.

TABLE 9 - *Highest frequency heard*

Hz	Number of ears
8000	426
4000	42
2000	19
Total	487

All hearing ears were thus capable of hearing a sound at 2000 Hz, and 426 ears (87.5 per cent) heard 8000 Hz.

The shape of the hearing curve of the pure tone audiogram in sensori-neural and combined cases of deafness is given in Table 10.

TABLE 10 - *Shape of the pure tone audiogram*

Shape of audiogram	Number of cases
Horizontal	99
Declining throughout	8
Decline starts from 500 Hz	10
Decline starts from 1000 Hz	62
Decline starts from 2000 Hz	190
Decline starts from 4000 Hz	27
Total	396

The declining type of curve, total 297 (75.0 per cent) was the commonest type. These cases included the greatest number of the type in which a depression started from 2000 Hz. They totalled 190 (48.0 per cent). Horizontal curves were 99 in number (25.0 per cent). There were no other types of curve in the material.

The depression of the curve was followed later at the higher frequencies by a new elevation in 113 cases (38.0 per cent).

The speech threshold could be determined in 482 ears (94.1 per cent). Table 11 shows the threshold for speech discrimination.

TABLE 11 - *Threshold for speech discrimination*

Threshold	Number of cases	Per cent
55 dB or better	186	36.5
40-55 dB	190	37.1
50-65 dB	70	13.7
70-85 dB	24	4.7
over 85 dB	12	2.5
Total	482	94.1



The threshold for speech discrimination was 45 dB or better in 476 cases (73.4 per cent). However the speech threshold was impossible to determine in five cases although a pure tone audiogram was obtained. One ear among these cases heard correctly three out of 10 test words at maximal voice intensity. The number of correctly heard words was two in two cases. Only one word was heard correctly in one case, and there was one case in which not a single of the 10 test words was heard correctly.

Discrepancy between the threshold for pure tones and the threshold for speech discrimination was established in 24 cases (5.0 per cent) the difference between the thresholds was 35 dB or more. No such discrepancy was observed in 458 cases (95.0 per cent).

The discrimination score in hearing ears was established for 451 ears (92.6 per cent). It was thus possible in these cases to add 30 dB to the threshold for speech discrimination. The possible discrimination loss is shown in Table 12.

TABLE 12 — *Discrimination loss*

Discrimination loss	Number of ears	Per cent
No discrimination loss	405	89.8
Discrimination loss 10 / or less	27	6.0
Discrimination loss 15–20 /	15	2.9
Discrimination loss 25–50 /	6	1.1
Discrimination loss over 50 /	1	0.2
Total	451	100.0

Discrimination was 100 per cent for 405 ears (89.8 per cent). A marked discrimination loss, over 50 per cent, was established in only one ear. Discrimination loss was established in two cases among the 79 ears for which the pure tone audiogram was normal. It was 10 per cent in one and 25 in the other case.

Fowler's test was possible in 63 cases (24.6 per cent). Table 13 gives the results.

TABLE 13 — *Fowler test*

Loudness recruitment	Number of cases
Complete	39
Partial	19
None	5
Total	63

The recruitment phenomenon was negative in only five cases (7.9 per cent).

The adaptation test was performed on 478 ears (93.4 per cent). The results are given in Table 14.

TABLE 14 — *Adaptation test*

Hearing threshold shift	Number of ears
0-15 dB	298
20-30 dB	127
over 30 dB	55
Total	478

Adaptation of over 30 dB was established in 55 ears (11.1 per cent). In three ears it was over 50 dB although the pure tone audiogram was normal. Adaptation of over 50 dB was established also in an ear with poor conductive hearing loss. Hence, 596 ears with sensori-neural or combined hardness of hearing included 49 with adaptation of more than 30 dB (12.4 per cent).

## E Results of the General Neuro-otological Tests

*Romberg's test* was performed on all the patients. It was positive in 22 cases (8.6 per cent).

The stepping test was successful for 190 patients (74.2 per cent). Table 15 shows the rotation and the angle of rotation.

TABLE 15 — *Rotation and angle of rotation in the stepping test*

Rotation	Number of patients	Per cent
Does not rotate	82	43.2
Rotation under 90 deg	97	51.0
Rotation 91-180 deg	9	4.7
Rotation over 180 deg	2	1.1
Total	190	100.0

Eighty two (43.2 per cent) of the patients who performed the stepping test did not rotate at all. The angle of rotation was under 90 deg with 97 patients (51.0 per cent). Only two patients rotated more than 180 deg.

Post-pointing was tested for all the patients. The test was positive in 11 cases (4.3 per cent).

## F Vestibular Special Studies

### 1 SPONTANEOUS AND POSTURAL NYSTAGMUS

Spontaneous nystagmus was demonstrated electronystagmographically in 12 cases (4.7 per cent). The variation in amplitude and frequency was completely irregular in all the cases. Spontaneous nystagmus was very slight in four cases for which only

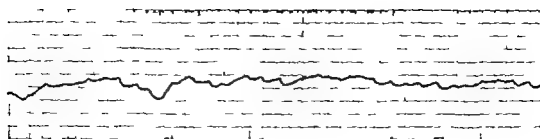


FIG 5 - Spontaneous nystagmus.

a few isolated nystagmus strokes were recorded. One case involved latent spontaneous nystagmus. Fig 5 illustrates a case of spontaneous nystagmus. In only two cases was spontaneous nystagmus distinctly visible on inspection.

Postural nystagmus was observable at inspection in 56 cases (21.9 per cent)

## 2. RESULTS OF THE CALORIC TEST

*Cold water calorisation* in both ears was performed on 251 patients.

The duration was measurable in 315 ears (62.7 per cent). The time of termination of the reaction could be established accurately in 906 cases, but caused some difficulty in the other cases. However even in these cases it was possible to determine with fair accuracy. Because of occasional indistinctness of the curve due to a technical disturbance, duration was impossible to measure in some cases although calorisation produced a definite reaction.

The duration values are given in Table 16

TABLE 16 - Duration during water calorisation at 10°C

Duration	Number of cases	Per cent
under 60 sec.	18	5.7
60-99 sec.	126	40.0
100-150 sec.	122	38.7
over 150 sec.	49	15.6
Total	315	100.0

Durations of under 60 sec. totalled 18 (5.7 per cent) and durations longer than 150 sec. totalled 49 (15.6 per cent)

Fig 6 shows the distribution of durations in cold water calorisation in normal cases and ears with lesions. Definite differences in duration were established between the two groups. Furthermore the durations varied greatly within the traumatic group. Duration of over 150 sec., but also of less than 50 sec., were established. On the other hand, the duration range was generally from 100 to 160 sec. in the cases of normal reaction.

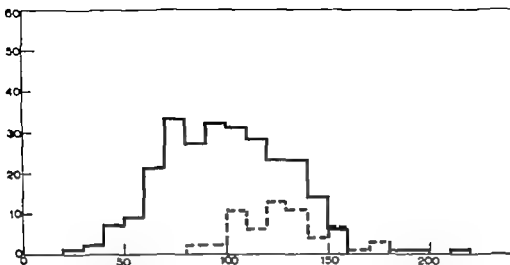


FIG 6. — Distribution of duration in cold water calorisation. Normal reactions totalled 60 — broken line. Cases with lesions totalled 215 — solid line. The number of cases is the ordinate and the duration in seconds the abscissa.

It was possible to determine the maximum intensity in 215 ears. The mean was 742 deg/sec. The material included a great many cases of severe hypoexcitability which made it impossible to determine the maximum intensity.

The results of the determination of the latent period are given in Table 17.

TABLE 17 — Latency

Time of onset of reaction	Number of cases	Per cent
Reaction begins during calorisation (under 50 sec.)	66	31.0
Reaction begins 51–60 sec. after start of calorisation	115	46.0
Reaction begins 61–70 sec. after start of calorisation	75	33.8
Reaction begins 71–80 sec. after start of calorisation	27	8.6
Reaction begins over 80 sec. after start of calorisation	2	0.6
Total	315	100.0

There were only 66 cases (21.0 per cent) in which the reaction started during calorisation.

Different types of electrony tagmography curve were obtained from the cold water calorisation test. They are shown in Table 18.

The reaction was regular in both amplitude and frequency in the regular curve type. In the irregular curve type the variation in both amplitude and frequency was completely irregular. This curve type was recorded in a total of 220 cases (43.8 per cent) and predominated in the material. The group of irregular reactions included 10 cases of dysrhythmia. Cases with no reaction to all water calorisation at 50°C were also fairly numerous, 181 in all (36.0 per cent).

TABLE 18 — *Types of electronystamograph curve*

Type of curve	Number of cases	Per cent
Regular	76	15.1
No reaction	181	36.0
Irregular	220	43.8
Frequency fluctuations	7	1.4
Amplitude fluctuations	18	3.6
Total	502	100.0

Fig. 7 shows a regular and irregular type of curve and a part of the electronystamograph curve for a case of dysrhythmia.

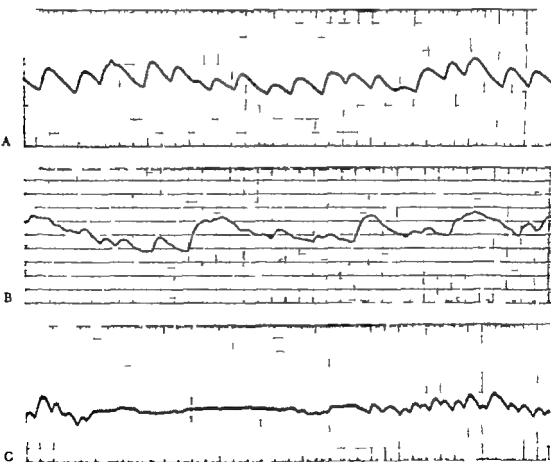


FIG — 4. *A. Regular reaction. B. Irregular reaction. C. dysrhythmia.*

*Hot water caloric stimulation* after cold water caloric stimulation was performed on 235 patients.

The duration could be measured for 230 ears (49.4 per cent) only. Table 19 shows the duration values.

TABLE 19 — *Duration during water calorisation at 44°C*

Duration	Number of cases	Per cent
under 60 sec.	40	17.4
60—99 sec.	95	41.5
100—150 sec.	77	33.5
over 150 sec.	18	7.8
Total	230	100.0

Durations of under 60 sec. numbered 40 (17.4 per cent). Durations longer than 150 sec. totalled 18 (7.8 per cent). Durations of under 60 sec. were thus distinctly more numerous in hot water than in cold water calorisation (17.4 per cent > 5.7 per cent), and those over 150 sec. fewer than in cold water calorisation (7.8 per cent < 15.6 per cent). In addition, duration was measurable much less often in hot than in cold water calorisation (49.4 per cent < 62.7 per cent) because the reaction was much more infrequent in hot water calorisation.

Maximum intensity was determinable in 163 ears, mean 6.19 deg./sec. Cases of severe hypoexcitability were even more numerous in the hot water than in the cold water test, and it was not possible to determine the maximum intensity for these cases.

Table 20 gives standard calculations for duration and maximum intensity during cold and hot water calorisation and during cold water calorisation in normal and traumatised cases.

TABLE 20 — *Standard calculations*

	Number	Mean	Standard deviation	Standard error
Mean duration, cold water calorisation	166	109.1	97.8	2.16
Mean duration, hot water calorisation	166	91.5	50.8	2.59
Mean duration, cold water calorisation, normal reaction cases	60	124.5	21.6	2.80
Mean duration, cold water calorisation, cases with lesions	255	96.6	29.7	1.86
Mean maximum intensity cold water calorisation	245	7.42	3.67	0.24
Mean maximum intensity hot water calorisation	163	6.19	3.04	0.238
Mean maximum intensity cold water calorisation, normal reaction cases	60	10.07	3.94	0.509
Mean maximum intensity cold water calorisation, cases with lesions	185	6.56	3.15	0.229

Both cold and hot water calorisation was performed on these 166 patients.

The mean duration in cold water calorisation was 109.1 sec. and in hot water calorisation 91.3 sec. In calculating the mean only the cases tested with both cold and hot water calorisation were considered. The difference  $109.1 > 91.3$  is statistically significant. The mean duration for cold water calorisation in the cases with a normal reaction was 124.5 sec., and in the cases with lesions 96.6 sec. The difference,  $124.5 > 96.6$  is statistically significant.

The mean maximum intensity in cold water calorisation was 7.42 deg./sec. and in hot water calorisation 6.19 deg./sec. The difference  $7.42 > 6.19$  is fairly small but nevertheless statistically significant. The mean maximum intensity in cold water calorisation in the normal reaction group was 10.07 deg./sec. and in the injured group 6.56 deg./sec. The difference  $10.07 > 6.56$  is statistically significant.

Directional preponderance was demonstrated in 47 patients, i.e. 18.4 per cent of the total material. However it could only be tested in 235 patients on whom both cold and hot water calorisation was performed.

Table 21 shows the result of the vestibular study of 251 patients.

TABLE 21 — *Result of the vestibular study*

		Number of patients	Per cent
Bilateral symmetrical finding	normal reaction	24	9.6
	hypoexcitability	83	33.1
	no response	69	27.5
	canal paresis	28	11.1
	directional preponderance	47	18.7
Total		251	100.0

A bilateral-symmetrical vestibular finding was made for 176 patients (70.2 per cent). The vestibular finding was normal for both ears in only 24 patients (9.6 per cent). The deviation of the vestibular reaction of either ear from normal was clear in all 83 cases of bilateral-symmetrical hypoexcitability. Twenty eight cases (11.1 per cent) involved canal paresis, that is relative vestibular hypofunction of one ear compared with the contralateral ear.

*Air calorisation* was performed on both ears of five patients.

The duration could be measured for three ears. It was 70, 90 and 110 sec. In two cases duration began during calorisation and in one case only 75 sec. after the beginning of calorisation. Accurate determination of the termination of the reaction was possible in all three cases.

The electrovystagmography curve was irregular in three ears and no reaction was elicited in another seven. The result of the vestibular study of these five patients was as follows: three patients had no reaction in either ear, vestibular hypoexcitability was established in both ears of one patient, and one patient had canal paresis.

The forms of vestibular disturbances suggestive of *central vestibular lesion* are given in Table 22.

TABLE 22 — *Central vestibular lesion*

	Number of patients
Spontaneous nystagmus	12
Directional preponderance	17
ENG-dysrhythmia	6 (10)
Bilateral normal hearing and bilateral vestibular lesion	17
Total	52

Four of the 10 cases of dysrhythmia belonged to the directional preponderance group

Indications of central vestibular lesion were seen in 82 patients (32.0 per cent) of the 256 given a vestibular examination.



## VII OTHER REASONS EXTRA TO TRAUMA FOR HEARING AND VESTIBULAR DEFECTS

The principal reason for the hearing and vestibular defects in the present series was a wound resulting in brain injury. However, there may have been other contributory factors, especially as it was quite a long time between the injury and the present study. The case reports were searched for clues as to possible other reasons, but the finding is based in part on the patient's own account. The information is very inadequate, but it helps to some extent to explain the etiology of the current neuro-otological status of the patients.

### A Factors Affecting Hearing Before the Wound

No objective information was available on the patients' hearing at the beginning of the war. Eight patients said that their hearing was definitely impaired at the time the war broke out.

According to their own statements, eight patients had had a purulent discharge from the ears before they were wounded. One of them had undergone ear surgery for chronic otitis media.

Ten patients had suffered a minor skull injury during the war before the wound that resulted in brain damage. These wounds had all been closed and many of them had been caused by a bullet or a splinter.

Sixteen patients reported that they had been so close to an explosion that tinnitus or loss of hearing ensued. No hearing tests were performed for most of these cases.

### B Injuries after the Wound

Fifteen patients sustained a skull injury resulting in the loss of consciousness. Complete loss of hearing in one ear was the consequence for two of them. Seven of these injuries occurred during the war, eight later.

One patient sustained ear damage from a detonation as a result of which he became markedly hard of hearing in one ear.

One patient had worked for several years in conditions of intense noise and this had probably contributed to the hearing loss.

## C Diseases

Nine patients had meningitis or a brain abscess after being wounded.

One patient had otosclerosis. Stapedectomy was performed on both ears.

One patient had suffered an acute loss of hearing in one ear for an unknown reason. His hearing improved somewhat later but he was still very hard of hearing in one ear.

There was one case of congenital harelip and cleft palate. This patient had bilateral chronic adhesive otitis.

A wartime history of lues was involved in seven cases. The disease had been properly managed in the early stage in each of these cases and there was no information on possible sequelae.

## D Ototoxic Drugs

Seven patients had obviously received streptomycin for pleurisy or pulmonary tuberculosis. Nothing was known, however, about possible drug-induced inner ear damage nor whether the drug had been streptomycin sulphate or dihydrostreptomycin. Almost all the patients had been given an ample measure of various drugs for long periods as treatment for the symptoms caused by the brain injury. Many of them had taken analgesics regularly. Various staracts had been employed as sedatives. Patients suffering from epilepsy had regularly taken hydantoin derivatives, barbiturates and Mysoline. The patients were also under the influence of ordinary medication during the neuro-otological examination. It was not considered possible to abandon medication because of the risk of deterioration of their disease.

# VIII CORRELATION BETWEEN THE NEURO-OTOLOGICAL STATUS AND LOCALISATION OF THE INJURY

A Unilateral deafness was probably the result of trauma in 23 cases. The localisation of the injuries in these cases was distributed as shown in Table 23

TABLE 23 — *Localisation of the injury in the cases of unilateral deafness*

Localisation of injury	Number of cases	Total of injuries
Temporal	13	48
Frontal	4	61
Occipital	1	22
Parietal	1	63
Facial	1	23
Concussion-contusion injuries impossible to localise more precisely	5	62
Total	25	

Most of the cases of unilateral deafness were caused by an injury to the temporal region. In seven of the 13 cases with unilateral deafness caused by a temporal injury the wound had affected the immediate aural region.

B A bilaterally normal pure tone audiogram was recorded in 26 cases. Table 24 reveals the localisation of the injury in these cases.

TABLE 24 — *Localisation of the injury in the cases with normal hearing*

Localisation of injury	Number of cases	Total of injuries
Parietal	7	63
Frontal	6	61
Temporal	5	48
Facial	5	23
Occipital	2	22
Concussion-contusion injuries impossible to localise more precisely	5	62
Total	26	

Injuries of different types were represented fairly evenly in the patients with normal hearing

C. In 72 cases there was no vestibular reaction from either ear. The localisation of the injuries in these cases is presented in Table 25.

TABLE 25 — *Localisation of the injury in the cases with no vestibular reaction from either ear*

Localisation of injury	Number of cases	Total of injuries
Frontal	19	61
Parietal	10	65
Facial		25
Temporal	6	48
Occipital	6	2
Concussion-contusion injuries impossible to localise more precisely	24	62
Total	72	

Concussion-contusion and frontal injuries were in the majority of the cases with severe bilateral vestibular damage.

D. The vestibular reaction was normal bilaterally in 24 cases. The localisation of the injury in these cases is given in Table 26.

TABLE 26 — *Localisation of the injury in the cases with intact vestibular function*

Localisation of injury	Number of cases	Total of injuries
Parietal	9	65
Occipital	4	22
Frontal	1	61
Facial	1	25
Temporal	0	48
Concussion-contusion injuries impossible to localise more precisely	9	62
Total	4	

There were no temporal injuries in the cases with intact vestibular function.

E. Aphasia was established in 17 patients at an examination immediately after they were wounded. Fowler's test was performed on three patients with aphasia. The recruitment phenomenon was positive in all of them. The discrimination score was 100 per cent for 16 patients. One patient had unilateral 45 per cent discrimination loss and deafness in the other ear. Not a single case of discrepancy between the pure tone audiogram and threshold for speech discrimination was established.

## IX DISCUSSION

### Hearing defects

According to the literature, the incidence of hearing defects caused by skull injuries varies. However many investigators have encountered them in about a half of the patients sustaining a skull trauma (*Schuknecht and Dawson 1956 Ey 1966*) The studies have generally been concerned with injuries arising in peacetime. The present investigation established impaired hearing in 89.1 per cent of the patients an average of 23 years after they were wounded. In the age group to which the patients of the present series belong changes of such magnitude that they are of essential importance for the evaluation of the hearing examination results are not caused by pure presbycusis (*Leisti 1949*)

Skull injuries usually lead to sensori neural or combined hearing defects. Purely conductive hearing loss is rare. This was established by e.g. *Piquet and Decroix (1954)* Maximum hearing loss is usually observed in high tones (*Schuknecht and Dawson 1956 Proctor et al. 1956, Lammio and Aho 1962*) Sensori neural hearing defects predominated also in the present material. Ears with sensori-neural hearing defects accounted for 82.4 per cent of all ears with a loss of hearing. In contrast, only 2.9 per cent of the ears had conductive hearing defects. The maximum hearing loss was in the higher tones in the majority of cases. The commonest type of audiogram was the descending type of curve, 75 per cent of the ears. The descent began at 2000 Hz in 48 per cent of the ears. Ears with sensori neural hearing defects and those with combined hearing impairment were taken into consideration when determining the curve types. However there was again a rise in the higher frequencies in 38 per cent of the declining types of curves.

There was not a single completely deaf patient in the material, but 25 (9.8 per cent) patients had unilateral deafness. Deafness was probably the sequela of the wartime injury in 23 cases. Only 28 (10.9 per cent) patients had a normal pure tone audiogram. Although there were relatively few patients with normal hearing, the material included quite a number with a good mean hearing threshold. The mean was 25 dB or better for roughly 60 per cent of the hearing ears. This was due to a great extent to the fact that the frequencies 500, 1000 and 2000 were taken into consideration in calculating the mean and that more pronounced impairment of hearing occurs only after 2000 Hz. Thus, it was also possible to determine the speech thresholds in many cases, and it was 45 dB or better in 73.4 per cent of these ears.

Fowler test is regarded as the most reliable method of differentiating between cochlear and retrocochlear lesion. *Dix Hallpike and Hood (1948)* considered a positive recruitment phenomenon to suggest damage to Corti's organ. According to current research, this is the case in most instances. Discrepancy between the pure tone audio-

gram and threshold for speech discrimination, and poor speech discrimination is regarded as indicative of retrocochlear lesion (Harbert and Young 1964 Elzner 1966, Fowler and Altmann 1966 Benítez et al. 1966). But opinions differ as to the significance of adaptation. Most workers consider that strong adaptation occurs more often in retrocochlear than in end organ lesions (Palra 1964 Benítez et al. 1966). In general, too great diagnostic significance should not be attached to adaptation. Moderate adaptation, in particular, may occur in many kinds of hearing defects. It was possible to perform Fowler's test on 63 (24.6 per cent) of the patients in the present material. The recruitment phenomenon was negative in no more than 9 per cent of the cases. Discrepancy between the pure tone audiogram and threshold for speech discrimination was established in only 5 per cent (24 cases out of 487). The discrimination score could be determined in 92.6 per cent of the hearing ears. No discrimination loss at all was established in 89.8 per cent. A discrimination loss of over 50 per cent was established in only 0.2 per cent. It was possible to perform the adaptation test on 478 ears (93.4 per cent). Adaptation was over 30 dB in 11.1 per cent. Although their pure tone audiogram was normal, three cases displayed adaptation of over 30 dB. Similarly adaptation of over 30 dB was established in an ear with conductive hearing loss. Palra (1964) also reported that strong adaptation can sometimes occur in ears with normal hearing.

Most workers regard traumatization of an end organ, possibly in association with damage to the auditory nerve as the commonest reason for impairment of hearing after a skull injury. Advocates of a central etiology are fewer (Zange 1915 Kechi 1965). The present study suggests that the hearing impairment established in brain injured ex-servicemen was mostly due to damage to an end organ. Examination of the 17 patients who developed aphasia after being wounded strengthen this opinion. No signs of a central hearing defect were demonstrated in these patients either although some of the cases must have involved injury to the temporal lobe. None of the patients with aphasia revealed discrepancy between the pure tone audiogram and threshold for speech discrimination, and discrimination loss was established in one patient only. Moreover the recruitment phenomenon was positive in all the cases in which it was possible to perform Fowler's test.

### Vestibular damage

The incidence of vestibular damage caused by skull traumas is also known to be very high, in some cases even higher than that of hearing defects (Lund and Aho 1962). Vestibular damage was established in 90.6 per cent of the present series, which is little different from the incidence of hearing defects.

Disturbances of equilibrium were present in 71.5 per cent of the patients. Fifty per cent of the material reported by Gurdjian and Webster (1958) complained of vertigo. The corresponding percentage in Eys material was 61.

Spontaneous nystagmus was established electronystagmographically in 4.7 per cent of the material. The nystagmus was very faint and irregular in all the cases. Purodda and Cenacchi (1964) observed that spontaneous nystagmus demonstrated a long time

reason for the complete hearing loss in one ear. In addition, a reason other than traumatization was found to have caused the severe hearing loss in at least two cases. Otosclerosis was diagnosed bilaterally in one case. Another patient had chronic adhesive otitis bilaterally which was possibly due to congenital harelip and cleft palate. These factors account for the conductive hearing loss in at least two cases. No objective information was available on ear diseases suffered before the war or on the hearing of the patients when the war started. However eight patients told that their hearing was distinctly impaired at the outbreak of the war.

The drug therapy given to the patients, above all epilepsy drugs and sedatives, may have influenced the vestibular function in particular. The patients in fact continued with their normal medication at the time of examination. *Aschan et al.* (1956) reported that postural nystagmus was sometimes demonstrable in patients under sedation during psychiatric treatment. *Mehra* (1964) noted that anticonvulsive medication has an inhibiting effect on duration, total of strokes and amplitude in nystagmus.

#### *Effect of the localisation of the injury on hearing and vestibular defects*

Blows to the occipital region very readily cause a sensori-neural hearing loss, according to *Schuknecht and Davison* (1956). However temporal injuries were the cause of the most severe hearing defects in the material described by *Caliceti and di Fede* (1964) which comprised only closed skull-brain injuries. In the present material, too, it was temporal injuries that caused the greatest number of cases of unilateral deafness in 15 out of 23 cases. However these temporal wounds included seven injuries to the immediate region of the ear. Traumas affecting the immediate aural system totalled eight, and there was thus only one case in which the ear escaped a complete hearing loss. However there were also patients with normal hearing who had suffered temporal injuries, and no definite differences between various types of injury were observable. The cases with normal vestibular function included no temporal injuries at all. It would seem, then, that a temporal trauma always leads to vestibular damage. Severe bilateral vestibular disturbances were caused chiefly by traumas of concussion-contusion type.

## X SUMMARY

The purpose of the investigation was to throw light on the incidence and nature of hearing defects and vestibular lesions in brain injured ex-servicemen. Additionally the proportion of peripheral and central hearing and vestibular lesions in the material and possible correlations between the neuro-otological finding and the localisation of the injury were studied.

The material consisted of 256 patients wounded in the Finnish wars of 1939-1940 and 1941-1944 who had been found on neurological examination to have a brain injury as the sequela of the wound.

All the patients were given a pure tone and speech audiometric examination. To establish loudness recruitment, Fowler's test was performed on the cases in which a distinct difference was stated in the hearing ability of the ears at the hearing threshold level. Adaptation was measured at the threshold level by observing the shift in the hearing threshold during three minutes. The most important part of the vestibular study was the caloric test which was recorded electronystagmographically. Calorisation was done with water of 30°C and 44°C and in five cases with air of room temperature.

The audiologic examinations revealed that 89.1 per cent of the patients had impaired hearing. Unilateral deafness was established in 9.8 per cent. There was not a single case of complete deafness in the series. A sensori-neural hearing impairment was the commonest hearing defect in the material. The commonest of the audiogram types was the descending curve, and the depression occurred most often at 2000 Hz. Fowler's test, the adaptation test, speech discrimination and the examination of the possible discrepancy between pure tone audiogram and speech threshold led to the conclusion that the majority of the hearing defects were of end organ origin.

Vestibular damage was established in 90.6 per cent of the patients. The majority of the injuries were bilateral-symmetrical (*bilateral-symmetrical*). Symptoms suggestive of a central vestibular lesion were encountered in 52 per cent of the material. Spontaneous nystagmus, directional preponderance, electronystagmography dysrhythmia, and association of bilaterally normal hearing with bilateral vestibular lesion were taken as symptoms indicative of a central lesion. The patients had spontaneous nystagmus or directional preponderance of very long duration. Contrary to the hearing defects which appeared to be mostly peripheral, numerous symptoms suggestive of central vestibular damage were encountered.

Although the main cause of the present hearing defects and vestibular disturbances was wound resulting in a brain injury there were other contributory factors. This especially as a fairly long time had elapsed from the original injury. It appeared, e.g., that the complete hearing loss in one ear had occurred post-traumatically for another reason in at least two cases. The chemotherapy administered to the patients, above all



epilepsy drugs and sedatives, may have affected first and foremost the vestibular status.

A temporal injury was the commonest reason for unilateral deafness. However in such cases the trauma had often affected the immediate aural region. The hearing of some of the patients remained normal in spite of the temporal injury. But it always appeared to cause vestibular damage.

## REFERENCES

- ABOULKER, P. STREKERS, J. M., GOSIV, Y. and MARIV, P. 1964 Luxations traumatiques des osselets *Ann Otolaryng (Paris)* 81 515-554
- ALEXANDER, A., and SCHOLL, R., 1938 Beschwerden und Störungen im Hör- und Gleichgewichtorgan bei der Nachuntersuchung Schädel erlitteter *Masch Ohrheilk* 72 1021-1068.
- ALTENBURGER, K., 1963 Beitrag zur Klinik der post traumatischen Schwerhörigkeit. Beobachtungen an einem Gruppenschalltrauma. *Z Laryng Rhinol Otol* 42, 65-73.
- ALTMANN, F. 1964 Über Schwindel. *Masch Oh rheitk* 98 162-175.
- ANTTAKK, E. E., and AGEST, K. A., 1964 Myöhälinen aivopätee ja aivokääl ontalehdus sots aivotraumatismine kuollisyyne. *Duodecim* 80 94-102
- ARNOLD, G. E., 1951 Die Untersuchung zentraler Hörstörungen mit neuen Hörprüfungsmethoden. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 157 521-542.
- ARMAG, F. G. and PAPABELLA, M. M., 1964 Traumatic fracture of the stapes. *Laryngoscope* 74 1529-1532.
- ASCHAN, G. 1956 Öraa fysiologi - jämvikt, p. 88-95. In *Nordisk lärobok oto-rhino-laryngologi*. C. O. Nylen, H. C. Andersen, T. Leegard and U. Sjöral (ed.) Munksgaard, København.
- ASCHAN, G. BERCHTOLD, M., and STABLE, J. 1956 Nystagmography Recording f nystagmus in clinical neuro-otological examination. *Acta Otolaryng (Stockholm)*, suppl. 129
- BÁRANY, R., 1921 Diagnose von Krankheitserscheinungen im Bereiche des Otolithenapparates *Acta Otolaryng (Stockholm)*, 2, 434-457
- BARKER, H. O. 1964 a) Positional nystagmus. Testing and interpretation. *Ann Otol* 73 838-850
- BARKER, H. O., 1964 b) Positional nystagmus especially after head injury *Laryngoscope* 74 891-944
- BECK, C., 1964 Ungewöhnlicher Verlauf einer Labyrinthquersfraktur *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 184 70-72.
- BEUTEL, J. T. CONYERS, J. and NOVA, V. 1966 Auditory manifestations f cochlear and retrocochlear lesions in humans. *Ann Otol* 75 149-161
- BEHMAYER, W. 1951 Hirnverletzungen. Springer Wien.
- BRÜHL, G. 1917 Kurzer Bericht über eine einjährige kriegsöhrenärztliche Tätigkeit im Heimatgebiete. *Pawlow-Scherfers Beitr Anat Ohrenheilk (Berlin)* 9 82-92.
- BRUNNER, H., 1925 Pathologie und Klinik der Erkrankungen des Innenohres nach stumpfen Schädeltraumen. *Masch Ohrenheilk* 59 697-709
- BRUNNER, H., 1940 Disturbances f the function of the ear after concussion f the brain. *Laryngoscope* 50, 921-929.
- BURN, S. N. 1965 A guide to neuro-otological diagnosis for the practicing otolaryngologist. *Acta Otolaryng (Stockholm)*, suppl. 209
- CASERLE, V. and JOBERT, P. 1965 Influence des mouvements oculaires volontaires ou réflexes sur les réactions vestibulaires ystagnographiques. *Ann Otolaryng (Paris)*, 82, 685-709

- CALVERT, G. and DE FERE, S., 1964 Risultati degli esami cocleovestibolari precoci nel trauma cranici. *Boll Mal Orecch* 5 252-260.
- CAWTHORNE, T. 1951 Positional nystagmus. *Ann Otol* 63 480-490.
- CAWTHORNE, T. E., FITZGERALD, G. and HALLPIKE, C. S., 1952 Studies in human vestibular function. *Brain* 65 138-160 161-180.
- COATS, A. C., 1965 Directional preponderance and unilateral weakness as observed in the electro-nystagmographic examination. *Ann Otol* 74 654-668.
- DECMOIX, G., PIQUET J. J., LEBERRA, C., and FONTAN, M., 1938 Les séquelles centrales des traumatismes crâniens fermés. III. Les surdités centrales. *Rev Otonéurophal* 10 13-21.
- DECKER, 1916 Ueber Kriegsverletzungen am Ohr der oberen Luftwege und der Gehörgeleiten. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 98 1-32.
- DIEROFF, H. G. and KOWALIK, J., 1965 Erfahrungen mit dem klassischen Langenbeck Test und dem Tonhörschwellenschwund Test nach Carhart bei der Lokalisation von Innenohrschäden. *Mtschr Ohrenheilk* 99 481-489.
- DIX, M. R., and HALLPIKE, C. S., 1952 The pathology, symptomatology and diagnosis of certain common disorders of the vestibular system. *Ann Otol* 61 987-1016.
- DIX, M. R., and HALLPIKE, C. S., 1966 Observations on the clinical features and neurological mechanism of spontaneous nystagmus resulting from unilateral acoustic neurofibromata. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) 61 1-22.
- DIX, M. R., HALLPIKE, C. S., and HOOD, J. D., 1958 Observations upon the loudness recruitment phenomenon, with special reference to differential diagnosis of disorders of internal ear and eighth nerve. *J Laryng* 62, 671-686.
- DOZ, I. E. S., and BOTTEVA, T., 1965 Posttraumatic conductive hearing loss. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chicago) 82, 331-339.
- EDMOND, A. A., J. VAN GROEN, J. J., HULE, J. and JONCKHEE, L. M. W., 1949 The turning test with small regulable stimuli. VI. *J Laryng* 63 306-310.
- EISEL, B. S., HEDGECOCK, L. D. and WILLIAMS, H. L., 1966 A review of the literature on the audiologic aspect of neuro-otologic diagnosis. *Laryngoscope* 76, 1-29.
- EISEL, F., 1943 Die otologische Beurteilung des Schädeltraumatikers. *Pract Otorhinolaryng* (Basel) 10 suppl. 1.
- ER, W., 1966 Zur Häufigkeit und Beurteilung von Gleichgewichtstrübungen bei Schädeltraumen. *Z Laryng Rhinol Otol* 45 570-575.
- FITZGERALD, G. and HALLPIKE, C. S., 1952 Studies in human vestibular function. Observations on the directional preponderance ("nystagmusbereitschaft") of caloric nystagmus resulting from cerebral lesions. *Brain*, 65 115-137.
- FOWLER, E. P., 1965 Some attributes of "loudness recruitment" and "loudness decruitment". *Ann Otol* 4 500-506.
- FOWLER, E. P. JR., and ALTMAN, F., 1966 Auditory and vestibular effects of trauma to the head. *J Trauma* 6, 20-42.
- FREDERICKSON, J. M., FERNANDEZ, C., 1964 Vestibular disorders in fourth ventricle lesions. Experimental studies in the cat. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chicago) 80 521-540.
- FREDERICKSON, J. M., GRIFFITH, A. W. and LINDSEY, J. R., 1963 Transverse fracture of the temporal bone. A clinical and histopathological study. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chicago) 8 770-784.
- FRIEDZEL, H., 1961 Zur Systematik, Klinik und Untersuchungsmethodik der Vestibularisstörungen. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 177 335-396.
- GERHAARDT, H. J., 1965 Zu den des Recruitment Phänomen. *Z Laryng Rhinol Otol* 44 351-500.
- Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) Suppl. 233

- GLASSINGER, J. 1964 Zur Operativen Wiederherstellung einer durch Schädeltrauma unterbrochenen Gehörknöchelchenkette. *Z Laryng Rhinol Otol* 43 184-190
- GORDON, M., 1924 Die Kriegschädigungen des Nervus octavus, p. 730-739. In *Handbuch der Neurologie* O Bunko und O Foerster (ed) I. I, Sect. - Springer Berlin.
- GORDON, N. 1934 Post-traumatic vertigo, with special reference to positional vertigo. *Lancet* I, 1216-1218.
- GRAMM, J. T. 1965 Tinnitus urium. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), Suppl. 202.
- GRAMOWSKI, K. H., and UVOER, E., 1965 Traumatisch bedingter Nystagmus alternans. *HNO* 13 22-25.
- GRACE, J. J. 1965 Central regulation of the vestibular system. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) 59 211-216.
- GROVE, W. E., 1958 Skull fractures involving the ear - clinical study of 211 cases. *Laryngoscope* 68 673-707 853-867
- GULICK, R. P. and PFALTZ, C. R., 1964 The diagnostic value of caloric tests in otoneurology. *Ann Otol* 73 893-913.
- GURJAN, E. S., and WEBSTER, J. E., 1958 Head injuries. Mechanisms, diagnosis and management. Little, Brown & Co., Boston.
- HAHLBOCK, K. H., 1964 Labiles Gehör nach Schädeltrauma dargestellt in Békésy Audiogrammen. *HNO* 12, 38-43.
- HAMMOND, V. 1964 Conductive deafness following head injury. *J Laryng* 73 837-843.
- HARSTEN F. and LOUHO, I. M., 1964 Threshold auditory adaptation measured by tone decay test and Békésy audiometry. *Ann Otol* 73 63-60.
- HART, C. W. J. 1965 The value of the hot caloric test. *Laryngoscope* 75 302-315.
- HENRIKSEN, O. and TROTT, H., 1964 Alvorssymptomen diagnostikk i hørto. *Duodecim* 80 735-739
- HELMANN, K., 1922 Zur Pathologischen Anatomie der Taubheit nach Kopfschuss. *Z Hals-Nasen-Ohrenh.* 1 356-370.
- HEDENRÖD, G. 1966 En översikt i vestibulär oto-neurologi. Studentlitteratur Lund.
- HILLBOM, E., 1959 After-effects of brain-injuries. Research on the symptoms causing in alidism of persons in Finland having sustained brain injuries during wars of 1939-40 and 1941-1944 (Thesis, Helsinki) *Acta Psychiat Neurol Scand* 36 suppl. 142.
- HIRSCH, I. J. PALA, T. and GOODMAN, A., 1954 Difference limen and recruitment. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chicago) 60 525-540
- HORMAN, W. 1961 Vestibularuntersuchungen nach Hemisphärektomie am Kaninchen. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 177 452-457
- HONKIA, A., 1959 Hypacusis i samband med craniocerebral skada. *Finska Läkarsällsk. Handl* 10., 163-172.
- JACKS, J. 1962 Békésy audiometry. *Int J Audiol* 1 160-164
- JONKKEA, L. B. W. 1964 Elektronystagmographie. *HNO* 12., 325-329
- JONKKEA, L. B. W. 1965 Die Untersuchung des Gleichgewichtsorgans in der Praxis. *HNO* 13 181-185
- JONKKEA, L. B. W. and PHILIPSSON, A. J. 1964 Elektron stigmographie. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), suppl. 189
- KACHT, R., 1964 Zur Frage des akuten Unfalls. *Z Laryng Rhinol Otol* 43 290-293.

- KECIC B 1965 *Die Oto-rhino-laryngologi bei Schädelverletzungen*. W. M. udrich Verl., Wien.
- KLEY W 1966 Frakturen und Luxationen der Gehörknöchelchenkette bei Schläfenbeinfrakturen. *Z Laryng Rhinol Otol* 45 292-313.
- KLINGENBERG, A., 1929 Die isolierte Schneckenfraktur bei Schädelbasisbrüchen. *Z Hals Nasen Ohrenheilk* 22 452-463.
- KLINGER, M., 1961 *Das Schädelhurntrauma*. Leitfaden der Diagnostik und Therapie Thieme, Stuttgart.
- KRAUS, M., 1951 Über die schnelle Komponente des labyrinthären Nystagmus. *Arch Oh Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 157 485-499.
- LAKOL, G. and KORNROVER, H. H., 1962 Zur Bedeutung peripher und zentral vestibulärer Störungen nach Kopftraumen. Elektronystagmographisch-statische Untersuchungen. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 179 366-385.
- LANGE, R., 1965 Spätkomplikationen nach frontobasalen Verletzungen. *Mach Ohrenheilk* 97 240-245.
- LE DEN, R., 1965 Les traumatismes de l'oreille en pratique de guerre. *Rev laryng* 86, 715-732.
- LEONHARDT E., 1963 Die Berufsschäden des Ohres. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 185 11-242.
- LEISTI, T. J 1949 Audiometric studies of presbycusis. *Act Otolaryng* (Stockholm) 37 555-562.
- LINDHAY J R., 1951 Postural vertigo and positional nystagmus. *Ann Otol* 60 1154-1149.
- LITTON W B. and McCABE, B. F. 1966 Neural Vs. sensory lesion Vestibular signs. *Laryngoscope* 76, 1115-1127.
- LYNN, J. S. and AND, J. 1962: Oto-neurological finding in post traumatic encephalopathy. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) 56 546-554.
- MARASZ, P. 1910 Die Folgezustände der Verletzungen des Schläfenbeins. *Arch Deutsch Otolog Ges* 19 18-50.
- MAZZINI, R., and NICELLI, R., 1957 Aspetti audiometrici delle sordità nei traumi cranici senza fratture. *Riv Oto Neuro Oftal* 32 436-451.
- MASPIÉRI, R., SEVETTE, D. FOURNIER, J. C., and KÉRAVEC, J. 1965 L'habilitation vestibulaire par les épreuves rotatoires. *Ann Otolaryng* (Paris) 82, 429-434.
- MASPOUST L. C., JR., BARVER, H. W. MEYER, J. and MEYER, R., 1966 Deficits in auditory frequency discrimination following temporal and frontal lobe lesions monkeys. *J Audit Res* 6 261-276.
- MASPOUST L. C., JR., BARVER, H. W. and VERDURA, J. 1963 Auditory frequency discrimination in cortically ablated monkeys. *J Audit Res* 5 85-93.
- MEYER, Y. N. 1964a) Electronystagmography. A study of caloric tests in normal subjects. *J Laryng* 78 520-529.
- MEYER, Y. N. 1964b) Effects of anticonvulsive medication on vestibular function, an electronystagmographic study. *J Laryng* 8 530-542.
- MEYMAN, Y. 1947 Korvan sota mmest, p 193-210. *Sotakirurgia kokenmukala*. WSOY Porvoo.
- MIRILAK, V., 1943 Beitrag zum peripheren Labyrinthismus. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 160 433-443.
- Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) Suppl. 33

- MILOVIC, B., 1963 Electronystagmography *Laryngoscope* 73 15-258
- MILOVIC, B., 1967 Electronystagmographical study of vertigo. *Acta Otorhinolaryng.* (B) vol. 29 85-94
- MONTAUDO, A., and DITTAU, F. 1964. Ergebnisse der neuen Vestibularsuntersuchungsmethoden bei Schädeltrauma. *Mscr. Ohrenheilk.* 96, 331-343.
- MONTANDON, A., MONTANDON P., KAPLAN G. and LIDON, J. 1965 Nystagmus central et nystagmus périphérique. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockholm) 59 530-537
- MULLER, D., 1965: Schwerhörigkeit und Schwindel als Folge schädeltraumatischer Labyrinthschädigung. *HNO* 13 161-165.
- NAASA, F. R., 1907: Beitrag zur Histologie der erkrankten Traubenwinde. *Z. Ohrenheilk.* 54 17-244
- NAMSTAD, P. 1946 Die Schädigung des Innenohrs und seiner Nerven nach Schädeltrauma. *Mscr. Ohrenheilk.* 79 63-88, 222-252.
- NYLÉN, C. O. 1958 a) Jämvärtsprövningar p 111-136. In *Nordisk kronisk otorhino-laryngologi*. C. O. Nylén, H. C. Andersen, T. Leegaard and U. Silral (ed.), Munksgaard, København.
- NYLÉN, C. O. 1958 b) SJ Löfmar i innerörat. *Otöneurologi skriftlig bibliografi* p. 36-78. In *Nordisk kronisk otorhino-laryngologi*. C. O. Nylén, H. C. Andersen, T. Leegaard and U. Silral (ed.) Munksgaard, København.
- ORRISON, F. C., 1963 Developments in the recording of nystagmoid movements of the eye. *J. Laryng.* 77 171-176.
- ORRISON, F. C., 1964 Variations in nystagmoid response to stimulation, caused by a number of physical, mental and chemical factors. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockholm) 57 401-404
- PAL A. T. 1967 Recruitment testing. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago) 66, 93-98
- PALVA, T. 1961 Recruitment and post-stimulatory fatigue in diagnosis. *J. Laryng.* 71 216-231.
- PAL A. T. 1964 Auditory adaptation. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockholm) 57 207-216
- PAL A. T. and PAL A. A., 1966 Auditory adaptation. *J. Laryng.* 80 437-450.
- PETERSEN, E., 1964 Vestibulospinal reflexes. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago) 79 481-486.
- PETERSEN, E., and ZILSTORFF-PETERSEN, E., 1964 Vestibulospinal reflexes. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago) 79 600-605
- PRALTZ, C. R., 1958 Diagnose und Therapie der Gleichgewichtströrungen Schere. *Med. Woch.* 86, 425-432.
- PIQUET J. and DUBOIS B., 1934 La surdité par trauma crânien ou place en pathologie auditive. *J. Franc. Otorhinolaryng.* 3 759-751
- PIQUET J. and PIQUET J. J. 1958 Les séquelles centrales des traumatismes crâniens fermés. V. Les vertiges post-commotionnels et leurs manifestations objectives. *Rev. Otorinolaryng. ophtol.* 30 29-47
- PIRODDA, E., and CERVACCHI, V. 1964 Caratteristiche fondamentali del reperto elettro-nistagmografico nei traumatismi cranici. *Clin. Oto-rhino-laryng.* 16, 57-84
- PORTMAN, M. 1964 A propos d recruitment. Sa mesure son origine sa valeur. *Rev. Laryng.* (Bordeaux) 85 477-493
- PROCTOR, B., GURDILAN, E. S. and WEBSTER, J. E., 1956 The ear in head trauma. *Laryngoscope* 66 16-39
- RANT, K., TAAVALA, E., SALMIVAALLA, A., and VILKUM, V. O. H., 1967 Audiometric and electro-nystagmographic studies of patients with traumatic skull injuries. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) suppl. 224

- RIDMARK, K., 1944 Tipping reaction in cases of vertigo after head injury. An oto-neurological study. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), suppl. 52.
- RINSCO-MAC-CLURE, J. S., 1964 Caloric tests: methods and interpretation. *Ann Otol* 73: 829-837.
- ROBINSON, M., 1961: Stapedial fracture following head trauma. *Laryngoscope* 71: 181-184.
- ROBIN, W. and NORMAN, C., 1966 Electronystagmography (ENG)-technique and significance. *Laryngoscope* 76, 961-969.
- RUSSELL, W. R., and WRIGHT, C. W. M., 1955. St. dies in traumatic epilepsy: factors influencing the incidence of epilepsy after brain wounds. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiat* 18: 93.
- SADZ, J. 1964 Traumatic fractures of the stapes. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chicago) 80: 258-262.
- SAKAI, K., 1911 Anatomische Befunde am menschlichen Gehörorgan nach Basisfraktur. *Arch Ohrenheilk* (Leipzig) 85: 188-197.
- SCHLITZER, E., 1936 Labyrinthzerpitterung isolierte Vestibularfraktur Spätmeningitis nach 16 Jahren. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) 24: 21-221.
- SCHROEDER, H.-O., 1953 Erfassung und Beurteilung vestibulärer Störungen nach Kopftraumen. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 163: 410-416.
- SCHROEDER, H. J. 1965 Nachweis vestibulärer Regulationsstörungen nach Schädelhirntraumen. *HVO* 13: 25-27.
- SCHUEVLECHT, H. F. 1950 A clinical study of auditory damage following blows to the head. *Ann Otol* 59: 331-357.
- SCHUEVLECHT, H. F. and DAYTON, R. G., 1956 Deafness and vertigo from head injury. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chicago) 63: 515-528.
- SCHUEVLECHT, H. F., LEFF, W. D. and PERLMAN, H. B. 1951 An experimental study of auditory damage following blow to the head. *Ann Otol* 60: 273-289.
- SHAMBAUGH, G. E., 1967 The Symptom of Vertigo. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chicago) 85: 515-516.
- SIBALA, U. 1945 Audiometrische Untersuchungen über Ohrenschäden im Kriege. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 153: 228-237.
- SILVERSTEIN, H., and WIEVER, L. M., 1965, Effect of unilateral cerebral lesions on nystagmus. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chicago) 81: 61-67.
- STEWART, E. M., 1956 End-organ deafness. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chicago) 63: 262-269.
- STANLEY, J. 1958 Electro-nystagmography in the caloric and rotatory tests. (A clinical study). *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), suppl. 137.
- STANLEY, J. 1964 Personal communication to docent J. S. Lumio.
- STANLEY, J. and TIERNS, J. 1966 Paroxysmal positional nystagmus. *Ann Otol* 74: 60-83.
- STENGER, P. 1900 Beitrag zur Kenntnis der nach Kopfverletzungen auftretenden Veränderungen im inneren Ohr. *Arch Ohrenheilk*. (Leipzig), 79: 45-69.
- THALMANN, R., 1964 Zur quantitativen Erfassung der Schwellenadaptation und des Tonschwundes. *Nachr Ohrenheilk* 98: 457-445.
- THEODOR, E. 1910 Beitrag zur Pathologie der Labyrinthzitterung. *Z Ohrenheilk* 61: 299-307.
- TIERANI, P. 1965 Traumatismen als ovannen myohalsnreiden kliniskast i differentiaall diagnostikasta. *Suom Lääk* 20: 1961-1963.
- ULICH, K., 1926 Verletzungen des Gehörorgans bei Schädelbasisfrakturen. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), suppl. 6.
- Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) Suppl. 133

- VOGEL, K., 1951 Zur Entstehung des peripheren Lagenystagmus. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 157 89-93.
- VOOT, U. 1954 Welche Rolle spielt der Lage-Nystagmus bei der Beurteilung post-traumatischer Hirnschäden. *Wochr U fallheilk* 57 2 -263.
- WAGTMAN, W. and ARLOW, J. 1965 Untersuchungen zum Spätverfall der Schwerhörigkeiten nach Schädeltraumen. *HNO* 13 256-264
- WAXER, E., 1960 Der praktische Arzt und das Schädel-Hirn Trauma. *Munchen Med Wochr* 102, 1011-1021
- WEDDE, W. F. GROSS, R. A., and FOX, C. A., 1944 Experimental structural alterations in the brain during and after concussion. *Surg Gynec Obstet*, 9 561-577
- WITTMANN, K., 1932 Über die traumatische Labyrinthdegeneration. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 131 59-124
- ZAROL, J. 1915 Die organischen Schädigungen des nervösen Ohrapparates im Kriege. *Munchen Med Wochr* 62, 1091







COVER

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksells Boktryckeri AB*

U 7842 1969

*Acta*  
OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

S U P P L E M E N T U

INFLUENCE OF SOME  
STREPTOMYCES ANTIBIOTICS ON THE  
INNER EAR OF THE GUINEA PIG

*Electrophysiological and histological study*

F OSTYN and J TYBERGHEIN



*From the Department of Otorhinolaryngology  
(Chief Professor F. Grubbé) Sint Rafaëlziekenhuis,  
University of Louvain, Louvain, Belgium*

INFLUENCE OF SOME  
STREPTOMYCIN ANTIBIOTICS ON THE  
INNER EAR OF THE GUINEA PIG

*Electrophysiological and histological study*

F. OSTÏN and J. TYBERGHEIN

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY  
*Almqvist & Wiksell*  
KERI AKTIEBOLAG  
L 4 1 68

# CONTENTS

Introduction	5
1 Experimental technique	7
I Functional tests	7
II Histology	8
2 Kanamycin	30
I Cochlear microphonics	30
II Histological results	37
3 Streptomycin — Viomycin — Capreomycin	54
I Cochlear microphonics	54
II Histological results	55
4 Neomycin	66
I Cochlear microphonics	66
II Histological results	69
General discussion and conclusions	74
Summary	82
Résumé	84
Zusammenfassung	86
References	88





# INTRODUCTION

The mechanism of inner ear intoxication by ototoxic antibiotics has not yet been fully elucidated, although numerous recent electrophysiological and histochemical studies and research by electron microscope have been carried out about this problem.

Keldel and his team studied the influence of streptomycin on the adaptation of the cells of Corti. Engström's remarkable research by means of electron microscopy has been able to locate very early lesions in the sensory cells. Kohonen examined the intoxication pattern of the sensory cells with phase contrast microscopy. With his histochemical technique Müsebeck was able to demonstrate alterations in the stria vascularis before histological and measurable functional disturbances are found in the inner ear. Rauch and Voldrich have shown a prolonged presence of the ototoxic product in the endolymph and the perilymph.

Nevertheless the results obtained are rather divergent. Not only is there an important difference in sensitivity of the various species of animals to the ototoxic antibiotics, but also in each species the individual sensitivity is very different.

Personally we experimented on guinea pigs because these animals lend themselves easily to the purpose of combined electrophysiological and histological studies. Moreover it is rather simple to work with relatively large series of guinea pigs. In order to obtain constant results most of our electrophysiological measurements (J.T.) were carried out on series of 10 ears. We (F.O.) performed careful histological controls on at least 5 ears in each series of animals.

## Purpose of the experiment

1. Finding the location of the lesions caused by ototoxic antibiotics in the whole of the inner ear and the chronology of their appearance.
2. Comparison of the toxicity of the antibiotics used.
3. Testing of certain drugs with a view to a reduction of the toxicity of certain antibiotics.
4. Establishing any possible relation between a decrease in cochlear microphonics and an accurate location of the lesions.

In order to have at our disposal a constant test material, we chose the homogeneous breed of guinea pigs from the Animal Virus Diseases Research Institute Pirbright, England. The composition of the fodder has been kept constant with a supplement of fresh vegetables and hay. The temperature and percentage of moisture of the air in the cages were equally

kept constant. Thus we suppose that the laboratory animals show less variation in their characteristics and their reactions to the administered products.

We experimented with kanamycin, streptomycin, viomycin, capreomycin and neomycin.

# 1 EXPERIMENTAL TECHNIQUE

## I FUNCTIONAL TESTS

### A The Preyer reflex

Before the first injection of the antibiotic to each series of animals, the auditory function of the animals was examined by means of a high frequency whistle as used with the training of dogs. The guinea pigs that did not show a good Preyer reflex were excluded from the experiment. While the antibiotic was being administered and also three weeks after stopping the injections the Preyer reflex was checked in the same way to detect any possible deterioration in hearing.

The results of the Preyer reflex are not mentioned in this paper since the examination of the auditory function with this technique averred to be inexact and seemed to have only an indicative value.

### B The vestibular tests

Three weeks after stopping antibiotic injections, the vestibular rotation tests were performed on all the animals. The guinea pig was placed on an electrically powered rotating disc in a long narrow box. The rump of the animal was thus completely fixed and only the head could move slightly. This allowed us to examine the deviation during and after the rotation. The eyes were not covered. The rotations were done in both clockwise and anticlockwise directions at the rate of ten revolutions in twenty seconds. With normal experimental animals the average duration of the post-rotatory nystagmus after ten clockwise or anticlockwise revolutions in twenty seconds is eleven seconds. The results of the rotation tests with the various series of animals are mentioned each time in the description of the histological examination of the vestibular system.

Since streptomycin is specially toxic to the vestibular system, the animals treated with this antibiotic were carefully examined for vestibular disturbances every week. The following findings were noted: the presence of ataxia (disturbed walking and attitudes, purposeless spontaneous turning); the presence or absence of the labyrinthine righting reflex, the deviation during and after rotation and the duration of the postrotatory nystagmus with clockwise and anticlockwise turning.

### C. The cochlear microphonics

We measured the influence of certain ototoxic antibiotics on the cochlear microphonics with the guinea pigs. The registering technique used has been

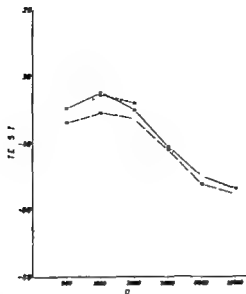


FIG. 1. Comparison between the three isotonic saline groups (15 ears in each group) at 100 db stimulation intensity: — group used as control in the kanamycin experiments; --- group used as control in the streptomycin experiments; ---- group used as control in the neomycin experiments.

published in detail earlier (*Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 1962, Suppl. 171). Under an intraperitoneal 10% Veterinary nembutal anaesthesia (1/10 cc per 200 g body weight) a metallic electrode was placed in the round window niche after the bulla has been opened, and the neutral electrode was fastened on the glandula submandibularis.

The preparation was placed in an electrically and acoustically shielded room with a loudspeaker at 75 cm from the ear drum. We measured the microphonics with 80, 90 and 100 db stimulation intensity at 500, 1000, 2000, 5000, 8000 and 10 000 c/s. We express the value of the microphonics in db loss to 10 mv, consequently: -20 db = 1 mv, -30 db = 315  $\mu$ v, -40 db = 100  $\mu$ v, -50 db = 31.5  $\mu$ v and -60 db = 10  $\mu$ v.

The whole of our experimental technique is based on the comparison between the cochlear microphonics of normal control animals that were injected with isotonic saline and those of series of guinea pigs that were given certain doses of ototoxic antibiotics. That our results are reliable is shown in Fig. 1 which depicts the reactions of our three groups of fifteen normal ears: these curves are completely superimposable.

## II. HISTOLOGY

### A. Histological technique

Immediately after recording the cochlear microphonics and under the same intraperitoneal anaesthesia a sufficient number of experimental animals in each group were intravascularly fixed, so that we always had at our

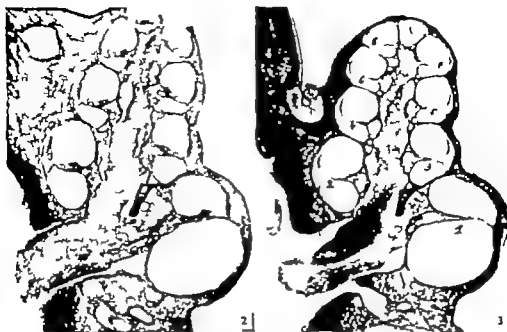


FIG. 2. Normal midmodiolar section through the cochlea of guinea pig. Cellulose preparation, 16  $\mu$ .

FIG. 3. Midmodiolar section through the cochlea of guinea pig with the numbering of the organs of Corti.



FIG. 4. Normal organ of Corti with surrounding structures. Second turn of the cochlea of a guinea pig.

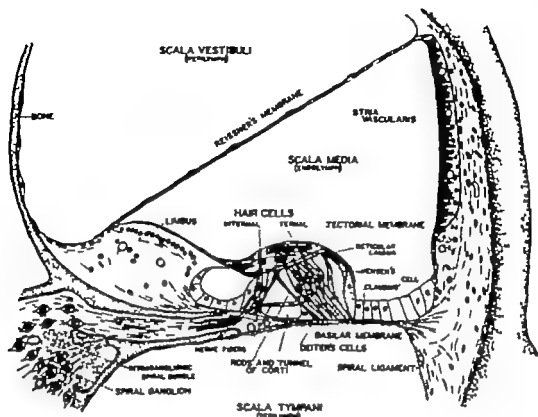


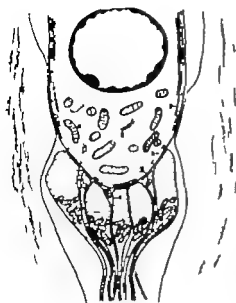
FIG. 5. Schematic drawing of a cross section of the second turn. (Davis, *Neural Mechanisms of the Auditory and Vestibular Systems*, p. 22.)

disposal some twenty well fixed ears. Ears with inflammatory lesions in the region of the bulla or badly fixed preparations were systematically excluded. We call attention to the fact that we examined mainly those ears which according to the reading of the microphonics, were most or at least strongly impaired.

The animals were fixed intravitaly with the solution of Heidenhain-Suza according to the technique of Schuknecht (1933). Both temporal bones were extracted and opened. The stapes were taken out or luxated and a small hole was drilled in the apex of the cochlea. The temporal bones were then fixed, decalcified, neutralized, cleaned, dehydrated and embedded.

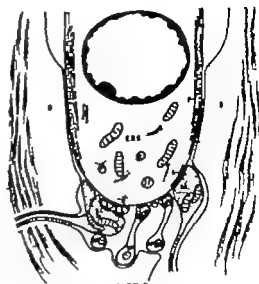
TABLE 1. Arrangement of the two types of external hair cells (EHC) in relation to the tunnel (T) and to the internal hair cell (IHC) on the four cochlear turns.

Turn	IHC	T	EHC
1st	IHC	T	A. B. B.
	IHC	T	A. B. B.
	IHC	T	A. A. B.
	IHC	T	A. A. A.



TYPE A

FIG. 6.



TYPE B

FIG. 7.

FIG. 6. Schematic drawing of Type A hair cell from the third cochlear turn. (Smith, C. A. & Sjöstrand, F. S., *J. Ultrastructure Research*, 4 1961) A accessory membrane; B, synaptic bar; C region of vesicle concentration; D, Deiters' cell; EHC, external hair cell; M mitochondrion; N nucleus; I type 1 nerve ending; II type 2 nerve ending; P vesicular peripheral membranes; SV synaptic vesicles.

FIG. 7. Schematic drawing of Type B hair cell. (Smith, C. A. & Sjöstrand, F. S., *J. Ultrastructure Research*, 4 1961) A accessory membrane; B, synaptic bar; D Deiters' cell; EHC external hair cell; M mitochondrion; N nucleus; I type 1 nerve ending; II type 2 nerve ending; E 2a, type 2 nerve ending; P vesicular peripheral membranes; SP spiral nerve fiber; SV synaptic vesicles.

In increasing concentrations of cellodine. The cellodine cubes were cut up in the longitudinal axis of the cochlea and parallel to the plane of the Acusticus. The gauge of the histological slice was 10  $\mu$  and each fifth slice was kept for histological examination. The vestibular system was

TABLE 2. Diagram of the arrangement of the two types of E.H.C. on the four cochlear turns

The remaining types re-printed in italic commented upon in Figs. 10 and 11. This diagram clearly illustrates the earlier damage of the type A cell.

Gul rats pig treated with daily dose of ampicillin 100 mg/kg body weight for 20 days. G.P. No. 21 L.

Turn	E.H.C.	T	T	E.H.C.
Fourth	(8) B B A.	T	T	A. B B (?)
Third	(6) B B A.	T	T	A B B (5)
Second	(4) B A. A.	T	T	A. A. B (3)
First	(3) A. A. A.	T	T	A. A. A. (1)



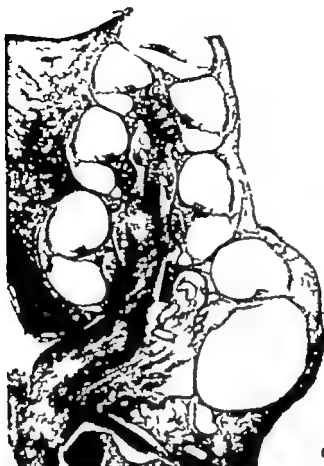


Fig. 8. Midmodiolar section through the cochlea of a guinea pig, treated with a daily dose of neomycin 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.I. No. 21 L. The organs of Corti of the four turns are enlarged and commented upon in the following figures. The destruction in the basal ganglia is easily seen.

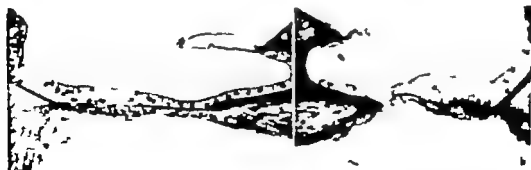


Fig. 9. (a) Organs of Corti. (b) Cross section through the basal turn. Guinea pig treated with neomycin 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.I. No. 21 L. The organ of Corti, which is replaced by typical cells. The cells of Boettcher (the E.H.C. (A, A, A) are consequently destroyed.



FIG. 10 (a) Organ of Corti 4 (b) Organ of Corti 3 Cross section through the second turn. Guinea pig treated with daily dose of neomycin 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.P. Neo, 21 L. Organ of Corti 3 The L.H.C. is intact. The tunnel shape remains without tunnel cells. The E.H.C. (A, A, B) are destroyed. Organ of Corti 4 Normal L.H.C. and tunnel. The most lateral of the E.H.C. is intact, B, A, A, the remaining type of E.H.C. being printed in *italic*.

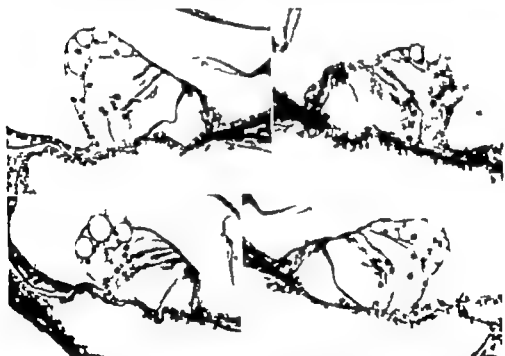


FIG. 11 (a) Organ of Corti 6 (b) Organ of Corti 5 (c) Organ of Corti 8 (d) Organ of Corti 7 Cross section through the third and fourth turn. Guinea pig treated with daily dose of neomycin 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.P. Neo 21 L. The four organs of Corti present the same picture: The L.H.C. and tunnel are normal. The two lateral E.H.C. are intact. The most medial one is destroyed. B, B, A. (Corti 6-8) A, B, B (Corti 5-7), the remaining types of E.H.C. being printed in *italic*. Looking at the E.H.C. on the micrographs, one must remember that the histological section, made on 16  $\mu$ , may contain two rows of E.H.C. One may easily count three or four E.H.C. but not six.



FIG. 12. Fairly damage of the most central of the L.I.C. (type A cell) as seen by the ordinary light microscopy. The volume of the cell is reduced and the nucleus is displaced in apical direction toward the tip of the hair cell. Note the loose hair cell in the top right. Fourth trimester. Guinea pig treated with streptomycin, total dose of 15 g/kg body weight. G.P. 5/8 R.

FIG. 13. The three F.I.C. are affected. The cells are small and the nuclei are displaced toward the cuticle. Basal trimester. Guinea pig treated with a daily dose of kanamycin in 200 mg/kg body weight and of Nalamide 15 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.P. 5/10 R.

further cut up in the same direction and each fifth slice was also kept. All specimens were stained by Van Gieson's method.

For histological examination a graphic reconstruction of the cochlea was carried out according to Gullé (1921) and Schuknecht (1953). Any possible lesion in the organ of Corti, the stria vascularis, the ganglion, the spiral nerve, etc. were also represented graphically according to Schuknecht (1953).

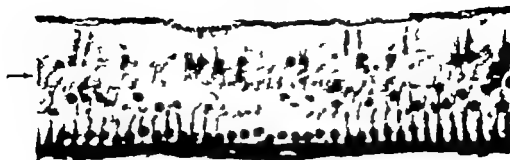


Figs. 14. The nuclei of the L.H.C. are absent and those of the cells of Deiters are displaced towards the lamina spiralis. Loose hair cell in "loose" space. Basal turn. Guinea pig treated with daily dose of kanamycin 200 mg/kg body weight and of Nalamide 8 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.P. No. 11 R.

Figs. 15. Note the absence of the nuclei of the three E.H.C. Basal turn. Guinea pig treated with daily dose of kanamycin 200 mg/kg body weight and of Nalamide 8 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.P. No. 11 L.

## B Histological results

Some of the antibiotics used have a stronger effect on the peripheral vestibular system than on the cochlea, while others have the reverse. Some are very toxic, others less so. But histologically the impairment always follows the same pattern, so that the same description counts for all the antibiotics used.



16

FIG. 16 Longitudinal section through the cochlea. (On similar section of normal guinea pig we see row of nuclei with IHC above the pillars. Here we only find some scattered nuclei (arrow). First and second rows. Culora pig treated with daily dose of 1.5 mg of dipentethate and 10 mg/kg body weight for 7 days. C.P.P. 41

### 1 Histology and histopathology of the cochlea

In order to elucidate the histopathology we first describe some normal histological pictures. Fig. 2 shows a midmodiolar section through the cochlea. In Fig. 3 the different organs of Corti are numbered from 0 to 9 to permit easy location of the lesions. Fig. 4 represents a normal section of the organ of Corti with the surrounding structures. The schematic representation with the names is to be found in Fig. 5.

(a) *Lesions in the organ of Corti* The effect of all ototoxic antibiotics on the sensory cells seems to follow the same pattern. The lesions start in the basal coil and develop gradually in the direction of the apical coil.

The external hair cells are impaired first in each coil, starting at the most central and spreading to the two lateral. This confirms the results of Engström & Kohonen (1965). This finding applies also to the basal coil but it is much more obvious in the higher coils. This intoxication pattern is certainly connected with the various types of external hair cells described by C. A. Smith and F. S. Sjstrand (1961). C. A. Smith distinguishes a type A cell (Fig. 6) and a type B cell (Fig. 7) according to the difference in innervation.

The arrangement of the various types in the different coils is represented in Table 1. The type A cell is impaired more quickly than the type B cell. This is clearly illustrated by the Figs. 8, 9, 10 and 11.

Hawkins & Engström (1963) stated that one of the earliest changes caused by ototoxic antibiotics is a disturbance of the orderly W pattern of the stereocilia of the outer hair cell in the basal coil while Kohonen (1963) found the same changes in the outer hair cell to be the first pathological phenomenon.

This can be determined by use of light microscopy and with the plane of section parallel to the cochlea. With high resolution the first symptom observed



Fig. 17. Destruction of the supporting cells (Delfers, Hensen) of the organ of Corti. Basal turn. Guinea pig treated with daily dose of neomycin 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.P. Neo<sub>2</sub>/20 L.

Fig. 18. Destruction of all supporting element of the organ of Corti. Absence of the inner hair cell and of some nuclei of the limbus. The cells of Boettcher are intact. Basal turn. Guinea pig treated with daily dose of neomycin 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.P. Neo<sub>2</sub>/21 L.

are a reduction in volume and a shrinking of the intoxicated cell. The cell becomes small and bulbous; the nucleus moves towards the center of the cell. The latter eventually disappears or the cell breaks loose and wanders in the tunnel or in the ductus cochlearis. (Figs. 12, 13, 14, 15 and 16.)

After the outer cells have disappeared, the supporting cells collapse; the cell of Delfers, Hensen and Claudius are affected and disappear and the tunnel structure collapses slowly (Figs. 17 and 18).



Fig. 19. The organ of Corti is completely destroyed and replaced by a differentiated cuboidal epithelium. The cells of Boettcher are still present. The vessels of the limbus are absent and the number of nerve fibres in the lamina propria is greatly reduced. Basal turn. (Intern pig treated with daily dose of neomycin 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. (P. Neoy, '21)

The internal hair cell is very resistant but disappears as well following prolonged intoxication. Finally the whole organ of Corti is replaced by undifferentiated cuboidal epithelium (Fig. 19).

The cells of Boettcher characteristic for the basal cell remain unpaired, even in this last stage.

The total collapse of the organ of Corti after disappearance of the sensory cells is in most cases more obvious from two millimetres onwards than in the first two millimetres. The intoxication of the sensory cells has been graphically expressed as 100% when the internal as well as the three external hair cells were absent as 75% when only the three external hair cells were absent and as 0% when all the cells were still present (Figs. 41 and 46).

(b) *Lesions in the stria vascularis*. C. A. Smith studied the structure of the stria vascularis with the electron microscope. She described the following cell types:

#### 1. Epithelial cells.

■ *Apical cells*, described as chromophil cells (Von Brandt & Saxen 1936). The cytoplasm contains large mitochondria, a large concentration of granules and many membrane structures. The basal cell membrane is composed of filings and fingerlike projections.

■ *Lighter chromophil cells*. These cells are found between the

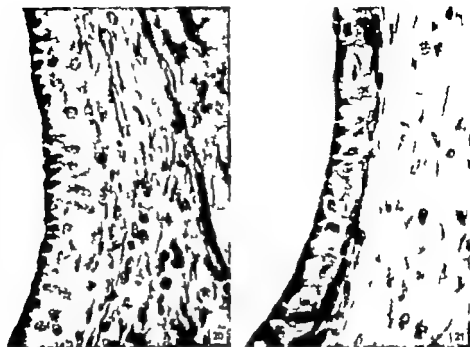


FIG. 20. Cross section through the stria vascularis of normal guinea pig. The different cells, described by C. A. Smith, are easily recognizable. Basal turn, G.P. 8 R.

FIG. 21. Picture of obvious injury to the stria vascularis. The regular design of the chromophil cells is destroyed and the cells are fused, without recognizable nucleus or borders. The number of chromophil and chromophobic cells is reduced and the width of the stria vascularis is decreased. Basal turn. Guinea pig treated with a daily dose of kanamycin mesopentotetrate 250 mg/kg body weight for 20 days. G.P. P 4 L.

marginal and the basal cells. They contain only a scattering of ergastoplasm.

## 2. Basal cells: double layer of thin flat cells.

The stria vascularis is widest at the basal coil and becomes narrower towards the apex. The normal stria vascularis is represented in Fig. 20. With light microscopy it is difficult to trace the first lesions in the stria vascularis. In most cases we find the chromophil cells hyperchromatic, probably caused by a disturbance of the mitochondria. The cell outlines become thus less distinct (Fig. 21). The stria vascularis becomes narrower and the number of chromophil cells diminishes. Eventually the stria becomes like a thin tape, often hyperchromatic without definite structure and often with rents (Fig. 22).

Though it is difficult to study the stria vascularis with light microscopy, the impairment seemed nevertheless more severe from two millimetres onwards than within the first two millimetres of the basal coil. As we have no clear insight into the remaining function of the stria vascularis which, according to the microscopic examination, seems fully damaged, this injury





Fig. 22. Total destruction of the proper cell and their composition in the trisecularis, Basal t. m. Guinea pig treated with daily dose of neomycin 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. C.I. Neomycin.

has been graphically represented as 50%. The lower degree of impairment is represented as 25% (Fig. 46).

(c) *Lesions of the neuron and of the ganglion spirale* It is clear that the lesions of the ganglion spirale are secondary. After the destruction of the external sensory cell and especially after the complete collapse of every architecture of the organ of Corti we see a decrease of the radial running nerve fibres in the tunnel and of the nerve fibres in the lamina spiralis ossea. The ganglion cells degenerate and disappear (Figs. 23 and 24). There is a decrease of the nerve fibres in the Nervus Acusticus in the corresponding zone.

The reduction of the ganglion cells was estimated at 75% when strongly reduced at 0% or 25% when not so strongly reduced according to the degree of impairment (Fig. 79).

(d) *Lesions of the limbus* When the organ of Corti is strongly affected the nuclei of the cells disappear from the limbus. This impairment is most important in the limbus corresponding to the zone of 2 to 6 mm in the basal coil (Fig. 80).



FIG. 23. Cross section through the ganglion spirale of normal guinea pig. Basal turn. G.P. 8 R.  
 FIG. 24. Cross section through the ganglion spirale of guinea pig, treated with daily dose of neomycin 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days. G.P. No. 21 L. Basal turn. Note the loss of ganglion cells, estimated at 75 %.



25



26

FIG. 25. Cross section through the limb of normal guinea pig. Basal turn, C I 8 EL.

FIG. 26. Cross section through the limb of guinea pig, treated with daily dose of promyel 100 mg/kg body weight for 30 days, C I New, 21 EL. Basal turn. Note the absence of the nuclei of the limb and the decrease of the density of the nerve fibres; the lamina spirally open.

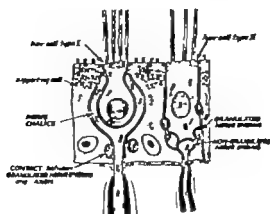


Fig. 27 Schematic drawing of the vestibular sensory epithelium as it appears in cat, guinea pig, and rat. (Wersall, *Neural Mechanisms of the Auditory and Vestibular Systems*, p. 232.)



Fig. 28 Cross section through the crista ampullaris of normal guinea pig. G.P. 8 FL.

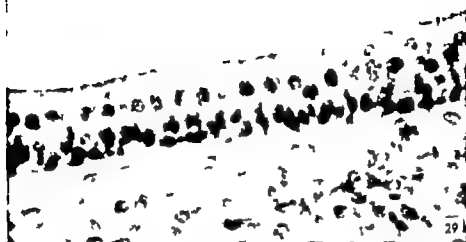


Fig. 29. Longitudinal section through part of the crest of the cristampullaris. Normal guinea pig. C I II R.

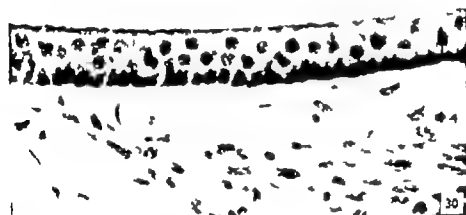


Fig. 30. Section through normal macula sacculi. Guinea pig treated with capromycin, total dose of 15 g/kg body weight. C I C<sub>3</sub>/3 R.

The complete disappearance of the nuclei has been represented diagrammatically as 100% intoxication; when some nuclei remained this has been plotted as 50% intoxication (Fig. 70).

(c) *Lesions in the surroundings.* When the organ of Corti is very strongly impaired we sometimes see a decrease of the number of nuclei in the bony wall of the cochlea, especially in the wall that lies freely in the bulla, consequently corresponding to the organ of Corti 1 and 2.



Fig. 31. Section through the macula utriculi of normal guinea pig. G.P. 1 L.



Fig. 32. Early damage to the vestibular sensory cells by an ototoxic antibiotic, as seen with the light microscope. The supra-nuclear protoplasm protrudes towards the endolymph (arrow). Section through the macula utriculi of guinea pig, treated with daily dose of kanamycin-diprithenat 250 mg/kg body weight for 20 days. G.P. P<sub>2</sub>/10 R.



FIG. 33. Longitudinal section through the cristae ampullaris of a guinea pig, treated with a daily dose of kanamycin monosulfate (100 mg/kg body weight) for 20 days. C.E. = 5 IL. Note the section of one nucleus and of the protoplasm of two cells.



FIG. 34. Section through the maculae of a guinea pig, treated with a daily dose of kanamycin dihydrate (250 mg/kg body weight) for 20 days. C.E. = 10 IL. Two cells are ejected with their nucleus and their protoplasm.

## II Histology and histopathology of the peripheral vestibular system

The maculae sacculi and utriculi and the cristae ampullares of the three semicircular ducts were studied by means of the light microscope.

Wersall J. (1954) gives a detailed description of the vestibular sensory cells (Fig. 27).



Fig. 33. Cross section through the crista ampullaris of guinea pig, treated with streptomycin, total dose of 15 g/kg body weight, G.P. S<sub>2</sub>/I R. Several nuclei are affected. The loss of sensory cells at the crest of the crista is already obvious.

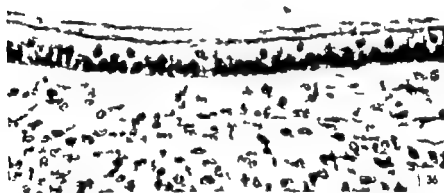


Fig. 36. Longitudinal section through the crest of the crista ampullaris of guinea pig, treated with streptomycin, total dose of 15 g/kg body weight, G.P. S<sub>2</sub>/I R. Note the marked loss of sensory cells and some flattening of the sensory epithelium.

The normal vestibular structures as seen with the light microscope are represented in Figs. 28, 29, 30 and 31.

Duvall & Wersäll (1964) studied the effects of streptomycin on the inner ear sensory epithelia in guinea pigs by means of the electron microscope. The most severe damage was found in the vestibular sensory cells, with degeneration of and myelin figure formation in the mitochondria. Later swelling appeared in the sensory hairs with deformation of the





Fig. 37. Cross section through the cristalline macula of guinea pig, treated with streptomycin, total dose 11 g/kg body weight (C I 5, 11 R). Marked loss of sensory cells more or less throughout the sensory epithelium of the cristae.

surface and finally disappearance of the sensory hairs, swelling of the cell surface often with rupture and ejection of cells and cell debris into the endolymph.

With light microscopy only the later stages of the intoxication could be observed. First we see a bulging of supranuclear protoplasm towards the endolymph (Fig. 32). Afterwards the whole content of the cell with the nucleus is ejected (Figs. 33 and 34). The thickness of the sensory epithelium diminishes, the supporting cells disappear and here and there only a few sensory cells are left (Figs. 35, 36, 37 and 38). With further intoxication all sensory epithelium disappears (Figs. 39 and 40).

The lesions are most severe in the macula of the utricle; the cristae present a stronger degree of intoxication on the crest. The macula of the saccule is only slightly, if at all, affected by these antibiotics in the doses we administered.

Fig. 38. Section through the macula (triculi) of a guinea pig treated with streptomycin, total dose 15 g/kg body weight (C I 5, 16 R). Marked loss of sensory cells.

Fig. 39. Section through the macula (triculi) of guinea pig treated with streptomycin, total dose of 15 g/kg body weight (C I 5, 16 R). Severe damage to the macula (triculi).

Fig. 40. Section through the macula (triculi) of guinea pig treated with streptomycin, total dose of 15 g/kg body weight (C I 5, 16 R). Total destruction of the macula (triculi).



## 2 KANAMYCIN

Three groups of guinea pigs were given five days a week subcutaneous injections of kanamycin sulphate. We administered a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight to group  $K_3$  for 30 days (total dose 3 g/kg body weight). Group  $K_2$  was given a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight for 20 days (total dose 4 g/kg body weight) and group  $K_1$  was given a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight for 30 days (total dose 6 g/kg body weight).

Three other groups of guinea pigs were injected subcutaneously five days a week with 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate a day for 30 days (total dose 6 g/kg body weight). These groups were called  $N_{12}$ ,  $N_{13}$  and  $N_{14}$ . In these groups each injection with antibiotics was accompanied by a subcutaneous injection of respectively 1.0 mg/kg body weight 8 mg/kg body weight and 1.0 mg/kg body weight of nialamide<sup>1</sup> kanamycin and Nialamide were injected with different syringes and needles at two different places.

Finally three last groups of guinea pigs called  $I_1$ ,  $I_2$  and  $I_3$  were injected subcutaneously five days a week for 20 days with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of a given kanamycin pantothenate (total dose 4 g/kg body weight). Group  $I_1$  was given kanamycin monopantothenate, group  $I_2$  was given kanamycin dipantothenate and group  $I_3$ , kanamycin tripantothenate. A control group was given a daily subcutaneous injection of 0.25 cc of isotonic saline.

The general condition of all the animals in this test remained good except in the groups  $K_1$  and  $N_{14}$ , where the animals lost 1 % of hair. There was however no mortality (Table 3).

Three weeks after the last injection the cochlear microphonics of 15 ears in each group were recorded, and about 10 animals were intravitaly fixed immediately after this registration.

### 1 COCHLEAR MICROPHONICS

In the following diagrams (Figs. 41, 42 and 43) we have compared first the groups  $K_3$ ,  $K_2$  and  $K_1$  with the group that received the isotonic saline, then the groups  $N_{12}$ ,  $N_{13}$  and  $N_{14}$  with group  $K_3$  and finally the three kanamycin pantothenate groups with group  $K_3$ .

We notice that a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin

<sup>1</sup>Nal mid<sup>®</sup> Pfizer

TABLE 3 *Mortality rate and weight evolution during the test*

Animal group	No. of animals alive		Average weight	
	On first injection	At moment of recording	On first injection, g	At moment of recording, g
K (kanamycin sulphat 3 g/kg)	20	20	239.7	582.0
K <sub>2</sub> (kanamycin sulphat 5 g/kg)	20	20	239.2	491.0
K <sub>4</sub> (kanamycin sulphat 6 g/kg)	20	20	257.2	576.0
N (K <sub>4</sub> +1.5 mg/kg Nialamidé)	20	18	238.7	572.4
N <sub>2</sub> (K <sub>4</sub> +5 mg/kg Nialamidé)	20	20	243.0	537.0
N <sub>12</sub> (K <sub>4</sub> +15 mg/kg Nialamidé)	20	20	236.5	513.0
P (kanamycin monopotassium 5 g/kg)	20	20	219.2	517.7
P (kanamycin dipotassium 5 g/kg)	20	20	217.0	467.0
P (kanamycin tripotassium 5 g/kg)	20	20	239.0	530.2
Isotonic saline	20	20	252.5	583.0

TABLE 4 *Average reaction of the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group*

The value of  $t$  is given in parentheses. This group was used as control.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	40.20 ( $\pm 8.71$ )	37.13 ( $\pm 9.43$ )	34.60 ( $\pm 8.88$ )
1,000	39.70 ( $\pm 8.80$ )	35.53 ( $\pm 8.94$ )	32.20 ( $\pm 8.78$ )
2,000	37.00 ( $\pm 7.00$ )	34.93 ( $\pm 6.24$ )	34.38 ( $\pm 6.24$ )
5,000	45.06 ( $\pm 6.32$ )	42.00 ( $\pm 6.55$ )	40.26 ( $\pm 6.00$ )
8,000	52.66 ( $\pm 4.35$ )	48.66 ( $\pm 5.65$ )	44.86 ( $\pm 5.47$ )
10,000	52.06 ( $\pm 4.47$ )	49.00 ( $\pm 7.00$ )	46.80 ( $\pm 5.09$ )

TABLE 5 *Average reaction of the 15 ears of the K<sub>2</sub> group*

The value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	39.26 ( $\pm 5.47$ )	36.66 ( $\pm 5.65$ )	34.93 ( $\pm 5.09$ )
1,000	41.10 ( $\pm 6.08$ )	36.80 ( $\pm 5.65$ )	33.40 ( $\pm 4.58$ )
2,000	39.53 ( $\pm 6.16$ )	37.64 ( $\pm 5.39$ )	36.66 ( $\pm 4.69$ )
5,000	46.60 ( $\pm 6.55$ )	44.80 ( $\pm 6.16$ )	42.73 ( $\pm 5.17$ )
8,000	54.33 ( $\pm 4.12$ )	50.66 ( $\pm 5.29$ )	47.33 ( $\pm 5.09$ )
10,000	53.46 ( $\pm 4.24$ )	51.63 ( $\pm 5.79$ )	48.80 ( $\pm 5.09$ )

ulphate administered for 30 days (total dose 3 g/kg body weight) hardly produced any drop in the microphonics (Fig. 41). There is no statistically significant difference between group K<sub>2</sub> and the one that received the isotonic saline. In 1962 we did find a statistically significant drop of the microphonics with the same intoxication schedule. The explanation for this seeming contradiction is very probably to be found in the fact that we now

TABLE II Average reaction of the 13 ears of the  $K_2$  group

The 1 of 1 gl en in parentheses.

Frequency	80 db	90 db	100 db
20	49.33 ( $\pm 5.4$ )	42 ( $\pm 6$ )	41 ( $\pm 5.5$ )
100	49.33 ( $\pm 6.4$ )	41 ( $\pm 6.4$ )	45.53 ( $\pm 7$ )
200	46.66 ( $\pm 3.1$ )	46 ( $\pm 6.4$ )	42 ( $\pm 6.55$ )
500	51.66 ( $\pm 5.1$ )	53.5 ( $\pm 5.1$ )	53.6 ( $\pm 5.5$ )
800	56 ( $\pm 2.64$ )	57.3 ( $\pm 3$ )	56.15 ( $\pm 3.1$ )
1000	57 ( $\pm 6.1$ )	57 ( $\pm 3.1$ )	57 ( $\pm 3.1$ )

TABLE III Average reaction of the 13 ears of the  $K$  group

The 1 of 1 gl en in parentheses.

Frequency	80 db	90 db	100 db
20	52.33 ( $\pm 3.4$ )	51.33 ( $\pm 6.32$ )	52 ( $\pm 6.75$ )
100	53.33 ( $\pm 3.3$ )	52.7 ( $\pm 6.1$ )	54.6 ( $\pm 8$ )
200	51.66 ( $\pm 6.1$ )	52.66 ( $\pm 6.1$ )	52.93 ( $\pm 6.32$ )
500	51.17 ( $\pm 3.1$ )	51.9 ( $\pm 3.6$ )	56.1 ( $\pm 4.1$ )
800	59.5 ( $\pm 1.6$ )	51.3 ( $\pm 2$ )	53.33 ( $\pm 2.4$ )
1000	59.1 ( $\pm 1.6$ )	54.6 ( $\pm 1.73$ )	59.2 ( $\pm 2$ )

TABLE IV Average reaction of the 13 ears of the  $N_{13}$  group

The 10 of 1 gl en in parentheses.

Frequencies	80 db	90 db	100 db
200	51.26 ( $\pm 3.47$ )	53.5 ( $\pm 6$ )	53.3 ( $\pm 3.4$ )
1000	51.66 ( $\pm 3.6$ )	51.33 ( $\pm 6.5$ )	54.6 ( $\pm 4$ )
2000	56.14 ( $\pm 6.16$ )	55.33 ( $\pm 6.5$ )	55.27 ( $\pm 5.65$ )
5000	59.47 ( $\pm 3.46$ )	56.6 ( $\pm 3.46$ )	57.3 ( $\pm 3.31$ )
8000	57.9 ( $\pm 1.73$ )	57.5 ( $\pm 1.73$ )	57.93 ( $\pm 2$ )
10000	59.15 ( $\pm 1.41$ )	57.33 ( $\pm 1.41$ )	57.5 ( $\pm 1.41$ )

TABLE V Average reaction of the 13 ears of the  $N$  group.

The 1 of 1 gl en in parentheses.

Frequencies	80 db	90 db	100 db
200	53.04 ( $\pm 3.7$ )	51.56 ( $\pm 3.91$ )	52.33 ( $\pm 3.4$ )
1000	51.79 ( $\pm 3.7$ )	52.56 ( $\pm 3.5$ )	53.13 ( $\pm 3.4$ )
2000	51.46 ( $\pm 3.4$ )	53.1 ( $\pm 3.01$ )	53.33 ( $\pm 3.6$ )
5000	57.4 ( $\pm 1.4$ )	56.6 ( $\pm 1.4$ )	57 ( $\pm 2$ )
8000	57.4 ( $\pm 1.4$ )	56.33 ( $\pm 1.23$ )	57.4 ( $\pm 2.41$ )
10000	57.13 ( $\pm 1.41$ )	56.5 ( $\pm 1.73$ )	57.66 ( $\pm 2.41$ )

TABLE 10 *Average reaction of the 15 ears of the V group*The value  $f$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency cps	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	52.88 ( $\pm 5.00$ )	51.20 ( $\pm 5.17$ )	49.53 ( $\pm 5.91$ )
1,000	52.53 ( $\pm 5.83$ )	51.00 ( $\pm 7.07$ )	50.66 ( $\pm 8.06$ )
2,000	53.80 ( $\pm 8.00$ )	52.86 ( $\pm 7.68$ )	52.13 ( $\pm 7.07$ )
5,000	56.26 ( $\pm 5.83$ )	55.73 ( $\pm 6.08$ )	55.20 ( $\pm 5.19$ )
8,000	58.00 ( $\pm 3.31$ )	57.73 ( $\pm 4.35$ )	57.53 ( $\pm 8.16$ )
10,000	58.13 ( $\pm 3.46$ )	58.18 ( $\pm 3.74$ )	58.33 ( $\pm 2.44$ )

TABLE 11 *Average reaction of the 15 ears of the P group*The value  $f$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency cps	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	40.66 ( $\pm 6.85$ )	38.73 ( $\pm 7.41$ )	39.40 ( $\pm 7.61$ )
1,000	40.90 ( $\pm 6.30$ )	37.40 ( $\pm 7.48$ )	36.60 ( $\pm 8.18$ )
2,000	40.40 ( $\pm 8.18$ )	39.53 ( $\pm 8.24$ )	40.33 ( $\pm 7.54$ )
5,000	47.06 ( $\pm 6.85$ )	45.46 ( $\pm 7.28$ )	45.53 ( $\pm 7.34$ )
8,000	52.00 ( $\pm 5.38$ )	49.56 ( $\pm 6.00$ )	48.66 ( $\pm 6.83$ )
10,000	53.53 ( $\pm 4.24$ )	51.46 ( $\pm 5.38$ )	50.26 ( $\pm 5.74$ )

TABLE 12 *Average reaction of the 15 ears of the P group*The value  $f$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency cps	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	43.06 ( $\pm 9.64$ )	43.00 ( $\pm 10.67$ )	40.80 ( $\pm 10.14$ )
1,000	45.60 ( $\pm 8.83$ )	42.10 ( $\pm 11.04$ )	40.93 ( $\pm 11.87$ )
2,000	44.93 ( $\pm 10.39$ )	41.00 ( $\pm 11.18$ )	41.30 ( $\pm 10.19$ )
5,000	51.66 ( $\pm 7.00$ )	50.20 ( $\pm 8.24$ )	49.13 ( $\pm 8.79$ )
8,000	56.40 ( $\pm 4.12$ )	53.40 ( $\pm 6.00$ )	51.93 ( $\pm 7.14$ )
10,000	53.93 ( $\pm 3.87$ )	53.93 ( $\pm 5.19$ )	53.00 ( $\pm 5.91$ )

TABLE 13 *Average reaction of the 15 ears of the P group*The value  $f$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency cps	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	45.60 ( $\pm 6.40$ )	43.20 ( $\pm 6.55$ )	41.33 ( $\pm 5.83$ )
1,000	45.90 ( $\pm 6.16$ )	42.06 ( $\pm 3.34$ )	40.00 ( $\pm 7.14$ )
2,000	45.21 ( $\pm 6.63$ )	43.00 ( $\pm 6.78$ )	43.73 ( $\pm 6.00$ )
5,000	51.60 ( $\pm 5.54$ )	50.13 ( $\pm 5.56$ )	49.66 ( $\pm 5.19$ )
8,000	53.33 ( $\pm 3.80$ )	53.46 ( $\pm 4.35$ )	52.66 ( $\pm 4.35$ )
10,000	56.00 ( $\pm 3.31$ )	51.86 ( $\pm 3.60$ )	54.00 ( $\pm 3.87$ )

TABLE 14 Value of  $t$  (1.29) where the reaction is statistically better in the normal animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $K_2$  group on the 19 examined points

Test on 15 ears. It lies per  $P < 0.01$

Frequency	%	80 db	90 db	100 db
500		29.95	33.52	39.55
1,000		27.10	31.03	35.21
2,000		45.25	39.39	41.69
5,000		46.07	37.16	73.56
8,000		27.50	36.73	61.21
10,000		33.35	46.73	65.10

TABLE 15 Value of  $t$  (1.29) where the reaction is statistically better in the normal animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $K_3$  group on the 19 examined points

Test on 15 ears. It lies per  $P < 0.01$

Frequency		80 db	90 db	100 db
500		9.51	12.15	14.13
1,000		13.13	16.10	26.22
2,000		22.29	32.07	37.4
5,000		21.37	29.67	36.61
8,000		13.71	21.61	42.27
10,000		19.66	24.32	41.56

TABLE 16 Value of  $t$  (1.29) where the reaction is statistically better in the normal animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $I_1$  group on the 18 examined points

Test on 15 ears. It lies per  $0.01 < P < 0.05$

Frequency	%	80 db	90 db	100 db
500		—	—	—
1,000		—	—	—
2,000		—	—	4.67
5,000		—	—	1.60
8,000		—	—	—
10,000		—	—	—

have at our disposal more purified preparations and genetically pure breeds of animals, which live under constant experimental conditions. The important drop in microphonics that we find in group  $K_2$  (Fig 41 Tables 13 and 14) we find again entirely in groups  $N_{12}$ ,  $N_{11}$  and  $N_{13}$  (Fig 42). Consequently the Nalamide does not protect the microphonics of the guinea pig against the harmful influence of kanamycin sulphate.

TABLE 17 Value of  $F$  (1.28) where the reaction is statistically better in the normal animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $P_2$  group on the 18 examined points

Test 13 ears. Italic type  $P < 0.01$  Roman type  $0.01 < P < 0.05$ .

Frequency	$n$	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	—	—	—	—
1,000	—	—	—	6.09
2,000	6.01	7.52	9.12	9.12
5,000	7.29	9.92	10.5	10.5
8,000	—	4.87	9.20	9.20
10,000	6.29	6.8	10.18	10.18

TABLE 18 Value of  $F$  (1.28) where the reaction is statistically better in the normal animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $P$  group on the 18 examined points

Test on 18 ears. Italic type  $P < 0.01$  Roman type  $0.01 < P < 0.05$

Frequency	$n$	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	—	—	—	6.02
1,000	4.71	4.76	9.20	9.20
2,000	10.19	12.21	14.65	14.65
5,000	9.95	12.22	21.92	21.92
8,000	—	6.72	14.15	14.15
10,000	7.50	12.94	20.15	20.15

TABLE 19 Value of  $F$  (1.28) where the reaction is statistically better in the  $P$  than in the  $K$  group on the 18 examined points

Test on 18 ears. Italic type  $P < 0.01$

Frequency	$n$	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	11.66	11.69	14.6	14.6
1,000	11.22	11.12	16.22	16.22
2,000	10.62	11.69	17.77	17.77
5,000	12.16	12.96	11.67	11.67
8,000	14.11	15.69	14.24	14.24
10,000	12.66	12.16	12.14	12.14

The situation is completely different with the kanamycin pantothenates in comparison with the kanamycin sulphate the kanamycin monopantothenate is almost non toxic to the microphonics of the guinea pig (Fig 43). Only at a few points (Table 18) is there a statistically significant difference in the group  $P$  whereas there is a very outstanding statistically significant difference between groups  $P_1$  and  $K$  at the 18 points.



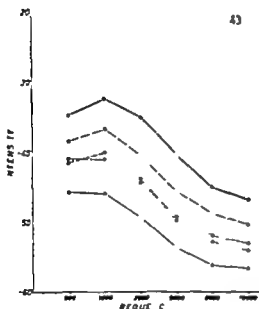
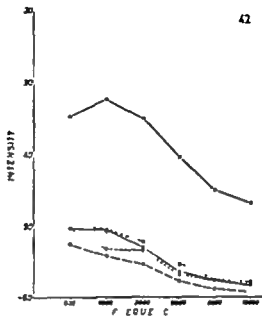
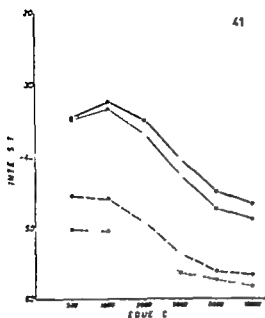


FIG. 41. Comparison between the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group and those of the K (kanamycin sulphate 3 g/kg), K<sub>1</sub> (kanamycin sulphate 5 g/kg) and K<sub>2</sub> (kanamycin sulphate 8 g/kg) groups at 100 db stimulation intensity. — isotonic saline group; — — — K group; - - - K<sub>1</sub> group; - · - · K<sub>2</sub> group.

FIG. 42. Comparison between the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group and those of the K (kanamycin sulphate 8 g/kg), N (K and 15 mg/kg/day Nalamsid), N<sub>1</sub> (K<sub>2</sub> and 8 mg/kg/day Nalamsid) and N<sub>2</sub> (K and 15 mg/kg/day Nalamsid) groups at 100 db stimulation intensity. — isotonic saline group; — — — K group; - - - N group; - · - · N<sub>1</sub> group; - · - · N<sub>2</sub> group.

FIG. 43. Comparison between the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group and those of the K (kanamycin sulphate 5 g/kg), P (kanamycin monosulphonate 5 g/kg), P<sub>1</sub> (kanamycin disulphonate 5 g/kg) and P<sub>2</sub> (kanamycin trisulphonate 5 g/kg) groups at 100 db stimulation intensity. — isotonic saline group; — — — K group; - - - P group; - · - · P<sub>1</sub> group; - · - · P<sub>2</sub> group.

examined (Table 19). This reduced toxicity is only partly found again with the kanamycin dipantothenate and the kanamycin tripanthothenate (Tables 17 and 18). These results confirm our conclusions of 1962 completely.

## II HISTOLOGICAL RESULTS

### Group K

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate for 30 days.

The group K<sub>2</sub> was not examined histologically in these experiments any more since in a previous histological research, of which the results remained unpublished, no lesions were registered with guinea pigs of the same genetic breed, treated with kanamycin sulphate following the same schedule. Moreover the microphonics did not drop in this group.

### Group K<sub>4</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate for 30 days.

In this group six ears have been examined histologically. These were taken at random, since all 15 ears showed a drop in their microphonics.

### A Cochlea

With all the animals the outer hair cells have disappeared for various distances from the beginning of the basal coil. The diagram of the missing sensory cells in the six ears we examined is represented in Fig. 44.

So we see that the outer hair cells have disappeared completely from the basal coil up to an average distance of 6.53 mm, and that they are fully present again at an average distance of 8.2 mm in the animals we examined. Table 20.

TABLE 20 Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells are present again in the ears examined.

The average values are calculated.

Guinea pigs, Group K <sub>4</sub>	Absence of the three E.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three E.H.C. (mm)
1 L.	10	10
5 L.	8.3	15.2
6 R.	9.4	9.4
9 L.	2.7	3.1
11 L.	6.8	8.7
12 L.	2	2.8
Average distance	6.53	8.2

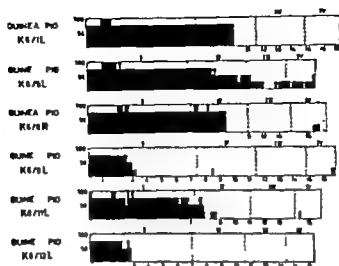


Fig. 11 Diagram of the destruction of the cochlear hair cells, plotted in black, in six ears of guinea pigs treated with daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate for 30 days.

The stria vascularis is markedly impaired in the area where the external hair cells have completely disappeared. The impairment is less pronounced towards the apex but covers nevertheless almost the same distance as the impairment of the external hair cells.

The ganglion spirale corresponding to the first half of the basal coil is slightly affected. The ganglion cells may have dropped to 20% in animals with heavy impairment of the hearing, but in most cases some cells have a swollen nucleus or a nucleus in lysis.

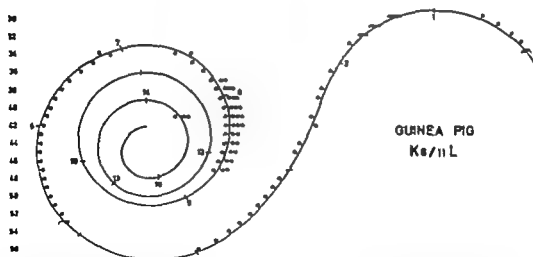


Fig. 15 Diagram of the cochlear spiral of guinea pig K6/11 L with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clearness of the curve the cells still present have been plotted only on the distance of impairment. The figures indicate the distance in mm, starting from the basal coil. The hatched areas indicate complete destruction of the organ of Corti with replacement by undifferentiated cuboidal epithelium.

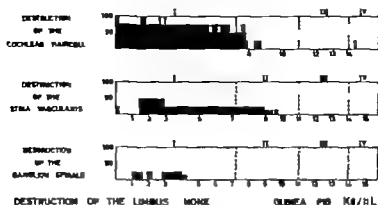


FIG. 46. Diagrams of the destructions of the sensory cells, of the stria vascularis and of the ganglion cells in guinea pig K<sub>4</sub>/11 L. The destructions are represented as 0/50/100 % as explained in Section 1. The Roman numerals indicate the coils of the cochlea starting at the basal coil as coil 1. The Arabian figures indicate the distance of the cochlea in mm starting from the basal coil up.

The limbus and the surroundings are completely normal.

The cochlear diagrams of guinea pig K<sub>4</sub>/11 L are fully represented in Figs. 45 and 46.

#### B. Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 20 animals, stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec, clockwise and anticlockwise was 9.7 sec and 10.2 sec respectively.

No histological anomalies were established in the vestibular system.

#### Group N<sub>15</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate and 1.5 mg/kg body weight of Nalamide for 30 days.

This group was not examined histologically.

#### Group N

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate and 8 mg/kg body weight of Nalamide for 30 days.

Of this series five ears also taken at random were examined since all ears showed a decrease of the microphonics.

#### A. Cochlea

The sensory cells, especially the external hair cells, have disappeared for 10 mm distance from the beginning of the basal coil as represented in Fig. 47. The average distance over which all the external hair cells are missing is 4.75 mm in these ears examined, whereas the average distance

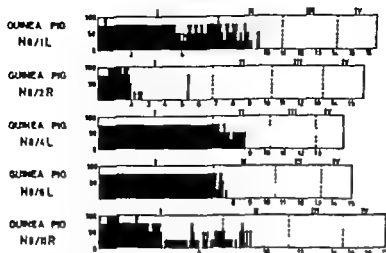


FIG. 17 Diagram of the destruction of the cochlear hair cells, plotted in black in the ears of guinea pigs treated with daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate and 18 mg/kg body weight of Naloxone for 30 days.

to the point where all the external hair cells are present, is 7.44 mm (Table 21)

In all these animals the severity of damage to the stria vascularis is proportionate to the extent of destruction of the external hair cells.

The ganglion spirale is only very little affected. The impairment consists of a lysis of the ganglion cells, especially in the ganglion corresponding to the organ of Corti No. 1.

The limbus and the surroundings are normal.

The cochlear diagrams of the guinea pig N° 11 are fully represented in Figs. 48 and 49.

TABLE 21 Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells are present again in the ears examined

The average is recalculated		
Guinea pigs, Group No.	Absence of the three I H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three I H.C. (mm)
1 L.	1.8	9.6
2 R.	1.0	2.6
3 L.	7.2	8.5
6 L.	7	7.5
11 R.	3	9
Average distance	4.75	7.44

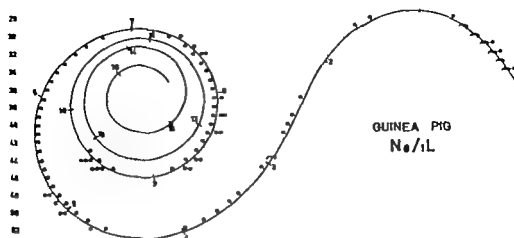


Fig. 48 Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig No. 1 L. with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clearness of the curve the cells still present have been plotted only on the distance of the impairment.

### B Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 17 animals stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec clockwise and anticlockwise was 12.4 sec and 13 sec respectively.

Histologically all the vestibular structures are normal.

### Group N<sub>1</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate and 15 mg/kg body weight of Nalamide for 30 days.

From this group five ears also taken at random were examined, since all ears showed a decrease of the microphonics.

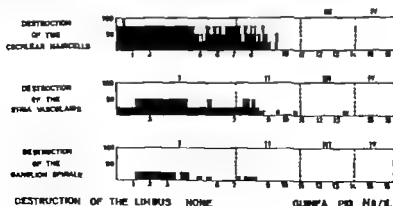


Fig. 49 Diagrams of the destructions of the sensory cells, of the stria vascularis and of the ganglion cells in guinea pig No. 1 L.

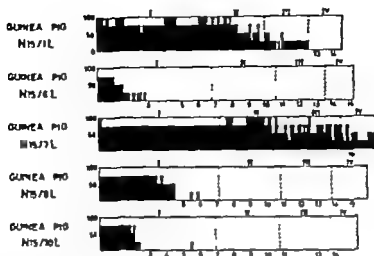


Fig. 1. Diagram of the destruction of the cochlear hair cells, plotted in black, in five ears of guinea pigs treated with daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate and of 15 mg/kg body weight of Nalamide for 30 days.

### A. Cochlea

The sensory cells, especially the external hair cells, have disappeared for various distances from the beginning of the basal coil as represented in Fig. 10. The average distance over which all the external hair cells are missing is 5.02 mm in these animals examined, whereas the average distance to the point where all the external hair cells are present again is 8.02 mm (Table 22).

The severity of damage to the stria vascularis is proportionate to the extent of destruction of the external hair cells. In the ear 10 L the stria vascularis has obviously been affected before the absence of the external hair cells; however the latter do not look normal.

TABLE 22 Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells are present again in the ears examined

The average distances are calculated.		
Guinea pigs Group N	Absence of the three I H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three I H.C. (mm)
1 L	8.2	12.5
6 L	1	2.9
7 L	10.5	16.5
8 I	5.5	5.8
10 I	1.9	2.4
Average distance	5.02	8.02

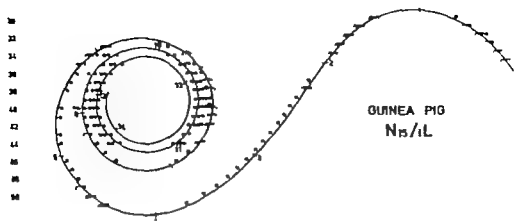


Fig. 51. Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig N<sub>5</sub>/1 L with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clearness of the curve the cells still present have been plotted only on the distance of impairment.

The ganglion spirale is completely normal in guinea pig 10 L. With guinea pig 6 L the impairment mainly consists of a lysis of certain ganglion cells in the ganglion spirale No. 1. With guinea pigs 8 L and 1 L it is clear that ganglion cells are missing in ganglion spirale No. 1. More towards the apex there is a lysis of the ganglion cells. With guinea pig 7 L up to 5% of the ganglion cells have disappeared, more in the ganglia of the apex than in the base or at least as many. We shall return to this phenomenon later.

The limbus is slightly affected with guinea pig 7 L, whereas with the other animals it is normal.

The surroundings are normal.

The cochlear diagrams of the guinea pig N<sub>5</sub>/1 L are fully represented in Figs. 51 and 52.

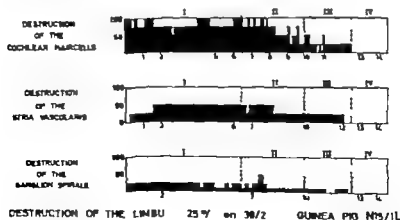


Fig. 52. Diagrams of the destructions of the sensory cells, of the stria vascularis and of the ganglion cells with guinea pig N<sub>5</sub>/1 L.



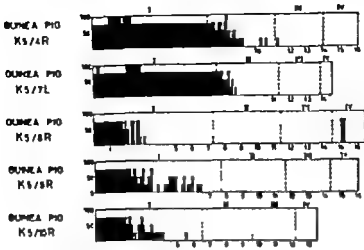


FIG. 53. Diagram of the destruction of the cochlear hair cells, plotted in black. In guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 250 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate for 20 days.

B Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 17 animals stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec clockwise and anticlockwise is 11.3 sec and 11.7 sec respectively.

From a histological point of view the vestibular system was fully normal with two animals. With the three others the following findings were established:

- The macula utriculi was slightly but distinctly impaired: some sensory cells were expelled.
- Impairment of the sensory cells of the cristae though less strongly marked.
- The macula sacculi was normal.

Group h<sub>2</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 250 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate for 20 days.

In this group the microphonics had dropped in 14 of the 15 ears. From this series of 14 ears we took five petrous bones at random for histological examination.

A Cochlea

The sensory cells, especially the external hair cells, have disappeared for various distances from the beginning of the basal coil as represented in Fig. 53. The average distance over which all the external hair cells are missing is 4.24 mm in these animals examined, whereas the average distance to the point where all the external hair cells are present again is

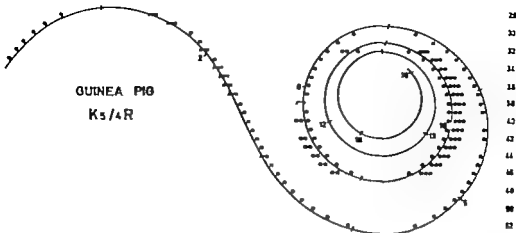


Fig. 54 Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig K<sub>5</sub>/4 R with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clearness of the curve the cells still present have been plotted only on the innermost of impairment.

7.1 mm (Table 23). As in this group only 14 animals showed a drop in their microphonics, a correcting factor has to be applied to this average distance (see Table 23). The corrected average distances are then 3.95 mm and 6.52 mm respectively.

The severity of damage to the stria vascularis is proportionate to the extent of destruction of the external hair cells.

The ganglion spirale is hardly affected in guinea pigs 8 R, 9 R and 10 R. With guinea pig 7 L a disappearance of the ganglion cells is established to a degree of 25% in ganglion No. 1. With guinea pig 4 R we established that up to 50% of the ganglion cells have disappeared in ganglion No. 1 and up to 25% in ganglion No. 2.

The limbus and the surroundings are unimpaired.

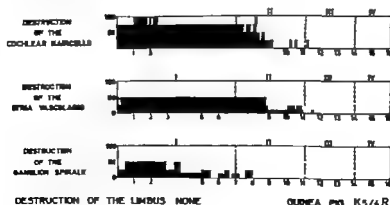


Fig. 55 Diagrams of the destructions of the sensory cells, of the stria vascularis and of the ganglion spirale with guinea pig K<sub>5</sub>/4 R.

TABLE 23 Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells are present again in the ears examined

The error values and the corrected values are calculated

Guinea pigs, Group A	Absence of the three I.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three I.H.C. (mm)
4 R	7.5	11.3
7 L	7.9	8.8
8 R	1.8	3.1
9 R	2.1	6.5
10 R	1.9	5.8
Average distance	4.21	7.1
After correction	3.05	6.62

This correction is calculated as follows: (number of normal limit impairment in 0 mm) + (number of limited normal error distance) divided by the total number of animals examined histologically. So after correction we find the following for the distance on which all the external hair cells are missing (4.21 mm):

$$(1/0) + (14/4.21) \text{ divided by } 15 = 3.05 \text{ mm.}$$

The distance to the point where all the external hair cells are present again (7.1 mm) becomes after correction:

$$(1/0) + (14/7.1) \text{ divided by } 15 = 6.62 \text{ mm.}$$

The cochlear diagrams of the guinea pig A/4 R are fully represented in Figs. 54 and 55.

### B Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 14 animals stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec is 11.8 sec after clockwise as well as anticlockwise turning.

From a histological point of view the vestibular system is completely normal in guinea pig 7 L and 8 R.

In three other animals the following phenomena were established:

Distinct impairment of the macula utriculi

Slight impairment of the cristae ampullares.

The macula utriculi was affected only slightly if at all.

### Group P

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin monosulfate for 20 days.

In this group only 6 of the 16 ears showed a drop in the microphonics. The five petrous bones that were examined histologically belonged to these six affected ears.

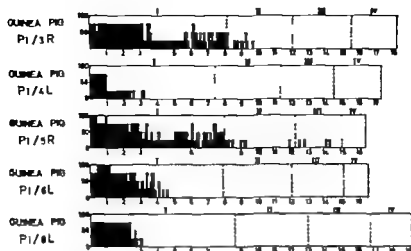


FIG. 56. Diagram of the destruction of the cochlear hair cells, plotted in black, in five ears of guinea pigs treated with daily dose of 250 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin monosulphate for 20 days.

### A Cochlea

The sensory cells, especially the external hair cells, have disappeared for various distances from the beginning of the basal coil as represented in Fig. 56. The average distance over which all the external hair cells are missing is 2.20 mm in these ears examined, whereas the average distance to the point where all the external hair cells are present again is 5.88 mm. In considering this, we have to take into account the fact that these five ears showed the most significant drop in the microphonics of the whole group in which only six ears were impaired whereas in all other groups the ears were chosen more at random. After correction the average distances become 0.9 mm and 2.35 mm respectively (Table 24).

TABLE 24 Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells are present again in the ears examined

The average distances and the corrected distances are calculated.

Guinea pigs, Group P	Absence of the three E.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three E.H.C. (mm)
3 R	3.2	9.5
4 L	1	3.1
5 R	2.4	9.3
6 L	2.3	4.5
8 L	2.4	3
Average distance	2.26	5.88
After correction	0.9	2.35

TABLE 23 Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells are present again in the ears examined

The average distance and the corrected values are calculated.

Guinea pigs Group B	Absence of the three I H C. (mm)	Presence of the three I H C. (mm)
1 R	7.5	11.3
1 L	9	8.8
8 R	18	3.1
9 R	2.1	0
10 R	19	5.8
Average distance	4.21	7.1
After correction	3.02	6.02

This correction is calculated as follows: (number of normal animal impairment  $\times$  0 mm) + (number of impaired animal average distance) divided by the total number of animal examined histrophysiologically. So after correction we find the following distance for the distance on which all the external hair cells are not missing (4.21 mm):

$$(1 \cdot 0) + (14 \cdot 4.21) \text{ divided by } 15 = 2.95 \text{ mm.}$$

The distance to the point where all the external hair cells are present again (7.1 mm) becomes after correction:

$$(1 \cdot 0) + (14 \cdot 7.1) \text{ divided by } 15 = 6.62 \text{ mm.}$$

The cochlear diagrams of the guinea pigs 7/4 R are fully represented in Figs. 34 and 35.

### B Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 17 animals stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec is 11.8 sec after clockwise as well as anticlockwise turning.

From a histological point of view the vestibular system is completely normal in guinea pigs 7 L and 8 R.

In three other animals the following phenomena were established:

Distinct impairment of the macula utriculi

Slight impairment of the cristae ampullares.

The macula sacculi was affected only slightly if at all.

### Group P<sub>1</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 250 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin monophosphate for 20 days.

In this group only 6 of the 15 ears showed a drop in the microphonics. The five petrous bones that were examined histologically belonged to these six affected ears.

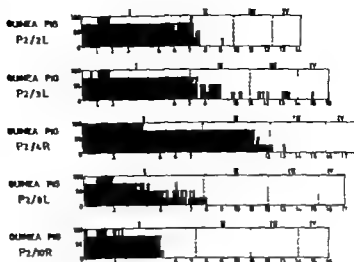


Fig. 50 Diagram of the destruction of the cochlear hair cells, plotted in black, in five ears of guinea pigs treated with daily dose of 250 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin dipantothenate for 20 days.

### B. Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 17 animals stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec clockwise and anticlockwise is 13.2 sec and 13.9 sec respectively

The histological examination revealed the following findings

The vestibular system is completely normal with guinea pig 8 L.

The macula utriculi is very slightly affected in guinea pig 4 L and 6 L, slightly more in guinea pig 3 R and severely damaged in guinea pig 5 R.

The cristae ampullares are normal in guinea pig 4 L and 6 L, slightly damaged in guinea pig 3 R and 5 R.

The macula sacculi is normal with all the ears examined

### Group P<sub>2</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 250 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin dipantothenate for 20 days.

In this group 10 out of the 15 ears showed a drop in the microphonics. The petrous bones that were examined histologically belonged to these ten affected animals.

### A. Cochlea

The sensory cells, especially the external hair cells, have disappeared for various distances from the beginning of the basal coil as represented in Fig. 59. The average distance over which all the external hair cells are missing is 6.3 mm for these ears examined, whereas the average distance to the point where all the external hair cells are present again is 9.48 mm.

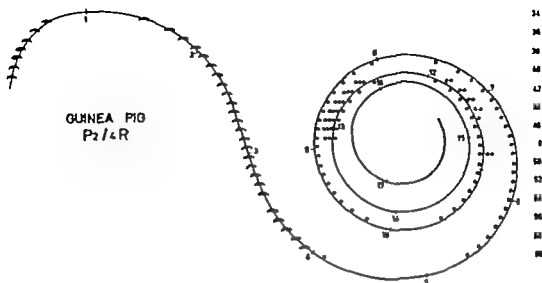


FIG. 60. Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig P 12/4 R with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clearness of the curve the cells still present have been plotted only on the distance of impairment.

After correction these average distances become 4.2 mm and 0.32 mm respectively (Table 2a).

The stria vascularis is markedly affected with all these animals in proportion to the extent of destruction of the external hair cells, as described for group  $h_2$ .

The ganglion spirale is normal in guinea pig 2 L, whereas it is more affected in the other animals, especially in the basal ganglia. Guinea pig 4 R shows a loss of ganglion cells up to "5" in ganglion spirale No. 1 (Fig. 61).

The limbus and the surroundings are normal.

The cochlear diagrams of the guinea pig 12/4 R are fully represented in Figs. 60 and 61.

TABLE 2a. Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells are present again in the ears examined.

The average values and the corrected values are calculated.

Guinea pigs, Group P	Absence of the three I H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three I H.C. (mm)
2 L	6	7.6
3 L	0.1	13.5
4 R	10.0	13.1
8 L	3.5	8
10 R	5	5.2
Average distance	6.3	9.48
After correction	4.2	0.32

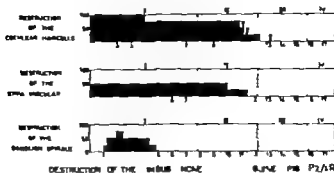


Fig. 61. Diagrams of the destructions of the sensory cells, of the stria vascularis and of the ganglion cells with guinea pig P<sub>2</sub>/4 R.

### B Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 16 animals stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec clockwise and anticlockwise is 13 sec and 13.5 sec respectively.

Histologically the vestibular system is completely normal in guinea pig 2 L and 3 L. In the other animals the following findings are established:

The macula utriculi shows early infection in guinea pig 8 L and 4 R, a severe damage in guinea pig 10 R.

The cristae ampullares are slightly affected in guinea pig 8 L, 4 R and 10 R.

The macula sacculi is normal with all the ears examined.

### Group P

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 250 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin tripartothenate for 20 days.

In this group 11 out of the 15 ears showed a drop in the microphonics. The five petrous bones that were examined histologically belonged to these eleven ears.

### A Cochlea

The sensory cells, especially the external hair cells, have disappeared for various distances from the beginning of the basal coil as represented in Fig. 62. The average distance over which all the external hair cells are missing is 3 mm in these five animals examined, whereas the average distance to the point on which all the external hair cells are present again is 6 mm. After correction these average distances become 2.2 mm and 4.4 mm respectively (Table 20).

The severity of damage to the stria vascularis is proportionate to the extent of destruction of the external hair cells.

The ganglion spirale is slightly affected in three animals. In guinea pig



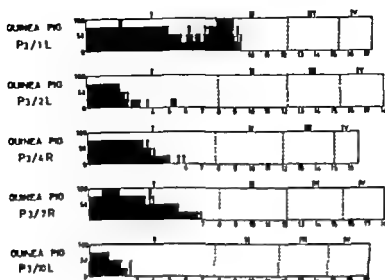


FIG. 62. Diagram of the destruction of the cochlea hair cells, plotted in black, in ears of guinea pigs treated with daily dose of 250 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin triphosphate for 30 days.

4 R there is a loss of ganglion cells up to 20% in ganglion spirale No 1. In guinea pig 1 L there is a loss of 50% of ganglion cells in ganglion spirale No 3, corresponding to the destruction of the organ of Corti No 3 (Fig 62).

The limbus is distinctly affected in guinea pig 1 L, while in the other animals it is normal.

The surroundings are normal.

The cochlear diagrams of the guinea pig P/7 R are fully represented in Figs. 63 and 64.

TABLE 26 Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells are present again in the ears examined.

The range is given and the corrected range is calculated.

Guinea pig, Group P	Absence of the three P.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three E.H.C. (mm)
1 L	5	9.2
2 L	2	5.6
4 R	3.3	5.8
7 R	3.5	6.9
10 L	1.2	2.5
Average distance	3	6
After correction	2.2	1.4

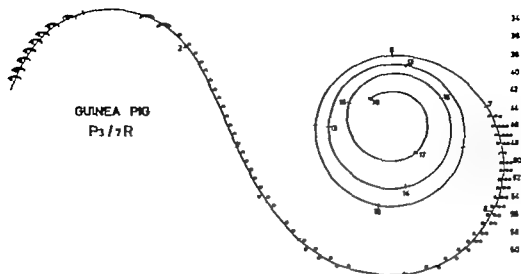


Fig. 63. Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig P<sub>3</sub>/7 R with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clearness of the curve the cells still present have been plotted only on the distance of impairment.

### B Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 17 animals stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec, clockwise and anticlockwise is 13.9 sec and 13.5 sec respectively.

Histologically the vestibular system is completely normal in guinea pig 1 L. With the other animals the following findings are established:

The macula utriculi is normal in guinea pig 2 L, lightly affected in guinea pig 7 R and 10 L, distinctly impaired in guinea pig 4 R.

The cristae ampullares are normal in guinea pig 7 R and 10 L, lightly affected in guinea pig 2 L and distinctly impaired in guinea pig 4 R.

The macula sacculi is normal in all the ears examined.

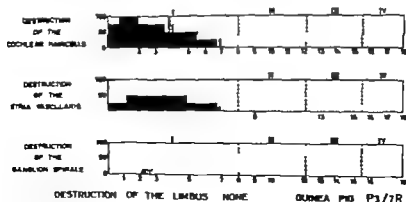


Fig. 64. Diagrams of the destructions of the sensory cells, of the utricle and of the saccule in guinea pig P<sub>3</sub>/7 R.

### 3 STREPTOMYCIN—VIOMYCIN—CAPREOMYCIN

Two groups of guinea pigs were injected subcutaneously five days a week with streptomycin sulphate. Group  $S_1$  was given a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight for 73 days, total dose 7.5 g/kg body weight. Group  $S_2$  was given a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight for 58 days. Then the daily dose was doubled because no hearing defect appeared (Preyer reflex). Four animals died from acute streptomycin intoxication in two days, and the general condition of the rest of the animals became deteriorated. After four days the double dose was stopped and the injections continued according to the original schedule up to a total dose of 15 g/kg body weight.

Two other groups of guinea pigs were injected subcutaneously five days a week with viomycin sulphate. Group  $V_1$  was given a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight for 73 days, total dose 7.5 g/kg body weight. Group  $V_2$  was injected with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight for 58 days and because impairment of hearing did not appear we changed over to a daily dose of 400 mg/kg body weight for 9 days, up to a total dose of 15 g/kg body weight.

Finally the last two groups of guinea pigs were injected subcutaneously five days a week with capreomycin sulphate. Group  $C_1$  was given a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight for 73 days making a total dose of 7.5 g/kg body weight. Group  $C_2$  was injected with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight for 58 days and later 400 mg/kg body weight for 9 days, because no hearing disorder had appeared after the 58 days, making a total dose of 15 g/kg body weight.

A control group was given a daily dose of 0.25 cc isotonic saline subcutaneously.

The general condition remained good in all groups, except in group  $S_2$  where five animals (23%) died before the end of the injection period (Table 27). Three weeks after the last injection the microphonics of 15 ears in each group were recorded.

#### I COCHLEAR MICROPHONICS

A total dose of 15 g/kg body weight of the three antibiotics in these groups has hardly any influence on the microphonics with the guinea pig (Fig. 63).

With the double total dose of 15 g/kg body weight there is however a distinct drop in the viomycin group (Fig. 66). In the streptomycin group there is a statistically significant drop at only one of the 18 points examined.

(Table 35) and nowhere at all in the capreomycin group. Of these three antibiotics capreomycin seems to be the least toxic, whereas viomycin seems to be the most toxic for the microphonics with the guinea pigs (Fig. 68).

## II HISTOLOGICAL RESULTS

### Group S<sub>1</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of streptomycin sulphate for 75 days.

This group was not examined histologically since no anomalies in the microphonics were established.

### Group S<sub>2</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of streptomycin sulphate to a total dose of 15 g/kg body weight.

In this group 11 out of the 15 ears showed a drop in the microphonics at the 10 000 c/s recording. The five ears that were examined histologically belonged to these eleven affected ears. Many animals showed symptoms of inflammation of the middle ear.

### A Cochlea

In three ears all the external hair cells were present, though near the beginning of the basal coil a few cells seemed to have been damaged. In the fourth coil the most medial external hair cell often showed a bulb shaped swelling with a condensation body in the supranuclear part (cell type A, Fig. 12).

In one ear all the external hair cells had disappeared over 0.24 mm, and they were fully present again at 0.32 mm. In guinea pig 8 R there was impairment up to 0.08 mm (Table 38).

The calculation of an average area of impairment with a correction according to the number of affected animals is not justified with this group.

TABLE 27 Mortality rate and weight evolution during the test

Animal group	No. of animals alive		Average weight	
	On first injection	At moment of recording	On first injection, g	At moment of recording, g
S <sub>1</sub> streptomycin sulphat 7.5 g/kg	15	15	231.8	647.0
S <sub>2</sub> streptomycin sulphat 15 g/kg	20	15	248.7	707.1
V viomycin sulphat 7.5 g/kg	15	15	233.7	668.2
V viomycin sulphat 15 g/kg	20	19	231.0	711.0
C capreomycin sulphate 7.5 g/kg	15	15	212.6	833.2
C capreomycin sulphat 15 g/kg	20	19	272.2	708.8
Isot saline	18	15	246.5	698.3

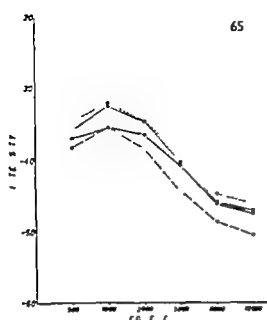


FIG. 65. Comparison between the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group and those of the S<sub>2</sub> (streptomycin sulphate 7.5 g/kg), S<sub>1</sub> (streptomycin sulphate 7.5 g/kg) and C<sub>1</sub> (capreomycin sulphate 7.5 g/kg) groups at 100 dB stimulation intensity: — isotonic saline group; — S<sub>2</sub> group; - - - S<sub>1</sub> group; - · - C<sub>1</sub> group.

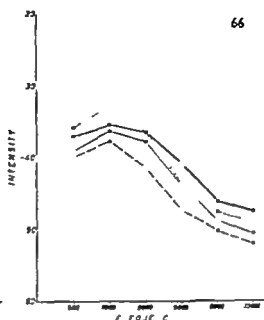


FIG. 66. Comparison between the 3 ears of the isotonic saline group and those of the S<sub>2</sub> (streptomycin sulphate 15 g/kg), S<sub>1</sub> (streptomycin sulphate 15 g/kg) and C<sub>1</sub> (capreomycin sulphate 15 g/kg) groups at 100 dB stimulation intensity: — isotonic saline group; — S<sub>2</sub> group; - - - S<sub>1</sub> group; - · - C<sub>1</sub> group.

since a lot of animals showed symptoms of inflammation of the middle ear.

The stria vascularis was only slightly affected at the basal coil of guinea pig 1 R and 8 R.

The number of ganglion cells seemed slightly diminished near the ganglion spirale No. 1 in guinea pig 4 R, 6 II and 8 R.

The limbus and the surroundings were normal.

The cochlear diagrams of the guinea pig S<sub>2</sub>/8 II are fully represented in Fig. 67.

## II Vestibular system

Functional examination: the vestibular system was examined every week in the S<sub>2</sub> group. The following data were noted: symptoms of ataxia (walking at normal attitudes, purposeless spinning round), the labyrinthine righting reflex, the perrotatory and postrotatory deviations and the duration of the postrotatory nystagmus after clockwise and anticlockwise rotation.

The first symptoms of ataxia appeared with a total dose of 4 g/kg body weight of streptomycin and increased with 5 g/kg body weight. After a dose of 6 g/kg body weight three animals showed complete inexcitability.

TABLE 28 Average reaction of the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group

The value of  $t$  is given in parentheses. This group was used as a control.

Frequency cps	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	44.08 ( $\pm 9.84$ )	40.40 ( $\pm 9.32$ )	36.66 ( $\pm 8.51$ )
1,000	42.88 ( $\pm 8.94$ )	38.14 ( $\pm 8.24$ )	33.26 ( $\pm 7.34$ )
2,000	38.73 ( $\pm 6.85$ )	36.53 ( $\pm 6.16$ )	36.33 ( $\pm 5.74$ )
5,000	45.00 ( $\pm 8.83$ )	42.80 ( $\pm 5.91$ )	40.73 ( $\pm 5.19$ )
8,000	52.33 ( $\pm 4.58$ )	49.00 ( $\pm 5.19$ )	46.00 ( $\pm 5.47$ )
10,000	52.20 ( $\pm 4.33$ )	50.06 ( $\pm 4.79$ )	47.40 ( $\pm 5.00$ )

TABLE 29 Average reaction of the 15 ears of the  $S_1$  groupThe value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency cps	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	44.40 ( $\pm 8.88$ )	40.20 ( $\pm 9.44$ )	35.73 ( $\pm 8.00$ )
1,000	43.20 ( $\pm 8.36$ )	38.40 ( $\pm 8.94$ )	32.26 ( $\pm 6.00$ )
2,000	37.26 ( $\pm 6.78$ )	35.06 ( $\pm 5.56$ )	34.46 ( $\pm 5.00$ )
5,000	42.90 ( $\pm 6.34$ )	40.11 ( $\pm 5.83$ )	40.20 ( $\pm 6.00$ )
8,000	51.93 ( $\pm 5.00$ )	48.48 ( $\pm 6.08$ )	45.93 ( $\pm 6.48$ )
10,000	52.60 ( $\pm 4.58$ )	49.46 ( $\pm 5.91$ )	47.00 ( $\pm 5.85$ )

TABLE 30 Average reaction of the 15 ears of the  $S_2$  groupThe value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	47.06 ( $\pm 8.88$ )	43.30 ( $\pm 9.31$ )	39.13 ( $\pm 8.54$ )
1,000	46.06 ( $\pm 8.12$ )	41.33 ( $\pm 9.64$ )	36.06 ( $\pm 7.45$ )
2,000	41.26 ( $\pm 7.21$ )	38.60 ( $\pm 6.48$ )	37.73 ( $\pm 5.00$ )
5,000	46.46 ( $\pm 5.65$ )	43.20 ( $\pm 6.16$ )	42.73 ( $\pm 5.44$ )
8,000	55.13 ( $\pm 2.40$ )	51.80 ( $\pm 4.79$ )	48.80 ( $\pm 5.00$ )
10,000	56.13 ( $\pm 3.00$ )	53.26 ( $\pm 4.00$ )	50.46 ( $\pm 4.47$ )

TABLE 31 Average reaction of the 15 ears of the  $S_3$  groupThe value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency cps	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	43.86 ( $\pm 8.67$ )	40.66 ( $\pm 8.71$ )	39.13 ( $\pm 7.81$ )
1,000	44.13 ( $\pm 8.12$ )	39.46 ( $\pm 8.54$ )	35.20 ( $\pm 6.55$ )
2,000	41.86 ( $\pm 6.70$ )	39.20 ( $\pm 5.91$ )	38.40 ( $\pm 4.35$ )
5,000	49.33 ( $\pm 5.00$ )	45.73 ( $\pm 4.89$ )	44.26 ( $\pm 5.00$ )
8,000	55.00 ( $\pm 3.31$ )	51.13 ( $\pm 3.87$ )	49.60 ( $\pm 4.35$ )
10,000	54.86 ( $\pm 3.31$ )	52.06 ( $\pm 4.00$ )	50.40 ( $\pm 3.44$ )

TABLE 32. Average reaction of the 15 ears of the  $S_2$  groupThe value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	11.13 ( $\pm 7.93$ )	42.00 ( $\pm 8.60$ )	30.93 ( $\pm 6.83$ )
1,000	45.13 ( $\pm 8.00$ )	40.60 ( $\pm 8.81$ )	37.06 ( $\pm 6.70$ )
2,000	42.60 ( $\pm 6.00$ )	40.73 ( $\pm 6.00$ )	41.20 ( $\pm 6.70$ )
5,000	40.33 ( $\pm 4.80$ )	47.46 ( $\pm 5.83$ )	47.13 ( $\pm 6.16$ )
8,000	51.73 ( $\pm 3.46$ )	52.00 ( $\pm 4.58$ )	50.13 ( $\pm 5.19$ )
10,000	53.13 ( $\pm 3.00$ )	52.73 ( $\pm 4.21$ )	51.93 ( $\pm 5.19$ )

TABLE 33. Average reaction of the 15 ears of the  $C_1$  groupThe value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	41.73 ( $\pm 10.00$ )	39.01 ( $\pm 10.18$ )	31.40 ( $\pm 8.00$ )
1,000	42.00 ( $\pm 8.36$ )	38.40 ( $\pm 8.51$ )	31.86 ( $\pm 6.53$ )
2,000	39.26 ( $\pm 8.66$ )	36.26 ( $\pm 8.12$ )	31.00 ( $\pm 6.63$ )
5,000	41.26 ( $\pm 14$ )	41.53 ( $\pm 6.63$ )	39.26 ( $\pm 5.19$ )
8,000	52.26 ( $\pm 3.09$ )	48.80 ( $\pm 5.91$ )	41.60 ( $\pm 5.20$ )
10,000	52.60 ( $\pm 4.21$ )	49.33 ( $\pm 5.38$ )	46.00 ( $\pm 4.79$ )

TABLE 34. Average reaction of the 15 ears of the  $C_2$  groupThe value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	41.12 ( $\pm 7.81$ )	37.93 ( $\pm 7.41$ )	35.66 ( $\pm 6.53$ )
1,000	41.00 ( $\pm 6.70$ )	35.73 ( $\pm 7.07$ )	32.60 ( $\pm 6.40$ )
2,000	38.93 ( $\pm 6.63$ )	36.73 ( $\pm 14$ )	36.33 ( $\pm 6.83$ )
5,000	47.13 ( $\pm 5.29$ )	41.73 ( $\pm 6.40$ )	43.46 ( $\pm 6.16$ )
8,000	53.00 ( $\pm 3.60$ )	49.60 ( $\pm 4.89$ )	47.40 ( $\pm 5.63$ )
10,000	53.73 ( $\pm 3.60$ )	50.80 ( $\pm 4.58$ )	48.86 ( $\pm 5.19$ )

TABLE 35. Value of  $t$  (1.28) where the reaction is statistically better in the normal animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $S_2$  group on the 15 examined pointsTest 15 ears. Italic type  $P < 0.01$ 

Frequencies /s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	—	—	—
1,000	—	—	—
2,000	—	—	—
5,000	—	—	—
8,000	—	—	—
10,000	2	—	—

TABLE 36 Value of  $F$  (1.28) where the reaction is statistically better in the normal animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $V_2$  group on the 18 examined points

Test on 18 ears IIc type $P < 0.01$ Rom type $0.01 < P < 0.05$			
Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	—	—	—
1,000	—	—	—
2,000	—	—	4.54
5,000	4.93	4.75	9.13
8,000	—	—	4.53
10,000	4.60	—	5.91

TABLE 37 Value of  $F$  (1.28) where the reaction is statistically better in the  $C_2$  than in the  $V_2$  group on the 18 examined points

Test on 18 ears. Rom type $0.01 < P < 0.05$			
Freq ency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	—	—	—
1,000	—	—	4.43
2,000	—	—	—
5,000	—	—	—
8,000	—	—	—
10,000	—	—	—

TABLE 38 Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells are present again in the ears examined

Golden pig, Group $S_2$	Absence of the three E.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three E.H.C. (mm)
1 R	0	0
4 R	0	0
6 R	0.24	0.32
8 R	0	0.06
9 L	0	0

If the vestibular system during the rotating test this was accompanied by the absence of the perrotatory and the postrotatory deviation and of the labyrinthine righting reflex and by strong ataxia symptoms.

When more of the antibiotic was administered the ataxia symptoms increased in several animals: four animals were inexcitable by the rotating



TABLE 32 *Average reaction of the 15 ears of the  $V_2$  group*

The values are given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	41.13 ( $\pm 8.3$ )	42.00 ( $\pm 8.00$ )	39.93 ( $\pm 6.83$ )
1,000	45.13 ( $\pm 8.00$ )	40.60 ( $\pm 7.81$ )	37.06 ( $\pm 6.70$ )
2,000	42.60 ( $\pm 6.00$ )	40.73 ( $\pm 6.00$ )	41.20 ( $\pm 6.70$ )
5,000	49.33 ( $\pm 4.80$ )	47.10 ( $\pm 5.83$ )	47.13 ( $\pm 6.16$ )
8,000	51.73 ( $\pm 3.16$ )	52.00 ( $\pm 4.58$ )	50.13 ( $\pm 5.10$ )
10,000	55.13 ( $\pm 3.00$ )	52.73 ( $\pm 4.21$ )	51.03 ( $\pm 5.19$ )

TABLE 33 *Average reaction of the 15 ears of the  $C_1$  group*

The values are given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	41.73 ( $\pm 10.00$ )	38.04 ( $\pm 10.48$ )	31.10 ( $\pm 8.00$ )
1,000	42.00 ( $\pm 8.36$ )	38.40 ( $\pm 8.54$ )	31.80 ( $\pm 6.55$ )
2,000	39.20 ( $\pm 8.06$ )	36.26 ( $\pm 8.12$ )	31.60 ( $\pm 6.63$ )
5,000	41.26 ( $\pm 7.14$ )	41.53 ( $\pm 6.63$ )	39.26 ( $\pm 5.19$ )
8,000	52.26 ( $\pm 5.00$ )	48.80 ( $\pm 5.91$ )	41.60 ( $\pm 5.20$ )
10,000	52.60 ( $\pm 4.21$ )	40.33 ( $\pm 5.38$ )	46.00 ( $\pm 4.79$ )

TABLE 34 *Average reaction of the 15 ears of the  $C_2$  group*

The values are given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	41.12 ( $\pm 7.81$ )	37.93 ( $\pm 7.11$ )	35.66 ( $\pm 6.55$ )
1,000	41.06 ( $\pm 6.70$ )	35.73 ( $\pm 7.07$ )	32.60 ( $\pm 6.10$ )
2,000	38.00 ( $\pm 6.55$ )	36.73 ( $\pm 7.14$ )	36.33 ( $\pm 6.85$ )
5,000	47.13 ( $\pm 5.29$ )	41.73 ( $\pm 6.10$ )	43.46 ( $\pm 6.16$ )
8,000	52.00 ( $\pm 3.60$ )	49.60 ( $\pm 4.89$ )	47.00 ( $\pm 5.63$ )
10,000	53.73 ( $\pm 3.60$ )	50.80 ( $\pm 4.58$ )	48.88 ( $\pm 5.19$ )

TABLE 35 *Value of  $t$  (1.2%) where the reaction is statistically better in the normal animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $S_2$  group on the 15 examined points*Test on 15 ears. II type  $P = 0.01$ 

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	—	—	—
1,000	—	—	—
2,000	—	—	—
5,000	—	—	—
8,000	—	—	—
10,000	8.22	—	—

Group V<sub>1</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of viomycin sulphate for 75 days.

This group was not examined histologically since no anomalies in the microphonics were established

Group V<sub>2</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of viomycin sulphate for 58 days followed by a daily dose of 400 mg/kg body weight of viomycin sulphate for 9 days to a total dose of 15 g/kg body weight

In this group we established a drop in the microphonics in 9 out of the 15 ears. The five ears that were examined histologically belonged to these nine affected animals.

## A Cochlea

In all the animals the external hair cells in the basal coil were affected for various distances. The diagram of the missing sensory cells is represented in Fig 58. The average distance over which all the external hair cells are missing is 1.94 mm in the animals examined whereas the average distance to the point on which all the external hair cells reappear is 3.3 mm. The unusual picture of intoxication in guinea pig 5 L is not taken into account. After correction these average distances become 1.1 mm and 1.98 mm respectively (Table 40)

The stria vascularis is also affected in the areas, corresponding to those with injured external hair cells.

TABLE 40 Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells reappear in the ears examined

The original values and the corrected values are calculated.

Guinea pigs, Group V	Absence of the three E.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three E.H.C. (mm)
2 R	1.9	3.7
3 L	1.6	2.6
4 L	2.4	3.8
5 L	1.5	3.3
6 L	2.3	3.1
Average distance	1.94	3.3
After correction	1.1	1.98

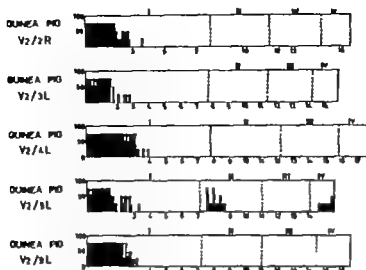


FIG. 68. Diagram of the destruction of the cochlear hair cells, plotted in black, in the ears of guinea pigs treated with viomycin at a total dose of 15 g/kg body weight.

The ganglion cells are slightly affected to a maximum loss of 25% in one animal in ganglion spirale No 1. In the other ganglia the cells are normal except in guinea pig 5 L. This strange intoxication picture will be discussed later.

The limbus and the surroundings are normal.

The cochlear diagrams of guinea pig V2/4 L are fully represented in Figs. 69 and 70.

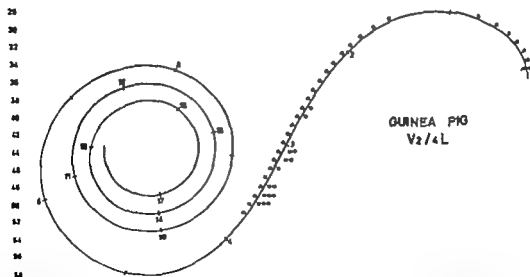


FIG. 69. Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig V2/4 L with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clarity of the curve the cells still present have been plotted only on the distance of impairment.

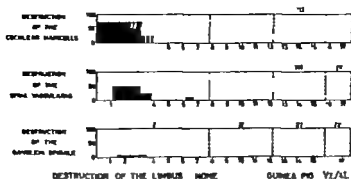


FIG. 70. Diagrams of the destructions of the sensory cells, of the stria vascularis and of the ganglion cells with guinea pig V/4 L.

## II Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 17 animals stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec clockwise and anticlockwise is 12.4 sec and 12.7 sec respectively.

Histologically the vestibular systems in guinea pig 3 L and 4 L are completely normal. In the other animals the findings are as follows:

The macula utriculi is slightly impaired.

The cristae ampullares are normal in guinea pig R and slightly affected in guinea pig 5 L and 9 L.

The macula sacculi is normal in all the ears examined.

## Group C<sub>1</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of capreomycin sulphate for 15 days.

This group was not examined histologically since no anomalies in the microphonics were established.

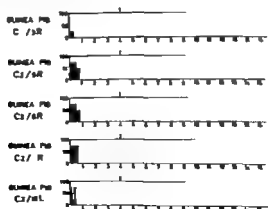


FIG. 71. Diagram of the destruction of the cochlear hair cells, plotted in black in the ear of guinea pigs treated with capreomycin at a total dose of 15 g/kg body weight.

Act. oto-l. 1959, 12, 351-52

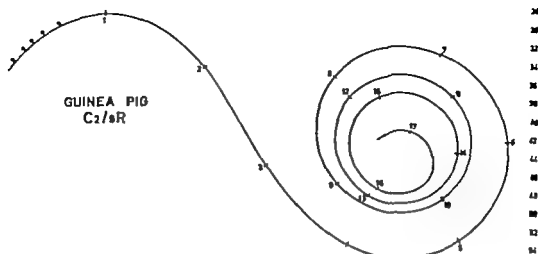


Fig. 72. Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig C<sub>2</sub>/9 R with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clearness of the curve the cells still present have been plotted only on the distance of impairment.

### Group C<sub>3</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of capreomycin sulphate for 58 days, followed by 400 mg/kg body weight for 9 days to a total dose of 15 g/kg body weight.

In this group a drop in the microphonics was seen in 7 out of the 15 ears. The five ears that were examined histologically were among these seven affected animals.

#### A. Cochlea

The external hair cells in the basal coil were very slightly impaired. The diagram of the missing sensory cells of the five ears is represented in Fig. 71. The average distance over which all the external hair cells are missing

TABLE 41. Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells reappear in the ears examined.

The average is calculated and the corrected values are calculated.

Guinea pigs, Group C <sub>3</sub>	Absence of the three E.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three E.H.C. (mm)
3 R	0	0.22
5 R	0.5	0.6
6 R	0.5	0.6
9 R	0.6	0.6
10 L	0.2	0.5
Average distance	0.36	0.6
After correction	0.16	0.28

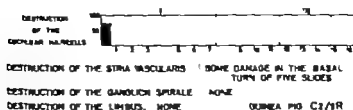


Fig. 73. Diagram of the destruction of the sensory cells with guinea pig C<sub>2</sub>/1R.

is, in these ears examined, 0.36 mm, whereas the average distance to the point where all the external hair cells reappear is 0.6 mm. After correction these average distances become respectively 0.16 mm and 0.28 mm (Table 41).

The stria vascularis is very slightly affected.

The ganglion cells, the limbus and the surroundings are completely normal.

The cochlear diagrams of guinea pig C<sub>2</sub>/9 R are fully represented in Figs. 72 and 73.

#### B Vestibular system

The average duration of the postrotatory nystagmus in 1 animals stimulated by 10 revolutions in 20 sec clockwise and anticlockwise is 11.8 sec and 11.9 sec respectively.

All the vestibular system are histologically entirely normal.

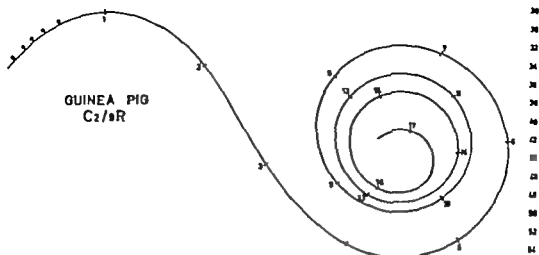


FIG. 72. Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig C<sub>2</sub>/9 R with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clearness the curve the cells still present have been plotted only on the distance of impairment.

### Group C<sub>2</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of capreomycin sulphate for 58 days, followed by 400 mg/kg body weight for 9 days to a total dose of 15 g/kg body weight.

In this group a drop in the microphonics was seen in 7 out of the 15 ears. The five ears that were examined histologically were among these seven affected animals.

#### A. Cochlea

The external hair cells in the basal coil were very slightly impaired. The diagram of the missing sensory cells of the five ears is represented in Fig. 71. The average distance over which all the external hair cells are missing

TABLE 41. Distances are given over which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells reappear in the ears examined.

The average values and the corrected values are calculated.

Guinea pig, Group C <sub>2</sub>	Absence of the three E.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three E.H.C. (mm)
3 R	0	0.32
5 R	0.5	0.8
8 R	0.5	0.8
9 R	0.6	0.6
10 L	0.2	0.5
Average distance	0.36	0.6
After correction	0.16	0.28

TABLE 42. Mortality rate and weight evolution during the test

Animal group	No of animal alive		Average weight	
	On first injection	At moment of recording	On first injection, g	At moment of recording, g
Neo <sub>3</sub> (neomycin sulphat 3 g/kg)	15	15	353.2	782.6
Methylneomycin (3 g/kg)	15	15	335.6	732.6
Neo <sub>2</sub> (neomycin sulphate 1.5 g/kg)	10	10	215.3	414.5
Neo <sub>4</sub> (neomycin sulphat 2 g/kg)	10	10	253.5	531.5
Neo <sub>2</sub> + (neomycin sulphate 2 g/kg + Vit. B)	10	10	216.0	517.5
Isotonic saline	16	15	362.4	794.6

TABLE 43. Average reaction of the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group

The value of is given in parentheses. This group was used as control.

Frequency /s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	44.60 ( $\pm 10.72$ )	39.53 ( $\pm 11.09$ )	35.80 ( $\pm 9.05$ )
1,000	41.40 ( $\pm 10.34$ )	36.26 ( $\pm 9.74$ )	32.53 ( $\pm 6.70$ )
2,000	38.80 ( $\pm 8.06$ )	31.86 ( $\pm 6.40$ )	33.93 ( $\pm 4.54$ )
5,000	42.68 ( $\pm 7.87$ )	39.40 ( $\pm 5.83$ )	35.88 ( $\pm 4.89$ )
8,000	46.53 ( $\pm 6.63$ )	43.86 ( $\pm 6.08$ )	43.13 ( $\pm 4.47$ )
10,000	49.06 ( $\pm 6.00$ )	46.60 ( $\pm 5.56$ )	45.93 ( $\pm 4.24$ )

TABLE 44. Average reaction of the 15 ears of the Neo<sub>2</sub> group

The value of is given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	59.13 ( $\pm 2.44$ )	58.93 ( $\pm 2.83$ )	58.66 ( $\pm 3.46$ )
1,000	58.93 ( $\pm 2.82$ )	58.80 ( $\pm 3.16$ )	55.93 ( $\pm 2.82$ )
2,000	59.28 ( $\pm 2.00$ )	59.06 ( $\pm 2.44$ )	58.86 ( $\pm 3.00$ )
5,000	59.73 ( $\pm 1.00$ )	59.73 ( $\pm 1.00$ )	59.96 ( $\pm 1.41$ )
8,000	59.60 ( $\pm 1.41$ )	60.00 ( $\pm 0.00$ )	60.00 ( $\pm 0.00$ )
10,000	60.00 ( $\pm 0.00$ )	60.00 ( $\pm 0.00$ )	60.00 ( $\pm 0.00$ )

TABLE 45. Average reaction of the 15 ears of the methylneomycin group (3 g/kg)

The value of is given in parentheses.

Frequency /s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	41.11 ( $\pm 9.84$ )	39.46 ( $\pm 9.79$ )	36.48 ( $\pm 8.60$ )
1,000	41.40 ( $\pm 8.77$ )	36.33 ( $\pm 8.42$ )	33.48 ( $\pm 7.21$ )
2,000	41.60 ( $\pm 7.54$ )	37.00 ( $\pm 6.53$ )	36.20 ( $\pm 5.65$ )
5,000	43.06 ( $\pm 6.55$ )	41.00 ( $\pm 6.65$ )	41.40 ( $\pm 4.89$ )
8,000	45.26 ( $\pm 6.08$ )	45.93 ( $\pm 6.56$ )	45.13 ( $\pm 4.12$ )
10,000	49.93 ( $\pm 3.47$ )	49.33 ( $\pm 6.09$ )	48.00 ( $\pm 4.35$ )



TABLE 46 *Average reaction of the 10 ears of the  $\text{NeO}_{1.2}$  group*The value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	41.30 ( $\pm 5.74$ )	41.50 ( $\pm 6.48$ )	40.30 ( $\pm 6.55$ )
1,000	41.40 ( $\pm 6.00$ )	41.00 ( $\pm 7.81$ )	38.80 ( $\pm 8.12$ )
2,000	42.00 ( $\pm 6.70$ )	42.00 ( $\pm 6.85$ )	42.60 ( $\pm 6.18$ )
5,000	50.20 ( $\pm 5.71$ )	48.90 ( $\pm 5.74$ )	48.30 ( $\pm 6.08$ )
8,000	51.10 ( $\pm 3.16$ )	52.40 ( $\pm 4.17$ )	51.10 ( $\pm 5.00$ )
10,000	51.90 ( $\pm 3.16$ )	53.40 ( $\pm 4.00$ )	52.70 ( $\pm 4.58$ )

TABLE 47 *Average reaction of the 10 ears of the  $\text{NeO}_2$  group*The value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	50.20 ( $\pm 5.38$ )	47.70 ( $\pm 5.63$ )	45.10 ( $\pm 5.29$ )
1,000	49.60 ( $\pm 6.21$ )	46.50 ( $\pm 7.00$ )	45.00 ( $\pm 6.21$ )
2,000	48.20 ( $\pm 6.48$ )	47.10 ( $\pm 5.41$ )	47.80 ( $\pm 5.09$ )
5,000	55.30 ( $\pm 4.17$ )	51.10 ( $\pm 4.89$ )	53.10 ( $\pm 4.89$ )
8,000	57.10 ( $\pm 3.46$ )	58.60 ( $\pm 4.00$ )	51.80 ( $\pm 3.74$ )
10,000	57.90 ( $\pm 2.61$ )	56.70 ( $\pm 3.60$ )	56.00 ( $\pm 2.61$ )

TABLE 48 *Average reaction of the 10 ears of the  $\text{NeO}_2$  B group*The value of  $t$  is given in parentheses.

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	52.40 ( $\pm 3.71$ )	50.80 ( $\pm 4.47$ )	48.70 ( $\pm 5.00$ )
1,000	53.20 ( $\pm 3.71$ )	50.70 ( $\pm 4.89$ )	49.10 ( $\pm 5.38$ )
2,000	52.10 ( $\pm 4.12$ )	50.60 ( $\pm 4.58$ )	50.20 ( $\pm 4.70$ )
5,000	57.30 ( $\pm 2.00$ )	56.00 ( $\pm 2.61$ )	51.90 ( $\pm 3.31$ )
8,000	58.30 ( $\pm 1.73$ )	57.50 ( $\pm 2.00$ )	56.90 ( $\pm 1.73$ )
10,000	58.70 ( $\pm 1.11$ )	58.10 ( $\pm 1.73$ )	57.00 ( $\pm 2.23$ )

TABLE 49 *Value of  $F$  (1.23) where the reaction is statistically better in the control animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $\text{NeO}_{1.2}$  group on the 18 examined points*Test 10 results type  $P < 0.01$  Roman type  $0.01 < P < 0.03$ 

Frequency c/s	80 db	90 db	100 db
500	—	—	—
1,000	—	—	4 12
2,000	—	7 02	18 19
5,000	6 35	16 18	18 37
8,000	12 09	14 12	18 38
10,000	7 92	16 19	11 66

TABLE 50 Value of  $F$  (1.23) where the reaction is statistically better in the control animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $\text{Neo}_2$  group on the 18 examined points

Test	10 ears. II type	II type	0.01	$P < 0.05$
Frequency cps	80 db	90 db	100 db	
500	—	4.56	2.94	
1,000	5.02	6.67	21.76	
2,000	11.61	21.70	39.36	
5,000	29.32	32.92	72.39	
8,000	22.33	21.02	44.11	
10,000	19.01	28.22	42.62	

TABLE 51 Value of  $F$  (1.23) where the reaction is statistically better in the control animals (isotonic saline group) than in the  $\text{Neo}_{2+3}$  group on the 18 examined points

Test	10 ears. II type	II type	0.01	$P < 0.05$
Frequency cps	80 db	90 db	100 db	
500	4.88	9.21	16.62	
1,000	11.79	18.66	42.61	
2,000	22.97	46.61	72.19	
5,000	31.21	70.66	82.96	
8,000	29.22	46.55	82.61	
10,000	21.49	36.66	56.22	

## II HISTOLOGICAL RESULTS

Among the animals treated with neomycin and methylneomycin only the group  $\text{Neo}$  and  $\text{MethyNeo}$  were examined histologically.

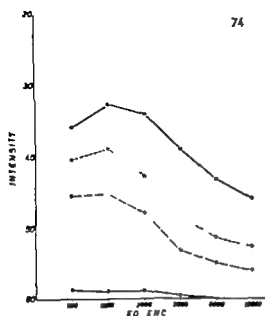
### Group $\text{Neo}_2$

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of neomycin sulphate for 30 days.

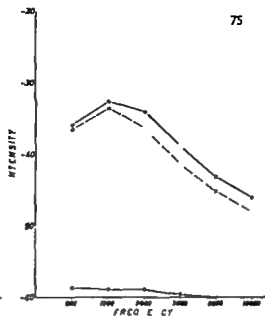
All animals showed nearly 100% drop in the microphonics. Ten cochleae from six animals and six vestibular systems from four animals were fully examined histologically.

#### A Cochlea

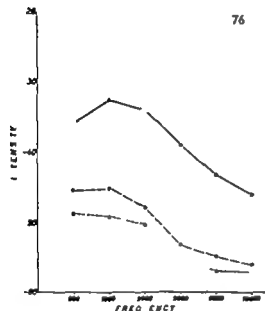
The organ of Corti had generally disappeared over the total length of the basal coil and had been replaced by undifferentiated epithelium, which had equally replaced the cells of Claudius. The internal hair cells appeared again about the first half of the second coil and the external hair cells



74



75



76

FIG. 74. Comparison between the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group and those of the Neo<sub>2</sub> (neomycin sulphat 3 g/kg), Neo<sub>3</sub> (neomycin sulphat 2 g/kg—10 ears) and Neo<sub>2+3</sub> (neomycin sulphat 1.5 g/kg—10 ears) groups at 100 db stimulation intensity. — Isotonic saline group; --- Neo<sub>2</sub> group; ... Neo<sub>3</sub> group.

FIG. 75. Comparison between the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group and those of the Neo<sub>2</sub> (neomycin sulphat 3 g/kg) and methylneomycin (3 g/kg) groups at 100 db stimulation intensity. — Isotonic saline group; --- Neo<sub>2</sub> group; - - - methylneomycin group.

FIG. 76. Comparison between the 15 ears of the isotonic saline group and those of the Neo<sub>2</sub> (neomycin sulphat 2 g/kg—10 ears) and Neo<sub>2+3</sub> (neomycin sulphat and Vit. B—10 ears) groups at 100 db stimulation intensity. — Isotonic saline group; --- Neo<sub>2</sub> group; ... Neo<sub>2+3</sub> group.

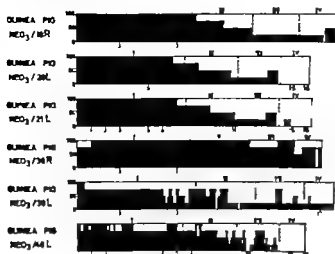


FIG. 77. Diagram of the destruction of the cochlear hair cells, plotted in black, in six ears of guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of streptomycin sulphate for 30 days.

were seen again in the second half of the second coil. These latter often remained incomplete up to the apex. The diagram of the missing sensory cells of the six examined guinea pigs is represented in Fig. 77.

The average distance over which all external hair cells are affected is 10.1 mm, whereas the average distance to the point where the external hair cells are fully present again is 16 mm (Table 52).

In all the animals the stria vascularis is severely affected, to the same extent as the destruction of the external hair cells. In the basal coil we often find only a strongly hyperchromic strip with rents.

Especially in the ganglia corresponding to the basal coil there is up to 75% destruction of the cells.

TABLE 52. Distances are given along which all the external hair cells have disappeared and the distances to the point where all the external hair cells reappear in the ears examined.

The average values are calculated.

Guinea pig, Group Neo <sub>3</sub>	Absence of the three E.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three E.H.C. (mm)
19 R	10.2	18.1
20 I	8.5	14
21 L	9.3	14.8
38 R	17.1	17.1
39 I	6	18
40 L	0.9	14
Average distance	10.1	16

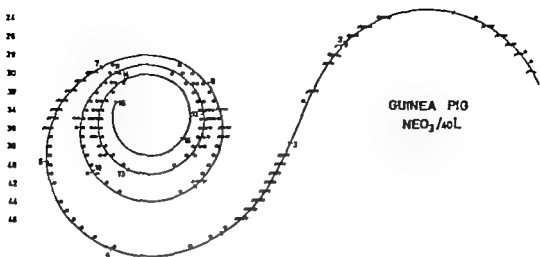


Fig. 78. Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig *Neo<sub>3</sub>/40 L* with the remaining sensory cells. For the sake of clearness of the curve the cell still present have been plotted only on the distance of impairment.

The nerve fibres in the lamina spiralis ossea of the basal coil have markedly diminished in number. One animal presents again the peculiar severe impairment of the ganglion cells, most pronounced at the apex. This will be discussed later.

The nuclei of the limbus are impaired in 8 out of the 10 examined ears. Sometimes these nuclei have disappeared to the extent of 100%. This severe lesion is most pronounced at the limbus corresponding to the organ of Corti between 3 and 6 mm.

The surroundings in several ears we established a decrease of the number of nuclei situated in the bony wall of the cochlea, especially in the wall that lies freely in the bulla. This decrease is generally more obvious in the basal coil and in the second coil.

The cochlear diagrams of guinea pig *Neo<sub>3</sub>/40 L* are fully represented in Figs. 8 and 79.

### B Vestibular system

The functional tests have not been carried out on this group.

Histologically the vestibular systems in three animals are completely normal. In guinea pig 40 (two examined ears) the macula utriculi is slightly affected, the cristae ampullares and the macula sacculi are normal.

### Group Methylneo<sub>3</sub>

Guinea pigs treated with a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of methylneomycin for 30 days.

In this group no drop in the microphonics was established. 13 ears belonging to 8 animals were examined histologically.

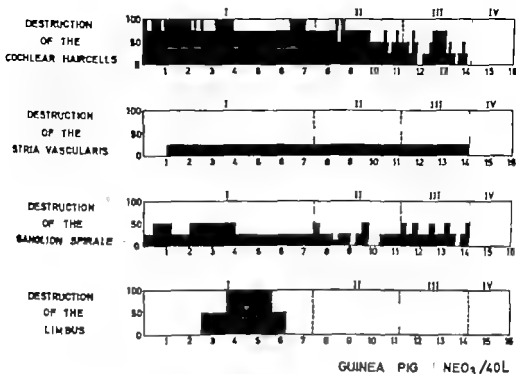


Fig. 79 Diagrams of the destructions of the sensory cells, of the stria vascularis, of the ganglion cells and of the limbus with guinea pig NEO<sub>3</sub>/40 L.

#### A Cochlea

Not a single histological anomaly was established, neither in the organ of Corti nor in the stria vascularis and the ganglion spirale, nor in the limbus and the surroundings.

#### B Vestibular system

In the vestibular system not a single anomaly was found either

# GENERAL DISCUSSION AND CONCLUSIONS

## PROBLEM I

A first aim of this double study was tracing the location of the damage in the whole of the inner ear and establishing the chronology of its origin.

The damage in the cochlea is to be found in the organ of Corti the stria vascularis, the nerve fibres and the ganglion spirale the limbus and the cochlear wall

The damage to the limbus and the cochlear wall is a dilatory phenomenon, which only occurs with heavy intoxication of the cochlea.

The damage to the ganglion spirale and the nerve fibres in the lamina spiralis ossa is clearly secondary to the intoxication of the sensory cells. Rüedi established that the greater the disturbances in the organ of Corti the greater was the damage in the ganglion. After examination of our series of animals it does not seem that one phenomenon is the result of the other but the impairment of the ganglion cells as well as the further disorganization of the structure of the organ of Corti are two phenomena of deterioration that develop simultaneously

The damage in the sensory cells is an early and important phenomenon. It begins in the basal coil and spreads in the direction of the apex. The external hair cells, as we have shown earlier are the first to be affected and of these the most medial is earliest

The latter phenomenon although already clearly visible in the basal coil is more obvious still in the more apical coils. These findings, established through histological study of the traditional cochlea slides by means of light microscopy confirm the findings of Kohonen, who studied the phenomena with phase contrast microscopy. The internal hair cells are only affected later sometimes even after the partial collapse of the tunnel structure. Although from the various diagrams and graphs, we may assume that the impairment starts in the basal coil and extends towards the apex, we also see that the damage to the internal sensory cells follows a less distinct pattern

In three animals we found a different pattern of intoxication. One animal whose two ears were examined histologically belongs to the group  $N_{01}$  (daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of neomycin for 30 days). The second belongs to the group  $N_1$  (daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin and of 15 mg/kg body weight of nialamide for 30 days). The third animal belongs to the group  $N_2$  (total dose of 15 g/kg body weight of viomycin). In these three animals the internal hair cells were missing in

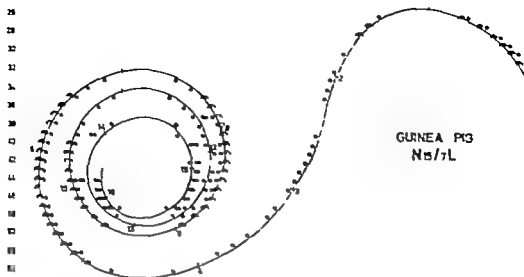


Fig. 80. Diagram of the cochlear spiral of the guinea pig No. 7 L with the present sensory cells. Loss of the internal hair cells in the fourth coil, loss of the external hair cells in the lower coils, where the internal cells are still present.

the fourth coil, although the external hair cells had only incompletely disappeared in the fourth and the third coil (guinea pig No. 38) or even lower and although the internal hair cells did show up in the lower coils. Consequently the impairment of the internal cells develops here from the apex towards the basal coil (Figs. 80 and 81).

The destruction of the external hair cells proceeds as already described from the basal coil to the apex.

The impairment of the ganglia is very pronounced in these three animals and seems more severe at the apex than at the base although this may be due to the normally less dense cell population of the apical ganglia. The ganglia are more affected than might be expected from the condition of the organ of Corti in that area. We might almost be led to think of a primary impairment of the ganglion cells, beginning in the apex, or of a reduction of the number of ganglion cells directly depending on the condition of the internal hair cells (Figs. 82 and 83).

Since among all the examined ears (about 80) we only found three with this unusual pattern of intoxication—viz. affection of the external hair cells diminishing from basal coil towards apex, affection of the internal hair cells diminishing from apex towards basal coil and very severe affection of the ganglion cells apparently more at the apex—we concluded that there was some abnormal susceptibility of these particular animals to the product, the doses given being too toxic or too high for these particular animals. From Kohonen's results there is a similar pattern of intoxication of the internal hair cells, diminishing from the apex towards the basal coil i.e. regarded thus as the normal pattern of intoxication. We may wonder



The innervation of the external cells is more dense in the basal coil than in the apical one (Smith, 1961 diagrams A and II Kohonen-Engstrom, 1965 according to gradients in radial and apical sense)

From these findings we may infer that the basal coil is the most important one because of its length, the number of cells, its metabolism and its innervation. This great nerve density in the cells of the basal coil allows the supposition that these cells are either more active and consequently have a greater metabolism, or have a more delicate function than the cells in the higher coils.

Müsebeck (1964) established that following intoxication of the inner ear with streptomycin the first histochemical changes appeared in the stria vascularis.

Neomycin, kanamycin and streptomycin are carried to the perilymph and endolymph through the blood stream and are eliminated from the internal ear more slowly than from the blood. Consequently the level of ototoxic antibiotics remains high for a longer time in the internal ear than in the blood (Voldrich 1963, Stupp & Rauch, 1965). With neomycin the elimination may take up to 55 hours, so that with daily injections a cumulative effect is obtained. This slow elimination is due to the slow resorption in the stria vascularis, and it is in connection with the poor resorbability peculiar to these antibiotics in general according to Stupp & Rauch (1965) who also state that all ordinary cells would be affected by such prolonged concentrations of toxic product.

Although all cells are affected in the internal ear eventually, the external hair cells are affected first, and the resulting lesion follows a constant pattern. So, besides the factor of intoxication there must be a second factor causing the cells to be affected in a certain definite order. This second factor in our opinion is either the more delicate function or the greater activity of the cells, because the fact that the most intoxicated cells are exactly those with the greatest nerve density (Kohonen, 1965, our own tests).

Darrouzet and coworkers proved that with guinea pigs there is greater liability to acoustic traumata after intoxication by ototoxic antibiotics (Darrouzet 1963). This means that there is a clear connection between the greater sensitivity of the hair cell to the ototoxic antibiotics and a greater activity.

Hypothesis of the process of intoxication as we drew it up after the study of other research work and our own tests:

The ototoxic product is carried by the blood stream to the perilymph and endolymph where it is retained longer than in the blood because of the slow elimination by the stria vascularis. The resorption of ototoxic material is greatest in the stria vascularis of the basal coil. The toxic effect makes itself felt slowly in the stria of the basal coil. In consequence of this the resorption diminishes, the process of elimination lasts longer and the structures of the internal ear are exposed to the toxic product for a longer

time. The sensory cells that are most important, be it because of their greater activity or because of their more delicate function, are affected first, viz. the external hair cells, beginning with the most medial and extending towards the more lateral ones, and from the basal towards the apical areas. With further intoxication more of the stria vascularis is affected, with reduced resorption, prolonged duration of elimination and longer exposure to the toxic product. Thus more sensory cells are affected, and following repeated and prolonged exposure less sensitive cells are affected as well. After the disappearance of the sensory cell the whole structure of the organ of Corti collapses slowly and the corresponding nerve fibres and ganglion cells degenerate.

## PROBLEM II

A second purpose of this double study was the comparison of the toxicity of the different ototoxic antibiotics.

After studying the curves obtained in measuring the microphonics at the round window (Figs. 41-42, 43, 63, 66, 74-75 and 6) we may classify neomycin as most toxic antibiotic followed by kanamycin, viomycin, streptomycin and finally capreomycin in diminishing order of toxicity, the last three of these antibiotics, however, being much less toxic than neomycin and kanamycin. A comparison of the damage to the external hair cells (E. H. C.) by the different drugs, based on histological examination and expressed in millimeters is shown in Table 53. Neomycin is the most ototoxic antibiotic, then kanamycin, viomycin, capreomycin and finally streptomycin.

TABLE 53 Classification of the products according to the average distances on which all the external hair cells have disappeared and to the point where all the external hair cells are present again (this last distance is especially important)

Product	Absence of the three E.H.C. (mm)	Presence of the three E.H.C. (mm)
Neomycin	10.1	11
Kanamycin	6.33	—
Viomycin	3	8.17
Streptomycin	1.75	11
Capreomycin	3.93	02
Polymyxin B	1	6.52
Polymyxin E	—	1.1
Polymyxin F	0.9	—33
Viomycin	1.1	1.98
Streptomycin	0.16	0.23
Neomycin	—	—
Streptomycin	—	—

mycin. If however we take into account the fact that when the streptomycin injections were administered on the same schedule as the viomycin and capreomycin, it had to be stopped because of its severe general toxicity and further that streptomycin affects the vestibular system whereas capreomycin does not cause any damage to this system we may conclude that streptomycin is more toxic than capreomycin and that capreomycin is the least ototoxic antibiotic of all the drugs tested.

### PROBLEM III

A third aim of this double study was to test the ability of certain drugs to reduce the toxicity of a few antibiotics.

Four groups of tests were carried out for this purpose and they will be discussed here

#### Group I

This comprises the series of animals  $h_0$ ,  $\backslash_{13}$ ,  $\backslash_6$  and  $\backslash_{16}$  to which nialamide was administered in subcutaneous daily injections of 1.5 mg/kg, 8 mg/kg and 15 mg/kg body weight respectively at the same time as kanamycin sulphate but with different syringes and needles and at different sites of injection. A daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate was administered for 30 days. Looking through Fig. 42 and Tables 7, 8, 9 and 10 we see clearly that nialamide does not protect the cochlea of the guinea pig against the toxicity of kanamycin but gives protection against the slight acute general toxicity: the slight loss of hair noticed in series  $h_0$  was not observed in  $\backslash_{13}$  and  $\backslash_6$ . On the other hand there was a distinct impairment of the vestibular system in series  $\backslash_{13}$  which was not found with the series  $h_0$  and  $\backslash_6$ .

#### Group II

This comprises the series of animals  $h_2$ ,  $P_1$ ,  $P_4$  and  $P_8$  which were injected with a daily dose of 250 mg/kg body weight of kanamycin sulphate, kanamycin monopotassium, kanamycin dipotassium and kanamycin tripotassium for 20 days.

From the curves obtained in Fig. 43 and from Table 16, we deduce that kanamycin monopotassium is clearly less toxic than the sulphate, the dipotassium and the tripotassium.

That in group II much more disturbance of the vestibular system occurred than in group I, is perhaps due to the fact that the kanamycin was obtained from two different laboratories. These two kanamycins apparently differed in their basic composition and contained different quantities of kanamycin A and B.

#### Group III

This comprises the series of animals  $\backslash_{eo3}$  and  $\backslash_{eth3eo3}$  which were injected subcutaneously with a daily dose of 100 mg/kg body weight of neomycin and methylneomycin for 30 days.

Electrophysiological and histological examination revealed no toxicity with this modified neomycin. But methylneomycin has lost all antibiotic activity.

We can imagine how selective the ototoxicity must be since a slight modification in the formula makes all toxicity disappear.

The question is whether and how far the bactericidal capacity and the ototoxicity are based on one and the same activity of the product. It would be interesting to examine the percentage of methylneomycin in the endolymph and the perilymph, and the rate of elimination from the internal ear in comparison to the research carried out with neomycin and kanamycin (Voldrich, 1965; Stupp & Rauch, 1965).

#### Group IV

This comprises the series of animals Neo<sub>1</sub> and Neo<sub>2</sub>. A mixture of Vit B<sub>1</sub>, B<sub>6</sub> and B<sub>12</sub> was daily administered together with neomycin (daily dose of 200 mg/kg body weight) for 10 days.

Electrophysiological examination (Fig. 76) did not reveal any protective action of these vitamins, administered in this form. Hence no histological research was carried out.

#### PROBLEM IV

A fourth aim of this double study was to establish a possible connection between a drop in the microphonics and an accurate location of the damage.

Both examinations carried out on a series of animals develop in a fully parallel way and confirm each other. The comparison between the two methods of investigation done on one individual animal was disappointing and did not allow any conclusions. After all, this is easily understood when one thinks of the defects and the limitations of both methods. The electrophysiological test is a dynamic test, but since the electrode is placed at the round window the information obtained almost exclusively concerns the basal coil.

The histological examination gives us a survey of the whole cochlea, but does not teach us anything about the function of the cell. We only state whether a cell is apparently normal or apparently affected or whether it is absent.

## SUMMARY

An electrophysiological and histological study was carried out with series of guinea pigs that were previously treated with different streptomycetes antibiotics

### Purpose of the experiment

- 1 Finding the locations of the lesions caused by ototoxic antibiotics in the inner ear and the chronology of their appearance
- 2 Comparison of the toxicity of the antibiotics used
- 3 Testing of certain drugs with a view to a reduction of the ototoxicity of certain antibiotics.
- 4 Establishing any possible relation between a decrease in cochlear microphonics and an accurate location of the lesions.

The electrophysiological study, the technique of which has been described before (*Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 1902, Suppl. 171) consisted in the registering of the cochlear microphonics on series of 16 ears. The histological study of a minimum of 5 inner ears in each series was carried out by means of the usual light microscopy. The cochlea was graphically reconstructed according to Guild (1921) and Schuknecht (1953).

The histological lesions caused by the ototoxic antibiotics in the organ of Corti in the stria vascularis, in the ganglion spirale in the limbus, in the surrounding tissues and in the different vestibular structures were described with great care.

A first series of experiments was carried out with kanamycin. Simultaneous injections of kanamycin and nalamide did not diminish the ototoxicity of kanamycin either from an electrophysiological or histological point of view. A slight decrease of the acute toxicity was found. On the other hand kanamycin monopotassium salt diminished obviously the ototoxicity of kanamycin in the guinea pig both electrophysiologically and histologically. Kanamycin dipotassium salt and tripotassium salt appeared somewhat less toxic than kanamycin sulphate.

A second series of experiments was carried out with streptomycin, viomycin and capreomycin. Here the acute toxicity of streptomycin was rather important and the chronic toxicity for the vestibular system obvious. Capreomycin showed strikingly little toxicity for the inner ear of guinea pigs (electrophysiological and histological tests).

A third series of experiments was carried out with neomycin and methyl neomycin. The important ototoxicity of neomycin established electrophysiologically and histologically in the guinea pig was not found again with

methylniomycin. On the other hand, the simultaneous injections of neomycin and vitamin B did not diminish the ototoxicity of neomycin in the guinea pig.

After examination of previous research and of our own experiments, a hypothesis about the mechanism of intoxication of the inner ear by streptomycetes antibiotics is proposed. We have stressed the fact that the ototoxic antibiotic stays in the inner ear fluids longer than in the blood because of the slower elimination and that among the cochlear cells the more active ones appeared to be more sensitive to the ototoxic antibiotic.

## RÉSUMÉ

Une étude électrophysiologique et histologique a été effectuée sur des groupes de cobayes traités avec différents antibiotiques streptomyciniques. Cette double étude avait pour but :

- 1° établir la localisation et l'ordre chronologique des lésions, causées par les antibiotiques ototoxiques à hauteur de l'oreille interne
- 2° comparer la toxicité des antibiotiques utilisés
- 3° contrôler l'action de certains produits ou vitamines diminuant éventuellement l'ototoxicité de ces antibiotiques
- 4° rechercher une relation entre une diminution de l'effet microphonique et la localisation exacte des lésions dans l'oreille interne

L'étude électrophysiologique dont la technique a été décrite antérieurement (*Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 1962 Suppl. 171) consistait à mesurer l'effet microphonique par groupes de 15 oreilles. L'étude histologique d'un minimum de 5 oreilles par groupe a été effectuée par microscopie simple. La cochlée a été reproduite en graphique selon Guild (1921) et Schuknecht (1953).

Des lésions histologiques, causées par les antibiotiques ototoxiques, ont été décrites dans l'organe de Corti, la strie vasculaire, le ganglion spiral, le limbus, les tissus environnants et dans les structures vestibulaires.

Une première série d'expériences a été effectuée avec la kanamycine. L'injection combinée de kanamycine et de nialamide ne diminue pas l'ototoxicité de la kanamycine ni au point de vue électrophysiologique ni au point de vue histologique. Une légère diminution de la toxicité aiguë a été constatée. Par contre le monopantothénate de kanamycine réduit manifestement l'ototoxicité de la kanamycine chez les cobayes (étude électrophysiologique et histologique). Le dipantothénate et tripanthothénate de kanamycine semblent être légèrement moins toxique pour l'oreille interne du cobaye que le sulfate de kanamycine.

Une deuxième série d'expériences a été pratiquée avec la streptomycine, la viomycine et la capréomycine. La toxicité aiguë de la streptomycine est assez importante de même que la toxicité chronique pour le système vestibulaire. La capréomycine a été révélée très peu toxique pour l'oreille interne du cobaye sur le plan électrophysiologique et histologique.

La troisième série d'expériences a été effectuée avec la néomycine et la méthylnéomycine. L'ototoxicité importante de la néomycine, constatée électrophysiologiquement et histologiquement chez les cobayes, contraste avec l'absence d'ototoxicité de la méthylnéomycine. Par contre un traite-

ment de néomycine associée à une certaine dose de vitamine B ne diminue pas l'ototoxicité de la néomycine.

Après étude des publications antérieures et de nos propres expériences, nous proposons une hypothèse concernant le mécanisme d'intoxication de l'oreille interne par les antibiotiques streptomyciniques. L'antibiotique ototoxique resterait plus longtemps dans les liquides labyrinthiques que dans le sang suite à son élimination plus lente. Les cellules cochléaires les plus actives seraient également plus sensibles à l'influence nocive des antibiotiques ototoxiques.



## ZUSAMMENFASSUNG

Eine elektrophysiologische und histologische Untersuchung ist durchgeföhrt worden an Meerschweinchengruppen die mit verschiedenen Streptomycos-Antibiotika behandelt worden waren

Dieser Doppelversuch hatte zum Zweck

- 1 die Lokalisierung und die chronologische Reihenfolge der durch ototoxisch wirkende Antibiotika erzeugten Läsionen im Innenohr festzustellen
- 2 die Toxizität der verwendeten Antibiotika zu vergleichen
- 3 die Wirkung bestimmter Produkte bzw Vitamine die evtl die Ototoxizität dieser Antibiotika vermindern zu prüfen
- 4 einen Zusammenhang zwischen einer Verminderung des Mikrophonoeffekts und der genauen Lokalisation der Läsionen im Innenohr zu suchen

Der elektrophysiologische Versuch, dessen Technik schon früher beschrieben worden ist (*Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh) 1962 Suppl 171) bestand in der Messung des Mikrophonoeffekts in Gruppen zu 16 Ohren. Die histologische Untersuchung bei einem Minimum von 5 Ohren pro Gruppe wurde mittels einfacher Mikroskopie durchgeföhrt. Die Cochlea ist graphisch nach Guild (1921) und Schuknecht (1953) dargestellt worden

Histologische Läsionen, durch ototoxische Antibiotika bedingt sind im Cortischen Organ, der Stria vascularis, dem Ganglion spirale, dem Limbus, den umgebenden Geweben und den Vestibularisstrukturen beschrieben worden

Die erste Untersuchungsreihe ist mit Kanamycin durchgeföhrt worden. Die Injektion der Kombination von Kanamycin mit Nalamid zeigt weder elektrophysiologisch noch histologisch eine Verminderung der Ototoxizität des Kanamycins. Eine leichte Verminderung der akuten Toxizität wurde festgestellt. Im Gegensatz hierzu ist die Toxizität von Kanamycin Monopantothemat deutlich vermindert (elektrophysiologische und histologische Untersuchungen). Di und Tripanthemat scheinen eine leicht geringere Toxizität auf das Innenohr des Meerschweinchens auszuüben als Kanamycin-Sulfat

Eine zweite Untersuchungsreihe ist mit Streptomycin, Viomycin und Capreomycin durchgeföhrt worden. Die akute Toxizität des Streptomycins ist beachtlich, ebenso die chronische Toxizität auf das Vestibularsystem. Capreomycin erwies sich bei der elektrophysiologischen und histologischen Untersuchung als wenig toxisch auf das Innenohr des Meerschweinchens.

Die dritte Untersuchungsreihe ist mit Neomycin und Methylneomycin durchgeföhrt worden. Die ausgeprägte Ototoxizität des Neomycins, die am

Meerschweinchen elektrophysiologisch und histologisch festgestellt wurde steht im Kontrast zum Fehlen der Ototoxizität bei Methylneomycin. Die Kombination von Neomycin mit Vitamin B in einer gewissen Dosis vermindert die Ototoxizität dieses Antibiotikums nicht.

Nach Studium der früheren Publikationen und unserer eigenen Untersuchungen schlagen wir eine Hypothese vor über den Mechanismus der Intoxikation des Innenohres durch die Streptomycetes-Antibiotika: das ototoxisch wirkende Antibiotikum würde aufgrund seiner langsameren Ausscheidung in der Labyrinthflüssigkeit eine längere Verweildauer haben als im Blut. Die cochlearen Zellen, die eine höhere Aktivität leisten, dürften auch die höchste Empfindlichkeit auf den schädlichen Einfluss der ototoxisch wirkenden Antibiotika zeigen.

# REFERENCES

(Compliment to the references published in 1962, *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) Suppl 171)

- ALTMAN, F. and WALLEN, J. G. 1950; Further investigations on the physiology of the labyrinth. *Ann Otol* (St Louis) 59 637-686
- ANDOUE, P. SART, L., and JOMARD, P. 1963; Etude électro-physiologique et histologique de la toxicité de certains antibiotiques. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 56 106-112.
- BARATI, A. 1960; Récentes connaissances sur la structure submicroscopique des organes du vestibule. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) Suppl 163 2-23
- BRADLEY, H. A. 1963; Acoustic trauma in the guinea pig Part I. Electrophysiology and histology. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 60 437-451
- 1965; Acoustic trauma in the guinea pig Part II. Electron microscopy including the morphology of cell junctions in the organ of Corti. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 60 479-493.
- CORRI, A. and BOWEN, M. 1964; Behaviour of cytochrome oxidase activity in the cochlea of the guinea pig following acoustic stimulation. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 58 321-330.
- DA ROBERT, J. and DE LIMA SOBRINHO, E., 1962 Orelli interne kausynese et larmes. Etude expérimentale. *Rev Laryng* (Bord.) 82 781-806.
- DARROENT, J. 1963 Essais de protection de l'organe de Corti contre la toxicité des antibiotiques. *Rev Laryng* (Bord.) 83 459-478.
- HARROUET, J. and STOLLER, F. M. 1963; Les otopathies infectieuses. Etude histologique au microscope à contraste de phase. *Rev Laryng* (Bord.) 83 599-615
- DOHLMAN, H. and OAKENFORD, F. C., 1960 The secretion and absorption of endolymph. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 51 435-438
- DOHLMA, G. 1964 The mechanism of secretion and absorption of endolymph in the vestibular apparatus. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 59 278-286.
- DRYLL, A. J. and WATKINS, J. 1964; Role of actin in streptomycin upon inner ear sensory cells. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 57 521-528.
- ENGSTRÖM, H. 1961 Microscopic anatomy of the inner ear. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 40 6-22.
- ENGSTRÖM, H., SÄÖSTRAND, F. S., and SPÖRDLIN, H. 1958; Fisiologia der Stria vascularis beim Menschen. *Prac Oto-laryng* (Basel) 17 60-70
- ENGSTRÖM, H. 1960; The innervation of the vestibular sensory cells. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) Suppl 163 30-40
- 1960 Electron micrographical study of the receptor cells of the organ of Corti. *Annal Mechanismus of the Auditory and Vestibular systems*, pp. 48-78.
- ENGSTRÖM, H., ANDER, H. W. and HAWKINS, J. E., JR. 1964; Cytoarchitecture of the organ of Corti. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) Suppl 163 92-99
- ENGSTRÖM, H. and KRONEN, A. 1963 Cochlear damage from ototoxic Antibiotics. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 59 171 178
- FALKE-HANSEN, J. 1962 Histochémical studies of glycogen in the cochlea of drug injected guinea pigs andloxan-diabetic white rats. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 5 suppl. 163 108-118
- FALKE-HANSEN, J. and THOMSEN, E., 1963 Histochemical studies of glycogen in the cochlea of the normal guinea pig. *Acta Oto-laryng* (Stockh.) 56 429

- FERN LINDER, C., 1951 The internal structure of the cochlea (guinea pig) *Laryngoscope* (St. Louis) 61 1152-1172.
- 1960: Internal structure of the cochlea in relation to hearing loss *Laryngoscope* (St. Louis) 70 363-372.
- FRIEDMAN, I., CANNON, W. T., McLAUGHLIN, D., and BIND, E. S. 1963 Electro microscopic observation of the human membrane labyrinth with particular reference to Meniere disease *J. Otolaryngol. Rhinol. Laryngol.* 72 123-129.
- GUILD, S. R., 1921 A graphic reconstruction method of the structure of the organ of Corti *Anat. Rec.* 22 141-187.
- HANFMAN, R. J. F. 1962: Electro microscopy of skin and mucous membranes *Techniques of Electron Microscopy* pp. 1-40.
- HAWKINS, J. E., JR., and ENGSTROM, H. 1964: Effect of kanamycin on cochlear electroretinogram *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 59 100-107.
- HENNINGSEN, D. and FERN LINDER, C., 1959 Ototoxicity of gentamicin in guinea pigs *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chic.) 70 321-333.
- HENNINGSEN, D. 1963: Quelques aspects du rôle biochimique de l'oreille interne *Acta Otolaryng.* Belg. 17 318-318.
- HERTZ, H. and RIEGER, N. 1950 Registration of vestibular reaction in guinea pigs. Test of the effect of streptomycin *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) Suppl. 93, 177-183.
- HEDRIN, D. and WERRILL, J. 1962 Cholinesterase and its relation to the nerve endings of the inner ear *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 33, 205-217.
- JONSSON, M. B. and SCHWARTZ, M. R. 1962 The ototoxic effect of kanamycin *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 33, 337-344.
- KILBING, R. and HEDRIN, D. 1963 The development of the organ of Corti in the mouse *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 60 207-222.
- 1965 The development of the organ of Corti in the mouse *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 66 287-302.
- 1966 The development of the stria vascularis in the mouse *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 67, 277-291.
- KIYURA, R. and WERRILL, J. 1962 Terminal structure of the II-o-cochlear bundle in relation to the outer hair cell of the organ of Corti in guinea pig *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 33, 11-32.
- KIYURA, R., LUNDQVIST, P. G. and WERRILL, J. 1964 Secretory epithelial cells of the ampulla of the guinea pig labyrinth *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 59 317-330.
- KIYURA, R., SCHWARTZ, M. R. and SANO, C. 1964 Fine morphology of the sensory cells of the organ of Corti in mouse *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 58 390-406.
- KIYURA, R., 1966 Ultrastructure of the cochlear sensory cell and its attachment to the tectorial membrane *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 61 65-72.
- KLEINER, A. P. 1962 Vibration de la teneur DVA en haut des cellules sensorielles et des glomérules près du stimulateur acoustique *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 58 102-106.
- KOMURO, E. and PLETTER, D. 1962 Z. Größe des Elektrolytstromes der Gewebe der Cochlea *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 33 319-325.
- KOONIN, A. 1963 Effect of some ototoxic drugs upon the pattern and function of cochlear sensory cells in the guinea pig *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 59 99-103.
- KOONIN, T. H. A., and HANSEN, R. 1966 Vulnerability of the organ of Corti to poliovirus *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 61 337-344.
- KOONIN, T., KELLEY, E., and SINGLETON, C. T. 1964 Effect of chemical irritation of the endolymph on the cochlear potential *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 62 292-301.
- LEIBERMAN, C. C., 1963 The significance of the II-o-cochlear bundle for the adaptation mechanism of the inner ear *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 59 121-132.
- LORENTE, N. R., 1937 The neural mechanism of hearing The sensory end of the cochlea *Laryngoscope* (St. Louis) 47 373-377.
- LUNDQVIST, P. G., KILBING, R. and WERRILL, J. 1964 Ultrastructural organization of the



- FERNI DEZ, C., 1931 The insertion of the cochlea (guinea pig) *Laryngoscope* (St Louis) 61 1152-1172.
- 1940: Innervation of the cochlea in relation to hearing loss *Laryngoscope* 50 363-372.
- FRID, M., L. CANTROW, R. T. McLAUGHLIN, and BRAD, E. S. 1963 Electron microscopy observations on the human membranous labyrinth with particular reference to Meniere disease *J Otolaryngol Res.* 9 123-139.
- GOLD, S. R., 1921 A graphic reconstruction method of the study of the ear *J Anat Rec* 22, 141-157.
- HARTZ, W., J. F. 1963: Electron microscopy of skin and mucous membranes *Techniques of Electron Microscopy* pp. 1-10.
- HARTZ, W., J. E. JR., and ENCARBON, H. 1964 Effect of kanamycin on cochlear cytoarchitecture. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) Suppl. 188 100-107.
- HEYENBERT, H. and FERNI DEZ, C., 1939 Ototoxicity of quinine in experimental animals. *J Otolaryng* (Chic.) 6 321-333.
- HEYENBERT, D. 1963 Quinine: aspects de la biochimie de l'oreille interne *Acta Otolaryng Belg* 1 315-318.
- HARTZ, W., and RIXNER, V. 1930: Registrations of vestibular reaction in guinea pigs, test of the stability of the labyrinth *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 5 pp. 95, 177-183.
- HILTON, B. and WERNICK, J. 1962 Cholinesterase and its relation to the sensory endings of the inner ear. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 35, 203-217.
- JORGENSEN, M. B., and SCHMIDT, M. R. 1962 The ototoxic effect of kanamycin. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 35, 531-544.
- KITTEL, H., and HILTON, B. D. 1963 The development of the organ of Corti in the mouse *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 60 207-222.
- 1965 The development of the organ of Corti in Shaker I mice *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 60 227-203.
- 1966 The development of the stria vascularis in the mouse *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 62 277-291.
- KITTEL, H., and WERNICK, J. 1962 Termination of the olivocochlear bundle in relation to the outer hair cells of the organ of Corti in guinea pig *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 55, 11-32.
- KITTEL, H., LUNDQVIST, P. G., and WERNICK, J. 1964 Secretory epithelial cells of the ampullae of the guinea pig labyrinth. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 5 317-330.
- KITTEL, H., SCHULTZ, H. P., and SANDOZ, C., 1964 Fine morphology of the sensory cell in the organ of Corti in man *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 58 290-308.
- KITTEL, H., 1966 Hairs of the cochlear sensory cells and their attachment to the tectorial membrane *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 61 53-72.
- ELI SAARA, P. 1963 Variations in teneur en D.N.A. dans des cellules sensorielles et ganglionnaires après stimulation acoustique *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 56 192-196.
- KONTAK, E., and PLESTER, B. 1962 Z. Größe des Elongations (Wachstums) d. Gewebe der Cochlea *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 34 310-323.
- KONO, K. A. 1965 Effect of some ototoxic drugs upon the pattern and insertion of cochlear sensory cell in the guinea pig *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) Suppl. 208.
- KONO, Y., HARA, A., and HARA, R. 1966 Vulnerability of the organ of Corti to poisoning *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 61 322-344.
- KONISHI, T., KILPATRICK, L., and STROGATZ, C. T. 1966 Effect of chemical irritation of the endolymph of the cochlear pot on the olivocochlear bundle of the guinea pig *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 59 202-204.
- LEHMAN, C. C., 1965 The significance of the olivocochlear bundle of the guinea pig *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 59 124-132.
- LORENZ, DE NO, R. 1937 The neural mechanism of hearing. The sensory endings of the cochlea. *Laryngoscope* (St Louis) 47 373-377.
- LUNDQVIST, P. G., KILPATRICK, L., and WERNICK, J. 1964 Ultrastructural organization of the

- plithelial lining in the d lymphatic d ct nd sa in the guinea pig *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 37 63-80
- LUNDQVIST P G 1963: The d lymphatic d ct nd sac in the guinea pig *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) Suppl. 201
- MAYER EM GOTTSCHELOW, A RICH, S and KOTINA, E., 1963: Unterschied im Metabolismus der einzelnen Schneckenwind g n *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 39 116-123.
- NECHER, N E., and LUNN, M H 1931 The strial sacculi: Review and description. *Laryngoscope* (St. Louis) 41 980-1003
- P KERN, H and THOMSEN, E., 1964 Cytological basophilic spiral ganglion cells of the guinea pig following acoustic stimulation *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 38 290-311
- PRICE, C D 1960 *Histological Techniques for Electron Microscopy*
- PORTER, M and DARRONCHET J 1964: Etude expérimentale de l'action toxique de certains acides aminés vitales sur les cellules de l'organe de Corti *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 37 266-280
- PORT, G 1964 L'innervation différentielle des récepteurs vestibulaires. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 38 220-228.
- PORT, G, PORT, G, BRODSON, S and CORTESE, G 1964 Experimental studies of the local effect of acetylcholine and cholinergic substances on cholinergic inhibitory cells in the strial sacculi. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 38 159-174
- SCHERER, J, CAEL, F and ROMAN, J 1960: La biochimie sanguine et l'otolaryngologie *Acta Otolaryng* 14 203-404
- SCHUCHT H F 1933 Frequenzbestimmung der Cochlea als determiniert durch peripheren Gehörverlust. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chi.) 34 763
- SCHUCHT H F and WINKLER, R 1933 Heilungsmöglichkeiten bei partieller Section der Cochlea nerv. *Laryngoscope* (St. Louis) 43 441-463
- SCHUCHT H F 1960: Neurological correlates of auditory acuity and pitch discrimination in the cat. *Arch Otolaryng* 14 203-404
- 1964 Pathological changes in the pathophysiology of presbycusis. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chi.) 80 349-352.
- SCHUCHT H F, ISHIBASHI, M and GARDNER, R H 1963 The pathophysiology of cochleo-sacculi degeneration. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 39 164-170
- SMITH, C A 1936 Microscopic structure of the utricle. *Ann Otol* (St. Louis) 45, 480-470.
- 1937 Structure of the utricle and dorsal prominence. *Ann Otol* (St. Louis) 46 521-536.
- 1961 The pattern of the cochlea. *Ann Otol* (St. Louis) 70 504-527
- SMITH, C A and SCHWARTZ, F S., 1961 Structure of the sensory cells of the utricle. *Ann Otol* (St. Louis) 70 528-546
- SMITH, C A., and RABINOVICH, G L., 1963 Recent observations on the utricle. *Ann Otol* (St. Louis) 72, 490-506
- STUHL, H., and RABINOVICH, S., 1963 *Arch Ohr Nas. u. Kehlk.-Halsk* 183 800-801
- STUHL H RICH, S, SCHUCHT, H and LAGLER, F 1964 Untersuchungen über die Wirkung der peptischen Wirkstoffe der Streptomyces-Antibiotika mit besonderer Berücksichtigung des Kanamycins. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 38 423-444
- TIERBERGEN, J 1962 Influence of some Streptomyces antibiotics on the cochlea microphages of the guinea pig *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 36 171
- VALDEN, L., 1963 The kinetics of streptomycin, kanamycin and neomycin in the inner ear. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 38 242-248.
- VERALL, J 1934: Studies on the structure and function of the sensory epithelium of the utricle. *Acta Otolaryng* 14 203-404

- f the cristae ampullares in the guinea pig. *Acta Oto-Laryng* (Stockh.) 5 ppl. 126 1-43.
- 1960 Vestibular receptor cell in fish and mammals. *Acta Oto-Laryng* (Stockh.) Suppl. 162 25-29
- 1960 Electron micrographic studies of vestibular hair cell innervation. *Neural Mechanisms of the Auditory and Vestibular System* pp. 247-257
- WERNALL, J. HILDING, B. and LUNDQVIST F. H. 1961 Ultrastructure and innervation of cochlearer Hrzellen. *Arch. Oh. Nas. u. Kehlk. H. Hk. 18* 106-126.
- WERNALL, J. and HAWKINS, J. E., JR. 1962: The vestibular nerve pithella in the cat labyrinth and their reaction in chronic streptomycin labyrinthitis. *Acta Oto-Laryng* (Stockh.) 31 1-23







PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksells Boktryckeri Aktiebolag*

UPPSALA 1948

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 235

THE LABYRINTHINE CAPSULE  
NORMAL STRUCTURE AND  
PATHOGENESIS OF OTOSCLEROSIS

RUTH GUSSEN



ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA  
SUPPLEMENTUM 285

*Departments of Pathology and Surgery Division of Head and Neck Surgery Oncology Section,  
University of California, Los Angeles, California, U.S.A*

THE LABYRINTHINE CAPSULE  
NORMAL STRUCTURE AND  
PATHOGENESIS OF OTOSCLEROSIS

RUTH GUSSEN M.D.

*Assistant Professor of Pathology  
University of California, Los Angeles*

UPPSALA 1968

*Supported by grant from USPHS NB-66606, Deafness Research Foundation,  
Control Bureau of Research of the American Otolological Society Inc., and The  
Hopsa for Hearing Research Foundation.*

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell*

BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG

UPPSALA 1968

# CONTENTS

The Bone of the Labyrinthine Capsule	11
General Features of Endosteal and Periosteal Membrane Bone	13
Cartilage Foci and Globuli Osses	1
Cartilage and Membrane Chondroid Bone	20
"Remodeling" of Perivascular Bone	-8
Blood Vessels of the Labyrinthine Capsule	29
The Interstitial Bone	33
Abnormal Progression of Bone Changes	38
Early Lesions of Otosclerosis	45
Otosclerosis	50
Summary	52
Zusammenfassung	51
References	





The structure of the labyrinthine capsule has been an enigma with many unusual features, all apparently unrelated to each other so that no comprehensive understanding of this bone as an entity with interrelated physiological mechanisms has seemed possible. The histologic structure of the labyrinthine capsule is usually considered to be normal unless otosclerotic bone is present replacing portions of the original capsule. In-between stages of abnormality are not recognized. The middle layer of the labyrinthine capsule is described in the literature as consisting of endochondral bone which once formed, persists throughout life without change. The presence of true cartilage foci is denied by some while others describe their presence as abnormal. Peculiar blood vessels are described which have unusual staining characteristics of their walls. Unusual blue-staining bone is sometimes seen about blood vessels in apparently normal specimens, as well as in otosclerotic specimens. An area of predilection for otosclerotic involvement is definitely agreed upon within and about the fissula ante fenestram. However, otosclerotic foci also develop within the capsule with no relation to this area of predilection. It is not clear what is normal and what is abnormal within this complicated structure.

Before pathological processes can be adequately recognized and their pathogenesis determined, it is essential that there be a clear recognition of the normal processes occurring throughout the life of a tissue. Only then can deviations from the normal be recognized and explained.

The present study presents an overall histological picture of the human labyrinthine capsule from birth to old age, demonstrating the interrelations between cartilage, bone, blood vessels and soft tissue. Certain changes will be described which occur normally in all temporal bones. An attempt to relate the abnormal progression of certain of these changes to the development of otosclerosis will be made.

#### *Methods and Materials*

Human temporal bones from 27 patients (48 specimens) were studied ranging in age from birth to 82 years of age. Thirteen of the patients were males, from one day to 79 years of age, and fourteen of the patients were females, ranging in age from 16 minutes to 82 years of age. In 46 of the specimens, the appearance of the labyrinthine capsule was consistent with what has generally been considered to be normal. Two of the specimens contained typical otosclerotic foci involving the stapediovestibular joint with ankylosis, and were from a 49-year old white female. Four specimens were from Negro males, one pair from a one-day old baby and the other pair from a 48-year old male.

The temporal bones were vacuum fixed in 10% neutral buffered formalin demineralized by chelation with a 0.7M solution of the tetrasodium salt of EDTA at pH 7.4 and 37 C (Gussen and Donahue 1965) and vacuum embedded in parlodion (Donahue and Gussen 1966). Sections were cut at 20 micra and were stained with hematoxylin and eosin.

## THE BONE OF THE LABYRINTHINE CAPSULE

Mayer (1917) Bast (1930-1942) Richany Anson and Bast (1960) and many others have divided the labyrinthine capsule into three more or less clearly defined layers of bone. The inner endosteal layer has been described as being always thin and fairly uniform. The middle layer is described as consisting of immature endochondral bone which, once formed, persists as such throughout life. This layer also contains globuli ossei with cartilage matrix remnants which are usually referred to as calcified matrix remnants. Cartilage foci are also described within this layer, most commonly in relation to the basal and middle turns of the cochlea. The outer layer is referred to as the periosteal layer and is described as an investing layer for the middle so-called endochondral layer.

Bast (1930-1942) and Richany Anson and Bast (1960) have described in detail the fetal development of the cartilaginous and bony otic capsule. The bone is preceded by a cartilaginous model with successive ossification centers appearing at specific locations within the capsule. At about 19 to 21 weeks, the middle layer of the fetal otic capsule contains globuli ossei with interglobular cartilage matrix (referred to as intrachondrial bone by Richany Anson and Bast) which are separated by large areas of bone marrow and loose connective tissue where the cartilage of the original capsule had been completely excavated. The authors then describe replacement bone filling in these marrow spaces between the globuli ossei, gradually causing this middle layer to become more solid. During the last week of fetal life and immediately after birth, the bone marrow is more rapidly replaced by bone. Richany Anson and Bast refer to this replacement bone which forms the bulk of the middle layer as endochondral bone. They describe the formation of osteoblasts within the marrow and connective tissue of the excavated areas and consider this connective tissue a form of periosteum, the osteoblasts then depositing bone upon the surfaces of the globuli ossei, and gradually filling in the excavated areas.

In the present study four newborn specimens were available, one pair from a 16-minute old female and the other pair from a one-day old male. These specimens revealed a clear-cut demarcation of three layers of the otic capsule (Fig. 1A). The photograph demonstrates the entire thickness of the labyrinthine capsule adjacent to the lowermost portion of the cochlear basal coil. Considerable replacement bone fills in the areas between the foci of globuli ossei in certain areas, while definite marrow areas are still present undergoing replacement by bone. It is interesting to note the similarity in appearance of the periosteal and subperiosteal bone layer which

is quite thick in this area to the replacement bone surrounding and encasing the foci of globuli ossei. In Fig 1 B we see a high power view of the same area revealing osteoblasts lined up along the surfaces of the replacement bone which has already formed all of which encases the foci of globuli ossei. No cartilage is present.

What is represented here is the formation of endosteal membranous bone not endochondral bone filling in the previously excavated areas. Endochondral bone is bone that has formed in cartilage the degenerated cartilage being replaced bit by bit by osteoblasts that have invaded the cartilage model. This is not what we see here. True the area originally was represented by cartilage but that cartilage degenerated and was completely replaced by cellular marrow and connective tissue similar to the medullary cavity of long bones. This marrow and connective tissue then becomes filled in and replaced by bone. The bony surfaces lining the marrow spaces are endosteal surfaces, so that the osteoblasts can be considered to be lined up alongside the endosteal surface of bone surrounding the marrow and forming endosteal membrane bone which gradually fills in the marrow spaces. The marrow spaces remain as the blood vessel canals. The globuli ossei, however have formed as endochondral bone (bit by bit replacement of degenerated cartilage) and are embedded in the greater bulk of endosteal membrane bone. Entw (1963) refers to this process, in general as the compaction of spongy bone and describes the typical endosteal bone that forms as "convoluted" bone forming as irregular sinuous convolutions of bone which are easily recognized in microscopic sections. As the cancellous bone is filled in, or compacted, remnants of endochondral spicules become incorporated into the new bone. Layers of lamellae produced by endosteal growth but which lack the irregular sinuous convolutions characteristic of compacted endosteal bone are termed the inner or endosteal circumferential lamellae. This latter type of endosteal lamellae forms the inner lining bone of the labyrinthine capsule. Blood vessel canals that become incorporated within endosteal inner circumferential lamellae are characteristically oriented in a radial manner perpendicular to the principal axis. Their radial pattern is in contrast to the predominantly longitudinal arrangement of canals in periosteal circumferential bone. Canals included within endosteal compacted bone are typically arranged in an irregular tortuous manner which corresponds to the convoluted organization of the bone substance itself. A discussion of the labyrinthine capsule canal system containing blood vessels will be discussed in greater detail later.

The labyrinthine capsule is thus seen to consist almost entirely of membrane bone with the scattered foci of globuli ossei representing endochondral bone. The periosteal layer when present as outer circumferential lamellae is easily identified. However the demarcation between sub-periosteal bone and endosteal convoluted bone is not always clear. The author will refer to the labyrinthine capsule as consisting of an inner circumferential endosteal layer a middle endosteal convoluted layer containing scattered endo-

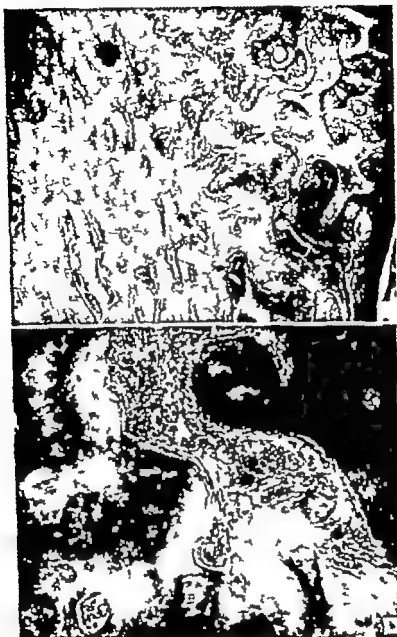


FIG. 1 (A) Labyrinthine capsule of newborn female (18 minutes) adjacent to basal coil of cochlea. Not inner endosteal layer (right lower field). The middle layer contains bone marrow and globuli ossei, portions of which are embedded in endosteal membrane bone forming by apposition. Note similarity of the endosteal bone filling in the marrow to the subperiosteal membrane bone. H&E 23.—(B) Higher power view demonstrating formation of endosteal membrane bone about the globuli ossei. Filling in the bone marrow. Not osteoblast lined up along the bone surfaces forming bone by apposition, and the absence of cartilage. H&E 123.

chondral globuli ossei and an irregular outer periosteal layer which for the most part is poorly demarcated from the endosteal convoluted bone save where it forms periosteal circumferential lamellae.

To recapitulate: The labyrinthine capsule is preformed in cartilage. The cartilage calcifies and degenerates, and part of it is replaced by bone (endochondral globuli ossei). However, most of the cartilage is completely replaced by bone marrow and loose connective tissue. Osteoblasts arise within this soft tissue and deposit membrane bone by apposition on the endosteal surfaces of the globuli ossei bordering the marrow. This endosteal convoluted membrane bone gradually fills in the bulk of the middle layer encasing the spicules of endochondral globuli ossei, and is continuous with the membrane endosteal bone of the inner layer and with the membrane periosteal bone of the outer layer. The labyrinthine capsule therefore is essentially a membrane bone with globuli ossei representing scattered foci of endochondral bone within its inner and midportions.

## GENERAL FEATURES OF ENDOSTEAL AND PERIOSTEAL MEMBRANE BONE

Membrane bone is formed by mesenchymal cells which transform into osteoblasts and secrete the essential matrix. There is no bit by bit replacement of calcified, degenerating cartilage by bone. Endosteal and periosteal bone deposition throughout life represent membrane bone formation.

It has long been recognized that matrix forming cells have the ability to produce bone or cartilage (or fibrous tissue) depending to a great extent on the local environment of these cells. For example, Ham (1930) was the first to recognize that cartilage formation, rather than bone formation might occur in healing fractures if the oxygen tension was decreased. Fell (1932) demonstrated that cultures of endosteal cells produced both bone and cartilage. Endosteal cells (like periosteal cells) form membrane bone and do not normally pass through a cartilage stage yet these cells were shown to have the capacity to form cartilage in an environment conducive to its formation.

More recent studies by Bassett (1964) and by Shaw and Bassett (1967) have shown that not only can an inadequate supply of oxygen produce chondrogenesis by cells usually forming bone but that variations in the concentration of oxygen produced varying results. These authors subjected cultures of embryonic bone to varying concentrations of oxygen, and demonstrated that with intermediate oxygen concentrations, there was degeneration of chondrocytes, as well as transformation of chondrocytes directly into osteoblasts.

Gardner (1956) refers to this cartilage formation occurring in membrane bones as secondary cartilage formation. The secondary cartilage develops after ossification begins and consists of large vesicular cells with relatively little intercellular matrix. It takes part in the growth processes, but is not part of the cartilage primordium. Examples of membrane bones with secondary cartilage growth centers are the mandible, the clavicle and the suture areas of the bones of the skull vault.

DeBeer (1937) found secondary cartilage to be commonly associated with membrane bones which are subjected to "precocious strains and stresses." He suggested that periosteal cells are capable of forming nodules of secondary cartilage. He also considered secondary cartilage similar to the cartilaginous tissue appearing in callus formation and sesamoid bones.

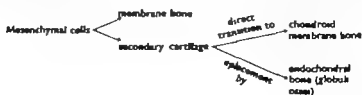
There has been some confusion in terminology. For example Moss (1961) describes secondary cartilage in fish bone but refers to it as hydroid. The author herself (Guven in press) has referred to this type



of cartilage as chondroid cartilage. The transformation of this type of cartilage to bone may follow the usual processes of endochondral ossification, or may occur by direct transformation of the cartilage matrix to bone matrix without breakdown and resorption of the cartilage. Secondary cartilage has been described by Moss (1958) in the frontal suture area of the rat and in the sagittal suture area of the rat by Pritchard *et al* (1956). They describe areas of transformation of secondary cartilage directly into bone without prior resorption, as well as areas of bit by bit bone replacement of the degenerated cartilage.

Enlow (1902) refers to secondary cartilage as chondroid and its direct transformation to bone as chondroid bone formation. He describes chondroid bone as being normally present at the crest of bone tubercles and bony processes (membrane bone areas) in rapidly growing bones, and believes it to be similar to the tissue on the growing alveolar crests surrounding teeth. Enlow believes that chondroid bone provides anchorage and perhaps resistance to pressure. He states that although the fibrous matrix in bony processes is subject to tensile forces, the individual chondroid cells are resistant to the pressure exerted on them by surrounding fibrous matrix.

To recapitulate Membrane bone has the ability in certain areas and under certain conditions to form a cartilaginous type of tissue. This cartilage is referred to as secondary cartilage, or chondroid cartilage or chondroid. This secondary cartilage, formed within membrane bone may become ossified. It may do so in two ways. It may degenerate and be replaced bit by bit by osteoblasts, forming endochondral bone or it may transform directly into bone, without degenerating or being resorbed, and is then referred to as chondroid bone. Chondroid bone is, therefore membrane bone which, instead of being formed directly has gone through a stage of secondary cartilage formation, and has continued directly through this secondary cartilage stage to bone. Here the original endosteal or periosteal mesenchymal cells become cartilage cells which then become bone cells. There is no loss of the cell with replacement by another cell in this process. Chondroid bone is a special form of membrane bone which has passed through a secondary cartilage stage. Membrane bone therefore may be formed directly by the mesenchymal cell or may first pass through a secondary cartilage (or chondroid cartilage) stage before becoming bone. Secondary cartilage foci forming in membrane bone may also degenerate with bit by bit replacement by bone, forming endochondral bone.



## CARTILAGE FOCI AND GLOBULI OSSEI

Cartilage foci were found in the present study in every specimen examined. These cartilage foci contained cartilage cells and were seen in all specimens about the membranous cochlea and, rarely about the semi-circular canals. They appeared to be least numerous at birth where the labyrinthine capsule was narrow. Although some of the older temporal bones revealed decreased numbers of cartilage foci, other older specimens contained increased numbers, so that variation occurred from specimen to specimen, rather than with age. The most prominent and consistently present cartilage was in the bony septum between the basal and middle turns of the cochlea, which sometimes occurred as an actual lining layer along portions of the upper basal and lower middle turns. However cartilage foci were present in the bone about the entire cochlea, including the apical turn, to varying degrees in the different specimens. The cartilage foci were irregular in size and shape and consisted of very pale-staining somewhat distorted chondrocytes and small amounts of uncalcified, pale staining matrix.

Certain changes were seen within many of these cartilage foci which were similar in all the specimens of all ages (Fig. 2). Many of the chondrocytes were degenerating or had disappeared, and varying numbers of macrophages were noted within the involved cartilage lacunae. The macrophages, themselves, often appeared to be undergoing degeneration. The thin matrix bars between the degenerating, phagocytized cells were uncalcified and were breaking down. At times, a few calcified septa were seen, three or four at the most rather than any massive type of matrix calcification. Osteogenic vascular buds from the surrounding bone extended into the opened, excavated, "prepared" cartilage lacunae forming bone. The blood vessels giving rise to the osteogenic buds had deep basophilic staining of their walls. They appeared to be "active" osteogenically in all the specimens supplying the osteogenic buds for endochondral bone replacement. The new endochondral bone thus formed usually did not completely replace the cartilage focus, but only partially replaced it, forming islands of bone with uncalcified cartilage matrix remaining (globuli ossei) (Fig. 3). This process of chondrocyte degeneration and phagocytosis by macrophages, with endochondral ossification forming globuli ossei, could be demonstrated in every temporal bone regardless of age or sex, and appeared to be a continuing process throughout life.

As mentioned before the cartilage foci containing cartilage cells were seen throughout life. These cartilage foci were within the endosteal inner

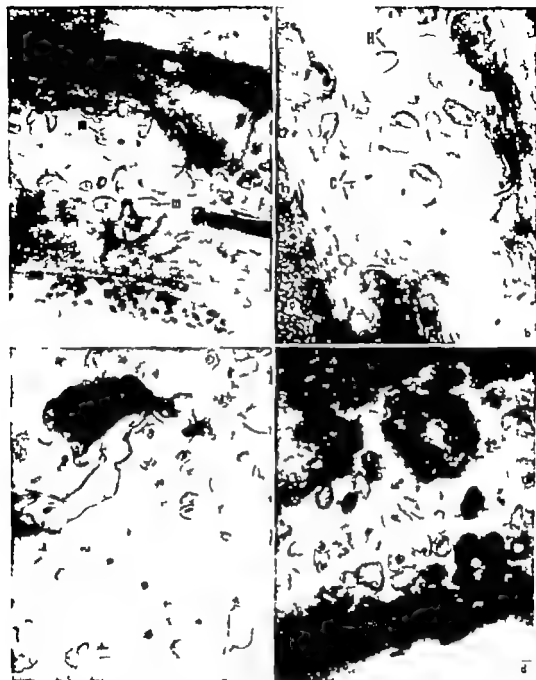


FIG. 2. Secondary cartilage foci undergoing replacement by endochondral bone. (A) Cartilage foci adjacent to middle coil of cochlea. Not degenerated chondrocytes (C) and occasional macrophages (m) as well as prominent blood vessel and endochondral bone formation. 31 year old male H&E 280. — (B) Cartilage foci adjacent to middle cochlear coil. Not degenerated chondrocytes (C) and lacunae filled with matrix (H) with endochondral bone formation. 31 year old male H&E 450. — (C) Cartilage foci adjacent to basal coil of cochlea. Not degeneration of cartilage cells with ingrowth of osteogenic cells buds and endochondral bone formation. 31 year old male H&E 450. — (D) Cartilage in septum between basal and middle cochlear turns. Not degenerated chondrocytes with macrophages present in scattered lacunae. Endochondral bone formation is prominent. 79-year old male H&E 450.

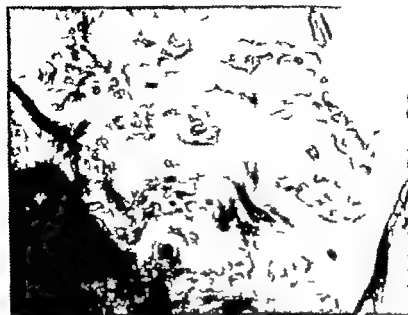


FIG. 2 Endochondral globuli ossel adjacent to basal cochlea (sw) with remnant of uncalcified cartilage matrix. Not deeply staining blood vessel (ls). 8-week old rat. H&E 120 $\times$  produced from Amer J Anat. (Gussen, I. pers.)

layer of bone, often bordering directly on the soft tissue lining of the labyrinth, or within the innermost portion of the middle labyrinthine capsule layer. Streeter (1919) has described the unusual embryological development of the semicircular canal portion of the labyrinthine capsule with its constantly changing cartilaginous character for accommodation of the enlarging semicircular canals. The new cartilage that forms and degenerates repeatedly during this process has been described by Streeter as arising from reticular tissue about the membranous canals. This ability of the soft tissue mesenchymal cells adjacent to the inner lining of the bony labyrinth to form cartilage is retained throughout life and it is from these areas that the secondary cartilage foci arise which represent growth foci throughout life. It is not clear how long these cartilage foci remain as such before undergoing endochondral bone replacement. The globuli ossel thus formed during life are evidence that the growth area had once occupied that particular location.

In his demonstration of cartilage resorption in the fetus, Bast (1932) noted certain features which he considered peculiar to the region about the semicircular canals. He described the removal of degenerating chondrocytes by phagocytes, with the subsequent deposition of bone by osteoblasts. There was just enough cartilage destruction to allow blood vessels to penetrate rather than any massive destruction of cartilage.

The resorption of matrix by macrophages has also been described by

Goldhaber (1961) who induced bone resorption in tissue cultures of mouse calvariae and demonstrated by time-lapse films the presence of very motile macrophages attacking bone spicules and participating directly in the resorption process.

Anderson and Parker (1966) in an electronmicroscopic study of endochondral bone formation in the femur of newborn rats, showed areas where macrophages preceded the capillary endothelium. The cartilage matrix was calcified only for a distance of one to three chondrocyte capsules in advance of the invading capillary complex. Some matrix septa were very thin and did not actually calcify. The degree of calcification of the matrix walls was very variable, only about one-third of the septa actually showing complete calcification.

In a preliminary study the author demonstrated the presence of particulate and fragmented bone canaliculi within the matrix of the interglobular spaces (Gussen 1967). At that time this was interpreted as evidence of breakdown of bone canaliculi and matrix, suggesting that the globuli ossei might represent foci of bone resorption. This is an incorrect interpretation. The particulate matter demonstrated in the previous study is now recognized as evidence of new endochondral bone formation with beginning formation of canaliculi by the osteoblast cell processes.

Once the cartilage foci are partially replaced by new endochondral bone, the resulting globuli ossei with their uncalcified cartilage remnants, remain as such throughout life. Manasse (1897) recognized the change from cartilage cells to bone cells of the globuli ossei, but considered the process one of metaplasia rather than the replacement of the cartilage cells by endochondral bone. Shin Ichi Ziba (1911) believed that changes did occur in these areas in later life and felt that the cartilage areas were smallest early in life. Wittmanck (1919) also believed that these areas underwent change throughout life. Mayer (1917) recognized that the cartilage cells degenerated ("dissolved") and were replaced by bone cells. However he did not realize that this process continued throughout life.

It is emphasized that at no time in the normal cartilage is any massive type of calcification of cartilage matrix seen neither in the original cartilage focus nor in the matrix of the interglobular spaces. Many authors have stated that the cartilage matrix of the interglobular spaces is calcified matrix (Manasse 1897, Kosokabe 1922, Costa and Covell 1965, Richany, Anson and Best 1960). Calcified cartilage matrix cannot maintain itself in the body and is resorbed following loss of its chondrocytes. In addition, calcified cartilage matrix is readily identifiable, even in decalcified sections, by its deeper affinity for hematoxylin and its more sharply accentuated lacunar margins. There is no evidence of calcification normally in the cartilage matrix of the interglobular spaces or in the cartilage cell foci save for the occasional minimal calcification preceding endochondral bone formation as described.

## CARTILAGE AND MEMBRANE CHONDROID BONE

As mentioned before membrane chondroid bone forms by direct transformation of secondary cartilage to bone. It differs from endochondral bone in that the same mesenchymal cell that transformed into the secondary cartilage cell transforms directly into the osteoblast. Similarly secondary cartilage matrix is incorporated directly into the bone matrix.

The soft tissue adjacent to the inner endosteal layer of the labyrinthine capsule (including the spiral ligament) contains mesenchymal cells which have both osteogenic and chondrogenic ability. In many specimens, a continuous uncalcified cartilage lining could be demonstrated along portions of the bony cochlea (Fig. 4A) usually along the upper basal and lower middle cochlear turns. This lining cartilage often contained degenerating chondrocytes or empty lacunae and in its deeper portion showed the processes of endochondral ossification with the resulting globuli ossei. The surface of the cartilage, however, showed direct transition to bone forming chondroid membrane bone (Fig. 4B). Small numbers of mesenchymal cells were seen along the cartilage and bone surfaces, appearing to enter into small cartilage and chondroid membrane bone defects. The inner lining of the bony cochlea thus consists of chondroid membrane bone as well as areas of cartilage undergoing endochondral globuli ossei replacement or direct transformation to chondroid membrane bone.

The endosteal surface of the semicircular canals consisted of membrane chondroid bone and, here too, occasional mesenchymal cells could be seen within the uneven surface of the lining bone.

The inner endosteal circumferential lamellae lining the membranous labyrinth vary considerably in thickness from one location to another and from specimen to specimen. Most specimens reveal layers of almost acellular chondroid membrane bone parallel to the surface. These lining bone layers tend to be thickest in sharp curves or turns within the labyrinthine system or at the sites of the cribriform areas of nerve passage to sensory areas.

The bone of the modiolus and the bony spiral laminae appear virtually without lacunae. Only where a larger amount of bone is present in some areas of the modiolus are occasional bone cells within lacunae seen. As the cochlear and vestibular nerve branches leave the bony labyrinth to enter the sensory areas, they spread out through interdigitating spicules of bone which project from the inner surfaces of the chondroid membrane bone lining. These interdigitating bone spicules are acellular and without lacunae and have the appearance in some areas of calcifying or ossifying cartilage matrix. Mesenchymal cells are present about them and are occasionally



FIG. 4 (A) Septum between basal and middle turns of cochlea. Not prominent lining of secondary cartilage. 69-year-old female. H&E. 30 $\times$  (produced from *Amer J Anat* (Gussen, I. press). —(B) High power view. Not degeneration of articular cells and chondral bone formation in deeper portion. Secondary cartilage matrix has transformed directly to bone appearing as rim of acellular chondroid membrane bone. Note occasional mesenchymal cells in secondary cartilage depressions. 69-year-old female. H&E. 280 $\times$ . Reproduced from *Amer J Anat*. (Gussen, I. press).



FIG. 5. Gridlike rim plate in impullary region of semicircular canal. Not interdigitating spicules of acellular bone with surrounding mesenchymal cells. Arrow indicates pale matrix, not yet ossified. Not pale staining, depolymerized inner endosteal layer of capsule at bottom. 62-year-old male. H&E. 450.

"caught" between the criss-crossing spicules (Fig. 5). Almost all specimens revealed formation of new bony spicules of this kind, resembling an in-between type of matrix. The modiolus and the thin, bony spiral laminae consisted of these fragile acellular matrix spicules as well.



## 'REMODELING OF PERIVASCULAR BONE

It appears to be largely agreed that remodeling of the middle layer of the labyrinthine capsule does not occur. Nager (1947) states that the middle layer remains in its embryonic state of development throughout life and that the vital bone processes of resorption and formation are absent.

Despite the rather universal agreement on the lack of new bone formation or of bone resorption there are occasional doubts. For example Costa and Covell (1965) feel that it is erroneous to think of the middle layer of the otic capsule as incapable of a continuous remodeling process, but consider that such processes as might exist take place very slowly. Engström and Røckert (1962) utilizing polarized light and soft roentgen microradiography described changes with age in the vascularity, fibrillar texture and mineralization in the labyrinthine capsule and found evidence of small areas of replacement in the middle layer. And yet when occasional changes were recognized they were always considered to be abnormal processes. Weber (1933) for example in his beautiful description of bone changes about the blood vessels, considered these changes as preliminary stages of otosclerosis. Wolff and Bellucci (1964) and Wolff and Lempert (1965) describe changes in the perivascular bone but also believe it to be an abnormal process representing incipient otosclerosis. Aside from blue mantles, which all seem to agree represent new bone, no evidence of new bone formation is recognized nor are resorption cavities or osteoclasts seen in normal specimens.

Enlow (1963) describes remodeling activities as restricted to surface exposure of bone. Thus, the inner surface of a canal containing a blood vessel is subject to remodeling changes in the same manner and by the same means as any periosteal or endosteal surface. Many canals are not surrounded by concentric lamellae. Enlow refers to these as primary non Haversian canals or osteons, either radial or longitudinal or conforming to the convoluted pattern of the bone. Such primary osteons may be formed directly by newly forming bone. Bone which contains clusters of primary osteons is distinctive in appearance. This type of osteon is recognized by its concentric circles of lacunae and by the presence of interstitial areas between the osteons characteristically containing non lamellar (woven fibrous, immature) bone. Primary osteons may be found in both periosteal and endosteal bone, and will remain as such unless removed by endosteal resorption. If they undergo endosteal resorption with formation of a perivascular resorption cavity this cavity then is filled in with new endosteal bone formation forming a secondary osteon or typical Haversian osteon.

A process of rebuilding has occurred in the development of the secondary Haversian system, since secondary canals are formed by remodeling of pre-existing primary canals which involves the replacement of immature bone with mature lamellar bone.

The blood vessels of the labyrinthine capsule are within canals of the primary osteon type. In other words, the vessels are surrounded by small areas in which the bone lacunae are arranged concentrically. These vessels and their narrow rim of concentrically arranged bone lacunae are separated from each other by interstitial bone which is non lamellar (immature or fibrous or woven bone).

It is this stage of primary osteons and immature woven interstitial bone that presumably remains throughout life in the middle layer of the labyrinthine capsule. The primary osteons presumably remain as such with no evidence of remodeling into secondary osteons or secondary Haversian systems. The interstitial bone between these primary osteons remains as immature woven bone.

McLean and Rowland (1963) describe the remodeling of osteons as occurring through the formation of resorption cavities or resorption tunnels about the blood vessels. This resorption is typically associated with osteoclasts. The resorption space or tunnel is then filled in with new bone by osteoblasts.

It is true that such remodeling changes are not seen about the vessels of the labyrinthine capsule. However, certain processes occur about the labyrinthine capsule blood vessels, in all temporal bones at all ages, that resemble to a certain degree the remodeling changes described by McLean and Rowland. These perivascular bone changes must be considered to be unique to the bony labyrinth, since as far as the author can discover no other bone in the body has yet been described with this type of "remodeling".

As already mentioned, the blood vessels of the labyrinthine capsule appear to be enclosed in canals of the primary osteon type. To a somewhat lesser extent at birth but to a universal degree at all ages beyond, the bone about these blood vessels in all the layers showed the same changes. In any one section, the bone immediately surrounding the blood vessels appears to be undergoing changes which vary from one primary osteon to another. The bone cells fade and disappear while the bone matrix becomes pale-staining and seems to lose its structure so that the blood vessel is surrounded by amorphous, sometimes granular material containing poorly discernible bizarre-shaped, confluent, empty lacunae. Such perivascular areas of matrix depolymerization and loss of osteocytes are present continuously with perivascular areas undergoing changes in the opposite direction from the depolymerized appearance to repolymerization of the matrix and with the appearance of new bone cells. These new bone cells consist of mesenchymal cells in the perivascular soft tissue which freely enter the depolymerized amorphous matrix. Once the mesenchymal cells

enter the altered matrix, they appear to become bone cells, and the area undergoes a repolymerization (and remineralization) back to recognizable bone structure. It appears as if the original mucopolysaccharide matrix is retained in this process, but is alternately depolymerized and repolymerized. No actual resorption cavity or tunnel results in this process, and no osteoclasts are seen. If one holds to the usual definitions of remodeling, this process, then, is not a true remodeling, since no resorption space or tunnel has been formed, no osteoclasts are seen and the end result is again the same structure—a primary osteon rather than a more mature secondary osteon with lamellar bone. No replacement of the original structure by more mature structure has occurred. We appear to end up with the same anatomic structure that was present originally. Variations in the staining characteristics of the depolymerizing and repolymerizing perivascular bone suggest a greater or lesser amount of depolymerized mucopolysaccharide matrix present at any one time so that bluer areas probably represent an increased rate of "remodeling" about the vessels. A rare temporal bone, uninvolved by otosclerosis, reveals deeply basophilic-staining repolymerizing matrix with new bone cells about groups of blood vessels. These vessels (usually in the region of the semicircular canals) all demonstrate the reforming stage of the process, rather than a combination of repolymerizing and depolymerizing phases. These more basophilic, repolymerizing perivascular areas have been referred to as blue mantles. They appear to represent a more rapid reforming of perivascular bone along normal physiological channels. Their presence signifies extensive changes of a degenerative nature elsewhere in the labyrinthine capsule and will be discussed in more detail under a separate heading.

The depolymerizing, repolymerizing, waxing and waning process occurs about all the vessels, and all the various stages of this process can be demonstrated at any one time in the same section. These changes occur about the blood vessels in all the layers of the bony labyrinth: inner endosteal, middle convoluted endosteal, and outer periosteal layers. They are not confined to the middle layer alone.

A typical picture, as described above, can be seen in Fig. 6A. The section is from a 19-year-old female and reveals the labyrinthine capsule between the cochlea, the canal for the tensor tympani muscle, and the internal carotid artery. The bone about the blood vessels takes a pale, eosinophilic stain which causes these areas to stand out sharply from the interstitial bone. Perivascular bone matrix is seen in various stages of depolymerization with loss of osteocytes. Note the amorphous or granular appearance of the depolymerized matrix and fading or absence of osteocytes in these areas. A newly repolymerized, perivascular bone area with new bone cells is also seen in this figure. Note the deeply staining vessel walls and perivascular soft tissue. No resorption spaces or cavities or tunnels are seen, nor are osteoclasts seen. Fig. 6B demonstrates similar findings in the otic capsule of a three-year-old female. Here, too, one sees a typical peri-

vascular depolymerizing phase with cell loss and a few new bone cells appearing about the vessel. In addition, at this age there are still marrow and loose connective tissue spaces which are being filled in (or compacted) by endosteal cells lined up alongside the bone surfaces. Fig. 6C reveals a high power view of a repolymerizing perivascular area in the 3-year old specimen undergoing repopulation with new bone cells. One can see the cells arising from about the perivascular soft tissue and entering matrix which is depolymerized, but which contains bizarre confluent lacunae. The depolymerized matrix and its contained bizarre lacunae resemble atypical cartilage matrix. The new bone formed here is deeply basophilic staining and is similar to blue mantle bone. The more deeply basophilic nature probably reflects the more rapid "remodeling" occurring during the active growth years. Fig. 6D reveals the bony capsule between the cochlea and the internal carotid artery in a 51 year old female. In this particular section the depolymerization phase with loss of cells predominates. One can see areas of fading, "ghost like" bone cells. Very few new bone cells are evident arising from the perivascular soft tissue. However one very small perivascular newly repolymerized and repopulated area is present which stains deeply eosinophilic and stands out sharply within the surrounding interstitial bone. Fig. 6E demonstrates both waxing and waning phases in the labyrinthine capsule of a 55-year old male adjacent to the posterior semicircular canal. The depolymerizing matrix here takes a somewhat more blue stain, but otherwise reveals the same type of change as has been described.

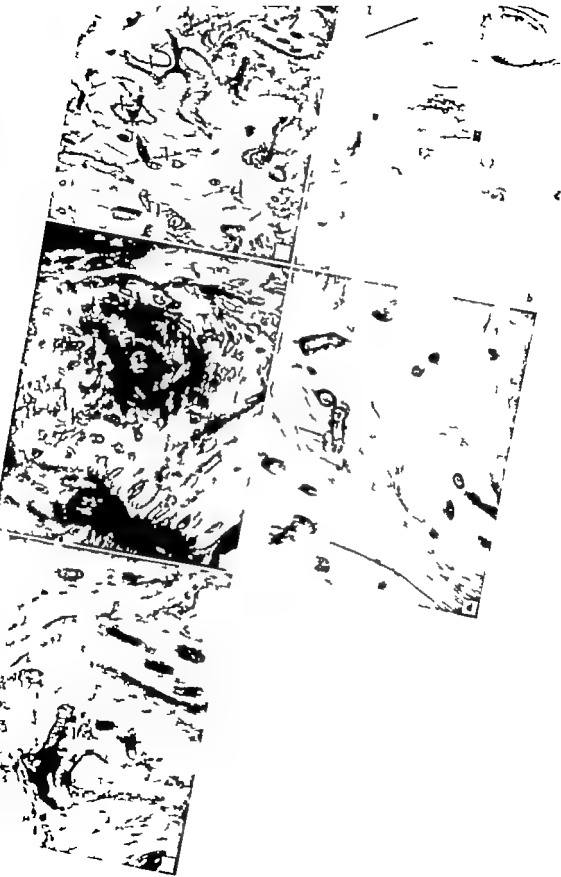
These repolymerizing and depolymerizing, "waxing and waning" changes of the perivascular bone (the primary osteons) bear a certain resemblance to resorption spaces in as far as their location is concerned. However they do not result in an erosion space or cavity nor are osteoclasts seen. Frost (1963) states that osteoclasts require the presence of mineral in bone matrix to be able to resorb it. In this perivascular bone the changes are those of depolymerization of the mucopolysaccharide matrix which thus breaks the calcium bonding with release of the mineral, a process referred to as "leaching out of mineral" or *halisteresis*. The newly reformed bone, as mentioned before is again a primary osteon: there has been no maturing of the structure in the process.

Von Recklinghausen (1910) believed that the primary change in bone resorption involved the bone cells, resulting in liquefaction (depolymerization) of the surrounding bone matrix. This liquefaction of the bone matrix was then followed by a loss (leaching out or *halisteresis*) of bone mineral: in other words, an *in vivo* demineralization of the bone matrix. Heller Steinberg (1931) and Bélanger *et al* (1963) demonstrated the relationship of depolymerization of bone matrix to the activity of the osteocytes which occurred in the absence of osteoclasts. Heller Steinberg demonstrated that with bone in a more depolymerized state the bone salt becomes more reactive.

enter the altered matrix they appear to become bone cells, and the area undergoes a repolymerization (and remineralization) back to recognizable bone structure. It appears as if the original mucopolysaccharide matrix is retained in this process, but is alternately depolymerized and repolymerized. No actual resorption cavity or tunnel results in this process, and no osteoclasts are seen. If one holds to the usual definitions of remodeling this process, then is not a true remodeling, since no resorption space or tunnel has been formed, no osteoclasts are seen and the end result is again the same structure, a primary osteon, rather than a more mature secondary osteon with lamellar bone. No replacement of the original structure by more mature structure has occurred. We appear to end up with the same anatomic structure that was present originally. Variations in the staining characteristics of the depolymerizing and repolymerizing perivascular bone suggest a greater or lesser amount of depolymerized mucopolysaccharide matrix present at any one time, so that bluer areas probably represent an increased rate of "remodeling" about the vessels. A rare temporal bone, uninvolved by otosclerosis, reveals deeply basophilic-staining repolymerizing matrix with new bone cells about groups of blood vessels. These vessels (usually in the region of the semicircular canals) all demonstrate the reforming stage of the process, rather than a combination of repolymerizing and depolymerizing phases. These more basophilic, repolymerizing perivascular areas have been referred to as blue mantles. They appear to represent a more rapid reforming of perivascular bone along normal physiological channels. Their presence signifies extensive changes of a degenerative nature elsewhere in the labyrinthine capsule, and will be discussed in more detail under a separate heading.

The depolymerizing, repolymerizing, waxing and waning process occurs about all the vessels, and all the various stages of this process can be demonstrated at any one time in the same section. These changes occur about the blood vessels in all the layers of the bony labyrinth, inner endosteal, middle convoluted endosteal and outer periosteal layers. They are not confined to the middle layer alone.

A typical picture as described above, can be seen in Fig 6A. The section is from a 19-year old female and reveals the labyrinthine capsule between the cochlea, the canal for the tensor tympani muscle, and the internal carotid artery. The bone about the blood vessels takes a pale, eosinophilic stain which causes these areas to stand out sharply from the interstitial bone. Perivascular bone matrix is seen in various stages of depolymerization with loss of osteocytes. Note the amorphous or granular appearance of the depolymerized matrix and fading or absence of osteocytes in these areas. A newly repolymerized, perivascular bone area with new bone cells is also seen in this figure. Note the deeply staining vessel walls and perivascular soft tissue. No resorption spaces or cavities or tunnels are seen nor are osteoclasts seen. Fig 6B demonstrates similar findings in the otic capsule of a three-year old female. Here, too, one sees a typical per-



to be abnormal, leading to the dissolution of bone with bone resorption and the formation of otosclerotic foci.

Weber (1928 1933) recognized the repolymerization and repopulation stage of the bone about the blood vessels in patients with otosclerosis and in patients without typical otosclerosis, and called these areas blue mantles, the name given to them originally by Manasse. Weber saw the perivascular blue-mantle changes in all portions of the labyrinthine capsule but saw them more frequently in the region of the semicircular canals, believing them to occur mainly in the middle layer. He described the new formed bone as having large, confluent lacunae and resembling primitive bone with cells occasionally resembling cartilage cells (similar to Fig 6 C). Weber believed that prior resorption must have occurred because he could demonstrate by means of polarized light that the fibrils of the surrounding bone ceased exactly where the blue mantles began but he did not recognize the depolymerization process preceding this rebuilding. Weber also referred to red mantles and mixed mantles, depending on the staining characteristics, and believed that all three kinds, blue red and mixed mantles, represented new bone formation following previous resorption. His descriptions and demonstrations are beautiful. The depolymerization process remained unrecognized. Weber believed that the blue mantle bone resembled otosclerotic bone, and represented the initial stage of otosclerosis.

Guggenheim (1935) recognized the ability of mesenchymal cells to form bone but he believed that when this occurred in the labyrinthine capsule it was abnormal representing regression to an embryonic state. He felt that this "regression" whereby the mesenchymal cells formed new bone was genetically determined in susceptible individuals, and the new bone so formed represented otosclerotic bone. He did not realize the normal mechanism by which the mesenchymal cells, throughout life, retain the ability to form bone not only in the labyrinthine capsule, but in bones in general.

Many authors thus apparently recognized the depolymerizing phase about the vessels (Wolff and Bellucci 1964 Wolff and Lempert 1965 and others) and many recognized or described the rebuilding of bone in these areas (Wittmaack 1919 Nager and Meyer 1931 Weber 1933) but none appeared to recognize both processes, nor was it evident that these were normally occurring processes throughout life, representing an unusual form of "remodelling".

In a previous study (Gussen, In Press) the author described the presence of secondary cartilage (or chondroid) and chondroid membrane bone in the labyrinthine capsule. At that time, the normally occurring processes of depolymerization and repolymerization occurring about the blood vessels were not recognized as such, and were described as areas of chondroid cartilage because of the occasional resemblance of the depolymerized matrix to cartilage matrix (Fig 6 C). It was suggested at that time that such perivascular bone areas represented direct transformation of chondroid cartilage to chondroid bone. In a sense the depolymerization of the bone in these

areas reduces it to a more cartilage-like matrix where the mucopolysaccharides are in a lesser polymerized state. However, it is now recognized that the process represents alternating depolymerization and repolymerization of perivascular bone and that cartilage as such is not present in these areas.

As mentioned before, the author has been unable to find any reference to this type of "remodeling" where an actual space or cavity is not produced, but where the matrix reverts to a depolymerized, demineralized state only to be reused in the building back to a repolymerized, repopulated area, and where the primary osteon undergoes these changes only to reform as a primary osteon again. It would seem logical to assume that a shifting and relocation occurs within the labyrinthine capsule as a result of these processes.



## BLOOD VESSELS OF THE LABYRINTHINE CAPSULE

The role of blood vessels in osteogenesis has been studied extensively by Trueta (1963). He believed that degenerating chondrocytes, osteocytes and endothelial cells are responsible for the liberation of osteogenic inducing substances, and that such local substances act directly on the vascular system of the bone, stimulating the formation of osteoblasts or their precursors. Moss (1960) considers that the osteogenic inducing factor lies in the organic ground substance of bone, that the general group of mucoproteins may be primarily active. Autoradiographic studies by Young (1963) and by Tonna and Cronkite (1961) using tritiated thymidine clearly demonstrate the evolution of bone-forming cells from undifferentiated mesenchymal cells.

The appearance of the blood vessels in the labyrinthine capsule is one of continuous activity. Their perivascular structure is deeply basophilic, due presumably to increased or concentrated amounts of acid mucopolysaccharide in a state readily available for bone formation. The mucopolysaccharides in these areas, by virtue of their ion exchange ability, may hold calcium ions in readiness for the ossification procedure.

In almost every specimen above the age of 40 an occasional blood vessel was noted to be occluded by bone deposits. In a few instances, to be described, such vessels were seen in somewhat greater numbers.

## THE INTERSTITIAL BONE

The interstitial bone of the labyrinthine capsule refers to the bone between the primary osteons. This represents all the bone tissue except for the perivascular bone with its concentric lacunae (which make up the primary osteons) and the endosteal and periosteal circumferential lamellae.

The interstitial bone has been shown to consist of membrane bone formed directly by endosteal apposition filling in the marrow spaces. The endochondral globuli ossei are included in the changes to be described in the interstitial bone.

Nager (1947) and Nager and Rüedi (1951) have described the virtual absence of osteocytes in the bone of the middle layer of the labyrinthine capsule. More recent studies by Mendoza and Rius (1966) also describe the widespread loss of osteocytes within the middle layer of the labyrinthine capsule and believe that this necrotic bone is significant in the etio-pathogenesis of otosclerosis.

In studies of bone in general, Sherman and Selakovich (1950) noted that osteocytes begin to disappear from the outer lamellae of Haversian systems during adolescence with the number of empty lacunae increasing after the third decade. Such changes were attributed to circulatory insufficiency and physiologic necrosis of bone with increasing age. Studies by Ljungh and Lindgren (1962) and by Trotter *et al* (1960) demonstrated that bone density diminishes with age and, that although this is a generalized process, the rate differs in different bones, differs in males and females and differs in the white and Negro races. Enlow (1966) demonstrated osteocyte necrosis in normal bone and found it to be related directly to age and to the extent of the blood supply. Where extensive areas of nonvascular bone were seen corresponding loss of osteocytes was also present. Occasional vascular canals were also seen occluded by bone deposits.

Frost (1963) described loss of bone cells as occurring earliest in the extra-Haversian areas of interstitial bone (which are furthest removed from the vascular supply) and the changes of micropetrosis which may then follow. Micropetrotic bone is dead bone in which bone canaliculi and some lacunae are filled with mineral, and represents the hardest, most highly mineralized, most radiodense, most brittle, most impermeable type of bone.

The interstitial bone of the labyrinthine capsule at birth is almost completely cellular (Fig 1). By three years of age, although most of the interstitial bone is still cellular, scattered empty bone lacunae are seen throughout all the layers. By 10 years of age, major portions of the interstitial bone

are acellular (Fig 6 A) In these areas, the endochondral globuli ossei and the surrounding endosteal convoluted membrane bone now reveal large rounded empty bone lacunae with smooth walls. Areas of "ghost like" fading osteocytes can be seen scattered throughout Most of the bone cells that are present are in relation to the blood vessels (the primary osteons) which reveal their continuous depolymerizing and repolymerizing "re-modeling" processes The periosteal and subperiosteal bone appear to be less involved in the process of osteocyte loss, for in most of the specimens, the outer portions of the labyrinthine capsule appeared to contain mostly cellular bone whereas the inner endosteal circumferential layer revealed increasing loss of osteocytes As the specimens increased in age this loss of osteocytes from approximately the inner half of the labyrinthine capsule resulted in paler staining of this area, so that it appeared to be well demarcated from the outer half of the capsule which contained more viable bone. Fig 11 D demonstrates the almost complete disappearance of bone cells from the interstitial bone in a 51 year old female At all ages, fading ghost like osteocytes are seen The perivascular bone matrix continues to demonstrate alterations in polymerization with bone cells appearing and disappearing but this, too in the majority of the specimens normally appears to become a slower process with increasing age, although still present Certain specimens revealed changes involving the interstitial and perivascular bone which represent an abnormal progression of the changes already described, and these will be presented later

The loss of interstitial bone osteocytes throughout most of the otic capsule layers appears to be physiological since it is present at all ages, without exception Why it should be such a prominent feature of the otic capsule as compared to other bones is not clear It is interesting to note here a study by Crawford (1940) of bone structure in vertebrates In reptiles (lizards and crocodiles) for example, the cells in secondarily deposited endosteal bone were unevenly distributed, with individual lacunae varying considerably in size and shape More significant for us, perhaps, was the irregular course of the bone canaliculi which often did not anastomose with each other so that the bone cells were presumably deprived of nourishment by the tissue fluids, and disappeared The proportion of empty lacunae was unusually high and much greater than in the periosteal bone

Whether non-anastomosing bone canaliculi, or vascular changes with age or both of these (or neither) are the cause of the widespread loss of bone cells in the interstitial bone of the otic capsule cannot be determined at this time

In all of the specimens examined portions of interstitial and inner endosteal circumferential bone were also seen suggesting depolymerization of their matrix with new bone cells appearing (Fig 7 A) This depolymerization of interstitial bone did not normally occur to the same extent as the depolymerization of the perivascular bone New bone cells then appeared to "wander into" the altered interstitial bone from adjacent peri



Fig. 7 (A) Depolymerization of rat rib bone with small numbers of new bone cells entering the bony shaped lacunae. Not resembling the cartilage tractor. 47-year-old female H&E 370. (B) Produced from same J Anat. Gerson, J. pers. — (C) Depolymerization of rodent bone. reformed in the long semicircular canal. P. Ding ghost in bone. I seen with scattered new bone cells. 63-year-old female H&E 130. Reproduced from Assar J. Anat. Gerson, J. pers.

vascular bone (primary osteons) or from adjacent soft tissue into the inner labyrinthine layer. The amount of interstitial bone "rebuilt" in this fashion varied with age and also varied among specimens of the same age so that in some specimens large areas of devitalized interstitial bone varied with areas of revitalizing or rebuilt interstitial bone. However with increasing age extensive areas of devitalized interstitial bone remained, with only occasional foci of rebuilding or rebuilt interstitial bone evident. The periosteal and subperiosteal areas, however usually revealed newly rebuilt bone even in the older specimens.

To recapitulate. The interstitial bone (endosteal convoluted bone and endochondral globuli ossei) as well as portions of the subperiosteal bone and endosteal inner layer of the labyrinthine capsule, appear to lose their bone cells with increasing age. The mucopolysaccharide and mineral matrix of this bone apparently alter to a degree that allows the penetration of new bone cells from adjacent perivascular bone or adjacent soft tissue areas, so that newly rebuilt interstitial bone is present alongside areas of devitalized bone. Many older specimens, however reveal extensive areas of interstitial bone in the inner and middle layers to be completely acellular with little or no evidence of rebuilding.

As mentioned before the author in a previous study (Gussen in press) did not recognize the depolymerizing-repolymerizing process as such, and the occasional depolymerized interstitial (Fig 7A) and endosteal circumferential (Fig 7B) bone areas which resembled cartilage matrix were thought to represent chondroid cartilage transforming to bone. These are now recognized as only resembling cartilage matrix by virtue of their more highly depolymerized state, but actually represent the alternating processes of depolymerization and repolymerization of bone matrix.

Chondroid, or secondary cartilage, transforming directly to chondroid membrane bone, appears to occur only in the surface of the cartilage of the inner layer of the labyrinth. As has been shown, the deeper portions of this cartilage (away from the surface) may be replaced by endochondral globuli ossei. Once the surface of the inner layer of the labyrinth has formed as chondroid bone this chondroid bone appears to undergo the processes of depolymerization and repolymerization as described.

## ABNORMAL PROGRESSION OF BONE CHANGE

Two types of change occurred in some specimens which appeared to be an abnormal progression of the normally occurring processes

(1) Extensive depolymerization of interstitial bone As the interstitial bone matrix alters with loss of its osteocytes, the demarcation between the interstitial bone and the perivascular bone in its depolymerizing phase is lost. It appears as if the blood vessel is now surrounded by a large poorly delimited area of depolymerized bone matrix, which is continuous with other perivascular areas having the same appearance Figs. 8A and 8B reveal such areas in a 63-year old female and a 6-year old male respectively. The blood vessels here no longer appear surrounded by a well delimited cuff of depolymerizing bone matrix, but rather are surrounded by large confluent areas of depolymerized structureless bone. These areas of softened, structureless, interstitial bone are occasionally seen as small, incidental foci, usually in older specimens. However as mentioned, large confluent areas of softened structureless interstitial matrix were also seen in the labyrinthine capsule of a 6-year old boy who died of acute lymphoblastic leukemia (Fig. 8B). Both temporal bones revealed widespread leukemic infiltration of the bone marrow as well as infiltration of the soft tissue structures by leukemic cells. (There was no hearing loss or signs or symptoms referable to the ear during life.) The depolymerizing interstitial bone in the 6-year old specimens was present as large irregular confluent areas extending from the periosteal layer through the entire thickness of the labyrinthine capsule, involving all layers, with no evidence of matrix rebuilding. However small numbers of new bone cells were seen scattered sporadically within the pale amorphous matrix, with no evidence of matrix repolymerization either in the interstitial depolymerized areas or in the perivascular areas.

It was unusual, however to find such large confluent areas of interstitial matrix softening (depolymerization) without rebuilding (repolymerizing) about some of the blood vessels. Now however this repolymerization process about the blood vessels is no longer limited to the small area immediately surrounding the vessel but occurs as a concentric repolymerization into a larger area which may become confluent with similar concentric rebuilding areas about adjacent blood vessels, so that the interstitial type of bone in these areas seem to have disappeared and seems to have been replaced by coalescing areas of newly repolymerizing perivascular bone. These newly repolymerizing and repopulating bone areas about the vessels stand out in sharp contrast to the pale virtually structureless bone about them (Fig. 9).

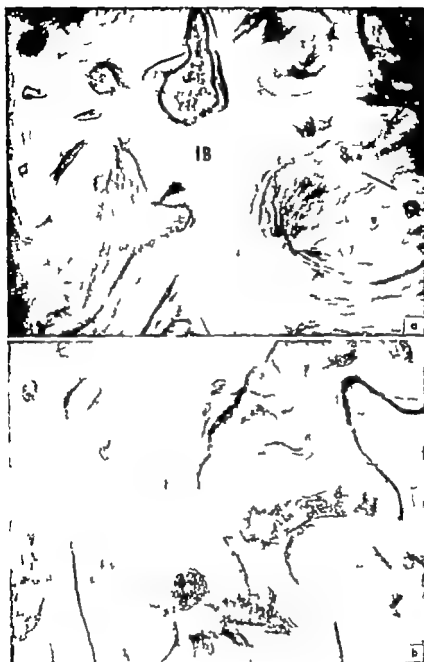


FIG. 8. (A) Labyrinthine pattern of central trabeculae near posterior portion of cranial window. Note extensive depolymerization of interstitial bone with ghostlike fragments of bone cells (1B). Perivascular bone to right (arrow) reveals beginning of repolymerization with the appearance of few new bone cells. 65-year-old male. H&E 40. (B) Middle and anteroposterior views of labyrinthine capsule in 6-year-old male with cut lymphoblastic leukemia. Note extensive diffuse eosinophilic areas of massive depolymerization of interstitial and periosteal bone with evidence of repolymerization both inside. Giant cell osteoclast foci are present in right half of photograph. Small numbers of new bone cells are scattered sparsely within the amorphous depolymerized matrix. Leukemic cells are present in the marrow spaces. H&E 40.



FIG. 9 Beginning confluence of repolymerizing perivascular bone adjacent to vestibule posteromedial to utricle in 62-year-old male. Note sharp delineation of repolymerized concentric, undulating outward growth of perivascular bone from pale interstitial bone which is initially structureless in some areas. H&E 40

reveals such an early process posteromedial to the utricle in a 62-year-old male. Note the sharp delineation of the repolymerized, repopulated perivascular bone from the pale interstitial bone. The concentric, undulating outward growth is evident, and a few such areas are becoming confluent. The newly repolymerized bone itself appears normal; the difference apparently being the confluence of such perivascular areas due to the more extensive softening (depolymerization) of the interstitial bone.

Fig. 11 A reveals similar rebuilding of perivascular bone in a 79-year-old male, adjacent to the vestibule. The newly rebuilt bone is about blood vessels and small amounts of fatty tissue. Enlow (1963) in his discussion of the remodeling of endosteal convoluted bone states that when the primary canals undergo remodeling, even though the bone itself is endosteal, the superimposed cylinder of newly forming bone is actually continuous with the fibrous component of the periosteum. This may explain the presence of fatty marrow within the labyrinthine capsule which is associated with some of the blood vessels and is surrounded by normally depolymerizing and repolymerizing bone. These areas of fatty marrow associated with the





FIG. 10. (A) Interstitial bone changes just beyond globuli ossis of cochlear capsule in 79-year old male. Not diffusely stippled calcification of acellular interstitial bone (micropetrosis) (arrows). Tortuous ossis of primary osteon (cut twice) is seen in upper right field occluded by bone deposit. Perivascular bone is a depolymerized late H&E 250. (B) Labyrinthine capsule in angle between cochlea and internal auditory canal in 62 year old male. Not very marked, extensive diffuse acellular stippling of interstitial and perivascular bone areas. Not blood vessel surrounded by large area of calcified granulation with no evidence of repolymerization (arrow). Lamina of bone to left lines the internal auditory canal. H&E 40.

primary osteons are not abnormal since they are also found in temporal bones which do not show abnormal changes.

(2) *Micropetrosis of interstitial and perivascular bone* Many of the adult temporal bone specimens contained occasional foci of acellular interstitial bone which were diffusely infiltrated by deep bluestaining granular or powder like, calcific deposits. However very extensive, diffuse calcification of this type was seen in the specimens of the two male patients, 62 and 79 years of age, who also had shown large areas of softening (depolymerization) of interstitial bone. Fig. 10 A reveals such a diffusely calcified area adjacent to the basal coil of the cochlea just beyond the globuli ossis in the 79-year old male. The adjacent primary osteon in a depolymerized state reveals occlusion of its lumen by bone deposit. Fig. 10 B demonstrates extensive diffuse deposition of calcific granules in non viable bone adjacent to the internal auditory canal near its culmination at the cochlea in the 62 year old male. Here the calcification appears to involve the bone immediately surrounding the blood vessels as well where the perivascular bone and interstitial bone are not distinguishable from each other. These

calcsific deposits within non viable bone probably represent micropetrosi as described by Frost (1963) where the canaliculi and some lacunae are filled with mineral forming very hard brittle impermeable bone and probably accounts for the hardness so characteristic of the labyrinthine capsule. Such evidence of diffuse powder like calcification disappears in tissue that has been left too long in acid or has been placed in strong acid for decalcification.

To recapitulate Two types of abnormal change are described. One involves a progression of the normally occurring interstitial bone matrix depolymerization phase so that very extensive areas of virtual structureless, softened bone are present. This may be continuous with the depolymerizing phase of the perivascular bone which also may remain in depolymerized state so that large confluent depolymerized bone areas are evident. In some specimens, repolymerizing bone about the blood vessel now rebuilds into larger areas, since the interstitial bone is softened to such a degree that it offers no barrier to the newly rebuilding bone about the vessels. Such reforming perivascular bone coalesces with reforming bone about adjacent vessels.

The second type of abnormal change appears to be diffuse calcification of a micropetrotic nature involving the interstitial acellular bone and perivascular bone areas, forming hard brittle nonpermeable bone.

## EARLY LESIONS OF OTOSCLEROSIS

Nager and Meyer (1931, 1932) described two separate processes that they considered to be the first stages in the development of otosclerosis. Both seem to consist of breakdown and resorption of the old degenerated capsule (Nager and Meyer 1931) takes the form of localized resorption (usually a lacunar erosion followed by "repair" of the area by new bone). The second process of breakdown and resorption described by Nager and Meyer (1932) is by osteoclastic destruction of bone with the formation of "pathological" bone marrow within the resorption spaces. They believed that such resorption spaces formed initially as cysts only in the very beginning of the process, and that afterward the resorption very often extended further into the bone without relation to existing blood vessels. Ruedi (1963) has pointed out that the cases in the literature where apparent early lesions are described, have had at least one fully established focus of otosclerosis. No recognizable early lesions have been described in temporal bones free of definitely diagnosed otosclerosis.

In the present study, the two male patients who revealed extensive micropetrosis of interstitial and perivascular bone as well as extensive softening or depolymerizing matrix changes, also revealed rare foci representing the two "first stage" otosclerotic processes described by Nager and Meyer. These two patients had no history of hearing loss or any manifestation of ear disorders in general. Both patients had severe generalized arteriosclerosis; the 69-year-old patient died of a cerebrovascular accident, and the 70-year-old patient who had diabetes mellitus, died of septicemia.

Figs. 11 A and 11 B demonstrate the labyrinthine capsule adjacent to the vestibule in the 70-year-old male. Newly rebuilt bone is evident about the blood vessels and about fatty bone marrow. In one such area, the repolymerizing bone only partially surrounds the fatty marrow. Part of the fatty focus directly abuts non-viable bone which is acellular and contains powder-like calcific stippling. A prominent osteoclast is present in this area, its nuclei crowded to one side and its cytoplasm in a bulbous form eroding into the adjacent acellular non-viable bone forming a typical Howship's lacuna. A similar focus of osteoclastic resorption is seen in a section from the 62-year-old patient (Figs. 12 A and 12 B) in the labyrinthine capsule between the cochlea and middle ear (near the canal for the tensor tympani). Under low magnification (Fig. 12 A) the interstitial bone appears largely acellular and virtually structureless. A rare perivascular bone area is undergoing repolymerization with the appearance of new bone cells.

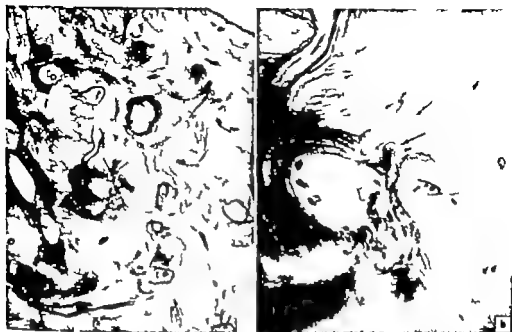


FIG. 11 (A) Labyrinthine capsule adjacent to the vestibule (upper right corner) in 78-year-old male. Not repolymerization of bone about blood vessel and fatty marrow within middle layer. Not fatty marrow focus fully partially surrounded by repolymerizing bone matrix with osteoclast (arrow) present in Howship's lacuna, eroding into acellular calcified interstitial bone. H&E 40—(B) Higher view of fatty marrow focus in middle layer of labyrinthine capsule. Not repolymerized bone fully partially surrounding marrow focus with acellular calcified interstitial bone directly bordering marrow. Osteoclast with nucleus bunched in on resorptive cell seen, with bulbous shaped cytoplasm of osteoclast in Howship's lacuna, eroding degenerated interstitial bone (arrow). H&E 250.

In one such repolymerizing perivascular bone area (Figs. 12 A and 12 B) the repolymerizing bone appears to surround only a portion of the blood vessel. There is no evidence of fatty marrow. Two prominent osteoclasts are plainly seen alongside the acellular interstitial bone. Note the presence of powder-like calcific deposits in the interstitial bone. No Howship's lacunae are evident in this focus. No evidence of new abnormal bone formation is seen associated with either of the two foci described. It is of interest to note here that these specimens from the two patients have in common widespread, diffuse, granular calcification within large areas of acellular interstitial and perivascular bone. Small foci of stippled calcific granules were occasionally seen in other older specimens, but they were not present to the extent seen in the two described here. It is interesting to speculate here on the presence of such extensive calcific deposit in bone which abuts the vascular areas. As mentioned before, physiologic loss of bone cells with aging occurs first in the interstitial bone, probably by virtue of its being furthest removed from the blood supply. With severe blood vessel changes

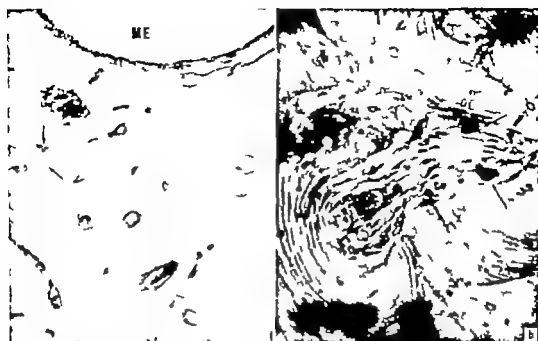


FIG. 12. (A) Labyrinthine capsule between cochlea and middle ear (ME) (near canal of tensor tympani muscle). Note acellularity of interstitial bone with loss of structure. Reprovascular repolymerization is evident. Note rebuilding about part of vessel wall with osteoclast present in non-rebuilt area, adjacent to micropetrotic bone (arrows). 62-year old male. H&E 40—(B) Higher power of primary osteon demonstrating repolymerization about part of vessel only (on left) with two osteoclasts (arrows) adjacent to unrebuilt portions of bone which contains diffuse calcified granular material. H&E 250.

larger areas of acellular bone result which no longer rebuild and these may now include areas of bone closer to or even about the blood vessels themselves. If perivascular bone, which normally loses its mineral by a process of halisteresis following depolymerization of the mucopolysaccharide matrix,—if this perivascular bone now contains an excess of mineral, or contains mineral filling bone canaliculi and lacunae which are normally free of mineral it is conceivable that the normal depolymerizing, halisteresis process can no longer be effective. Frost (1963) has stated that osteoclasts require mineral in bone matrix to be able to resorb it. It may be that osteoclasts are now attracted to the area and bring about a breakdown and

FIG. 13. (A) and (B) Two foci of lacunar erosion in the labyrinthine capsule in the region between the internal auditory canal and basal turn of cochlea. The blood vessel proper is surrounded by cellular pale degenerating bone with evidence of repolymerization. The widened, eroded lacunae occur about vessel wall and extend some distance away. Mesenchymal (bone) cells are present in the wide, eroded lacunae. 62-year old male. H&E 125—(C) High power view of bone in the widened eroded lacuna containing mesenchymal cells. Sharply outlined surfaces of the eroded lacuna suggest increased mineralization of the bone. H&E 450.



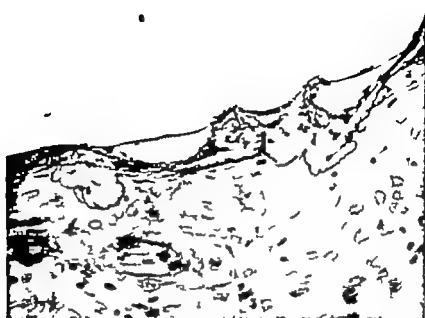


FIG. 14 Display of horizontal semicircular canal Not irregular erosion of bone surface with presence of mesenchymal cells within the defects. Thin mucosal lining of periotic space stretches across the originally eroded ilio-ossoid male. H&E 280

resorption of the bone which can no longer undergo its normal depolymerizing process.

The demonstrated foci appear to be examples of Nager and Meyer's osteoclastic type of resorption representing the early lesion. They occur here in temporal bones which have demonstrated widespread degenerative changes within the interstitial and perivascular bone both of a calcific (micropetrotic) nature and of a depolymerized nature where evidence of minimal confluence of normally reforming perivascular bone is also present. It is remarkable to note that in both of these patients, the stapediovestibular joint was normal, showing only minimal changes of aging (to be presented as a separate study).

Two separate foci of lacunar erosion as described by Nager and Meyer were found in the 62 year old specimen (Figs 13A, B and C). These lesions were present in the angle between the internal auditory canal and the basal turn of the cochlea. The blood vessels here are close together and appear to be surrounded only by non viable interstitial bone, with no evidence of concentric perivascular bone. Portions of this acellular non viable bone about the vessels appear to be breaking down by means of lacunar erosion with widening and confluence of the lacunae. The lacunar erosion is present about the vessels, and extends for a short distance away from the vessel walls. Mesenchymal cells from about the blood vessels have entered some of these eroded confluent lacunar areas. The sharply outlined surfaces of the eroded lacunae suggest that they were more highly mineralized than



FIG. 15. Portion of anterior margin of round window demonstrating deep erosion (arrow). Thin lining of calcified material stretching across original eroded margin. The surface lining is deeper-stained (e.g., it appears more newly formed (or remodeled) than adjacent capsule bone). Not mesenchymal cell activity at margins of round window. 62-year-old male. H&E. 430.

other portions of the acellular bone. One can speculate here too, on the possible role that such increased abnormal mineralization may play in the breakdown of bone which normally does not break down and resorb, but depolymerizes and loses its mineral by a process of halitesteresis.

These foci strongly suggest the process of lacunar erosion and beginning bone repair by perivascular mesenchymal cells described by Nagor and Meyer. Whether such lesions as these would have progressed eventually to recognizable full-blown otosclerosis, or whether they would have "repaired" as small, limited foci of gradually maturing new bone without the development of otosclerosis, is not known.

In addition to the foci of osteoclastic resorption and lacunar erosion, a third type of erosion was seen in the 62-year-old male patient. Irregular erosions of the inner circumferential endosteal layer in the region of the vestibule and horizontal semicircular canal were quite prominent (Fig. 14). Small number of mesenchymal cells were present within the erosion defects. The thin mucosal lining of the periotic space can be seen stretching across the original uneroded site. Such occurs in small eroded areas within the inner lining of the labyrinthine capsule as is found in a good number of adult specimens. One must consider the possibility of this type of erosion having a similar significance to the previously described lacunar erosion and that "repair" of these areas might possibly result in a limited new bone



deposition within mesenchymal tissue or might possibly result in a widespread new bone growth representing an otosclerotic focus. One must also speculate here on the possible role that the constantly moving inner ear fluids may play in the production of such surface erosions.

The round window margins are also formed by membrane bone. In the same 62 year old male patient, extensive erosion of the anterior margin of the round window was also present (Fig. 15). Note the deep erosion with a persisting remnant of calcific material stretching across the original site of the round window margin. The bone lining this area appears to be more newly formed (or remodeled) and stands out in sharp contrast to the adjacent capsular bone. Mesenchymal cell activity at the round window margin is evident.

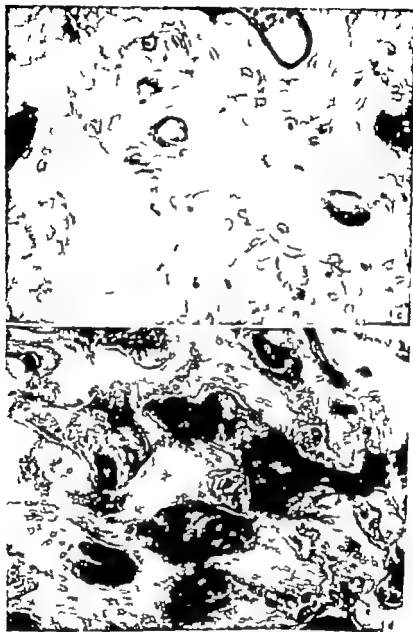
Occasional small erosions of the round window were not uncommon in the adult specimens, and were usually associated with repair by mesenchymal cells. It was also very common to find acellular bone spicules, with an in-between appearance of cartilage-bone matrix, extending from the anterior margin of the round window into the adjacent cochlear spiral ligament with occasional spicules forming a thin, shell like surface on the spiral ligament.

## OTOSCLEROSIS

Two specimens were from a 40-year old white female with typical bilateral otosclerotic ankylosis of the stapedial footplate (A study of the normal stapediovestibular joint and the abnormal progression of certain changes to otosclerosis will be presented as a separate study) The same mechanisms are believed to be active in otosclerosis involving the stapedio-vestibular joint including the fissula ante fenestram save for the very significant fact that the stapediovestibular joint by virtue of being a joint, is subject to the stresses that all joints are subject to, which predispose this area to otosclerosis. The otosclerotic specimens are only partially discussed here for comparison with certain features already described Fig 16 A demonstrates ankylosis of the anterior portion of the stapediovestibular joint The section is through the edge of the ankylosed area to demonstrate the annular ligament The otosclerotic bone involves the anterior portion of the stapes footplate and oval window and extends to both the middle ear and vestibule surfaces, as well as "invading" the otic capsule toward the cochlea Fig 16 B demonstrates the typical appearance of "active" otosclerotic bone Note the large deeply staining mesenchymal cells in the annular ligament adjacent to the new bone Similar cells are present in the closely spaced bone lacunae. The new bone is membrane bone which has formed in mesenchymal tissue Fig 16 C is a high power view of the advancing front of the otosclerotic focus into the labyrinthine capsule as seen in Fig 16 A Note the sharp line of demarcation between the new bone and the old capsular bone, and the undulating type of growth into the older bone A comparison of this "invading" type of bone (Fig. 16 C) with the otosclerotic bone of the oval window (Fig 16 B) reveals a marked difference in appearance The new bone involving the joint is more densely cellular and the mesenchymal cells are forming new bone within mesenchymal or fibrous tissue whereas, in the advancing front of new bone (Fig 16 C) the mesenchymal bone-forming cells appear to enter altered matrix of the adjacent old capsule with repolymerization of the matrix. There is no formation of bone here within fibrous tissue as in the otosclerotic bone of the joint (Fig 16 B) The invasive bone demonstrated in Fig 16 C appears to spread in a manner similar to the normally occurring but more limited process of depolymerization of bone matrix with entrance of mesenchymal cells into the altered matrix which then, as bone cells, bring about a repolymerization and remineralization of the area Here however in the otosclerotic specimen, the bone change occurs about the vessels as an invasive



FIG. 16 (A) Medial pedioventibular joint with osteosclerotic kylosis. Section from edge of ankle joint demonstrating ligamentum tibiale. (B) High magnification showing typical active osteosclerotic bone. Note large, deeply stained mesenchymal bone-forming cells in the ligament adjacent to new bone. Similar cells are present in the loosely packed bone. New bone has formed in mesenchymal tissue. (C) Spreading front of osteosclerotic focus in



labyrinthine capsule. Note sharp line of demarcation between newly formed bone and old capsule. Bone not remodeled about blood vessel and remains in place as if repolymerizing periosteal bone. H&E 280—(1) Bone in the (1) otoacoustic specimen) adjacent to semicircular canal. Note the deeply stained bone (1) bone in the (1) which is beginning to be repolymerized and resorbed (4) bone. Note occasional few bone cells in interstitial bone. H&E 123

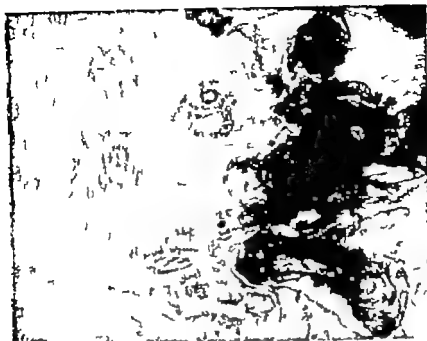


FIG. 17 Bl m s l n -otosclerotic specimen exhibiting extant micropetrosis and osteocytic foci elsewhere. New bone cells are entering basophilic (in g. depolymerized perivascular bone). Some new cells have entered interstitial bone. 70 $\times$ , car. double H&E 125.

front with extensive matrix change preceding it and with confluence of the perivascular rebuilt bone so that the interstitial type bone is no longer present as such.

One must recall here that Wiltmanck (1933) and others believed that part of the otosclerotic bone consisted of degenerated old capsular bone. The invasive front of the focus into the capsule, as demonstrated here is consistent with this view. However in the area where the otosclerotic process originates by breakdown and resorption of bone, the otosclerotic bone forms within the fibrous or mesenchymal tissue filling the resorbed or eroded areas, and not in depolymerized matrix, and does not utilize the old capsule since the old capsular bone in such areas has been resorbed or completely broken down. New definitions may be necessary to distinguish the otosclerotic bone forming in eroded fibrous containing areas from the repolymerizing, coalescing perivascular invasive type of bone which utilizes the more normal processes of the area.

What has been referred to in the literature as blue mantle bone appears to represent a rapid rebuilding phase of the softened altered matrix about blood vessels. Variations in the staining characteristics that occur in the depolymerizing and repolymerizing perivascular bone suggest a greater or lesser amount of depolymerized mucopolysaccharide matrix present at any one time so that bluer areas probably represent an increased rate of "remodeling" about the vessels. In otosclerotic specimens, this may well reflect

a rapid attempt to rebuild along normal channels in areas away from the focus to compensate for the breakdown in adjacent pathologic area or areas. Fig 10 D demonstrates blue mantles in one of the specimens with otosclerosis. When these blue mantle areas are seen in specimens without established otosclerosis, they probably represent an attempt at rebuilding bone to compensate for extensive bone changes of a degenerative nature in adjoining areas of the capsule. Such blue mantles were present in sections from the 79-year old male with demonstrated extensive micropetrosis and beginning osteoclastic resorption (Fig 17). Blue mantle bone per se is thus probably not abnormal bone since it follows the same principles of rebuilding within previously softened matrix about the vessels. However its presence about a group of vessels in any one area signifies extensive degeneration of bone elsewhere and probably represents an attempt at more rapid rebuilding of normal bone as a compensatory measure.

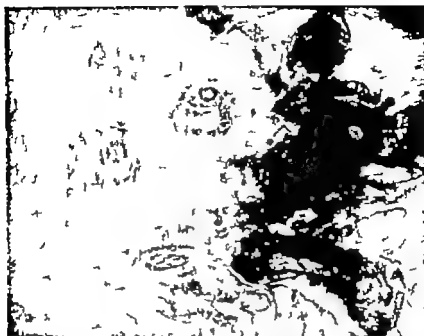


FIG. 17 Blue mantle lesion - otosclerotic process, exhibiting extensive micropetrosal osteocytic focus elsewhere. New bone cells are tertiary basophilic staining, depolymerized perivascular bone. Some new bone has entered interstitial bone. 78-year-old male. H&E 125.

front with extensive matrix change preceding it and with confluence of the perivascular rebuilt bone so that the interstitial type bone is no longer present as such.

One must recall here that Wittmaack (1933) and others believed that part of the otosclerotic bone consisted of degenerated old capsular bone. The invasive front of the focus into the capsule, as demonstrated here is consistent with this view. However, in the area where the otosclerotic process originates by breakdown and resorption of bone, the otosclerotic bone forms within the fibrous or mesenchymal tissue filling the resorbed or eroded areas, and not in depolymerized matrix, and does not utilize the old capsule since the old capsular bone in such areas has been resorbed or completely broken down. New definitions may be necessary to distinguish the otosclerotic bone forming in eroded fibrous containing areas from the repolymerizing, coalescing perivascular invasive type of bone which utilizes the more normal processes of the area.

What has been referred to in the literature as blue mantle bone appears to represent a rapid rebuilding phase of the softened altered matrix about blood vessels. Variations in the staining characteristics that occur in the depolymerizing and repolymerizing perivascular bone suggest a greater or lesser amount of depolymerized mucopolysaccharide matrix present at any one time so that bluer areas probably represent an increased rate of "remodeling" about the vessels. In otosclerotic processes this may well reflect

- Maer O. 1917 *Untersuchungen über die Otosklerose*. A. Hölde Wien und Leipzig.
- McLean, P. C., and H. W. J. D. R. F. 1963. Internal remodeling of compact bone. I. Mechanism of Hard Tissue Destruction. ch. 14, p. 371. American Association for the Advancement of Science Washington, D.C.
- Medoza, H. and Rius, M. 1966. Histology of the chondral layer of the human otic capsule. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 62: 93.
- Moss, M. L. 1938. Function of the frontal suture in the rat. *Am J Anat* 102: 141.
- 1960. Experimental induction of osteogenesis. I. Calcification in Biological Systems (ed. R. F. Soxman) p. 323. A.A.A.S., Washington, D.C.
- 1961. Osteogenesis of acellular tissue. *Am J Anat* 161: 99.
- Nager F. H. 1947. Pathology of the labyrinthine capsule and its clinical significance. *Loose-Leaf Medical of the Ear* (ed. F. P. F. W. Jr. H. VI) p. 237. Thomas Nelson and Son, New York and Edinburgh.
- Nager F. H. and Meyer M. 1931. Beiträge zur normalen und pathologischen Histologie der knöchernen Labyrinthkapsel. *Pathologisches Archiv* 29: 167.
- 1932. Beiträge zur normalen und pathologischen Histologie der knöchernen Labyrinthkapsel. *Pathologisches Archiv* 30: 169.
- Nager F. H. and Rödel, L. 1931. Histologische Untersuchung der Fixationsplättchen bei der Otoskleroseoperation. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 29: 300.
- Pritchard, J. J. Scott, J. M. and Girgis, F. U. 1934. The structure and development of the ear. *J Anat* 99: 0.
- Reichlinghausen, F. von 1910. *Entwicklungen über Rachen und Otolaryngologie*. Fischer, Jena.
- Ries, V. 1962. *Les techniques de l'analyse de l'os*. Editions Minerva Medica, Torino.
- Richman, S. P. Anson, B. J. and Bass, T. H. 1940. The ear and the temporal bone. Development and its structure. *Otolaryngology* (ed. G. M. Coates and H. P. Schenk) vol. 1. W. F. Pri. Co. Inc. Hagerstown, Md.
- Rödel, L. 1963. Pathogenesis of otosclerosis. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chic) 78: 462.
- Shaw, J. L. and Bassett, C. A. 1967. The effect of oxygen concentration on the osteogenesis of embryonic cartilage. *Am J Bone Jt Surg* 49A: 72.
- Sherman, M. S. and Selakovich, W. G. 1957. Bone changes in chronic otitis media. *Milwaukee J Bo Jt Surg* 39A: 892.
- Shi Zhi-Zhu 1911. Über die kondromatöse Otosklerose bei der epihämischen Ossifikation des menschlichen Felsenbeins. *Z Morph Anthropol* Bd XIII, p. 187.
- Streeter, G. L. 1918. The histogenesis and growth of the otic capsule and its associated periotic spaces in the human embryo. *Conn Embryol Surg* Jan 7: 7.
- Thomas, E. A. and Croft, E. P. 1961. Cellular response to fracture studied with tritiated thymidine. *J Bone Jt Surg* 43A: 252.
- Trotter, M., Brown, G. L. and Peterson, H. H. 1960. Density of bones of white and Negro skeletons. *J Bone Jt Surg* 42A: 60.
- Trueta, J. 1963. The role of the ear in otosclerosis. *J Bone Jt Surg* 45A: 402.
- Werner, M. 1928. Bone pathology and its relation to the problem of otosclerosis. *J Otol* 37: 1232.
- 1933. The blue mottles of otosclerosis. contribution to the pathology of the labyrinthine capsule. *A Otol* 52: 429.
- Wittmann, K. H. 1919. *Die Otosklerose*. *Festschrift für die Otolaryngologie*. Fischer, Jena.
- 1923. Betrachtungen zum Otoskleroseproblem. *A Otolaryng* 51: 213.
- Wolff, D. and Bellucci, R. J. 1964. Otosclerosis. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chic) 79: 571.
- Wolff, D. and Lampert, J. 1963. Incipient otosclerosis. *JLH* 75: 613.
- von G. R. W. 1963. Nucleic acids, protein synthesis and bone. *J Orthoped* 28: 147.







PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wikströms Boktryckeri Aktieföretag*

UPPSALA 1968

*Acta*  
OTO-LARYNGOLOGICA

S U P P L E M E N T U M 236

CELLULAR PATTERN AND  
NERVE SUPPLY OF  
THE HUMAN ORGAN OF CORTI

GÖRAN BREDBERG



*From the Ear, Nose and Throat Department, University of Göteborg, Sweden.  
(Head, Professor Gösta Herberts M.D.)*

---

ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

SUPPLEMENTUM 236

CELLULAR PATTERN AND NERVE SUPPLY  
OF THE HUMAN ORGAN OF CORTI

GÖRAN BREDBERG



# CONTENTS

Explanation of symbols used in cell population graphs and in audiograms.	6
I. Introduction	"
II. Survey of the literature concerning the human organ of Corti	10
A. Introduction	10
B. Fetal development	11
C. The mature organ of Corti	15
D. The cochlea in old age and the pathologically altered cochlea	22
1. The cochlea in old age	22
2. Cochlear pathology not related to ageing	28
III. Material	31
A. Prenatal	31
B. Postnatal	31
C. Discussion	32
IV. Methods	34
A. Surface specimen technique	34
B. The cochleogram	39
C. The graph of cellular populations	43
D. Photography	45
E. Audiotape	45
F. Discussion	46
V. Results	51
A. Fetal development of the organ of Corti	51
1. Cytoskeleton	51
2. Innervation	63
3. Numerical condensation	64
4. Discussion	68
B. Structure of the postnatal organ of Corti	"
1. Population of sensory cell	75
a) The full complement	5
b) Degeneration of sensory cell	75
2. Supporting elements and tectorial membrane	9
3. Nerves in the osseous spiral lamina	82



4	Relation between lesions in the organ of Corti and degeneration of nerves in the osseous spiral lamina	91
5	Discussion	107
C.	Comparison between cochlear morphology and hearing function	116
1	Threshold sensitivity for pure tones	116
2	Difference limen as revealed by Békésy audiometry	119
3	Speech discrimination	120
VI.	General discussion	122
VII	Summary	125
	Acknowledgements	126
	References	127

*To my wife, Gunilla*

*Symbols used in the graphs of sensory cell population*



Full complement of outer hair cells (range is 7 fetuses)



Outer hair cell



Full density of each of the 1st, 2nd and 3rd rows of outer hair cells



1st row of outer hair cells



2nd " "



3rd " " "



4th



Full complement of inner hair cells (range in fetuses)



Inner hair cell

*Symbols used in the audiograms*



Right ear conduction



with masking



bone conduction



with masking



Left ear conduction



bone conduction

## I. INTRODUCTION

Recent decades have seen rapid advances in the both methodology and interpretation. Instruments and auditory testing have been developed to a degree of assessment of many parameters of hearing. A loss of hearing as expressed in terms of a language with considerable confidence between the of auditory defects. Terms such as recruitment commonly used in discussions of hearing loss indicating damage to sensory cell of the organ of Corti ask the audiologist or the otologist to describe the organ of Corti, in any particular case of hearing loss if any could give even a reasonably approximate

The present-day urbanized environment is in which constitute an ever-present threat to hearing of noise producing machines and a number of physical features of hearing loss due to noise exposure is a considerable amount of information on the noise-exposed experimental animals though in man there is some knowledge though much of the cells and neural elements however the from satisfactory

In 1960, Rosen *et al* reported a study of a tribe in the Sudan which had never been exposed to noise found in the civilized world. The frequency was much better among the adults (of a comparable age group). It remains to be seen if a lack of high frequency hearing loss is deep free surroundings. This question can only be settled if the other variables between the two (age, etcetera). Nevertheless, the evidence produced to the hypothesis that presbycusis can be explained at least in some degree by cochlear or cochlear damage of epidemic proportions in populations. Regarding the morphological aspects the demonstration of certain histological features of the cochlea is attributed to presbycusis. No precise information about sensory elements in the organ of Corti

The rapid development of new anti-noise

while clinically valuable have the unfortunate side effect of causing serious damage to the auditory or vestibular endorgans, thus limiting their clinical use. Many reports appear in the literature on the vestibular and/or auditory disturbances attributable to the ototoxic antibiotics. Experimental research on this problem has yielded a considerable fund of facts, but it is only very recently that information on the exact location and pattern of distribution of the damage to the sensory and neural elements has begun to accumulate. Drug ototoxicity to the auditory mechanism in man has been studied mainly as an audiological follow up of antibiotic therapy and corresponding histological studies yielding important information on the actual cochlear damage are very few.

The human fetus, especially during the first three to four months, is very sensitive to a variety of noxious agents, exposure to which may result in congenital malformations. For example rubella infection of the mother within the first three months of pregnancy may induce malformations of the inner ear. Congenital malformations of the inner ear also may be the result from inherited factors as for instance in congenital hereditary deafness, nonendemic goiter, Usher syndrome and Alford syndrome. Whilst there is some useful information about the gross changes in the bony labyrinth in cases in which osseous changes have occurred, there is a conspicuous lack of detailed information about the changes occurring in the sensory cells of the organ of Corti and its related neural structures in cases of congenital malformation.

Our knowledge of the structural basis of hearing loss in man is slight compared to the enormous amount of research effort which has gone into this problem. This is not to say that previous studies have been without value. They have in fact, given us basic information on a number of facets of the problem; however there are very few data on one central issue, which is to determine the pattern of damage to the cochlear sensory cells or to the nerve endings and nerve fibers. There is a corresponding lack of specific information as to the correlation of sensory cell losses and neural losses in cases of hearing defects which are considered due to morphological changes in the cochlea. If we accept the fact that there is a need to improve our knowledge about the adult cochlea, this is even more true for the fetal cochlea.

There is a good reason to believe that many of these gaps in our knowledge are attributable partly to the methods which have been used and partly to overall difficulties in the preparation and study of the inner ear. More recent developments in ultrastructural research have clearly shown up the deficiencies of some of the traditional techniques whilst new techniques of fixation, embedding and structural analysis have demonstrated the extreme importance of taking into account all possible artefact. Some of these problems have been discussed in a recent monograph by Engström, Aies and Anderson (1966).

The preparation of the human cochlea is beset not only by all those difficulties found in experimental animals, but also by even greater problems peculiar to the human fetus, these which have presented the greatest obstacle

to this study. It is hoped that the solutions to some of these technical problems will be found useful to the reader and will lead to improvement in our knowledge both of the normal and of the pathologically altered human ear.

The aims of the present study were

to adapt and further develop the surface specimen technique of Engstrom for the study of the human cochlea

to study in addition to the adult organ of Corti, the structure and innervation of the organ at progressive stages of fetal development in the early postnatal period and in old people

to establish to what extent certain typical features of cochlear damage could be associated with specific parameters of hearing impairment or to specific etiological factors

while clinically valuable, have the unfortunate side effect of causing serious damage to the auditory or vestibular endorgans thus limiting their clinical use. Many reports appear in the literature on the vestibular and/or auditory disturbances attributable to the ototoxic antibiotics. Experimental research on this problem has yielded a considerable fund of facts but it is only very recently that information on the exact location and pattern of distribution of the damage to the sensory and neural elements has begun to accumulate. Drug ototoxicity to the auditory mechanism in man has been studied mainly as an audiological follow up of antibiotic therapy and corresponding histological studies yielding important information on the actual cochlear damage are very few.

The human fetus, especially during the first three to four months, is very sensitive to a variety of noxious agents, exposure to which may result in congenital malformations. For example rubella infection of the mother within the first three months of pregnancy may induce malformations of the inner ear. Congenital malformations of the inner ear also may be the result from inherited factors as for instance in congenital hereditary deafness, nonendemic goiter, Usher syndrome, and Alford syndrome. Whilst there is some useful information about the gross changes in the bony labyrinth in cases in which osseous changes have occurred there is a conspicuous lack of detailed information about the changes occurring in the sensory cells of the organ of Corti and its related neural structures in cases of congenital malformation.

Our knowledge of the structural basis of hearing loss in man is slight compared to the enormous amount of research effort which has gone into this problem. This is not to say that previous studies have been without value. They have in fact, given us basic information on a number of facets of the problem; however there are very few data on one central issue which is to determine the pattern of damage to the cochlear sensory cells or to the nerve endings and nerve fibers. There is a corresponding lack of specific information as to the correlation of sensory cell losses and neural losses in cases of hearing defects which are considered due to morphological changes in the cochlea. If we accept the fact that there is a need to improve our knowledge about the adult cochlea this is even more true for the fetal cochlea.

There is a good reason to believe that many of these gaps in our knowledge are attributable partly to the methods which have been used and partly to overall difficulties in the preparation and study of the inner ear. More recent developments in ultrastructural research have clearly shown up the deficiencies of some of the traditional techniques, whilst new techniques of fixation, embedding and structural analysis has demonstrated the extreme importance of taking into account all possible artefact. Some of these problems have been discussed in a recent monograph by Engström, Ades and Anderson (1966).

The preparation of the human cochlea is beset not only by all those difficulties found in the perinatal animal but also by even greater problems peculiar to the human fetus, those which have presented the greatest obstacles

to this study. It is hoped that the solutions to some of these technical problems will be found useful to the reader and will lead to improvement in our knowledge both of the normal and of the pathologically altered human ear.

The aims of the present study were:

to adapt and further develop the surface specimen technique of Engström for the study of the human cochlea

to study in addition to the adult organ of Corti, the structure and innervation of the organ at progressive stages of fetal development in the early postnatal period and in old people

to establish to what extent certain typical features of cochlear damage could be associated with specific parameters of hearing impairment or to specific etiological factors.



while clinically valuable, have the unfortunate side effect of causing serious damage to the auditory or vestibular endorgans thus limiting their clinical use. Many reports appear in the literature on the vestibular and/or auditory disturbances attributable to the ototoxic antibiotics. Experimental research on this problem has yielded a considerable fund of facts, but it is only very recently that information on the exact location and pattern of distribution of the damage to the sensory and neural elements has begun to accumulate. Drug ototoxicity to the auditory mechanism in man has been studied mainly as an audiological follow-up of antibiotic therapy and corresponding histological studies yielding important information on the actual cochlear damage are very few.

The human fetus, especially during the first three to four months, is very sensitive to a variety of noxious agents, exposure to which may result in congenital malformations. For example, rubella infection of the mother within the first three months of pregnancy may induce malformations of the inner ear. Congenital malformations of the inner ear also may be the result from inherited factors as for instance in congenital hereditary deafness, nonendemic goiter, Usher syndrome and Alford syndrome. Whilst there is some useful information about the gross changes in the bony labyrinth in cases in which osseous changes have occurred, there is a conspicuous lack of detailed information about the changes occurring in the sensory cells of the organ of Corti and its related neural structures in cases of congenital malformation.

Our knowledge of the structural basis of hearing loss in man is slight compared to the enormous amount of research effort which has gone into this problem. This is not to say that previous studies have been without value. They have in fact, given us basic information on a number of facets of the problem; however, there are very few data on one central issue, which is to determine the pattern of damage to the cochlear sensory cells or to the nerve endings and nerve fibers. There is a corresponding lack of specific information as to the correlation of sensory cell losses and neural losses in cases of hearing defects which are considered due to morphological changes in the cochlea. If we accept the fact that there is a need to improve our knowledge about the adult cochlea, this is even more true for the fetal cochlea.

There is a good reason to believe that many of these gaps in our knowledge are attributable partly to the methods which have been used and partly to overall difficulties in the preparation and study of the inner ear. More recent development in ultrastructural research have clearly shown up the deficiencies of some of the traditional techniques whilst new techniques of fixation, embedding and structural analysis have demonstrated the extreme importance of taking into account all possible artefact. Some of these problems have been discussed in a recent monograph by Engström, Ales and Andersson (1966).

The preparation of the human cochlea is beset not only by all those difficulties found in experimental animal, but also by an even greater problem peculiar to this material—those which have represented the greatest obstacle

to this study. It is hoped that the solutions to some of these technical problems will be found useful to the reader and will lead to improvement in our knowledge both of the normal and of the pathologically altered human ear.

The aims of the present study were

to adapt and further develop the surface specimen technique of Eustachian for the study of the human cochlea

to study in addition to the adult organ of Corti, the structure and innervation of the organ at progressive stages of fetal development; in the early postnatal period; and in old people

to establish to what extent certain typical features of cochlear damage can be associated with specific parameters of hearing impairment or to specific etiological factors

## II SURVEY OF LITERATURE CONCERNING THE HUMAN ORGAN OF CORTI

### A INTRODUCTION

The discovery of the cochlea was made by Gabriel Fallopius in 1561 and the acoustic papilla was described for the first time by Alphonso Corti in 1851. These basic descriptions were followed in the second half of the 19th century by many thorough investigations of the anatomy of the cochlea by Holliker (1852), Leydig (1857), Deiters (1860), Hensen (1863), Retzius (1884) and others. The early literature is thoroughly reviewed in the monumental work by Retzius in 1884. In the 20th century Held (1926) and Holmer (1927) have contributed exhaustive descriptions of the morphology of the human cochlea.

The technique of decalcification, embedding, and sectioning of the temporal bone was a relatively late development, not known to the early workers. Instead they worked with dissections of the ear which were prepared in various ways for direct observations or light microscopy. The surfaces inside the labyrinth were especially suitable for this kind of study. Several accurate descriptions of the pattern of supporting and sensory cells of the organ of Corti, illustrated by excellent drawings, appeared among the early efforts, especially those of Retzius (1884) and Held (1926). Retzius used a technique of preparation which was similar in many ways to the one used in the present publication. He preserved the natural pattern of sensory cells and supporting cells and enhanced its clarity by the use of fixatives and stains, so that he could study in detail the surface mosaic of the epithelium. These methods were supplemented by a sectioning technique.

The advent of more sophisticated sectioning methods, including that of serial sectioning, gave a considerable impetus to the study of cochlear morphology, as also to other histological studies, as well. However, the gains of these methods were partially offset by a certain loss, namely a sacrifice of the survey effect of the whole-mount method which helped to maintain orientation and perspective. This disadvantage was only partly compensated by such devices as sectioning in different planes and the use of alternating thin and thick sections. A further great addition to the usefulness of sectioning methods was made in Guild's description (in 1921) of a method of graphic reconstruction from serial sections for the study of the guinea pig's organ of Corti. It was the first effort to standardize methodology for the study of cochlear structure and pathology. The method was further developed and adapted for the human cochlea by Guild *et al.* (1931), Crow, Guild and Polvogt (1931), and in recent times by Schuknecht and his collaborators (1934, 1961, 1964, 1968). It is now a standard method in many temporal bone laboratories.

During the last 50 years, the method of serial sectioning of temporal bones has been the method used almost exclusively in the study of the morphology and pathology of the inner ear. Devotion to this technique with its disadvantages inherent in any single method, has tended to retard progress in the area of cochlear histopathology. The development of electron microscopy has resulted in enormous advances and has revealed many new aspects of structure and function which have forced us to revise many of our old concepts.

The application of electron microscopy to the study of the inner ear soon revealed that specimens which had been decalcified and embedded according to the traditional technique could not be used with good results. Consequently a technique of preparation had to be developed in which the inner ear could be fixed by direct perfusion with a suitable fixative, any selected part of the inner ear epithelium processed without decalcification, and the specimen then embedded and sectioned (Engström and Wersäll, 1953). This led to the revival of old micro-dissection methods which led in turn to the realization that these methods could be useful for other kinds of studies in addition to electron microscopy. Several investigators have used similar techniques of micro-dissection. Neuhart (1950, 1952) described a method of "kitchen-preparation" in which, after laying free the organ of Corti, the nuclei of the sensory cells could be studied by light microscopy. Goto, Ito and Ohashi (1953) and Katzuki and Coelli (1953) used similar methods as did Vinnikov and Titova (1961, 1963) in their two-dimensional preparations for histochemical studies. Engström *et al.* (1956, 1964, 1966) developed the surface specimen technique for phase contrast microscopy of the organ of Corti. In this study of the human cochlea Kimura, Schuknecht and Sando (1961) introduced electron microscopy. Bredberg, Engström and Ådes (1965), Bredberg (1966) and Johnson and Hawkins (1966) applied the surface specimen technique and Nomura and Schuknecht (1965), Nomura and Kirika (1966) and Ishii, Murakami and Brough (1967) used histochemical methods.

## B. FETAL DEVELOPMENT

The membranous labyrinth arises as an invagination of the ectoderm. The earliest primordia are thickenings of the ectoderm, appearing one on either side of the brain. These auditory placodes become invaginated into the auditory sacs which are later separated from the surface to form the auditory vesicles (otoecysts) in the 4–6 mm human embryo.

Anson (1931) emphasized three infoldings of the wall of the otoecyst which subdivide it into the principal subdivisions of the final membranous labyrinth, namely 1) the end lymphatic duct and 2) the utricular and saccular ducts, and 3) the sacculus with its outgrowth, the ductus reunies and the cochlear duct.

The development of the sensory epithelium of the cochlear duct is described together with a review of the pertinent literature in the following paragraphs. For further studies on the development of the labyrinth the

reader is referred to the monograph by Bast and Anson (1919) where the earlier literature is reviewed.

The cochlear duct is a helical tube which develops as an outgrowth from the antero-medial end of the saccular portion of the otocyst. In early fetuses, up to the age of eight weeks it is the only part of the cochlea present. The scala vestibuli, the scala tympani, the modiolus and the bony capsule develop later from the surrounding mesenchyme.

The cochlear duct in the seven-week fetus has developed into a curved tube which describes one turn. At the 30 mm stage (8 1/2 weeks) it has increased to one and three-quarter turns. At the 50 mm stage (10 to 11 weeks) the definitive two and three-quarter turns are present. Beyond this stage the spiral grows in size, but not in tortuosity, reaching its maximum size at about mid-term (Bast and Anson 1919).

Differentiation of the epithelium which forms the organ of Corti is a process which does not proceed uniformly throughout the coils of the cochlea. Most authors have stated that the development begins at the basal end and proceeds gradually towards the apex (Retsius, 1884; Van der Stricht 1919, 1920; Wada 1923; Alexander 1926; Held 1926; Holmer 1927; Bast and Anson 1919; Weibel 1957). Lorente de No (1933a) described a somewhat different pattern in the mouse in which the differentiation began at a point some little distance from the base and progressed in both directions from there. In agreement with this, Larvell, McCrady and Larvell (1944) found that in the opossum the morphological differentiation in the upper basal and lower middle coils preceded that in the basal and apical extremities. The functional significance of this was suggested by the finding that the pouch young opossum reacted earliest to sound stimuli in a relatively narrow frequency band in the middle range, only later beginning to react to lower and higher frequencies. In the rabbit, Anggård (1965) showed by electrophysiological methods that the earliest sign of cochlear function occurred in response to stimulation with medium high frequencies (—5 ke). Similar observations have been made in the rat (Crowley and Hepp-Reymond 1966) and in the mouse (Mikaelian and Ruben 1965).

A different aspect on cochlear development in the mouse was advanced by Ruben (1967) in a study of terminal mitoses of the cells in the membranous labyrinth by analysis of radioautographs of the inner ear following labeling with tritiated thymidine. Terminal mitoses are considered to be the last division which a cell undergoes and thus serve as an index of the time of establishment of a permanent cell population. Ruben found in the cochlea that the hair cell (and pillar cells and Deiters' cell) were distributed in such a way that the oldest cell—the cells that undergo terminal mitoses first, were at the apex and the youngest cell—the cells which undergo terminal mitosis last were at the base. This would infer that the apical cells take longer time after undergoing terminal mitosis to reach their mature form than do the hair cells located in the basal turn. Ruben suggested that the growth area in the organ of Corti might be at the basal end so that growth by cell division would

cause the apical part, whose cell-division is completed, to be pushed further apicalward.

In the human fetus the development is described as starting at the basal end of the cochlea (Alexander 1936; Kolmer 1927; Bast and Anson, 1949; Ormerod, 1960). In the beginning of the third month the cochlear duct has, in cross section, an oval shape which later becomes triangular when Reissner membrane begins to separate from the surrounding mesenchyme. The first sign of development of the organ of Corti is a thickening of the epithelium in the lower part of the cochlear duct. This is later divided into two ridges, a larger inner ridge and a smaller outer one. The acoustic papilla is differentiated from the tissues at the junction of the ridges. Light and dark cells can be distinguished at an early stage. The dark cells differentiate to become hair cells, the light ones to become supporting cells. Kolmer (1927) expressed the opinion that by this stage no further mitotic divisions occur and that therefore, subsequent growth must occur by cell growth and further differentiation. The inner hair cells show earlier differentiation than the outer especially as seen by sections through the surface of the organ of Corti (Kolmer 1927) which reveals the earlier appearance of the sensory hairs. The acoustic papilla grows rapidly in size as the intra-epithelial fluid spaces are formed and widened. The formation of the fluid spaces has been studied in animals especially by Van der Stricht (1919) and Weibel (1955). The initially narrow intercellular clefts expand to become relatively wide intra-epithelial spaces, while the supporting cells change in shape to become more slender. Van der Stricht (1919) considered the fluid spaces to be formed by reduction of the volume of the supporting cells through evulsion and liquefaction. The subsequent widening of Nuel's space cannot be explained by diminishing cell bodies, but is due instead to real growth of the supporting cells and concomitant expansion of the space by the secretion of fluid (Van der Stricht 1919; Weibel, 1955). At this time the cytoplasm in the inner and outer pillar cells is richly vacuolated.

The tunnel of Corti appears later than the space of Nuel. In the human fetus it has become discernible in the basal coil at 15 weeks of age (Bast and Anson 1949). During the succeeding month the development is gradually extending to the apex. At the final age of 35 weeks the cochlea has attained its final size and is fully enclosed in the bony capsule. At this stage the organ of Corti resembles that of the adult (Bast and Anson, 1949; Ormerod 1960).

The limbus spiralis and the inner spiral sulcus are formed from the inner ridge. The outer spiral sulcus is formed from the outer part of the outer ridge. The tectorial membrane appears as a jelly-like deposit on the inner ridge. Later it is separated from the cell surface between the limbus and the inner hair cells. According to Weibel (1955) the fluid under the tectorial membrane is formed by the inner sulcus cells which are richly vacuolated at this time.

Kikuchi and Hilding (1965) have studied the development of the organ of Corti in the mouse by electron microscopy. They found that inner and

outer hair cells, Deiters cells, pillar cells, nerve fibres, and afferent nerve endings can be identified at birth. Both sensory and supporting cells are provided with a kinocilium. The stereocilia are formed on the sensory cells and microvilli are numerous on the supporting cell. As development proceeds, the kinocilium of each hair cell disappears though the basal body remains as a remnant. The microvilli diminish in size and number. The development of the tunnel of Corti and the other fluid spaces is completed on the 10th day. On the same day the efferent nerve endings appear and by the 14th day the organ of Corti appears well developed as seen by either light or electron microscopy.

In a 4-week human fetus Wersall and Flock (196 ) found in electron microscopy a cilium to protrude from the centrole of the outer hair cells.

Bredberg, Engström and Ades (1965) and Bredberg (1967) have studied the development of the surface pattern of the organ of Corti in the human fetus. A full description of this development will be given in chapter V in the present publication. The development of the surface pattern of the organ of Corti in other mammals was described by a few authors at the beginning of the 20th century (N. Van der Stricht 1908 guinea pig and bat; Held 1909 rabbit; O. Van der Stricht 1918-19 rat and pig). In these animals the development is reported to begin at the basal end of the cochlea. The first sign of differentiation is a modification of the homogenous pattern of epithelial cells in the area of the inner and outer ridges and the appearance of inner hair cells in the inner ridge. Somewhat later the inner pillars can be identified and still later the upper surface of the outer hair cells appear as small polygonal fields which take a darker stain than the supporting cells. At the apical end of the cochlea this development takes place at a later time. A lysosome is apparent on both supporting and sensory cells. These studies were based on sections in the plane of the surface of the organ of Corti and are illustrated with a number of excellent figures of the surface pattern in the organ of Corti.

The development of the innervation of the organ of Corti has been most thoroughly studied by Reizius (1891), Cajal (1919), Lorente de No (1936) and Tello (1931). At a very early age even before the two epithelial ridges appear a subepithelial plexus of nerves can be discerned. Lorente de No demonstrated in the rat fetus that the nerves have established connection with the sensory cells by the time these can be first identified in a section (13 mm rat fetus, basal coil). He expressed the opinion that the nerve fibres and the sensory cells develop independently up to a certain point but are thereafter interdependent for the completion of their development. Nerves and sensory cells establish contact with each other at about the same time as the perilymphatic spaces begin to be formed (Lorente de No 1936).

The myelination of the nerves occurs much later. Bechterew (188 ) found that the myelination of the cochlear nerve in the human fetus takes place at a fetal length of 30 mm. Lorente de No (1936) indicated that in the rat myelination of the nerves begins in the thirteenth day after birth.

It is important in the study of development and differentiation in the organ of Corti to know when the ear starts to function as a hearing organ. In the opossum Larsell, McCrady and Larsell (1944) correlated the beginning of auditory function with the development of the tunnel of Corti. Kikuchi and Hilding (1965) concluded after comparison of their own observations in electron microscopy with the electrophysiological studies by Alford and Ruben (1963) that in the mouse all major structures are well developed before auditory responses can be elicited. The development of the efferent innervation was found to be the last major event before the organ of Corti begins to function. They suggested that the efferent innervation may play an important role in the function of the maturing organ of Corti.

A few observations of auditory function in human fetuses have been reported. Fleischer (1955) noted movements of the 5 to 9 month old fetus following a tonal stimulus delivered some distance from the abdomen of the pregnant woman. The stimulus intensity was 115 dB and the frequencies which induced reactions were 500 cps and 1000 cps. Murphy and Smyth (1962) and Johansson, Wedenberg and Westin (1964) noted with the aid of ECG a rise in the fetal heart rate following tonal stimulation. In fetuses at a time — weeks before term Johansson, Wedenberg and Westin (1964) observed this reaction in response to a sound stimulus (3000 cps 110 dB) delivered on the abdomen of the pregnant woman. Wedenberg (1965) reported that such reaction had been possible to record in the 26th week of pregnancy.

### C. THE MATURE ORGAN OF CORTI

The inner ear is enclosed in the petrous portion of the temporal bone. It forms a system of canal and cavities surrounded by bone. The bony labyrinth encloses the membranous labyrinth system of tubes and vesicles filled with fluid and the end lymph. The perilymphatic space between the bony and membranous labyrinth is filled with perilymph, a fluid differing chemically composition from the end lymph.

The bony labyrinth consists of a central part, the vestibule which encloses the utricle and saccule. From the vestibule arise the three semicircular canals with the dilatation the ampullae. The anterior part of the vestibule continues into the cochlea. The vestibular part of the membranous labyrinth includes the area of sensory epithelium, the macula utriculi, the macula sacculi and the three cristae ampullares. With the cochlea part the sensory epithelium runs along the cochlear duct.

The cochlea consists of a spirally curved tube, the cochlear canal which forms two and a half to two and three-quarter turn around its axis with the radius decreasing towards the apex. The cochlea measures about 5 mm from base to apex with the greatest diameter of about 0.5 mm at the base. The apex is directed forward laterally and slightly downwards. The cochlea is located



medially to the middle ear and the promontorial wall forms the partition over the lower basal coil.

In descriptions of the cochlea certain conventions have come into use for describing the directions and position of one structure in relation to another. These terms are referred not to the body as a whole but to the cochlea itself. Thus the term upwards refers to an ascending direction in the plane of the cochlear axis. A direction following the course of the cochlear canal is called spiral and a radial direction from the axis of the cochlea is called outwards.

The cochlear canal courses spirally around the modiolus, a short and broad conical pillar of spongy bone. The base of the modiolus forms the bottom (i. e. distal end) of the internal acoustic meatus where the cochlear division of the VIIIth cranial nerve penetrates into the cochlea through numerous openings in the bone. Within the modiolus the nerve bundles spread out into Rosenthal's canal where the spiral ganglion is situated.

The bony cochlear canal is divided into three spirally running spaces: an upper space, the *scala vestibuli*; a middle space which is called the cochlear duct or *scala media*; and a lower space, or *scala tympani*. The *scala vestibuli* and *scala tympani* are perilymphatic spaces which communicate with each other through the helicotrema, a small opening at the apex. At the basal end of the cochlear canal the *scala vestibuli* opens into the vestibule close to the oval window which is separated from the middle ear by the innermost osseous plate, the stapes. The *scala tympani* ends blindly at the round window which is separated from the middle ear cavity by a thin resilient membrane (the secondary tympanic membrane). Just inside this round window membrane a bony canal, the cochlear aqueduct, opens into the *scala tympani*. Through this canal the perilymphatic duct extends to the subarachnoid space.

The cochlear duct is part of the membranous labyrinth. Close to its basal end the caecum vestibulare it communicates with the other endolymphatic spaces through a narrow duct, the ductus reuniens. At its apex the cochlear duct has a blind end, the caecum cupulare.

As seen in a section in the mid-modiolar plane the cochlear duct is triangular in shape (Fig. 1). It is separated from the *scala tympani* by a spirally running partition, the inner part of which consists of a bony plate, the osseous spiral lamina, projecting from the modiolus. The outer part of the partition is formed by the basilar membrane, a filamentous membrane suspended between the osseous spiral lamina and the spiral ligament. The latter covers the outer wall of the cochlear canal and forms a rather prominent layer of connective tissue toward the base. The basilar membrane is narrow at the base and becomes broader toward the apex. In the most basal few millimeters of the cochlea the area of attachment of the basilar membrane to the spiral ligament is supported by small bony laminae, the secondary osseous spiral laminae, which project inward from the outer wall of the cochlear canal.

The duct is separated from the *scala vestibuli* by Reissner's mem-

brane formed by two thin layers of cells, one ectodermal and one mesodermal, and separated from each other by a basement membrane.

The outer wall of the cochlear duct is formed by a thick epithelium, the stria vascularis covering the spiral ligament. It is a complex epithelium of varying thickness with numerous blood capillaries (which are limited by a basal lamina) embedded within it. It usually covers the whole lateral wall between the prominent spiral lamina and Reissner's membrane but there may be areas of extensive atrophy in all coils in ears with good hearing for all tones (Guild, 1935). The early literature on the morphology of the stria vascularis is reviewed by Nachlas and Lurie (1951). Electron microscopic studies include those of Engström, Sjöstrand and Spoendlin (1955), Smith (1957), Rodríguez Echeandía and Burgos (1965), Hinojosa and Rodríguez-Echeandía (1966) and Spoendlin (1967). These investigators have shown morphological evidence which supports the theory that production of endolymph occurs in the stria vascularis. It is also believed to be the source of the positive 80 mV endolymphatic DC potential (Davis et al., 1958; Mirsky et al., 1958 and Tasaki and Spyropoulos, 1959).

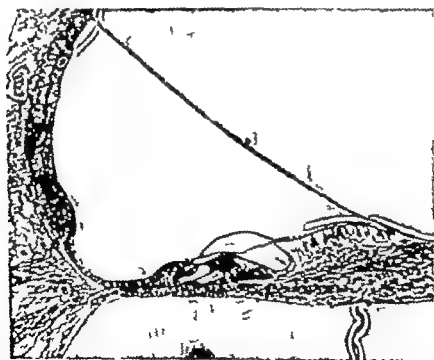


Fig. 1. Axial section through the cochlear duct of five-month human fetus: half coil from the basal end. There is close resemblance to the adult cochlea although in some respects full maturity has not been reached. For instance the mesenchymal layer under the basilar membrane is rather thick. The sulcus semicircularis (arrow) is not yet fully developed and the inner ridge (see Fig. 20) is still discernible. The stria vascularis also shows typical immature features. Osmic acid fixation, paraffin-embedding, staining, upon embedding. (Magnification: 150 $\times$ ).

The sensory epithelium of the cochlea *the organ of Corti or the acoustic papilla* is attached to the upper surface of the basilar membrane. It consists of an epithelial ridge about 100  $\mu$  thick which runs throughout the entire length of the cochlear duct. Its complicated structure contains two types of cells: supporting cells which form a firm but flexible framework, and hair cells: neuro-epithelial cells which are assumed to function as transducers for sound energy to nerve impulses.

*The supporting cells* are slender cells which extend from the basilar membrane to the surface of the organ of Corti where they form the rigid reticular membrane. The upper ends of the hair cells are suspended in this membrane in spirally running rows.

In a radial section of the organ of Corti (Fig. 1) a conspicuous structure is the tunnel of Corti, the pillar cells bounding it. Medially close to the inner pillar the inner hair cells are surrounded by inner phalangeal cells and border cells. The outer hair cells and the phalangeal or Deiters' cells form 3—4 rows, lateral to the tunnel and the space of Nuel. The outmost part of the organ of Corti is formed by Hensen cells. Nuel's space between the outer hair cells and pillar cells is one of the inter-cellular spaces, all of which including the tunnel of Corti communicate freely with one another. These are in fact one continuous space and it is only in radial section that they appear to be divided into several compartments. This intra-epithelial space is filled with a fluid, the cortilymph (Engström 1960a). Thus the cell bodies of the outer hair cells are to a large extent surrounded by this fluid.

When studied from above the surface of the organ of Corti has a characteristic pattern which was well illustrated by Retzius (1884). Fig. 8 shows one of his figures of the reticular membrane.

The complicated system of supporting cells will not be described in detail. The reader is referred to the light microscopic studies of Retzius (1884), Held (1946) and Holmer (1952) and to the electron microscopic description by Furuta (1960, 1967).

*The hair cells* are arranged in a characteristic pattern in the organ of Corti. This arrangement was the subject of an excellent description by Retzius (1884). Because of its pertinence to the present investigation it is desirable to review Retzius' description in some detail. In the basal coil the outer hair cells are arranged in three regular rows, an arrangement which is in complete agreement with that in the corresponding region of other mammal. A few single sensory cells are missing from the regular mosaic of cells and in such places the phalangeal processes of Deiters' cells close to each other filling what otherwise would be a gap. There appears to be a certain irregularity of the pattern in the middle coil which is more pronounced in the upper part of the coil where the fourth row of hair cells is sometimes found. The irregularity of the third row may also be rather pronounced and its relationship with the fourth row may be so complex that it is sometimes difficult to tell which cell belongs to the third or to the fourth row. The latter tend to be disconnected from the sensory cells and may be missing in the first second

and third row. In the apical coil the irregularity of the third and fourth rows may be more pronounced. The fourth row is regularly seen, but the second and the third rows are often incomplete. Another type of irregularity seen occasionally in the middle and apical coils is the occurrence of a few single cells which are often disposed in the periphery of the reticular membrane thus forming something which resembles the beginning of a fifth row of cells. Retzius remarks that there is a wide range of variation in the pattern of sensory cells in different individuals. The inner hair cells form a single row of cells though a few supernumerary cells may occur close to and inward from the standard single row.

The principal features of the structure of the hair cells have long been known, but a considerable quantity of new information has been added by many electron microscopic studies in experimental animals during the last decade (Engström and Wersäll, 1953 a, 1958; Smith and Dempsey, 1957; Engström, 1960 b, 1961; Furuta, 1961; Spoendlin, 1966; Wersäll and Flock, 1961 and others). The outer hair cells are cylindrical in shape with the nucleus in the lower part of the cell. The upper cell-surface provided with a cuticle is suspended in an opening in the reticular membrane. The lower end is rounded and rests against a cup-shaped depression in the Deiters cells. A considerable part of the cell surface is in direct contact with the intercellular fluid.

The inner hair cells are pear-shaped, with a relatively large cell body. The cells apart from the upper surface which is provided with a cuticle are surrounded by supporting cells. The basal ends of both inner and outer hair cells are in contact with nerve endings. A striking feature in the human organ of Corti is the presence of large membrane-limited inclusions in the apical zone of the sensory cells, pillar cells, Hensen cells, Deiters cells and sulcus cells (Kimura, Schuknecht and Sando, 1964). These granules have the histochemical characteristics of lipofuscin (Ishii *et al.*, 1961).

The cuticular area of the upper free surface of the sensory cells is provided with sensory hairs, stereocilia arranged in a typical W-arrangement with the base of the W directed outwards i.e. towards the spiral ligament. Interest in the functional significance of the sensory hairs with respect to stimulation of the organ of Corti has made this the subject of several thorough ultrastructural investigations including those by Engström, Ades and Hawkins (1961), Kimura, Schuknecht and Sando (1964), Wersäll, Flock and Lundquist (1965), Kimura (1966), Spoendlin (1966) and Wersäll and Flock (1961). Kimura, Schuknecht and Sando (1964) have estimated the number of hairs on the surfaces of limited number of hair cells in the human cochlea. On the outer sensory cells the hairs were arranged in 6—parallel rows with total numbers ranging from 10—148 in the basal coil, and from 48—80 in the apical coil. On the inner sensory cell the hairs were arranged in 3 to 4 rows in a way from the number of hairs in the basal coil was about 48. As in most other adult mammals a basal body, but no kinocilium, is found on the sensory cells in the adult human cochlea.

The available information on the numbers of sensory hair cells in the cochlea of man dates from the latter part of the 19th century. Waldeyer (1842) estimated the number of outer hair cells at 18,000. Krause (1866) estimated 19,800; and Retzius (1881) 12,000. The same authors estimated the number of inner hair cells at 3,300, 3,630 and 3,500 respectively. No new information has appeared since.

Several investigators have made calculations of the length of the acoustic papilla. Retzius (1881) on the basis of measurements on three microdissected cochleas, indicated the average length to be 33.5 mm. Hardy (1938) made calculations from 68 temporal bones sectioned and graphically reconstructed according to the method of Guild (1921) and Crowe *et al.* (1934). She reported the average total length of the acoustic papillae to be 31.5 mm with a range of slightly more than 10 mm, the longest being 35.5 mm, the shortest 25.3 mm, a difference of about 40 per cent. Hardy found no difference that she considered significant between right and left ear, male or female, nor between races.

The surface of the organ of Corti is covered by a jelly-like filamentous structure, the *tectorial membrane*, which originates from the spiral limbus and extends over the hair cells to the Hensen cells. The longest hairs on each outer cell are in contact with the membrane (Kimura, 1966). The free border of the tectorial membrane is fringed, forming a network, the *Randfasernetz*, which, according to de Vries (1949) and Tonndorf, Duvall and Reneau (1964) is in contact with the Hensen cells.

The cochlea is innervated by both afferent and efferent nerve fibers. It is also supplied with a system of autonomic nerve fibers. The course of the nerve fibers innervating the cochlea is extremely complex and great problems are encountered in mapping and clarifying the cochlear innervation. The investigations in this field are numerous, some of the most exhaustive studies having been reported by Retzius (1881, 1891), Held (1891, 1906) & Ebner (1904), Cajal (1909-1911), Lorente de No (1926, 1933 a & b, 1937) and Fernandez (1951). Boeck (1951) has thoroughly reviewed this literature. More recent investigations have been made by Rasmussen (1953, 1960), Rossi and Cortesina (1962, 1963, 1965), Engstrom, Ades and Anderson (1966) and Spoendlin (1966).

The first order neurons of the *afferent nerve fibers* have their ganglion cell in the spiral ganglion. The bipolar ganglion cells are distributed throughout Rosenthal's canal in the modiolus. The peripheral dendrite ends as a series of small and sparsely-granulated afferent nerve endings at the hair cell in the organ of Corti. The nerve fibers are unmyelinated as they run within the organ of Corti, becoming myelinated only as they pass through the region of the lamina propria. The dendrites making contact with the inner hair cell have a mainly radial course, while the dendrites associated with the nerve endings on the outer hair cell have a spiral course of varying unknown distance in the outer spiral bundles, within the organ of Corti (Held, 1906; Lorente de No, 1937; Fernandez, 1951). The fibers from several afferent nerve

endings and from several outer hair cells are connected to a single dendrite. The pattern of innervation in the organ of Corti is extremely complex and is as yet far from clarification. Spoendlin (1966) estimated in the cat, that the majority of the afferent nerves end on inner hair cells, only about one tenth extending to the outer hair cells.

From the habenula perforata the myelinated dendrites form bundles which run in canals through the osseous spiral lamina before they reach the spiral ganglion. In the basal coil the course of the nerve bundles runs radially towards the modiolus but in the middle and apical coils, the bundles deviate obliquely basalwards to the spiral ganglion, because the latter is shorter than the organ of Corti and does not extend to the apex. The innervation density as measured by the concentration of ganglion cells, is greatest in the upper basal and lower middle coils. There is a definite decrease in density of innervation at the other end of the cochlea (Guld *et al.*, 1931; Wever 1949).

The axons of the ganglion cells pass centrally via small canals in the modiolus to the internal acoustic meatus where they converge to form the cochlear nerve. They terminate in synaptic contact with the cells of the cochlear nuclei in the medulla oblongata. The afferent nerve fibers from the organ of Corti have a tonotopic distribution in the spiral ganglion, in the cochlear nerve and in the cochlear nuclei (Cajal, 1909—1911; Lorente de Nó 1933a; Schuknecht and Woellner 1953, 1955; Sando 1965). The apical coil is represented in the center of the cochlear nerve. The fibers initially pass in a spiral around the cochlear axis, a tendency which continues even into the free course of the nerve. The lower coils are represented in the periphery and the fibers have a less tightly spiralling course in the nerve.

The average number of nerve fibers in the human acoustic nerve is calculated to be 31,000 (23,000—40,000) (A. T. Rasmussen 1940) and the fiber diameters vary from 1 to 10  $\mu$  (Engström and Rexed 1940; A. T. Rasmussen, 1940). Wever (1949) has calculated the average number of ganglion cells in the spiral ganglion to be 30,500.

The efferent innervation of the cochlea has its origin from the contralateral accessory olivary nucleus (G. L. Rasmussen, 1946, 1953) from the homolateral main superior olivary nucleus (G. L. Rasmussen, 1960) and from the reticular formation (at least in the rabbit) (Rossi and Cortesina 1960, 1963). The efferent bundle enters the cochlea in the olivo-cochlear anastomosis (Oort anastomosis) and runs in Rosenthal's canal, forming intraganglionic spiral bundles. These pass through the osseous spiral lamina in a spiral course. It ends as the granulated nerve endings on both inner and outer hair cells in the organ of Corti (Kurat 1963; Kimura and Wersall, 1963; Spoendlin and Gacek 1963; Smith and Rasmussen, 1963).

Rasmussen (1960) has calculated the number of fibers in the efferent bundle of the cat to be approximately 500. Frequent branching of efferent nerves in the osseous spiral lamina has been reported (Nomura and Schuknecht, 1963; Ishii, Murakami and Balogh, 1963) and the number of fibers in the habenula perforata is calculated to be at least ~ 80 (Kimura and Schuknecht, 1965).

Spoendlin (1966) estimated the number of efferent fibers crossing the tunnel of Corti in the cat, to be around 8000 and the number of granulated nerve endings about 40 000

In the human there are few studies on the distribution of the efferent innervation in the cochlea. Gacek (1961) reported spirally running fibers in the osseous spiral lamina as probably being of efferent nature. This description has been verified by aid of an acetylcholinesterase staining technique (Nomura and Schuknecht 1965; Nomura and Kurihara 1967 and Ishii Murakami and Balogh, 1967). In the basal coil the spiral fascicles were thin and numerous near the base but they gradually thickened and diminished in number towards the middle turn. In addition to the spiral fibers, Ishii Murakami and Balogh (1967) found fine radial fibers with acetylcholinesterase activity. In the basal coil these fibers seemed to reach the habenula perforata directly without a spiral course. In the cochlear nerve there were also found scattered fine fibers with acetylcholinesterase activity. This observation coincides with that of Gacek, Nomura and Balogh (1965) in the cat.

The extensive literature regarding the *autonomic innervation* of the cochlea includes the publications by Cajal (1909—1911), Lorente de No (1926, 1933), Agazzi (1945) and Andrzejewski (1955, 1956). During the last years the Falek—Hillarp histochemical method for the detection of catecholamine has been applied for the study of the cochlea (Terayama, Holz and Beck, 1965, 1966; Spoendlin and Lichtensteiger 1966, 1967). More thorough reviews of the pertinent literature are found in the last mentioned papers.

It is suggested that the sympathetic innervation of the inner ear is derived from postganglionic fibers of the inferior cervical stellate ganglion or from the superior cervical ganglion (Lorente de No 1936; Terayama, Holz and Beck 1966; Spoendlin and Lichtensteiger 1967) or has its origin from the central nervous system (Andrzejewski 1955). The sympathetic nerve fibers are described to follow the vessels in the modiolus and the osseous spiral lamina but the small vessels in the cochlear duct is considered to be without autonomic innervation (Lorente de No 1937, Smith 1951, 1957; Engstrom, Sjostrand and Spoendlin 1955; Terayama, Holz and Beck, 1966; Spoendlin and Lichtensteiger 1967). Engstrom, Ades and Anderson (1966) mentioned the possibility that certain fine nerve fibers within the organ of Corti may be autonomic.

## D THE COCHLEA IN OLD AGE AND THE PATHOLOGICALLY ALTERED COCHLEA

### 1 The cochlea in old age

The term *presbycusis* is defined as any change in hearing associated with the ageing process (Glorig and Davis, 1961; Glorig and Nixon 1969). However great difficulties are encountered in distinguishing cases of true presbycusis from cases in which extraneous factors have contributed to the onset of deafness in old age. These problems are emphasized by the investiga-

tions of Rosen and collaborators (1961-1964) on the Mabaans, members of an isolated Sudanese tribe who live in a very quiet environment and have never been exposed to the noise of an urbanized community. When Rosen compared the hearing of members of this tribe with that of corresponding age groups in America, Germany, and Egypt he found their hearing to be substantially more acute in the older age groups. Glorig and Nivon (1960) considered noise to be a critical factor in the difference in hearing in an unpopulated area of comparable age group.

Bergman (1966) who took part in the investigation of the Mabaans, has compared the best hearers (top 10%) in the U.S. with those of the Mabaans and found no significant difference with age though the poorest hearers (bottom 10%) in the American studies show more rapid decrement in hearing with ageing than the poorest of the Mabaans. Bergman concludes that it appears from these data that a major explanation of the stability reported for the Mabaans in hearing thresholds with ageing is found in their marked population homogeneity.

In an investigation on the hearing of the Todas belonging to an isolated tribe in India, who like the Mabaans, live in a very quiet environment, it was found that these people also showed better hearing in old age than people of the civilized western world (Japur and Patt, 1964). These two tribes are widely separated from each other and are completely isolated, hence it is highly improbable that a common genetic factor could account for the good hearing. Both tribes have low cholesterol levels in the blood, a low incidence of cardiovascular disease, and no rise in blood pressure with ageing. Any one of these factors may have some bearing upon the preservation of good hearing in old age, and this would tend to be supported by the study of Rosen and Olm (1965) who found better high-frequency hearing among young people in a population with low rate of coronary heart disease and atherosclerosis, and low blood cholesterol, than among young people in a population which is hypercholesterolaemic and atherosclerotic and has a high incidence of coronary heart disease.

There is, as yet, but a incomplete understanding of the reason why the hearing in old persons is better preserved in some populations than in other, but one thing that quite clear is that the term *presbycusis* has included hitherto many cases in which the hearing loss has been due not only to ageing itself but also to other factors.

Examining the literature fails to provide us with any worthwhile picture of the histopathology of true presbycusis. It has been common to approach this problem by assuming that elderly hard-of-hearing people suffer from presbycusis and to describe the inner ear with that assumption in mind even though other pathological conditions may have been superimposed. This is an approach well calculated to obscure the issues. Hence a rich array of histological changes have been linked to the clinical condition of presbycusis. The range of such changes indicated by the following samples.

Atroph of the organ of Corti



- b Degeneration of the spiral ganglion and the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina
- c Changes in the central nervous system
- d Changes in the blood vessels
- e Mechanical causes due to loss of elasticity of tissues in the cochlea and middle ear

Finally there are many instances, in the histological investigations of aged and pathologically altered human cochleas in which the results are in doubt because of apparent errors of judgment often based on technical inadequacy of the preparations that is in which the illustrations and descriptions indicate that the author has failed to avoid the great difficulties inherent in the histological study of the human cochlea

#### a *Atrophy of the organ of Corti*

In their study of presbycusis v Fleandt and Saxén (1937) described in 19 out of 33 cases a pronounced atrophy of the organ of Corti as well as of other epithelial structures in the cochlear duct. Since they found the pronounced changes in the blood vessels of the cochlea they called this type of degeneration angiosclerotic degeneration of the inner ear. The changes in the organ of Corti were found to be spread diffusely throughout all coils of the cochlea. The organ of Corti was flattened and deformed, the sensory cells were reduced in number and the supporting cells were twisted and fragmented. In the most advanced cases a thin single layer of epithelium had replaced the organ of Corti. This condition of the organ of Corti bears a close resemblance to Wittmaack's neuropitheldegeneration and several more recent reports of similar findings (Fleischer 1956; Jørgensen 1964; and Hansen and Reske-Nielsen, 1965). Fleischer (1956) and Jørgensen (1964) were unable to correlate these changes with increasing age. The possibility that the compression and flattening of the organ of Corti is an artefact has been proposed in several papers (Lange 1937; Fernandez, 1958; Hansen and Reske-Nielsen 1965; and others).

Degeneration in the basal coil of the organ of Corti in old age is described in several reports. In 10 out of 26 cases Falinyi (1931) found an atrophy of the organ of Corti in the lower basal coil but a correlation with increasing age was not clearly established.

Crowe, Guild and Polvogt (1934) in their study on the pathology of high tone deafness identified a group of cases characterized by an abrupt high tone hearing loss in which the most striking change was an atrophy of the organ of Corti in the lower basal coil. The degenerative process extended a high as 10 mm from the basal end and in some cases there was also an atrophy of the nerves within the corresponding region of the osseous spiral lamina. The average age in this group was 47 years and the degenerative changes did not show any clear tendency to increase with increasing age.

Fleischer (1956) reported a study of 100 temporal bones with a uniform distribution from the first to the ninth decade of life. Amongst these in four

elderly subjects degenerative changes in the organ of Corti could not be ruled out as the structural correlate to presbycusis.

Schuknecht (1961) has classified presbycusis into four types. One of these sensory presbycusis, is characterized by an atrophy of the organ of Corti and nerves in the basal end of the cochlea. The change usually begins in middle age and progresses slowly. Even at advanced age the lesion is usually limited to a few millimeters of the basal end of the cochlea. Schuknecht suggested that the primary locus of degeneration may be in the supporting cells of the organ of Corti and that the degeneration of the nerves may be a secondary phenomenon. This reasoning is based upon his own earlier finding that experimentally induced damage to hair cells produces no nerve degeneration unless the damage is so severe as to involve deterioration of the supporting cells (Schuknecht 1953 b). He indicated that this type of presbycusis shows an abrupt high-tone hearing loss.

The occurrence of a normal population of sensory cells in the organ of Corti in old age is not infrequently reported. However, Bredberg (1961) indicated that in old age significant sensory cell losses occur throughout all coils of the cochlea. The most pronounced loss of sensory cells occurs in the basal coil; however, degeneration of sensory cells in the apical coil may often be found as well. These findings will be presented and then roughly discussed in a later chapter of the present publication.

#### *ii Degeneration of the spiral ganglion and nerves in the osseous spiral lamina*

The most constant histopathological finding in the cochlea in old age is an atrophy of the spiral ganglion and the nerves of the osseous spiral lamina in the basal coil (Habermann 1891, Bruhl 1905, Manasse 1906, Fabinyi, 1931, Flandt and Sørensen 1933, Fleische 1936, Schuknecht, 1955, 1964, Jorgensen, 1964, Hansen and Reske-Nielsen, 1963, and Mahliama, 1961). The degenerative changes are most pronounced at the basal end and diminish towards the apex. The organ of Corti is described as normal or near-normal in several reports (Fabinyi 1931, Crowe, Guild and Polvogt, 1934, Flandt and Sørensen, 1937, and Schuknecht, 1955, 1964).

In 4 out of 46 temporal bones with a gradual high-tone loss, Crowe, Guild and Polvogt (1934) found, in the basal coil, a partial atrophy of the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina. The nerve atrophy extended beyond the 10 mm level in all but one case, while the organ of Corti showed lesions limited to the lower — 3 mm of the basal turn. Crowe, Guild and Polvogt found it apparent that in general a relationship exists between extent of nerve atrophy in the basal turn and the degree of high-tone hearing loss.

In old guinea pigs (2—4 years) a degeneration of the spiral ganglion in the peripheral coils has been described (Covell and Rogers 1957).

Schuknecht (1955, 1961) discussed the degeneration of the spiral ganglion in the basal coil and he regarded it as part of the general reduction of neurons in the central nervous system which begins as early as the third decade of life. Likewise there is some degeneration in the central and auditory pathways.

Schuknecht called this type of hearing loss of old age "neural presbycusis" and he considered that it meets the audiological criterion of presbycusis which Pestalozza and Shore (1955) Goetzinger *et al.* (1961) and Hinchcliffe (1962) have described. Speech discrimination scores in such cases are often low without a parallel loss in pure tone thresholds—a condition which has been termed "phonemic regression" by Gaeth (1918).

Sereer and Krmpotic (1958) claimed that with advancing age hyperostotic deposits could develop at the fundus of the internal auditory meatus. These deposits would narrow the openings for the nerves and thus exert a continuous pressure on the nerve fibers causing atrophy. Degeneration of the spiral ganglion cells is assumed to occur secondary to that atrophy.

### c. *Changes in the central nervous system*

For many years degenerative changes in the central nervous system have been regarded as one of the possible ways to account for presbycusis, a view which has been based on indirect evidence. Degenerative changes in the central auditory pathways and centers have been suggested in cases where the hearing loss could not be explained at a cochlear level (Sporleder 1899; Crowe, Guild and Polvogt 1933; Fieandt and Saxen 1937; and Schuknecht, 1955, 1961). Several clues to the localization of different forms of hearing defect have been given by audiological methods and it is generally accepted that some of these permit one to place the causative lesion central to the cochlea (Pestalozza and Shore 1955; Boen 1958; Goetzinger *et al.*, 1961; Hinchcliffe 1962; and others).

Histopathological evidence which supports an hypothesis of a central causation of presbycusis has been gradually accumulating during recent years. Brody (1955) found that the cells in the superior temporal gyrus (the anatomical location of the auditory cortical projection area) are reduced by half during the period from 20 years to 65 years of age. Matakier (1958) has described degenerative changes in the ganglion cells of the superior olivary complex in ageing individuals. Kirikae, Sato and Shintara (1961) studied 11 brains selected at random from aged people (68—85 years) and compared the findings with those in the brain of 15 young adults (20—30 years). The older group showed uniform atrophy and degeneration of ganglion cells in the ventral cochlear nucleus and the medial geniculate body and various degrees of degeneration in cells distributed amongst relatively normal cells in the superior olivary nucleus and the inferior colliculus.

Hansen and Reske-Nielsen (1965) have studied the central auditory pathway and temporal bones in 12 elderly subjects of whom 10 were over 80 years of age. The central auditory pathway showed severe degeneration. The cochlea showed slight to moderate loss of spiral ganglion cells in the basal coil and in addition a flattening of the organ of Corti throughout the coil, the latter finding being regarded as mainly due to artefact. The authors believed that the slight hearing loss could be explained by the cochlear finding.

but they assumed that the hearing loss for low tones was exclusively central in origin.

Makishima (1961) reported two cases with degenerations in the auditory cortex of the temporal lobe, the central cochlear nucleus and the distal part of the VIIIth nerve.

#### d. Changes in the blood vessels

Changes in the blood vessels of the cochlea have been reported to be correlated with presbycusis. Fabinyi (1931) found a relationship between high tone loss and the degree of cerebral atherosclerosis with changes in the vessel of the internal acoustic meatus. Von Freundt and Saxen (1931) described a pronounced angiosclerosis in the cochlear vessels as being one of the major causes of presbycusis. They found a similar change in the vessels of the kidney but not at the base of the skull.

Jorgensen (1961) reported a clear relationship between PAS-positive thickening in the cochlear capillary walls and increasing age with arteriosclerosis especially in the blood vessels at the base of the skull.

A correlation has not been found between changes in the stria vascularis and degeneration in the organ of Corti or spiral ganglion (Fabinyi 1931; Crowe, Guild and Polvogt 1934; Guild 1935; Jorgensen 1961; Schuknecht 1955, 1961).

Schuknecht (1961) described one type of presbycusis, metabolic presbycusis, where the histopathological finding was of a partial atrophy of the stria vascularis in the apical half of the cochlea with a normal-appearing organ of Corti and spiral ganglion. The hearing loss in these cases should be almost equal to all frequencies and is considered by the author to be due to defects in the physical and chemical processes by which energy is produced in the stria vascularis.

#### e. Mechanical causes due to loss of elasticity of tissues in the cochlea and middle ear

Mayer (1919) described a thickening and hyalinization of the basilar membrane as a cause of presbycusis. These changes were most evident in the basal coil where deposits of calcium salts sometimes appeared. Mayer suggested that in old age there occurs a stiffening of the basilar membrane analogous to the loss of elasticity in the lens in cases of presbyopia.

Cullen and Rogers (1951) and Pestalozza *et al.* (1951) observed in old guinea pigs a reduction of the cochlear microphonic which was greater than they could attribute to the changes in the organ of Corti, and they suggested that a significant conductive hearing loss might explain this discrepancy.

Gilrig and Davis (1961) described a form of progressive high tone conductive hearing loss which begins to develop during middle life. They suggested that this conductive presbycusis must be attributed to a lesion in the middle ear. They also suggested, as an explanation of presbycusis, an inner

ear conductive impairment related to physical change in certain tissues of the cochlear partition. A high tone conductive hearing loss was also reported in the Mabaans by Rosen *et al* (1964). Schuknecht (1964) supported the hypothesis of inner ear conductive hearing loss. It constitutes one of his four types of presbycusis and he names it "mechanical presbycusis".

## 2 Cochlear pathology not related to aging

There are numerous published reports on the pathologically altered human cochlea. The following paragraphs present a brief survey of cochlear pathology in man which does not attempt to give a full review of all the literature.

It is well established that *intense acoustic stimuli, skull trauma and surgical manipulations of the auditory ossicles* may result in a characteristic hearing loss which in mild cases, manifests itself as a loss in threshold sensitivity for pure tones at a frequency around 4000 cps. More severe injury extends the spectrum of hearing loss to include higher and lower frequencies, but the maximum hearing loss is usually in the 4000 cps region. Many reports have appeared of the rough investigations into the structural functional physiological and biochemical changes in the inner ear resulting from exposure to noise of experimental animals (Lurie, Davis and Hawkins 1944; Ruedi and Furrer 1946; Lindquist, Neff and Schuknecht 1954; Schuknecht and Davidson, 1956; Ruedi 1957; Koide *et al.*, 1960; Perlman and Kimura 1962 and others).

Our knowledge of structural changes in the human cochlea secondary to acoustic trauma is very sparse. The first report to be found in the literature was made by Habermann (1890) who described the cochleas of a blacksmith whose occupation had exposed him to high intensity noise during his working life. The most extensive damage was found in the upper part of the lower basal coil where the organ of Corti, the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina and the spiral ganglion were all completely degenerated. Some years later Habermann (1906) described five cases in which atrophy of the organ of Corti and the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina of the lower basal coil was supposed to have occurred as a result of noise damage. Guild *et al* (1931) described a case in which the audiogram showed 4000 cps dip and histological examination revealed a circumscribed partial-to-total degeneration of outer hair cells in a region 6.8—10 mm from the basal end of the cochlea. The nerves and spiral ganglion were normal.

The abrupt high-tone loss as described by Crowe, Guild and Plovgt (1931) is considered to be closely related to the 4000 cps dip (Glorig and Davis 1961). Histopathologically the cases of abrupt high-tone loss were reported to be characterized by an atrophy of the organ of Corti sometimes extending as far as 10 mm from the basal end of the cochlea. This atrophy often showed a patchy distribution with a corresponding degeneration of the nerves (Crowe *et al.*, 1931). However in 51 cochleas from the collection of temporal bones at John Hopkin Hospital Wever (1947) was unable to

correlate the 4000 cps d p with any localized structural change in the cochlea.

The results showed a somewhat higher degree of pathology of inner ear structures in cases in which large d p were present, but no region was identified as especially responsible for the local depression.

In agreement with Habermann (1890) and Guild *et al* (1931) Igarashi, Schuknecht and Myers (1964) described, in three cases, a localized degeneration in the basal coil following noise exposure and skull trauma. In two of these cases the hearing loss was documented with audiograms showing characteristic high tone losses, most severe at 4000 cps. The lesions, 5—12 mm in width, consisted of a partial degeneration of outer hair cells, the maximum injury occurring in the 10 to 12 mm region of the cochlea. The nerves in the osseous spiral lamina and the spiral ganglion cells showed no damage in corresponding regions.

A considerable number of chemicals and drugs have been shown to have toxic effects on the ear. From animal experiments the structural damage caused by some of these drugs is fairly well known. These studies include reports on the toxic effects of arsenic and mercury combinations, quinacrine salicylates and tobacco poisoning.

Several antibiotics of the streptomycin group, whilst otherwise of clinical value, have the unfortunate side-effect of causing severe damage to the inner ear. These antibiotics include streptomycin, dihydrostreptomycin, kanamycin and neomycin. There are numerous reports regarding the ototoxic effects of these antibiotics in animals. Review of the literature are to be found in publications by Tyberghin (1964) and Kohlenstein (1965).

There are few reports regarding structural changes in the human inner ear following the administration of drugs. Graf (1951) described basal degeneration of cochlear hair cells and extensive destruction of vestibular epithelium as an effect of streptomycin therapy for cases of tuberculous meningitis. The effects of ototoxic damage caused in man by kanamycin have been reported as degenerative changes in the organ of Corti, most severe in the basal coil (Benitez, Schuknecht and Brandenburg, 1962; Jørgensen and Schmidt, 1964). The mildest change was a loss of outer hair cells, followed progressively by

loss of inner hair cells and finally of supporting cells. In one subject with neomycin induced deafness, the degenerative changes were found to be most severe in both apex and base, the inner hair cells being the most extensively damaged (Lindsay, Proctor and Work, 1960). In neither the kanamycin nor the neomycin induced lesions of the human ear were there found any histological changes in the vestibular epithelium. The spiral ganglion was reported to be normal in proportion in all except one case (Jørgensen and Schmidt, 1964). In this case however the degeneration might well have been due to previous noise exposure as manifested in the audiogram as a high tone hearing loss.

Many drugs given to pregnant women may have damaging effects upon the fetus—the newborn child. Some of these drugs have an ototoxic effect and histological reports of the structural changes of the inner ear include those

caused by thalidomide (Michlke 1961; Rosendal 1965) and chloroquine phosphate (Lindsay 1967).

Inner ear pathology following *viral labyrinthitis* has been reported in relatively few instances to date. A varying degree of degeneration in the cochlear structures has been attributed to measles (morbilli) (Nager 190 Lindsay and Hemenway 1961) mumps (Lindsay Davey and Ward 1960) infection of the upper respiratory tract (Lindsay 1967) and sudden deafness, considered to be of viral etiology (Schuknecht *et al.*, 1962). The occurrence of congenital deafness due to maternal rubella is well known and there are some reports which describe the histopathology of the inner ear in fetuses and children in such cases. Lindsay *et al.* (1963) and Keleman (1966) have reported cases and reviewed the literature.

Since the first description of the pathology of *Ménière's disease* by Hallpike and Cairns (1938) there has been a gradual increase in the number of reports concerning the pathology of this disease (Rollin 1940 Lindsay 1911 1960 Dix Hallpike and Hood 1948; Schuknecht 1953 b Lawrence and McCabe 1959; Kristensen 1961 Schuknecht, Benitez and Beekhuis, 1962 Hansen and Reske-Nielsen 1961 Altman and Kornfeld 1965 Lindsay Kohut and Sclarra 1967). A finding almost invariably reported has been of hydrops of the endolymphatic spaces in varying degrees. Thus hydrops may be found in the cochlear duct alone most markedly in the apical coil or it may extend to include the saccule and utricle. Ruptures of Reissner's membrane and ruptures or herniations of the walls of the saccule and the utricle have also been described.

In spite of hearing loss and recruitment, the organ of Corti has been reported to be morphologically normal in many cases of *Ménière's disease* (Lindsay 1911 1960 Schuknecht 1953 b Schuknecht Benitez and Beekhuis 1962; Hansen and Reske-Nielsen 1961; Lindsay Kohut and Sclarra 1967). In the more advanced cases, as defined by Schuknecht Benitez and Beekhuis (1967) the organ of Corti has been described as pathological (Hallpike and Cairns 1938; Dix Hallpike and Hood 1948 Lindsay and v Schulten 1958 Kristensen 1961 Lindsay Kohut and Sclarra 1967). Atrophy of the spiral ganglion and the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina has been reported in a few cases (Lindsay and v Schulten 1958 Kristensen 1961).

In *Ménière's disease* the vestibular sensory epithelium and ganglion have been found to be morphologically normal by light microscopy; however Schuknecht Benitez and Beekhuis (1967) have described local degeneration of sensory cell in the macula sacculi in one case. Electron microscope studies have been made on the vestibular epithelium in cases with *Ménière's disease* (Petrantoni and Iurat 1960; Litton and Lawrence 1961 Friedmann *et al.*, 1963 Ireland and Farkhad 1963 Friedmann Cawthorne and Bird 1967) but the evaluation of the findings is difficult because of technical difficulties and the fact that so far no study of normal ultra structure of human vestibular epithelium is available for comparison.

### III MATERIAL

#### A PRENATAL

The basic material consisted of 58 cochleas from 9 fetuses; however an additional 6 cochleas from 4 stillborn premature infants were also studied. All the fetuses were obtained by transabdominal operations for legal abortions. The age in weeks or lunar months of each fetus was calculated from the first day of the last normal menstruation. In 15 instances the standing (crown heel) length was measured and used for estimation of age according to Hamilton, Boyd and Mossman (196-). The age distribution is shown in Fig. 2. The sex of the fetuses was not noted.

#### B POSTNATAL

The total material available included 119 cochleas from 4 subjects of which 53 were male and 21 female. Their age distribution is shown in Fig. 3. A large number of the cochleas was used primarily for the development and improvement of the techniques of preparation; however many of these cochleas were also useful for other kinds of morphological study. Application of the final, perfected methodology was possible in 41 cochleas from 2 subjects — 1 male and 5 female, whose age distribution is indicated in Fig. 3. It is this group which provides the majority of data for this study. In 16 cases (8 cochleas) all males, hearing tests were obtained prior to death.

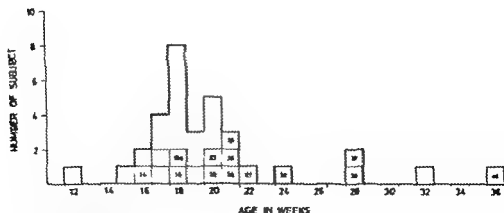


Fig. 2. Age distribution of the fetal and premature material, consisting of 53 subjects. The small figures within the diagram represent the length (crown heel) of the fetuses and premature infants from whom such material was obtainable. Subjects of 28 weeks or over are premature infants.



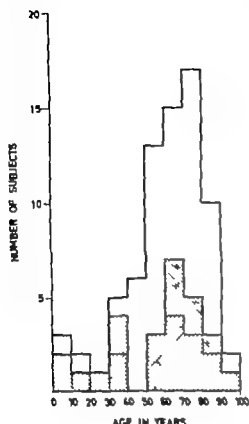


Fig. 3. Age distribution of the postnatal material of 4 subjects. The striped and cross-hatched areas represent the 27 subjects whose cochleas were studied in detail and systematic way. 16 of these (represented by the cross-hatched area) hearing test were available. The plain areas represent the material used for development of the technique and for the morphological studies.

### C. DISCUSSION

The determination of the age of the fetuses presents a certain problem inasmuch as the time between onset of last menstruation and conception varies considerably. Confidence in the age determination is increased if the size of the fetus is known. In the present instance length measurements could be obtained from 15 but not from the remaining 14 of the fetuses for reasons beyond the control of the author.

The age distribution of the fetuses is somewhat uneven with 2 falling between 15 and 22 weeks fetal age while only one was younger (12 weeks, 9 cm) and one older (21 weeks, 31 cm) as indicated in Fig. 4. The reason for this is of course related to the generally fortuitous character of human material which can only be obtained after death. All of the fetuses were obtained at transabdominal operation for termination of pregnancy, most of which are done between the 16th and 30th weeks. Fetuses from early spontaneous or induced abortion were found to be macerated and showed such profound postmortem deterioration as to be useless for our purposes. Actually it was not the aim of this investigation to present a complete account of all aspects of cochlear development but rather to establish the number and pattern of sensory cells in the fetus as a background for studies in the young and the adult human cochlea.

The age distribution of the cochleas from young and adult postnatal subjects was also quite uneven the basic reason being of course the low mortality rate in childhood and adolescence. The volume of material is therefore weighted toward the middle to late decades of life. It is only by a continuation of such a study as this over many years that the informational gaps in the younger age groups could be filled.

Still another limitation of the material appears when we try to correlate hearing data with the morphological status of the cochlea. Obviously only those subjects on whom ante mortem hearing tests have been obtained are of full value for this purpose. The initial aim of this study was to determine whether or not the surface specimen technique (Engstrom, Ades and Anderson 1966) could be adapted to the study of the human cochlea. It soon became apparent that this was, indeed, quite feasible and as soon as the method had developed into a working routine the choice of subjects began to incline toward those whose hearing had been tested. Thus out of a total of 119 ears 41 were studied systematically in detail including 8 whose ante mortem hearing status had been assessed. The number of subjects from whom such data can be assembled is determined purely by time and organization. Inasmuch as the primary purpose was to describe general principles in the technique of study and in the histopathology of the organ of Corti and associated nerves rather than to give a statistical analysis of the findings on a large number of tested ears, the number of cochleas studied was restricted.

The preponderance of males (10 out of 21 cases) is explained mainly by the fact that most of the patients whose hearing was tested suffered from pulmonary carcinoma a disease which occurs more frequently among males than among females. No available tested ear was excluded. The untested subjects were chosen according to age so as to make the age distribution as even as possible.

## IV METHODS

### A SURFACE SPECIMEN TECHNIQUE

The basic method used for the anatomical study of the cochlea was the surface specimen technique developed by Engstrom and co-workers (1962, 1964, 1966). A full description of this method is given in the monograph by Engstrom, Ades and Andersson (1966). Brief descriptions of the application of this technique to human subjects are found in papers by Bredberg, Engstrom and Ades, 1965 and Bredberg, 1967. More detailed discussion of the method used in humans will be found in the following paragraphs.

*The young and the adult cochlea.* Within 10 hours of a patient's death the posterior half of the tympanic membrane was reflected forwards via an endaural approach through the outer ear canal, thus exposing the posterior part of the middle ear cavity. In order to expose the oval window region, it was sometimes necessary to widen the postero-superior wall of the deep bony canal with a curet. The incudo-stapedial joint was cut and the incus pushed aside to widen the operative field. After cutting the tendon of the stapedius muscle the stapes was extracted. The round window membrane was then perforated and partly removed with the aid of a small hook. When perforating the round window membrane the greatest care was taken to avoid damage to the most basal part of the organ of Corti and osseous spiral lamina. Posteriorly the round window membrane is separated from the osseous spiral lamina and the basilar membrane by a distance of only a few tenths of a millimeter. The hook used for perforating the membrane was directed forwards, and parallel to the surface of the promontorial wall, thus avoiding deep penetration of the scala tympani. Using a glass micro-pipette the fixative (ice-cold veronal buffered 1.5% osmic acid solution) was injected through the round window. This injection was made very carefully to minimize pressure changes within the cochlea. When the injection began movement of the fluid surface in the oval window was easily seen, indicating a communication through the cochlea. The fixative thus perfused the cochlea through the scala tympani to the helicotrema and through the scala vestibuli to the vestibule. The middle ear was filled up via the oval window during the injection. With another micro-pipette the fixative was removed from the middle ear and the injection procedure was repeated 3 to 6 times with 0.5 to 1 ml of fixative each time. The middle ear was then filled with filter paper soaked with fixative and the ear canal sealed off with melted wax, which formed a tight plug as it congealed, preventing leakage of the fixative. The whole procedure for exploring the middle ear and perfusing the cochlea was carried out under an operating microscope.

Several cochleae were fixed systematically at various time intervals after death in order to determine to what extent post-mortem changes influenced the preservation of surface specimen. After 10 hours the reticular membrane

will show good preservation, the pattern of the cells being distinct and clearly visible in light microscopy. Good results could sometimes be obtained in cochleae fixed after 15 hours or even later but in others the structures within the organ of Corti were not distinct, and evaluation of the pattern of the reticular membrane was difficult; however the reticular membrane seems to be more resistant to post mortem changes than other elements of the organ of Corti. The routine finally decided upon was to hold the post mortem fixation within 10 hours for surface preparations.

The fixation was left in the labyrinth until an autopsy could be performed. This was usually carried out within one or two days. The petrous portion of the temporal bone was removed from the skull with the aid of a chisel or a bone saw carefully avoiding damage to the promontorial wall and the labyrinth. Immediately after removal of the petrous portion of the temporal bone the fixative was washed away by perfusing the labyrinth with physiological saline solution. During this procedure the bone around the labyrinth was trimmed with a strong bone-cutting forceps and, with the specimen immersed in 0% alcohol, the bony capsule around the cochlea was further thinned with dental diamond discs and diamond burs until a thin bony shell was left. The osmic acid fixation darkens the membranous labyrinth, making it easily visible through the bony shell. From this point on the membranous labyrinth can be exposed under direct visual control.

With the aid of fine needles, hooks and small watchmakers forceps the remaining bony shell was broken and removed. Exposure of the membranous cochlea was always started at the apex, and then progressively extended towards the base. Careful dissection at this stage made it possible to leave intact the spiral ligament and associated basilar and Reissner membranes. It is important to leave the cochlear duct unopened as long as possible because of the risk of contamination with bone dust. In the apical and middle coils it is usually easy to remove the bony shell without damaging the cochlear duct; however in the basal coils, and especially in its most basal portion, where the basilar membrane is very narrow and where a secondary osseous spiral lamina is found, it is often best to leave the bony shell below the level of the basilar membrane which otherwise might rupture in an uncontrolled manner and thus damage the organ of Corti.

The spiral ligament, the stria vascularis and the Reissner membrane were removed completely, exposing the organ of Corti and the osseous spiral lamina (Figs 4 and 5). At this point macroscopic inspection of the organ of Corti as well as of the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina throughout all coils becomes possible, and photographs were taken of the cochlea—a procedure which is described in a later paragraph of this chapter. It is practical at this stage to immerse the cochlea in 0% alcohol in the refrigerator if it is not possible for any reason to continue the dissection. The final dissection may then be done at a later time. In such a case the specimen is brought into distilled water by progressive dilution.

With the aid of a watchmakers forceps the tectorial membrane was stripped



Fig. 4. Adult human cochlea showing the modiolus with the osseous spiral lamina and myelinated nerve bundles. The bony capsule, the spiral ligament and Reissner membrane have been removed. The basal end of the osseous spiral lamina is seen at the right and the lower basal coil tends to the left side of the photograph. Also at the middle and spiral coil is exposed. The cochlear aqueduct (arrow) is shown being opened. (Magnification 12).

of all coil (often in one piece) and mounted on a slide in glycerine for further study under the phase contrast microscope. The organ of Corti and associated osseous spiral lamina were cut in a radial direction at 10 defined levels of the cochlea using a sharp pair of eye scissors. The organ of Corti was thus divided into 11 separate segments which were removed by fracturing the osseous spiral lamina close to the modiolus. The specimens were mounted in glycerine on a glass slide with the hair bearing surface of the organ of Corti upward. A cover-glass was placed over the specimens and these were studied by phase contrast or conventional light microscopy.

The division of the organ of Corti into 11 segments was done in a standardized manner. The cochlea was viewed from above under the preparation microscope. The direction of the modiolus was adjusted in the vertical plane in such a way that the helicotrema was projected in the center of the two apical coils (Figs. 5 and 6). Thus the cochlea is seen projected on to a plane perpendicular to the cochlear axis. In this way every cochlea could be placed in a standardized position. Into one eyepiece of the microscope was placed a glass plate designed as a protractor measuring 360 degrees. The cochlea was placed so that the center of the protractor was projected over the center of the helicotrema and the zero-line was a tangent to the basal end of the osseous spiral lamina. The angle between the zero-line and a line connecting

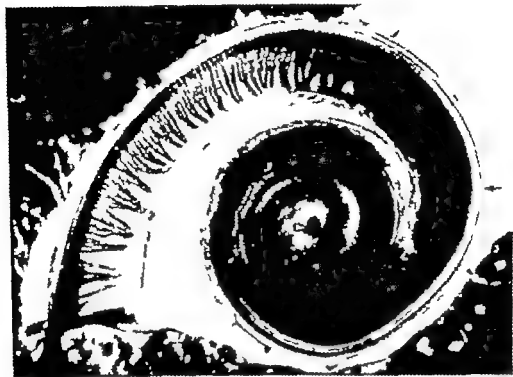


Fig. 5 Human cochlea seen from boy. Dilated nerve bundles within the osseous spiral lamina are seen. (1) the lower basal coil. The organ of Corti (black arrow) is seen lying at the peripheral margin of the osseous spiral lamina. The heliostrema is indicated with white arrow (Magnification 13)

a point on the organ of Corti and the heliostrema represents the angle measurement at of that particular point. Thus half a coil from the basal end corresponds to  $180^\circ$ , one coil to  $360^\circ$  and two coils to  $720^\circ$  (see Fig. 6).

The cuts separating the organ of Corti into 11 pieces were made at the following angles:  $15^\circ$ ,  $30^\circ$ ,  $60^\circ$ ,  $90^\circ$ ,  $135^\circ$ ,  $180^\circ$ ,  $225^\circ$ ,  $360^\circ$ ,  $510^\circ$  and  $720^\circ$ . In 15 cochleae the actual distance in mm from the basal end at the different angles was measured (Table 1). The average distance from the basal end for each angle is shown in Fig. 6. The average length of the segments was about 2 mm in the lower basal coil ( $0-180^\circ$ ) increasing to about 4 mm in high coils.

**Preparation of cochleae.** As soon as possible after removal of the fetal skull was opened and the dura freed from the temporal bone. The labyrinth was dissected free of the cochlea, pinned at the apex and the tissues extracted thus allowing perfusion to perfuse the entire cochlea. The cochlea was kept in fixative for one to two hours when the capsule was removed with a scalpel and forceps and hooks thus exposing the cochlear duct. The further

(1) Owing to technical errors the angle of  $30^\circ$  has been incorrectly made to correspond to a distance of 5 mm instead of 1.5 mm from the basal end.

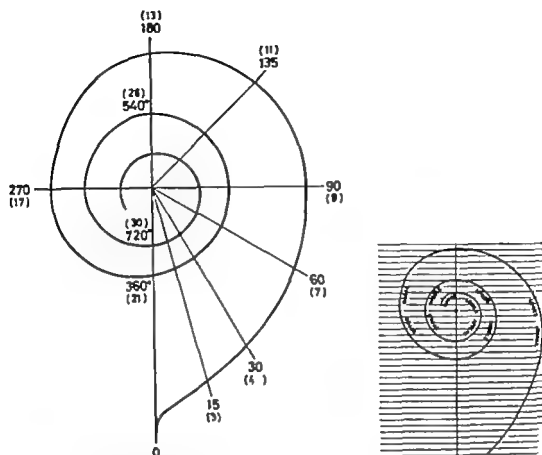


Fig. 6 (Left) Drawn based on photograph of the cochlea seen from below (Fig. 5). The spirally curved line represents the spiral of Corti. This figure shows the locations of the different spiral measurements along the spiral of Corti. For each of these measurements the range distance from the basal end of the cochlea (1 mm) is indicated between brackets. A distance of half coil from the basal end represents 180 of one coil 360 of one and half coil 540 and of two coils 720.

(Right) Graphic reconstruction of the cochlea made from serial sectioning (Redrawn from Hildy 1938, *Am. J. Anat.* 6, 291-311). This figure illustrates the differences in interpretation of the term coil used in the sectioning method and in the present study. Note that the line indicating the coil 1 part lies at some distance from the basal end of the cochlea. Compare this with the line in the left hand drawing which is placed at reference from the basal extremity.

preparation was carried out by the procedure used for the young and the adult cochlea. The fixative used in most fetuses was ice-cold veronal buffered 1.5% formalin solution.

In a few cochlea a paraffin staining method was used. This method was described by Maillat (1963) and modified by Engstrom and Kolonen (1965) for the study of the cochlea. The fixation-staining fluid consisted of two parts: a 1% iron-haematoxylin acid solution and a zinc iodide solution. For detailed information regarding the use of this method see Kolonen (1966) and Engstrom and Nilsson-Anderson (1966). The mode of preparation of the slides was as described above, with the addition that the

Table 1. Different ways of defining position along the organ of Corti. Measurements on 15 adult cochleas.

Distance from the basal end of the Cochlea

Angular measurement	Millimetre		Percentage of total length	
	Average	Range	Average	Range
15	3.1	1—4.8	8.9	1—16.8
30	4.4	3.3—5.2	12.8	11.0—14.2
60	6	5.8—7	19.8	17.6—21.3
90	8	6.8—9	25.1	22.3—29.8
135	11.3	9.1—12	33.2	30.1—36
180	13.3	11.1—15.3	39.3	36.1—43.8
270	17.3	15.4—19.9	58.8	46.3—51.3
360°	20.9	19.1—22	61.3	58.1—65.3
540	25.9	23.3—28.3	71.6	63—80.9
720	30.1	27.3—33.0	88.5	83.3—91.8
900	31.0	29.9—31.8	100.8	100.8

cochlea and the cochlear duct were opened and while the specimen was immersed in the fixative-staining fluid. The specimen was kept in the solution about 1 hour. The final preparation was made in the usual way but the specimens were dehydrated and cleared in xylol and finally mounted on a slide in Canada balsam.

Several whole cochlear parts of them fixed within three hours of death, were embedded in epoxy resin (Epon) or acrylate prior to sectioning them for examination under phase contrast or electron microscope. Sections were made with an LKB Ultratome and the electron microscope used was a Siemens Elmiskop I 4. In the present investigation these studies were used mainly to confirm observations made in surface specimens. Further studies on these embedded specimens are now in progress.

## II. THE COCHLEOGRAM

The surface specimen technique makes it possible to survey the entire organ of Corti by examination of the few segments into which it has been divided according to the procedure described above. The individual sensory and supporting cells can be identified and localized in the reticular membrane as shown by Hixson (1984) (Fig. 8). In most mammals (guinea pig, rat, cat, rabbit) the pattern of sensory cells is of almost geometric precision (Fig. 9). This regularity makes it easy to detect and localize a place where a sensory cell is missing. Comparison with corresponding areas in normal control cochlea thus makes possible an accurate estimate of the amount of cell degeneration on a pathologic cochlea. Degenerated sensory cells are found only rarely in normal young animals hence in studies of the effect of



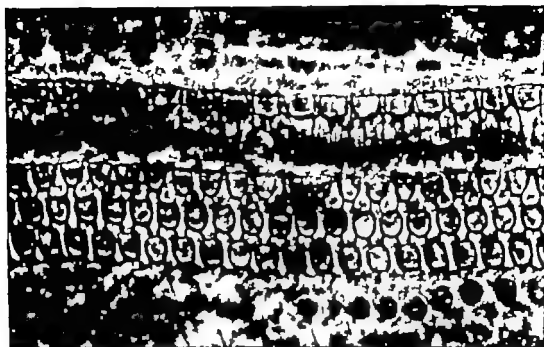


Fig. Surface preparation of the organ of Corti of guinea pig, showing three rows of outer hair cell (1-3) separated from single row of inner hair cell (IHC) by the head of the inner pillar cell (P). Note the almost geometric regularity of the pattern. (St. Gallen 80).

noxious agents on the inner ear, the extent and pattern of lost cells and remaining intact cell can be mapped as a cochleogram (Engstrom, Ades and Anderson 1966). A cell which is present is represented by the symbol  $\circ$  and the place of a lost cell by  $\bullet$ . The upper row represents the inner hair cell and the three lower rows, the outer hair cell (Fig. 40).

The pattern of sensory cell in man as described by Retzius (1881) lacks the geometric regularity seen in lower mammal (Fig. 8). For this reason deviation from a predictable pattern could not be depended upon as a way of detecting degenerated or lost sensory cell in man as it can be in animals. When a cell has undergone degeneration it disappears completely and the phalangeal processes of the Deiters cell occupy its place forming a phalangeal scar (Engstrom, Ades and Anderson 1966). Thus, although the sensory cell is lost the characteristic appearance of the phalangeal processes makes it easy to identify and localize the loss (Fig. 9). This holds true for the first three rows of outer hair cells, where it is possible accordingly to give an accurate account of the ratio of intact to degenerated cell. In the fourth and fifth rows, while the intact cell presents no problem, it is difficult to detect with certainty the number of cells lost because in the periphery of the reticular membrane the supporting cell forms an irregular arrangement in which sometimes the phalangeal scar

The lack of a reasonably precise estimate of the extent of sensory cell damage is amplified, as in the presentation of results

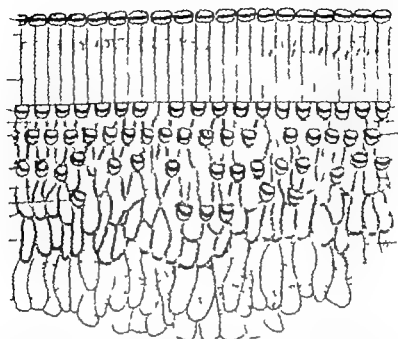


Fig. 2. Illustration made by Retzius in 1881, showing the surface of the organ of Corti, the middle row in an adult man. This figure illustrates very well how accurately Retzius reproduced the surface pattern. From his drawing can be seen: single row of inner hair cells, the head of the outer pillars and three or four rows of outer hair cells, with the phalangeal processes of the Deiters' cells between them. The positions of some missing outer hair cells are still shown (From Retzius, 1881, *Das Gehörorgan der Wirbeltiere II. Das Gehörorgan der Reptilien, der Vögel und der Säugetiere* Illustration XXXVII, Fig. 2).

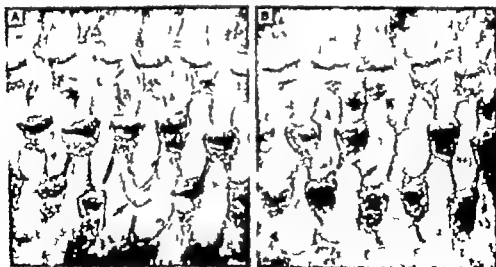


Fig. 3. Two stages of repetitive degeneration of sensory cell as seen in surface preparations.

A. (Lappegård figure) indicating severely degenerated outer hair cell.  
 B. Phalangeal area, which is the end stage of repeats after degeneration of an outer hair cell indicates the led out lesion (Magnification, A and B 1410 $\times$ ).

if the classification of cells is confined to two categories. These are: (1) cell present or intact meaning that the cell is easily identified and its appearance is normal as seen in the surface specimen (2) cell degenerated meaning that it is absent or grossly changed in appearance. In practical terms, this means that if the outlines of a sensory cell is seen but shows the collapse figure of relatively early degeneration or if it has been replaced by a phalangeal scar it is counted as degenerated (Fig. 9) (See Engstrom Aides and Anderson 1966 for use of terms and more detailed account of the progression of hair cell degeneration as seen in surface specimens). The use of this sort of all-or-none classification may miss some details or more subtle transitional stages but in the light of previous studies in this laboratory this would be more than offset by a reduction of the confusion which arises when one tries to classify all gradations of degeneration on the basis of criteria whose validity may be doubtful.

The cochleogram was slightly modified in the mapping of the human organ of Corti. The symbol of present (o) and lost (●) cells are the same. In the three first rows both intact and absent cells are recorded but in the fourth and fifth rows only the intact cells. In the first, second and third rows a corrected pattern is reproduced i.e. a pattern in which all cells which seem to be referred to a certain row are recorded as being placed in that particular row. When the pattern is adjusted in this way much of the irregularity in these three rows disappears however some cells are still distributed irregularly and they are recorded in their true location on the cochleogram. In the single row of inner hair cell the location of a single degenerated cell is easily detected however if there is extensive damage the exact number of absent cells may be difficult to estimate while the intact cells are easily seen. Therefore in the cochleogram both intact and absent inner hair cells are recorded when degeneration is moderate but when extensive only the intact cells.

A cochleogram constructed according to the principles just described gives a recording of the arrangement of the sensory cells, which although not precise in showing the irregular arrangement, yields a fairly accurate estimate of the relation between intact and absent cells.

The possibility of errors in the method due to different observers was tested by the author and an experienced technician who independently constructed cochleograms of identical regions at four levels of five cochleae. The segment counted was 0.4 mm in length (the size of the cochleogram generally used in this study). Such a sample contains in the intact cochlea on the average 3—45 inner hair cells and 10—100 outer hair cells (the range of variation depends on the difference in length between base and apex). In a total of 20 samples from cochleae showing a varying degree of sensory cell degeneration the maximum difference between the results obtained by the two observers was 1 cell both in the case of inner and outer hair cells. In 14 of the samples of inner hair cells and 11 of those of outer hair cells the difference never exceeded 1 cell.

## C. THE GRAPH OF CELLULAR POPULATIONS

The cochleogram gives detailed information about the pattern of sensory cells and intercellular relations, but it is not designed to express a survey of the whole sensory cell population; therefore it became necessary to design a method which would present graphically the density of intact hair cells throughout the cochlea. The number of sensory cells present was counted from a cochleogram or by direct observation in the microscope in a segment representing 0.4 mm in length of the organ of Corti. The density of cells was then calculated as the number of sensory cells per mm length of the organ of Corti. In the lower basal coil (0—180°) a sample was counted about every second mm, in the upper basal and middle coils (180—270°) about every fourth mm, and in the apical coil at a distance one and two mm from the apex. In the average cochlea these levels represent the angle measurements of 15°, 30°, 60°, 90°, 135°, 180°, 225°, 270° (Fig. 6). The areas between the segments where cell counts were done were surveyed under the microscope to detect small areas which might show a deviation from the state of degeneration found in the neighboring segments. When such a deviation was observed, an extra sample covering this area was counted and recorded in the graph.

The number of intact sensory cells per mm in each row of inner and outer hair cells was calculated, as well as the total number of outer hair cells per mm. These numbers were plotted against the distance from the basal end of the cochlea of each sample. By connecting these points a graph was obtained which represented the correlation between density of sensory cells and distance from the basal end of the cochlea. As the length of the organ of Corti of man varies, all cochleas were reduced to a common length corresponding to the average length of 34.0 mm.

All measurements of length were made under the microscope using a micrometer scale as reference. The length was measured at the line of contact between the pillar heads and the first row of outer hair cells. For measuring the total length of the organ of Corti a field of view of 0.40 mm was used and the specimen was moved under the microscope slide by field, somewhat less than 100 times. The error inherent in this maneuvering was tested by two observers who independently measured the length of five cochleas. The maximum difference in length measurements between the two observers was 1.0%.

In 3 of the cochleas from which graphs of the sensory cell population were made the total length was measured. The range of variation was between 30.3 mm and 35.6 mm and the average length was 34.0 mm.

The total numbers of inner and of outer hair cells in a given cochlea were calculated from the cell population graphs (Figs. 43—55). These numbers are proportional to the area enclosed by the lines representing cell density and the x-axis. This area was measured with the aid of a planimeter and the

) In the present publication the definition of density of sensory cells is used (not otherwise indicated in the text).

number of cells were calculated. As the length of the organ of Corti in the graph was converted to the average length (31.0 mm) the number of sensory cells calculated = above mentioned also corresponds to the average cochlea. The actual number of sensory cells in each cochlea can easily be obtained (actual number = calculated number  $\times \frac{\text{actual length}}{\text{average length}}$ ). In three cochleas counts were made of every sensory cell directly under the microscope and corresponding numbers were also calculated from the graphs of these cochleas. These counts and calculations are shown in Table II. As seen from this table the two methods show close agreement. However these cochleas showed intact or almost intact cell populations so that it is probable in cochleas showing a pronounced cell degeneration with variation in cell density that the agreement would not be as close. To make the error as small as possible the areas in between those where cell counts were made were surveyed in the microscope and circumscribed areas of degeneration were recorded in the graphs.

In order to evaluate to what extent sensory cell degeneration became more pronounced with increasing age, the total numbers of inner and outer hair cells of each cochlea were plotted against age (Fig. 93 and 94). In six cochleas the actual total numbers were impossible to estimate as the total length of the organ of Corti could not be measured because of slight preparation artefact at the basal end. The numbers of cells in these cochleas were then calculated in reference to average length (31.0 mm).

To evaluate whether or not the degeneration related to ageing was only distributed throughout the cochlea, the number of sensory cells per mm was measured from the graph of each cochlea in twelve regions distributed throughout the cochlea (15° 30° 60° 90° 135° 2 0° 360° 510° 720° Apex—9 mm Apex—1 mm). Measurements from corresponding levels of each cochlea were plotted against the age (Fig. 38). The slope of the distribution of the point in the diagram is proportional to the degeneration rate of sensory cell with increasing age. To be able to compare better the degeneration of inner and outer hair cell at different level of the cochlea, the diagrams were constructed so that the density of cells of the completely intact population (average obtained from 11 intact cochleas) was plotted on the Y axis.

Table II. Total cell count obtained by direct counting and by calculation from the graphs of sensory cell populations.

Cochlea N	Number of hair cells			
	Direct cell count		Calculated cell number	
	Inner	Outer	Inner	Outer
II 39 L (F <sub>1</sub> )	172	160/6	1130	1560
II 41 R (F <sub>1</sub> )	15	119/35	3125	11800
II 14 L (F <sub>1</sub> )		111/90	3300	1150

corresponding to an identical distance from the base line in all diagrams. Accordingly a given slope of each plotted population of counts corresponds to the same relative decrease of cells in all diagrams. From considerations of space, only six such diagrams are illustrated in figures although all of them form the basis of the description given in the text.

#### D. PHOTOGRAPHY

The pictures of the whole cochlea were obtained by photographing with a Hasselblad 500 C, 6X6 roll film camera equipped with a Zeiss S-Planar 5.6/120 mm lens. In most instances an extension tube 40 to 60 cm in length was used between camera and lens. The cochlea was prepared according to the technique described. The bone below the basal coil was thinned out, leaving only a thin shell. The specimen was dehydrated in alcohol and immersed in xylol in a glass jar and photographed from a direction perpendicular to the fluid surface. The illumination was directed mainly from below. Two or three ordinary microscope lamps served as light source. A sample lens (focus 10 cm) was used to focus the light on a small spot.

A problem was created by the necessity of taking photographs through the surface of the fluid in which the specimen was immersed. The surface was extremely sensitive to vibrations the occurrence of which spoiled many exposures. The solution of this problem depended upon good illumination and fast film emulsion, these two factors operating jointly to minimize exposure time. Kodak Tri-X Pan 120 film was used and the exposure time varied from 0.5 to 10.0 seconds. The camera was firmly fixed to reduce vibration, which was further reduced by opening the shutter in darkness and controlling exposure by switching the light source on and off.

A second problem was that of depth of field which is minimized at the necessarily short distance from lens to object. This can be partially compensated for by reducing the aperture as much as possible; however this has the disadvantage of reducing the resolving power of the lens and the exposure time must be increased correspondingly. An optimal compromise between these several factors was reached by using an aperture  $f/11$  to  $f/16$ .

The photomicrographs were taken on the Wild M 10 research microscope provided with photographic equipment and camera using Kodak Tri-X Pan 120 film.

#### E. AUDIOMETRY

Hearing tests were obtained from 16 subjects (8 men). In 10 of them (ear N 83 R and L, H 83 L, H 90 R and L, H 93 R and L, H 94 R and L, H 103 L, H 104 R and L) pure-tone audiometry was performed in the wards; a portable audiometer equipped with sound insulated headphones being used for conducting tests. Conductive components of hearing loss were ruled out by Rinne test using C<sub>25</sub> tuning fork together with careful inspection of the

tympanic membrane. In addition mobility of the stapes was examined at autopsy. The result indicated no evidence of any major conductive hearing loss.

All other hearing tests were performed in a soundproof room at the Audiology Department using standard audiological equipment. In 6 subjects (11 ears) speech audiometry was performed with determination of speech threshold and discrimination according to Lidén (1951). In 6 subjects (11 ears) continuous tone Bekésy audiograms were taken with an audiometer built according to Bekésy's (1947) description. The audiometers were calibrated according to the British standard.

Time intervals between the hearing tests and the fixation of the cochleae were as follows:

within one week	6 ears	(Nos. H 88 R and L, H 94 R and L, H 93 R and L);
1 week—1 month	3 ears	(Nos. H 42 R, H 85 L, H 103 L);
1—3 months	9 ears	(Nos. H 3, H 9, R and L, H 98 R and L, H 108 R and L, H 109 R and L);
3—6 months	6 ears	(Nos. H 104 R and L, H 106 R and L, H 110 R and L);
1 <sup>st</sup> —14 months	4 ears	(Nos. H 90 R and L, H 110 R and L)

## F DISCUSSION

Post mortem changes and artefact are regarded as great problems in the study of the human cochlea. Fernandez (1958) found a considerable variation in the preservation of inner ear structures among specimens for which the interval from death to fixation was identical. In specimens fixed by immersion of the temporal bone in the fixative fluid a few hours after death, fairly advanced autolytic changes were occasionally found. Refrigeration and intratympanic injection of formalin soon after death give better preservation of the inner ear structures (Fernandez, 1958; Schuknecht, 1968). The perfusion technique used in the present study was applied to further minimize the post mortem autolysis.

The effect of post mortem autolysis has been studied in electron microscopy by several investigators. Many changes earlier interpreted as autolysis resulting from delayed fixation were regarded by Ito (1962) as artefact of preparation. After two hours most of the fine features of the liver cell were almost indistinguishable from those of freshly fixed tissue. His preliminary studies on pancreas, kidney, stomach and muscle in several animal species pointed to a relatively similar conclusion for these tissues.

Electron microscopy on the human organ of Corti (Kilmura, Schuknecht and Sano, 1964) showed fairly good preservation of the intracellular structures in specimens fixed 4 hours post mortem. In the guinea pig, Weiss, Kilmura and Nakagaki (1965) described early post mortem changes in specimens fixed 1 hour post mortem. After 3 hours the general character of the

cell was still recognizable while after 6 hours the cell were markedly distorted.

Several factors contributed to the preservation of the organ of Corti in the present study even when fixation was delayed for 10—15 hours post mortem so that detailed mapping of sensory and supporting elements was still possible under light microscopy. The primary factor was perfusion as mentioned above. A second factor is that the method is based on a study of the pattern of cells in the reticular membrane and this seems to be more resistant to post mortem disintegration than other structural details in the organ of Corti. This is also the opinion of Johnson and Hawkins (1964) and is supported by the observation that the reticular membrane forms a stiff plate (Békesy 1953) which is not readily broken (Katsuki and Co. 1953). The surface specimen technique has the further advantage that decalcification and embedding are avoided, and therefore eliminated as sources of additional artefacts.

Fernandez (1958) described a post mortem change in the organ of Corti in 40 per cent of his own material which he called the compression phenomenon and regarded as an artefact. A similar change has also been reported frequently by others. It consists of a general compression of all structures in the organ of Corti and of the spiral limbus, often accompanied by a flattening of the tria vascularia. These features match those described by Wittmach (1924) under his term hypotonus degeneration and also those termed endolymphatic compression by Mygind (1945) both being ascribed to vital processes. The angiosclerotic degeneration of Fieandt and Saxén (1934) which was described in more than 50 per cent of their cases of presbycusis also shows a resemblance to the compression phenomenon. In the present material not a single cochlea out of 110 showed a mild compression of the organ of Corti or the spiral limbus. The shape of the organ of Corti and the spiral limbus are easily observed directly under the stereo-microscope and the height of the epithelium can be measured readily under phase contrast.

When discussing the technique pressure variations appearing when the stapes is extracted and the cochlea is perfused must be taken into consideration. Kamura, Schulze and Sand (1964) used a similar technique for perfusing the cochlea and they did not attribute any ultrastructural artefacts to this technique itself. That a functioning cochlea can exist in the intact ear is supported by the fact that the labyrinthine membranes may also survive even rupture if the pressure changes were large. Therefore the use of the tapes and the perfusion of the cochlea were carried out under direct visual control in the operating microscope.

The endolymphatic spaces were not opened during the whole operation in order to minimize the height position of the membrane separating those spaces. The position of Reissner's membrane and the stria vascularis in the vestibular labyrinth are clearly visible under the stereo-microscope during the preparation of a specimen. In a human cochlea the position of the light pressure of Reissner's membrane while in all the other



was no notable deviation from its normal position. In contrast to this the well known depression of Reissner's membrane characteristic of congenitally deaf Dalmatian dogs was clearly seen in five such animals.

In the present investigation no structures other than the organ of Corti and the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina were especially studied. This limitation was determined by the aim of the study rather than by limitations of the technique used. The basic method is adaptable to the study of almost any structure in the cochlea either by direct observation in the stereo microscope on surface specimens or a section made after embedding and sectioning of the appropriate portion of the cochlea. Kellerhals *et al.* (1967) for example has made studies on the spiral ganglion using a similar technique of preparation.

An essential question in all histological studies of human autopsy material is whether the disease which caused the death of the patient has had any influence upon the structures under study. This problem will be discussed in chapter VI.

In the present investigation the sensory cells have been classified either as present or as completely degenerated or lost. Such an arbitrary classification of the cells into two groups is, of course, inexact inasmuch as the degeneration follows a gradual progression. However, from animal experiment the process of degeneration after exposure to noise or ototoxic drugs have been observed to occur within a very short period of time (hours or a few days). For this reason it seems reasonable to use the arbitrary all-or-none categories for the present purpose. It is possible of course that the human ears may show a similar response to such factors as drugs, the patient's disease or the final degonal stage itself. However, the early stages of repair after degeneration can easily be identified in a surface specimen (Fig. 9). It should also be emphasized that a normal appearance of a cell in light microscopic or even electron microscopic examination gives no assurance that the cell was functioning normally before death although one usually assumes tacitly that it was from lack of more precise criteria.

A problem which is crucial to a study of this sort is that of identifying relative position on the organ of Corti. In previous histopathological studies of the human cochlea two systems of terminology have been used. One of these employs terms such as lower basal coil, upper basal coil, lower middle coil, and so on, a system which at best affords no more than a rough localization. The second method, used in conjunction with graphic reconstruction of the organ of Corti from serial sections, attempts to localize regions in terms of distance in millimeters from the basal end of the cochlea. The primary disadvantage of this method stems from the considerable variation in total length of the organ of Corti from one individual to another (Hardy, 1938) which means that in two cochleae of differing length identical distances measured from the base do not signify the same relative position on the organ of Corti. They represent different fractions of the total length. According to Bredberg *et al.* (1949) and Schaeckel (1953a) the relationship between the logarithm of frequency stimulus and the

distance from the basal end to the area of localization as measured in percentage of total length. For that reason it should be more valid to compare locations along different organs of Corti in terms of relative rather than absolute distance.

In the present investigation a position along the organ of Corti was indicated either as the distance in millimeters or as angular measurements from the basal end of the cochlea. One reason for using the angular measurements is that it gives a better topographical information regarding the position in the cochlea than distance as mm or as percentage of total length. In the graphs of cellular population the length was corrected to a standard value so as to permit intercomparison. The angle correlations to different levels of the average cochlea were used to construct a scale for the graphs, so that each represented the same proportion of total length in every cochlea. In table I (page 39) are compared distances from the basal end expressed as angular measurements as millimetre and as percentage of total length.

A further advantage of using angular measurements arises from the fact that in the course of dissection of a cochlea it is not always possible to avoid a small preparation artifact, especially in the lower basal coil. In such an instance neither the total length nor any point along the area of destruction can be accurately measured, whereas use of the angle measurement still permits definition of the various points along the organ of Corti.

It is important to emphasize that the measurements were made in such a way that the angle of 180° really indicates one half turn from the most basal end, 360° corresponds to one full turn, 540° to one and a half turns, and so on (Fig. 6). In a longitudinal serial sectioning of human temporal bones, the cochlea is divided into its component turns in reference to the plane of section, which is defined in terms of the general topography of the temporal bone. Thus the plane which divides the cochlea into half-turns is identified as the plane of the mid-modiolar horizontal section (or a vertical section, as a mid-modiolar plane at right angles to the sectioning plane), which means that the distance between this plane and the most basal end of the cochlea varies considerably. For this reason the terms do not correspond exactly to the use of the term coil (Fig. 6). It seems, however, more realistic to use the term as describing a position in reference to the basal end of the cochlea than in reference to the plane of sectioning.

The method used in this study to measure the length of the organ of Corti contains certain possible errors. Although the difference in measurements made independently by two observers was small (1.2 percent of total length), one source of error that can be considered is that the scissors cuts used to divide the specimens into segments may destroy a part of the organ of Corti, thereby affecting the measurements. This was tested by making oblique cuts along the organ of Corti. It was found that the cutting procedure lessened the distance of the corresponding distance of 10–20 percent length. Another possible

) The angle to the vertical axis of the angle of 180° has been incorrectly made in some of the graphs as distance of 1 mm instead of 5 mm from the basal end.

source of error would be that resulting from compression of the specimen by the cover glass, tending to increase the linear measurement; however there is attached to each surface specimen of the organ of Corti its associated segment of the osseous spiral lamina which constitutes the thickest part of the specimen. The bone is not likely to change its form by the slight pressure of the cover glass, and the organ of Corti is not under pressure.

The average length of the organ of Corti in the present material was 34.0 mm. This compares well with Retzius' (1884) value of 33.5 mm which however is an average from only three cochleae. Hardy (1938) found slightly smaller values, with an average of 31.5 mm in a series of 68 temporal bones by measuring the length from a graphic reconstruction of serial sections. Hardy's graph is equivalent to an enlargement of an ortho-projection of the line of the head of the pillar cell onto a plane surface at right angles to the modiolar axis of the cochlea. She did not correct for the error which arises from the fact that the cochlea has height. This error is composed of two factors, one corresponding to the gradual slope of the coils and the other dependent upon the most basal hook of the osseous spiral lamina (see Fig. 4). The first factor was considered by Hardy to be less than 1%. The second factor was calculated in the present investigation from a top-view photograph of a cochlea and the angle-length measurement (Figs. 5 and 6). It was found to be about 1 mm. Thus if corrected by these figures, Hardy's measurement of the length of the organ of Corti are 2—2.5 mm shorter than those of the present study. This difference is not large considering the difference in methodology.

## V RESULTS

### A FETAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE ORGAN OF CORTI

#### 1 Cytosarchitecture

The principal aim of the present study of the fetal cochlea was to trace the development of the pattern of sensory and supporting elements of the organ of Corti as part of the background for an investigation on the structural pattern of the young and the adult human cochlea. This study covers the fetal ages from three to six lunar months with some additional notes on the status at eight months (premature children). It must be emphasized that the descriptions of the cochlea at the ages of three and six months are based on the observation of a single fetus of each age. This of course makes the findings less reliable as representative of these particular ages but when considered in relation to observations made at intermediate ages it is evident that they provide valid contributions to the study of the process of development and differentiation.

In the three months (9 cm) human fetus the cochlea has formed all its turns but has not reached its full size. (The length of the cochlear duct was 0 mm.) The scala vestibuli and tympani has begun to differentiate from the surrounding mesenchyme the development of the former being more advanced than that of the latter. The future organ of Corti consists of a thick

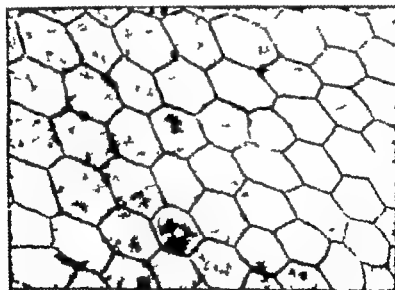


Fig. 18. Surface view of the inner ridge from the future organ of Corti of the 9 cm human fetus showing the uniform pattern of the cells. The dark dot seen on a few cell surfaces represent kinocilia. (Magnification: 155).

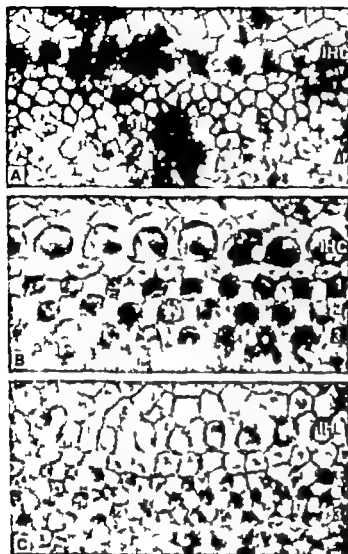


Fig. 11. Three surface preparations of the organ of Corti from a three-month human fetus, showing different stages of development of the organ of Corti.

A. One cell (IIC) from the basal end of the cochlea. The inner hair cell (IIC) may be distinguished by their dark appearance. However, there is as yet no sign of differentiation of the sensory and supporting cell in the organ of the inner ear cells (between rows).

B. In this region, 2-3 mm from the basal end, both inner (IIC) and outer (OHC) hair cells are differentiated.

C. 1 mm from the basal end, the surface area of the sensory cells is smaller. The inner hair cells (IIC) are well seen, but some of the outer hair cells are difficult to distinguish from the supporting cells. (Stimulation, A, B, and C 1170).

ing of the epithelium which has formed two spirally running ridges at the base of the cochlea. As seen from above in a surface specimen, most of the epithelium shows a characteristic uniform pattern of polygonal cell surface (Fig. 10); however, in a narrow region of the epithelium at the junction of the inner and outer ridges, cells are organized in spirally running rows, indicating the region of inner and outer hair cells. The first sign of differentiation is seen in osmium-fixed specimen and in the phase contrast microscope is that the upper part of the sensory cell has a dark appearance than that of the supporting cell.

Three to four mm from the basal end of the cochlea the outer hair cells are organized in three regular rows and have a round, free upper surface whereas the inner hair cell lies in single row and present a larger free upper surface (Fig. 11 B). The inner and outer hair cells are separated by the inner and outer ridges of the free surface of the epithelium. Lower the

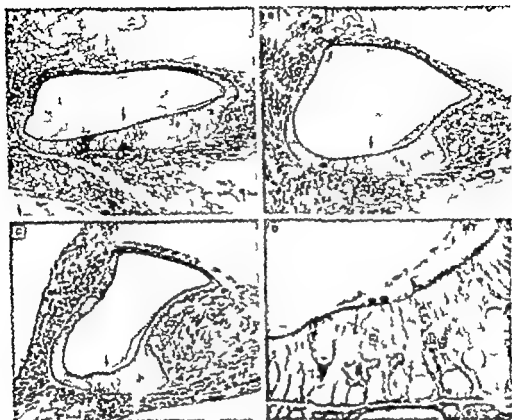


Fig. 12. Sections through the cochlear duct of three-month human fetus from three different levels of the cochlea. The epithelial rim of the cochlear duct stands out clearly from the mesenchymal tissue.

A One and half coils (15 mm) from the basal end, the scalloped outline is more clearly developed than the scala tympani. The future hair cell row (indicated with arrow) is difficult to distinguish with certainty. This section is slightly oblique so that the cochlear duct has more oval appearance than it was in one radial section.

B Three quarters of coil (9 mm) from the basal end, the hair cells are discernible (arrow).

C 5-6 mm from the basal end the hair cells (arrow) can be clearly differentiated (see D below).

D Same rim as in C (box) higher magnification, showing one inner hair cell (IHC) and three outer hair cells (1, 2, 3). Hairs can be seen on both inner and outer hair cells. Note the stereocilia (arrow) on the supporting cells under the tectorial membrane (TM) which has begun to appear at this level. (Magnification, A, B, and C:  $\times 100$ ; D:  $\times 450$ ).

nerve plexus heads. These are represented on the free surfaces of sensory cells as well as supporting cells, a kinocilium is present, visible already in the phase contrast microscope as distinct dark dot. Stereocilia are present on both inner and outer hair cells (Fig. 12).

From this region towards the basal end of the organ of Corti both inner and outer hair cells become smaller (Fig. 11 C). The inner hair cells arranged in regular rows are distinct and clearly visible right to the end of the organ. The outer hair cells are irregularly arranged in two or three





Fig. 14 Organ of Corti of nine-month human fetus: surface preparation from the low basal coil. The cell surfaces of the inner hair cells show mosaic form. The outer hair cells form three regular rows. (Magnification  $\times 1875$ )

The most prominent vessel runs parallel below the junction of the two epithelial ridges (Fig. 12). In the basal coil it measured 6–10  $\mu$  in diameter. It is continuous from base to apex, though its diameter diminishes in the apical coil. Vessels from the modiolus run outwards to the parallel vessel; the latter sending branches towards the periphery. Some vessels run from the modiolus directly to the periphery with out connection with the parallel vessel. Vessels running in the future basilar membrane occur more frequently in the apical coil.

At four months (14–15 cm) both scala tympani and scala vestibuli are well developed and the organ of Corti has reached its mature length. As compared with the three-month fetus the surface pattern has changed considerably (Fig. 13). The inner hair cells can be distinguished throughout all coils of the cochlea. In the basal and one-half coils (0–340  $\mu$ ) their free surfaces are large and oval. Further towards the apex they are more rounded and smaller. Occasional supernumerary inner hair cells are distributed throughout all coils.

Outer hair cells can be recognized from the basal end to within a few mm from the apex. In the basal coil the free surfaces of the outer hair cells are rounded and the cells arranged in three regular rows; however in the middle of two mm they are distributed irregularly in two or three rows. At a distance of one coil (1 mm) from the basal end the cell surfaces become



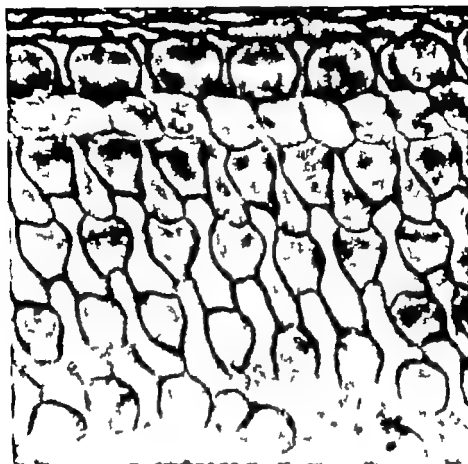


Fig. 15. Organ of Corti of the human fetus, surface preparation from the upper middle coil. At this position row of outer hair cells (frequently seen in the middle and apical coils. (Same fetus as in Fig. 11) (Magnification: 1875).

slightly smaller a feature which is more pronounced two coils from the base. The size diminishes still further in the lower apical coil and the cells are irregularly arranged in two or three rows. Close to the apex the outer hair cell cannot be differentiated from supporting cell.

Although in general the pattern of outer sensory cells is very regular in the basal and middle coils occasional irregularities are present in most cases in the form of single supernumerary cells. A few cells forming a fourth row are occasionally found. At this stage the stereocilia in the sensory cell display the characteristic W-shaped pattern (Fig. 16). The outer hair cell of the apical coil is the only exception to this. Fluid spaces in the organ of Corti are not seen. The blood vessel shows no striking difference from the three-midline stage.

At five months (3 cm) the free upper surfaces of the outer hair cells of the lower coil have acquired the general appearance characteristic of mature cells (Fig. 11). However, in the middle coil the free sur-

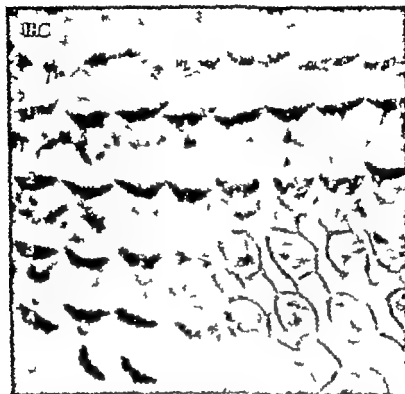


Fig. 10 Organ of Corti of 10-month human fetus: surface preparation from the upper middle coil showing the arrangement of the sensory basilar cells. The characteristic V-arrangement is distinctly seen on many of the outer hair cells (1, 2, 3, 4, 5). In the right lower corner of the microphotograph the reticula membrane is in focus. Note the outer hair cell in fifth row (V configuration 1360).

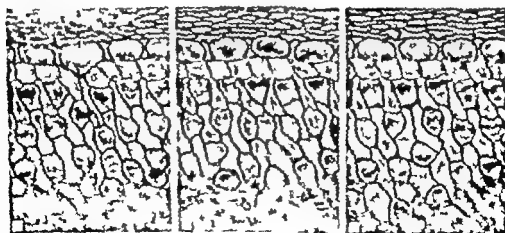


Fig. 11 Different types of irregularity occurring in the pattern of sensory cells. From 10-month human fetus: surface preparations from the lower middle coil.  
 Left: regularity of one and outer pillar head (row) and neighbouring outer hair cell.  
 Middle: outer hair cell lying close to another without supporting cell between them.  
 Right: regular cell placed next to outer hair cell. This is one of the commonest types of irregularity.  
 Magnification: X 10,000 (485).



Fig. 18. Organ of Corti of 16-month human fetus, surface preparation from the low basal coil showing regularity of cell pattern.  
 A. At the level of the free surface of the organ of Corti, one outer hair cell is seen above the row of inner hair cells (a row). The inner pillar cells of the corresponding region appear to be relatively undeveloped.  
 B. When focused deeper into the pitheum, it appears as though one inner pillar cell were missing (a row). At the base of the inner pillar cell (NS) which is well developed. IP indicates the inner pillar cell. OP the outer pillar cells, and N the nuclei of the first row of outer hair cells. (Magnification, A and B: 1500).

faces remain small and more rounded. The free surfaces of the inner hair cell show the mature shape throughout the coil. In general the outer hair cells are disposed in three regular rows, although cells forming a fourth row are seen more frequently than at earlier stages especially in the upper coil (Fig. 12 and 16). At the earlier stages irregularities of the pattern of the outer hair cells occur but with a somewhat increased incidence. Supernumerary cells between the first and second or the second and third row are the most common irregularities (Fig. 1). In the 14- to 16 mm it occasionally appears as though one pillar cell were missing thus leaving a gap in the cell row. In the low basal coil (Fig. 18). A variation in the linear content of the coil occurs gradually (Fig. 19).

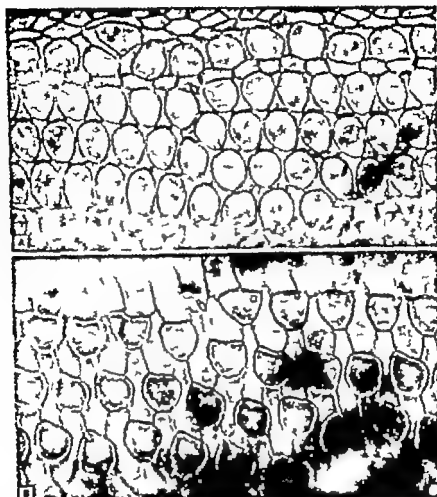


Fig. 19. Surface preparation showing an interesting variety of the norm 1 pattern.

A. Four-month human fetus, lower basal coil. Note the deviation in the lines' configuration at the midfield (arrow).

B. Adult squirrel monkey, one coil from the basal end, showing similar arrangement of the lines' configuration. (Magnification, A. 890 B. 1330).

At this age intraepithelial fluid spaces are evident in phase contrast microscopy (Fig. 18 B). A spirally running space is seen from the 5–10 mm region (60–90°) up to the 15–20 mm region (about 20°–360°). The space is located between the outer pillar cells and the first row of outer hair cells thus corresponding to the space of Nuel. At the basal and apical extremities of the space it is narrower than between these extremities. In deeper levels of the epithelium, large numbers of acrosoles of varying size are observed. A few weeks later also the tunnel of Corti is partially developed (Fig. 20).

The spiral vessel is as large in some places as earlier but in other places two narrow spiral vessels are seen below the inner ridge.

At 16 months (3.5 cm) the surface pattern of the organ of Corti has

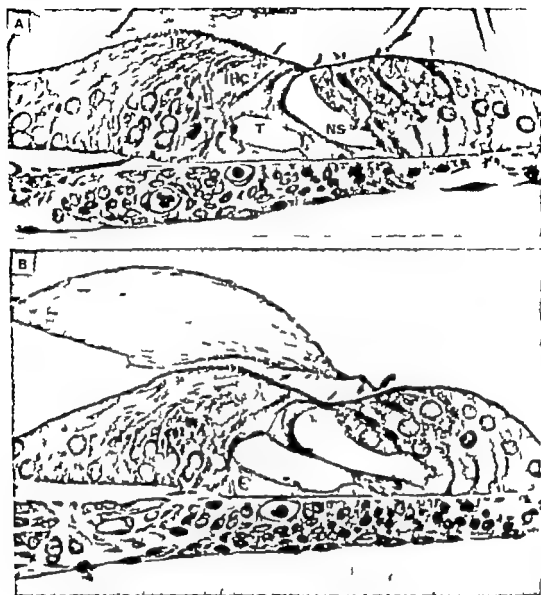


Fig. 20. Radial sections through the organ of Corti of 21-week human fetus, showing different stages of development of the fluid spaces at different levels of the cochlea.

A. One coil (21 mm) from the basal end: the tunnel of Corti (T) is narrow; the space of Nuel (NS) wide.

B. Half coil (11 mm) from the basal end: the tunnel and the space of Nuel have both widened considerably. The fluid spaces round the outer hair cells are also partially developed. Note the microvilli and the tectal membrane which has not yet become completely separated from the inner ridge (IR). The mesenchymal layer and the basal membrane is thick and contains two spiral vessels. (Magnification A, and B 610).

changed considerably. The whole surface area has widened, increasing the distance between the inner and outer hair cells. Particularly striking is the elongation of the inner hair cells and the consequently greater distance between the inner hair cells and the base of outer hair cells (Fig. 21). The sensory



Fig. 21 Organ of Corti of sixth-month human fetus, surface preparation from the upper basal coil (1 mm) showing the large distance between the inner hair cells (IHC) and the first row of outer hair cells, compared with that one month earlier (cf Figs. 14 and 15). Note the granules in the lower pillar head. One supernumerary inner hair cell is seen above the regular row of cells. The bases of the first row of outer hair cells (1) are in focus. (Magnification 140)

cells remain widely duplicated and the phalangeal processes of the Deiters cells have changed in appearance to approach the mature shape. This type of pattern is present in all coils except the most apical few mm where the preexisting tendency is incomplete most notably in so far as the inner pillar heads are considerably shorter than elsewhere.

A second striking change in the pattern of sensory and supporting cells is that irregularities have become more common and more conspicuous than at earlier stages. Nevertheless, the regular basic pattern retained especially in the basal end, though irregularities tending to increase proximally toward the apical end.

Up to this age few significant sensory cell degenerations are found. Only very rarely does a missing appear, noting a missing sensory cell. No more than 10 missing places were seen in all of the fetal cochlea studied.

The fluid spaces of the organ of Corti widen considerably during the sixth month. The tunnel of Corti, which by this stage has become well differentiated and the space of Nuel extended throughout the first two coils (0 —

10). No fluid spaces are yet evident in the apical coil. In the basal and middle coils fluid spaces are also evident among the outer hair cells. The

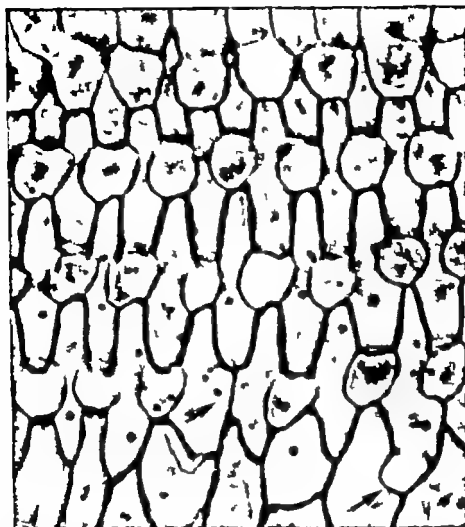


Fig. 22. Organ of Corti of premouse hind (fetal age eight months) surface specimen, two coils (30 mm) from basal end, showing few regular rows of outer hair cell and one cell in fifth row (right arrow). Note absence of one hair cell in the fourth row (left arrow) (Magnification 1480).

cytoplasm of the supporting cells show a rich vacuolization. Many granules are evident in the inner pillar heads (Fig. 21) though less prominently so in the most basal 5 mm and in the apical coil.

A single spiral vessel running below the tunnel of Corti, is seen, measuring 7–10  $\mu$  in diameter in the fixed specimen. A few vessels are seen crossing the basilar membrane.

At eight months the pattern of sensory and supporting cells shows the essential characteristics of the adult cochlea. The fluid spaces are well developed throughout the organ of Corti.

In two of the four studied at this age, a certain degeneration of outer hair cells was observed (Fig. 22 and 23). It must be emphasized that

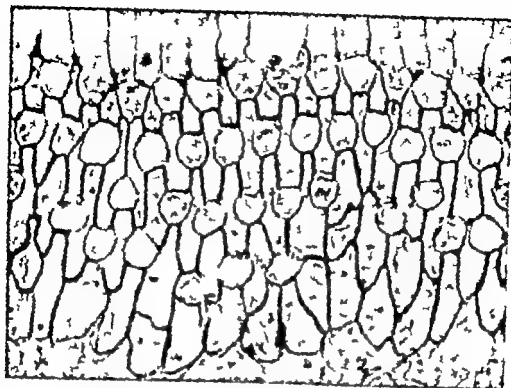


Fig. 23. Organ of Corti from premature child (fetal age eight months) surface specimen from upper middle coil (26 mm) showing irregularity of the pattern of outer hair cells. The general arrangement of the cells in three (four rows is still present. The positions of low loss cell can be clearly seen. (Magnification 935)

th cochleas were obtained from stillborn asphyxiated premature children. All stages of degeneration of the hair cells were observed from the early collapse figures to the phalangeal scars. The loss of sensory cells was spread diffusely throughout the cochlea. In most places single sensory cells were missing rather than groups of them. The extent of degeneration was less than 5 per cent.

## 2. Innervation

In the full month human fetus a dense network of nerve bundles in the future osseous spiral lamina is seen in Mallet fixed/stained specimens (Fig. 4). This network is formed by radially and parallel running nerve bundles. In the apical coil the spiral bundles are more conspicuous than the radial. From these bundles of nerves, fibers run toward the organ of Corti where they form numerous bundles under the one and outer hair cells. In all coils there is a spiral bundle and three or four outer spiral bundles are evident. In the full-month fetus, lectin micro-copied reveals in the organ of Corti rather large nerve fibers containing distinct neurotubuli. These fibers make contact



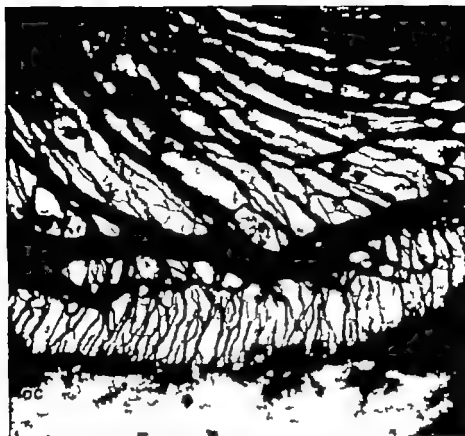


Fig. 24. Inner portion of spiral lamina and the organ of Corti from a 10-month human fetus, surface specimen from the pleal coil. Modified Mallory's stain. Also seen are radial nerve bundles which in this level of the cochlea take a slightly spiral course toward the periphery (to the right of the illustrated portion). The thick transverse bundles consist of both radial and spiral fibers. From these thick bundles nerve fibers run out to the organ of Corti (OC). (Magnification 250).

with the sensory cells and form bouton-shaped nerve endings. It was not possible to distinguish between afferent and efferent endings. Synaptic vesicles were sometimes observed in the nerve endings, at the outer hair cells and beneath the inner hair cells.

A third group of nerve fibers is evident in the future osseous spiral lamina. These are very thin fibers provided with localized swellings or beads (Fig. 25). They run singly and are sparsely distributed. Most of them are observed in a plane superficial to the other nerve bundles. The fibers seem to run in all directions and are found in the future osseous spiral lamina but not in the organ of Corti.

### 3. Numerical considerations

Graphs illustrating the sensory cell populations of 10 fetal cochleas are shown in Figure 3. The average number of outer hair cells was 13,400.

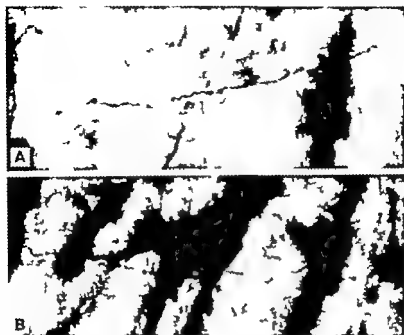


FIG. 25. *A and B*. Opaque spiral lamina of four-month human fetus surface preparation from the middle cell, shows gray thin unmyelinated nerve fibers with localized swellings, or beads. These fibers can be seen to run below the myelinated bundles in the spiral lamina. Modified Villet nerve stain. (Magnification 31.)

ranging from 11,200 to 16,000. The inner hair cells averaged 3,400 with a range between 2,800 and 4,400. The numbers of inner and outer hair cells showed a certain correlation with the length of the organ of Corti (Fig. 36). The three youngest fetuses (1—18 weeks) of this group did not show notably low values with respect to the number of cells in the length of the organ of Corti.

The density of sensory cells (number of cells per mm length of the organ of Corti) increases from the base toward the apex (Figs. 26—35). The outer hair cells almost double the density. An average obtained from seven cochleas (19—34 weeks of age) showed 90 cells/mm at one mm from basal end, and 52 cells/mm at two mm from apex. The maximum density is found two mm from the peak, from which point the number of cells decreases rapidly toward the apex. In the three first rows the numbers of outer hair cells per mm are in close agreement with each other, however, in the most basal and the most apical few millimeters the third row often shows a decrease in density of cells. At the age of 1—18 weeks (3 fetuses) there are very few cells in the fourth row (Figs. 6—8) whereas at 19—4 weeks sensory cells forming the fourth row occur regularly (Figs. 9—35). The number of these cells decreases from the most basal few millimeters at a rate of 90 cells/mm to cells from the base. There is a large variation in the number of fourth

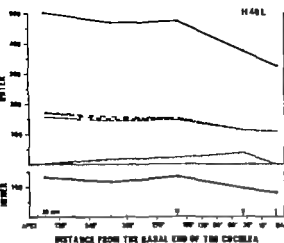


Fig. 26.

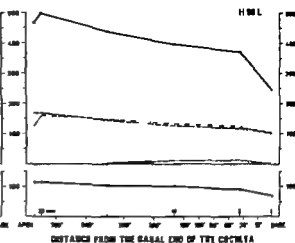


Fig. 27.

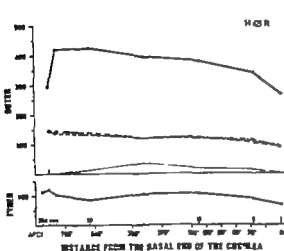


Fig. 28.

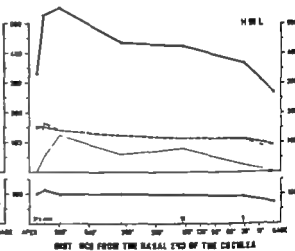


Fig. 29.

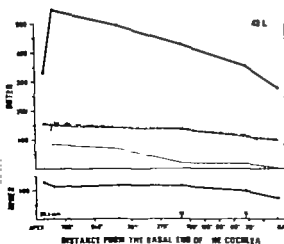


Fig. 30.

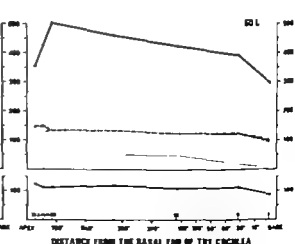


Fig. 31.

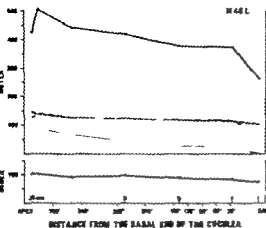


Fig. 32

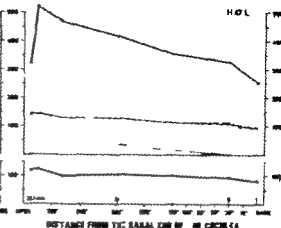


Fig. 33

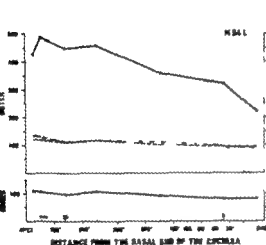


Fig. 34

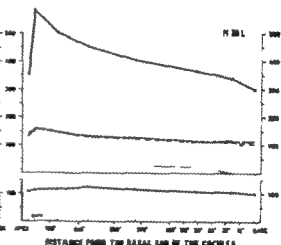


Fig. 35

Figs. 26-35. Graphs of the sensory cell populations in 10 fetal cochleas. The curves represent the density of sensory cells (number of cells per mm length) along the organ of Corti. The upper and lower continuous lines represent respectively the inner and outer hair cells, the interrupted and dotted lines representing the individual rows of outer hair cells. See page 6 for explanation of symbols.

#### Number of sensory cells

Fig. 26.	Age 1 week	inner	3630	outer	13350
Fig. 27.	Age 1		3035		12220
Fig. 28.	Age 16		3560		13350
Fig. 29.	Age 19		3170		12730
Fig. 30.	Age 19		3300		13000
Fig. 31.	Age 20		3390		13130
Fig. 32.	Age 21		3310		13120
Fig. 33.	Age 21		3350		12900
Fig. 34.	Age 21		3230		13220
Fig. 35.	Age 21		4390		16010

Note that the density of sensory cells increases towards the periphery. In the three youngest (ages 1-18 week of gestation, Figs. 26-28) there occur very few cells in the fourth row of hair cells.

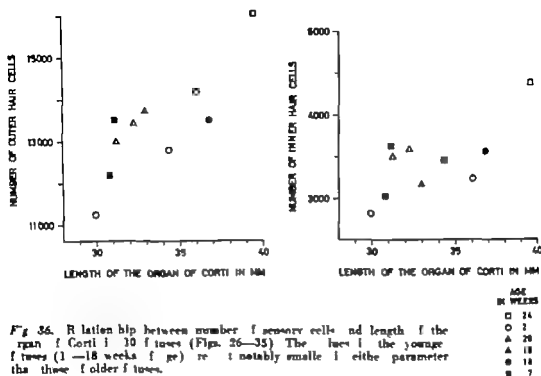


Fig. 36. Relationship between number of sensory cells and length of the organ of Corti in 10 fetuses (Figs. 26—35). The data of the younger fetuses (1—18 weeks of age) are not notably smaller in either parameter than those of older fetuses.

row cells per mm from one cochlea to another. A very few fifth row cells are found which tend to form an interrupted row. They were never found to exceed 40 in a complete cochlea. The fifth-row cells occur in the upper middle coil and in the apical coil. In the graphs these cells are added to the fourth row counts.

The number of inner hair cells per millimeter increases about 40 per cent from base to apex. An average obtained from seven cochleas (19—21 weeks of age) shows 80 cells/mm at a point 1 mm from the basal end and 115 cells/mm at 1 mm from the apex (Figs. 29—35).

#### 4. Discussion

The morphological development of the human organ of Corti is described as beginning at the basal end of the cochlea and proceeding towards the apex (Alexander 1936, Kolmer 1923, Bait and Anson 1949, Ormerod 1960). The same sequence of development is reported in most mammals studied (Reissner, 1884; Held 1909; Van der Stiegh, 1919, 1920; Wada 1953; Held 1926; Weibel 1951; Ånggård 1965), however as indicated from recordings of cochlear microphonics and action potential from the eighth nerve the mammalian fetus begins to respond earlier to sound of medium high fre-

quencies than to low or to high frequencies (McCrady, Weaver and Bray 1933; Larsell, McCrady and Larsell, 1944; Ånggård, 1946; Mäkelian and Ruben 1965; Crowlev and Hypp-Rymond, 1966). In accordance with the usual concept of frequency localization this should mean that cochlear maturation occurs earlier at a certain distance from the basal end than at the basal and apical extremities. Morphological development in agreement with this functional interpretation has been described in the mouse (Lorente de No 1933a; Mäkelian and Ruben 1965) and in the opossum (Larsell, McCrady and Zimmermann, 1935; Larsell, McCrady and Larsell, 1944). The results of the present investigation indicate that differentiation in the human cochlea also begins at some distance from the basal end and progresses in both directions. This was observed in respect of both sensory cells and fluid spaces.

As mentioned above all electrophysiological experiments to date have suggested a maturation in general agreement amongst different species, whereas histological investigations have failed to demonstrate a similar agreement. It would seem most probable that structural development would proceed in a sequence parallel to that of functional maturation. On the basis of comparative anatomy it also seems unlikely that the similar development in the opossum in the mouse and in the human would be different from that in other mammals (bat, guinea pig, rat, rabbit, cat). The apparent disagreements are probably due to technical problems. In conventional serial sectioning of the cochlea, the lower basal coil of the organ of Corti is difficult to locate. A second defect is that maturation is rapid, especially in the smaller mammals. In their condensed time-scales of maturation, it would be more difficult to study the cochlea at the exact time which would reveal the sequential details. In the relatively slower time scale of the human organ of Corti, for instance the basal lag in development of the sensory cells was clearly observed only at the age of three months. It is possible that an electron microscopic study of development might solve the problem by the use of more suitable fixatives.

In accordance with previous studies (Held, 1909; Cajal, 1919; Wada 1933; Lorente de No 1926; Holmer 1939 and others) it was found in the present investigation, that the differentiation of the inner hair cells precedes that of the outer.

An effort was made in the present study to estimate the full complement of sensory cells in the fetal organ of Corti. This is possible only if the fixative used is such a stage of development that the cochlear sensory cells are still in place. Holmer (1939) stated that no further cell division occurs after the time that the cells have differentiated into light supporting cells and dark sensory cells. In the youngest fetuses (three months of age) in the present investigation it was impossible under the light microscope to differentiate sensory cells from supporting cells in the apical 5–10 mm (and outer hair cells in the most basal few mm). In the upper portion of the region where sensory cells could be identified, these were more densely packed than the corresponding region of a more mature cochlea, however, when the

number of identifiable sensory cells was calculated it did not reach the number obtained two months later. This indicates that additional sensory cells either were formed by cell division or were already developed although not yet identifiable under the phase contrast microscope. Ruben (1967) showed that the apical sensory cells of the mouse ceased to divide earlier than the basal cells (see page 12). Thus, proliferation of cells in the apical coil does not seem to offer a likely explanation. Further, Ruben (1967) suggested that the growth area in the organ of Corti might be at the basal end. Thus growth by cell division would cause the apical part, its cell division already completed to be pushed further apicalward. However the cessation of mitosis was observed at a very early stage; at an age in fact, that probably corresponds to less than three months in the human fetus. The regular arrangement of the sensory cells in the basal coil with no signs of cell division, also argues against this mechanism at the age of three months hence it seems probable that the apical (and most basal) cells of the organ of Corti have already differentiated into sensory and supporting cells at the age of three months even though this cannot be confirmed by light microscopy.

There is one finding which is not obviously or entirely in accordance with the foregoing discussion. In the younger fetuses studied, (age less than 19 weeks) there are very few cells which occur as fourth or fifth row cells. A possible explanation of this might be that the fourth row cells although essentially differentiated at that age have not yet taken on the fully developed appearance of mature cells as have their neighbors in the first three rows. Another factor must also be considered, namely that simultaneously with the appearance of the fourth row cells, irregularities become more common in the first three rows. The occurrence of divisions during the fifth month would explain the appearance of fourth row, fifth row and supernumerary cells in the first three rows, as well as the irregularity of pattern of the outer hair cells as a whole. The higher incidence of supernumerary fourth and fifth row cells, and the general irregularity of pattern in the apical coil, would then bespeak a greater frequency of mitoses during the fifth month in that region. These findings fail to coincide with those of Ruben (1967) that in the mouse mitotic activity ceases to occur earlier at the apex than at the base of the cochlea however it is to be noted that as in most other sub-primate mammals studied the mature pattern of sensory cells in the mouse is very regular fourth row cells appearing only occasionally (Engstrom, Ades, and Anderson 1966). Thus it appears that mitosis in the apical region of those animal is essentially complete by the stage corresponding to the beginning of the fifth fetal month of the human. A relatively longer persistence of mitosis among the outer hair cells of the human organ of Corti might account for the more irregular and distinctly different patterns of cells between man and other mammals which have been studied.

Irregularities in the organ of Corti in some monkeys similar to those of man have been observed. Johnson and Hawkins (1967) described in an rhesus monkey and in one pigtail monkey a pattern in the reticular mem-

brane which was virtually identical with that of man. In the squirrel monkey Adea, Bredberg, and Engstrom (unpubl. data) and Bredberg (1968) found a similar but less pronounced irregularity especially in the apical coil. As compared with the human cochlea, very few sensory cells were observed in the fourth row position.

Some types of irregularities in the human organ of Corti occurred only infrequently giving rise to the question as to whether these were to be regarded as normal variants or as malformations. One such example is to be found in the linear deviation of the pattern of outer hair cells (Fig. 19) which was first observed in one fetus. As the study continued, and as interest became focused on the typing of various irregularities, the same pattern was observed frequently in both fetuses and adults. A similar deviation was also seen in one squirrel monkey. Such observations tend to take this particular irregularity out of the category of malformation; however in one 18-week fetus, a true malformation of pattern was found in both labyrinths showing the Mondini-Alexander type of abnormality (Fig. 37) (cf Ormerod 1960). In one of the ears the organ of Corti was 13 mm long. Sensory cells could be identified throughout this length, most of them in a normal stage of development, the inner hair cells forming the customary single row, the outer hair cells also showing a generally normal arrangement. The principal deviation was found in the apical coil where the outer hair cells formed four, five or six rows. A few outer hair cells in the basal coil were abnormal in the sense that the hair bundles were malformed, some having stereocilia distributed diffusely over the free surfaces, others having an inversion of the normal W pattern of hair distribution (Fig. 38).

The sixth lunar month sees a considerable alteration in the pattern of sensory and supporting cells in the organ of Corti. It is marked by the expansion associated with the development of the fluid spaces which cannot be related to a corresponding increase in numbers of cells. The total number of sensory cells varies considerably from one cochlea to another and the number of cochleae studied was small in statistical terms and for this reason it was impossible to identify a small increase in the number of cells with increasing age. Even during the fifth month, when most of the fourth row cell normally appeared, it was not possible to demonstrate by total cell counts a significant increase in numbers. Only by statistical analysis of counts in a much larger population of cochleae could the significance of such small changes be assessed. The present study did not afford such numbers and it can only be said that there was no major increase in the total number of sensory cells during the fifth and sixth months.

The human cochlea is described as morphologically mature at the fetal age of six months (East and Anson 1949; Ormerod 1960). In apparent contradiction to this it was found, in the present material, that the fluid spaces were not completely developed in the apical coil at this age; however only one such fetus was available for study. Insufficient data permit a final age to be made with absolute accuracy and the development is rapid and





Fig. 5. Blood-stained type of malformation of the inner ear of 11-month human fetus.

A. The cochlea after removal of the otic capsule by microdissection. The spiral lamina (SL) and associated parts of Corti have been exposed. The region of the round window (RW) is seen on the right of the photograph, the apex of the cochlea on the left, the total length of the organ of Corti being 13 mm. The cochlea consists only of half a basal coil and twisted spiral portion. M is the bundles of nerve fibers in the spiral lamina. The missing part of the organ of Corti and spiral lamina (indicated by the area between the arrow), was removed from the preparation of the surface specimens shown in B, C, and D below (SL indicates the modiolus).

B. Microformation of one outer hair cell (arrow). The hairs are distributed diffusely on its surface of the unusually large cell.

C and D. Microformation of one hair bundle shows the normal of the characteristic W (arrow) (arrow on cell surface D on hair bundle). Note that the hair cell nucleus occupies its normal position. (Magnification, A  $\times 14$ ; B, C, and D  $\times 1310$ ).

individually variable our findings are necessarily less than conclusive in this respect.

Previous studies on the development of the innervation in the organ of Corti have generally indicated that sensory cells in the basal coil receive nerve fibers earlier than those in the apical coil (Cajal, 1919; Lorente de No, 1926; Tello, 1931). The fetuses used in the present investigation were of such advanced age (4 to 5 months) that they offered little pertinent evidence on this point.

According to Mallet (1963) the osmium tetroxide zinc iodide technique reveals several types of structure containing lipoproteins, such as peripheral nerve endings, preganglionic and postganglionic fibers of the autonomic system, and motor end plates. In the organ of Corti the nerve endings heavily stained by this technique were considered to be predominantly efferent (Engström, Aden and Andersson, 1966). In the present study both radial and spiral fibers in the acoustic spiral lamina took up the stain. In addition the third group of nerve fibers, provided with localized swellings or beads, was revealed. It might be possible that these fibers are autonomic. In the organ of Corti spiral bundles (inner and outer) were heavily stained. It was not possible, however, to evaluate to what extent nerve endings took up the stain.

On the basis of morphological criteria it has been assumed that response to acoustic stimulation would appear at the fetal age of 5-7 months (Bart and Anson, 1919; Ormerod, 1960; Wedenberg, 1965); however, in animal experiments, it has been shown that the cochlea may begin to react electrophysiologically before it is entirely morphologically. Thus the fluid spaces were found not to be fully developed before response to sound stimulation could be elicited (Larsell, McCrady and Larsell, 1949; Mikaelian and Ruben, 1965). Kikuchi and Hilding (1964) found the afferent nerves and nerve endings of the mouse to be present several days before fluid spaces were formed. The appearance of the efferent nerve endings on the other hand was delayed until after the time when it has been possible to elicit microphonic and action potentials from the eighth nerve (Mikaelian and Ruben, 1965). The animal experiments thus suggest the possibility that the human fetal cochlea may begin to react to sound stimulation before this age of 5 months.

The question of functional maturation of the cochlea has important clinical implications relating to the criteria for the perinatal abortion. Several countries now permit such operations where there is a compelling reason to believe that the child might produce a child with some serious developmental defect. Therapeutic abortion can be carried out in Sweden if diagnosed before the 17th week of pregnancy. The early diagnosis of dysfunction in the organ of Corti and the implicit probability of cochlear damage might contribute significantly to the decision for and justification of a therapeutic abortion; for example, in cases of maternal rubella. Wedenberg (1965) reported that reactions to sound may be recorded from the fetus during the 6th week of pregnancy using a technique developed by Johansson. Wedenberg and Westin

(1964) If the cochlea is capable of functioning earlier than the 24th week, it might be possible to develop hearing tests which could be made at such time.

The most common causes of perinatal hearing impairment are prematurity neonatal asphyxia birth trauma and icterus neonatorum (Wedenberg 1965). These may occur singly or in various combinations with each other. Likewise according to several reports of audiological investigation of such cases, the location of the underlying damage may be in the cochlea the central auditory pathways, or both. Only a few histopathological studies are available. Hall (1964) described a reduction of ganglion cells in the cochlear nuclei resulting from neonatal asphyxia while changes in the cochlea were interpreted as artefacts. Buch (1966) described a compression of the organ of Corti in cases of neonatal asphyxia though he was unable to rule out artefacts, and was therefore unable to establish a causal interrelationship.

In the present study a moderate diffuse loss of outer hair cells was found in two out of four stillborn premature children none of whom showed signs of RH or ABO incompatibility. The damaged sensory cells showed all stages of degeneration from collapse figures to phalangeal scars. The latter type would hardly have been expected if the damage had occurred during the asphyxia. In adult animals exposed to noise or ototoxic drugs the formation of a complete phalangeal scar takes at least two weeks. This being so it seems unlikely that all degeneration of sensory cells can be due to the acute asphyxia unless the resolution occurs much more rapidly in premature children than in adult animals. If the degeneration of sensory cells in both fetal and adult cochlea occurs at a similar rate one possibility might be that only the acute signs of degeneration were attributable to the asphyxia while the phalangeal scars had some other etiology. The possible assumption that degeneration of sensory cells may be a normal occurrence during fetal life is not supportable by our observation. Two premature and two full term newborn children were found to show no such degeneration at all. It seems improbable that two independent etiological factors should converge in two fetuses each factor producing its separate pathological effect. A more reasonable explanation of the loss of cells in the two stillborn premature infants would be a prolonged fetal affliction due to toxæmia of pregnancy diabetes infection, or the like. In such instances the prematurity and the asphyxiation might be secondary to these maternal conditions. The degeneration apparently of long standing might then be attributable to a toxic effect on the fetus long before birth the final asphyxia contributing the additional acute damage. In any case even though the number of premature children was limited the fact that half of them showed no sign of degeneration would indicate that prematurity and asphyxiation do not necessarily *per se* produce damage to the organ of Corti.

## B STRUCTURE OF THE POSTNATAL ORGAN OF CORTI

## 1 Population of sensory cell

## a. The full complement

At the outset of this investigation the plan was to use the ears of the younger age group as normal material, that is as a baseline for the definitive study of ageing and pathological alteration in the cochleas of the older subjects. This plan appeared to be a reasonable one in the light of many statements in the literature to the effect that cochlear sensory cells tend to be all present and intact in young individuals with normal hearing. There are statements to be found which go even farther to indicate that even in elderly subjects with severe impairment of hearing, intact sensory cell populations may be seen. At least the last statement could however not be verified by the present study. The cochleas of the newborn infant showed a completely intact population of cochlear hair cells but this was the latest appearance of such a phenomenon. Even the cochleas of older children and young adults, included in this study displayed appreciable degrees of cell loss. As a consequence it became necessary to find a basal undisturbed population of completely intact population of cochlear sensory cells. Inasmuch as the newborn was the oldest individual showing no evidence of cell loss, the later fetal material was used for this purpose. Accordingly the full complement is defined as that which is seen in the fetal cochleas in which the development of sensory cells is complete as determined by histological criteria.

The material available for this purpose consists of seven cochleas a number which is too small to permit a statistical analysis that will give additional information. In the graphs of cellular populations of the postnatal cochleas the range of variation in density of the fetal inner and outer hair cells is reproduced as the hatched area (Figs 46—58) thus serving as approximate indication of the intact population of sensory cells.

## b. Degeneration of sensory cell

Although the pattern of sensory cell loss varies considerably in different cochleas it is evident that the extent of degeneration becomes more pronounced with increasing age. Certain general principles with respect to extent and location of this degeneration can be gleaned from the 41 cochleas which were studied in a detailed systematic way. The sensory cell loss in its relation to ageing will be discussed first followed by that related to degeneration from other causes. It must be emphasized that the description of the degenerative pattern associated with ageing refers only to the present material, and although this is shown mainly with respect to hearing loss and noise exposure it may at times how deviation from what is generally regarded as usual for given age. This will be discussed further in later paragraphs.

*Degeneration of inner cell with ageing.* The rate of reduction of hair cells differs between inner and outer hair cells the latter degenerating at

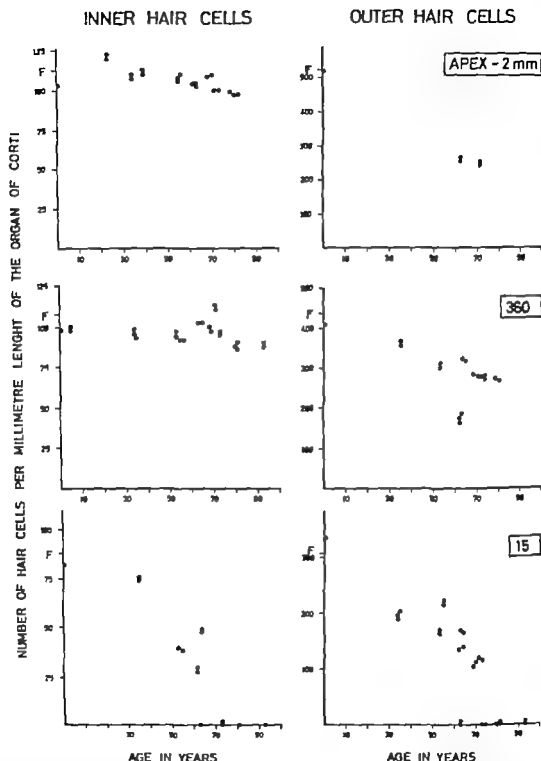


Fig. 36. If late ship, it different levels of the cochlea between sensory cell density and age. F indicates the full complement of cells (average obtained from fetuses) at each level. At the basal end (1-3 mm) both inner and outer hair cells show a considerably lower density with increased age (see coil (360-21 mm) from the basal end only the outer hair cells are reduced with age (about half the amount found at the basal end). In the spiral coil (Apex - 2 mm) the reduction in density of outer hair cells with aging is considerable whereas that of the inner hair cells is minimal.



Fig. 39 Organ of Corti of an 18-year-old man, surface specimen from the upper basal coil (1 mm) showing the appearance of the cellular pattern. The bases of the outer hair cells (OHC) are in focus. The outer hair cells (1-4) from three-fourths of the outer hair cells are missing from the third row. ■ indicates the inner pillar head (Magnification 830).

almost double the rate of the former (Figs. 93 and 94). Cell loss begins and becomes noticeable before the third decade and seems to be accelerated in the age groups.

The degeneration of outer hair cells occurs throughout the cochlea, though not at the same rate in all regions. The lowest rate of degeneration occurs in the region 2.0—5.0 (1—6 mm) from the basal end where at the age of 50 the loss of cells is about 5 per cent. The rate increases from this region towards both the basal and the apical ends, almost doubling in the center of either end. The loss of cells is slightly more pronounced at the basal end than at the apex (Fig. 38).

The distribution of cell loss among the different rows was calculated by measuring the average density of cells at levels (60, 135, 360 and 540) of all 41 cochleas. Since the cells forming the fourth row are distributed differently from the cells in the other rows it was not possible to compare the damage in this row with that of the other rows. At 0, 360 and 540 the third row shows greater cell loss than the other rows. The maximum difference was at 360 where the third row had about 15 per cent fewer cells than the first and second rows. The difference was statistically significant as tested by the Wilcoxon method on ranked data.

*Degeneration of inner hair cells with ageing* The highest rate of loss of inner hair cells is found in the basal coil (Fig. 38). Measured at the lowest extremity ( $15^\circ$  or 3 mm from the basal end of the organ of Corti) the rate is nearly as high as that of the corresponding outer hair cells. From that point apicalward the loss diminishes to a minimum at  $360^\circ$  from base achieving there a level of slight loss which then remains uniform throughout the rest of the distance to the apex. The rate of degeneration in the lower half of the basal coil ( $0^\circ$ — $180^\circ$ ) appears to accelerate with increasing age after 50 (Fig. 38).

A comparison between the pattern of degeneration of inner and outer hair cells thus reveals distinct differences. *The inner hair cells show a basal degeneration only whereas the outer hair cells show an overall degeneration which is accentuated at the basal and apical ends* however there is considerable individual variation from this general pattern the basal loss predominating in some cochleas, the apical in others. Still others show a more diffuse loss of varying degree.

*Other forms of sensory cell degeneration* In about one third of the 41 cochleas studied a completely different kind of sensory cell loss is found. This consists of a circumscribed loss which is related to neither the basal nor the apical degenerations described above. This kind of degeneration shows a considerable variation in extent and location. The area of maximum damage is usually found in the region from 7 mm ( $60^\circ$ ) to 21 mm ( $360^\circ$ ) from the base. Two major variants may be identified. One of these affects the outer hair cell population with partial loss of cells over a wide area (5—10 mm) the third row often showing considerably more damage than the first two. The second consists of a severe loss of both inner and outer hair cells over

#### H 101 R

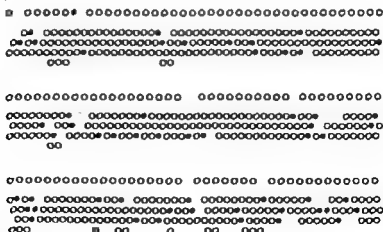


Fig. 40. Cochleogram from cochlea H 101 R (Fig. 68) from the region between 90 and 115 (9—11 mm). Note that the inner hair cells are located in groups. This subject was ring lip exposed to noise and the cochleogram reveals a dip in the frequencies 1000—6000 cps. ( ) represent intact sensory cells and (●) missing cells.

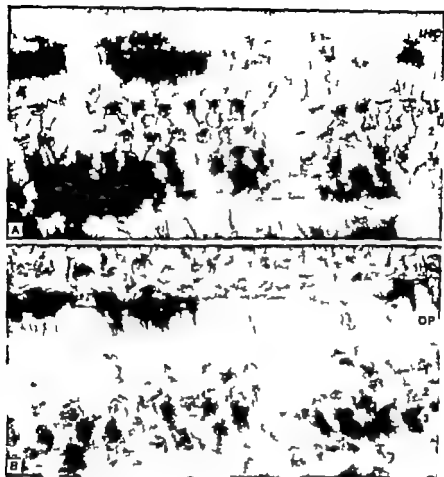


Fig. 41 Organ of Corti of 18-year-old man, surface preparation from the lower basal coil (9 mm) showing degeneration of outer hair cells and pillar cells.

A When the microscope is focussed to the reticular membrane, the groups of outer hair cells are seen to be degenerated. The region of the inner hair cell (IHC) is not in focus but, as seen in B below, no cell were lost.

B When focussed more deeply in the epithelium, the outer pillar cell (OP) are seen to be missing in those rows which correspond to the lost groups of outer hair cells. No inner hair cells are missing as indicated by their intact nuclei (IHC) 1, 2, and 3 indicate the rows of outer hair cells. (31 magnification, A and B 685)

a shorter distance (less than 5 mm). In a few cochleas several such circumscribed areas may be seen. In addition to these obvious lesions of the population of sensory cells, there are still rows consisting of very narrow rows (more than 0.5 mm) showing loss of either inner or outer hair cells.

## 2 Supporting element and tectorial membrane

The damage seen in the organ of Corti by light micro-copy ranged from diffuse, light sensory cell loss to more extensive loss. The sensory cell





Fig. 42 Outer hair cell region of the organ of Corti of 73 year old man (cochlea II 109 R, Fig. 53) Surface preparation from the upper basal coil (14 mm) showing loss of about one third of the outer hair cells. The degeneration is most marked in the second (2) and the third (3) rows. (Magnification 1250)

losses, are roughly paralleled by a progression of changes in the non-sensory elements of the organ of Corti.

In the cochlea displaying the minimal diffuse type of damage with occasional single hair cells missing here and there (Fig. 39) there is generally no noticeable change in the supporting elements. The next identifiable stage shows a more pronounced loss of sensory cells, involving groups of adjacent cells in one, two or all three rows of outer hair cells (Fig. 40). In such instances if the damage involves the first row predominantly or in combination with the other two, a few outer pillar cells may also be lost in the same area (Fig. 41). If the damage extends to and involves the inner hair cells also, the change in supporting elements is usually more pronounced, often including inner as well as outer pillar cells. It must be noted, however, that pillar cell damage does not invariably occur even with extensive hair cell degeneration (Figs. 42-43-44). On the other hand, a sensory cell lesion of similar extent may be associated with collapse of the Hensen cells and all other supporting elements outside the tunnel of Corti. In which case the collapsed portion is then replaced by a single layer of flat polygonal cells. Such a lesion may follow loss of the first row of corresponding inner hair cells.

Still another example is shown in a circumscribed region where both inner and outer hair cells are lost in this region showing an organ of Corti completely collapsed and in which the Hensen cells are retained and appear-

IHC



Fig. 43. Organ of Corti of 73-year-old man (cochlea II 109 R, Fig. 57) surface preparation half-coiled (11 mm) from the basal end about a extended generation of birth lane (IHC) and note (1, 2, 3) H I cells. Three inner and eight outer hair cells present (Magnification 1250).

ance of near-normality. Such lesion tends to be limited to a linear distance of less than 1 mm and when the inner and outer hair cells are lost over a distance of more than 1 mm the whole corresponding region of the organ of Corti is usually almost cell poor. This type is often seen in the middle third of a millimeter of the cochlea but with complete collapse the pattern of phalangeal scars can still be identified in the remnants of reticular membrane still present. On the other hand similar irreversible lesions elsewhere than in the basal end tend to be limited to what differently in that the organ of Corti is largely replaced by a thin layer of polygonal cells, no reticular membrane remains, and hence the characteristic phalangeal scar pattern cannot be seen.

The testicular membrane covered the hair cell region of the organ of Corti in all of the cochleae studied (Fig. 6). In the course of dissection in some specimens it was found that the hair tuft of the outer hair cell adhered to the membrane. The sites of attachment between sensory hairs and testicular membrane were usually identified upon removal of the membrane by virtue of the imprint left on it and replaced. The hair bundles of the three first row of outer sensory cells are connected with the outer part of the membrane by

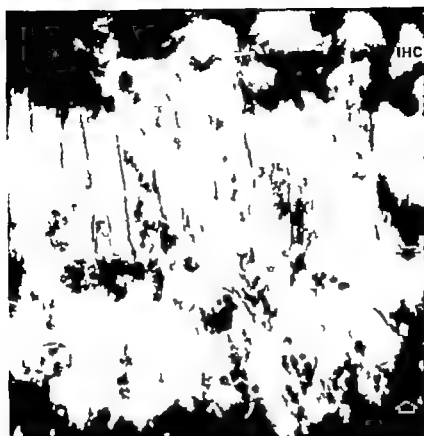


Fig. 44. Organ of Corti of 93-year-old man (cochlea II 90 L, Fig. 52), surface preparation from the apical coil (2 mm from pex) showing the lateral part of the hair cells. The inner hair cell is still present and the hair cell is located (IHC). The outer hair cell is (between arrows) shown as an irregular framework of supporting cells. (Magnification  $\times 1,45$ )

third row being just at the border of the Reissner's membrane (Figs 46 and 47). The W-shape of the arrangement of hairs is clearly visible. The fourth and fifth rows make contact with the Reissner's membrane. No similar sign of contact between hairs of the inner hair cells and the tectorial membrane was observed.

In areas where the organ of Corti was completely degenerated the tectorial membrane was always observed in a fairly normal position, i.e., it was never depressed towards the basilar membrane nor folded toward the Reissner's membrane.

### 3. Nerves in the osseous spiral lamina

In the late fetal and in the premature material the radial nerve fibers appear evenly distributed in dense bundles throughout the cochlea except that in the most basal millimeter they are more sparse. The spirally running bundles can be discerned but their course and size are difficult to evaluate as the more densely distributed radial fibers tend to obscure them.

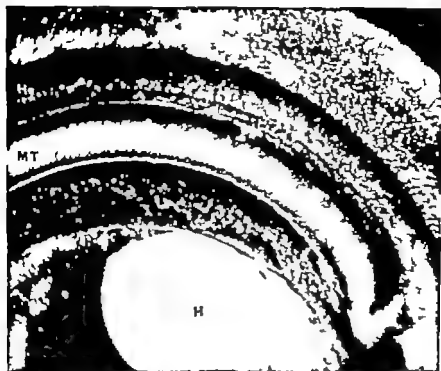


Fig. 45. The most apical quarter of a coil of the osseous spiral lamina with associated organ of Corti and basilar membrane. The tectorial membrane (MT) covers the hairy cell area of the organ of Corti. Between this membrane and the area of the Hensen cells there is a narrow region which contains only hair cells of the fourth and fifth row and is covered by the Barotzaverts. The basilar membrane is seen outside of the Hensen cell area. H indicates the helicotrema. (Magnification 40).

It must be emphasized that in the present study the evaluation of nerve supply was based on observation of the nerve bundles in the osseous spiral lamina as seen in whole preparations or in surface specimens. It is not possible, therefore, to offer any precise quantitative information on innervation density. Nevertheless, the overall view of the innervation gives a fairly accurate estimate of density and regional differences, especially well displayed.

In the newborn the radial bundles in the most basal few millimeters of the osseous spiral lamina show a lower density toward the basal end, the only deviation from the otherwise uniform distribution. With increasing age there is a rarefaction added which becomes more pronounced and extends further apicawards. In older age groups this degeneration is often complete in the most basal 2–3 mm. This phenomenon extends above this limit only in very few cochleae (e.g., Fig. 53). With ageing, a slight rarefaction extends through all the basal coils and beyond the age of 50 may spread even further apicawards (Figs. 49–53).

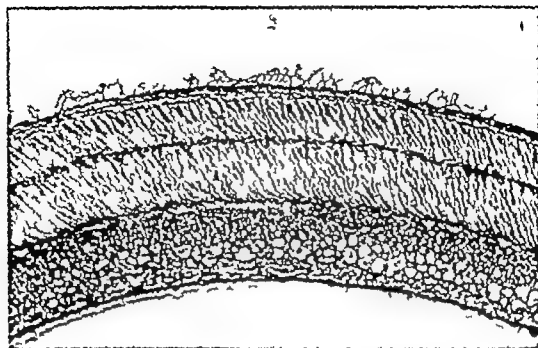


Fig. 46. Testis membrane removed from the upper middle coil as seen from its outer surface. From top downward are seen the filamentous Randfaserets, the row stripe of Henzen (H), and the relatively broad renal contact with the pial limbus (L) (Magnification 115).

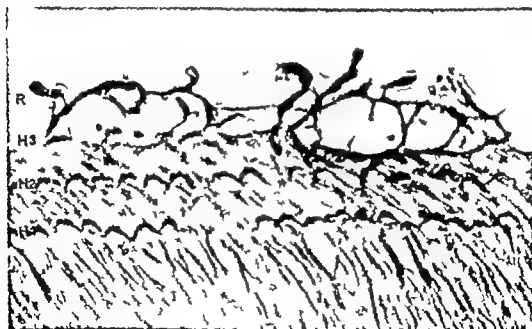


Fig. 47. Peripheral to the testis membrane one and half coil from the basal end showing the upper (H) of the H bundles of the first three renal contact with the Randfaserets (R) although no such contact can be seen in this particular specimen. (Magnification 115).

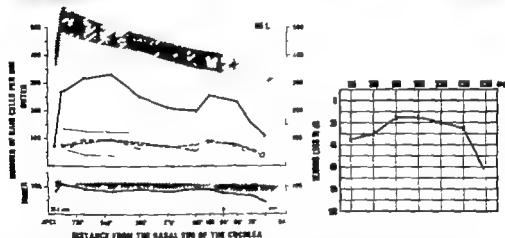


Fig 48 Cochlea from an aged 36 years, basal coil. No history of noise exposure or middle ear disease. Autopsy diagnosis: hypernephroma, cardioatherosclerosis, no major renal infarction. Treated for 2 months with the cytotoxic agent cyclophosphamide (Endoxan) to total dosage of 2 g.

The cochlea shows an even distribution of nerve bundles throughout the various spiral laminae. Only the basal coil of the cochlea is shown in this photograph. The arrow indicates the first coil from the basal end, lower which the middle and pleural coil have been removed.

The graph shows an overall reduction of outer hair cells which is accentuated at base and apex. I add (also) there is circumscribed reduction in the density of outer hair cells in the region 180-360. The inner hair cells reduction in density is the lower total number of hair cells: outer 220, inner 26.8. Length of the organ of Corti, 31.2 mm. See page 6 for an explanation of the symbols used in the present graph and audiogram, and in those which follow.

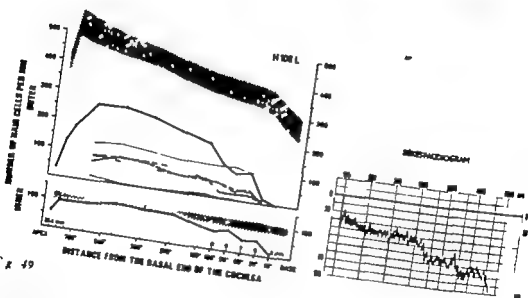


Fig. 49

Fig. 49 and 50 (left) cell population graphs, pure tone audiogram and DeLury audiogram from man aged 80 years. Exposed to noise from rock-blaster and machine-gun. Autopsy showed bronchial carcinoma, cardiomegaly, and myocardial infarction. Treated with 1-9 g. streptomycin. Left ear deaf (left ear audiogram with balance).

The left cochlea (Fig. 49) has pronounced degeneration of outer hair cells in the basal end (0-10 mm) and slight or full degeneration extending throughout the cochlea. In the middle and the degenerated region. The right cochlea showed similar changes.

(continued on p. 5)

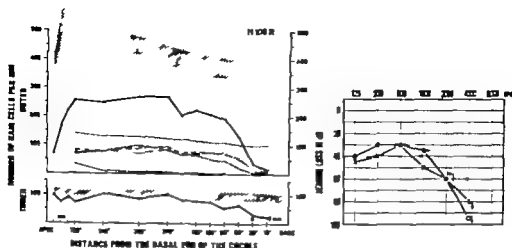


Fig. 50

The sensory cell populations show similar patterns in both ears (left ear Fig. 49; right ear Fig. 50). Outer hair cell extensive degeneration throughout all coils. The basal loss is more pronounced than that at the apex. Inner hair cells basal degeneration extending to 270. Number of hair cells left ear: outer 5100; inner 2610; right ear: outer 6250; inner 2150. Length of the organ of Corti left ear 31.8 mm; right ear not measured, so that the numbers of sensory cells in this ear correspond to the average length of 34.0 mm.

Pure tone audiogram of both ears is shown in Fig. 54. Bellamy audiogram of the right ear was similar to that of the left ear shown in Fig. 49. Speech discrimination score 56%; speech threshold, 50 dB in both ears.

Several cochleas showed fairly large, circumscribed areas of complete loss of nerves in the basal coil. The distribution of these lesions is somewhat patchy (Figs. 53-56 and 89). In only one pair of cochleas (Fig. 59 and 60) is such a degeneration seen further apically. These ears show a patchy loss of nerve fibers throughout the entire cochlea. In some cases the loss is complete whereas in others the degeneration is partial. In the apical coils, circumscribed areas of rarefaction of nerve supply in the osseous spiral lamina was observed in some cochleas.

In addition to the extensive lesions mentioned above, there occurs in about one-fourth of the cochleas small circumscribed areas of neural rarefaction in complete loss of nerve fibers. The type of degeneration is often visible only in the region close to the helicotrema perforated and the lesions are seldom more than 0.5 mm in width. They may be multiple in coil.

As mentioned previously the spirally running fibers in the osseous spiral lamina were difficult to identify in cochleas with largely intact radial nerves. From studies in cochleas showing varying extent of degeneration in the radial nerve fibers (Figs. 49-53 and 60) the distribution of the radial fibers seem to offer considerable variability. The bundles vary in thickness and number. In the most basal quart of coil (0-90°) the peripheral bundles are few in coil. In cochlea N H 109 R (Fig. 3) where the degeneration of radial fibers is ten times as great as the peripheral fibers also tend to



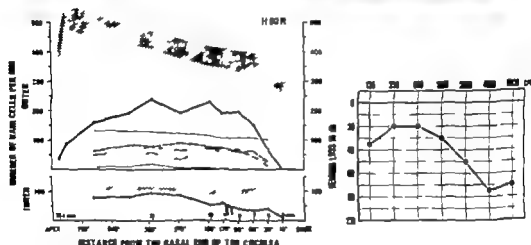


Fig. 51. Right cochlea from man aged 93 years. N. history of noise-induced hearing loss. A. histology of noise-induced hearing loss.

The cochlea shows complete loss of nerve fibers in the basal 3 mm. The density of nerves gradually increases up to 270 (1 mm) and then remains relatively constant at this position and toward the apex. In the region between 90 and 125 (9–11 mm) there is a complete loss of nerves, and in the region between 125 and 180 (11–13 mm) few nerves remain.

Outer hair cell population is lost, more pronounced at the periphery than at the base. Inner hair cell basal degeneration extending to 270 (21 mm) and in the region between 90 and 125 (9–11 mm) about 0.3 mm wide and corresponding to an area of nerve fiber loss, the inner hair cells are also extensively degenerated. Number of hair cells is 3700/mm<sup>2</sup> in the length of the organ of Corti 31.8 mm.

Note that although the degeneration of outer hair cells is more pronounced than at the base there is a slight hearing loss of low tones.

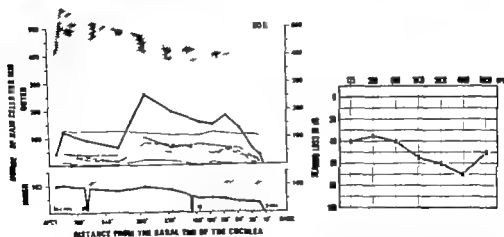


Fig. 52. Left cochlea with graph of sensory cell population and audiogram, from the same subject. Fig. 51. The nerve bundles in the osseous spiral lamina show overall degeneration in all of the right ear. In narrow regions, 14 mm and 28 mm respectively from the basal end, the nerve bundles are more grossly rarefied.

The hair cells show degeneration, leaving in the apical 10 mm only about 70% of the cells. In the basal degeneration extending up to 70% in two areas, 0.1 mm and 0.8 mm width, there is almost complete loss of cell corresponding to the nerve fiber loss. Number of hair cells outer 1250; inner 173. Length of the organ of Corti 35 mm.

The audiogram shows more pronounced peripheral loss of outer hair cell and more severe hearing impairment of low tones than the right ear.

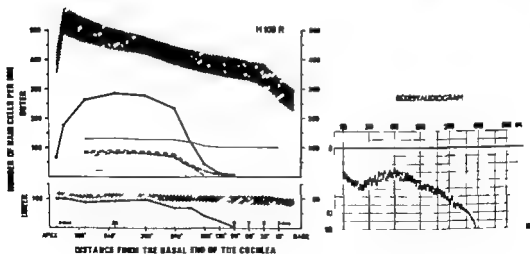


Fig. 53

Figs. 53 and 54. Male aged 35. A history of noise exposure and disease. A biopsy diagnosed bronchitis, pneumonia, bacterial endocarditis, and acute heart failure.

The cochlea shows almost complete degeneration of nerve fibers and of the organ of Corti in the lower half of the right cochlea (Fig. 53). Inner and outer hair cells pronouncedly degenerated in the middle half of the right cochlea (Fig. 54). (Hear 1900; left ear

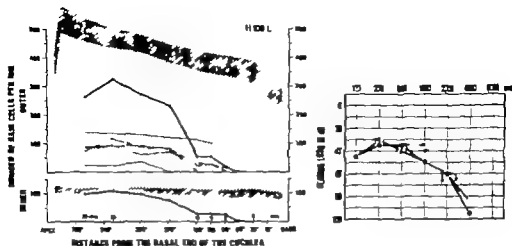


Fig. 54

scale 5010; inner 1850. Length of the organ of Corti: right, 33.8 mm; left, 35.4 mm. Pure tone audiogram of both ears is shown in Fig. 54. Background audiogram of the left ear was similar to that of the right ear shown in Fig. 53. Speech discrimination score: right, 100%; left, 60%.

disappears. In cochlea H 3 II (Fig. 5) no spiral bundles are evident in the lower basal coil (0–180°) and no fibers cross the region of complete degeneration of the radial fibers. In another cochlea (Fig. 57) showing a large area of total loss of both radial fibers and organ of Corti, several bundles of spiral fibers are seen to run through the corresponding region of the osseous spiral lamina.

#### 4. Relationship between lesions in the organ of Corti and degeneration of nerve fibers in the osseous spiral lamina

A complete loss of both inner and outer hair cells in a wide or narrow segment of the organ of Corti was invariably associated with an absence of radial nerve fibers in the corresponding sector of the osseous spiral lamina. This was observed in the basal end of every cochlea studied. Other examples were found in cochleas showing areas of circumscribed degeneration (Figs 3–5, 83).

A complete loss of, or reduction in density of outer hair cells only, was never associated with a noticeable rarefaction or loss of radial nerve fibers in the corresponding sector of the osseous spiral lamina. This relation is well illustrated in cochlea N H 10 L (Fig. 58) showing large areas of extension

of outer hair cells, whilst the inner hair cells are nearly intact. The number of radial nerve fibers in the corresponding sector of the osseous spiral lamina does not differ markedly from that of neighbouring regions which show considerable fiber density of outer hair cells.

A complete loss of, or a reduction in the number of inner hair cells in a

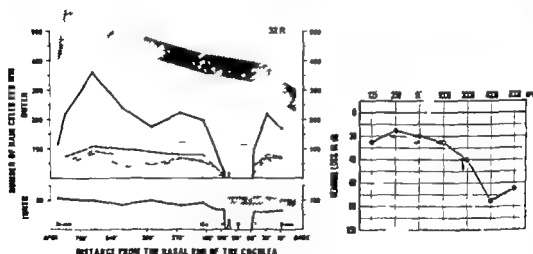
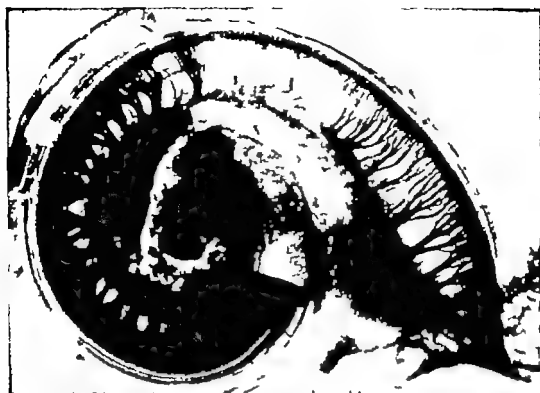


Fig. 55. Cochlea from male aged 3 yrs. R. known history of noise exposure disease. A top: d. anoxia carcinoma of larynx, irradiated and treated with cytotoxic drugs. The cochlea shows two areas of total degeneration both in the nerves and in the organ of Corti. N. b. between these areas bundle of nerve fibers run out to the organ of Corti which some inner hair cell and very few outer hair cell in the corresponding area. N. c. from the area of total loss of sensory cell the outer hair cell population shows an overall decrease which is accentuated in the region between 360 and 510. Number of hair cells per mm. 1000 inner hair cells. Length of the organ of Corti, 33.0 mm.

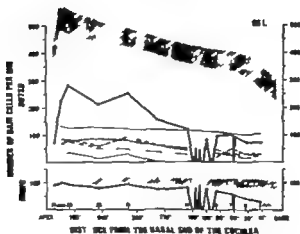
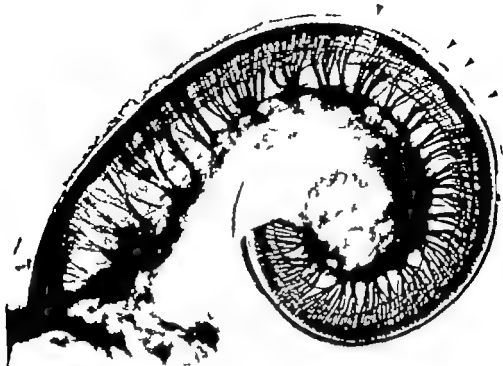


Fig. 56. Cochlea and graph of sensory cell population from a woman aged 86 years. Autopsy diagnosis: cirrhosis of the liver.

The cochlea shows overall degeneration of nerve fibers most marked at the base. Outer hair cells: most degeneration. Moreover there is patchy degeneration of nerves and the corresponding rows of the organ of Corti (arrows). Number of hair cells: outer 4350, inner 2000. Length of the organ of Corti, 32.0 mm.

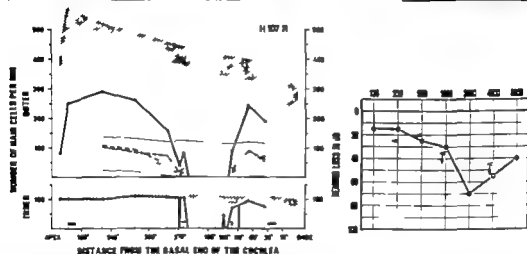
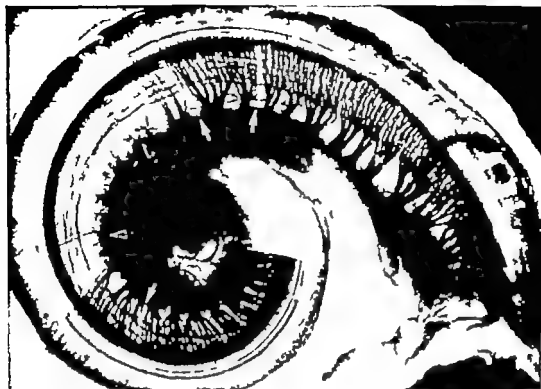


Fig 5—Right cochlea from mouse aged 1 year. Exposed during life to high intensity noise in ear-canal for many years. Autopsy diagnosis: carcinoma of the stomach. Treated with total dose of 6 g. <sup>90</sup>Sr.

The cochlea shows almost complete degeneration of radial nerves in the osseous spiral lamina as well as corresponding degeneration of the ganglion of Corti. The region between 135 and 170 (10.5 mm—11 mm) only a few thin radial nerve bundles are found in this region of complete degeneration (black arrow) in related segment of the ganglion of Corti. A few inner hair cells are present whereas all outer hair cells have degenerated. Note that some spiral running nerve bundles pass through this region of the osseous spiral lamina and end in the broad area of gross degeneration there. The three arrows show degenerating (white arrow) in the corresponding regions of the ganglion of Corti the inner hair cell remains. There is an overall picture of slight trophy in the radial nerve fibers throughout. Number of hair cells out of 11,000 in the 150 length of the ganglion of Corti 31,000.

The pattern of degeneration compares well with the changes in the cochlea.

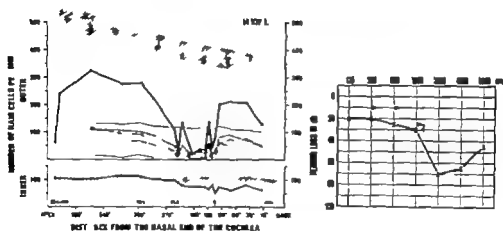


Fig. 28. The left cochlea from the same subject as in Fig. 5. The audiogram also be run less than 10 db in the right ear. Note the striking difference between the two in the presence of the nerve bundles in the various spiral laminae, with no circumstances described elsewhere in the ear. The population of outer hair cells, however, this ear shows pronounced degeneration in the region corresponding to that of total degeneration in the right ear. Note that the same hair cell has almost no degeneration in this ear as in the right ear. Number of hair cells outer 5510 inner 2190 Length of the organ of Corti 33.8 mm.



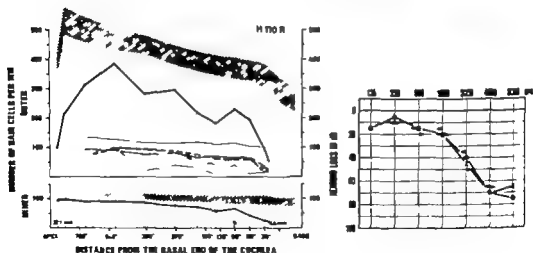
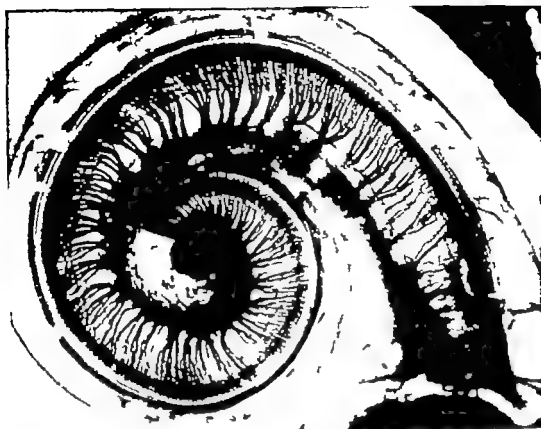


Fig. 59

Figs. 59 and 60. Right and left cochlea from male aged 81 years. No history of noise exposure or disease. Autopsy diagnosis: cancer of the esophagus. Treated with total laryngectomy.

Both cochleas show pronounced patchy degeneration of nerve fibers throughout. The sensory cell populations are well preserved if the age and did not show any patchy degeneration. Number of hair cells: right ear outer 283 inner 2205 left ear outer 698 inner 2260. Length of the organ of Corti: right, 33.5 mm; left, 33.8 mm.

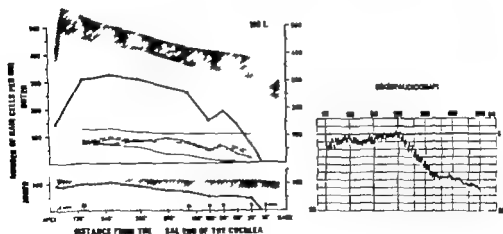
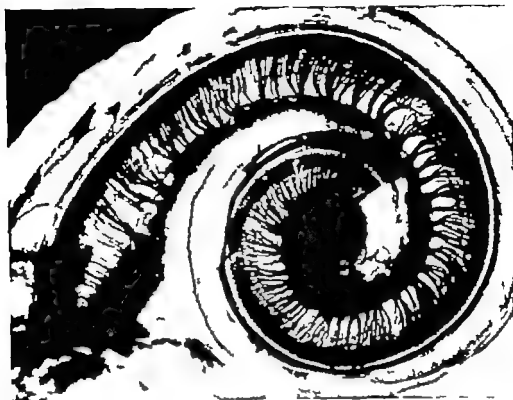


Fig. 57

The pure tone audiogram for both ears is shown in Fig. 59. The Bekesy audiogram for the right ear is similar to that for the left shown in Fig. 60. There is diminished discrimination between the frequencies of 2000 cps and above. The speech discrimination score was 60 for the right ear and 81 for the left. Speech thresholds were 23 and 25 dB respectively.

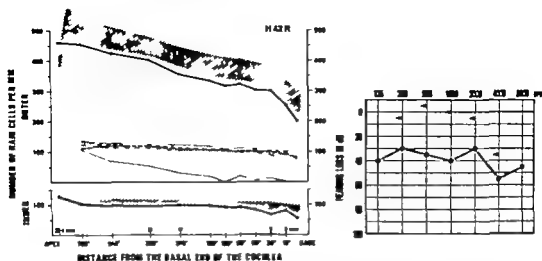
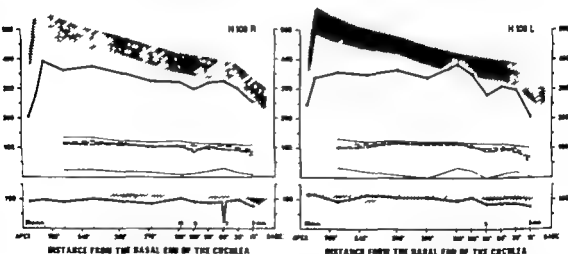


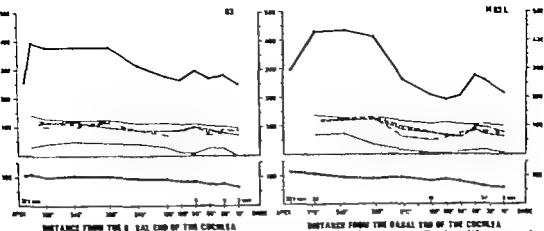
Fig. 61. Male, aged 18 years. N history of noise exposure. Cochlear disease. Autopsy diagnosis: anaplastic carcinoma of the nose. Treated with irradiation and cytotoxic drugs.

Outer hair cells: light, diffusely spread degeneration throughout all coils. Several early stages of reparation (collapse figures) were found (see Fig. 9). In some places, groups of sensory and supporting cells were degenerated (see Fig. 41). A few inner hair cells were lost. Number of hair cells: outer 11935; inner 3080. Length of the organ of Corti 33.8 mm. Nerve supply of the osseous spiral lamina normal.

The pure tone audiogram shows conductive hearing loss which is similar for both ears. Bone conduction almost normal. The middle ears were filled with transudate. A audiogram obtained six months earlier showed normal conduction. Speech discrimination score 90%.

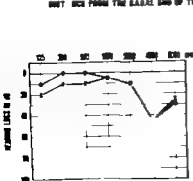
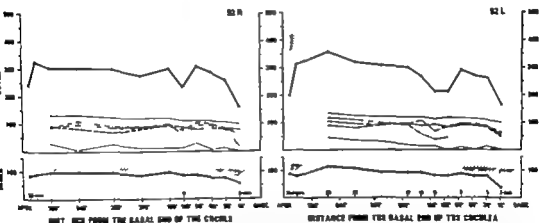


Figs. 62 and 63. Male, aged 35. N history of noise exposure. Cochlear disease. Autopsy diagnosis: diabetes mellitus with neuropathy, retinopathy, and renal failure. Outer hair cells: light overall degeneration which is more accentuated towards the periphery of the right (Fig. 62) the inner hair cells are almost completely degenerated in a narrow region (14 mm wide) 1.60 (mm) from the basal end. Nerve fibers of the osseous spiral lamina normal throughout both cochleae. Number of hair cells: right ear outer 1010 inner 3870 left ear outer 10100 inner 115. Length of the organ of Corti: right, 31.8 mm; left, 31.0 mm. Pure tone audiogram is shown. Speech discrimination scores were normal in both ears.



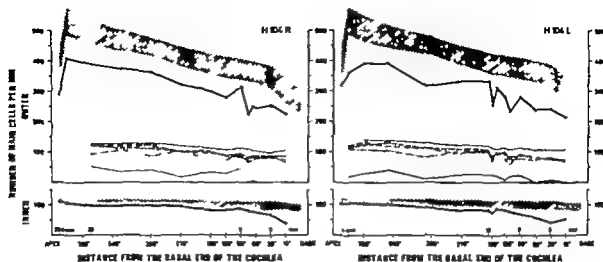
Figs. 61 and 63. Man aged 29 years. During life exposed to high intensity noise in shipyard for several years. Autopsy diagnosis: bronchial carcinoma. Treated with  $\text{LiCl}$  and x-ray.

Right ear (Fig. 61) overall reduction in density of outer hair cells in the region between 135 and 200 (11–12 mm), the degeneration is slightly more pronounced. Left (Fig. 63) pronounced circumscribed degeneration of outer hair cells in the region between 90 and 200 (9–11 mm). In the third row outer hair cell is more damaged than the other rows. Number of hair cells: right ear outer 18210; inner 3020; left ear outer 9700; inner 2815. Length of the organ of Corti: right, 31.5 mm; left, 33.3 mm.



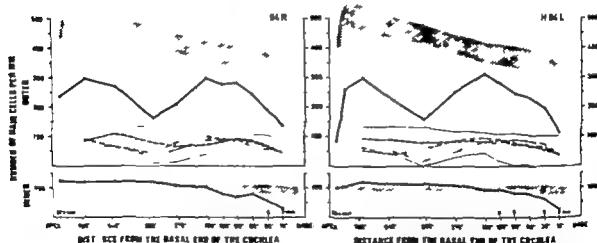
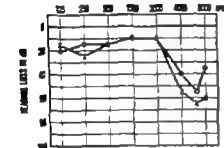
Figs. 64 and 66. A 53 year old mechanic who for several years was exposed to high intensity noise in workshop. Autopsy diagnosis: bronchial carcinoma. Treated with total dose of 4.6 g. Semdoxan.

Right ear (Fig. 64) overall degeneration of outer hair cells which is slightly more pronounced towards the apex. Also in circumscribed region at 135 (11 mm) the degeneration was more severe. Left ear (Fig. 66) similar findings but the circumscribed degeneration of outer hair cell was slightly more pronounced at 135 (11–12 mm). The third row was more damaged than the other rows. There were no major changes in the nerve supply in the various spiral laminae. Number of hair cells: right ear outer 8350; inner 2850; left ear outer 9320; inner 2970. Length of the organ of Corti: right, not possible to measure; left, 35. mm.



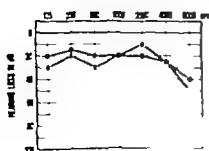
Figs. 68 and 69. 31-year-old 53-year-old. During life exposed for many years to industrial noise. Autopsy diagnosis: pulmonary carcinoma. Treated with cytotoxic drugs.

Right (Fig. 68) and left cochlea (Fig. 69) overall loss of outer hair cells in the region between 60 and 180 there were local variations in density of cells in the hair cells moderate basal loss. Nerve fibers in the osseous spiral lamina no apparent changes. Number of hair cells right on outer 1011; inner 2860 left on outer 9380; inner 2560. Length of the organ of Corti right, 31.3 mm; left, 30.9 mm.



Figs. 70 and 71. 31-year-old 63-year-old. Exposed for many years to noise in the engine room of diesel motor ship. Autopsy diagnosis: pulmonary carcinoma. Treated with dose of 1.6 g. 5-Fluorouracil.

Right (Fig. 70) and left cochlea (Fig. 71) overall reduction of the density of outer hair cells and in addition wide circumscribed area of more pronounced loss between 0.8 and 1.0 (1-2.5 mm). Inner hair cells moderate basal loss. Not that although the major loss of outer hair cells was found in the middle and apical coils, the hearing loss for the high frequencies slightly more pronounced than for the low frequencies. Number of hair cells right on outer 120 mm 3073 left on outer 900 mm 3023. Length of the organ of Corti right 33.3 mm left, 33.1 mm.



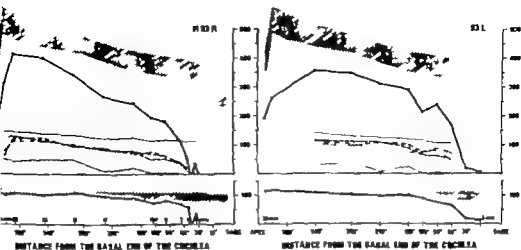


Fig. 2 and 3 Man aged 63 years. Exposed during life to high intensity noise in shipyard many years. Autopsy diagnosis bronchial carcinoma. Treated with dose of 74 g. <sup>90</sup>SrCl<sub>2</sub>.

Right cochlea (Fig. 2) mainly basal degeneration of both inner and outer hair cells. Left cochlea (Fig. 3) similar findings but slightly more pronounced overall degeneration of the outer hair cells. Number of hair cells right ear (outer 310; inner 2510; left ear outer 8000 inner 3700). Length of the organ of Corti right, 32.2 mm; left not measured.

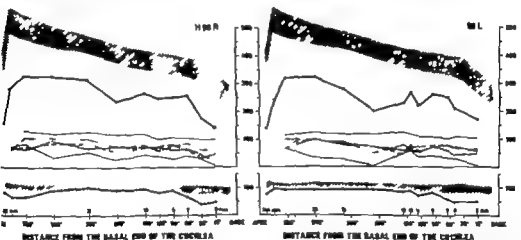


Fig. 4 and 5 Man aged 61. No history of noise exposure. Diagnosis bronchial carcinoma. Treated with 11 g. <sup>90</sup>SrCl<sub>2</sub>. Nerve fibers in the various spiral laminae complete loss in the basal 2 mm; density gradually increasing up to 180 (13 mm). <sup>90</sup>SrCl<sub>2</sub> treated area of nerve loss occurs together with loss of few inner hair cells in corresponding segments. In the pleural coil a trace of accentuated nerve loss. Secondary cell. Outer overall loss, more pronounced at 20 (1 mm). Inner basal and apical loss. Number of cells right ear outer 835; inner 2625; left ear outer 180; inner 2110. Length of the organ of Corti right, not measured; left, 32.5 mm. Audiometry conductive hearing loss in the right ear (large dry perforation of the tympanic membrane). <sup>90</sup>Speech discrimination score 6/10 both ears.

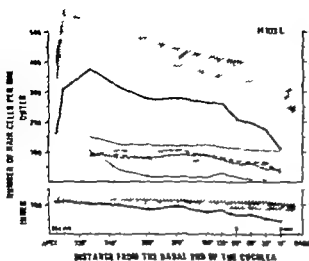


Fig. 6

Fig. 6 M and O J. A. N. histology of male exposure ear disease Autopsy diagnosis bronchial carcinoma The cochlea has moderate basal degeneration of outer hair cells; the inner spiral lamina. Outer hair cells: overall degeneration, slightly more pronounced toward the basal end. Inner hair cells: moderate basal degeneration. Number of hair cells outer 8370; inner 2600. Length of the organ of Corti, 31.6 mm.

Fig. 7 Population of sensory II of the organ of Corti from newborn, 11-term child who died of acute birth trauma. There is slight degeneration of sensory cell I in the cochlea. Note that the density of cells increases with that of the I material (the striped area). Number of hair cells outer 13850 inner 3235. The length of the organ of Corti was not measured.

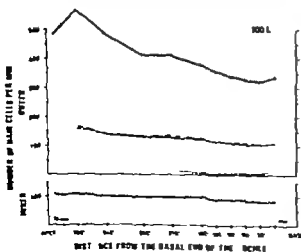
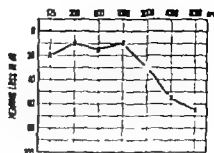


Fig. 7



Figs. 8 and 9 Male aged 5 years. Autopsy diagnosis leukemia. Treated for 1 year with corticosteroids and the cytotoxic drug pirarubicin. The sensory cell populations show in both ears (right, Fig. 8; left, Fig. 9) slight degeneration of outer hair cells; the middle cells; the right the outer hair cells were completely degenerated in the region between 5 and 10 mm from the basal end. This degeneration showed the early stages of repair (cell per figures) indicating that the lesion occurred not too long before death. Number of hair cells right outer 12730; inner 3100; left outer 13520; inner 3140. Length of the organ of Corti right, 36.0 mm; left 36.6 mm.

Figs. 80 and 81 Woman aged 33 years. Autopsy diagnosis carcinoma of the breast with metastases. Treated with cytotoxic drugs. The sensory cell populations show in both ears (right, Fig. 80; left, Fig. 81) slight overall degeneration of outer hair cells. Moderate signs of repair (cell per figures). Number of hair cells right outer 11875; inner 3000; left outer 10620; inner 2960. Length of the organ of Corti right, 33.1 mm; left, 33.5 mm.

Fig. 82 Male aged 31 years. Autopsy diagnosis intestinal carcinoma (metastases of the mesenteric root). The outer hair cells have moderate basal and apical degeneration only. Number of hair cells outer 11880; inner 3270. Length of the organ of Corti, 33.6 mm.

Fig. 83 Male aged 31 years. Autopsy diagnosis malignant tumor of the testis with metastases. Treated with cytotoxic drugs. The cochlea has a circumscribed region of complete degeneration of the organ of Corti and the nerves of the corresponding segment of the inner spiral lamina. The outer hair cells show slight degeneration, as is accentuated toward the base. Number of hair cells outer 9250, inner 2700. The length of the organ of Corti was not measured.

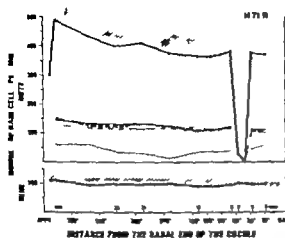


Fig. 78.

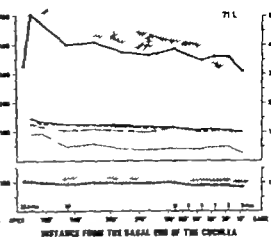


Fig. 79.

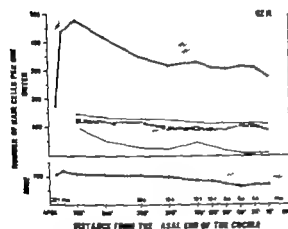


Fig. 80.

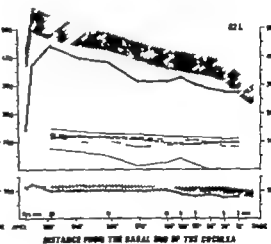


Fig. 81.

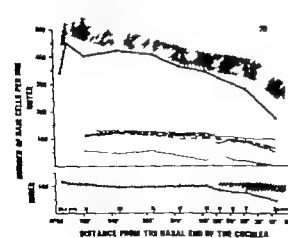


Fig. 82.

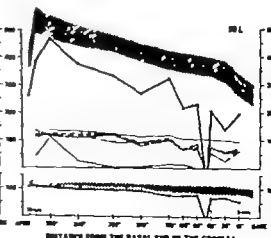


Fig. 83.



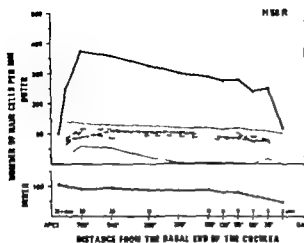


Fig. 81

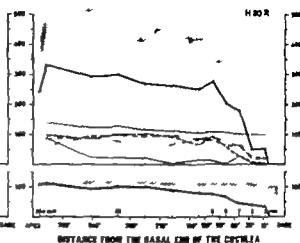


Fig. 82

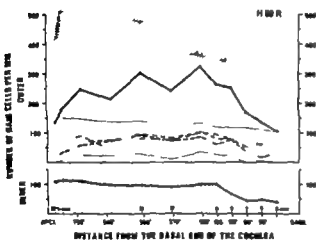


Fig. 83

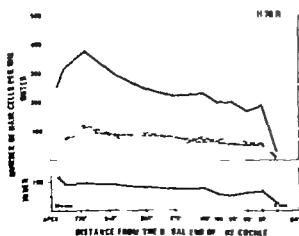


Fig. 84

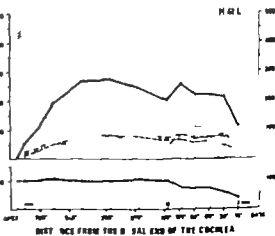


Fig. 85

region of the organ of Corti with intact outer hair cells was with one exception, correlated with a loss, or rarefaction of the nerve fibers in the corresponding sector of the osseous spiral lamina. This pattern of degeneration was observed in about 60 autopsies, in 10 cochleae. The lesions were less than 1 mm in length, usually 0.1—0.4 mm. Often a rarefaction of nerve fibers was noticeable in zones corresponding to a loss of only 3—4 neighbouring inner hair cells. The supporting cells were generally normal. The single exception to this pattern was observed in cochlea No. H 108 R (Fig. 6\*) showing a circumscribed zone of degeneration (about 0.4 mm in length) of the inner hair cells, in which a few scattered cells remained intact. The nerve fibers showed normal density.

Another aspect of the relation between nerve fibers and hair cells is illustrated in cochleae showing a patchy degeneration of nerves and organ of Corti (e.g. Figs. 55—57, 89). The small intact areas of the organ of Corti surrounded by completely degenerated areas, are supplied each with its own bundle of radial nerves. The outer hair cells are almost completely degenerated whereas the inner hair cells have sustained relatively less pronounced damage. In cochlea H 10 R (Fig. 7\*) there is a large degenerated area within which were two small islands with respectively two and three inner hair cells. Even these had small bundles of 15 and 20 nerve fibers respectively.

Fig. 81. Woman aged 68 years. No history of noise exposure or ear disease. Autopsy diagnosis: carcinoma of the large intestine. The nerve supply in the osseous spiral lamina shows moderate basal degeneration and more pronounced demyelination in the spiral coil. Outer hair cells overall degeneration, inner hair cells basal degeneration. Number of hair cells outer 9475; inner 700. Length of the organ of Corti, 3.1 mm.

Fig. 85. Man aged 68 years. No history of noise exposure or ear disease. Autopsy diagnosis: atherosclerosis, acute left ventricular dilatation. The nerve supply in the osseous spiral lamina shows an overall rarefaction, more accentuated towards the basal end. Outer hair cells overall degeneration which is more pronounced towards the basal end, inner hair cells basal degeneration. Number of hair cells outer 8515; inner 2960. Length of the organ of Corti, 3.6 mm.

Fig. 86. Woman aged 69 years. No history of noise exposure or ear disease. Autopsy diagnosis: bronchopneumonia and atherosclerosis. The nerve supply in the osseous spiral lamina shows an overall rarefaction which is more pronounced towards the base. Outer hair cells degeneration which increases from the base 100% towards both the basal and the apical ends, inner hair cells basal degeneration. Number of hair cells outer 315; inner 2733. Length of the organ of Corti, 3.5 mm.

Fig. 87. Woman aged 5 years. No history of noise exposure or ear disease. Autopsy diagnosis: gangrene of the small intestine and atherosclerosis. The nerve fibers in the osseous spiral lamina show slight overall rarefaction, more pronounced towards the base. Outer hair cells overall degeneration, inner hair cells moderate degeneration, more accentuated towards the base. Number of hair cells outer 430; inner 238. Length of the organ of Corti, 3.8 mm.

Fig. 88. Man aged 61 years. No history of noise exposure or ear disease. Autopsy diagnosis: carcinoma of the oesophagus treated with cytostatic drugs. The nerve fibers in the osseous spiral lamina show moderate overall degeneration, accentuated towards the base. Outer hair cells overall degeneration which increases towards the apex, inner hair cells moderate basal degeneration. Number of hair cells outer 6660; inner 2890. Length of the organ of Corti, 3.1 mm.



Fig. 89 *Obesus* spiral lamina and associated basilar membrane and organ of Corti of an 86-year-old woman (cochlea II 53 I Fig. 56) surface preparation half-coil (11 mm) from the basal end of the specimen; the radial nerve bundles running in the *Obesus* spiral lamina are rarefied and the organ of Corti in the corresponding region is completely degenerated leaving bare basal membrane (M. Guilford 80)



Fig. 90 *Obesus* spiral lamina and associated organ of Corti of 80-year-old man (cochlea II 110 R Fig. 39) surface preparation of the upper basal coil (11 mm). The radial nerve bundles within lamina show patchy degeneration. To the right the bundles are completely missing. The appearance of narrowing of the corresponding part of the organ of Corti (arrow) indicates trophic atrophy of the supporting cells between the inner hair cell and the sulcus saccus (M. Guilford 80)

running out to them. In this instance the outer hair cell were completely degenerated and the supporting cell extensively so.

In one pair of cochleae (Fig. 59, 60, 90) loss of nerve fibers was not associated with a corresponding loss of sensory cells. These cochleae showed extensive patchy degeneration of the nerves throughout whereas the sensory cell populations failed to show corresponding gaps.

### Discussion

The fetal cochlea was used in this study as a reference base for comparison and estimation of the cell degeneration in the postnatal cochlea. This may appear questionable to some but there is certain justification and certain reasons for relying on the fetal cochlea as a control. The justification rests primarily on the lack of any other choice. The fetal and newborn cochleae were the only ones seen which were normal in the sense of not showing degenerated hair cells. As discussed in detail in part A of this chapter loss of sensory cells apparently does not occur normally in the fetal cochlea. The full complement of sensory cells seems to be attained late in the fourth fetal month, the only changes which take place thereafter being in the nature of widening of the organ of Corti concomitantly with the development of fluid spaces. The sensory cell population of the newborn child (Fig. 91) agrees with that of the later fetal cochlea.

It must be emphasized that the reference level in the graphs (the hatched areas) show the range of variation in the number of cells per millimeter length of the organ of Corti as estimated in seven fetuses. As this variation is fairly large, and the number of cochleae small, statistical analysis would not enhance the significance of the data. Accordingly, cochleae may show a

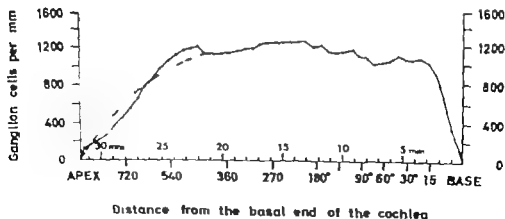


Fig. 91. Density of ganglion cells per mm length of the cochlea (Redrawn from Weiss, 1919, *Theory of Hearing*, Fig. 82).

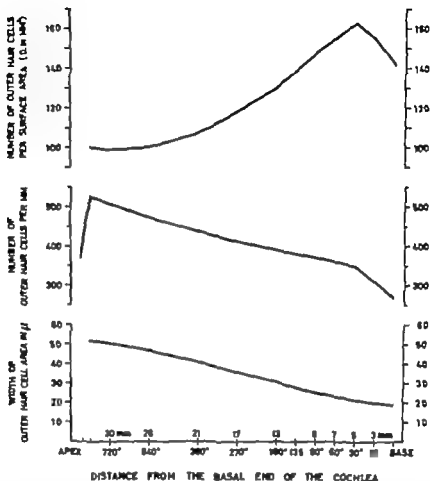


Fig. 92. Graph represents (a) from above, density of outer hair cells per surface area, number of cells per mm length of the organ of Corti, and the width of the outer hair cell row. Note that the density of cells per surface area has its maximum at the base whereas the number of cells per mm has its maximum at the apex. The graph of cell area represents an average of three cochleas. The width of the outer hair cell row represents three cochleas from young adults.

full complement of cells and till the curve may lie outside the hatched area. However, in the first row of outer hair cells the full number of cells can be estimated (see page 1) and accordingly one can evaluate whether or not a loss of cells in these three rows occurs.

The innervation density is measured by ganglion cell count. It is maximum in the upper basal coil and decreases toward the apex (see Fig. 91) (Culdt 193, Weyer 1919, Schuknecht 1960). It has been suggested that this length is tributary of innervation related to threshold sensitivity for pure tones. Threshold sensitivity is maximal at about 2000 cps and diminishes for low and higher frequencies. This does not seem to be in accord with the observation that the hair cell length is measured by cells per millimeter length of the organ of Corti increases toward the apex (Fig. 9). The number of afferent innervation of outer hair cells could be useful for

or even to increase toward the apex (Smith and Sjostrand 1961) this would imply either that the afferent nerve fibers in the middle and apical coils make contact with a considerably larger number of outer hair cells than they do in the basal coil or that they supply each cell with several nerve endings.

Another way of measuring sensory cell density is in terms of the number of cells per surface area. Thus the density of the outer hair cells in the area of contact between the hairs and the tectorial membrane has its maximum at 30° (5 mm from basal end) and decreases towards the apex (Fig. 9\*). This density parameter may be of importance in the mechanical stimulation of the hair cells. The spreading of the hair cells over a larger area (the distance between the inner hair cell row and the first outer row also increases toward the apex) is paralleled by an increase in width of the basilar membrane and size of the organ of Corti including an increase in height of the sensory cells and their hairs.

The total number of cells in each cochlea plotted against the age (Figs. 93 and 94) gives no detailed information as to regional differences of distribution of hair cell loss throughout the cochlea; nevertheless, this graph is a good starting point for discussion of cochlear damage as related to ageing. The cell counts, in general, seem to show a tendency to linear reduction with increasing age, although the range of variation is large, especially over the age of 50. The more extensive loss of outer hair cells than of inner agrees well with the general opinion that outer hair cells are more vulnerable than the inner. Few in the first and second decades of life, loss of outer sensory cells becomes noticeable. This is remarkable when one considers the fact that maximum sensitivity to threshold stimuli by pure tones, and the maximum audible frequency range are attained during the second decade of life. Likewise, the early loss of cells in the cochlea is in tabular comparison with the later appearance of cell degeneration in the brain where normal degeneration begins after the age of 20 (Brody 1955). All of the subjects in the present material between the ages 5 and 32 years suffered from malignant tumors and were treated for 6—9 months with cytotoxic antigens and other drugs. A certain amount of recent degeneration of the sensory cells (collapse-figures) was observed in these cochleas so that it may be possible that the cell loss found can be the result of a toxic effect. Accordingly, it is possible that no major damage has been demonstrated and is normally to be expected at those ages.

In contrast to the signs of recent damage in the young subjects, no such changes were observed in subjects older than 30 years, although most of them also suffered from malignant tumors and were treated with the same kind of drugs. Thus, it seems that the young cochlea may be more vulnerable to the toxic influence more severe in the young subjects. Whatever the reason for this difference in cochlear damage, it seems that the cochleas in the over-30 age groups were less influenced by the treatment and are thus more representative of the normal structure of each cochlea than are those of the younger group.

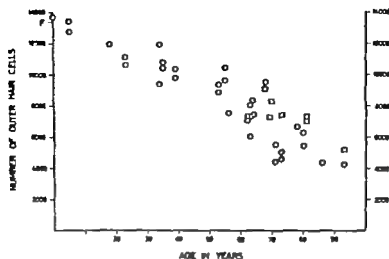


Fig. 93. Relationship between total number of outer hair cells and age.  $\circ$  indicates the cell complement of cells as obtained from females.  $\square$  indicates the cell complement of cells as obtained from males. The squares represent cochleas from normal-hearing subjects.

Pure tone audiogram frequencies included in this study were compared with normal hearing for the age as calculated by Spoor (1967) in his study of 8 audiometric investigation of presbycusis in order to determine to what extent the cochleas may be considered representative for their age. It is evident that the majority of audiogram in the present investigation show threshold frequencies which are higher than those of the calculated presbycusis curves. Several of the audiogram also have a different shape even though they may show normal or better hearing for some frequencies. Nevertheless, four of the cochleas did produce audiogram typical for their age. Several other among the audiogram probably lie within the normal range of variation but were excluded because all showed threshold slightly higher than the calculated average (Spoor 1967). The four normal for age cochleas (Figs. 1, 9, 60, 6) all had sensory cell population which fit into the upper part of the distribution curve for outer hair cell count. This region of the curve also encompasses the cell count for three cochleas from female subjects who had no history of high intensity noise exposure in ear disease (Fig. 81, 86, 8). Thus, there is an apparent tendency for the cochleas which are normal for the age to form the upper portion of the age/cell population curve. This group of cochleas is further characterized by the fact that their inner hair cell count are not markedly different from those of cochleas with more pronounced hearing impairment indicating that the number of inner hair cells in these cases does not correlate with threshold sensitivity for pure tones.

It must be remembered that the threshold for pure tones is only one of the parameters in the overall clinical picture of presbycusis a condition which must be interpreted in the validity of the comparison made in the present

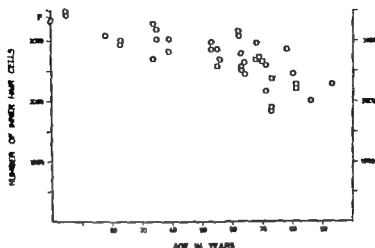


Fig 91 Relationship between the number of inner hair cells and age. F indicates the full complement of cells as obtained from fetal material. The squares represent cochleas from normal-hearing subjects.

going paragraph. It is also important to bear in mind that the term 'presbycusis' is used here in the context of the 'presbycusis' curve for modern civilization and that the cochleas of other populations, such as the Mabaans (Rosen *et al* 1964, 1964) might show a completely different picture of sensory cell populations. It is apparent that the only way to resolve some of the open questions is by the study of many more cochleas from subjects of all ages in whom the hearing has been tested thoroughly and all causes of hearing loss other than presbycusis have been excluded.

The literature contains few reports which convincingly attribute morphological changes in the organ of Corti to ageing. The present investigation indicates that the compression of the organ of Corti in the angiosclerotic degeneration of v. Pflüger and Scharf is an artifact (see page 47). Several studies have described a more or less pronounced atrophy of the organ of Corti in the low basal coil (Fletcher 1931; Crow, Guild and Folvigt 1934; and others) but the relation to ageing has not been clear. Fletcher (1936) has pressed doubt that such a relation could be made. Schuknecht (1955, 1964) reported an atrophy of the organ of Corti and the nerve in the most basal few millimeters of the structural correlation of the type of presbycusis. A corresponding knowledge of the age of onset in almost all of the cochleas in the present material.

If the reduction of sensory cell population without atrophy of the organ of Corti has not been described a relation to ageing. In fact, many reports indicate that the normal life span of very old people the sensory cell populations were intact. Schuknecht (1967) stated: 'Clinical experience is a common type of sensorineural hearing loss which is slowly progressive



during the latter decades of life and is characterized by a descending audiometric curve. Thus far all attempts by light microscopy to find a structural correlate have failed. In the present study however there is found a decrease in the number of sensory cell with increasing age. This reduction in the hair cell population seems to be a constant finding and has a clear relation to age (Fig. 38, 93-94). This does not exclude that other factors may also be of importance in this relation.

It is worth noting that the basal reduction of both inner and outer hair cell occur while the general shape of the organ of Corti is still normal. It is only when the cell loss is almost complete that general collapse occurs. The apical loss of outer hair cell was never associated with a general atrophy of the organ of Corti. Although degeneration of nerves and ganglion cells in the apical coil have been described earlier (Guilford 1935; Covell and Rogers 1957; Lindsay and Schultes 1958; Bernstein and Schuknecht 1961) no mention has been made of a specific degeneration of sensory cells in this region.

The most nearly constant histopathological finding in the cochlea in old age is an atrophy of the spiral ganglion and the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina (Brühl 1901; Manasse 1906; Fabinyi 1931; Fleau and Saxén 1931; Fleischer 1956; Schuknecht 1955, 1961; Jorgensen 1961; Hansen and Reske-Nielsen 1965; Maki-Hima 1961). These descriptions correlate well with the loss of nerves in the osseous spiral lamina seen in the present material. Fleischer (1956) analysed 100 temporal bones from subjects 0-90 years of age and correlated a reduction in density of ganglion cell corresponding to the lower basal coil with increasing age. In the present study both the nerves and the sensory cell in the lower basal coil seem to undergo about the same degree of reduction with ageing as that illustrated by Fleischer's ganglion cell count.

From the discussion above it is evident that a discrepancy exists between previously described morphological changes in the organ of Corti and those of the present investigation. This is probably a result of difference in techniques used, which will be discussed in a later chapter.

Schuknecht (1953, 1961) considered degeneration of ganglion cell and nerves in the osseous spiral lamina to be more crucially affected by the extent of injury suffered by the supporting cell of the organ of Corti, particularly the pillar cell, than by damage to the sensory cell. He suggested that it was a well possible for all the sensory cell in a particular region of the cochlea to disappear while the corresponding spiral ganglion cell remained normal (Schuknecht 1953, 1961). It must be emphasized that these observations were based on experimentally produced damage in animals. In the present study it was found that complete loss of sensory cell in a given segment was invariably accompanied by complete loss of nerves in corresponding segment of the osseous spiral lamina. Furthermore several areas were observed to have sustained a severe loss of pillar cell without a corresponding loss in the upper coil. On the other hand with a single exception all nerves were lost or cut

considerably rarefied in areas corresponding to a loss of inner hair cells. In two small islands of the organ of Corti surrounded by large areas of complete degeneration, two and three inner hair cells respectively were intact, whereas all outer hair cells were lost. About 15 and 20 radial nerve fibers, respectively supplied these areas. As there is no evidence that the afferent nerves in the osseous spiral lamina can survive if the organ of Corti is completely lost, it seems probable that those fibers made connection with the inner hair cells. This would mean that each of these inner hair cells was innervated by at least one radial fiber. Thus the present evidence bespeaks a close correlation between inner hair cell loss and nerve loss. As for the outer hair cells, a severe to total loss of these cells in one region was never associated with any noticeable rarefaction of nerve fibers in the corresponding sector of the osseous spiral lamina, provided that the inner hair cell remained. This is illustrated in cochlea No. H 10 L (Fig. 58).

One possible explanation of this pattern of degeneration would be that the inner hair cells are much more richly innervated than the outer ones. Accordingly a loss of outer hair cells, supplied with relatively small contingents of nerve fibres, would cause a degeneration of nerves which by the present method of study might not be noticeable, whereas a loss of inner hair cells would cause conspicuous change in the innervation density in the osseous spiral lamina. Such an hypothesis is contradictory to most previous studies of the innervation of the cochlea (Retzius, 1884; Cajal 1909—1911; Lorente de N., 193; Fernandez, 1951) which were most previous descriptions indicate that inner hair cells are supplied by radial fibers which run directly to the cells, whereas the outer hair cells are largely innervated by sprouting neurones which run parallel for unknown distances, a single fiber innervating many outer hair cells.

Accordingly any nerve degeneration resulting from outer hair cell damage should be diffused over a widespread zone of the osseous spiral lamina and hence would not be conspicuous. Furthermore since the sprouting neurones are known to have endings on many outer hair cells, distributed over considerable linear distances the statistical chance that all of such a group would be affected by any one lesion is small. This argument is based on the assumption that the relations between hair cells and nerve endings are likely synaptic junctions. Elsewhere it is stated that in cases where multicellular connections are the rule many of those may be destroyed, but so long as certain numbers are intact, the nerve may be sustained.

In summary the pattern of degeneration described in the present study does not necessarily suggest that the outer hair cells are provided separately with afferent fibers. On the other hand, the findings do indicate a close interdependence between inner hair cells and radial nerve fibers. This could be in agreement with the opinion of Spoendlin (1966). He described studies on the cat in which the efferent innervation was sectioned, and found that the greatest number of efferent nerves end on the inner hair cells only about one tenth extending to the outer hair cells. The present study is less than

crucial in this sense as it was not possible to differentiate between efferent and afferent innervation; hence conclusion must be correspondingly cautious.

One important consideration in this discussion is that degeneration of sensory cells can occur within a very short time after damage (probably less than one day) whereas it is generally accepted that complete disappearance of nerve fiber takes a longer time. Laurie Davis and Hawkins (1941) found nerve fiber degeneration 9 days after noise exposure and loss of ganglion cell after 3-4 weeks. In the present investigation no recent signs of sensory cell degeneration were observed in the cases immediately under discussion. After noise exposure of experimental animals, the formation of completely healed lesions in the organ of Corti takes at least a couple of weeks. Accordingly this factor is apparently not relevant in explaining the pattern of degeneration.

It is generally accepted that a lesion to the organ of Corti which is so severe as to cause complete degeneration is associated with a corresponding complete loss of nerves; however the congenitally deaf Dalmatian dog is described as showing a different pattern of degeneration. This animal has an intact population of sensory cells during fetal life (Fig. 9a) but at some time during late fetal life or soon after birth the sensory organ begins to degenerate. This process is reported to end with a complete compression and degeneration of the organ of Corti and its sensory cells whereas the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina and spiral ganglion remain relatively intact (Altmann 1950; Hudson, Durham and Ruben 1960; Andersson *et al.*, 1968). The author has studied three such completely deaf dogs of 8-11 weeks of age using the surface preparation technique. Although the organ of Corti was completely collapsed and the outer hair cells completely degenerated, the inner hair cells remained largely present (Fig. 9). It might be possible that in previous studies made on sections the inner hair cells were not discernible in the compressed organ of Corti whereas they were distinctly seen in surface preparation. Accordingly it might be possible that the presence of inner hair cells accounts for the good supply of nerve in the osseous spiral lamina. This evidence is less than conclusive, however, as it is possible that the Dalmatian dogs studied by the author were too young to have gone through the complete degenerative process. Another consideration is that the mechanism underlying this degeneration is unknown and perhaps quite different from what causes the degeneration described in the human subject of this study.

One pair of cochleae in the present material showed a pronounced nerve degeneration which was not associated with corresponding loss of hair cells (Fig. 9 and 60). It has been known since the beginning of this century that after transection of the cochlear nerve the spiral ganglion and its filaments in the osseous spiral lamina degenerate whereas the organ of Corti remains intact. Spoendlin and Gacek (1963) described electron microscopical studies at which showed that even the afferent nerve endings remain intact after division of the cochlear nerve. These findings suggest that in the human cochlea mentioned above the nerve degeneration was the result

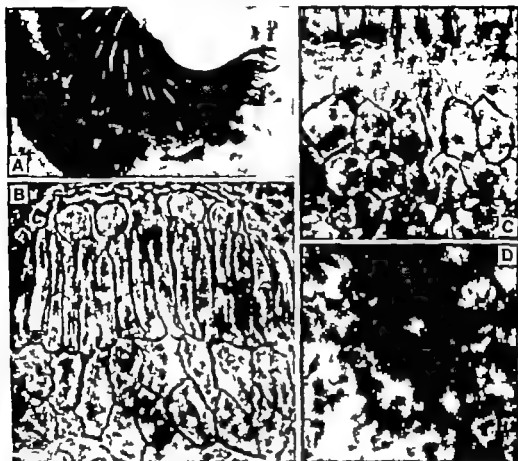


Fig 93 Cochlea of an 11 week old congenitally deaf Dalmatian dog.

A Osseous spiral lamina from the pical coil showing dense nerve bundles, which were observed throughout the cochlea

B Organ of Corti, surface preparation from the lower middle coil, showing that the inner hair cells (IHC) are to a large extent present, whereas no outer hair cells (OHC) are seen between rows

C Outer hair cell area (between rows) one cell from the basal end, showing absence of outer hair cells

D The imprints of the hair bundles (H 1, H 2, H 3) as seen in the tectorial membrane from the same region of the cochlea as in C, clearly indicate that the outer hair cells have once been present. (Blau, 1961, A 1, B, C, and D 910)

of damage to the cochlear neuron rather than to the organ of Corti. In all other cochleas studied, damage to the organ of Corti cannot be excluded as the primary factor causing the nerve degeneration.

The distribution of the spirally running fibers in the osseous spiral lamina described in the present study corresponds well with the distribution of efferent fibers described by Gaek (1961), Ishii, Murakami and Balogh (1961) and Nomura and Kiriakos (1967).

## C. COMPARISON BETWEEN COCHLEAR MORPHOLOGY AND HEARING FUNCTION

## 1 Threshold sensitivity for pure tones

Experimental evidence of several kinds over the last three decades, has led to wide acceptance of the idea that sound stimuli of different frequencies have their maximum activating effects at different sites along the organ of Corti, each at its specific region. It is generally agreed that high frequencies stimulate maximally the basal end, and progressively lower frequencies toward the apex. There is said to be an almost linear correspondence between the logarithm of frequency and distance from basal end to area of focal effect except for the highest and lowest frequencies (Bekecy 1942; Davis *et al.*, 1949; Schuknecht 1953a). This would mean that each octave should be represented by segments of the organ of Corti of about equal length. Bekecy (1943) has shown that although very low frequencies are represented by specific regions of maximum effect these maxima are less sharply restricted in area than those of higher frequency stimuli. An increase of the stimulus intensity above threshold gives rise to a larger amplitude and also involves a larger area of the organ of Corti than a threshold stimulus. This widening of the activated area is considered to be more pronounced for low than for high frequencies.

In the present material it is evident that if we try to correlate the threshold for pure tones with the number of hair cells in a corresponding region of the organ of Corti great differences are found between regions where low frequencies and high frequencies are supposed to have their maximal representation. Thus a loss of a given number of outer hair cells in the lower basal coil is related to a more pronounced pure tone hearing loss than is the loss of a similar number of cells in the upper middle and the apical coils. Moreover those cochleae with more extensive apical than basal degeneration of outer hair cells still show more pronounced hearing loss for the high frequencies than for the low (Figs 51, 52, 53, 54). In order to analyze these relations more closely the hearing level in dB for the tested frequencies was plotted against the density of outer hair cells (cells/mm) in corresponding regions (according to Bekecy 1942; Davis *et al.*, 1949; Schuknecht 1953a). Two such diagrams are shown in Fig. 96. Most of the subjects were however known to have had a hearing defect during life. For this reason the sound pressure level required to produce threshold stimulation had to be greater than those needed for a normal hearing subject. Such an increase must be attended by extension of the activated area for which reason it is not completely relevant to compare the hearing loss with the density of cells in a narrow area of the organ of Corti. Whether or not such an extension may influence the relative threshold sensitivity is not known. Therefore such a rough comparison as that mentioned above seems justified. It is also necessary to bear in mind that lesions located central to the cochlea may also cause a threshold rise as indicated by animal experiment by Kruger and Ades (1943).

A considerable loss of outer hair cells (up to 40 percent) may occur at 30 mm from base ( $\sim 0$  dB) without great hearing loss (1 dB or less).

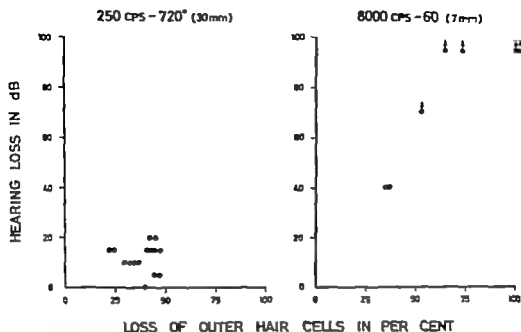


Fig. 96. Relationship between hearing loss and outer hair cell loss to 250 cps—720° (30 mm) and to 8000 cps—60 (7 mm). The arrow indicates that the hearing loss in these cases may be even more pronounced since the maximum stimulus intensity of the audiometer was not heard.

Several cochleas showed a loss of 50—55% of the outer hair cells in the same region, the greatest hearing loss not exceeding 40 dB (Fig. 96). On the other hand, a relatively much smaller loss of outer hair cells at 7 mm from the basal end (8000 cps—60) was accompanied by pronounced hearing loss. A 25 percent loss of outer hair cells was related to hearing impairment of 10—30 dB and 50 percent cell loss to 50—70 dB impairment (Fig. 96). Between these two extremes (250 cps—720° and 8000 cps—60) there was a graded transition of the relationship of cell loss to hearing loss. A deviation from this gradient was encountered at the 11 mm level (4000 cps—135) where a given loss of hair cells was associated with a lesser hearing loss than that produced by equal cell loss at the 17 mm (2000 cps—270) or 7 mm (8000 cps—60). This deviation may well be explained by the finding that in the present material this region at 135 (corresponding to 4000 cps) showed the highest incidence of circumscribed lesions in the organ of Corti. Since these were mostly narrow in width, it is possible that neighbouring regions, showing less damage, were stimulated rather than the actual regions normally reacting to a tone of 4000 cps at threshold. An illustrative example of this is found in cochlea H 10 R (Fig. ) which showed total degeneration of a 4 mm segment of the organ of Corti and the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina. The hearing losses for corresponding frequencies were not more than 55—60 dB.

In cochleas showing circumscribed degeneration of the outer hair cell in the region of 2 0—360° no corresponding dip in the audiogram was observed (Fig. 48, 55, 70, 71) however hearing was tested only at octave interval and therefore one cannot exclude the possibility that some of these cochleas may have had a more pronounced depression of threshold sensitivity for a smaller frequency band in an interoctave interval.

It was mentioned previously that the total number of inner hair cell in the cochleas with normal hearing for the age did not differ notably from that in cochleas showing more severe hearing impairment. Hence in these cases the inner hair cells seem not to be related with threshold sensitivity. The two ears of one subject (cochleas Nos. II 107 R and L, Fig. 57 and 58) are interesting in relation to the sensitivity of the inner hair cells. One ear showed a complete degeneration of the organ of Corti and associated nerves in the osseous spiral lamina in one sector whereas the other ear showed a loss only of outer hair cells in the corresponding region. Still the hearing loss was essentially the same in both ears, 50—70 dB for the frequencies involved (2000—4000 cps). The hearing was however only tested in octave interval so that it might be possible that the hearing loss was even more severe for a small frequency band.

From animal experiments Lurie (1931) suggested that a loss of outer hair cell caused a functional impairment from 30—40 dB. Schuknecht (1953b) considered that a partial loss of outer hair cells caused a hearing impairment less than 20 dB; and a total loss about 50 dB. The absence of some inner hair cell would cause a loss greater than 50 dB. Schuknecht mentioned that these relationships applied to lesions involving frequencies up to 4000 cps whereas for higher frequencies the hearing losses were correspondingly more severe.

From animal experiments it is known that hearing loss caused by apical lesion is quite different from that produced by lesions of similar proportion in the basal end of the cochlea (Walzl and Bordley 1949; Schuknecht and Neff 1951; Schuknecht 1953f). A small lesion in the apical coil may result in no measurable hearing loss and a larger lesion in a more general loss for low tones whereas a basal lesion tends to produce a more abrupt and severe hearing loss. Furthermore partial section of the auditory nerve, clinical and experimental alike, point to a difference between the basal and apical region of the cochlea in that the threshold for higher frequencies is more severely affected than that for the lower (Dandy 1933; Neff 1941; Weyer and Neff 1941; Schuknecht and Woellner 1953, 1954). It must be noted in this connection that the audiometric pattern following subtotal division of the cochlear nerve may be explained at least in part by the spatial distribution in the cochlear nerve of fibers from different parts of the cochlea as described by Sando (1965).

Electrophysiological observation on discharge pattern of single auditory nerve fibers may illustrate a hearing on the different effect of structural damage on high and low tones. Each of these nerve fibers respond at threshold to

mus level to a specific frequency (the best frequency or the characteristic frequency of the nerve fiber) For stimuli above threshold, the range of frequencies to which the fiber responds increases (Tasaki, 1954 Katsuk *et al.*, 1958 Kiang *et al.*, 1965) This expansion of the tuning curves is more rapid in the low frequency than in the high frequency units. A further observation is that for frequencies below 4000—5000 cps, the discharges following pure tone stimulation are spaced at intervals which are grouped around the integral multiples of the period of the stimulating tone (Kiang *et al.*, 1965 Rose *et al.*, 1966) A strict place theory for the discrimination of different frequencies is not necessary as a principle based on time patterns of the responding units might provide a mechanism for pitch discrimination such as that suggested by Wever (1919)

Although parallels might be drawn between the mechanical stimulation pattern in the cochlea, the tuning curves of single auditory units, and the present observations on the relation of hair cell loss to threshold sensitivity for pure tones, a further analysis at present would necessarily be based more on speculation than on definitive evidence Crucial information is lacking on the crucial link between mechanical stimulation of hair cells and discharge patterns in the auditory nerve especially to the detailed innervation pattern in the organ of Corti, and the chemical processes at hair cell — nerve ending level Information on the pathologically altered human cochlea is even more sparse in this respect Observations on cochleas such as in Figs 68 and 69 in which hearing loss, probably noise-induced fails to find its correlate in the sensory cell population or in the innervation in the osseous spiral lamina emphasizes the need to search further at the level of innervation pattern and hair cell — neuronal synapses for the anatomico-physiologic correlates of hearing loss Of course in such cases lesions in the spiral ganglion and in high acoustic neurons must also be taken into consideration

## 2 Difference limen as revealed by Békésy audiometry

Békésy audiograms were obtained on six subjects (1 with cochleas) showing various degrees of pure tone hearing loss. In one pair of these cochleas the difference limen was notably diminished, for frequencies including and higher than 3000 cps (Figs 59 and 60) In regions corresponding to these frequencies a certain loss of both inner and outer hair cells occurred however the loss was not especially severe and some cochleas with no change in difference limen showed more pronounced loss of hair cells (Figs 49 50 53 54)

Often but not always, a diminished difference limen reflecting an increased loudness sensitivity to slight rise in stimulus intensity at threshold level, occurs parallel with the loudness recruitment phenomenon as tested by Fowler's bilinear test Since Dix Hood and Hillebrand (1948) demonstrated that loudness recruitment was present in Ménière's disease while absent in cases of eighth nerve tumors, this generally has been accepted as strong evidence for cochlea damage The diminished difference limen as revealed by Békésy



less audiometry has also been related to cochlear damage. Many theories have been propounded to explain the underlying structural correlates of these phenomena. Several of these have suggested damage to the hair cell especially the outer hair cells (Tumarkin 1950 and others) however no histopathological investigation has yet convincingly implicated hair cell damage. The present study indicates that a considerable loss of hair cells especially outer can occur without a concomitant diminished difference limen as revealed by Békésy audiometry. One possible interpretation of this is that the structural correlate is to be sought in the innervation pattern within the organ of Corti.

### 3 Speech discrimination

Intelligibility for undistorted speech may be influenced by lesions at all levels of the auditory pathways from cochlea to cerebral cortex, as indicated by Liden (196 ). Sensorineural deafness due for example, to Meniere's disease and acoustic trauma may be manifested by a discrimination loss, depending on the severity of cochlear involvement. Eighth nerve tumors may cause a severe discrimination loss even though the pure tone audiogram shows almost normal threshold. According to Neff (1947), Schuknecht and Woelfner (1955) and Citron *et al* (1963) an intact residue of some 20 percent of the ganglion cells distributed throughout the cochlea may be sufficient to maintain an almost normal pure tone threshold sensitivity. A considerably larger number of intact ganglion cells is considered essential in good speech discrimination (Schuknecht and Woelfner 1955; Jerger 1960). Lesion in higher auditory pathways and centers may also cause discrimination deficits. This is considered to be the case in subjects showing phonemic regression. The speech discrimination scores are lower than would be expected in view of the pure tone audiogram (Gaeth 1918).

In the present study six subjects were tested by speech audiometry. Two of them showed normal discrimination associated with almost normal pure tone audiograms and small loss of sensory cell in the cochlea. Three subjects (Fig. 49 D 53 54 55) had speech discrimination scores ranging from 6 percent to 26 percent. The pure tone audiograms and the cochlear findings correlated well with these values. In one subject the findings in the cochlea differed from what would be expected (Figs 59 and 60). The pure tone audiogram and the speech discrimination scores (right 9 percent left 81 percent) were normal for the age (81 years). The sensory cell population were probably also within normal limit (outer hair cells about 1 percent loss with moderate lateral degeneration. Inner hair cells about 3 percent loss with lateral degeneration). The nerve fibers in the osseous spiral lamina however showed a pronounced patchy degeneration throughout all coil. The overall number of intact nerve fibers was roughly estimated as about one third of the full complement. In some areas the degeneration was almost total whereas in others about half of the nerve fibers were degenerated. This finding

is surprising in view of the general opinion that a fairly intact nerve supply is necessary for good speech intelligibility (Schuknecht and Woellner 1955 Jerger 1960) however it is to be noted that the organ of Corti was fairly intact, with no large area completely denervated, and it may be fair to assume that this allowed the message from all parts of the cochlea to pass without significant informational gaps. Thus the message reaching the higher centers may have been sufficiently complete for understanding even though the number of activated primary neurons was reduced, provided the message were not too complex. It seems likely that in the case of a more complex message (e.g. distorted speech or the like) a functional impairment might become evident. In cases of eighth nerve tumors it is possible that compression affects one part of the nerve more than another resulting in uneven damage with respect to the representation of different parts of the cochlea. This being so the message to higher centers then might well become distorted. Still another possibility is that pressure may alter nonuniformly the speed of transmission of nerve impulses and thus modify time patterns of the signal.

## VI GENERAL DISCUSSION

All the sensory regions within the labyrinth are enclosed in bone the histological preparation of these structures present special problems. The study of the human cochlea during the last century was carried out to a great extent by aid of micro-dissection techniques and later since the end of the last century these have been replaced almost exclusively by a sectioning technique. This latter technique has yielded a considerable amount of new information about the morphology of the cochlea. The method has since been refined and has contributed further to the knowledge about the normal and the pathologically altered human cochlea. In certain respects, however, exact and reliable information has been impossible to obtain. This is particularly true of quantitative estimates of the sensory cell population and of the innervation pattern within the organ of Corti. The sectioning technique in the evaluation of damage is restrictive in that all parts of the cochlea cannot be studied equally well (Igusa, Alford and Guilford 1966). Decalcification and embedding are processes that are liable to produce artefacts which when present may be difficult to exclude as being representative of the living structure.

In an attempt to study precise quantitative aspects of the sensory cell population and the nerve supply in the osseous spiral lamina the author adopted in part a technique used by Engstrom *et al.* (1962, 1964, 1966) and has further developed other methods for this purpose. These permit an accurate analysis of the cellular pattern in the organ of Corti. Although the technique used does give reliable information as regard innervation density throughout the coil of the cochlea it does not determine the precise number of nerve fibers present. Deviations in overall density are clearly seen and can be accurately related to corresponding regions of the organ of Corti. The method may be extended to include nerve fiber count in the osseous spiral lamina. A segment of the organ of Corti is removed for examination by the surface specimen technique and nerve fiber count made on section of its associated bony lamina following decalcification and embedding. The spiral ganglion can also be studied in a similar way (Kellerthal *et al.*, 1968).

In order to promote further knowledge regarding the normal and the pathologically altered human cochlea a combination of several techniques is necessary. Methods to be used are light phase contrast and electron microscopy, histochemistry and quantitative chemical analysis. The surface specimen technique is especially useful for studies like this presents however the technique has the advantage that it does not exclude a combination with other techniques.

Interfering factors such as post mortem changes and artefacts may cause serious errors in the interpretation of the results. The former has been discussed

cussed in Chapt. IV. With experience and care the inclusion of preparation artefacts can be reduced to a minimum. Moreover these can under the microscope be easily differentiated from pathological changes.

It must be considered whether or not the material shows certain characteristics which might influence the findings. Almost all of the subjects in the present study had a malignant tumor and were treated at least in periods with analgesics, cytotoxic agents or other drugs. A crucial question is then whether or not these factors to some extent may have caused the degenerative changes described. The mention of influence of such factors on human cochleas have been neglected in the literature of recent years. As discussed in Chapt. V B the loss of sensory cells before the age of thirty can not be excluded to have been caused by any of the factors just mentioned. This was indicated by the observations of signs of recent degeneration. In the subjects above the age of thirty however no such signs were observed. In animal experiments, the healing of a lesion following sensory cell damage occurs in about two weeks. Hence it seems as if the factors mentioned above did not markedly influence the sensory cell population in the weeks before death. It cannot, however be excluded that toxic influence at an earlier period may have caused the more vulnerable sensory cells to degenerate leaving a more resistant population behind. Several subjects in the present material have during life stated that they had not noticed any symptom of hearing impairment during the period of disease and drug treatment. A study of cochleas from cases of accidental death would give valuable information on these problems.

The relationship of morphological changes in the cochlea to presbycusis is difficult to evaluate. Such changes might vary from population to population as indicated by differences in hearing ability (Glorig and Nøen 1960; Rosen et al., 1962). Questions about noise exposure, sexual changes, diet and genetic factors are closely related to this problem.

In material like the present, which includes subjects from an urbanized community the question about noise exposure is crucial. The cochleas, including those with normal hearing showed decrease in the number of sensory cells with increasing age. The cell loss was accentuated at both the basal and apical ends of the organ of Corti. Cochleas from animals exposed to noise show a different distribution of the sensory cell damage. It is not known, however whether or not the present-day noise in the urbanized environment may cause degeneration of sensory cells in the cochlea. In order to analyse more closely cochlear changes related to presbycusis, studies ought to be carried out on a large number of cochleas of subjects whose hearing has been tested prior to death. Furthermore subjects should be selected from populations living under different environmental conditions.

A group of subjects in the present study were known to have been exposed to high intensity noise for several years. Some of the cochleas obtained from these subjects showed lesions in the region of the organ of Corti corresponding to the impaired frequencies (Figs. 5, 58, 66, 67). The changes are in close

agreement with those described in the literature as caused by noise damage (Habermann 1890 Igusa hi Schuknecht and Mers 1961) Other cochleas from this group of subjects, however showed no prominent changes in the organ of Corti and in the nerves in the osseous spiral lamina although the audiograms were characteristic for noise exposure (Fig. 68-69 "2, "3)

Still other noise exposed subjects showed audiograms which were not typical for noise exposure One such example is illustrated in Figs "0 and "1 The outer hair cell population show a circumscribed degeneration in the region one coil from the basal end (360-21 mm) Circumscribed degeneration at that level of the cochlea have been rarely reported Such lesions were observed in several cochleas of the present study (Figs 18-55 "5) Their etiology is obscure

Observations as the above discussed emphasize that the correlation between morphology function and etiology is very complex Morphological changes at all levels from the sensory epithelium to the central projection areas must be taken into account Also different etiologic factors must be considered as for example heredity Anderson and Wedenberg (1968) observed that subject who have a family history of hereditary deafness may show a narrow dip in the audiogram for frequencies below 3 000 cps

## VII SUMMARY

The present paper describes the morphology of the human cochlea during its developmental maturation and involutional stages. Particular attention has been paid to the sensory cell population of the organ of Corti and its nerve supply in the osseous spiral lamina. The morphology has been associated with hearing function.

These studies have been carried out by a special technique developed by the author used in systematic fashion in the examination of cochleas obtained from 29 fetuses, 6 infants and 2 subjects with age ranging between 1 and 93 years. In 16 of these hearing tests have been carried out.

The method entails fixation of the cochlea by perfusion of the perilymphatic spaces via the round window. A micro-dissection then follows whereby the bony labyrinth is removed. The organ of Corti and the osseous spiral lamina thus exposed is examined macroscopically as well as microscopically. Quantitative estimates made on the sensory cell population are recorded in graphs.

In the three-month fetus the cells of the organ of Corti in the whole are undifferentiated except in a narrow zone that lies at some distance from the basal end where sensory cells as such can be identified. With maturation differentiation proceeds in both basal and apical direction. The fluid spaces within the organ of Corti began to develop at the fifth fetal month. The arrangement of the sensory cells is initially regular in three and four month old fetuses. A gradual change then occurs during the fifth and sixth month following which a slightly irregular pattern forms, as seen in the adult cochlea. Full differentiation of the organ of Corti occurs at the age of six months.

The full complement of sensory cells was estimated from 10 fetal cochleas. The outer hair cells show an average number of 13,400 (11,200—16,000) and the inner average 3,400 (2,800—4,400).

The density of sensory cells as measured in number of cells per  $\text{mm}^2$  length of the organ of Corti increases from the basal end towards the apex. The outer hair cells almost double their number (290 cells/mm to 525 cells/mm) and the density of the inner hair cells increases by about 40 percent (80 cells/mm to 115 cells/mm). The number of outer hair cells per surface area is at its maximum at the base and decreases towards the apex (160 cells/ $0.01 \text{ mm}^2$  at the base and 100 cells/ $0.01 \text{ mm}^2$  at the apex).

With age the total number of sensory cells in the adult cochlea shows a clear reduction. There are distinct differences between the degeneration pattern in the populations of inner and outer hair cells. The inner hair cells show a degeneration confined to the basal region of the cochlea, whereas the outer hair cells show an overall degeneration which is accentuated at both

it basal and apical end. The nerves in the osseous spiral lamina also show a basal degeneration with age.

In about a third of the cochlea a circumscribed degeneration, patchy at times, occurs independently of the basal and the apical losses; present. It consists of either a loss of outer hair cell or a degeneration of sensory cell and nerves in the osseous spiral lamina. The loss of inner hair cell is closely related to the loss of nerves in the osseous spiral lamina. In some cochlea showing these lesions the subject had been exposed to high intensity noise which may well be a cause. In other cases the etiology remains obscure.

A certain loss of sensory cell results in differences in hearing impairment for pure tones depending upon the location of the lesion. Damage at the base where high tones are supposed to be localized gives a considerable threshold impairment, whereas a damage to the apical region of the cochlea can reach considerable degree and still result in a moderate hearing loss.

A diminished difference limen for frequencies of 3 000 cps and higher was found in both ears of a subject examined. This is not related to a structural change associated with a significant loss of either inner or outer hair cell. These specimens show an extensive loss of nerves (about two-third of total) throughout the osseous spiral lamina. The subject showed no impaired speech discrimination when tested during life.

#### ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The present study has been carried out at the Ear, Nose and Throat Department, University of Göteborg. I wish to express my gratitude to the head of the department Professor Gustaf H. Sjöström, M.D., for his interest and valuable criticism. It is a pleasure to express my thanks to my teacher Professor Hans Engström, M.D., for stimulating discussion and constructive criticism and for the numerous other ways in which he has facilitated this investigation. I offer my sincere thanks to Professor Harald W. Viles, Ph.D., University of Illinois, Urbana, for constructive discussion and valuable advice and for his correction of the English text. I am greatly indebted to Gunnar Lidén, M.D., Olle Hallén, M.D., and Dr. Henrik Lindman who have offered constructive criticism and valuable advice. I also wish to thank Ulla Zachrisson, Ph.D., John Ballantyne, F.R.C.S., and Roy Næssén, F.R.C.S., for stimulating discussion and advice. To Anton Andersson, Res. Eng., who throughout the work has contributed with skillful technical assistance and advice. I wish to express my gratitude. My thanks are due to Mrs. Carina Frejrod who made all the drawings and to Mrs. Claire Ades and Mrs. Karin Wagnér who have typed the manuscript.

This study has been supported in part by the Physiological Psychology Branch, Office of Naval Research, Washington, D.C., under contracts N6-61-64 and F410-61-0090 with H. Engström and by the Faculty of Medicine, University of Göteborg, and by Göteborgs Läkar Högskola.

## REFERENCES

- AZZI, C., 1945: Quelques recherches d'anatomie microscopique sur l'innervation et sur la vascularisation de l'oreille interne. *Pract. Otorhinolaryng.* (Basel), 7 ■
- ALEXANDER, G., 1926: Entwicklungsgeschichte, Anthropologie, Varietäten. In Denker and Kahler: *Handbuch der Hals-, Nasen-, Ohren- Heilkunde*, Vol. 6, ■ 69 Springer Verlag, Berlin.
- ALFORD, B. R., and RUSSEL, R. J., 1963: Physiological, behavioral and anatomical correlates of the development of hearing in the mouse. *Ann. Otol.* 72, 237
- ALTMAN, F., 1950: Histologic picture of inherited nerve deafness in man and animals. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 51 852.
- ALTMAN, F. and KORNFIELD, M., 1963: Histologic studies of Ménière disease. *Ann. Otol.*, 74 915
- ANDERSSON, H., HEDENSTAM, B., LUNDQVIST, P.-G., WEDENBERG, E., and WIKSALL, J., 1968: Genetic hearing impairment in the Dalmatian dog. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), Suppl. 232
- ANDERSSON, H., and WEDENBERG, E., 1968: Audiometrisk identifiering av blinda av anlag för dövhet. *Statist. Läkartidsn.*, 65 1342.
- ANDRZEJEWSKI, C., 1935: Histologische Studien zur vegetativen und cerebralen Innervation des Innenohres. *Z. Zellforsch.*, 42, 1.
- 1956: Weitere histologische Beobachtungen über die vegetative Innervation des membranösen Labyrinthes. *Z. Zellforsch.*, 44 427
- ANONIAN, L., 1963: An electrophysiological study of the development of cochlear function in the rabbit. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), Suppl. 203
- AVON, B. J., 1934: The early development of the membranous labyrinth in mammalian embryos, with special reference to the endolymphatic duct and sacculo-endolymphatic duct. *Anat. Rec.* 53 127
- BAST, T. and AVON, B. J., 1949: *The Temporal Bone and the Ear*. Charles C. Thomas, Springfield.
- BACHTELEW, W., 1885: Über die innere Abzweigung des Schläfenlappens und des achten Hirnnerven. *Ann. Anat. Hist.* 3 145
- BLASKO, G. O., 1942: Über die Schwingungen der Schneckenkammerwand beim Präparat und Ohrenmodell. *Akust. Zeit.* 7 173
- 1943: Über die Resonanzkurve und die Abhängigkeit der verschiedenen Stellen der Schneckenkammerwand. *Akust. Zeit.*, 8 66.
- 1947: A new audiometer. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 35 411
- 1953: Description of some mechanical properties of the organ of Corti. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 25 770.
- BENTLEY, J. T., SCHWENKERT, H. F. and BAACHNEIDER, J. H., 1962: Pathological changes in human ear after kanamycin. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 75 192.
- BEGGOLD, M., 1966: Hearing in the Mink. A critical review of related literature. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 84 411.
- BERNSTEIN, J. M., and SCHWENKERT, H. F., 1967: Lesions of the apical region of the cochlea. *J. Laryng.* 81 1.
- BONCA, E., 1954: Le développement historique et l'état actuel de nos connaissances sur l'innervation cochléaire. *J. Franç. Otorhinolaryng.* 3 166.
- 1956: Clinical aspects of cortical deafness. *Laryngoscope* 66 301
- BONOMO, G., 1967: The human cochlea during development and ageing. *J. Laryng.* 81 739
- 1968: Cochlear structure and hearing in man. In: *Hearing Mechanisms in Vertebrates. Ciba Foundation Symposium* 1967 in press. J. & A. Churchill, London.
- BURKHARD, G., ECKSTADT, H. and ANON, H. W., 1963: Cellular pattern and nerve supply of the human organ of Corti. A preliminary report. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 82 462.
- BUTTS, H., 1955: Organization of the cerebral cortex. III. A study of ageing in the human cerebral cortex. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 1 511
- CAJAL, G., 1905: Beiträge zur pathologischen Anatomie des Gehörorgans, II. *Z. Otorhinol.*, 50 5.
- COHEN, N. H., 1966: The inner ear in newborn infants. *J. Laryng.* 80, 763.
- CAJAL, S. RAMON, 1909— 11 *Histologie du système nerveux de l'homme et des vertébrés*. A. Maloine, Paris.
- 1919: Acción neurotrófica de epitelio. *Trab. Inst. Cajal Invest. Biol.* 17 181.
- CRITCH, L., DYE, M. R., LEWIS, C. and HUNO, J. D., 1963: A recent clinicopathological study of cochlear nerve degeneration in man: tumor pressure and disseminated sclerosis, with particu-



- cular reference to the finding of normal threshold sensitivity for pure tones. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 56 330.
- CORTI, A. 1851 Recherches sur l'organe de l'ouïe des mammifères. *Z. Wiss. Zool.*, 3 109.
- COVELL, W. P. and ROGERS, J. H., 195 Pathologic changes in the inner ear of senile guinea pigs. *Laryngoscope* 67 118.
- CROWE, S. J., GUILD, S. R., and POLYDOY, L. M. 1934 Observations on the pathology of high-tone deafness. *Bull. Hopkins Hosp.* 54 315.
- CROWLEY, B. F., and HARRINGTON, M. C., 1966: Development of cochlear function in the ear of the infant rat. *J. Comp. Physiol. Psychol.* 62 42.
- DODY, W. E., 1934 The effect of hemisection of the cochlear branch of the human auditory nerve. *Bull. Hopkins Hosp.* 54 208.
- DON, H., DEATHEAGE, B. H., ROSENBLUTH, B., FERNANDEZ, C., AMERLA, R., and SWITTL, C. A., 1958: Modification of cochlear potentials produced by streptomycin poisoning and by extensive venous obstruction. *Laryngoscope* 68 596.
- DON, H., GRAY, D. B. E., RIESCO-MACCLELL, J. S. and COVELL, W. P. 1949: Aural microphonics in the cochlea of the guinea pig. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.*, 21 502.
- DUITSCH, O. 1860: *Untersuchungen über die Lamina spiralis membranacea*, Henry et Cohen, Paris.
- DYE, M. R., HALLER, Z. C. S. and HODG, J. D. 1948. Observations upon the loudness recruitment phenomenon. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, 41 516.
- FABER, A. VON 1902: Vom Gehörorgan. In: *Hölker Handbuch der Geschichte der Anatomie*, Vol. 3, Wilhelm Engelmann, Leipzig.
- FENGSTRÖM, H., 1960a. The endolymph, the third lymph of the inner ear. *Acta Morph. Anat. Scand.*, 3 195.
- 1960b: Electron micrographic studies of the receptor cells of the organ of Corti. In: *Neural Mechanisms of the Auditory and Vestibular Systems*, p. 48. Ed. by Rosenman, C. L. and Wiedle, P. W. Charles C. Thomas, Springfield.
- 1967 The ultrastructure of the sensory cells of the cochlea. *J. Laryng* 81 687.
- FENGSTRÖM, H., ADER, H. W. and ANDERSON, A., 1966: *Structural Patterns of the Organ of Corti*. Almqvist and W. Sell, Stockholm.
- FENGSTRÖM, H., ADER, H. W. and HAWKINS, J. F. Jr. 1962 Structure and functions of the sensory hairs of the inner ear. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 34 1356.
- FENGSTRÖM, H., ADER, H. W. and HAWKINS, J. F. Jr. 1964 Cytoarchitecture of the organ of Corti. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), Suppl. 188 92.
- FENGSTRÖM, H. and REVER, B., 1940 Über die Halbverhältnisse der Nervenzellen im N. statoacusticus des Menschen. *Z. Mik. Anat. Forsch.* 47 448.
- FENGSTRÖM, H., SPITZ, D. P. S., and SPOR, D., 1955 Feinstruktur der Seris vasculare beim Meeresschnecken. *Pract. Otolaryngology* (Basel) 1 69.
- FENGSTRÖM, H., and WISSE, J. 1953 Structure of the organ of Corti. I. Outer hair cells. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 43 1.
- FENGSTRÖM, H. and WISSE, J. 1953b Structure of the organ of Corti. II. Supporting structures and their relations to sensory cells and nerve endings. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 43 323.
- FENGSTRÖM, H. and WISSE, J. 1954 The ultrastructural organization of the organ of Corti and the inner hair sensory epithelia. *Exp. Cell Res.* Suppl. 5 460.
- FERNET, G. 1931 Morphological and functional changes of the internal ear in arteriosclerosis. *Laryngoscope* 41 663.
- FLORENT, G. 1561 *Observation anatomique ad Petrus Martini Venetus*.
- FLORENT, G. 1951 The innervation of the cochlea (guinea pig). *Laryngoscope* 61 115.
- 1954 Pathological changes and artefacts in human temporal bones. *Laryngoscope* 64 154.
- FLORENT, G. and SIEG, A., 1937 Pathologie und Klinik der Altersschwerhörigkeit. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) Suppl. 21.
- FLORENT, G. 1955 Untersuchungen zur Entwicklung der Innenohrfunktion. *J. Laryng Rhinol Otol.*, 33.
- FLORENT, G. 1956 Histologische und audiometrische Studien über den altersbedingten Struktur- und Funktionsverlust des Innenohres. *Arch. Otol. Nas. Kehlk. Forsch.* 170 142.

- FRIEDMANN, I., CAWTHORNE, T. McLAY K., and BIRD, S. E., 1963. Electronmicroscopic observations on the human membranous labyrinth with particular reference to Ménière's disease. *J. Ultrastruct. Res.* 9 123.
- FRIEDMANN, I., CAWTHORNE, T. and BIRD, S. E., 1965. The laminated cytoplasmic inclusions in the sensory epithelium of the human macula. Further electronmicroscopic observations in Ménière disease. *J. Ultrastruct. Res.* 12 92.
- GACEK, R. R., 1961. The efferent cochlear bundle in man. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago) 4 690.
- GACEK, R. R., NOSHITA, Y., and BALOGH, K., 1965. Acetylcholinesterase activity in the efferent fibers of the stato-acoustic nerve. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 59 541.
- GARTN, J. H., 1948: *A study of phenotypic regression in relation to hearing loss*. Thesis, Northwestern University Chicago.
- GUTH, S. R., 1921. A graphic reconstruction method for the study of the organ of Corti. *Anat. Rev.* 22, 141.
- 1932. Correlations of histologic observations and the acuity of hearing. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 17 207.
- 1935. Is there localization in the cochlea for low tones. II. Discussion from the point view of studies on human temporal bones. *Ann. Otol.*, 44 738.
- GUTH, S. R., CROWT, S. J., BENCH, C. C., and POLVOIR, L. N., 1931. Correlations of differences in the density of innervation of the organ of Corti with differences in the acuity of hearing, including evidence as to the location in the human cochlea of the receptors for certain tones. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 15 269.
- GLORIO, A., and D. VIZ, H., 1961. Age, noise and hearing loss. *Ann. Otol.*, 70 556.
- GLORIO, A., and NITON, J. 1960. Distribution of hearing loss in various populations. *Ann. Otol.*, 69, 497.
- GLORIO, A., and NITON, J. 1962: Hearing as a function of age. *Laryngoscope* 72, 1596.
- GÖTTESCHALK, C. P., PAULD, G. O., DICKS, III and EMMERT, J. 1961. A study of hearing in advanced age. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 73 662.
- GOTO, S., ITO, T. and OTSUHI, K., 1953. A new histological examination on membranous labyrinth. *Japanese J. Med. Sci.* 16 92.
- GRAB, K., 1951. Histologische Veränderungen des Innenohres nach Behandlung der Meningitis tuberculosa. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 59 121.
- HABERMAN, J. 1890: Über die Schärfehörigkeit der Menschenschiede. *Arch. Otolaryng.*, 30, 1.
- 1891. Über Nervenatrophie im inneren Ohre. *Z. Hark.*, 12 357.
- 1906: Beitrag zur Lehre von der professionellen Schärfehörigkeit. *Arch. Otolaryng.*, 69 106.
- HALL, J. G. 1964. The cochlea and the cochlear nuclei in neonatal asphyxia. A histological study. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), Suppl. 194.
- HALLPETER, C. S., and CALDWELL, H., 1938. Observations on the pathology of Ménière syndrome. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.*, 31 1317.
- HAMILTON, W. J., BOTTS, J. D., and MORRISON, H. W. 1962: *Human Embryology* Third ed. Haffer & Sons, Cambridge.
- HANSEN, C. C., and RUTER-NIELSEN, E., 1964. Pathological studies in perceptive deafness. A patient with hydrops of the labyrinth. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), Suppl. 188 162.
- HANSEN, C. C., and RUTER-NIELSEN, E., 1965. Pathological studies in presbycusis. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 82 115.
- HARDY, M., 1938: The length of the organ of Corti in man. *Amer. J. Anat.* 62, 291.
- HELD, H., 1897. Zur Kenntnis der peripheren Gehörleistung. *Arch. Anat. Physiol., Anat. Abt.* 330.
- 1909. Untersuchungen über den feineren Bau des Orlabyrinthes der Wirbeltiere. II. Zur Entwicklungsgeschichte des cortischen Organs und der Macula Acustica bei Säugetieren und Vögeln. *Abhandl. d. K. S. Ges. Wiss. Math. Phys.* 31 193.
- 1924: Die Cochlea der Säuger und der Vogel, ihre Entwicklung und ihr Bau. In: Bethe. *Handbuch der normalen und pathologischen Physiologie Reizempfangens* Vol. II 467.
- HENDIX, V. 1863: Zur Morphologie der Schnecke des Menschen und der Säugetiere. *Z. Wiss. Zool.* 13 481.
- HINCHCLIFFE, R., 1962: The anatomical locus of presbycusis. *J. Speech Hearing Dis.*, 27 301.

- HINOJOSA R. and RODRIGUEZ DE ROSA, F. L., 1966 The fine structure of the stria vascularis of the cat inner ear. *Amer. J. Anat.* **118**, 631.
- HITSON, W. R., DE LAMAR, C., and RUBEN, J., 1966. Hereditary deafness in the Dalmatian dog. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), **83**, 213.
- IGLESIAS, M., ALFORD B. and GUILFORD P. R., 1966 The sectioning planes for study of temporal bones. *Ann. Otol.* **6**, 330.
- IGARASHI M., SCHENKEL H. F. and MYERS F. N., 1964 Cochlear pathology in humans with simulated deafness. *J. Laryng.* **74**, 115.
- IRELLA D. E. and F. HAMMILL J., 1963 Electron microscopic studies of Ménière's disease: Twelve fresh specimens taken at operation. *Trans. Amer. Acad. Ophthalm. Otolaryng. Soc.* **67**, 28.
- IWAMI, T., MORAKAMI, Y., and BALOGH, K., 1967 Acetylcholinesterase activity in the efferent fibers of the human inner ear. *Ann. Otol.* **6**, 69.
- IWAMI, T., MORAKAMI, Y., KIMURA, R., and BALOGH, K., 1966 Electron microscopic and histochemical identification of lipofuscin in the human inner ear. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), **64**, 17.
- IYO, H., 1962. Light and electron microscopic study of membranous cytoplasmic organelles. In: The interpretation of ultrastructure. *Symposium of the International Society for Cell Biology* Vol. 1, p. 129. Academic Press.
- ITABASHI, S., 1961 Submicroscopic structure of the membranous labyrinth. 2. The Epithelium of Crista organ. *Z. Zellforsch.* **53**, 259.
- 1962a. Submicroscopic structure of the membranous labyrinth. 3. Supporting structures of Crista organ. *Z. Zellforsch.* **56**, 40.
- 1962b. Efferent fibers in the sensory cells of Crista organ. *Exp. Cell Res.* **27**, 162.
- 1967. *Submicroscopic structure of the inner ear*. Pergamon Press.
- JACKSON, J., 1960 Audiological manifestations of lesions in the auditory nervous system. *Laryngoscope* **70**, 417.
- JOHNSON, B., WEDENBERG, G., and WITTE, B., 1964 Measurement of one response by the human fetus. A preliminary report. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), **5**, 183.
- JOHNSON, L.-G. and HARRISON, J. P. J., 1967 A direct approach to cochlear anatomy and pathology in man. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), **85**, 399.
- JORGENSEN, M. B., 1964 Changes of aging in the inner ear and the inner ear in diabetes mellitus, histological studies. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) Suppl. **188**, 1-5.
- JORGENSEN, M. B. and SCHNITZER, R., 1962: The ototoxic effect of kanamycin. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), **55**, 53.
- KAR, Y. P. and PETER, P., 1967 Hearing in Tulas of South India. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago) **85**, 400.
- KATZ, L. Y. and COVALL, W. P., 1953 The organ of Corti by phase-contrast microscopy. *Laryngoscope* **63**, 1.
- KATZ, L. Y., SHIM, T., LO, M., and WITTE, B., 1958 Electric responses of auditory neurons in cat to sound stimulation. *J. Neurophysiol.* **1**, 560.
- KELLMAN, G., 1966 Rubella and deafness. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago) **83**, 520.
- KELLER, H., FUCHS, H., and KELLER, H. W., 1968 Die Morphologie des Ganglion Spirale Cochleae. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) Suppl. **70**.
- KELLY, J. S., WATSON, T. T., and CARR, L. F., 1963 Discharge patterns of single fibers in the cat auditory nerve. Research monograph No. 33. The MIT Press, Cambridge, Mass.
- KELLY, J. S. and HILGERS, D., 1965 The development of the organ of Corti in the mouse. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), **67**, 20.
- KIMURA, R., 1966 Hairs of the cochlear sensory cells and their attachment to the tectorial membrane. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), **61**, 55.
- KIMURA, R., SCHENKEL, H. F. and SCHNITZER, R., 1964 Fine morphology of the sensory cells in the organ of Corti in man. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), **58**, 390.
- KIMURA, R. and WATSON, T. T., 1962 Termination of the 'auditory flexor bundle' in relation to the outer hair cell of the organ of Corti in guinea pig. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) **55**, III.
- KIMURA, R. and SHIM, T., 1964 Study of hearing in advanced age. *Laryngoscope* **74**, 205.
- KIMURA, R., 1965 Effect of some sedatives upon the pattern and intensity of cochlear sensory cell in the guinea pig. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), Suppl.

- KOTKE, Y. YOSHIDA, M., KONNO, M., NAKANO, Y., YONEKAWA, Y., NAGATA, M., and MORIMOTO, M., 1960: Some aspects of the biochemistry of acoustic trauma. *Ann. Otol.* 69 661.
- KÖLLIKER, A., 1852: *Mikroskopische Anatomie* Vol. 2, p 743. Wilhelm Engelmann, Leipzig.
- KOHLER, W. 1927: Gehörorgan. In: Möllendorff's *Handbuch der mikroskopischen Anatomie des Menschen*. Vol. 3 1. Springer Verlag, Berlin.
- KRAUSE, W. 1876: Schaecker: Allgemeine und mikroskopische Anatomie. In: Krause *Handbuch der menschlichen Anatomie*. Vol. 1 p 125. Hahn schs Hofbuchhandlung, Hannover.
- KRISTENZON, H. K., 1961: Histopathology in Ménière's disease. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 53 37.
- KATZ, R. D., and ADER, H. W., 1943: Studies on the function of the higher acoustic centers in the cat. *Amer. J. Psychol.* 56 501.
- LANG, W. 1937: Hörleistung und pathologisch-anatomischer Befund in Ductus cochlearis. *Arch. Otor. Nes. Kehlspitzhahn*, 41 209.
- LARSELL, O. McCRAID E., and LARSELL, J. F. 1944: The development of the organ of Corti in relation to the inception of hearing. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 40 233.
- LARSELL, O. McCRAID E., and ZIMMERMAN, A. A., 1935: Morphological and functional development of the membranous labyrinth in the opossum. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 63 95.
- LAWRENCE, M. McCRAID, B. F. 1959: Inner ear mechanics and deafness. *J.A.M.A.* 171 1977.
- LEIBER, F. 1857: *Lehrbuch der Histologie der Menschen und der Tiere* p 262. Frankfurt 3/1.
- LEIBER, G. 1954: Speech audiometry: An experimental and clinical study with Swedish language material. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), Suppl. 114.
- 1967: Undistorted speech audiometry. In: *Sensorineural Hearing Processes and Disorders. Henry Ford Hospital International Symposium 1965* Linde, Brown, Boston.
- LEONARD, S. E., NEEB, W. D. and SCHUBERT, H. F., 1954: Stimulation deafness: A study of hearing losses resulting from exposure to noise of blast impulses. *J. Comp. Physiol. Psychol.* 4 406.
- LEONARD, J. R., 1944: Ménière disease. Histopathologic observations. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 39 313.
- 1960: Hydrops of the labyrinth. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 71 400.
- 1967: Viral labyrinthitis. Histopathologic characteristics. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 63 138.
- LEONARD, J. R., CAUTHEN, D. G. HENSON, W. G. and HARRISON, S. 1953: Inner ear pathology following internal resection. *Ann. Otol.* 62, 1201.
- LEONARD, J. R., D. VEE, F. R., and WARD, P. H., 1960: Inner ear pathology in deafness due to mumps. *Ann. Otol.* 69 918.
- LEONARD, J. R., and HENSON, W. G., 1954: Inner ear pathology due to measles. *Ann. Otol.* 63 754.
- LEONARD, J. R., KOSHY, R. L., and SCHARRA, P. A., 1967: Ménière disease: Pathology and manifestations. *Ann. Otol.* 76, 5.
- LEONARD, J. R., PROCTOR, L. R., and WOLF, W. F. 1960: Histopathologic inner ear changes in deafness due to mumps. *Laryngoscope* 70 362.
- LEONARD, J. R., and SCHULTZ, G. von 1958: An unusual case of labyrinthine hydrops. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 49 315.
- LITTON, W. R., and LAWRENCE, M., 1961: Electron microscopy in Ménière disease. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 74 52.
- LORENTE DE NÓ, R., 1926: Études sur l'anatomie et la physiologie du labyrinthe de l'oreille et du VIII nerf. *Trab. Inst. Cereb. Invest Biol.* 24 53.
- 1933a: Anatomy of the eighth nerve. Central projection of the nerve endings of the internal ear. *Laryngoscope* 43 1.
- 1933b: Anatomy of the eighth nerve. III General plan of structure of the primary cochlear nuclei. *Laryngoscope* 43 327.
- 1937: The neural mechanism of hearing: Anatomy and physiology. The sensory endings in the cochlea. *Laryngoscope* 4 373.
- LUDIX, M. H., 1937: Pathology of the organ of Corti. *Laryngoscope* 47 418.
- LUDIX, M. H., DAVIS, H. and H. WERN, J. H. J. 1944: Acoustic trauma of the organ of Corti in the guinea pig. *Laryngoscope* 54 375.
- MAILLER, M., 1963: Le recensement des tumeurs du système auditif de l'oreille. *Rev. Méd. Tours* 4 247.
- MAKISHIMA, K., 1967: Histopathological studies in presbycusis. *J. Otorhinolaryng. Soc. Jap.*, 70 63.

- MANASSIS P. 1906 Über chronische progressive labyrinthäre T. blenn. *Z. Otolaryng.* 5: 1
- MATTHEIS, J. 1958 *Ein humaner Hörsinn Test zum Nachweis gestörter Hörleistungen*. Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart.
- METZ, O. 1919 Das anatomische Substrat der Altersschwerhörigkeit. *Arch. Otorhinolaryng.* 105: 1
- MCCRACKEN, E., WYWER, E. G. and BRINTON, C. W. 1937 The development of hearing in the opossum. *J. Exp. Zool.* 75: 503
- MEHLER, A. 1964 Normal and anomalous anatomy of the facial nerve and an embryological study of the thalidomide catastrophe in Germany. *Trans. Amer. Acad. Ophthalm. Otolaryng.* 68: 1030.
- MIKELL, D. and RUBEN, R. J. 1965 Correlations of physiological observations with behavioral responses and with cochlear anatomy. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)* 59: 451.
- MUNAY, G. A., DE JONGE, R. R., SMITH, G. F. W. and A. WOLD, J. E. 1958. Effects of localized hypoxia on the electrophysiological activity of the cochlea of the guinea pig. *J. Assoc. Soc. Amer.* 30: 705.
- MURPHY, K. P., and SUTTER, C. N. 1962: Response of fibers to auditory stimulation. *Laryngoscope* 72: 972.
- MURPHY, S. H. 1945 Experimental histologic studies on the labyrinth. III. The endolymphatic compression (Wiermaack's hyaline degeneration). *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)* 33: 86.
- NATHAN, N. E., and LEBER, M. H. 1951 The vasa vasculosa. Review and observations. *Laryngoscope* 61: 989
- NATHAN, F. R. 1907 Beiträge zur Histologie der erworbenen T. blenn. *Z. Otolaryng.* 54: 217
- NATHAN, F. D. 1947 The effect of partial section of the auditory nerve. *J. Comp. Physiol. Psychol.* 40: 203.
- NATHAN, F. D. 1950 Die Basillarmembran des Menschen und ihr Verankerungssystem. *Z. Anat. Entwicklungsphysiol.* 114: 339
- 1952. Zur morphologischen Erfassung der Ansprechebreite im Innenohr. *Arch. Anat. Ges.* 50: 204
- NOVAK, Y., and HIRSH, A. I. 1967 Intervention of the human cochlea. *Ann. Otol.* 76: 57
- NOVAK, Y., and SCHWARTZ, H. F. 1965 The efferent fibers in the cochlea. *Ann. Otol.* 74: 289
- OLSEN, F. C. 1960 The pathology of congenital deafness. *J. Laryng.* 70: 919
- PETER, N. H. B. and NOVAK, R. S. 1962 Cochlear blood flow in acoustic trauma. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)* 54: 99
- PETERSON, G. D. and COVILL, W. H. and ROGERS, J. H. 1955 Decreased bio-electric potentials in the ears of senile guinea pigs. *Laryngoscope* 65: 1113.
- PETERSON, G. and SJOBERG, L. 1955 Clinical evaluation of presbycusis on the basis of different tests of auditory function. *Laryngoscope* 65: 1136.
- PIETRAVANTO, L., and LEBER, M. H. 1960 Some initial electron microscopic investigations of the case of Ménière's disease. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)* 52: 15
- RUBEN, R. J. 1940 Studies in the VIIIth cranial nerve. In trans. *Laryngoscope* 50: 67
- RUBEN, R. J. 1946 The olivary peduncle and the other fiber projections of the superior olivary complex. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 84: 141
- 1953 Further observations of the efferent cochlear bundle. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 99: 81
- 1960 Efferent fibers in the cochlear nerve and cochlear nucleus. In *Neural Mechanisms of the Auditory and Vestibular Systems* p. 103. Ed. by Rasmussen, G. I. and Windle, W. F. Charles Thomas, Springfield
- RUBEN, G. 1884 Das Gehörorgan der Wirbeltiere II Das Gehörorgan der Reptilien, der Vögel und der Säugetiere. S. Monn & Wallin, Stockholm
- 1884 Zur Entwicklung der Zellen des Ganglion spirale acustici und zur Färbung derselben des Gehörnerven bei Säugetieren. *Arch. Mikroskop.* 5: 6
- RUBEN, R. J. and BRINTON, C. W. 1965 The fine structure of the vasa vasculosa of the guinea pig inner ear. *Z. Zellforsch.* 66: 600.
- RUBEN, R. J. 1940 Zu Kenntnis des Labyrinthhydrogen und des durch ihn bedingten Ménière. *Arch. Anat. Entwicklungsphysiol.* 11: 73
- RUBEN, R. J., BRINTON, C. W., and HIRSH, J. E. 1965 Phase locked response to low frequency tones in single auditory nerve fibers of the squirrel monkey. *J. Neurophysiol.* 32: 67
- RUBEN, R. J., and PETERSON, G. I. 1962 Moore, A. and S. J. 1962 Presbycusis study of relative noise free population in the Sudan. *Ann. Otol.* 71: 72

- Kozak, S., and Olry, P. 1965. Hearing loss and coronary heart disease. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 82: 236.
- Kozak, S., Plummer, D. F., Morris, A., and Kozak, H. A. 1964. High frequency audiometry in pre-bryotia. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 79: 18.
- Kozak, L. T. 1965. Aphakia — bryotomies of one labyrinth after strabismic. *Act. Otol. (Stockh.)*, 2: 223.
- Kozak, G., and Coertzen, G. 1962. "Il sistema efficiente embriologico nuclei vestibolare. *Neurochirurgia*, 1: 173.
- Kozak, G. and Coertzen, G. 1963. Research on the efficient structuration of the inner ear. *J. Laryng.* 73: 202.
- Kozak, G. and Coertzen, G. 1965. The efficient cochlear and vestibular system on *Le par Cortex*. *Acta Anat. (Basel)*, 60: 362.
- Kozak, J. 1967. Development of the inner ear of the mouse: A histomorphologic study of retinal masses. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), Suppl. 239.
- Krüger, L. 1957. Die Schallleitungsfunktion des Ohrs. *Darmstadt Georg Thieme und Erben*, 2: 1.
- Krüger, L. and Flaxer, W. 1946. Das akustische Vestibulum. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Basel), 2: 37.
- Swadlow, I. 1965. The anatomical microrelationships of the cochlear nerve. *Neurochirurgia* (Stockh.), 19: 417.
- Stachura, A., and Kozak, J. 1958. The cause of progressive presbycusis. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) Suppl. 143.
- Schlesinger, H. H. 1953. Techniques for study of cochlear function and pathology in experimental animals. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 58: 37.
- 1953b. Lesions of the organ of Corti. *Trans. Amer. Acad. Otolaryng. Otol.* 5: 346.
- 1955. Presbycusis. *Laryngoscope* 65: 402.
- 1960. Neurophysiological correlates of auditory selectivity and pitch discrimination in the cat. In: *Neural Mechanisms of the Auditory and Vestibular System*, p. 4. Ed. by Rastwinski, G. L., and Winitz, W. F. Charles C. Thomas, Springfield.
- 1964. Further observations on the pathology of presbycusis. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 80: 369.
- 1967. The effect of aging on the cochlea. In: *Neurophysiological Processes and Disorders of the Ear*. International Symposium 1965, p. 373. Little, Brown, Boston.
- 1968. Temporal bone removal in autopsy. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 8: 127.
- Schlesinger, H. F., Bower, J. T., and Berman, J. 1962. Further observations on the pathology of Meniere's disease. *Ann. Otol.* 71: 1099.
- Schlesinger, H. F., Bower, J. T., Berman, J., Kozak, S., Stroganov, G. and Reed, L., 1962. The pathology of sudden deafness. *Laryngoscope* 72: 1142.
- Schlesinger, H. F. and D. Coertzen, R. 1956. Deafness and vertigo from head injury. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chicago), 63: 913.
- Schlesinger, H. F. and Noy, W. D. 1958. Hearing losses after special lesions in the cochlea. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 4: 263.
- Schlesinger, H. F. and Winitz, R. C. 1953. Hearing losses following partial sections of the cochlear nerve. *Laryngoscope* 63: 441.
- Schlesinger, H. F. and Winitz, R. C. 1959. An experimental and clinical study of deafness from lesions of the cochlear nerve. *J. Laryng.* 69: 73.
- Serra, C. A. 1951. Capillary areas of the cochlea in the guinea pig. *Laryngoscope* 61: 1073.
- 1957. Structure of the nerve vasculature and the spiral prominence. *Ann. Otol.* 66: 321.
- Serra, C. A. and Dinstein, E. W. 1957. Electron microscopy of the organ of Corti. *Amer. J. Anat.* 100: 337.
- Serra, C. A. and Rastwinski, G. L. Recent observations on the olivocochlear bundle. *Ann. Otol.* 72: 489.
- Serra, C. A. and Sponer, F. S. 1962. Structure of the nerve endings on the external hair cells of the guinea pig as revealed by serial sections. *J. Ultrastruct. Res.*, 5: 123.
- Sorenson, H. 1966. The organization of the cochlear receptor. *Advances in Oto-Rhino-Laryngology* (Basel), 15.
- 1967. Vascular stem. In: *Submicroscopic Structure of the Inner Ear*. Ed. by Jansen, J. Pergamon Press.

- MAKARE, P., 1906: Über chronische, progressive labyrinthäre Taubheit. *Z. Ohrenheilk.*, 52 1
- MATTHEY, J. 1958: *Ein bioauraler Hörtest zum Nachweis gestörter Hörstränge*. Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart.
- MAYER, H. 1919: Das akustische Substrat der Altersschwerhörigkeit. *Arch. Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk.*, 105 1
- MCCRACKY, E., WEYER, E. G. and BRAY, C. W., 1937: The development of hearing in the opossum. *J. Exp. Zool.* 75 503.
- MIEHLKE, A., 1964: Normal and anomalous anatomy of the facial nerve and an embryological study of the thalidomide cardiopathy in Germany. *Trans. Amer. Acad. Ophthalmol. Otolaryng.* 68 1030.
- MIKELLAN, B. and RUDEN, R. J. 1965: Correlations of physiological observations with behavioural responses and with cochlear anatomy. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 59 451
- MISHRA, G. A., DE JONGE, B. R., SHINABARGER, E. W. and ARNOLD, J. E., 1958: Effects of localized hypoxia on the electrophysiological activity of the cochlea of the guinea pig. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.*, 30 705
- MURPHY, A. P., and SMITH, C. N., 1962: Response of foetus to auditory stimulation. *Lancet* 1 972.
- MYGREN, S. H., 1945: Experimental histologic studies on the labyrinth. III. The endolymphatic compression (Wissnack hypotonic degeneration). *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 33 86.
- NACHLAS, N. E., and LURIE, M. H., 1951: The stria vascularis: Review and observations. *Laryngoscope* 61 989
- NAGER, F. R., 1907: Beiträge zur Histologie der erworbenen Taubstummheit. *Z. Ohrenheilk.*, 54 217
- NEFF, W. H. 1947: The effect of partial section of the auditory nerve. *J. Comp. Physiol. Psychol.* 40 203.
- NEUBERT, H., 1950: Die Basilarmembran des Menschen und ihr Verankerungssystem. *Z. Anat. Entwicklungsgech.*, 114 339
- 1952: Zur morphologischen Erfassung der Ansprechtgebiete im Innenohr. *Verh. Anat. Ges.*, 50 204.
- NOMURA, Y., and KILBECK, L., 1967: Innervation of the human cochlea. *Ann. Otol.*, 76, 57
- NOMURA, Y., and SCHWENKERT, H. P. 1965: The efferent fibers in the cochlea. *Ann. Otol.* 74 289
- ORMEAD, F. C., 1960: The pathology of congenital deafness. *J. Laryng.* 74 919
- PELTMAN, H. B., and JUDITA, R. S., 1962: Cochlear blood flow in acoustic trauma. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 54 99
- PETALOGI, G. D. YIS, H., COVELL, W. P. and ROGERS, J. B., 1957: Decreased bio-electric potentials in the ears of senile guinea pigs. *Laryngoscope* 6 1113.
- PETALOGI, G. and SPORE, L., 1955: Clinical evaluation of presbycusis on the basis of different tests of auditory function. *Laryngoscope* 65 1136.
- PIETRANTONI, L., and LERATO, S., 1960: Some initial electron microscopic investigations of case of Ménière's syndrome. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 52 15.
- RASMUSSEN, A. T. 1940: Studies on the VIIIth cranial nerve in man. *Laryngoscope* 50 67
- RASMUSSEN, G. L., 1946: The olivary peduncle and the other fiber projections of the superior olivary complex. *J. Comp. Neurol.* 84 141
- 1953: Further observations of the efferent cochlear bundle. *J. Comp. Neurol.*, 99 61.
- 1960: Efferent fibers in the cochlear nerve and cochlear nucleus. In: *Neural Mechanisms of the Auditory and Vestibular Systems*, p 105. Ed. by Rasmussen, G. L., and Windle, W. F. Charles Thomas, Springfield.
- REIZEL, G. 1884: Das Gehörorgan der Wirbeltiere. II. Das Gehörorgan der Reptilien, der Vögel und der Säugetiere. Sponson & Wallin, Stockholm.
- 1894: Zur Entwicklung der Zellen des Ganglion spirale acustici und zur Endungsweise des Gehörnerven bei Säugetieren. *Biol. Untersuch.* 4 F 6 7
- RODRIGUEZ-ECHANDIA, E. L., and BERGER, M. H., 1965: The fine structure of the stria vascularis of the guinea pig inner ear. *Z. Zellforsch.*, 6 600.
- ROLLIN, H. 1940: Zur Kenntnis des Labyrinthhydrops und des durch ihn bedingten Ménières. *Hals. Nas. Ohrenheilk.* 31 73
- ROSE, J. E., BRUGGE, J. P., ANDERSON, D. J. and HENY, J. E., 1967: Phase-locked response to low-frequency tones in single auditory nerve fibers of the squirrel monkey. *J. Neurophysiol.*, 30 69
- ROSEN, S., BERG, A., N. PLESTER, B., EL-MOFTY, A., and SATTA, M. H., 1962: Presbycusis study of a relatively noise free population in the Sudan. *Ann. Otol.*, 71 727

- WEVER, E. G. 1942. Problem of tonal dip. *Laryngoscope* 5: 169.
- 1949. *Theory of Hearing*. John Wiley & sons, New York.
- WEVER, E. G., and NERN, W. D., 1944. A further study on the effect on partial sections of the auditory nerve. *J. Comp. Physiol. Psychol.* 43: 21.
- WITTMANN, K., 1924. Über die histologische Entstehung von Kollaps- und Degenerationsvorgängen an den Sinneszellen des inneren Ohres. *Arch. Mikr. Anat. Entwickl.-gesch.* 112: 43.





*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

3 U P P L E M E N T U M 237

**COMPARATIVE SEQUENTIAL STUDIES OF  
EFFECTS OF DRUGS ON THE VESTIBULAR SYSTEM  
OF LABORATORY ANIMALS**

**A. EVIATAR and V. GOODHILL**

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVÄGEN 14, STOCKHOLM NO**

COVER

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiknells Boktryckeri Aktiebolag*

UPPÅLA 1968

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 237

**COMPARATIVE SEQUENTIAL STUDIES OF  
EFFECTS OF DRUGS ON THE VESTIBULAR SYSTEM  
OF LABORATORY ANIMALS**

**A. EVIATAR and V. GOODHILL**

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVÄGÄN 16, STOCKHOLM NO**



*From the Department of Surgery Division of Head and Neck Surgery Otolaryngology Section, UCLA School of Medicine Los Angeles, California, and the Cedars-Sinai Medical Research Institute Division of Otolaryngology Cedars-Sinai Medical Center Los Angeles*

COMPARATIVE SEQUENTIAL STUDIES OF  
EFFECTS OF DRUGS ON THE VESTIBULAR SYSTEM  
OF LABORATORY ANIMALS

A EVIATAR and V GOODHILL

This study was supported in part by research grants from the Hope for Hearing  
Research Foundation and the Cedars-Sinai General Research Support Fund

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY  
*Almqvist & Wiksells*  
J TRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG  
UPPSALA 1968

## INTRODUCTION

There is a growing interest in drugs which depress the vestibular system not only with reference to medical therapy for specific vestibular diseases, but also with regard to uses in aviation and space medicine. This interest has accelerated the search for new drugs and for new combinations of old drugs.

The effects of drugs on the vestibular system of animals have only recently been studied quantitatively. In the past, effects were noted accidentally or evaluated by trial and error methods.

Most of the experimental quantitative methods recently introduced are based primarily on cold caloric stimulation techniques. (The minimal stimulation techniques of bithermal type in clinical use have not proved feasible in animal studies.) There are problems with existing methods for comparative evaluation of the effects of different drugs due to the great individual, as well as species, differences in vestibular sensitivity between animals. In most existing techniques, quantitative evaluations of response decline have been based on comparisons of (a) speed of slow component, (b) frequency or (c) duration of nystagmus.

Classical studies on the mechanism of labyrinthine stimulation by turning of the head or body resulted in several physiological maxims (Mach, Brewster, Fleurens, Ewald I and II, and Purkinje-Barany). Barany formalized these conclusions into a pragmatic approach to labyrinthine testing in the Barany rotation test, with use of the Barany chair. The torsion swing as a simple rotation test attracted attention mainly because of its simplicity. It was described by van Egmond, Groen and Jongkees in 1949 and was traced back to Mach (1875). It is a chair which rotates back and forth within a certain angle. According to the original description, as the initial energy is used up, the speed of rotation decreases and the angle is reduced.

The authors propose a method of testing the depressive influence of drugs on the vestibular systems of laboratory animals which employs angular acceleration stimulation and utilizes the principle of sequential comparative studies in the same animal. The method will be described and then applied to drug studies conducted in our laboratory.



# THE CONSTANT ANGLE SWING STIMULATION SEQUENTIAL METHOD

## 1 The Constant Angle Swing as a Rotatory Test Technique

Based upon previous studies, de Boer, Carels and Philipszoon (1963) described the use of torsion swing stimulation as a simple rotatory test. Our preliminary experiences with torsion swing stimulation in both animals and humans were also very encouraging and showed advantages over conventional Barany type rotation studies. However the variable factors of time and angular decay inherent in the free torsion effect result in an irregular type of recorded nystagmus with a decaying amplitude and frequency thus making quantitative evaluation difficult. This led us to the search for a more controllable method of alternating rotation, which we have found can be achieved by manual force application to the swing.<sup>1</sup> This manual technique permits rotation at a constant angle and constant velocity with the result that a more uniform nystagmus frequency and nystagmus amplitude can be obtained and recorded (Fig 1)

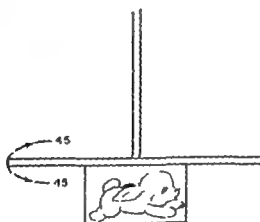


Fig 1 Constant angle swing stimulation

The time for a 90° excursion in one direction is approximately 2.5 seconds and the speed is maintained for the same time and degree in the opposite direction. The maximal acceleration and maximal velocity values can be computed by the formula

$$\text{Velocity} = \left( \frac{d\theta}{dt} \right)_{\max} = \frac{2\pi}{T} \theta_{\max}$$

$$\text{Acceleration} = \left( \frac{d^2\theta}{dt^2} \right)_{\max} = \frac{4\pi^2}{T^2} \theta_{\max}$$

A rotating device has been designed to replace the manual technique  
in use (1964)

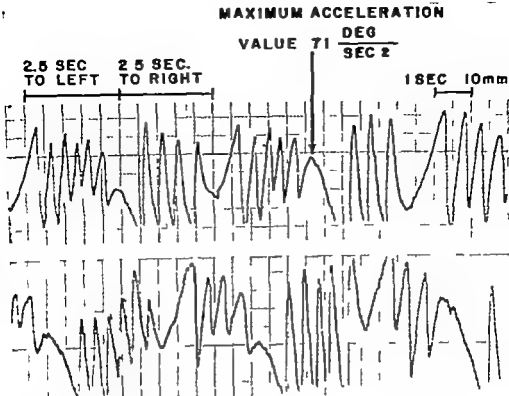


Fig 2. A    tagmographic sample obtained by constant angular velocity stimulation presented here to demonstrate the time and acceleration values.

giving a maximum velocity of 5 degrees/second and a maximum acceleration of 71 degrees/seconds where the angle  $\theta_{\max} = 45$  degrees and the period of one oscillation  $T = 5.0$  seconds.

To evaluate this technique in animals, it was decided to compare the amplitudes of nystagmus obtained from swing stimulation with those obtained from caloric stimulation techniques. In preparing for the comparative study we were unable to find information relative to the use of alternate cold and warm stimulation in rabbits, nor did we note any studies indicating that rabbits do not respond to warm caloric stimulation. Investigation of the parameters of blithermal caloric stimulation in rabbits was, therefore, deemed to be a necessary preliminary step to a comparative study of the two techniques.

#### *Step 1 Comparison of blithermal caloric stimulation techniques in rabbits*

Healthy rabbits of Dutch strain, weighing 1.5-2.5 kg, were chosen for this experiment due to convenience in handling and suitability for intravenous drug injection techniques. Electronystagmographic tracings in re-

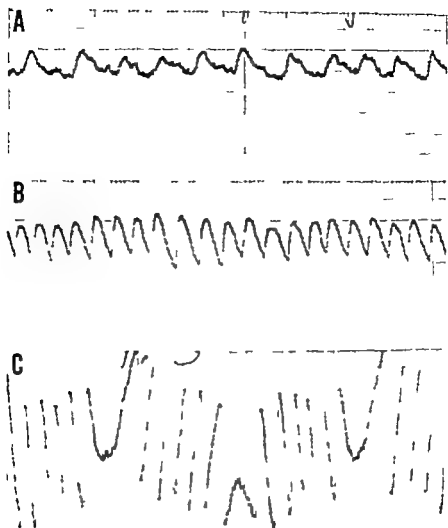


Fig 3 (A) Nystagmus in rabbit evoked by cold caloric stimulation, 10°C, left ear (B) Nystagmus evoked by cold caloric stimulation, 5°C, left ear same rabbit as in A. (C) Nystagmus induced by constant angular velocity in normal rabbit

Response to evoked labyrinthine nystagmus were recorded on a Beckman dynograph with rectilinear recording using a sensitivity of 0.1 mv/cm-0.5 mv/cm. The electrodes were introduced subcutaneously approximately 4 mm lateral to the temporal canthus of each eye.

Drugs were injected intravenously via the auricular vein. Effective nystagmogenic doses were determined for each individual animal by trial.

The Beckman Dynograph Recorder used is a two-channel direct writing rectilinear oscillograph which has maximum sensitivity of 10 microvolts/cm of pen deflection. This heat writing is transistorized and it is used with the type 9859 Nystagmus Input Coupler. The filter has a low-frequency time constant of 5 seconds and a high-frequency cut-off at 25 Hz.

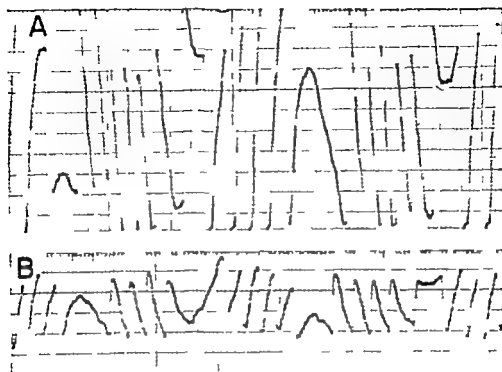


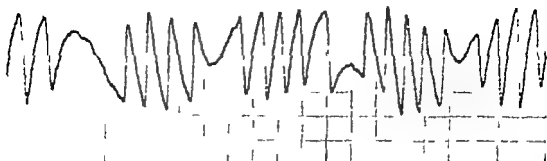
Fig 4 Illustration of extreme differences in sensitivity of the vestibular system in two normal rabbits. Rabbit A and Rabbit B were recorded by the dynograph in the same sensitivity range. The speed of the constant angle swing was the same in both recordings. There were no such differences in response in the same rabbit used on different days.

The criterion of dosage choice was adequate suppression (response decline) of induced labyrinthine nystagmus. The optimal test dose was considered to be that dose which, upon further increase produced no further depression in induced nystagmus. The weight proportion method for dosage calculation on the basis of human therapeutic doses proved to be ineffective in animal studies.

Experiments were conducted in totally dark or semi-dark rooms. Twelve rabbits were used in this study.

**Results** We found that none of the rabbits responded either to cold stimulation by lowering the temperature of the water 7° (to 31° C) or to warm stimulation by increasing the temperature 7° (to 43° C) as is the routine in the Fitzgerald-Hallpike method used in humans. In order to obtain a significant nystagmus response to cold calorization, it was necessary to lower the temperatures to 10° C (Fig. 3A) although consistently better recordings were obtained at 5° C (Fig. 3B). We were unable to elicit nystagmus by warm stimulation, even with the use of hot water at 60° C for two-minute irrigation periods. The 5° C temperature was thus selected as a standard temperature for cold calorization in rabbits.

## INITIAL RECORDING



## FOLLOWING DAY

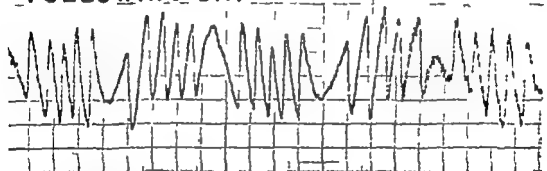


Fig 5 Nystagmus recorded in the same rabbit on different days, prior to intravenous drug injections. There was no change in the amplitude of the evoked nystagmus by constant angle swing stimulation on alternate days in the same rabbit

### *Step 2 Comparison of constant angle swing stimulation with caloric stimulation in rabbits*

The next step was to compare in the same rabbit the amplitudes of nystagmus response to cold calorization at 5 C with amplitudes following constant angle swing stimulation.

**Results** We found close correlations between the two methods when compared in the same animal, as noted in Figure 3. Fig 3C illustrates the nystagmus following constant angle swing stimulation in the same rabbit studied by cold calorization in Figs. 3A and 3B. It will be noted that the constant angle swing responses (Fig 3C) produced a larger amplitude a feature of decided value in comparative drug studies. Comparable amplitude correlations were observed in all twelve of the rabbits studied.

Bithermal caloric stimulation is used primarily in assessing unilateral lesions of the vestibular system, but there is no need for specifically unilateral labyrinthine information in drug effect studies, bilateral summation actually being more representative of the total vestibular response to drug action. We therefore adopted the constant angle swing technique, a rapid simple method in our stimulus approach to quantitative vestibular drug studies.

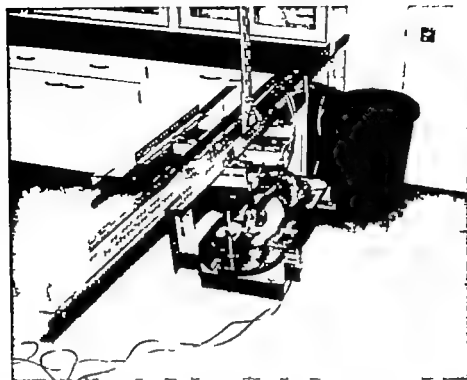


Fig. 6 Rabbit tied in position for constant angular swing stimulation

## II Comparative Sequential Drug Studies in the Same Animal

Having reached the conclusion that the swing method gave us ideal amplitude excursion for assessing the effects of drugs on the vestibular system we then used this method to compare individual differences in sensitivity between two normal rabbits.

In Figure 4 there is a clear illustration of the marked possible differences in swing amplitudes recorded under the same conditions in two different rabbits. Such individual differences were observed in all rabbits tested. These individual variations between test animals made it obvious that we could not resort to simple amplitude measurements as a function of drug effect on a group of different rabbits. It became necessary to devise a method which would sequentially allow the study of effects of a series of drugs on the same rabbits whose baseline constant velocity angular acceleration swing performance had been established. It had also been found that amplitude response magnitude in the same animal was repeatable to a high degree chronologically (Fig. 5).

These observations led us to the adoption of a method in which the same rabbit would be studied on consecutive days in an attempt to compare the vestibular suppressive or excitatory effects of a group of drugs. Thus, the animal would serve effectively as its own control in such a drug assay technique.

### III *The Method*

In order to avoid the problem of individual differences in sensitivity of the vestibular system the effectiveness of different drugs are measured in the same animal each drug on a different day using the same animal as its own control by injection with an equal volume of saline. The animal is tied in prone position and checked for spontaneous nystagmus (Fig. 6). Then it is rotated on the constant angle (90°) swing in a semi-dark room and baseline nystagmus excursions are recorded. After determining by trial the optimal dosage of the test drug it is injected intravenously. Rotation by constant angle swing is repeated 10 seconds after the injection and at 15-minute intervals thereafter and nystagmus is recorded.

Utilizing this technique two experiments were conducted to test and compare the actions of the drugs on the vestibular system of the rabbits.

### *Conclusions*

1. Constant angle swing stimulation is a simple and reliable method of studying the responses of the vestibular system of laboratory animals to drugs.

2. The method provides high amplitude of the recorded nystagmus, more suitable for quantitative evaluation than those obtained by cold calorization.

3. It was found that rabbits do not respond to warm calorization and therefore do not lend themselves to reliable stimulation by caloric methods.

4. Due to individual differences in the sensitivity of the vestibular system in rabbits, the same animal should be used to compare the effectiveness of different drugs, serving also as its own control.

5. No significant differences in individual labyrinthine nystagmus were found between studies performed in completely dark or semi-dark rooms.

# DRUG EXPERIMENT I

## EFFECTS OF THORAZINE, DRAMAMINE, AND PHENERGAN ON THE FUNCTION OF THE VESTIBULAR SYSTEM OF THE RABBIT

*Thorazine* is the trade name for chlorpromazine a phenothiazine derivative known also by other names (Largactil, Megaphen, Hibernal). It was developed in France in 1950 and introduced in clinical practice as an aid to anesthesiology one year later. Chlorpromazine is known to be mostly a sympatholytic drug (Courvoisier *et al.*, 1953) centrally depressive especially on the brain stem with pronounced inhibitory effect on the activity of the reticular formation (Hiebel *et al.* 1954). Because of this, its effect on the vestibular system was studied by Salerno (1953) Carbonara and Salonna (1956) Bergstrom and Koch (1956) Jongkees and Philipszoon (1960) and others.

*Phenergan* is the trade name of Promethazine also a phenothiazine derivative known for its antihistaminic action and sedation effect. It was found to be very effective against motion sickness, but is not a drug in common use in vestibular disturbances (Chian, H. I. and Smith P. K., 1955 Glaser E. M., and McCance P. A., 1955).

*Dramamine* is the trade name for Dimenhydrinate an antihistamine. Although it contains 8-chlorotheophylline, the active therapeutic ingredient is diphenhydramine. It is used mostly in motion sickness and vestibular disturbances (Gay L. N. and Carlner P. E., 1949 Campbell, E. H., 1949 Gay L. N., 1951 a and 1951 b). The mechanism of action of antihistamine drugs on vestibular activity is not completely understood. It is presumed to be completely separate from its antihistaminic action and also from its cortical sedative action.

A comparison between these drugs by our method was of interest. Dramamine is usually considered a very useful anti-vertigo drug, and its depressive activity on the vestibular system is widely accepted. The effectiveness of Thorazine has been disputed. Phenergan had been considered more effective than either Thorazine or Dramamine in motion sickness.

### Methods

The methods and material used in this experiment were the same as those previously described. Ten rabbits of Dutch strain, weighing 1.5-2.5 kg, were used. Tied in the prone position each rabbit was checked for spontaneous nystagmus, after which labyrinthine nystagmus was evoked by



constant angle swing stimulation as described previously. The nystagmus was recorded with the Beckman rectilinear dynograph. The drug was injected into the auricular vein. Ten seconds after the injection and every 15 minutes thereafter labyrinthine function was induced by constant angle swing and the nystagmus was recorded.

### *Method of Analysis*

The nystagmographic comparison was based quantitatively on the average depression of the initial amplitude of the evoked nystagmus as measured before the injection of the drug.

### *Dosages*

The effective optimal doses of the drugs injected intravenously were determined by trial. The selected effective optimal dosages were: Thorazine 5 mg/kg, Dramamine 10 mg/kg, Phenergan 15 mg/kg.

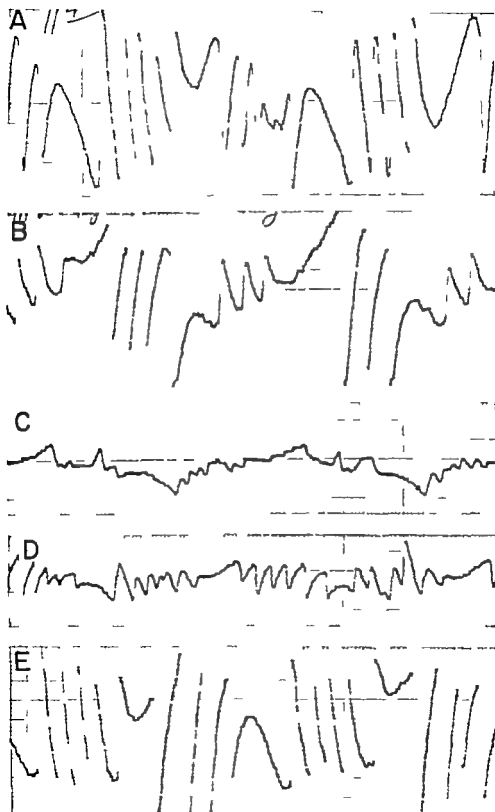
The main criterion was that the effective dosage would produce suppression of the induced nystagmus. As previously stated we found that it was impossible to make this dosage determination on the basis of human dosages. Thus, it was necessary to adopt a trial technique to work out the most effective dose which would produce reliably repeatable amplitude changes for each drug. The optimal effective dose as selected was such that no further depression in the induced nystagmus could be obtained when dosage was increased even up to sublethal doses. The optimal dose of Phenergan was found to occur very close to the toxic dose (effective dose 15 mg/kg, toxic dose, 20 mg/kg). A larger margin of safety was found with Thorazine and with Dramamine (Thorazine effective dose 5 mg/kg, toxic dose more than 20 mg/kg; Dramamine effective dose 10 mg/kg, toxic dose 20 mg/kg).

### *Results*

**Thorazine** In Figure 7 A shows the baseline nystagmus induced by constant angle swing stimulation before injection of Thorazine. B shows a definite depression of nystagmus within 10 seconds after injection of the drug. C shows maximum depression of nystagmus after 15 minutes. In D two hours after injection recovery is observed as indicated by beginning increased amplitude of excursions. In E, three hours following the beginning of the experiment, the normal baseline response to constant angle swing

---

FIG. 7. Thorazine injected into rabbits, 5 mg/kg, iv. (A) Baseline nystagmus induced by constant angle swing stimulation before injection. (B) 10 seconds after injection, the depression of nystagmus is indicated. (C) The nystagmus is maximally depressed after 15 minutes. (D) At 2 hours, recovery is observed by the amplitudes recorded. (E) 3 hours after the beginning of the experiment, normal response to constant angle swing stimulation is recorded.



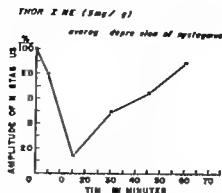


Fig 8. Average depression of the amplitude of the induced nystagmus in the 10 rabbits injected with Thorazine

stimulation is again recorded and the amplitude is practically identical with that observed in the tracings of A

Thorazine 5 mg/kg i.v. depressed the amplitude of the induced nystagmus after 15 minutes by an average of 90% (Fig 8)

**Dramamine** In Figure 9 tracing A shows the baseline of the nystagmus induced by constant angle swing before injection of the drug B shows the initial depression of nystagmus within 10 seconds after injection of the drug C shows maximum depression of the nystagmus after 15 minutes. D shows a recovery almost back to the normal baseline of A after three hours following the injection of the Dramamine

Dramamine, when injected in doses of 10 mg/kg i.v. produced a depression of the amplitude in the induced nystagmus after 15 minutes by an average of 70% (Fig 10)

**Phenergan** Tracing A of Figure 11 shows the baseline of the nystagmus amplitude induced by constant angle swing before injection of the drug Tracing B shows beginning depression of the nystagmus after a period of 10 seconds. Tracing C shows maximum depression of the nystagmus 15 minutes following the injection (note the very marked difference between the excursions in tracing C with the other tracings C obtained with Thorazine and Dramamine) D shows return almost to normal response in the amplitude of the evoked nystagmus three hours following the beginning of the experiment The vestibular depressive effect of Phenergan is decidedly the least of these three drugs.

Phenergan, when injected in doses of 15 mg/kg i.v., depressed the amplitude of the induced nystagmus after 15 minutes by an average of 60% the lowest of the three drugs studied (Fig 12)

### Discussion

Using our new method of evaluation on laboratory animals, the actions of Thorazine, Dramamine and Phenergan on the vestibular system of the rabbit were explored and compared

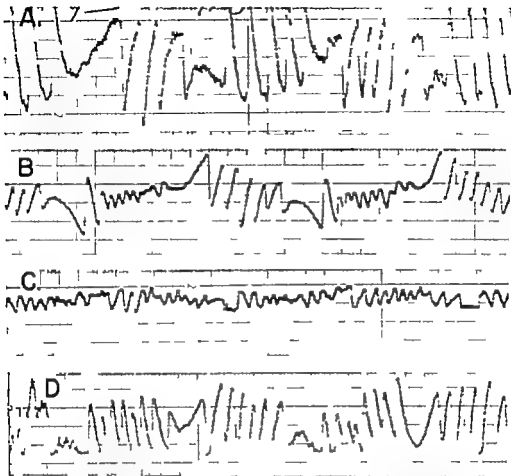


Fig. 9. Dramamine injected into rabbits, 10 mg/kg. i. (A) Baseline nystagmus induced by constant angular swing before injection. (B) 10 seconds after injection, the depression of nystagmus is initiated. (C) The nystagmus is maximally depressed after 15 min. (D) 3 hours after the beginning of the experiment, almost normal response to constant angular stimulation is recorded.

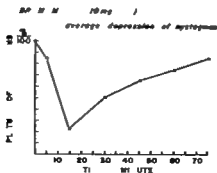


Fig. 10. Average depression of the amplitude of the induced nystagmus in the same 10 rabbit injected with Dramamine.

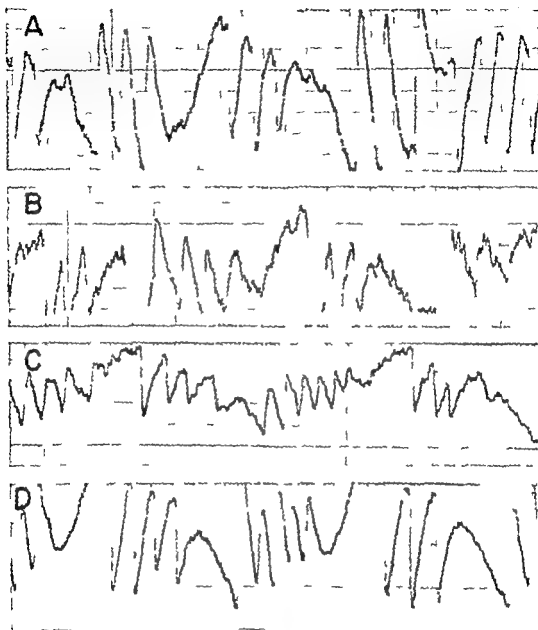


Fig. 11 Phenergan injected into rabbits, 10 mg/kg. (A) Baseline nystagmus induced by constant angle swing before injection. (B) 10 seconds after injection the depression of nystagmus is initiated. (C) The nystagmus is maximally depressed after 15 min. (D) 3 hours after the beginning of the experiment, almost normal response to constant angle swing time lapse is recorded.

Jongkees and Philipzoon (1960) experimenting with rabbits, found that chlorpromazine did not affect vestibular excitability, contradictory to the findings of Salerno (1955), Carbonara and Salonna (1956) and Bergström and Koch (1956). Wood (1964) in his review of motion sickness drug literature concluded that chlorpromazine was ineffective in com-

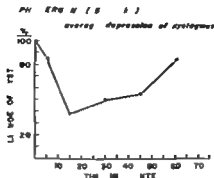


Fig. 12. Average depression of the amplitude of the induced nystagmus in the same 10 rabbit injected with Phenergan.

parison with other phenothiazines and many other drugs. The same conclusion has been found elsewhere (Goodman and Gilman 1966) i.e. that chlorpromazine is ineffective against vestibular disorders and motion sickness. It is interesting to mention that Phenergan was stated to be very effective against motion sickness (as would be expected, it being an excellent antihistamine) and the only reason for it not being widely used is its cortical depressive side effect. Dramamine was found to be helpful in motion sickness and vestibular disorders.

In our experiments in rabbits, chlorpromazine was found to be the most active in depressing vestibular nystagmus induced by constant angle swing. Dramamine was only the second in effectiveness, judged by the same criteria and Phenergan was the least active drug.

At first glance there appears to be a great discrepancy between our results and those of other authors. These discrepancies can easily be attributed to the different experimental and interpretative methods. A more searching look at the results may suggest an interesting observation: chlorpromazine was found by others to be clinically ineffective in motion sickness, with an indirect implied conclusion that it is ineffective as a depressant of labyrinthine function.

Our experiments are actually not in contradiction with this concept: we found chlorpromazine to be effective against semicircular canal stimulation but we did not study effects on linear motion (i.e. utricular or saccular otolith stimulation) which may be unaffected by this drug. There exists also the possibility that Phenergan has a favorable effect in depressing utricular and/or saccular otolith stimulation, while affecting semicircular canal function only slightly. Dramamine, an intermediate drug, may act on both canal and otolith systems. The difference in their sites of action may be due to their different chemical formulae. Experiments designed to study separation of canal and otolith system responses are underway in our laboratory.

### *Conclusions*

In this series of studies to compare the action of Thorazine, Dramamine and Phenergan on the vestibular system of the rabbit

1 Thorazine was found to be the most active drug against semicircular canal stimulation followed by Dramamine Phenergan was the least active drug These results are in reverse order to their clinical activity against motion sickness as reported by others

2 It is suggested that there are differences between drug effects on semicircular canals versus otolith organ function

## DRUG EXPERIMENT II

### EFFECTS OF NEMBUTAL<sup>1</sup> ON THE VESTIBULAR SYSTEM OF THE RABBIT

Since the discovery of the barbiturate effect by Flaher and Van Mering in 1903, several changes and additions have been made to the malonylurea molecule, with the result that this important group of drugs has become one of the most commonly used.

Barbiturates are widely used to cause a depressive action on the central nervous system. Although it has been established that the cerebral cortex and the reticular activating system are the most sensitive to barbiturate effects, while the cerebellar vestibular and spinal systems are less sensitive (Goodman and Gilman 1966) the barbiturates have, for many years, played a prominent role in the treatment of vestibular disorders and motion sickness (Noble, 1955)

One would expect the barbiturates to depress vestibular activity in subanesthetic doses. Excitatory effects on the vestibular system are suggested by the observation of preanesthetic nystagmus (Bender and O'Brien 1946 Goodman and Gilman, 1966) and nystagmus and ataxia due to chronic intoxication (Hill and Belleville, 1933 Isbell 1951 Goodman and Gilman 1966)

The aim of this study was to determine the effects of intravenous Nembutal on the vestibular function of the rabbit

#### *Methods*

In this experiment 24 rabbits of Dutch strain, weighing 1.5-2.5 kg, were used. Each rabbit was carefully tied in the prone position (Fig 13) to eliminate the possibility of positional nystagmus (Gutman Bergman and Chaimovitz, 1964) and checked for spontaneous nystagmus, after which labyrinthine nystagmus was evoked by constant angle swing stimulation. The nystagmus was recorded with the Beckman rectilinear dynograph.

Each rabbit served as its own control by a preliminary injection of intravenous saline of the same volume as the Nembutal to be injected subsequently. Ten seconds after the Nembutal injection and then at 15-minute intervals, the animals were tested for spontaneous nystagmus and then for nystagmus induced by constant angle swing stimulation. Recording were again made by dynograph.



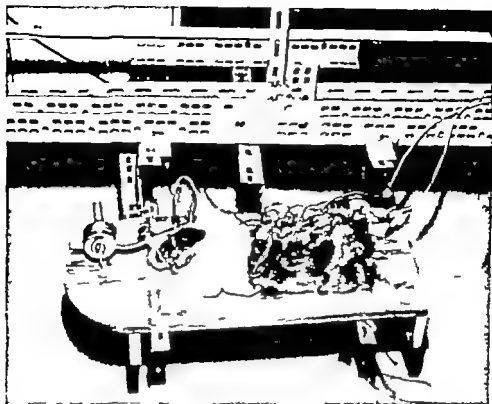


Fig. 13 Rabbit tied in prone position. Vestibular nystagmus can be evoked in this way

(a) Six rabbits were injected intravenously each with 7-10 mg/kg Nembutal (about 1/3 anesthetic dose)

(b) Six rabbits were injected with 11-15 mg/kg Nembutal (less than 1/2 anesthetic dose)

(c) Six rabbits were injected with 20-30 mg/kg (close to a full anesthetic dose)

(d) Six additional bilaterally labyrinthectomized rabbits were tested in the same way—two each with 8 mg/kg, two with 10 mg/kg, and two with 25 mg/kg of Nembutal. The labyrinthectomy was performed by the ventral approach using the method of de Kleyn and Versteegh. The final surgical procedure preceded the studies in all instances by at least 40 days.

### Results

(a) All six rabbits injected with the small dose (7-10 mg/kg) of Nembutal invariably showed an excitatory effect within 10 seconds on the vestibular system, as judged by the increase in amplitude of the labyrinthine-evoked nystagmus by constant angle swing stimulation. One half hour later, on greater amplitude excursions following swing stimulations were recorded (Fig. 14). In one rabbit a short period of spontaneous nystag

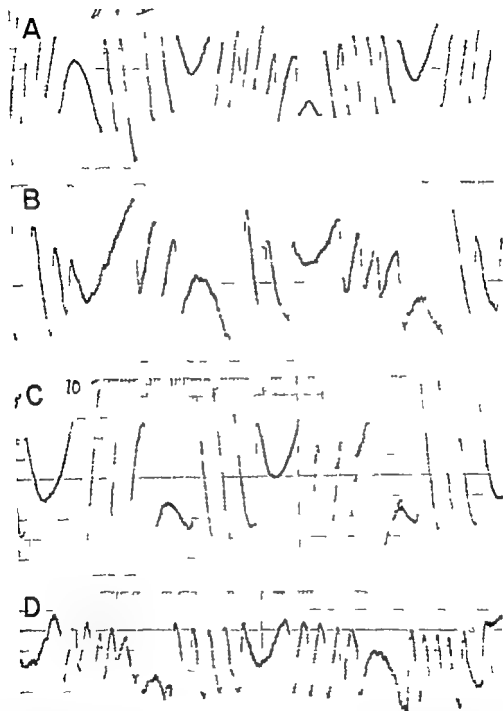


Fig 14 Rabbit injected with Nembutal, 7.10 mg/kg. I. (A) Baseline nystagmus response to constant angular velocity before injection. (B) Nystagmus response to constant angular velocity 10 seconds after injection. The amplitudes are higher than before the injection. (C) Nystagmus response to constant angular velocity stimulated 30 minutes after injection. Note the high amplitudes of the nystagmus. (D) The recovery 3 hours after the injection, shows nystagmus comparable to that in A.

mus (10 seconds) was recorded. In another rabbit, a short depressive period followed the excitatory period as expressed by a lower amplitude of the evoked nystagmus. In general there was no depressed nystagmus amplitude in this group. Excitation was the primary response at this dosage level.

(b) Of the six rabbits injected with the medium dose of Nembutal (11-15 mg/kg) four showed a preliminary excitatory period expressed by higher amplitude of the evoked nystagmus followed by spontaneous nystagmus (without stimulation) which lasted from 10 seconds to one hour. After the spontaneous nystagmus stopped, a depressed period of labyrinthine response with very low amplitudes was recorded (Fig 15). In one rabbit there was no excitatory period, but spontaneous nystagmus was recorded. In one rabbit there was no depressive period following spontaneous nystagmus. Thus, in this group, the outstanding response characteristic was a period of spontaneous nystagmus following initial excitation, followed by final depression.

(c) The six rabbits injected with the large dose of Nembutal (20-30 mg/kg) invariably exhibited the depressive period. Three animals showed only the depressed responses (Fig 16) two had spontaneous nystagmus for a few seconds before the depressive period and one showed excitatory and spontaneous nystagmus phases before the depressive period. This group shows that large doses are followed by depressive nystagmus response which may persist for several hours.

(d) The bilaterally labyrinthectomized rabbits showed no nystagmus either spontaneously or following constant angle swing stimulation. Neither intravenous saline nor intravenous Nembutal changed this non responsive state.

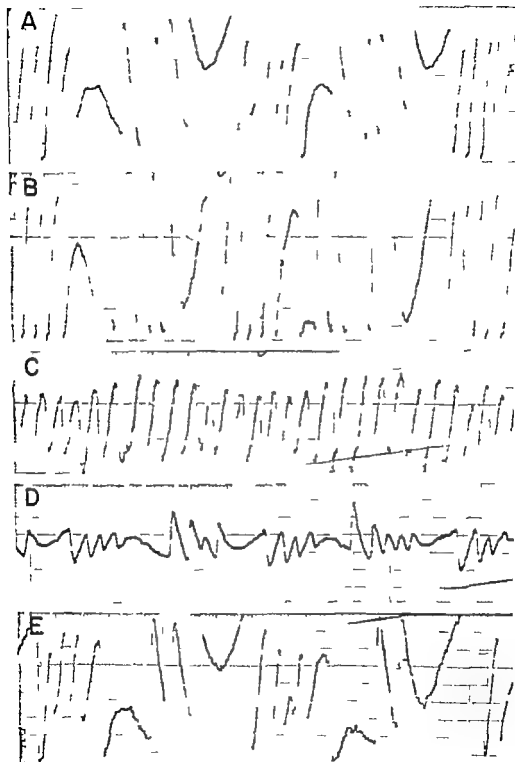
In all the control studies, saline injections did not modify evoked nystagmus (Fig 17).

### Discussion

Gutman, Bergman and Chalmovitz (1964) in a series of studies on the effect of Nembutal concluded that nystagmus induced in rabbits depends upon head position. They postulated, therefore, that the stimulation originated mainly in the vestibular gravity receptors.

---

Fig 15 Rabbits injected with Nembutal, 11-15 mg/kg, I.v. (A) Baseline nystagmus response to constant angle swing stimulation before the injection. (B) Nystagmus response to constant angle swing stimulation 10 sec after injection. Note the high amplitude of the nystagmus. (C) Spontaneous nystagmus (with no stimulation) follows the high amplitude period. This spontaneous nystagmus lasted from 10 sec to one hour. (D) The depressive period that appeared after the spontaneous nystagmus subsided was characterized by low amplitude nystagmus in response to constant angle swing stimulation. (E) The recovery period after 4 hours shows nystagmus response to constant angle swing stimulation that resembles the nystagmus before injection.



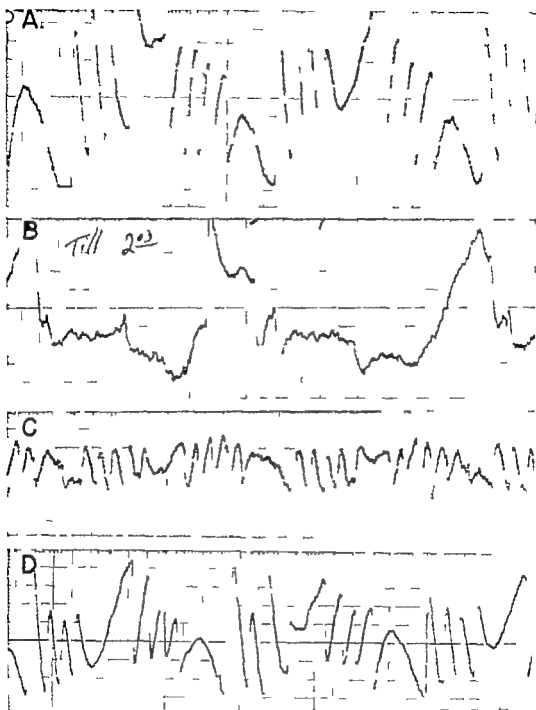


Fig 10. Rabbit injected with Nembutal, 20-30 mg/kg, i. (A) Baseline nystagmus response to constant angular stimulation before injection. (B) The nystagmus response to constant angular stimulation was greatly depressed 10 sec after injection. (C) 2 hrs after injection, the nystagmus response to constant angular stimulation recovers, but the amplitude remains still smaller than before injection. (D) 4 hrs after the beginning of the experiment, normal amplitude of nystagmus was recorded, similar to that recorded before injection.

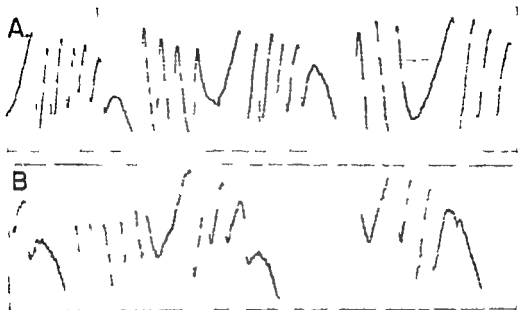


Fig 17 Rabbit 1 injected with 1 ml saline 1. served as controls to the experiment. (A) Baseline nystagmus response to constant  $\omega$  gl swing stimulation before the injection. (B) Nystagmus response to constant  $\omega$  gl swing stimulation after injection (10 sec to 2 hours)

Jongkees and Philipszoon (1960) reported that suppression of nystagmus occurs with Nembutal only under very deep anesthesia. They did not report either excitatory effects or spontaneous nystagmus.

The route of intravenous administration of the drug and strain differences in the rabbits might account for the differences between our results and the results of others.

In a study on central nystagmus, Oosterveld (1963) showed an enhancement of nystagmus followed by a depression with small doses of Nembutal (2 mg/kg). With larger doses (10 mg/kg) an immediate pronounced long lasting depression of nystagmic responses was obtained. Based upon these results and referring to the work of Philipszoon (1939) who came to the conclusion that barbiturates do not affect the vestibular apparatus proper, Oosterveld concluded that the mechanism of action of Nembutal is solely central because of depression of central nystagmus only.

That central nystagmus also is inhibited by Nembutal is to be expected because of the general central depressive action of barbiturates. However, our experiments clearly show the direct action of the drug upon the peripheral vestibular complex.

That the effect is mediated via the stato-kinetic end organs was well demonstrated by lack of responses in the labyrinthectomized animal. Since our swing produces constant angular acceleration we may assume that

# REFERENCES

- Bender, M. B., and O'Brien, F. H. 1946: The influence of barbiturates on various forms of nystagmus. *Am J Ophthalmol* 29: 1541.
- Bergström, O. and Koch, H. 1956: The effect of chlorpromazine on the vestibular function. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 46: 484.
- Boer, E. de, Carels, J. and Philippaxoon, A. J. 1963: The torsion swing: A simple rotation test. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 56: 437.
- Campbell, E. R., 1949: The effectiveness of Dramamine in relieving the vestibular reactions following the labyrinthine fenestration operation. *Laryngoscope* 59: 1261.
- Carbonara, L., and Salonna, F. 1956: Effects of Largactil on the vestibular function. *Boll. Mal Orecch.* 74: 47.
- Chinn, H. L., and Smith, P. K., 1955: Motion sickness. *Pharmacol Rev* 7: 33.
- Courvoisier, S. F., Farnel, J., Ducret, H., Hasky, M., and Koetschet, P. 1958: Propriétés pharmacodynamiques du chlorhydrate de chloro-3-(diméthylamino-3-propyl)-10-phéothiazine (4560 R.P.) Et d'expérience tel d'un nouveau corps utilisé dans l'anesthésie potentielle et dans l'hypnotisme artificiel. *Arch Int Pharmacodyn.* 93: 303.
- Egmond, A. A. J. V., Groen, J. J., and J. J. G. L. D. W. 1949: The mechanics of the semicircular canal. *J Physiol* 110: 1.
- Gay, L. N. 1951: Prophylactic and therapeutic control of vestibular disturbances with dimenhydrinate. *J.A.M.A.* 145: 712.
- 1951b: A subsequent report on Dramamine. The prophylactic and therapeutic control of motion sickness and vestibular disturbances. *MIL. Surgeon* 108: 324.
- Gay, L. N. and Calliner, P. E., 1949: The prevention and treatment of motion sickness. I. Sea sickness. *Bull J Am H. Pkins Hosp* 84: 470.
- Glaser, E. M. and McCance, R. A. 1959: Effect of drug on motion sickness produced by short exposure to artificial waves. *Lancet* 1: 638.
- Goodman, L. S., and Gilman, A. 1966: *The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics*. The Macmillan Co. New York.
- Gutman, J., Bergman, F. and Chalmovitz, M. 1964: The mechanism of nystagmus induced by anesthetics. *Experientia* 20: 178.
- Hilbel, G., Bonvallet, M. and Dell, D. 1954: Action de la chlorpromazine (Largactil 4560 RP) au niveau du système nerveux central. *La semaine des hôpitaux* 37: 2345.
- Hill, H. E., and Belleville, R. E., 1953: Effects of chronic barbiturate intoxication on motor and muscular coordination. *A.M.A. Arch. Neurol Psychiat* 70: 180.
- Isbell, H., 1951: Acute and chronic barbiturate intoxication. *Veterans Administration Technical Bulletin* TB 10-76.
- J. J. G. L. D. W. and Philippaxoon, A. J. 1960: Some nystagmographical methods for the investigation of the effect of drugs upon the labyrinth. *Acta Physiol Pharmacol Yed Landica* 9: 240.
- Mach, E., 1874: *Grundriss der Lehre von den Bewegungsempfindungen*. Englimann, Leipzig.
- Nohl, R. L., 1955: Medication of motion sickness prior to and during World War II. *Int Rev Med.* 163: 1.
- Oosterveld, W. J. 1963: Effects of central nystagmus. Thesis, Amsterdam.
- Philippaxoon, A. J. 1959: The effect of some drugs upon the labyrinth. A nystagmographical study. Thesis, Amsterdam.
- Salerno, P. 1955: Action of Largactil on vestibular disturbances. *Ann Laryng* 51: 1.
- Wood, C. D. 1964: Special report, U.S. Naval School of Aviation Medicine 64-2.





PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Abraham & Wikström Boktryckeri Aktiebolag*

UPPSALA 1966

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 238

**SIMULTANEOUS MEASUREMENTS OF  
ENDOLYMPHATIC AND PERILYMPHATIC FLUID  
PRESSURES BEFORE AND DURING ANAPHYLAXIS  
AND ASSOCIATED CHANGES IN CEREBROSPINAL  
FLUID, VENOUS AND ARTERIAL PRESSURES**

*Candidate Thesis to  
the American Laryngological, Rhinological  
and Otological Society Inc.  
Presented 1965*

**DANIEL McNAMARA MARTINEZ, M.D**

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell's Boktryckeri Aktieförslag*

UPPSALA 1968

*From the University of Texas Southwestern Medical School,  
Dallas, Texas, U.S.A.*

SIMULTANEOUS MEASUREMENTS OF  
ENDOLYMPHATIC AND PERILYMPHATIC FLUID  
PRESSURES BEFORE AND DURING ANAPHYLAXIS  
AND ASSOCIATED CHANGES IN CEREBROSPINAL  
FLUID VENOUS AND ARTERIAL PRESSURES

*Candidate Thesis to  
the American Laryngological Rhinological  
and Otological Society, Inc.  
Presented 1963*

DANIEL McNAMARA MARTINEZ M.D.  
*Assistant Clinical Professor of Otolaryngology*

Supported by N.L.H. Grant No. NB 01517-03

A moving picture in color was prepared, demonstrating the pressure changes  
at the moment they were produced

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell*

BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG

UPPSALA 1969

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction	5
I Materials and methods	8
A. Equipment	
B. Technic	
II Observations	24
III Discussion	41
IV Summary	47
V Conclusions	51
References	52



## INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this paper is to describe a technic for the simultaneous measurements of endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures in living anesthetized guinea pigs to report measurements obtained under the experimental conditions heretofore outlined in thirty five per cent of over 1300 experiments in a six year study and to describe the effect of anaphylactic shock upon these pressures. The simultaneous measurements of endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures have not been previously reported.

Wetlle *et al* [38] were the first to obtain and measure individual pressures of the endolymph and perilymph. These were obtained in anesthetized guinea pigs by utilizing microcannulas and capacitance electromanometers. The microcannulas were inserted into either the scala media or vestibuli previous fenestration of the cochlea. Perilymphatic pressures were also obtained through the round window membrane. Pressure measurements of 14 mm Hg to 32 mm Hg for the perilymph and 8.5 mm Hg for the endolymph were reported. Simultaneous pressures were not reported.

Perilymphatic and cerebrospinal fluid pressures were obtained simultaneously in the cat by Kerth & Allen [23]. The results of 30 measurements on 8 cats were reported. Spinal fluid pressures were obtained by inserting a fine polyethylene tube into the subdural space of the cat after performing laminectomy. Perilymphatic fluid pressures were obtained by a capillary tube placed through a cochlear fenestration in the area of the scala tympani. Both tubes were connected to water manometers. The authors concluded that the perilymphatic and the cerebrospinal fluid pressures were identical.

Other investigators have performed related experiments.

Guild [18] presented experimental evidence that the endolymph flows from the cochlear duct toward the saccus endolymphaticus. He found precipitation of ferric ferrocyanide in the wall of the saccus endolymphaticus after injecting the cochlear duct of guinea pigs with a solution of potassium ferrocyanide and iron ammonium citrate. Thus he concluded that there exists normally a circulation of endolymph. His theory was that the stria vascularis is structurally capable of forming endolymph which flows toward the saccus endolymphaticus and passes through it into the numerous small blood vessels of this region. Guild compared the stria vascularis to the choroid plexus and secretory areas of the ciliary processes.

Skog [33] was able to obtain a vestibular syndrome in guinea pigs which was induced by anaphylactic reaction. He injected the carotid artery of



living guinea pigs with sheep hemolytic rabbit serum obtaining rotation and lateral flexion of the animal accompanied by nystagmus

Weille *et al* [37] described the effect of anaphylactic shock in the small blood vessels of the spiral ligament and the stria vascularis. They noted constriction of arterioles and initial constriction followed by dilatation of the venules. The authors also reported emboli and thrombi in these vessels occurring during anaphylaxis. When the animal recovered thrombi persisted

Hallpike & Ledoux [19] determined the osmotic pressures of perilymph, endolymph, cerebrospinal fluid and blood in the cat. They concluded that the osmotic pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid exceeded that of the blood. The osmotic pressure of the perilymph exceeded that of the cerebrospinal fluid. The endolymph and perilymph were found to be iso-osmotic. They commented that the higher osmotic pressure in the cerebrospinal fluid, perilymph and endolymph as compared to that of the blood supports the theory of the origin of these fluids as a secretion, the cerebrospinal fluid originating in the choroid plexus and the endolymph and perilymph in the stria vascularis.

Smith *et al* [34] reported that the content of protein was higher in the perilymph than in the endolymph.

Nastalin *et al* [33] suggested that the circulation of the labyrinthine fluids was directed from the perilymph through Reissner's membrane to the endolymph. The absorption site was considered to be in the stria vascularis.

Becht [9] studied the cerebrospinal fluid pressure in dogs by inserting a trocar into the cisterna magna. He concluded that the venous and cerebrospinal fluid pressures were equal. He commented that because of their close physiological relationship it was absolutely necessary to obtain venous pressure measurements when the study of the cerebrospinal fluid was under consideration.

Fremont Smith & Forges [16] studying the intra-ocular and intracranial pressures, stated that capillary pressure is far more dependent on the venous pressure because of the high resistance to blood flow in the arterioles which are interposed between the arterial pressure and the capillary bed. The rate of absorption of fluid in the eye or in the cranium accordingly must vary directly with the venous pressure of the scleral or dural sinuses while the rate of formation will vary with the capillary pressure in the ciliary process and in the choroid plexus. Capillary pressure is then primarily controlled by the venous pressure hence provided the osmotic pressure of the plasma remains unchanged the rate both of formation and of absorption must depend on the venous pressure and vary directly with the venous pressure. This explains why both aqueous humor and cerebrospinal fluid pressure are so intimately related to the venous pressure and are much less affected by changes in arterial pressure.

Hallpike & Cairns [19] studying the temporal bones of individuals who had had clinically Menière's disease and who had died of unassociated fac-

tors found gross dilation of the endolymph system affecting chiefly the scala media of the cochlea and the saccule.

Lindsay [27] reported the pathological findings of a patient who had severe deafness of sensory neural type accompanied by tinnitus but not vertigo. Marked dilatation of the cochlear duct was found. He concluded that labyrinthine dropsy constitutes a pathological entity which may produce either auditory disturbances alone or the clinical syndrome known as Ménière's disease.

It is considered that there are a number of factors which produce sensory neural deafness and vertigo. One of these is an increase of pressure within the inner ear and more specifically in the cochlear duct, resulting in degeneration of the hearing organ. The increased pressure of the endolymph has been explained as occurring secondarily to vascular changes in the stria vascularis. Experimental evidence supports the fact that the endolymph is produced, for the most part, by this structure. Allergic reactions or other factors affecting the capillary vessels of the stria vascularis have been considered as a cause for increasing the pressure in the endolymph.

The specific aim and objective of this series of experiments is to determine possible changes occurring in the pressure of the endolymph under anaphylactic shock.

## I MATERIALS AND METHODS

Over 1300 experiments were performed during a six year study utilizing mostly guinea pigs weighing from 30 to 200 grams. This number also includes 92 cats weighing 2500 to 7500 grams, and 2 rhesus monkeys. Adequate observations were made in 35 per cent of these experiments. The remaining were discarded due to flaws in technic, incomplete observations, ear disease, shock or death of the animal during the experiment. Two human perilymphatic pressures were obtained at the time of labyrinthectomy surgery.

The guinea pig was chosen as the experimental animal because of its relatively small size and because its cochlea can be made surgically accessible for this type of experiment. The cat was utilized in other experiments in order to obtain a comparison with the results obtained in the guinea pig. The rhesus monkey was utilized on two occasions to adapt the procedures developed in lower mammals to the study in primates.

Guinea pigs, free from disease, were sensitized with egg white intra-peritoneally. No animal was presented with a shocking dose until 21 days following the initial sensitizing dose. Each animal was anesthetized by the intra-peritoneal injection of sodium pentobarbital. A tracheotomy was performed for the administration of oxygen and the cochlea was surgically exposed. Two fenestrae were made under microscopic visualization of the cochlea, one in an area corresponding to the scala media and the other over the scala tympani. Care was taken not to penetrate into these scalae in order to avoid fluid leakage. Two quartz micropipettes measuring 30 to 50 micra outside diameter were then driven through the microfenestrae with a micromanipulator thus breaking through the minimal thickness left in the endosteal layer. The scala media and the scala tympani were entered in this manner. The micropipettes sealed the bony walls as they penetrated and leakage was avoided. When leaks did not occur suction in the bulla cavity did not make any variation in our monitoring oscilloscope. The micropipettes were attached to their respective transducers by means of a plastic tubing. The transducers were attached to suitable pre-amplifiers. The output was monitored by an oscilloscopic screen or two voltmeters and recorded on tape or photographic film. Calibration of the equipment was done before and after the experiment. After the pressures were noted the animal was placed in anaphylactic shock by the intravenous or intra-arterial injection of egg white. Observations of the changes during anaphylaxis were then obtained and recorded. One can determine the position of the



Fig. 1 Microdrill and cochlea. 6 inch pip

pipettes by studying the tracings obtained at the time of the experiment. Each pressure had its own characteristic responses

### A Equipment

1 *Table* In order to eliminate as many vibrations as possible the experimental table was constructed according to the method of Peck & Hoerr. The table consists of a thick slab of boiler plate measuring 122 cm square and 1 cm in thickness, the four corners of which rest on four pyramids of squash balls held together in steel cups, and a heavy steel table with an adjustable top on which the cups rest and rubber shock absorbers which support the heavy steel table.

2. *Micropipettes* These pipettes were constructed of quartz tubing measuring 7 mm o.d. and 0.2 mm i.d. which had been heated and drawn so that the point would have an outside diameter of 30 to 50 micra. The pipette then tapers outward to minimize capillary pressure. The total length of the pipette was .5 cm.

*Recorders* The output voltage of the pre-amplifiers was fed in some instances, into a cathode-ray oscillograph recorder. In other instances it was directed into an Ampex (Model Sp-300) Instrumentation Recorder.

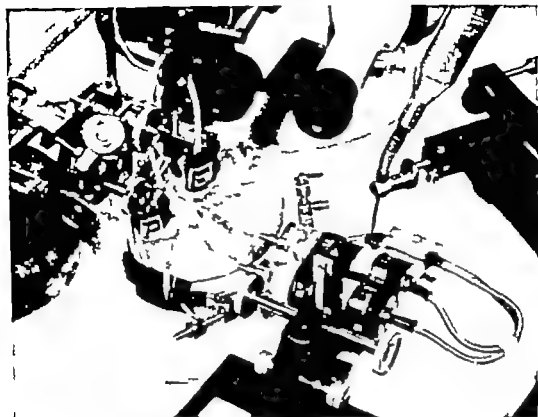


Fig 2. Apparatus used in obtaining intracochlear pressures.

### B. Technique

1 *Sensitization* Each animal was sensitized by two 0.5 ml intraperitoneal injections of 1:10 solution of crude sterile egg white five days apart. No animal was presented with shocking dose until 21 days or more after the initial dose. No attempts were made to quantitate the degree of anaphylactic shock.

2 *Anesthesia* Initially each animal was anesthetized by injecting intraperitoneally 45 mg sodium pentobarbital per kilogram of body weight. Further doses are administered as required during the course of the experiment.

3 *Surgical procedure* The operative procedure is divided into four parts: (a) the macroscopic exposure of the cochlea; (b) the tracheotomy; (c) the microscopic fenestration of the second or third cochlear turn over the scala media and the first turn over the scala tympani, and (d) the introduction of the pipettes.

The animal hair around the head and neck regions was removed with an electric razor in preparation for surgery. The macroscopic exposure of the cochlea began with a postauricular incision extending into the neck and following the posterior border of the ramus of the mandible. The postauricular muscles were separated from their plannal attachments, the ex-

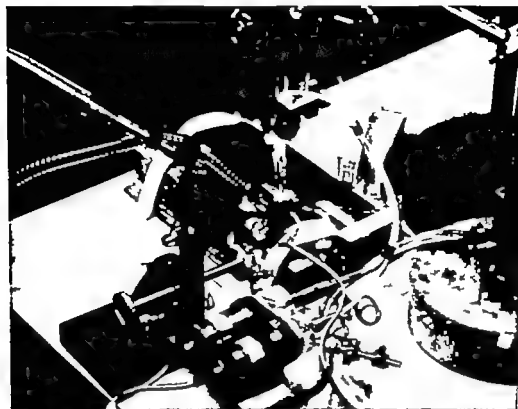


Fig. 3. Experiment in progress obtaining simultaneous endolymphatic and perilymphatic pressure

ternal auditory canal was transected and the anterior auricular muscles were severed. The pinna and external auditory canal were retracted superiorly and anteriorly exposing the bulla. The periosteum of this structure was elevated along with the soft tissues surrounding it. The lateral wall of the bulla was then removed exposing the cochlea. The stapes was left undisturbed. In other instances, the approach was through a submandibular incision. The bulla was dissected and an opening was made in it to expose the cochlea.

In order to dispense with respiratory movements which interfere with microscopic manipulations and observations, a tracheotomy was performed. Following the technique of Irwin, a tracheal cannula which only filled two-thirds of the tracheal lumen was inserted. When oxygen under sufficient pressure was delivered through the cannula, respiratory movements ceased. The gross surgery was completed and the guinea pig was placed on the experimental table so that the fenestrations of the cochlea could be made with the aid of a microscope.

Under microscopic visualization, attention was placed on an area limited by the two bone partitions that separate a cochlear turn where the pigment of the tinea vascularis shows in dark animals. The mucous membrane over

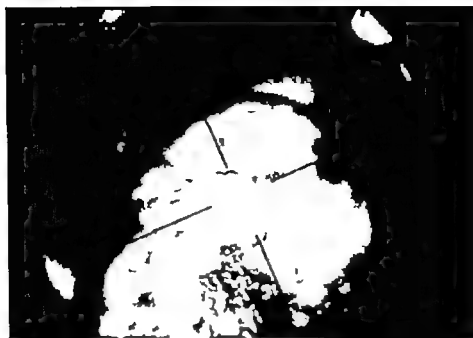


Fig 4 Micropipette in scala media, Ginea pig

living this area is removed with a sharp pick. Using the Shea microdrill (Fig 1) with pointed burr and supported and directed by a micromanipulator the bone overlying the scala media of the third turn was thinned down to its endosteum. A similar procedure was done on the first cochlear turn immediately above the border of the round window niche. In the area of the scala tympani care was taken to avoid drilling over the veins in the substance of the bone. The crater of the fenestra measured 20 to 50 micra. The facial or jugular vein was then exposed. A cannula containing mammalian Ringer's solution and Heparin was inserted into the lumen of the vein. In other experiments the common carotid artery was cannulated for intra arterial injections. The cannula was attached to a syringe containing the shocking dose of egg albumin. To penetrate the cochlea, two specially designed micropipettes were required. These were supported by two micromanipulators which in turn are on their respective stands. In this manner the vibrations incurred during adjustment of one pipette were not transmitted through the system to the other pipette. The micropipettes were then filled with mammalian Ringer's solution and connected by means of plastic tubing to appropriate transducers to convert the mechanical pressures to an electrical signal for recording. Attention was directed to avoid any air bubbles in the system. The transducers were placed level with the cochlea 1 cm. of their micro-manipulators and opened to atmosphere for balancing (Figs. 2-3).

Once the system was balanced the quartz micropipettes were then driven through the microfenestrae by means of the micromanipulators thus breaking

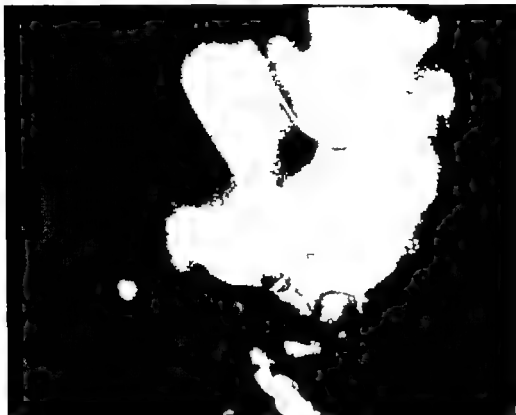


Fig. 3 □ Intra pig cochlea micropipettes in place in guinea pig cochlea for endolymphatic and perilymphatic pressures.

ing through the minimal thickness left in the endosteal layer of the scala tympani and the scala media. The tapering portion of the pipette sealed the walls of the fenestra without leakage (Figs. 4 & 5).

The initial pressures having been recorded, anaphylactic shock was produced in the animal by administering an intravenous dose containing 0.5 ml of egg white. In other animals, anaphylactic shock is produced by the intracarotid injection of egg white. Simultaneous recordings of endolymphatic and perilymphatic pressures were continued during this last phase of the procedure.

Simultaneous measurements of cerebrospinal fluid and perilymphatic pressures were also performed in guinea pigs and cats.

In the guinea pig, no source of information was found regarding the approach to obtain these pressures. It was not possible to obtain cerebrospinal pressures by lumbar puncture. Dissection of the lumbar region showed that the cauda equina was compressed into a small place with no space available for needle puncture. Initial attempts at cisternal puncture resulted invariably in the death of the animal due to the destruction of the pneumotaxic or respiratory center in the medulla. A method was then developed of surgical exposure of the cisterna which was followed by



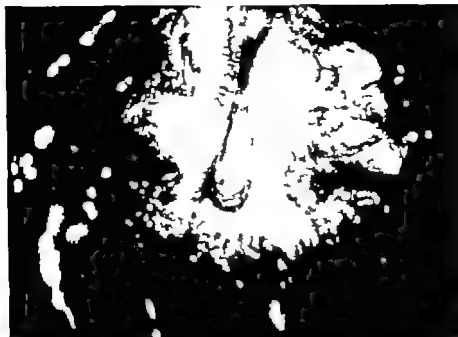


Fig. 6 Polyethylene catheter inserted into magna Guinea pig.

introduction of polyethylene tubing into this area. The surgical procedure consisted of making a vertical incision in the skin of the nuchal region of the guinea pig dividing the semispinalis capitis and rectus capitis muscles in order to expose the allantocephalic ligament. This ligament was then punctured and a polyethylene tubing inserted (Fig 6)

An alternate approach to the cerebrospinal pressures of the guinea pig consisted in placing a short 20 gauge needle into the lateral ventricle of the brain through a craniotomy approach (Fig 7)

In a number of dissections of the guinea pig brain it was noted that the lateral ventricles, which were rather flattened dorsoventrad, were relatively extensive in antero-posterior and mediolateral dimensions. Therefore a craniotomy was performed through the parietal bone of the skull along the point of attachment on the temporalis muscle and about 5 mm lateral to the sagittal suture. The skull was exposed by an L shaped incision of the scalp subcutaneous tissues and periosteum extending from the midline between the eyes to the superior nuchal line and then laterally to the auricle. The temporalis muscle was detached at its insertion. A trephine measuring 3 mm in diameter was made and the dura was exposed. A small opening was then burned in the dura utilizing an electrocautery needle. Pressures were obtained by means of a needle prepared specially for this purpose. A 2.5 cm 20 gauge hypodermic needle was modified by plugging the tip of the needle while retaining a sharp point. Two openings slightly less than 1 mm in diameter were made in both sides of the shaft about 2 mm from the tip. This was designed to avoid obstruction of the needle by cortical



Fig 7 Methylene blue dye indicates place of entrance of the pipette in the lateral ventricle and in the internal meatus

tissue during its insertion. The needle was then attached directly to the pressure transducer. In previous experiments, the position of the needle in the lateral ventricle had been established by the injection of 0.1 ml of methylene blue dye through a side arm between the needle and the transducer. After withdrawal of the needle, the brain was removed and sectioned.

The surgical approach for cerebrospinal fluid pressure studies in the cat consisted of a laminectomy in the lumbar region. The dural sac was exposed and intubated with a polyethylene catheter through a small opening in the dura. This procedure proved to be self-sealing when administered correctly (Fig. 8).

In order to obtain perilymphatic fluid pressures in the cat, a 20 gauge needle with the bevel removed was inserted into the scala tympani through a cochlear fenestration (Fig. 9). The surgical approach consisted of a sub-mandibular incision exposing the tympanic bulla, portions of which were

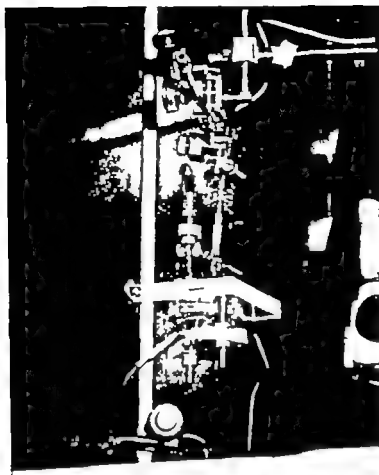


Fig 10 Pressure simulator for calibration of hydraulic system

of the aforementioned functions. A device was constructed so that pressures of various wave forms and repetition rates could be produced and applied simultaneously to a transducer through a minimum of resistance<sup>1</sup> and to the second transducer coupled through a catheter for the second test.

The pipette was constructed of quartz pyrex glass measuring 7 mm o.d. and 0.2 mm i.d. The over all length of this pipette was 7.5 cm and the distal end has been drawn to a tip measuring under 200 micra in length and 30 to 50 micra o.d. The catheter used is of the polyethylene type measuring 5 mm o.d. and 2 mm i.d. The length of the catheter was originally 65 cm. This length was shortened to 20 cm in a later experiment. Figure 10

shows the pressure simulator which was fabricated of laminated plastic sheets into which a cavity (4.3 cm in diameter, 1.25 cm in depth) had been drilled. A corrugated diaphragm was placed over one opening and was

Fluorescence defined the total position offered to the passage of fluid gas. This terminology is used in place of "resistance" which generally designates position of the passage of an electric current. Fluorescence is used to avoid confusion and to afford comparability.

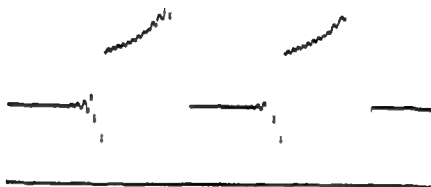


Fig 11 Transducer coupled directly to pressure simulator

held in place by a plastic ring. An electromagnet is used to apply force to the diaphragm. Maintaining the same magnitude of current supplied to the electromagnet at various frequencies insured that the same force would be applied to the diaphragm.

Figure 11 shows the wave form which was produced by this device and recorded on a photosensitive paper. The light source was supplied by a cathode ray tube. The rise time of the pulse was 0.01 seconds, duration time 2.0 seconds and decay time 0.01 seconds. The repetition of this pulse rate was 20 per second. It will be observed that the square wave was not completely flat; the slight tilt was the result of a relatively high internal impedance of the power supply energizing the electromagnet.

This figure shows the wave form recorded at a repetition rate of 3.0 per second. The transducer used in this experiment was Statham Model P 23D and Statham Model P 23BB. These transducers were suitable for monitoring all pressures that were encountered in physiological experiments.

In the following experiment two transducers (Statham P 23BB) were used. Transducer No. 1 was connected directly to the pressure simulator through a minimum of floistance (Fig. 11); transducer No. 2 was coupled to the pressure simulator through a 65 cm catheter previously mentioned (Fig. 12).

Figure 12 shows the effect of the hydraulic dampening. When coupling mediums such as catheters with high floistance characteristics are being employed, it becomes necessary for correction factors to be used in order to obtain correct pressure readings.



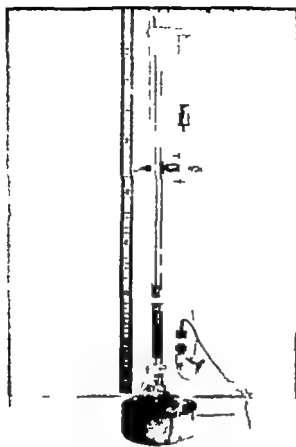


Fig. 14 Water manometer for calibration of the system.

end of the pipette by use of a standard sphygmomanometer pressure bulb. This pressure was also applied by means of a  $\frac{1}{8}$  tube to a precision differential mercury manometer.

The following information was obtained statistically from ten consecutive determinations:

Applied pressures (mm. Hg.)	Displacement column ( $\mu$ g.)	
10	0.1 lambda	(One lambda is equal to 1/1000 of mL.)
20	0.32	
40	1.0	
60	1.35	
80	1.64	
100	2.1	
150	2.98	

It was necessary to employ transducers which require a minimum displacement because of the limited amount of fluid in the scala media. The

fact that inner ear pressures were obtained signified that the displacement factor was less than the amount of fluid pressure present

It was obvious that the displacement factor of the strain gauge was not linear over a wide dynamic range of pressures however under a small operating range of 0 to 10 mm of mercury pressure, it can be assumed that the displacement factor of this strain gauge was essentially linear. Attempts to measure the displacement at lower pressures was deemed impractical due to the minute movement of the fluid in the pipette.

The resonant frequency of the transducer may be calculated from Frank's equation

where  $F$  = frequency in cycles  $M$  = mass,  $D$  = displacement

$$F = \frac{1}{2\pi \sqrt{MD}}$$

(b) Calibration of the entire hydraulic pre-amplifier and recording system (Fig. 14)

This was done with known static loads. A water manometer was made using a column of glass tubing approximately one meter in length. This was mounted on a plexiglass board in a vertical position with a stop cock at the lower end. A meter stick was mounted immediately adjacent to the glass column and through a polyethylene tubing, the bottom of the column was connected to the fluid chamber of the transducer. The transducer was then adjusted so the middle of the diaphragm was at the zero mark on the meter stick, and was level with the meniscus of the fluid in the manometer. At this point the system was at atmospheric pressure and the pre-amplifiers were balanced and adjusted with a marker on the baseline. A fluid reservoir containing boiled distilled water was connected through the stop cock to the fluid chamber of the transducer. Water was then allowed to flow from the reservoir of the fluid chamber into tubing connecting the transducer with the manometer and then into the manometer burette raising the level in increments of 0.5 mm Hg. As each level was reached the flow was stopped and the pressure recorded on tape. It was then equivalent to that height of water which could then be converted into millimeters of mercury. With this method calibration was obtained from atmospheric pressure to 10 mm Hg in increments of 0.5 mm Hg. After the highest level was reached water was allowed to flow out of the system in increments of 0.5 mm Hg until the fluid level in the manometer was again at the center level of the transducer's diaphragm. At this time the system was again at atmospheric pressure and the marker on the oscilloscope was on the baseline. When the photographic film registering these changes was developed each segment depicted the distance from the baseline was compared with the actual pressure in millimeter of mercury or static water exerted on the transducer diaphragm. When the pressure was plotted on a curve the transducer were found to show a linear relationship between ten millimeters of mercury.

## Measurements of Endolymphatic and Perilymphatic Flow

5 Difficulties encountered during the development of the system for obtaining simultaneous pressures

(a) Anesthesia since the amount required for adequate anesthesia was very close to the lethal dose

(b) Surgical trauma during exposure of the cochlea

(c) Fracture of the cochlea during fenestration or during insertion of the pipette

(d) Minute particles of bone or tissue obstructing the lumen of the pipette

(e) Separation of the spiral ligament from the bone wall of the cochlea due to a dull pipette. Negative pressures were obtained

(f) Fluid leaks caused by injury to the spiral ligament of the cochlea

(g) Leaks due to lack of perfect seal between pipette and cochlea

(h) Capillary bleeding during penetration of the pipette

(i) Leaks around the stop cocks and around the attachment of the pipette and transducer

(j) Air in the system

(k) Capillary action between a moist cochlea and the tip of the pipette during penetration causing the system to lose its balance

(l) Inadequate balancing due to cochlea and transducer at different levels.

(m) Excessive lengths of tubing utilized for connections in the system

(n) Inadequate sensitization of the animals preventing the occurrence of anaphylactic shock

(o) Cerebrospinal fluid leak from the subarachnoid space needle.

(p) Electronic problems such as calibration, recording, and interference



## II OBSERVATIONS

In order to comprehend the general physiological action of anaphylaxis in the inner ear fluids, it was necessary to perform experiments in which arterial, venous, and cerebrospinal fluid pressures could be obtained. Data thus gathered would provide a basis for the understanding of how these pressures would affect the endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures.

The degree of anaphylaxis in the guinea pig of average weight varied however as a general rule. It can be said that the maximum reaction to the shocking dose was obtained on the 20th day from the initial sensitization dose. The animal that had the greater amount of anaphylactic shock registered the higher peaks of arterial pressure, venous pressure, cerebrospinal fluid pressure, and endolymphatic and perilymphatic pressures. Decreased reaction was obtained when the shocking dose was given intrarterially as compared to the intravenous administration (Figs. 31-34). There appeared to be no difference in reactions whether the animals were either albino or colored. Controlled studies were done in which a similar amount of Ringer's solution was given intravenously to sensitized animals, and egg white given intravenously to non-sensitized animals. In either case the pressures did not change.

### *A Simultaneous endolymphatic and venous pressures before and during anaphylaxis in the guinea pig (Figs. 1-16)*

The average initial or pre-shock endolymphatic pressure in the guinea pig was 2 mm Hg. The normal variations in satisfactory experiments were from 1.3 mm Hg to 3.2 mm Hg.

The average endolymphatic fluid pressure during anaphylaxis was 4.0 mm Hg with variations between 2.2 to 5.8 mm Hg.

The average initial or pre-shock venous pressure was 3.5 mm Hg with variations from 1.2 to 8.0 mm Hg.

The average venous pressure during anaphylaxis was 9.0 mm Hg with variations from 5 mm Hg to 14 mm Hg.

The highest endolymphatic pressure peak during anaphylaxis occurred on the average at 8 minutes and 20 seconds after the shocking dose. The greatest increase in pressure occurring within 2 minutes.

The highest venous pressure peak during anaphylaxis occurred on the average at one minute and 20 seconds after the shocking dose.

The experiments showed conclusively that the venous pressure was higher than the endolymphatic pressure. Endolymphatic and venous pressure

were noted to start their rise at an average less than 14 seconds after the injection of the shocking dose. However the venous pressure peak appeared earlier than that of the endolymphatic peak. The duration of the endolymphatic and the venous pressure rise during anaphylaxis was quite variable. On the average, both pressures returned to their pre-shock level from three to four minutes after the injection of the shocking dose. When the animal survived, the venous pressure returned to its pre-shock level; however the endolymphatic pressure remained always slightly higher than its pre-shock level. During the death of the animal, the venous and endolymphatic pressures equalized and continued decreasing together until they reached the baseline. The endolymphatic pressure remained positive for an average of 60 seconds after the venous pressure reached the baseline.

*B Simultaneous cerebrospinal and arterial pressures before and during anaphylaxis in the guinea pig*  
(Figs. 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23)

The average pre-shock cerebrospinal fluid pressure was found to be 4.5 mm Hg obtained both in the cisterna magna and in the lateral ventricles of the brain.

The average or pre-shock arterial pressure measurement obtained in the carotid artery was 28.6 mm Hg.

Maximum pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid during anaphylaxis was 9.0 mm Hg at the first peak and 8.6 mm Hg at the second peak.

Maximum carotid arterial pressure during anaphylaxis was 47.8 mm Hg. Time of occurrence of the peaks from the beginning of the shocking dose were as follows:

Cerebrospinal fluid pressure first peak, 1 minute and 50 seconds.

Cerebrospinal fluid pressure second peak 8 minutes and 5 seconds.

Arterial pressure peak, 1 minute and 24 seconds from the shocking dose.

Immediately after the shocking dose was administered to the animal, either intravenously or intra-arterially the cerebrospinal fluid and arterial pressures began to rise. The arterial pressure rise was more sudden. The cerebrospinal fluid reached its peak about 26 seconds after the arterial pressure peak had been attained.

In 50 per cent of the experiments, the cerebrospinal fluid and arterial pressures slowly returned to their pre-shock level. In the remaining 50 per cent of the experiments, the cerebrospinal fluid pressure remained at a level slightly higher than the pre-shock level (5.7 mm Hg average).

While the arterial pressure continued to fall to the initial level, the cerebrospinal fluid pressure rose again to an average pressure of 8.6 mm Hg. The time of occurrence of the second cerebrospinal fluid peak was 8 minutes and 5 seconds from the injection of the shocking dose. This second rise of cerebrospinal fluid pressure while the arterial pressure was decreasing, was suspected to be secondary to cerebral edema since there was no arterial pressure rise to explain this second cerebrospinal peak.

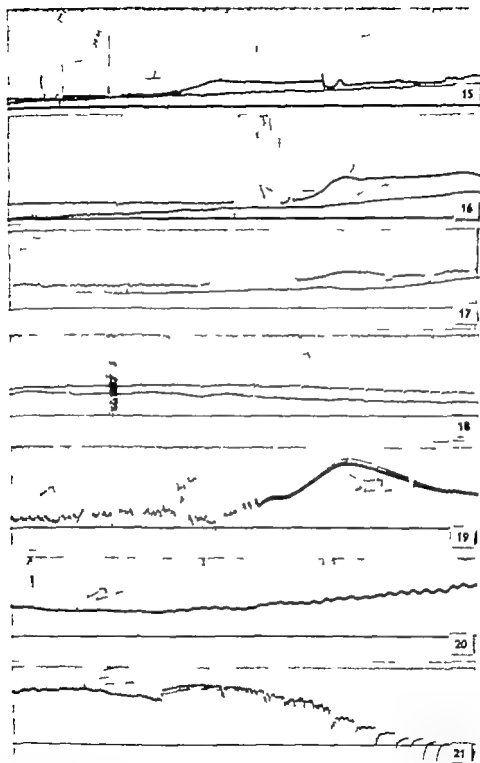


Fig. 15. Simultaneous endolymphatic and venous pressures during anaphylaxis. Guinea pig. Endolymph lower tracing. Note later rise in venous pressure.

Fig. 16. Simultaneous endolymphatic and venous pressures during anaphylaxis.

Fig. 17. Simultaneous CSF and carotid pressures during anaphylaxis.

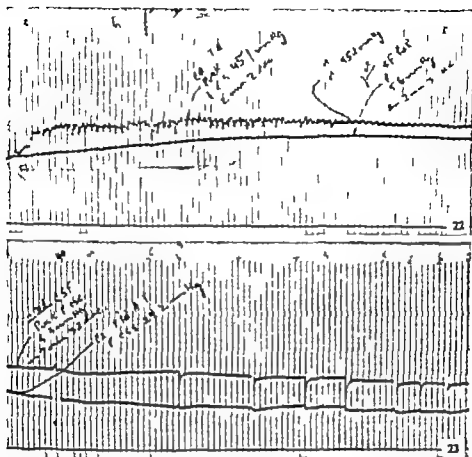


Fig. 22. First CSF peak during anaphylaxis

Fig. 23. Same experiment. Second CSF peak, arterial pressure decreasing.

In other experiments, the ligations of one or both internal jugular veins was performed. When one vein was ligated 1 mm Hg rise was obtained in the cerebrospinal fluid pressure as compared with the pre-ligation recording. When both internal jugular veins were ligated there was an increase of 2 mm Hg from the pre-ligation level and the rise in the cerebrospinal fluid pressure was sustained. Neither the cerebrospinal, nor the arterial pressure proximal to the brain changed appreciably when one carotid artery was ligated.

It is to be noted in the illustrations submitted that the tracings have dif-

Fig. 18. Same experiment. Second CSF peak during anaphylaxis; arterial pressure decreasing.

Fig. 19. Cerebrospinal fluid pressure during anaphylaxis. (a) first peak.

Fig. 20. Same experiment. First CSF peak after first anaphylactic rise.

Fig. 21. Same experiment. Second rise of CSF pressure probably due to cerebral edema.

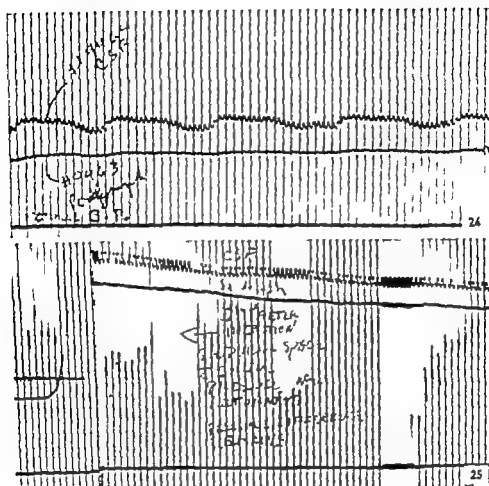


Fig 24 Simultaneous perilymphatic and CSF pressures Guinea pig

Fig 25. Simultaneous perilymphatic and CSF pressures. Cochlear duct patent. Injection of 1 ml Ringer's solution into subdural space Cat.

different calibration factors for measurements, since the different pressures studied have different ranges.

Only extreme positions of the animal's head varied the cerebrospinal fluid pressures obtained. In other experiments the animal was placed in the vertical position. Positive cerebrospinal pressures were still obtainable.

### C. Simultaneous perilymphatic and cerebrospinal fluid pressures in the guinea pig before and during anaphylaxis (Fig 24)

The average pre-shock perilymphatic fluid pressure was found to be 3.5 mm Hg.

The average pre-shock cerebrospinal fluid pressure was found to be 4.5 mm Hg.

The maximum perilymphatic pressure during anaphylaxis was found to be 6.2 mm Hg. A second peak was not noted in most cases.

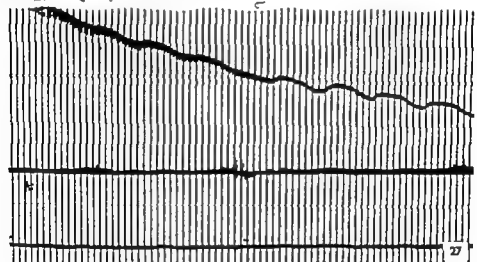
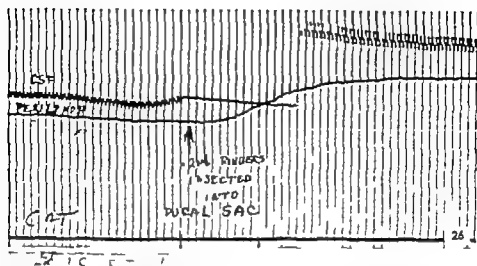


Fig. 26 Same type of experiment. However 1 cc of 0.2 ml Ringer's solution into subdural space.

Fig. 27 Simultaneous perilymphatic and CSF pressures. Cochlear duct occluded. Injection of 1 ml Ringer's solution into subdural space Cat.

The average maximum cerebrospinal fluid pressure during anaphylaxis was 9.0 mm Hg at the first peak and 8.6 mm Hg at the second peak.

The first cerebrospinal pressure peak occurred 1 minute and 50 seconds after the shocking dose, and the second peak at 8 minutes and 5 sec.

When the needle to obtain cerebrospinal fluid pressures was inserted in the lateral ventricle, an immediate pressure was obtained showing the characteristic pulse wave. The tracings also fluctuated with respiratory movements when these were present. During anaphylaxis, the perilymphatic pressure rise was not simultaneous, but followed immediately after the cerebrospinal pressure rise. The perilymphatic peak was not reached until

1 minute and 10 seconds (average time) after the cerebrospinal fluid pressure peak

The cerebrospinal fluid pressure rise was sustained at the time of the perilymphatic pressure peak. Both pressures then continued to decrease, keeping their pressure differences interrupted only for the second cerebrospinal fluid peak and then the pressures equalized when reaching the base line.

When an injection of 0.5 ml of Ringer's solution or egg white in a non-sensitized guinea pig was given intravenously, this amount caused no changes in the cerebrospinal or perilymphatic pressures. Changes appear if the amount is greater than 0.5 ml. For this reason the shocking dose in our animals was kept at less than 0.5 ml.

#### *D Simultaneous perilymphatic and cerebrospinal fluid pressures in the cat (Figs. 25-20-27)*

Pressures under anaphylaxis were not studied.

The average cerebrospinal fluid pressure in the cat was found to be 5.30 mm Hg.

The average perilymphatic fluid pressure was found to be 4.42 mm Hg.

Several experiments were performed to study the relationship between the cerebrospinal fluid pressures and the perilymphatic pressure.

1 In some experiments, over 1 ml of Ringer's solution was injected into the dural sac. This resulted in immediate rise of both the cerebrospinal fluid pressure and the perilymphatic fluid pressure almost simultaneously. The relationship of the cerebrospinal to the perilymphatic pressure remained approximately the same, i.e. cerebrospinal fluid pressure 1 mm Hg more than the perilymph pressure. Upon equilibration of the pressures, they again maintain this relationship. The time for the pressures to equilibrate after injection into the dural sac appeared to be dependent upon the volume injected. This in turn, may be dependent upon the reabsorption of the excess fluid. The smallest volume of Ringer's solution injected in the dural sac that would produce a change in cerebrospinal fluid pressures, was found to be 0.2 ml.

2 When cerebrospinal or perilymphatic fluids were withdrawn from the cat, the pressures diminished, but they were promptly compensated. It was then apparent that there was a normal physiological process which equilibrates sudden increases or losses of cerebrospinal or perilymphatic fluids in the cat.

3 When the posterior extremities and the pelvis of the cat were elevated to 30° there was a rapid increase of the cerebrospinal fluid pressure but the perilymphatic pressure remained the same. When the elevation was increased to 90° the perilymphatic pressure rose steadily. The lack of change when the elevation was 30° suggests that a critical pressure level must be reached before affecting the perilymph pressure. When the pos-

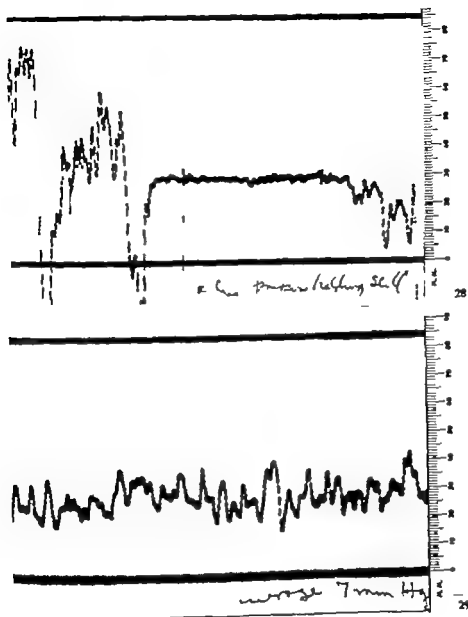


Fig. 28. Perilymphatic pressure in the human.

Fig. 29. Perilymphatic pressure in the human.

tion of the cat was replaced to its original level the perilymph returned to its original pressure level.

4. When the cochlear aqueduct was patent injection in the subdural space of physiological solution produced an immediate increase in the



perilymphatic fluid pressure. No change occurred when the aqueduct was obstructed. Methylene Blue was also utilized to confirm the occlusion of the cochlear aqueduct. When this dye was injected into the dural sac under pressure no dye was noted in the perilymphatic fluid nor did the perilymphatic fluid pressure increase under increased pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid. In other words, complete obliteration of the cochlear aqueduct prevents the elevation of perilymphatic pressures secondary to cerebrospinal fluid pressure rise.

5. The cerebrospinal fluid pressure in the cat was found to be 1 mm Hg higher than the cerebrospinal fluid pressure of the guinea pig. The perilymph pressure in the cat was also found to be 1 mm Hg higher than the perilymphatic pressure of the guinea pig.

#### *E. Perilymphatic and cerebrospinal fluid pressures in the rhesus monkey*

Sufficient data is not available to quote average pressures. In the two experiments performed the cerebrospinal fluid pressure was found to be approximately three times higher than that of the perilymph. The experiments were not conclusive.

#### *F. Perilymphatic fluid pressure in the human* (Figs. 28-29)

Perilymphatic pressure measurements were attempted in two patients during the course of a routine labyrinthectomy to relieve incapacitating vertigo (the ear was deaf). The apparatus was adapted for a sterile procedure. The micropipette was inserted through the stapedial footplate. Pressures were obtained against a baseline difference (Fig. 30).

#### *G. Simultaneous endolymphatic and arterial pressures in the guinea pig before and during anaphylaxis* (Figs. 30-31, 32, 33-34)

The findings on these experiments were similar to those obtained in previous experiments where each of these pressures were taken simultaneously with venous or cerebrospinal fluid measurements.

#### *H. Simultaneous endolymphatic and cerebrospinal fluid pressures in the guinea pig before and during anaphylaxis*

The values of endolymphatic and cerebrospinal fluid pressures in this series of experiments were similar to those mentioned in previous experiments. These experiments were similar to those mentioned in previous paragraphs. These experiments were done in an effort to correlate endolymphatic and cerebrospinal fluid pressure changes mainly to investigate to what extent endolymphatic pressure is dependent to cerebrospinal fluid pressure changes.

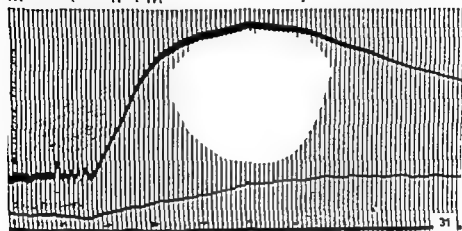
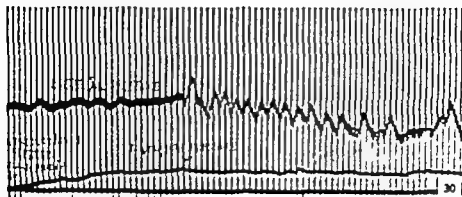


Fig. 30. Simultaneous endolymphatic and arterial pressures during anaphylaxis; pre-shock pressure.

Fig. 31. Same experiment. Intravenous introduction of shock dose Vol. arterial and endolymphatic rise.

Fig. 32. Same experiment. Postshock. Death of animal. Endolymphatic pressure reaches baseline last.

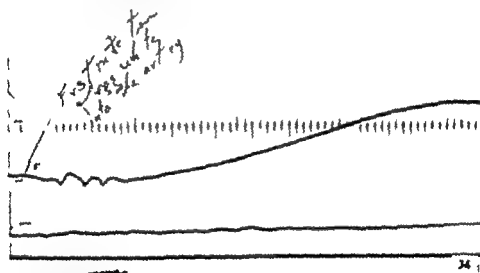
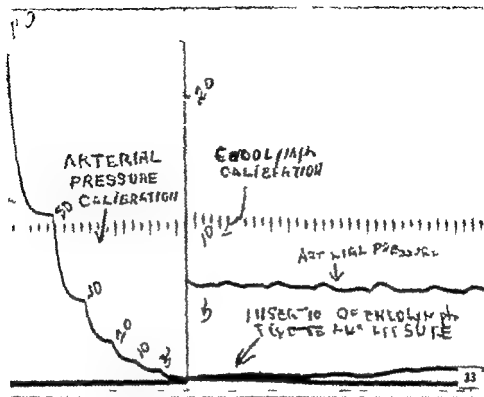


Fig. 33 Calibration chart Simultaneous endolymphatic and arterial pressures during phylaxis.

Fig. 34 Same as previous First injection of egg white into artery

During anaphylaxis, the endolymphatic pressure did not follow the second cerebrospinal fluid peak which had been attributed to cerebral edema. No concomitant rise in endolymphatic pressure occurred during the second cerebrospinal fluid pressure peak.

In some experiments the cerebrospinal fluid pressure was relieved by causing the cerebrospinal fluid pressure to escape to Ringer's solution. The Ringer's solution was open to atmosphere. During anaphylaxis, no changes were noted in the cerebrospinal fluid pressure when the cerebrospinal fluid pressure was relieved. The endolymphatic pressure increased to a lesser degree than when seen without the relief of the cerebrospinal fluid pressure.

*I Simultaneous endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures in the guinea pig before and during anaphylaxis*  
(Figs. 35-36)

Average endolymphatic initial (pre-shock) pressure 2.0 mm Hg  
Average perilymphatic initial (pre shock) pressure 3.5 mm Hg  
Difference between endolymphatic and perilymphatic pressures 1.5 mm Hg

Variations of endolymphatic pressure from 1.3 mm Hg to 3.2 mm Hg

Variation of perilymphatic pressure from 2.2 mm Hg to 6.6 mm Hg

Average endolymphatic peak pressure during anaphylaxis 3.4 mm Hg.

Average perilymphatic peak pressure during anaphylaxis 6.2 mm Hg

(Difference in pressure peaks between endolymph and perilymph 2.8 mm Hg.)

Variations in peak pressures during anaphylaxis

Endolymphatic from 2.2 to 5.8 mm Hg

Perilymphatic pressure from 4.0 mm Hg to 10 mm Hg

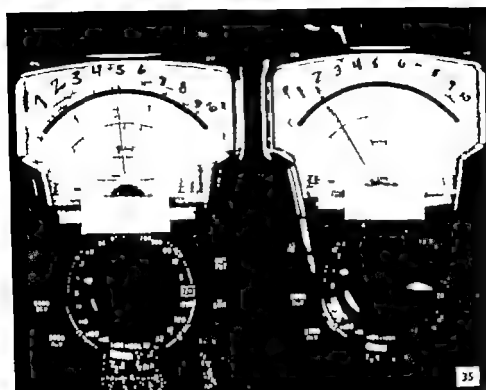
Average peak time Endolymph 6 minutes—Perilymph 3 minutes.

Variations in endolymphatic peak time from 4 min and 30 sec to 8 minutes.

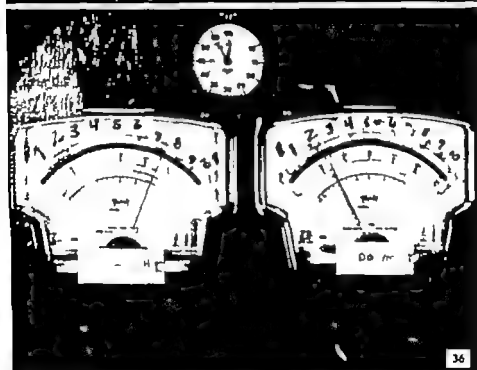
Variations in perilymphatic peak time from 2 minutes to 4 minutes.

The simultaneous pressure measurements of endolymph and perilymph resulted in similar pressure findings as when endolymph or perilymph were taken individually. Two different methods of recording these pressures were utilized. It was possible to identify the pressures obtained by examination of their tracings. The manner in which these pressures appeared when the micropipette was introduced was characteristic. In the case of the perilymph, pressures registered immediately and gave higher readings. Perilymphatic pressures were also subject to more variability since they were more easily affected by blood pressure and cerebrospinal fluid pressure changes. The endolymphatic pressure appeared gradually after the insertion of the pipette, and then stabilized and remained more stable than the perilymph. Endolymphatic readings were also lower than those of the perilymph.

During each experiment certain tests were made in order to determine whether one was measuring true endolymph and perilymph and to ascertain that there were no communications between the endolymphatic and the perilymphatic fluid. (1) application of suction to the bulla without touching it produced no change in the voltmeter thus indicating no leak,



35



36

Fig 35. Preshock simultaneous end lymphatic and perilymphatic pressures. ■ Intra pig Large numbers indicate millimeters of mercury ■ Difference in pressure

Fig 36. End lymphatic and perilymphatic pressures during anaphylaxis. Same experiment as in Fig. 35. Note increase in both pressures.

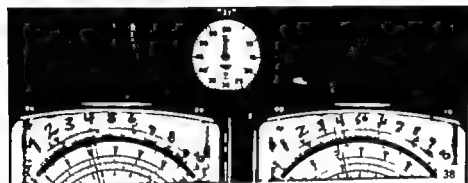
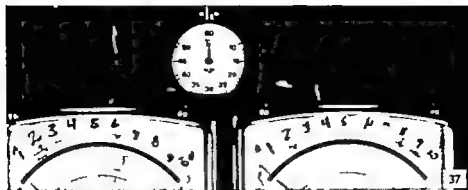


Fig. 37. Not needle to 0. Scale media and scale trump. When on pipette 1 per 1 atmosphere the pressures registered on both meters are lost. This indicates communication between perilymphatic and endolymphatic spaces.

Fig. 38. Not both needles indicating same pressure. The endolymph pipette has perforated Reissner's membrane allowing the pressures to equilibrate.

(2) the speed with which the increase in pressure was recorded on the meters was greater with the perilymphatic than with the endolymphatic fluid (3) when one pipette was opened to atmosphere the output meter belonging to the other pipette showed no change. If there was a change and the pressure of the other voltmeter fell, it then indicated that the Reissner's or basal membranes were ruptured (Fig. 37). Communication between the endolymph and perilymph spaces would equalize the pressures (Fig. 38) (4) the perilymphatic pressure showed more fluctuations and greater sensitivity changes especially following changes in venous, arterial and cerebrospinal fluid pressures. During anaphylaxis, the increased pressure of the perilymph was more sudden, reaching its peak 3 minutes after the shocking dose. During anaphylaxis, the endolymphatic pressure rise had its onset at the same time as the other fluids. However the pressure rise was more gradual. Endolymph peak pressure is reached six minutes after the shocking dose. This was later than any of the other fluid pressures measured.

Once the perilymphatic pressure reached its peak, it began to decrease rapidly due to shock. At a point about 8 minutes from the shocking dose

both the endolymphatic and perilymphatic pressures equilibrate. The perilymphatic measurements then fell below the values of endolymph. When the animal recovered from the anaphylactic shock, the endolymph still remained higher than the perilymph. These observations were carried for over an hour from the shocking dose. When the animal dies, the perilymphatic pressure reaches zero before the endolymph reaches this level. The endolymph maintained its pressure from 10 to 60 seconds after the perilymph had reached the zero line. When the animal survives, and a second shocking dose is given, a slight increase develops in both the endolymphatic and perilymphatic pressures; however, there was no gradual drop as seen with the first shocking dose. It can be assumed that in this case the animal usually did not go into a second shock. During the recovery period of the animal the perilymphatic pressure continued to increase over the endolymphatic until their initial relationship was recovered.

*Simultaneous endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures before and during anaphylaxis*

*Sample experiment I*

Time (min)	Perilymph (mm. Hg.)	Endolymph (mm. Hg.)	Time (min)	Perilymph (mm. Hg.)	Endolymph (mm. Hg.)	
0	Initial pressures	4.20	1.67	15	1.67	4.13
	Egg white			16	1.87	4.00
	0.5 ml.			17	1.87	4.00
	i.v.			18	1.74	3.80
5.4	(*) 7.47			19	1.93	3.73
8		4.0		20	2.00	3.60
6	6.67	4.17		21	2.07	3.60
	6.93	4.40		22	2.20	3.53
8	6.67	4.47		23	2.26	3.47
9	5.74	4.87(*)		24	2.33	3.53
10	4.80	4.57		25	2.26	3.47
11	4.87	4.87( )		26	2.40	3.40
12	(*) 3.43	4.57		27	2.47	3.33
13	2.26	4.51		28	2.40	3.33
14	2.0	4.33		29	2.40	3.27
				30	2.40	3.33
			Animal survived			
			Experiment terminated			
			Pipette clear			

Highest perilymph pressure.

\* Highest endolymph pressure

Equal pressure

From this point perilymph decreased more rapidly due to shock; endolymph remains higher than perilymph during shock.

## Sample experiment II

Time (min)		Perilymph (mm. Hg.)	Endolymph (mm. Hg.)	Time (min)		Perilymph (mm. Hg.)	Endolymph (mm. Hg.)
0	Initial pressures	3.17	1.33	20		3.60	3.33
	Egg white			21		3.53	3.33
	0.2 ml. Lv			22	( <sup>a</sup> )	2.48	3.16
1		5.31	2.0	23		3.20	3.20
2		( <sup>b</sup> )4.86	3.67	24		2.53	2.80
3		6.00	3.07	25		1.74	2.26
4		5.31	3.26	26		1.20	2.20
5		5.00	3.26	27		0.87	1.60
6		4.80	3.33	28		0.67	1.40
7		4.67	3.26	29		0.60	1.33
8		4.67	3.33	30		0.40	1.07
9		4.40	3.40	31		0.33	1.00
10		4.40	3.26	32		0.26	0.93
11		4.26	3.33	33		0.20	0.80
12		4.33	3.46	34		0.13	0.67
13		4.27	3.40	35		0.13	0.67
14		4.37	3.46	36		0.00	0.54
15		4.00	3.53( <sup>c</sup> )	37		0.07	0.60
16		4.00	3.53	38			0.54
17		3.39	3.46	39			0.54
18		3.67	3.46	40			0.40
19		3.71	3.46	41			0.26
				42			0.20
					Animal died		0.00

Highest perilymph pressure.

Highest endolymph pressure.

Equal pressures.





Fig. 39 G line pig cochlea Control experiment \ distal of scala media in vls fixati

this may suggest the possible existence of a protective mechanism at the cochlear aqueduct to maintain this pressure difference. The endolymphatic pressure may also have a protective mechanism within the scala media, in the form of a pressure receptor or contractile element. Such an element could be similar to the capillaries in the kidney which are believed to have a contractile function in helping to regulate the pressure within the glomeruli.

The studies in simultaneous cerebrospinal fluid and endolymphatic fluid pressure during anaphylaxis revealed that the endolymph continued to increase its pressure when the cerebrospinal fluid pressure was relieved. This would indicate that there was a mechanism apart from the cerebrospinal fluid changes that would produce this increase. This mechanism may possibly be related to venous pressure. Endolymph may then appear to be more directly related to venous pressure than to cerebrospinal fluid pressure.

Hallpike and Ledoux (24) have reported the osmotic pressures of the

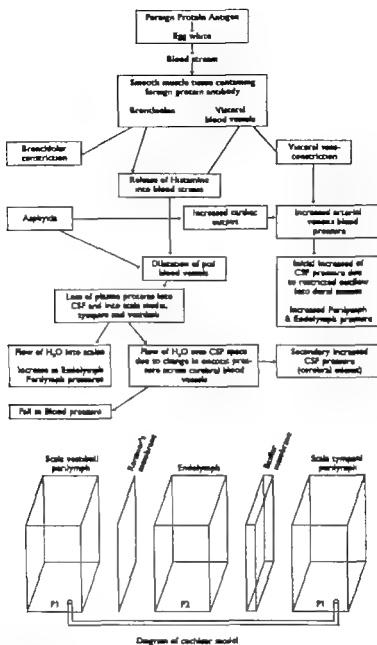


Fig. 40 Guinea pig cochlea during anaphylactic shock. In vivo fixation. Micropipettes not inserted. Note distention of scala media. (These sections prepared under grant from the Deafness Research Fundation.)

endolymph and perilymph to be equal but greater than those of the cerebrospinal fluid and the blood. The findings of Welle *et al* (40) with individually obtained endolymph and perilymph pressures, together with the results of the same pressures simultaneously obtained and reported in this presentation, indicate a higher perilymphatic than endolymphatic pressure. Considering these findings, the endolymph would appear to originate from two mechanisms

by filtration as well as by secretion

The filtration could occur from the scala vestibuli through Reissner's membrane. The secretion as well as electrolyte exchange from the stria vascularis. According to Guild (19) the circulation will follow a direction to the sacculus endolymphaticus, where excess fluid will be reabsorbed. This structure may serve also to regulate sudden changes in endolymphatic pressure providing that no obstruction exists between it and the cochlea.



### B Anaphylactic shock

In order to explain the phenomena observed, the following chain of events is proposed

The initial sensitizing dose of albumin acts as an antigen agent against which the guinea pig forms antibodies

It is suggested in the literature that these antibodies reside in the smooth muscle of the visceral vasculature. When, after 21 days of the initial sensitizing dose, the antibody level was at its highest point, a further dose of antigen (egg white) was injected and anaphylactic shock took place

Anaphylaxis produces a generalized release of histamin and bradikinin therefore a localized liberation of these substances in the stria vascularis. An initial contraction of the arterioles and pre-capillary sphincters occurs, followed by a dilatation of the venules and arterioles as reported by Welle, Martinez and Irwin (38) This results in local venous stasis and diminished capillary flow

The intercellular junctions of the capillary endothelium widen and the basement membrane ruptures, resulting in increased capillary permeability. Plasma proteins and electrolytes then migrate into the scala media, tympani and vestibuli. The osmotic pressure of these fluids is probably increased. Consequently fluid is taken and this results in an increase of perilymphatic and endolymphatic pressures. The concentration of proteins and electrolytes is probably greater in the scala media due to the numerous blood vessels present in the stria vascularis. The release of protein from the capillaries may cause an increase of fluid transfer into the same capillaries, resulting in an added increase of venous pressure. In the cerebrospinal fluid, this results in sufficient transfer of water across the vessel walls to give a secondary increase in cerebrospinal fluid pressure (cerebral edema) as well as a drop in blood pressure.

The systemic effect of anaphylaxis results also in the contraction of the smooth musculature of the bronchioles. This causes asphyxia which contributes to the increased cardiac output. The increased cardiac output and a generalized initial visceral vasoconstriction caused by the release of histamine, produces an increased arterial and venous blood pressure. The increased blood pressure then restricts the flow of the cerebrospinal fluid into the dural sinuses which causes a rise in the cerebrospinal fluid pressure and a concomitant increase of perilymphatic and endolymphatic pressures. The general release of histamine into the blood stream, together with asphyxia, causes further dilation of the pial, spiral ligament and stria vascularis blood vessels. PH, pO<sub>2</sub> and pCO<sub>2</sub> determinations of carotid artery blood samples were done at one minute intervals from the injection of the shocking dose. No changes occurred until after 6 minutes from shock. Consequently the initial increase of endolymphatic and perilymphatic pressures is believed to be produced by the anaphylactic reaction and not initially by asphyxia.

The increased endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures in these experiments, would seem to be due to several factors

- 1 An increase in venous, arterial and cerebrospinal fluid pressures.
- 2 Increased osmotic pressure.
- 3 Electrolyte exchange
- 4 Possible increase of endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid production.

It would seem possible that repeated, localized, allergic or inflammatory change within the cochlear duct, may result in a permanently dilated scala media, such as in human endolymphatic hydrops.

The fact that the stria vascularis is present only in the cochlear duct, may explain the absence of recognized pathology in the semicircular canals of human temporal bones with the clinical diagnosis of Menière's disease. Further work is needed to determine, possibly by electron microscopy whether any pathology is present in the stria vessels, basal membrane or endothelium. A study of possible obstruction to the circulation or absorption of the endolymph is equally necessary.

## IV SUMMARY

A method to obtain simultaneous endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures in the guinea pig under anesthesia has been described. This technic has been adapted to obtain simultaneous cerebrospinal fluid, arterial, and venous pressures in the guinea pig, in the cat, and in the rhesus monkey.

A system has been devised to corroborate the characteristics of the hydraulic system obtaining these pressures.

The entire hydraulic and electronic systems have been calibrated by means of a water manometer.

Anaphylactic shock has been produced in anesthetized guinea pigs previously sensitized by egg white. Observations have been made of the changes in pressure occurring before and during anaphylaxis in the endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluids. Their association with changes in cerebrospinal fluid, arterial and venous pressures has been studied.

A discussion of a possible physiopathological method producing these changes has been presented.

The pressures obtained were those found with two different electronic systems. The results with each of these systems were similar. They may not necessarily represent the actual pressures within the cochlea. However, the relationship found among the different fluids before and during anaphylaxis may be a significant finding.

Endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures behave as two different systems. Perilymph reacts more quickly to changes in cerebrospinal fluid, venous and arterial pressures. The endolymph is not as easily affected by mechanical factors. It reacts to physiological changes as in the case of anaphylaxis.

When the basilar or Reissner's membranes were ruptured by the micropipettes, endolymphatic and perilymphatic pressures became equalized. Upon the death of the animal or the removal of the pipettes, the pressures returned to baseline.

The cerebrospinal fluid pressure in the cisterna magna and in the lateral ventricle of the guinea pig was found to be equal.

Perilymphatic fluid pressures in the guinea pig and in the cat were found to be approximately one millimeter of mercury lower than cerebrospinal fluid pressures. The latter is of interest in view of the fact that the cochlear aqueduct in the cat is thought to be widely patent.

Investigations of cerebrospinal and perilymphatic pressures in the guinea pig, cat and rhesus monkey indicate the variability of patency of the

cochlear aqueduct according to the different animal species. The transmission of pressure changes from the cerebrospinal fluid to the perilymphatic fluid was more readily obtained in the cat. This may indicate a wider cochlear aqueduct. This transmission is less evident but still present in the guinea pig and the rhesus monkey.

The cerebrospinal fluid pressures obtained from the lateral ventricle of the brain in the guinea pig were found to be positive when placing the guinea pig in the erect position. Injection of more than 0.5 ml of isotonic solution intravenously in the guinea pig produced transient rise in cerebrospinal and perilymphatic fluid pressures. The endolymphatic pressure was not affected. The rise of the former pressure is probably related to an increased blood volume. Injections in the dural sac produced more marked changes in the cerebrospinal and perilymphatic pressures.

Endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures increased during anaphylaxis. The endolymph increased almost one time its original pressure. The perilymph increased three times its original pressure. This pressure increase developed more rapidly in the perilymphatic pressure than in the endolymphatic pressure.

The cerebrospinal fluid increased twice its original pressure during anaphylaxis. Two peaks were noted. The first peak appeared to be secondary to arterial and venous pressure changes. The second peak appeared to be secondary to cerebral edema.

Venous and arterial pressures also increased during anaphylaxis. Arterial pressure increased more sharply.

After obtaining a pressure peak during anaphylaxis, each of the fluid pressures studied began to decrease. Perilymphatic pressure decreased much faster and eventually registered less pressure than the endolymphatic fluid. If the animal recovered from the anaphylactic shock the pressures were re-established. When the animal died all pressures disappeared. Endolymphatic pressure was the last to reach the baseline. This was probably due to its increased osmotic pressure after anaphylaxis.

The equalization of pressure between the endolymphatic fluid and the perilymphatic fluid during anaphylaxis may be due to increased permeability across Reissner's membrane as well as to decreased perilymphatic pressure due to shock.

Endolymphatic fluid changes during anaphylaxis are to a great extent directly related to increased venous, arterial and cerebrospinal fluid pressure changes. When the cerebrospinal fluid pressure is relieved, it does not prevent the increase of endolymphatic pressure during anaphylaxis. It would seem that the endolymph was more dependent on venous pressure.

The perilymphatic pressures showed dependency to both cerebrospinal and venous pressure changes.

Endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures appear to be, to a certain extent related to venous, arterial and cerebrospinal fluid pressures.

in this order of importance. The endolymphatic pressure appears also dependent on its own pressure formation. Other factors such as osmotic pressure, electrolyte exchange and  $\text{CO}_2$  tension in the blood probably play an important role in the variations of these pressures.

Possible changes in perilymphatic and endolymphatic fluid pressures due to diastolic and systolic blood pressure changes could not be established because of the long time constant (12.0 sec) of the hydraulic system. The pressures obtained are mean pressures.

The utilization of the pressure simulator to calibrate the hydraulic system demonstrated that the hydraulic dampening effect through the pipette and plastic tubing connectors was negligible.

From the experiments described it may be possible to suspect a circulation of fluid from the *scala vestibuli* into the *scala media* and thence into the *sacculus endolymphaticus*.



## SUMMARY OF PRESSURE RESULTS

Preshock pressures (mm. Hg.)	Pressures during anaphylaxis (max. peak) (mm. Hg.)	Variations	
		Preshock (mm. Hg.)	Anaphylaxis (mm. Hg.)
Endolymphatic	2.0	3.4	1.3-3.2
Perilymphatic	3.5	6.2	2.2-6.6
Cerebrospinal fluid	4.5	9.0 1st peak 8.6 2nd peak	2.2-5.8 4.0-10.0
Venous	3.3	9.0	
Arterial	23.8	4.3	

Time of occurrence of the different pressure peaks during anaphylaxis from injection of the shocking dose

	min	sec
Arterial pressure	1	24
Venous pressure	1	23
Cerebrospinal fluid	1	50 (1st peak)
	8	5 (2nd peak)
Endolymph	6	20
Perilymph	3	

The duration of the endolymphatic pressure rise varied from 1 min 55 seconds to 10 minutes at the removal of the pipette. The first pressure to reach its maximum peak during anaphylaxis was the arterial. The last pressure to reach its maximum peak during anaphylaxis was endolymph.

The cerebrospinal fluid pressure was found to be an average of higher than the perilymph and 2.6 mm higher than the endolymph.

The perilymph was found to be 1.5 mm Hg average higher than the lymph.

The perilymph pressure and venous pressures were found to be

## V CONCLUSIONS

Endolymphatic fluid pressures in the guinea pig were found to be an average of 1.5 mm Hg less than perilymphatic pressures before anaphylaxis.

Perilymphatic and venous pressures were found to have the same pressure measurements. Cerebrospinal fluid pressure measurements were found to be on the average of 1 mm Hg greater than perilymphatic pressures. A direct communication between these fluids would then appear unlikely.

Endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures were unobtainable when the animal died.

Variations in cerebrospinal fluid pressures were transmitted to the perilymphatic fluid once the change reached a certain pressure level. The pressure difference between these fluids remained unchanged. Pressure measurements appear to indicate a more readily cerebrospinal fluid pressure transmission through the cochlear aqueduct in the cat than in the guinea pig or the rhesus monkey.

Changes in venous and arterial pressures were transmitted to the cerebrospinal and perilymphatic fluids. The endolymphatic pressure appears more resistant to change when above pressures were increased mechanically. Endolymphatic and perilymphatic fluid pressures became equalized when Reissner's or the basilar membranes were ruptured by the introduction of the micropipette.

All pressures studied increased during anaphylactic shock. The scala media was found dilated in all histological sections when the micropipettes were not inserted.

Endolymphatic fluid pressure changes during anaphylaxis appeared to be the result of the following factors in this order of importance:

- 1 Increased venous pressure
- 2 Increased endolymphatic fluid formation
- 3 Increased osmotic pressure
- 4 Increased cerebrospinal and arterial pressures

# REFERENCES

- 1 Agazzi, C.: Appunti di idrodinamica vascolare del ligament pirale *Archiv f. Hran Otolaryng* 80, 40-47 1949
- 2 Ahlén, H. On the connection between cerebrospinal and intralabyrinthine pressure and pressure variation in the inner ear *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 35, 251-257 1947
- 3 Al vander Gucht ve and Fischer Joseph: *Preparati n technik des Gehörorgans*. Berlin and Wien, Urban und Schwarzenberg 1923
- 4 Altman, Franz, and Fowler Edmund P.: Histological findings in Menière syndrome complex. *Ann. Otol* 52, 58-80, 1943.
- 5 Altmann, F. and Wilt J. G.: The circulation of the labyrinthine fluids in perimeatal investigation in rabbits. *American Journal of Otolaryngology and Rhinology and Laryngology* 54, 684-708, 1947
- 6 Altmann, F. and Wallner J. G.: Further investigation in the physiology of the labyrinthine fluids. *Ann Otol* 59 637-684, 1950
- 7 Asai, K.: Blutgefässe des häutigen Labyrinths der Ratte *Anat Heft* 34 713-725, 1908.
- 8 Asai, K.: Blutgefässe im häutigen Labyrinth des Menschen. *Anat Heft* 34, 348-403, 1908.
- 9 Beebe, Frank C.: Studies in the cerebrospinal fluid. *American Journal of Physiology* 31 1920
- 10 Belemmer J. J.: The effect of the striate vascularis with peculiar reference to their function. *Arch Otolaryng* 23, 93, 1936.
- 11 Blier Robert A., and Honrubia, Vicente: Responses of cochlear potentials to changes in hydrostatic pressure *The Journal of Acoustical Society of America*, 33, 1188-1192, 1963.
- 12 Cawthorne Terence: Menière disease *Ann Otol* 56, 18-38, 1947
- 13 Chiron, L., and Exley, D.: Recent work in the biochemistry of the labyrinthine fluids. *Proceedings Royal Society of Medicine* 50, 497-705, 1957
- 14 Dohleman, H. F.: Secretion and absorption of endolymph *Ann Otol* 73, 708-723, 1964.
- 15 Freeman Smith, Frank, and Forbes, Henry S.: Intracranial and intra-ocular pressure *Archives of Otolaryngology & Psychiatry* (Chicago) 18, 550-560, 1927
- 16 Galding Wood, Philip H.: Menière's disease and its pathological mechanism *The Journal of Laryng* 74 603-623.
- 17 Grainger: The comparative anatomy of the labyrinth. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine* 43, 794-796, 1952.
- 18 Hildesheim: The circulation of endolymph *American Journal of Anatomy* 39, 87-81 1927
- 19 Hallpike C. S. and Cairns, H.: Observations of the pathology of Menière's syndrome *Journal Laryngology and Otolaryngology* 53, 624 1938.
- 20 Hallpike C. S. Alfred W. and Ledoux, A.: Observations of the osmotic pressure of the endolymph. *Journal of Physiology* 96, 446, 1940
- 21 Hallpike C. S. and Wight, A. J.: On the histological changes in the temporal bones of cases of Menière disease *J Laryng and Otolaryng* 55, 69-65, 1940
- 22 Horst V. L.: *Microscopy III: Staining of Living Tissues in Medical Physics* (ed. H. Glasser) Chicago. Year Book Publishers, Inc 533-534 1930.

23. Kerth, J. C., and Allen, G. W.: Comparison of the perilymphatic and cerebrospinal fluid pressures. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 77: 551-553, 1963.
24. Lawrence, M. W. Ish, D. Litt, n, W.: Circulation of the inner ear fluids. *Ann. Otol.* 70, 753-776, 1961.
25. Lawrence, M. ri.: Fluid balance in the inner ear. *Ann. Otol.* 74: 486-499, 1965.
26. Lempert, Julius, W. ber E. G. Lawrence, M. l. and M. lizer P. E.: Perilymphatic relation to the improvement of hearing which follows fenestration of the vestibular labyrinth in clinical otosclerosis. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 80, 377-387, 1949.
27. Lindsay J. R.: Labyrinthine dropsy in Menière disease. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 35, 833-867, 1942.
28. Lindsay J. R.: Labyrinthine dropsy. *Laryngoscope* 56, 325-341, 1946.
29. Lindsay J. R.: Effect of bilateral occlusion of the endolymphatic sac and duct in the monkey. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 48, 1-12, 1947.
30. Lorentz de No, R.: The sensory endings in the cochlea. *Laryngoscope* 44: 372-377, 1937.
31. Mygind, S. H. and Dederich, D.: Pathogenesis of Menière disease and kindred diseases. *Ann. Otol.* 47: 838, 1938.
32. Mygind, S. H.: Experimental histological studies on the labyrinth. Correlation of our histological and clinical experiments and observations. Concise review. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 23, 108-129, 1947.
33. A. Stalín, D. and Spencer H. rison M.: Ion exchange mechanisms in the membranous labyrinth. A suggested basis for the sudden attacks in Menière disease. *J. general of Theoretical Biology* 1, 829-834, 1961.
34. Skoog, Torsten.: Studies of vestibular syndrome induced in guinea pigs by allergic reaction. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) Suppl. 22, 1939.
35. Smith, C. A. Lowry Oliver H., and Wu, M. i. Ling.: The electrolytes of the labyrinthine fluids. *Laryngoscope* 64, 141-143, 1954.
36. n Békésy Georg, and Lempert, Julius, New York: Method for collecting samples of endolymph from the vestibular sac without contamination. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 68, 23-26, 1958.
37. Waltner J. les G. and Raymond, Sam. l.: The chemical composition of the human perilymph and endolymph. *Laryngoscope* 60, 912-918, 1950.
38. W. lile, Francis L., Martínez, D. lel, and Irwin, John A.: experimental study of the small blood vessels of the spiral ligament and stria vascularis of living guinea pig during naphyl. *Laryngoscope* 64, 656-664, 1954.
39. W. lile, Francis L., and Irwin, John W.: Pressures of the labyrinthine fluids. *Transactions of the American Otological Society* XLVI, 261-274, 1953.
40. Williams, T. W.: The isualization of heat capillary beds by intrascleral precipitation of lead chromate. *Anat. Rec.*, 100, 118-123, 1942.
41. Williams, Henry L.: *Menière's Disease*. Charles C. Thomas, Publisher, 1952.



*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M .39

**EXPLORATION OF VESTIBULAR  
DAMAGE IN GUINEA PIGS FOLLOWING  
MECHANICAL STIMULATION**

**D E. PARKER, W P COVELL and H E von GIERKE**

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1969

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 339

EXPLORATION OF VESTIBULAR  
DAMAGE IN GUINEA PIGS FOLLOWING  
MECHANICAL STIMULATION

D E PARKER, W P COVELL and H. E. von GIERKE





ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

SUPPLEMENTUM 229

---

EXPLORATION OF VESTIBULAR  
DAMAGE IN GUINEA PIGS FOLLOWING  
MECHANICAL STIMULATION

D E PARKER<sup>1,2</sup> W P COVELL and H. E. von GIERKE

Aerospace Medical Research Laboratories, Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, Ohio.  
Department of Otolaryngology Washington University School of Medicine St. Louis, Missouri  
Present address: Department of Psychology Miami University Oxford, Ohio.

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksells*

BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG

UPPSALA 1968

*Dedicated to the Memory of  
Stacy R. Guild*



# CONTENTS

Abstract	7
Introduction	8
Literature	8
Experiments	10
Experiment I a. Linear Acceleration Relationship Between Exposure Duration and Peak Acceleration	10
Purpose	10
Method	11
Results	15
Experiment I b. Linear Acceleration Long term Recovery	22
Purpose	22
Method	22
Results	24
Experiment I c. Linear Acceleration Orientation	28
Purpose	28
Method	28
Results	28
Experiment I d. Linear Acceleration Combination With High Axial Rotation	32
Purpose	32
Method	32
Results	33
Experiment II. Vibration	34
Purpose	34
Method	34
Results	36
Experiment III. Loud Sound	40
Purpose	40
Method	41
Results	42

Discussion	44
Relationship Between Behavioral and Anatomical Observations	44
Relationship to Previous Work	45
Positional Nystagmus	50
Comments Regarding Angular Acceleration	52
Procedural Limitations	52
Conclusions	55
Acknowledgements	56
Zusammenfassung	57
References	58

## ABSTRACT

Guinea pigs were examined with behavioral tests, gross dissection, and celloldin serial sections of the temporal bone following exposure to either linear acceleration, vibration, or loud sound. The major results of these investigations are as follows (1) Minimum acceleration intensity for loss of the righting reflex and swimming ability is approximately 50 G applied for 60 sec. Loss of otoconia from the maculae may be produced by acceleration as low as 12-23 G for 193-330 sec. Acceleration at 100 G for 30 sec results in severe loss of otoconia from all maculae (2) Although the stimulus intensity required to produce evidence of behavioral loss is greater than the stimulus intensity which results in structural damage, ability to perform the righting reflex and otoconia loss ratings are highly correlated ( $r = -0.69$ ) (3) Recovery of swimming ability and the righting reflex may take place from 1 to 64 days following exposure to accelerations of up to 300 G for 15 sec. Exposure to 400 G for 15-20 sec results in irreversible loss of the righting reflex and severe disturbance of swimming ability. No histological evidence for otoconia reformation during the postexposure period was obtained, but the possibility of replenishment of the gelatinous layer is suggested (4) Orientation of the acceleration vector perpendicular to the macular surface produces greater evidence of damage than orientation of the acceleration vector parallel to the macular surface. (5) Vibration at 1-2 G (peak) 6-8 Hz for 8 hours may produce transient behavioral loss and slight displacement of otoconia. (6) Exposure to noise at 154 dB SPL for 20 min results in no evidence of behavioral loss and minor otoconia dislocation.



## INTRODUCTION

This paper is concerned with the effects of intense mechanical stimulation on the vestibular system. Exploration of stimulus parameters that produce permanent damage to the vestibular apparatus has been our major interest. In the course of these studies guinea pigs have been exposed to (1) linear acceleration, (2) vibration, and (3) loud sound. Assessment of vestibular damage following exposure to these stimuli has been accomplished with (1) behavioral techniques, (2) gross dissection, and (3) histological examination of celloidin serial sections of temporal bones.

Studies of vestibular damage are of theoretical as well as practical interest. From a theoretical view determination of thresholds for structural damage with a variety of stimuli should lead to a more complete understanding of the dynamics of vestibular stimulation, particularly with regard to functional characteristics of the various components and sections of the vestibular apparatus. From a practical view exposure of human beings to unusual acceleration environments during aerospace missions and as a result of accidents indicates the necessity for obtaining information about the response of the vestibular apparatus to intense stimulation. The experiments discussed in this paper have relevance for the following aerospace operations: vibration as a result of buffeting during low-level operations in high performance aircraft, vibration and acceleration during lift-off of aerospace vehicles, and repeated exposure to high acceleration during astronaut training.

### Literature

Although the effects of intense mechanical stimulation on the vestibular apparatus have been the subject of several investigations during the past six decades, man's recent entry into the new environments of mechanical stimulation noted above indicates the need for extending previous observations.

#### *Linear acceleration*

Studies of vestibular damage following intense linear acceleration were first undertaken by Wittmach (1909). He demonstrated complete removal of the otoconia and gelatinous layer following rotation of guinea pigs around the cephalo-caudal axis at speeds of 2000 rpm for periods of 45-60 sec. The linear acceleration produced by this stimulus was probably in the region of 50-100 G. Wittmach was also the first to suggest the possibility of

reformation of the otolithic membrane following its removal by centrifugation.

Wittmaack's observations were confirmed and extended by a number of investigators including Hasegawa (1931) and de Kleyn and Versteegh (1933). The studies by Hasegawa are of particular relevance to the present investigation. With his investigations Hasegawa attempted to define the relationships between behavioral and anatomical loss. He found that the threshold for behavioral loss was approximately 290 G although anatomical damage could be detected at somewhat lower stimulus intensities.

Recently investigations of the effects of intense linear acceleration have been performed by Margarita, Gualtierotti, and Spinelli (1938) and Spoendlin, Schuknecht, and Graybiel (1965). Margarita *et al.* report that the threshold for detachment of the otoconia in fish and frogs is approximately 150 G applied for 1 min. Spoendlin *et al.* were unable to find any evidence of structural damage in the vestibular area with either light or electron microscopy following exposure of squirrel monkeys to 10.9 G for periods up to 10 min.

The present authors previously demonstrated clearly (Parker, von Gierke, and Covell 1965) that vestibular damage takes place when guinea pigs are subjected to linear acceleration of 200–400 G for periods of 8–12 sec in a previous paper. Both histological and behavioral techniques were employed in those damage determinations. Further experimentation revealed no evidence of behavioral damage and slight to moderate otoconia displacement following impact decelerations of 240–314 G.

### Vibration

Riopelle, Hines, and Lawrence (1958) reported that monkeys which were exposed to 2.6 G (peak) sinusoidal vibration at 10 Hz for 8 hours demonstrated no behavioral loss in terms of jumping ability and pattern discrimination tests. Histological observation of a group of monkeys which received similar vibration exposures revealed slight evidence of structural damage in the form of partial detachment of the otolithic membrane for three of six animals observed.

### Loud Sound and Blast

The development of modern technology has given rise to increasingly powerful noise sources. Equilibrium as well as auditory difficulties have been reported following exposure to loud sound. The considerable literature relating sound stimulation to vestibular excitation has been reviewed by Dickson and Chadwick (1951).

Investigations into the possibility of producing vestibular damage by exposure to loud sound have been reported by Rüedi and Furrer (1946), Ades (1953), McCabe and Lawrence (1958), and Albermax, Covell, and Eldredge (1959). Rüedi and Furrer report a case of severe equilibrium disturbances following the accidental exposure of an officer to a hand grenade explosion.

at a distance of 2.2 m. Further observations with guinea pigs demonstrated the presence of damage in the vestibule and semicircular canals following exposure to an explosion of 5 kg Trotyl at a distance of 5.5 m. Ades noted transient deficiencies of the righting reflex and posture in a cat following exposure to a pure tone of 960 Hz at 140 dB SPL. The papers by McCabe and Lawrence and Albermarl *et al* report rupture of the membranous partition and the sacculus following exposure to noise or pure tones at intensities of 140-183 dB SPL.

### *Summary*

Each of the three areas reviewed reveals unanswered questions which, in view of the increasing importance of these problems, were deemed worthy of further investigation. Studies of the effects of linear acceleration had not clearly defined the thresholds for behavioral loss or physical destruction. However the behavioral techniques previously employed were not easily quantified, and judgement of damage with these techniques is, in our experience somewhat difficult. The area of vibration research was clearly in need of continued investigation in terms of extending the range of stimuli and the behavioral techniques used to evaluate the exposures. The effects of loud sound had received careful attention on the anatomical side, but behavioral observations were sparse. In view of the above gaps in our knowledge the present series of investigations was undertaken.

## Experiments

A series of somewhat diverse experiments, undertaken to explore vestibular response to intense mechanical stimulation will be described. These experiments include

- I Effects of linear acceleration
  - a The relationship between exposure duration and peak linear acceleration for the production of vestibular damage
  - b Long-term recovery
  - c Orientation of the maculae with respect to the acceleration vector
  - d Linear acceleration combined with axial rotation
- II Effects of vibration.
- III Effects of loud sound

### EXPERIMENT I A. LINEAR ACCELERATION RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN EXPOSURE DURATION AND PEAK ACCELERATION

#### Purpose

This experiment was designed to investigate the relationship between exposure duration and peak acceleration for trapezoidal G-time exposure histories in the production of vestibular damage. If the otoconia and sup-

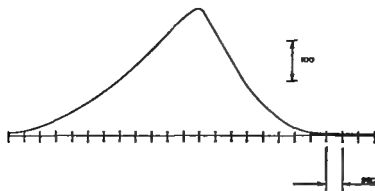


Fig. 1 Acceleration profile for Space Flight Acceleration Profile Simulator bearing guinea pig. The profile has linear acceleration peak of 410 G, rise time of 11.5 sec and decay time of 1.3 sec. The maximum angular acceleration associated with this run was about  $880^\circ/\text{sec}^2$ .

porting cells are assumed to be a simple mass-spring system two types of damage threshold effects would be expected (1) minimum peak acceleration for long exposure times, and (2) minimum velocity change or area under G-profile for short exposure durations. The purpose of this investigation was to determine a duration-peak acceleration damage threshold curve.

### Method

#### Subjects

Only guinea pigs which were judged normal were used in this investigation. For our purposes, normality was defined in terms of the following: generally alert and active appearance, freedom from nasal or ocular discharge, strong pinna reflex, clear tympanic membranes, and ability to perform the righting reflex at least eight times in ten drops. Data from 42 guinea pigs which were run on five separate occasions were compiled to provide a picture of the relationship between exposure duration and peak G in the production of vestibular damage.

#### Apparatus

The apparatus employed to accelerate the subjects, the Space Flight Acceleration Profile Simulator (SFAPS) has been described in previous articles (Pine and Barr 1963; Parker von Glerke and Covell, 1965).

Essentially the SFAPS is a centrifuge which consists of a 92-cm primary arm, rotational center mass balance payload capsule, motive power source support structure and instrumentation to detect the acceleration profile. Special design features allow onset and decay rates up to 40 G/sec. An example of the acceleration profiles obtainable with this device is presented in Figure 1.

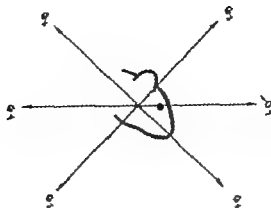


Fig 2 Orientation of the subject with respect to the forces generated by the vibration exciter or Space Flight Acceleration Profile Simulator. The arrows represent the inertial resultant of the head acceleration, and the curved line represents the displacement of the subject's head. The subject's head would be as follows:  $+G_x$ , nose to neck;  $-G_x$ , neck to nose;  $+G_y$ , jaw to eye;  $-G_y$ , eye to jaw;  $+G_z$ , left to right;  $-G_z$ , right to left.

### *Exposure and behavioral assessment procedures*

Before and after exposure the experimental animals were subjected to tests of the righting reflex and in most cases, swimming ability in order to obtain an estimate of vestibular capability. With this procedure each animal served as his own control.

The phrase "righting reflex" refers to the complex series of movements whereby a blindfolded animal which is dropped in an inverted position achieves a four point landing. Before exposure the animals were able to right themselves at least eight times in ten drops when dropped from heights of 25-30 cm. Swimming ability was determined by placing the guinea pigs in a 45 by 100 cm tank which was filled with water to a depth of 25 cm. Normal guinea pigs are excellent swimmers; they will move in straight lines unless presented with a barrier and will surface readily when submerged.

For each run on the SFAPS the subject was placed in a coffin-like box which provided dorsal support. The subject's nose was taped to a molded headpiece which assured proper alignment of the temporal bones during acceleration. All animals were subjected to acceleration in the  $+G$  orientation as illustrated in Figure 2.

Acceleration profiles employed in this series of experiments are summarized in Table 1. Twenty-two animals were exposed to peak accelerations of 100-400 G over triangular acceleration profiles of 9-21 sec. Profiles which gave a minimum velocity change, or area under the acceleration profile at each peak acceleration level were selected subject to the apparatus onset and decay rate limitations noted in Figure 3.

In two series of runs which were designed specifically to attack the problem of long exposure duration 20 animals were exposed to a somewhat

modified acceleration profile. After the initial rise acceleration was maintained at a specified peak G for varying periods. These periods were determined after consideration of the area under the acceleration profile which may be presented in G-sec. An attempt was made to determine threshold for behavioral loss in terms of the number of G-sec as well as peak G.

Behavioral observations were performed before exposure. Behavioral determinations were not made until 24 hours after exposure to eliminate transient effects.

### *Anatomical procedures*

*Gross dissection* The temporal bone was examined using the techniques of gross dissection following suggestions by Engstrom and Spoendlin. Careful removal of the stapes footplate and surrounding bone affords the experimenter an excellent view of the membranous labyrinth and it is a simple matter to determine major otoconia displacement under low magnification.

*Histology* Selected guinea pigs were anesthetized with veterinary nembutal and the thorax opened. A cannula was inserted into the aorta through the left ventricle and blood was washed out with physiological saline. This was followed by fixative (Heldenhain Susa). The temporal bones were then removed and put in more fixative for 18 hours. This was followed by 95% alcohol for 16-24 hours after which each bone was placed in 3% HCl and changed daily for 3-5 days or until decalcification had been completed. The specimens were then washed for 24 hours in running water, dehydrated in different grades of alcohol (50 70 80 90% and absolute) for 12 hours each, then immersed in absolute alcohol and ether (equal parts) for 6 hours, after which they were put into 2, 4, 8, and 12% collodion for 3 days each, and finally imbedded in 12% collodion. Sections were cut serially at 15 microns and every fifth section was stained with Harris hematoxylin and eosin and mounted in Canada Balsam. Occasionally it was necessary to stain and mount intervening sections when additional information was needed.

Degree of otoconia loss was rated on a scale of 0 to 5+ in the following manner. Complete loss of otoconia from either a macula of the saccule or the utricle was judged as grade 5+. Incomplete losses varying in amount of the otoconial layer present ranged from 4+ to 1+. Grade 4+ loss was used to indicate an almost complete loss. The remaining otoconia could have been displaced at the time of the exposure and a few finally settled on the macular surface, or as in some specimens only one small area of a macula appeared to have retained otoconia. Grade 3+ represented an incomplete loss which usually appeared to affect the whole surface of a macula or a spotty complete loss with normal distribution over intervening areas. Grade 2+ represented a dispersion of the usual compact layer with some obvious loss of otoconia while grade 1+ was used to designate dis-

TABLE 1 Behavioral loss as a function of exposure duration and peak G

Animal	Peak G	Acceleration profile			Area under acceleration profile G-sec	Righting loss 24 Hrs
		Rise	Dwell sec	Fall		
IX-7	12	5	330	5	4020	-
IX-8	12	5	330	5	4020	-
I-5	25	5	95	5	2500	-
I-6	25	5	95	5	2500	-
IX-5	25	5	195	5	5000	-
IX-6	25	5	195	5	5000	-
VI-1	45	5	39	8	2015	-
VI-2	45	5	40	8	2047	-
V-3	50	5	35	5	2500	-
V-4	50	5	45	5	2500	-
IX-1	50	5	45	5	2500	+
IX-2	50	5	45	5	2500	-
IX-3	50	5	70	5	3750	-
IX-4	50	5	70	5	3750	+
VI-3	65	5	25	5	2075	-
VI-4	65	5	25	7	2079	-
VI-5	90	7	5.5	7	1129	-
VI-6	95	6	11	7	1690	-
VI-7	100	5	7	6	1225	+
VI-8	100	7	10	8	1750	-
I-1	100	5	0	4	450	-
V-1	100	5	20	5	2500	+
V-2	100	5	20	5	2500	+
I-2	105	5	8	4	423	-
VI-9	105	6	13	7	2075	+
VI-10	105	6	14	7	2180	-
I-3	195	8	0	6	1325	+
I-4	200	7	0	8	1200	-
II-1	200	7	0	5	1200	-
II-2	210	7	0	5	1290	-
II-5	205	7	0	5	1250	+
IV-2	200	7	0	5	1200	+
II-4	295	9	0	7	2310	+
II-6	300	9	0	6	2250	+
II-3	310	9	0	7	2400	+
IV-3	315	9	0	8	2520	+
IV-4	320	10	0	7	2720	+
I-5	397	12	0	9	3668	+
I-6	410	12	0	8	4100	+
II-7	410	11	0	8	3695	+
II-9	425	12	0	8	4250	+
IV-6	420	12	0	9	4410	+

+ Observations indicate behavioral loss (&lt;6 successful rightings / 10 drops)

- Observations indicate no behavioral loss.

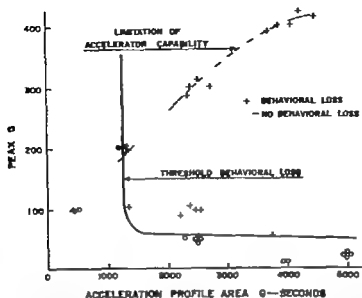


Fig 2. Behavioral loss function of exposure duration and peak G. The ordinate indicates peak acceleration for the particular profile. The abscissa indicates the area under the acceleration profile in terms of G-seconds. The + signs indicate the exposure coordinates for animals which exhibited loss of the righting reflex 24 hrs after acceleration exposure, and the - signs indicate the coordinates for the animals which exhibited no behavioral loss. The heavy black line represents the approximate threshold for behavioral loss. The light dashed line indicates the rise and decay time limitation for the SFAPS at particular peak G level.

peration and rearrangement of the individual otoconia without apparent loss.

For many maculae the grading varied for different areas as it was not unusual to have a loss from an anterior one-half with only a slight loss from the posterior one-half. For this reason and also because the five grades of otoconial loss overlapped for many observations, it was decided to group the five grades into I, II or III with respect to each macula. Grade 5+ then fell into group I, grades 4+ and 3+ into group II, and grade 1+ and 2+ into group I. If a macula of a utricle was 5+ for the posterior one-half and 2+ or 1+ for the remaining one-half, II was considered as falling in group I.

## Results

### Behavioral observations

The results of experiments on the relationship between duration of acceleration exposure and peak G are presented in Table 1. The data from Table 1 are plotted in Figure 3 for ease of conceptualization.

Animals which were able to perform successfully the righting reflex less than six times in ten drops 24 hours after exposure were classified as



demonstrating behavioral loss. Employing this cut-off the probability of classifying a normal animal as indicating behavioral loss is approximately 0.03. This is calculated on the assumption that the probability that a normal animal will fail to perform the righting reflex on a given drop is 0.2 and that there are no second order effects during the series of 10 drops. These assumptions are not strictly true and our probability of 0.03 is only a rough estimate.

Figure 3 indicates that damage is produced at the 300 and 400 G levels by the shortest acceleration profiles within the capability of the apparatus (16-20 seconds). The integrals over the acceleration profiles which have peaks between 293 and 425 G range between 2250 and 4410 G-sec.

Three of six animals exposed to accelerations in the 200-G range manifested behavioral loss. Area measures associated with the 200-G peaks varied between 1200 and 1325 G-sec.

Three of the ten animals exposed to approximately 100-G peaks demonstrated behavioral loss. The animals which exhibited loss were exposed to acceleration profiles of 2000-2500 G-sec.

Two of ten animals which were exposed to accelerations of 45-55 G manifested behavioral damage. Acceleration profiles for the damaged animals were 2500-3750 G-sec.

None of the animals which were exposed to less than 45 G demonstrated behavioral evidence of vestibular damage 24 hours after exposure. Included in this no-loss group are animals which were exposed to 12 G for periods of 5.5 min and 25 G for over 3.5 min. Profile area measures for the 12 and 25-G animals were 4020 and 5000 G-sec, respectively.

### *Anatomical observations*

*Gross dissection.* During development of the dissection procedures several normal animals were examined. Photographs of normal maculae from the utricle and saccule are presented in Figure 4. Maps of the normal saccular and utricular maculae are presented in Figures 5 and 6. Further information about orientation of the maculae may be found in papers by de Burlet and de Haas (1923), Werner (1933), and Spoendlin (1964, 1965).

A group of guinea pigs which had been exposed to 300 G on the SFAPS

---

Fig 4 Photograph of normal macula from the saccule and utricle. The saccular macula, as seen from lateral view is presented in 4a. The otoconia snowdrift which lies at the triola can be detected running through the center of the macula and hooking to the left of the dorsal lobe. Slight damage which occurred during dissection can be detected to the left margin of the dorsal lobe. The utricular macula, as seen from the dorsal medial view is presented in 4b. The striola is represented by the dark crescent which opens to the left, slightly to the right of the center line. The otoconia underlying the utricular striola are more opaque than the surrounding area. Damage which occurred during extirpation can be seen at the lower left hand corner of the macula. Both maculae are from the right ear.

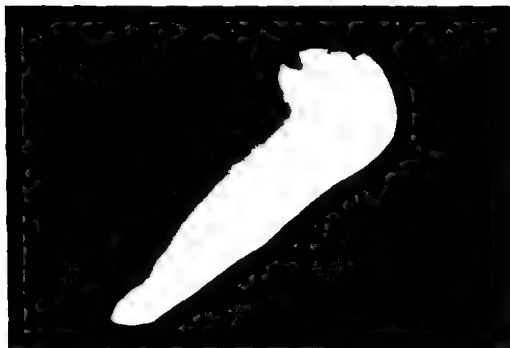




Fig. 5.



Fig. 6.

Fig. 5. Map of normal saccular macula. The dorsal lobe is represented by zone 1, transitional area is represented by zone 2, and the main part is represented by zone 3. The stippled area indicates the region of greater otoconial density. The dorsal lobe lies in a plane which makes an angle of about  $30^\circ$  with the dorsal ventral plane. The dorsal tip of the dorsal lobe, which is on the left in the map, is lateral and the ventral edge of the dorsal lobe is medial. The main part of the saccular macula is oriented in a plane about  $30^\circ$  off of the dorsal ventral plane with the ventral edge lateral and the dorsal edge medial.

Fig. 6. Map of normal utricular macula. The main part of the macula is represented by zone 1, the transition area is indicated by zone 2, and the anterior edge is indicated by zone 3. The region of sparse otoconia, or the striola, is represented by the stippled area. The main part of the macula lies in a plane which makes an angle of about  $25^\circ$  with the lateral-medial plane. The lateral edge, which is located at the top of the map, is dorsal and the medial edge is ventral. The anterior edge lies in a plane which is about  $30^\circ$  off the lateral-medial plane. The transition region is anterior and the margin is posterior.

were also examined. For the 300-G animals, otoconia were observed throughout the membranous labyrinth including the ampullae. An example of otoconia displacement into an ampulla is presented in Figure 7.

**Histological observations.** Figure 8a is a photomicrograph of the left utricular macula (m.u.) from animal V-1. This animal had been exposed to a 100-G peak over a trapezoidal acceleration profile of 30 sec. The otoconia from the anterior one-half appear to have been displaced to the posterior part of the macula. Only a few otoconia are present on the macula of the saccule from the same labyrinth (Figure 8b).

The appearance of the left maculae from animal V-3, which was exposed to 50-G peak acceleration over a profile of 55 sec, is shown in Figures 8c and 8d. There is an accumulation of otoconia over the posterior end of the

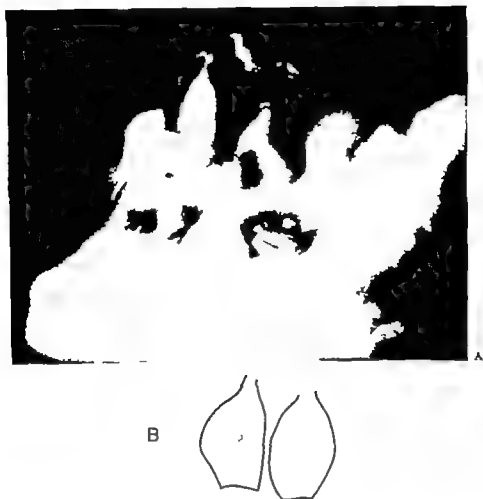


Fig 7 Damage to ampullae following high linear acceleration. The ampullae of the superior and lateral semicircular canals are depicted in the photograph. Displaced otoconia can be seen in the ampulla of the superior canal which is to the left. The stippled areas in the schematic drawing indicate the location of the displaced otoconia. Otoconia in this location would account for the infrequently observed positional nystagmus. These ampullae were taken from gross dissection practice animal which had been exposed to linear acceleration of 300 G over time period of 17 sec in the +G orientation.

left m.u. and fewer otoconia present over the remaining portions (Figure 8c). The macula of the left sacculus (m.s.) shows a few otoconia evenly distributed except for the posterior margin where none are present (Figure 8d). Changes in the right labyrinth were practically identical for the m.u., but the m.s. revealed a complete loss of otoconia.

Animals IX-2 and X-5 were exposed to the same acceleration profile as animal X-3, but in each instance the animal's head slipped caudally and to the left during the exposure. The otoconia were practically all removed from the maculae of the left labyrinth of animal X-5, but only slight to

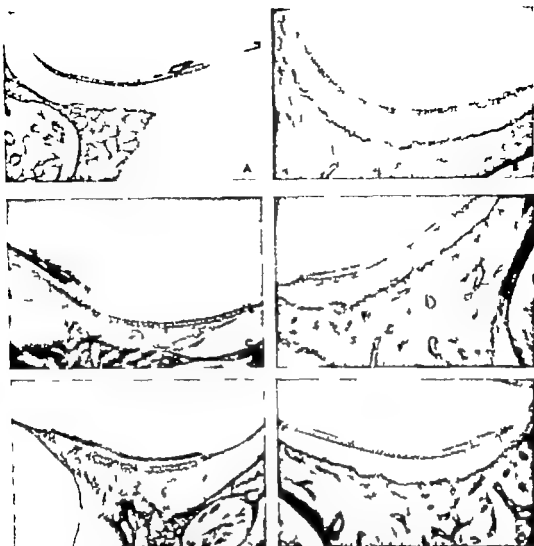


Fig 8 Histological observations for stimuli duration = peak G. Animals A Macula of utricle of left labyrinth of animal V-1 showing loss of otoconia from posterior one-half with accumulation over posterior part 100 G peak over trapezoidal acceleration profile of 30 sec. B Macula of saccule of same labyrinth as shown in 8a. There are only few otoconia present. C Macula of utricle of left labyrinth of animal V-3. Otoconia accumulated over posterior end with only few particles remaining elsewhere. 50 G peak acceleration over profile of 35 sec. D Macula of left saccule of V-3 showing a few remaining otoconia primarily distributed except for posterior margin where none is present. E Macula of utricle of left ear of V-4 showing slight loss but some redistribution of the otoconia. 25 G peak over profile of 103 sec. F Macula of saccule of same ear shown in 8c. Central and posterior portions show only few otoconia while more are present over anterior portion.

moderate otoconia loss was noted for the maculae of the right labyrinth. The findings for IX-2 were not consistent with those from the other animals which had received the same acceleration exposure as only a moderate loss of otoconia appeared along the inferior border of the right macula.

For animal IX-4 the duration of the acceleration profile for 50 G was

TABLE 2 *Otoconia loss ratings for selected animals from experiment I m*

Animal number	Ear	Peak G	Rise day fall	Post exposure days	Per cent rightings		Macula of utricles	Cere p	Macula of sacculus	Group	1 section
					Pre exp	Post p					
V 1	R L	100	8/20/35	15	00	30	5 + 1 +	I II	-5 + -4 +	I II	
V 2	R L	100	8/20/35	15	00	0	-5 + -5 +	I I	-5 + 5 +	I I	O.M. O.M.
V 3	R L	50	5/15/35	15	80	0	-5 + 5 +	I I	5 + 5 +	I II	
V 4	R I	25	6/8/35	15	100	100	-1 + 1 +	III III	-1 + -2 + P 5 + R	II II	
V 5	R L	25	8/03/35	15	100	100	-1 + -1 +	III III	-4 + A 1 + P -2 + 4 +	I II	O.M. O.M.
V 6	R L	50	6/18/35	7	00	100	2 + -5 +	III I	-2 + 4 +	III II	Head slipped p (via dat) 1 left.
V 7	R L	50	8/10/35	7	00	100	-2 + -1 +	III III	2 + f 1 +	III III	Head slipped up d t left.
V 8	R L	50	5/70/35	7	00	50	5 P 2 + R 5 + P 1 + R	II II	2 + -2 +	III III	Head slipped l right and d arm Head 1 to CT (MU)
V 9	R L	12	6/30/35	7	00	100	-5 + A, 1 + R 1 +	II III	2 + +1 +	III III	
V 10	R L	25	5/10/35	7	00	100	0-1 + 0-1 +	III III	0-1 + 2 +	III III	

Abbreviations: A, Anterior; P, Posterior; L, Left; R, Right; S, Superior; I, Inferior; N, Nerve; C, Central; E, Epithelial; m, m; O, Otoconia; I, Internal; M, Medial; C, Central.

increased to 80 sec. In this animal the posterior one-half of the right m.u. exhibited complete loss of otoconia, and there was a moderate loss from the anterior one half as well as from the m.s. On the left side, the otoconia were missing over the posterior border of the m.u., and changes in the m.s. were similar to those observed on the right side. In this experiment the head of the animal slipped to the right and caudally.

Following exposure to 25 G over a profile of 105 sec, the histological observations for animals V-5 and V-6 were similar to those noted previously. There was evidence for a redistribution of otoconia without much loss for the utricular maculae as demonstrated for the left m.u. of animal V-6 (Figure 8e). The macula of each sacculus revealed loss of otoconia from the central and posterior areas as shown for the left m.s. of V-6 (Figure 8f).

Increase of exposure duration to 205 sec for the 25-G animals (V-5, V-6) elicited no major additional changes. As previously the maculae of the sacculi showed a greater loss of otoconia than did those of the utricles.

Animals IX-7 and IX-8 received exposure to 12 G over an acceleration profile of 340 sec. Following this exposure animal IX-8 revealed a complete loss of otoconia from the anterior one-half of the right m.u. and a 2+ change in the m.s. The left maculae were without much change.

In summary stimulus durations of 20 sec at 100 G and 45 sec at 50 G are sufficient to remove most of the otoconia from the maculae of the sacculi and utricles. After exposure to 25 G for 95 sec, the maculae of the sacculi usually show incomplete removal of otoconia while the maculae of the utricles reveal only slight changes in the distribution of the otoconia. Histological observations for these animals are summarized in Table 2.

## EXPERIMENT I B LINEAR ACCELERATION LONG-TERM RECOVERY

### Purpose

The possibility of functional or structural recovery following vestibular damage has been discussed previously (Wiltmaack 1909; Hasegawa 1931). The present experiment was designed to explore the possibility of recovery of vestibular capability following exposure to intense linear acceleration. In the course of this study behavioral responses of guinea pigs were observed for periods up to 66 days following exposure to various acceleration time histories.

### Method

#### Subjects

Thirteen guinea pigs were employed in this study of long-term recovery following exposure to high acceleration. The animals were divided into two groups according to date of exposure. Nine animals were run in group A and four animals were run in group B.



Fig. 9 Position reflex following high acceleration. The position reflex is typically examined following positive accelerations of 200 to 400 G. The animal's head is fixed and rotated right. The hind leg contralateral to the side of head displacement is extended.

### Apparatus

The apparatus used in this experiment was the Space Flight Acceleration Profile Simulator which is described in Experiment I a.

### Procedure

The procedure in this series of experiments was similar to that described in the previous section. All animals were exposed in the +G orientation as illustrated in Figure 2.

Exposure levels and schedule of testing with the righting reflex are given in Table 3. The 13 animals were subjected to peak accelerations of approximately 200, 300, and 400 G. Distribution of the animals among these profiles was as follows: 4 animals at 200 G, 5 animals at 300 G, and 3 animals at 400 G. One animal was retained as a control. The acceleration profiles, which were nearly triangular in shape, covered temporal durations of about 14 sec for the 200-G peak, 17 sec for the 300-G peak, and 21 sec for the 400-G peak. Immediately after each exposure the subject was examined for nystagmus and general orientation. Subsequent behavioral testing with the righting reflex continued for periods up to 66 days. Tests of swimming ability were performed at periods of 2, 30, and 60 days for the animals in group A. After completion of behavioral testing all of the animals in this group were transported to the Washington University Medical School where the temporal bones were prepared for histological examination.



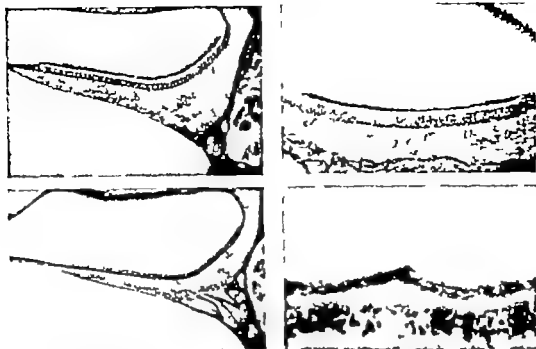


Fig 11 Histological observations with long term recovery animal. A Macula of the utricle of nonexposed animal showing usual density and distribution of otoconia. B, Macula of the saccule of the same animal as shown in Fig. 11a. The layer of otoconia is compact and epithelium is without alterations. C, Complete loss of otoconia from macula of utricle of animal II-3 exposed to 300-G peak and allowed to survive for 34 days. D, Incomplete loss of otoconia from anterior one-half of macula of left saccule of II-3. The loss is abrupt and epithelial damage is evident. The gelatinous layer is intact.

rather erratic after postexposure day 44. The infection may have developed during the recovery period and contributed to the erratic behavior of the recovery functions. Although these data are retained in Table 3, they are viewed with suspicion and were not employed in the plotting of Figure 10.

### Histological observations

Figure 11a illustrates the appearance of the m.u. in a control or nonexposed animal. The otoconia are in a compact layer and evenly distributed. Figure 11b shows the m.s. from the same ear at a slightly higher magnification. The epithelium of each macula is well preserved.

The m.u. illustrated in Figure 11c shows well-preserved epithelium but a complete loss of otoconia. This animal (II-3) had been exposed to a peak acceleration of 300 G and allowed to survive for 34 days. No righting reflexes could be elicited after the exposure. The opposite m.u. revealed a similar complete loss of otoconia. The maculae of the saccules showed remaining otoconia near the anterior ends. The gelatinous layer remained over the whole surface although most of the otoconia were missing.

Figure 11d is a higher power view of the epithelium of the left m.s. from animal II-3. The otoconia density is somewhat reduced particularly

TABLE 4 *Otoconia loss ratings for long term recovery animals*

Animal number	Ear	Peak (°)	Time dwell fall	Post exposure day	Per cent rightings		Macula (title)	(group)	H. cula (sacculo)	Group	I. fectios
					Pre exp	Post p					
11-1	R	200	7(-)5	31	80	80	-5+	I	-1+ f 3+ R	III	O.M.
	L						-5+	I	o 5+	I	O.M.
11-2	R	210	0.0(-)5	31	100	100	-5A, 3+ R	II	5+ 1 2+ R	III	
	I						-5+ A 3+ R	II	5+ 1 2+ R	III	
11-3	R	210	9(-)0.5	31	100	80	-3+	II	-1+ f 3+ R	II	
	I						-5+ P 3+ R	II	-2+	III	
11-4	R	295	9(-)7	61	100	80	5+ A 3+ R	II	5+	I	O.M.
	L						-8+	I	-5+	I	O.M.
11-5	R	205	7.2(-)0.5	61	80	80	5+ A 1+ R	II	5+	I	O.M.
	I						5+	I	-5+	I	O.M.
11-7	R	410	11(-)8	61	70	0	5+	I	5	I	O.M.
	L						-8+	I	5+	I	O.M.
11-8	R	300	9(-)0.5	31	70	0	-5+	I	3+	II	
	I						5+	I	1+	II	
11-9	R	425	12(-)8	5	100	80	5+	I	5+	I	
	L						5+	I	5+	I	
11-2	R	280	7(-)5	50	100	70	-3+ A, 5+ R	II	1+	III	Note bout 20 (
	I						-3+ A, 5+ R	II	3+	II	left during run
11-3	R	315	9.5(-)8	50	100	0	o-1+	II	5+	I	
	L						-5+	I	1+	II	
11-4	R	320	10(-)7	50	90	100	3+	II	1+	II	
	I						-2+	III	-3+	II	
11-5	R	430	1150.1/8	8	90	0					1.01 yr 1111
	L										O.M.
11-0	R	430	1150.1/8	50	90	0	-5+	I	-5+	I	
	L						-5+	I	-5+	I	

to one side of the raised otoconial layer and the epithellum shows some destruction of supporting and sensory cells. Similar epithelial changes are not unusual in other specimens.

There is no adequate evidence from this series of 12 animals that any particular reparative process occurs to explain the return of the righting reflexes after exposure. However there is a possibility that the gelatinous layer of a macula can be replenished if epithelial damage has not been too severe. If this layer in the absence of otoconia, can maintain some function of a macula it is important to study it further. In the present series of exposures a peak acceleration of about 400 G revealed a complete loss of otoconia and gelatinous layer but the animals that were exposed to a peak acceleration of from 200 to 300 G usually revealed an incomplete loss of otoconia and the presence of an intact gelatinous layer. How much if any of the latter can be related to return of righting reflexes during the postexposure period is unknown. Results of the histological observations with the long term recovery animals are presented in Table 4.

#### EXPERIMENT I C. LINEAR ACCELERATION ORIENTATION

##### Purpose

This experiment was undertaken to determine whether forces acting parallel or perpendicular to the macular surface are most effective in producing damage to the otolithic membrane.

##### Method

###### *Subjects*

Nine guinea pigs were exposed to linear acceleration in the +G and +G or -G axes, as illustrated in Figure 2.

###### *Apparatus*

The Space Flight Acceleration Profile Simulator which is described in the first section was employed in this experiment.

###### *Procedure*

The procedure in this series of experiments was similar to that previously described. The nine animals were exposed to peak linear accelerations of approximately 300 G. Triangular acceleration profiles were employed each profile had a rise time of approximately 9 sec and a fall time of 7 sec. The couch was modified to orient the subjects' heads in the G or G axes as noted above. The exposures for the animals in this experiment are summarized in Table 5.

##### Results

###### *Behavioral observations*

All three animals exposed to acceleration in the +G orientation demonstrated complete loss of the righting reflex 24 hours following exposure.

TABLE 5. *Otoconia loss ratings for orientation experiment animals*

Animal number	Sex	Axis and position	Peak G	Wave d (all)	Post exposure days	Per cent Rightings Post exp. days			Macula of Utric	Cl p	Macula of sacculle	Group	Infection
						1	7						
VIII-1	R	+G	300	94 77	15	0	50		-5+	I	-1+	II	O.M.
	I								1+	II	-5+	I	O.M.
VIII-2	R	+G	325	95 77.5	15	0	0		1+	II	+5+	I	
	L								5+	I	-5+	I	
VIII-3	R	-G	325	94 77	14	0	0		5+	I	5+	I	O.M.
	L								5+	I	-5+	I	O.M.
VIII-4	R	+G <sub>9</sub>	330	95 76.8	15	0	90		2+	III	-2+	III	
	L								2+R 1+A	II	-1+	II	
VIII-5	R	+G	300	94 77	14	100	100		-2+P 3+R	III	1+	II	O.M.
	L								5+	I	1+	II	O.M.
VIII-6	R	+G	300	94 77	14	100	100		3+	II	-1+	II	
	L								3+	II	1+	II	
IX-1	R	-G	300	94 77	5	0	0		5+	I	5+	I	
	L								5+	I	5+	I	
IX-2	R	-G	300	94 77	5	0	100		-1+	II	1+	II	
	L								2+	III	-1+	III	

whereas two of the five animals exposed to acceleration in the +G, or -G, axis exhibited no behavioral loss. By the seventh postexposure day four of the five animals in the G group exhibited completely recovery of the righting reflex, while only one of the three animals in the G group demonstrated even partial behavioral recovery. These observations are summarized in Table 5.

### *Histological observations*

Exposures in the +G axis at a peak acceleration of 300-335 G with a rise time of 9 sec followed by a fall time of approximately 7 sec resulted in an almost complete loss of otoconia from all maculae. Examples of the histological results following these exposures are presented for the right m.u. from animal V-4 in Figure 12a and the right m.s. from animal V-4 in Figure 12b. In rare instances there were a few otoconia remaining on the macular surfaces, but these had probably been dislodged during the exposure and had settled back into position.

Exposures in the G axis, with the cephalocaudal head axis perpendicular to the plane of rotation, to acceleration profiles similar to those for the G animals gave rather conflicting results. Of the two animals for which otoconia were entirely lacking from all maculae one apparently had a marked otitis media that could have been present at the time of exposure, and the other had severe autolytic changes in the inner ear because it had died several hours before the immersion of the temporal bones in fixative. The two remaining animals, which received exposure in the G axis with the cephalocaudal head axis perpendicular to the plane of rotation exhibited moderate to severe otoconia loss. Figure 12c illustrates the moderate otoconia loss which extended over the entire surface of the left m.u. from animal V-1. The right m.u. from this animal, which showed complete loss of otoconia is illustrated by Figure 12d. The left m.s. of animal V-1 was little altered but the right m.s. was stripped of otoconia. The right m.u. and m.s. from animal VIII-4 showed a slight loss of otoconia while changes in the left m.u. and m.s. resembled those seen in the right labyrinth of animal V-1. These findings are interesting because animal V-1 was exposed in the -G orientation, whereas animal VIII-4 was exposed in the +G orientation.

Exposures in the G axis with the cephalocaudal head axis parallel to the plane of rotation resulted in an almost complete loss of otoconia from the left m.s. and m.u. of animal VIII-5. The right macula revealed similar changes, but less marked, over the posterior one-half of the m.u. Following a similar acceleration exposure, animal VIII-6 demonstrated a similar pattern of otoconia loss for both the right and left ears. The maculae of the saccules showed only a few scattered otoconia on their surfaces (Figure 12e) while the maculae of the utricles revealed an accumulation of otoconia in the central regions with a total loss over the posterior areas (Figure 12f).

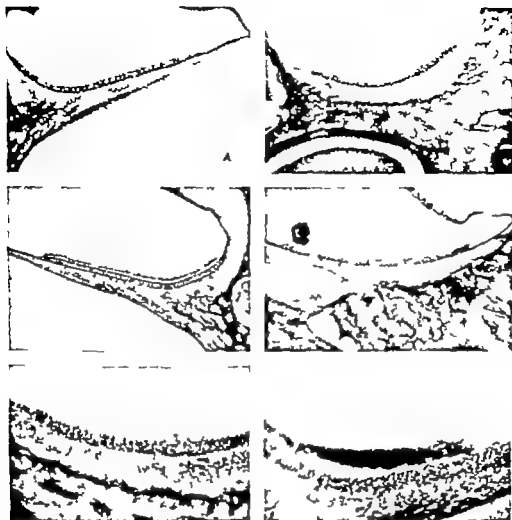


Fig. 12. Histological observations with orientation animals. A. Macula of right utricle of animal X-4 showing complete loss of otoconia. Exposure in  $-G$  axis to 200-G peak acceleration with rise time of 9 sec and fall time of 7 sec. B. Macula of right saccule of same ear as Fig. 12a showing only a few remaining otoconia. C. Macula of left utricle of animal X-1 showing moderate but consistent loss of otoconia over the entire surface. Exposure was in the  $-G$  axis to 200-G peak acceleration with rise of 9 sec and fall of 7 sec. D. Macula of right utricle of same animal as Fig. 12c showing marked loss of otoconia. The otoconia of the macula of the left saccule showed practically no loss, while the right macula was stripped of otoconia. E. Right macula of animal VIII-6 showing an almost complete loss of otoconia. F. Macula of right utricle of same ear as Fig. 12c showing accumulation of otoconia in central one-third with total loss over posterior one-third. The left macula showed similar changes.

In conclusion, exposures in the  $+G$  axis produced the most consistent damage as evidenced by severe loss of otoconia from all maculae. Exposures in the  $G$  axis with the cephalocaudal head axis perpendicular to the plane of rotation produced changes which were greater in one ear than the other.

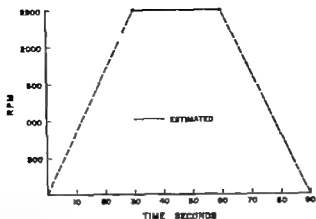


Fig. 11 Exposure profile for axial rotation. The ordinate indicates revolutions per minute and the abscissa represents time from stimulus onset. In this case the exposure profile had rise, dwell, and decay times of 30 sec. Rotational rate during rise and decay time was estimated.

with the cephalocaudal head axis parallel to the plane of rotation, the right and left maculae were affected similarly. These observations are given in Table 5.

#### EXPERIMENT I D LINEAR ACCELERATION COMBINATION WITH HIGH AXIAL ROTATION

##### Purpose

Investigation into the effects of axial rotation was undertaken to duplicate an earlier series of studies by Wittmaack (1909). It is hypothesized that the major damaging effect of axial rotation is caused by the linear acceleration component for the acceleration profiles used in the present study. However, it is possible that damage to the cristae reported by Wittmaack and his students was, in part, a function of the angular acceleration component. Unfortunately, the distance between the maculae and the axis of rotation which Wittmaack employed is not entirely clear. For the present series of investigations, rotation around the cephalocaudal axis was chosen.

##### Method

##### Subjects

Five guinea pigs were rotated at 1800 or 2500 rpm to investigate the effects of axial rotation on the vestibular apparatus.

##### Apparatus

An aluminum tube which was 25 cm long and had an inside diameter of 6 cm restrained the animal during exposure. A tooth bar covered with dental impression compound provided head restraint, and a Hardinge metal lathe was used to spin the animals.

TABLE 6 Results of axial rotation study

Animal	Peak rpm	Acceleration profile			Righting loss 2 hrs	Gross dissection
		Rise	Down	Fall		
AR 1	2500	30	30	30	-	-
AR 2	2500	30	30	30	+	OM
AR 3	1800	30	30	30	-	N O II
AR-4	2500	30	30	30	-	N O II

+ Observational direct damage; - Observational and no direct damage; II, Retained for histological examination; N/O, Not observed; OM, Otolith media.

### Procedure

Before each experiment the guinea pigs were subjected to tests of the righting reflex, as indicated under Experiment Ia. The animal was then placed in the aluminum tube and the head was fixed by the tooth bar which was covered with warm dental impression compound. The tube was attached to the lathe, and the animal was rotated for 90 sec. The profile for this acceleration, which is presented in Figure 13, indicates a 30-sec rise time to a peak rotation rate of 2500 rpm maintained for 30 sec and succeeded by a 30-sec fall time. The maximum angular acceleration with this exposure is about  $500/\text{sec}^2$ . A 90-sec acceleration profile was also employed for the 1800 rpm peak rotation exposure. Rotation rate during rise and fall time was estimated. If the maculae are assumed to be one cm from the axis of rotation, peak linear acceleration at 2500 rpm is approximately 70 G and for 1800 rpm peak acceleration is approximately 36 G.

### Results

#### Behavioral observations

Following exposure to 2500 rpm two of three guinea pigs demonstrated behavioral loss, as indicated in Table II. The one animal exposed to 1800 rpm did not exhibit loss of the righting reflex.

#### Gross dissection observations

Gross dissection of the labyrinth was performed on one of the 2500-rpm animals. In this animal most of the utricular otoconia were in the normal position. However, a fine scattering of otoconia was observed on the utricular walls opposite the maculae and into the ampullae of the superior and lateral semicircular canals.

Saccular otoconia were considerably displaced in both ears. In the right ear the otoconia were completely removed from the saccular macula and were lying in a clump against the anterior lateral wall of the utricle. For the left ear the posterior end of the macula was not disturbed but otoconia from the anterior end of the macula were displaced in the posterior ventral



direction. The gross anatomical picture for the saccule of the left ear was somewhat unusual in that the otoconia prisms retained their spatial relationship to one another and appeared to be folded as a group. It would appear that the otoconia and the gelatinous basal layer were displaced together rather than the otoconia being thrown from the gelatinous layer.

### *Histological observations*

The two guinea pigs exposed to axial rotation and for which histological studies were made showed considerable displacement of otoconia. The *m.s.* of the left ear of AR-4 revealed a stripping of the otoconia with the gelatinous layer intact (Figure 14a) and rupture of the membrane of the saccule. The *m.u.* of the same ear showed an incomplete loss of otoconia particularly over the posterior half. This was also true of the opposite *m.u.*, but the right *m.s.* showed intact otoconia with relatively slight loss. AR-4 was subjected to 2500 rpm.

Animal AR-3 which was rotated at 1800 rpm showed otoconia adherent to the cupula of the lateral canal crista (Figure 14b). The right *m.s.* showed some moderate loss of otoconia with collapse and rupture of the saccular membrane. Figure 14c shows the right *m.u.* with otoconia loosened from their usual compact positions but in addition the posterior portion of the macula had been pulled loose and reflected in the anterior direction.

## EXPERIMENT II VIBRATION

### Purpose

The possibility of vestibular damage as a result of exposure to low frequency vibration has been suggested (Riopelle Hinea, and Lawrence 1958). In the present investigation guinea pigs were exposed to vibrations of 1-7 G at 6-20 Hz for periods of 4-8 hours to examine the possibility of vestibular damage.

### Method

#### *Subjects*

Twenty-one guinea pigs were subjected to moderate low frequency sinusoidal vibration for periods up to 8 hours. The animals were divided into seven groups, A through G according to exposure conditions.

#### *Apparatus*

The vibration stimulus was obtained with an Vib Electronics Model S-3 vibration exciter. The restraint device consisted of three 21-cm troughs attached to a 30- by 30-cm plate fastened to the head of the vibration exciter.

Acceleration magnitude was calculated using the result of stroboscopic determination of displacement of the base plate. Examination of the output of an accelerometer mounted on the plate revealed little evidence of waveform distortion at the frequencies used.



Fig 14. Histological sections of macula exposed to lateral rotation. A. Macula of left saccus of AR-4 showing stripping of the otocoon and gelatinous layer from its surface. This macula had been subjected to 2500 rpm with an acceleration profile of 30 sec rise 30 sec dwell, and 30 sec fall. The membrane of the saccus was ruptured. The otocoonia were intact on the right m.s. Both m.s. showed incomplete loss of otocoonia over the posterior one-half. B. Segment of gelatinous layer and otocoon detached from the left lateral canal cupul. Animal AR-3 was subjected to 1800 rpm with the same acceleration profile. AR-4. There was a moderate loss of otocoonia from m.s. and m.n. of each ear. C. Macula of the right utricle of the same animal as in Fig 14b showing detachment of the posterior one-half of the macula and its reflection anteriorly. Otocoonia is dispersed with some loss.

### Procedure

Before exposure the animals were tested with the righting reflex, and only those animals which were normal according to the criteria indicated in Experiment I a were used. The chosen animals were placed in whole body plaster casts and taped in the troughs. During each run the animals were examined periodically with the stroboscope to assure that the restraint remained secure. These observations indicated that the whole body cast provided an excellent restraint device. It is probable that the actual stimulus received by the maculae was very close to that recorded by the accelerometer mounted on the plate.

The animals were oriented in three positions with respect to the direction of vibration by rotation around the cephalocaudal axis. When the head

TABLE 7 Behavioral and gross dissection observations for vibration studies

Animal	Head tilt Degrees	G (Peak)	Exposure		Righting loss		Gross dissection
			Frequency	Duration	1 hr	24 hrs	
A 1	0	1	8	4 hrs	—	—	N/O
A 2	45	1	8	4 hrs	—	—	N/O
A 3	90	1	8	4 hrs	+	+	+
B-1	90	1.25	8	4 hrs	—	—	N/O
B-2	90	1.25	8	4 hrs	—	—	N/O
B-3	90	1.25	8	4 hrs	+	—	+
C 1	90	1	6	8 hrs	—	—	N/O
C 2	90	1	6	8 hrs	—	—	N/O
C-3	90	1	6	8 hrs	—	—	N/O
D-1	90	7	20	4 hrs	—	—	OM
D-2	90	7	20	4 hrs	Died in apparatus		
D-3	90	7	20	4 hrs	Died in apparatus		
E 1	0	3	11	6 hrs	—	—	—
E 2	0	3	11	6 hrs	—	—	—
E-3	90	3	11	6 hrs	+	—	—
F 1	0	2	8	6 hrs	—	—	N/O H
F 2	90	2	8	6 hrs	—	—	N/O H
F-3	90	2	8	6 hrs	—	—	+
G-1	0	1	6	6 hrs	—	—	N/O H
G-2	90	1	6	6 hrs	+	—	N/O H
G-3	90	1	6	6 hrs	+	—	—

+ Observations indicate damage — Observations do not indicate damage H, Retained for histological examination N/O, Not observed OM, Otitis media

Head tilt of 0 degrees (bratt) 1 th 0 is; head tilt of 90 degrees (bratt) in the G axis (see text)

tilt was 0 the acceleration vector was oriented in the G axis, as depicted in Figure 2 for 90° head tilt, vibration was in the G<sub>y</sub> axis. The third head tilt position was 45°

Following exposure the animals were again tested with the righting reflex at periods of 1 hour, 24 hours, and in one case 7 days. After completion of final behavioral testing, four of the animals from Groups F and G were saved for histological examination. Of the remaining animals, seven were examined by gross dissection.

## Results

### Behavioral observations

A summary of the vibration studies, including the exposures and the results of observations with the righting reflex and gross dissection is



Fig. 1A. Damage following posture vibration. The photograph depicts damaged saccular macula from animal F-3 which had been exposed to vibration at 1.25 Hz (peak) and 8 Hz for 4 hours. The stippled area on the schematic drawing below the photograph indicates the region of otoconia displacement. It may have occurred along the ventral edge of the dorsal lobe.

presented in Table 7. Behavioral loss was exhibited by 5 of the 21 animals exposed to vibration. Only those animals which were exposed to acceleration in the G axis demonstrated behavioral loss according to the criteria presented in Experiment Ia. Of the five animals which demonstrated behavioral loss at 1 hour postexposure only one animal, A-3, continued to exhibit loss at 24 hours. This animal was unable to perform the righting reflex just before its termination at 7 days.

### Gross dissection observations

Gross dissection of the temporal bones was performed on 7 of the 21 animals exposed to vibration. Included in these seven were four of the five animals which demonstrated behavioral loss: the fifth behavioral loss animal was transported to Washington University Medical School for histological processing. Evidence of structural damage was observed in three of the seven animals subjected to gross dissection. Two of the three animals which showed structural damage had manifested behavioral loss before termination. In one animal A-3 this damage consisted of displacement of otoconia around the margins of the maculae. For animal B-3 structural changes consisted of displacement of otoconia in the mu of the left ear. Direction of otoconia displacement was from the lateral-dorsal area toward the medial-ventral area. For animal F-3 damage was observed in the m.s. of the right ear. In this animal a small clump of otoconia was observed just beyond the anterior margin of the macula. An illustration of the damage observed in animal F-3 is presented in Figure 15.

In most of the temporal bones examined from both exposed and control animals, some scattering of otoconia around the margins of the maculae was observed. Whether this scattering is a function of the dissection procedure or is a normal condition is not known.

### Histological observations

The histological findings for the four guinea pigs which were subjected to vibration revealed a minimum loss of otoconia, particularly from the m.u. The posterior one-half of the left mu from animal F 1 is shown in Figure 16a. This animal had been exposed to vibration at 2 G, 8 Hz for 6 hours in the G axis. The supporting and sensory cells appear altered and there is loss or displacement of some of the otoconia. The central and anterior parts of the same macula exhibited little alteration as illustrated in Figure 16b. The m.s. from the left ear demonstrated only slight changes in the distribution of the otoconia. Findings were similar for the right ear except for a greater loss of otoconia from the m.s. Animal F 2, which had received the same vibration exposure as F 1 in the G axis, showed similar changes in both m.s. and mu.

The left mu from animal G-1 which was exposed to vibration at 1 G 0 Hz for 6 hours in the G axis, is presented in Figure 16c. As this figure

Fig. 16 Histological views of animal exposed to vibration. A. Posterior one-half of macula of the left utricle of animal F 1 showing some displacement and loss of otoconia. This animal was exposed to vibration at 2 G (peak) 8 Hz for 6 hours in the G axis. B. The central and anterior portions of the same mu as shown in Fig 16a showing intact layer of otoconia. Throughout this mu, there was evidence of supporting cell and sensory cell damage. The macula of the saccules showed slight displacement which was greater in the right than left ear. C. Macula of the left utricle of animal G-1 showing disruption of otoconia. This exposure was 1 G (peak) at 8 Hz for 6 hours in the G axis. The posterior m.s. was similar while the loss of otoconia was greater from each m.s.



TABLE 8 *Otoconia loss ratings for vibration study animals*

Animal number	Head tilt (degrees)	Exposure G (peak) frequency duration	Righting loss (1 hr) (24 hrs)	Macula of utricle	Macula of saccule
F 1	R	2 G 8 Hz		o-neg	o-3+
	L	0 hrs		o-1+R, 2+P	o-1+
F 2	R	2 G 8 Hz		o-3+P 1+R	o-2+
	L	0 hrs		o-1+	o-1+
G 1	R	1 G 6 Hz		-1+	o-2+
	L	0 hrs		-2+	-1+
G-2	R	1 G 6 Hz	+	o-1+	o-2+
	L	0 hrs		-neg	o-2+

All animal were in damage group III

indicates, there is loss from the anterior and central areas similar findings were obtained from the right mu. The m.s. for each ear revealed considerable loss of otoconia over the entire surface without disruption of the membrane layer. Animal G-2 for which the exposure was the same as with G 1 except that the head tilt was 90° exhibited a similar pattern of otoconia loss.

In conclusion the four ears of the two guinea pigs exposed to an 8 Hz vibration at 2 G revealed similar changes in otoconia loss and displacement. The posterior one-half of the mu apparently is more vulnerable to the exposures. The m.s. revealed reduced otoconia and some changes in their distribution. No differences in results were discernible between the positions of the head during exposure. The four ears of the guinea pigs exposed to 6 Hz at 1 G revealed a loss of otoconia from the mu of the guinea pig exposed with 0° head tilt which was not apparent in the specimen which was in the 90° position. No differences were apparent for the otoconial loss from the m.s. in the four ears. These histological observations are summarized in Table 8.

### EXPERIMENT III LOUD SOUND

#### Purpose

Previous investigation has indicated that structural damage takes place in the vestibular area in man and lower animals with exposure to intense

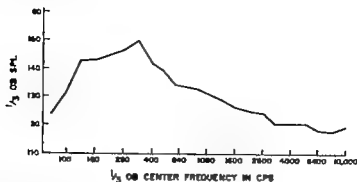


Fig 17 Frequency-intensity spectrum for noise to subject ears. The ordinate indicates sound pressure level (SPL) in dB re 0.0002 microbar and the abscissa represents 1/3 octave band (OB) center frequency in Hz.

auditory stimulation (Rüedi and Furrer 1946 McCabe and Lawrence 1958 Albernas, Covell and Eldredge 1959). Also, some preliminary observations indicate that intense auditory stimulation may produce transient loss of equilibrium-related reflexes during stimulation (Adey, 1953). The present study was undertaken to replicate the previous work and to attempt the correlation of behavioral loss with structural damage.

## Subjects

## Method

Ten guinea pigs were exposed to wide-band noise at intensities of 140, 148, and 154 dB SPL.

## Apparatus

The wide-band acoustic siren described by Cole, Powell, Oestreicher and von Gierke (1963) was used to provide the auditory stimulus. Overall sound intensities at the location of the experimental animals were 140, 148, and 154 dB re 0.0002 microbar. The spectrum of peak intensity versus frequency is presented in Figure 17.

## Procedure

All of the animals used in this experiment gave behavioral results within the normal range before exposure. Four animals were exposed to 140 dB, 4 animals to 148 dB and 2 animals to 154 dB SPL. Duration of all exposures was 20 min. After exposure, tests of the righting reflex, pinna reflex, and swimming ability were performed. One animal was retained for histological examination, and the temporal bones from two animals were studied by gross dissection.



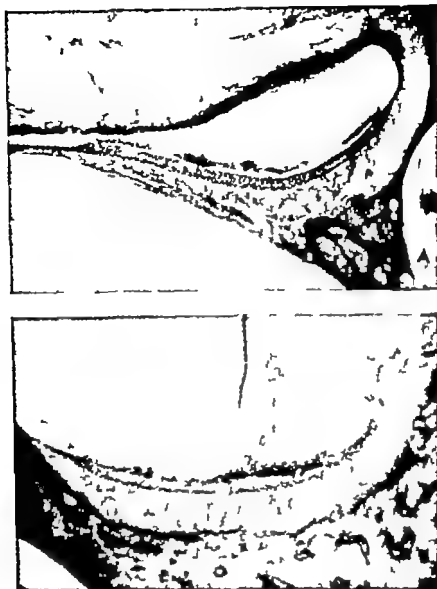


Fig 18. Histological observations animal exposed to loud sound. A. Macula of the right utricle of a guinea pig exposed to wide-band noise at 184 dB SPL for 20 minutes. The otoconia appear to be lumped into groups of varying sizes with some loss. The utricular membrane was ruptured (not shown). B. Macula of the right saccule of the same animal. Fig 18 shows a central mass of otoconia and few elsewhere. There is rupture and collapse of the saccular membrane. The maculae of the left ear were similarly damaged by the intense sound exposure.

### Results

None of the animals exposed to loud sound gave evidence of behavioral loss in terms of the righting reflex and swimming ability. All of the subjects exhibited complete loss of the pinna reflex.

Gross dissection revealed no changes in the vestibular labyrinth. The saccular and utricular membranes did not appear to be collapsed.

The temporal bones from the one animal which was exposed to 154 dB SPL and was retained for histological examination revealed almost complete destruction of the organ of Corti for all turns of each cochlea. There was some collapse of the saccular membrane of both ears and evidence of rupture of the right utricle. Figure 18a illustrates the appearance of the otoconia of the right m.u. The otoconia appear to be in small aggregations with some loss. The findings were similar for the left m.u. Figure 18b shows the collapsed and ruptured saccular membrane from the right ear with the otoconial layer folded over onto itself at one point. Findings were similar for the m.s. of the opposite ear.



Fig. 18. Histological observations on animal exposed to loud sound. A. Macula of the left utricle of guinea pig exposed to wide band noise at 164 dB SPL for 20 min test. The otoconia appear to be lumped in groups of varying sizes with some loss. The tricular membrane was ruptured (not shown). B. Macula of the right saccule of the same animal as in Fig. 18A showing central mass of otoconia and few elsewhere. There is rupture and collapse of the saccular membrane. The macula of the left ear were similarly damaged by the intense sound exposure.

### Results

None of the animals exposed to loud sound gave evidence of behavioral loss in terms of the righting reflex and swimming ability. All of the subjects exhibited complete loss of the pinna reflex.

Gross dissection revealed no changes in the vestibular labyrinth; the saccular and utricular membranes did not appear to be collapsed.

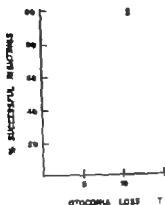


Fig. 19 Scatter diagram relating righting reflex to stochastic loss. The Y-axis indicates per cent successful rightings at the time of the test. The X-axis represents the sum of histological ratings of the vestibular system. The dashed line indicates the correlation coefficient calculated from the data.

that the threshold for structural damage is about 12 G, while the threshold for behavioral damage is about 20 G. The following exposure to 12 and 20 G sustained for 10 min has been somewhat surprising. Future experiments and development of behavioral techniques sensitive to structural damage associated with this level of motion.

### Relationship to Previous Studies

#### Linear acceleration: relationship between exposure duration and peak G

**Behavioral observations.** The results of our investigation, summarized in Figure 3, indicate that the threshold for loss of the righting reflex is about 50 G applied for at least 25 sec. The shape of the threshold curve is approximately that which might be expected if the otolith apparatus behaves like a mass-spring system.

Wittmann (1909) performed qualitative observations of equilibrium disturbances for his animals, which had been exposed to centrifugation at 2000 rpm around the cephalocaudal axis. He noted the rolling and general unsteadiness which has been previously described for the animals in the present study. However, as we have noted, these effects are transient, usually disappearing within 24 hours after exposure.

Hasegawa (1931) reported that behavioral loss was not produced by peak accelerations of 250 G applied over a triangular acceleration profile of 10 sec, whereas increasing the peak G to 290 did elicit behavioral loss. The differences in threshold for behavioral loss observed by Hasegawa and the present study indicate the necessity for examining the techniques to assess behavioral loss in the two studies. Hasegawa used

relation to various body positions and the progressive reaction, whereas the righting reflex and swimming ability were used in the present experiment. However, it would seem that performance of the progressive reaction for vertical linear movement would require the same information from the vestibular system as performance of the righting reflex. As previously noted, we found that behavioral loss was somewhat difficult to judge employing the progressive reaction. It appears that the righting reflex and swimming ability provide a more sensitive indicator of vestibular damage than do tests of eye rolling and the progressive reaction.

*Anatomical observations.* Dislocation of otoconia has been observed in the present investigation following exposures as low as 12 G for 3-10 sec. Hasegawa has stated that the threshold for anatomical loss appears to be lower than the threshold for behavioral loss; he found displacement of otoconia following exposures to 200 G for 111 sec without simultaneous behavioral loss. Unfortunately Hasegawa's observations did not extend below 200 G.

Margaria, Gualtierotti, and Spinelli (1958) have reported that the threshold for otoconia detachment in small fish and frogs is about 150 G applied for 1 min. This stimulus is considerably more intense than the minimum amplitude which would elicit evidence of vestibular damage in the present experiment.

Spoendlin, Schulzkecht, and Graybiel (1965) reported that no structural damage could be observed in the vestibular area after exposures of squirrel monkeys to 100 G for periods up to 10 min. The light microscopy photomicrograph of the macula from an animal which was exposed to 100 G for 1 min certainly supports this conclusion. However, the two animals which were exposed to 100 G for longer periods (600 and 300 sec) died while in the centrifuge. It is possible that the authors might have been cautious in reporting slight changes in these animals because of autolytic difficulties.

De Vries (1950) reported loss of a saccular otolith in 1 of 20 fish subjected to an 11 G acceleration probably for more than 1 min.

Differences between the results of the present investigation and those from previous studies cannot be easily elucidated at present. In the earlier studies by Witmanek and Hasegawa the criterion for damage was disturbance of the entire otolithic membrane, whereas in the present study damage was recorded if the otoconia were disturbed even though the gelatinous layer remained intact. Perhaps similar disturbances of the otoconia have been observed by previous investigators, but they have been unwilling to make any statements because of inconsistency in their material. This leads to question regarding possible histological artifacts which will be discussed in a subsequent section.

#### *Linear acceleration: long-term recovery*

*Behavioral observations.* The results which we have presented support the hypothesis that functional recovery may take place for orientation re-

flexes normally mediated by the vestibular apparatus following severe behavioral disturbance. This recovery as determined by observations of the righting reflex and swimming ability took place from 1 to 40 days following exposures to accelerations of 200-300 G for periods of 14-18 sec. On the basis of the behavioral data it is not possible to state whether the recovery locus is central or peripheral.

The peripheral recovery hypothesis was first suggested by Wiltmaack (1909). He noted that equilibrium disturbances generally disappeared within 24 hours following one exposure to centrifugation. Recovery time increased to as much as eight days following five exposures to centrifugation. Employing quantitative techniques, Hasegawa (1931) was unable to find any behavioral evidence of recovery for up to 110 days following acceleration exposure. However, Hasegawa's acceleration of 290 G is close to the level of irreversible behavioral loss as determined in the present investigation. Also, as has been previously noted, behavioral loss may be difficult to judge employing Hasegawa's techniques.

Fernandez has suggested that the recovery which we have observed may be central rather than peripheral. This central recovery hypothesis could be dependent on (1) repair of damage to the neurons or vascular supply of the vestibular pathways, or (2) central compensation such as learning. Regarding the first possibility, serial sections through the vestibular nuclei of the animals in the present series have not revealed adequate evidence of neuronal degeneration or hemorrhage. The possibility of learning is less easy to eliminate. However, one might ask why learning should take place in the animals which had been exposed to 200 and 300 G but not for the 400-G animals.

*Anatomical observations.* There is no evidence from the present investigation to support the hypothesis that the otoconia are reformed during the recovery period. Wiltmaack states that he was able to observe a suggestion of otolithic membrane reformation with careful study of his slides. Conversely, Hasegawa saw no evidence of otolithic membrane reformation even after 110 days of recovery.

The results of the present investigation, however, do not preclude in some instances the possibility of repair of the gelatinous layer. While the composition of the gelatinous layer has not been completely determined, it may be suggested that movement of this layer alone could produce some stimulation of the macular hair cells. If reformation of the gelatinous layer was sufficiently complete it might then mediate recovery of the behavioral orientation reflexes.

#### *Linear acceleration orientation*

Observations by von Holst (1930) on fish and Schöne on humans (1962, 1964) have demonstrated that accelerations acting parallel to the maculae which produce shearing forces, comprise the effective stimulus for these organs. In view of these observations, the question has been raised as to

whether acceleration acting parallel or perpendicular to the macular surface would be most effective as a damage producing stimulus.

Major consideration was given to the utricle in planning this experiment. While the utricle is known to respond to linear acceleration and are involved in the equilibrium reflexes, there has been considerable discussion about the function of the saccule during the past five decades. Among others, McNally and Tall (1925) and Versteegh (1927) removed the saccule or cut the saccular nerve and were unable to detect any disturbance of equilibrium function as a result of the saccular ablation. Recently Jongkees (1950) working with rabbits, and Walsh (1960) with humans, have been able to detect saccular responses to linear acceleration. The weight of experimental evidence however indicates that the utricle is the major mediator of the vestibular equilibrium responses, and that the saccule, while responsive to linear acceleration is of secondary importance.

When a guinea pig is oriented in the G position in the SFAPS the forces acting on the utricular maculae are nearly parallel to the macular surface whereas in the G<sub>0</sub> orientation acceleration is almost perpendicular to the macular surface. Both behavioral and histological data in the present investigation indicate that acceleration acting perpendicular to the macular surface is most effective in producing displacement of otoconia. Unfortunately insufficient studies were performed to obtain statistical proof of this hypothesis.

Moreover the only animals that demonstrated behavioral loss in the vibration experiment were those placed in the G<sub>0</sub> orientation. As this problem could conceivably be of interest in the design of emergency reentry vehicles for use in space exploration further investigations should be performed.

#### *Linear acceleration axial rotation*

Wittmach (1909) noted that centrifugation resulted in throwing off of the entire otolithic membrane for his animals. The otolithic membranes were described as being rolled up in balls and lying in the corners of the utricle and saccule. Hasegawa's observations (1931) were similar to Wittmach's. The vestibular damage observed in the present investigation not seem to have been as severe as that described by Wittmach.

Our estimate of a distance of one cm from the axis of rotation to the n for Wittmach's study is in error.

#### *Vibration*

Only slight evidence of vestibular damage following vibration has been seen with behavioral or anatomical observation study. The only animal which demonstrated loss of the ri hours after exposure showed hemorrhage in the vestibular

section revealed evidence of mild otoconia displacement in three animals.

Riopelle Hines, and Lawrence (1958) reported that monkeys which were exposed to 2.6 G (peak) sinusoidal vibration at 10 Hz for 8 hours demonstrated no behavioral loss in terms of jumping ability and pattern discrimination tests. Histological observation of a group of monkeys which received similar vibration exposure revealed slight evidence of otolithic membrane displacement for three of six animals.

Difficulties in determining the vibration amplitude actually received by the maculae complicates comparison of the results from Riopelle *et al* and those from the present study. For both investigations, vibration amplitude was determined at the support for the restraint device. It is almost certain that the vibration amplitude at the head was not the same as at the support. The restraint device used in the present investigation, consisting of a whole-body cast probably provided a more rigid support for the head than the chair used by Riopelle *et al*. Therefore for the same displacement, the amplitude of head vibration probably was greater in the present study than in the one by Riopelle *et al*.

Results from the two investigations do not appear very different. While the righting reflex is probably a better test of vestibular capability than jumping ability neither behavioral test gave much evidence of damage. On the anatomical side moderate evidence of disturbance to the maculae was seen in each study.

### Loud sound

Experiments on the effects of exposure to loud sound clearly reveal that vestibular disturbance can be produced by an auditory input (Ades, 1953; Rüdel and Furrer, 1947; McCabe and Lawrence, 1958; Albernaz, Covell and Eldredge, 1959). Experimentation on the possibility of producing vestibular damage by exposure to loud sound has been reported by McCabe and Lawrence and Albernaz *et al*. These authors report rupture of the membranous partition and saccule following exposure to noise or pure tone at intensities of 140-153 dB SPL. Rüdel and Furrer report damage in the vestibule and semicircular canals following exposure of a guinea pig to an explosion.

The results of our investigations with the righting reflex and swimming ability indicate no behavioral loss following exposure to loud sound. Ades has reported transient interruption of the righting reflex for one cat exposed to 950 Hz at 140 dB SPL. A second cat exposed to loud sound irregularly varied over the range of 200-2000 Hz, failed to show any postexposure deficiencies in postural reflexes. The results of the present investigation indicate that the results given by the cat which demonstrated transient behavioral loss are the exception rather than the rule.

Although no evidence of membrane collapse was seen with gross dissection examination of serial sections of one specimen revealed some evidence of utricular and saccular membrane collapse as well as severe damage in



the cochlea. These findings are in line with the results of the previous studies.

The animals in the present study were not anesthetized during the sound exposure. It is likely that the middle ear reflex attenuates the sound transmission to the inner ear. Perhaps greater evidence of damage could be found with anesthetized animals. Anesthesia was not employed because it would have prohibited or confounded behavioral testing immediately after exposure. In view of the limited evidence of damage found in these studies it seems unlikely that the use of anesthesia would produce markedly different results.

### Positional Nystagmus

Nystagmus was exhibited by animals which were placed in particular positions following exposure to high acceleration on the SFAPS. Anatomical observations (Fig. 1) support the hypothesis that this positional nystagmus is a result of displacement of the crista by displaced otoconia thrown into it. These observations and conclusions are in agreement with those of Gacek (1931) and de Kleyn and Versteegh (1933).

In 1921 Gacek reported observations of nystagmus which occurred when the animal was placed in certain critical positions. Clifton and Hatlipke (1951) conducted studies which indicated that this positional nystagmus is a benign paroxysmal type and is dependent on lesions of the inner ear. These authors stated that a "significant evidence of labyrinthine trauma. During the procedures for the present study some nystagmus was frequently seen around the margins of the maculae or florets, such as those associated with autolysis. Falling against bathtubs, otoconia may be thrown into the maculae. Such displacements provide one possible explanation for the benign paroxysmal positional nystagmus."

Approaching the problem from a clinical viewpoint, Schuknecht (1962) has proposed the otolith dislocation hypothesis to account for benign paroxysmal positional nystagmus. According to Schuknecht's view, the otoconia could be displaced as a result of degenerative changes in the maculae, perhaps as a result of occlusion of the anterior vestibular artery, as well as by displacement resulting from acceleration.

A recent experiment which indicates that a true nystagmus may be elicited from the statolith organs alone indicates caution in applying the otoconia displacement hypothesis universally. Benson and Bodin (1966) rotated men in a constant rate around the cephalocaudal axis and were able to record nystagmic eye movements. These results certainly allow the hypothesis that an abnormal pattern of nerve firing from the maculae alone may produce nystagmus and vertigo.

## Comments on the Righting Reflex

The righting reflex has frequently been used for determining the functional condition of the vestibular apparatus. Rademaker (1935) performed extensive studies using this technique on cats. Following extirpation of both labyrinths, Rademaker noted that there was a complete loss of the righting reflex that the animals fell to the floor motionless like "a sack of potatoes." This is certainly an apt description for the results of observations with guinea pigs which had been exposed to 400 G in our studies.

Hüttenpohl (1936) has performed extensive observations of the righting reflex with frogs. He noted that the righting reflex is composed of four distinct components: (1) turning of the head and upper extremities, (2) turning of the torso and hind quarters, (3) splaying of the extremities in a braking action, and (4) flexing of the extremities to cushion the landing. Although quantitative observations of these four stages were not performed in the present study it was noted that animals which were partly recovered, or those which had been exposed to lower stimulus intensities were frequently able to perform the first components of the righting reflex. When the complete righting reflex was not performed, the failure was generally attributable to high latency of the initial turning or absence of the braking movement.

Changes in the time relations of the righting reflex with partially recovered animals allows an interesting speculation. As noted previously it is possible for centrifugation to completely remove the otoconia with the gelatinous layer from the macular surface. While there is no evidence for reformation of otoconia in the postexposure period, the possibility of resecretion of the gelatinous layer has not been excluded. Perhaps the hair cells of the maculae can be stimulated by movement of the gelatinous layer in absence of otoconia. If this were so, however because of the differences in the mass of the gelatinous membrane as opposed to the otoconia, it would be expected that the time constant for the system response would be considerably lengthened and the sensitivity reduced. Such timing changes in the otolithic system could well lead to changes in the latency of various components of the righting reflex.

Hüttenpohl also investigated righting ability as a function of the height of the drop. Initially we planned to obtain similar functions in the present experiment. However two factors led to abandonment of these plans. First the animals which demonstrated at least partial behavioral loss appeared to fatigue after landing repeatedly on the back or side. Therefore the number of drops each day was limited to ten. With so small a number of observations, it was not possible to obtain the distribution of righting ability as a function of height. Second, the optimal height of dropping varied with the same animal during the course of the experiment. For guinea pigs the optimal height of dropping varied with the animal's weight. For all (200-250 g) guinea pigs were used for the exposures. However during the

postexposure period the animals gained weight rapidly. This was particularly true of the long-term recovery animals. Therefore the height of dropping distribution would not be comparable for the same animals from week to week.

Extraneous variables such as "freezing" were controlled by the manner in which the animals were dropped. The experimenter held the animal at the desired height by the legs and nose. With experience it was possible to judge when the animal was in a relaxed state and to release it at that time. If the animal was dropped while it was still struggling (most animals resisted being placed in an inverted position) its ability to perform the righting reflex was reduced. Therefore it was thought that slight variations in the manner in which the animals were held were compensated by the ability to judge the animal's state at the time of the drop.

It has been stated that visual input has no influence on the righting reflex. This appeared to be true for animals that demonstrated complete behavioral loss. However for those guinea pigs which demonstrated partial behavioral loss, restoration of vision appeared to improve the ability to perform the reflex. Unfortunately quantitative investigations were not performed on this subject.

#### Comments Regarding Angular Acceleration

The maximum angular accelerations received by the guinea pigs in this study were approximately  $580 \text{ /sec}^2$  for the SFAPS exposures and  $500 \text{ /sec}^2$  in the axial rotation studies. The latter figure is only an estimate as a continuous record of the lathe turning rate was not obtained during onset and decay.

Egmond, Groen and Jongkees (1949) have suggested that a leak may occur in the cupula valve with impulse cessation of turning after exposure to angular velocities of  $180 \text{ /sec}$ . If the stopping time in their investigations were 0.5 sec, then the angular acceleration would be  $360 \text{ /sec}^2$ . On the other hand, McCabe (1964) has conducted intensity function studies which indicate that angular decelerations as large as  $720 \text{ /sec}^2$  produce no evidence of vestibular abnormality.

The weight of experimental evidence indicates that the static equilibrium reflexes are mediated by the maculae and that the semicircular canals are concerned primarily with compensatory reactions to angular acceleration (Gernadl 1959; Birukow 1959). Even if the angular accelerations applied in the present study produced damage to the semicircular canals, and McCabe's study indicates that this is not the case, the abilities to perform the righting reflex and to swim should not be affected.

#### Procedural Limitations

##### *Apparatus*

A number of procedural limitations must be considered when interpreting the results of these experiments. One of the major difficulties with

these investigations relates to limitations of the stimulating apparatus. Two types of problems were encountered with the SFAPS. First, the limitation of onset rate to 40 C/sec forced the neglect of a set of acceleration profiles which would be of considerable theoretical interest. Second, sometimes the animals' heads were displaced during exposure on the SFAPS. This means that for these animals, the direction of the acceleration vector relative to the maculae varied during the experimental run which tends to confuse attempts to relate locus of damage to direction of acceleration.

Limitation of displacement with the vibration exciter restricted the profiles to which animals could be exposed in the vibration experiment. With the vibration exciter employed in the present experiment the frequency had to be set at 6 Hz to obtain 1-G linear acceleration at the maximum displacement for the apparatus.

### *Behavioral observations*

The behavioral observations used in these experiments do not provide a fine picture of vestibular damage. Performance of the righting reflex requires only a sufficiently intact receptor to signal the direction of acceleration due to gravity when the animal is placed on his back. However, this drawback is partially offset by the ease with which the righting reflex can be quantified.

Tests of swimming ability should provide a more complete picture of the extent of vestibular damage than the righting reflex. However, it is difficult to obtain a satisfactory quantification of swimming ability. Both swimming ability and the righting reflex are subject to compensation by other senses. We have observed animals which could not perform the righting reflex consistently when blindfolded achieve ten 4-point landings in ten drops when vision was restored.

### *Anatomical observations*

Observation of damage with gross dissection is subject to artifact; no matter how carefully the dissection is performed. It is possible that the fine structures of the vestibular receptor may be disturbed. Therefore, with this technique, it is only possible to note major alterations of the receptor.

Possible histological artifacts include poor penetration of fixative, decalcification and improper staining which can influence the appearance of the maculae and cristae in both control and experimental animals. Preservation of the vestibular endorgans is frequently more difficult than that of the organ of Corti. In the same section it is more difficult to observe a well preserved cochlear sense organ with fixative present in the vestibular endorgans. A particular problem relates to the age of the cupula which greatly increases the problem of fixation in the semicircular canals. Not only do sensory and supporting cell epithelium of cristae and maculae reveal vacuolization of the cytoplasm and nucleus but the otoconial layer is less well preserved.

spheres of protoplasm are numerous in the interval between the epithelial surface and otoconia. However, when the bone is properly decalcified, the otoconia prisms retain their shape, position, and stain deep blue with hematoxylin. There is no reason to question either their presence, absence, or distribution in experimental animals when compared with nonexperimental animals prepared by the same methods for which all factors have been adequately controlled.

The incidence of otitis media was found to be relatively high, particularly in postexposure animals allowed to survive for several weeks. Unless a purulent labyrinthitis was also present, the sections were usually found to be suitable for reading. The vestibular endorgans showed a minimum of changes that could be attributed to infection.

## CONCLUSIONS

The major conclusions which may be derived from this work are as follows

1 Behavioral loss, in terms of the righting reflex and swimming ability may be produced by exposure of guinea pigs to accelerations of 50 G for periods of approximately 60 sec. Accelerations below 50 G do not produce behavioral loss. Accelerations of 100 G for 30 sec result in consistent evidence of behavioral disturbance. Exposure to 200 G over a triangular G-time history of 10-15 sec may result in behavioral loss. Acceleration exposures of more than 200 G for periods of 15-20 sec elicit consistent evidence of behavioral damage.

2. Light to moderate loss of otoconia from the maculae may be observed following exposure to 12-25 G for 185-330 sec. Moderate to severe otoconia displacement results from acceleration exposures of approximately 50 G for 1 min. Accelerations of 100 G for 30 sec and of over 100 G for 15-20 sec produce severe otoconia loss from all maculae.

3 Ability to perform the righting reflex and amount of otoconia loss are highly related, as is indicated by a product moment coefficient of correlation between these two variables of  $-0.69$ .

4 Where righting reflex loss is produced by accelerations of less than 300 G, functional recovery usually occurs from 1 to 64 days after the exposure. Exposure to 400 G for 15-20 sec generally produces irreversible loss of the righting reflex.

5 No histological evidence for reformation of the otoconia was observed up to 70 days after exposure. The hypothesis is suggested that the maculae may be functionally operative if the gelatinous layer remains intact or is replenished during the postexposure period.

6 Behavioral and histological results indicated that acceleration perpendicular to the macular surface produces greater damage than acceleration parallel to the macular surface.

7 Vibration at 1-2 G 6-8 Hz for 6 hours may produce transient behavioral disturbance. Negligible to moderate otoconia displacement results from these vibration exposures.

8 Exposure to noise at 140-154 dB SPL for 20 min does not produce disturbance of the righting reflex or swimming ability. Anatomically utricular and/or saccular membrane collapse, as well as slight disturbance of otoconia may be observed following sound exposure at this level.

9 Observations from this work support the hypothesis that "benign, paroxysmal, positional nystagmus" results from displacement of otoconia into the canal ampullae.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors would like to express their appreciation to the many people who aided the performance of this work. Messrs. Malcolm Ross and Michael Brian of the Space-Defense Corporation were very helpful in performing the experiments with the Space Flight Acceleration Profile Simulator. The authors would like to thank Dr. J. R. Mundle of the Aerospace Medical Research Laboratories for his support of these studies and for helpful discussions. Dr. Donald Eldredge of the Central Institute for the Deaf read the manuscript and made several valuable suggestions.

Support for this work came from United States Air Force Contracts Nos. AF 33 (615) 2276 and AF 33 (615) 1252 with the Washington University School of Medicine and with the Space Defense Corporation. Final preparation of this work was made while one of us (DEP) was working under Postdoctoral Fellowship MH 12,310 with the United States Public Health Service. The experiments reported herein were conducted according to the "Principles of Laboratory Animal Care" established by the National Society for Medical Research. This paper has been identified by Aerospace Medical Research Laboratories as AMRL-TR-66-170. Further reproduction is authorized to satisfy needs of the U.S. Government.

## ZUSAMMENFASSUNG

Die Versuchstiere (Meerschweinchen) wurden entweder Linearbeschleunigungen, periodischen mechanischen Schwingungen oder hohen Schalldrücken ausgesetzt um sowohl die Funktionsstörungen als auch die pathologischen Veränderungen des Otolithenapparates zu untersuchen. Hierzu wurden zuerst Funktionsänderungen der Labyrinthreflexe als Folge der verschiedenen mechanischen Beanspruchungen untersucht danach wurden Sacculus und Utriculus sowohl durch direkte Einschnittnahme nach Öffnen der Knochenwand als auch histologisch an Hand von Zelluloid Serienschnitten untersucht. Die Hauptergebnisse der Untersuchungen sind folgende:

1. Die untere Linearbeschleunigungsgrenze bei der ein Verlust des Umdrehreflexes und eine Beeinträchtigung der Schwimmfähigkeit beobachtet wurde ist ungefähr 50 G für Dauer von 60 sec. Beschleunigungen von 100 G für 30 sec resultierten in dem Abreissen eines beträchtlichen Teiles der Otolithenkristalle in allen Maculae.

2. Obwohl höhere Reizintensitäten nötig waren um nachweisbare Funktionsänderungen zu beobachten als um pathologische Zerstörungen zu erzielen ergab sich eine hohe Korrelation zwischen Störungen des Umdrehreflexes und der Otolithenschädigung.

3. Nach Belastungen bis zu 300 G für 15 sec normalisierten sich Schwimmfähigkeit und Umdrehreflex über einen Zeitraum von 1 bis 69 Tagen. Nach Belastungen über 400 G für 15 bis 20 sec ist der Verlust des Umdrehreflexes irreversibel und die Schwimmfähigkeit bleibt schwer beeinträchtigt. Der histologische Befund zeigte keine Anzeichen von Neubildung von Otolithenkristallen bis zu 69 Tagen nach der Belastung. Jedoch wird die Möglichkeit erörtert, dass sich die gallertige Schicht der auf den Sinneshaarzellen gelagerten Otolithenmembran neubildet.

4. Wenn der Beschleunigungsvektor rechtwinklig zur Macula Oberfläche einwirkt, führt er zu schwereren Schädigungen als wenn er senkrecht zur Macula Oberfläche orientiert ist.

5. Schwingungabelastungen von 1-2 G Spitzenwert und 6-8 Hertz für 6 Stunden können zu vorübergehenden Beeinträchtigungen der Verhaltensleistungen und zu geringen Verlagerungen von Otolithenkristallen führen.

6. Nach Beschallung mit Breitbandlärm von 154 Dezibel Schallpegel für 20 min liessen sich keine funktionellen Störungen nachweisen nur geringfügige Verlagerungen von Otolithenkristallen wurden beobachtet.



# REFERENCES

1. Ades, H. W. Ben x Reports: Orientation Space Office f Na l Research Project No. 144079 University f Chicago, 1953. Pp 64-72.
2. Albernaz, P. L. M. W. P. Cov II, and H. H. Eldredge, Chang f the vestibul labyrinth with intense sound. *Laryngoscope* 1959, 69 1478-1493.
3. Barany R. Diagnose Krankheitserscheinungen l Bereiche des Ot lithenapparates. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 1931 3 431-437
4. Benson, A. J. nd M. A. Bodin, Interacti of linear d angular accelerations on vestibular receptors l m n. *J ro pace Med* 1966, 37 144-164
5. Birukow G. Statistischer Sinn. In *Handbuch d r Zoologi* edited by J. H. Helmck H. v. Lengerken, nd D. St rek. Walt de Gruyter & Co. Berlin, 1939
6. B riet, H. M. d d H. de Haas, Die St llung de Macula Acustica im Meer schw Inchen schdel. *Z Anat Entw klungsgesch* 1923, 64 177-197
7. Citron, L., nd C. S. H lplk. Observ tions upon the mecha lism of positional nystagmus f the so-called "benign paroxysmal type" *J Laryng* 1956, 70 253-259
8. Col J. N. R. G. P well, H. L. Oestreicher nd H. F. on Gierke, Acoustic siren f generating wide band noise *J Acoust Soc Am* 1963, 33 173-191
9. Dickson, E. D. D. nd B. L. Chadwick, Observati d l disturbances of equilibrium ill other sympt ms induced by jet-engine noise *J Laryng* 1951 61, 184-185
10. Edmond, A. A. J. von, J. J. Green, nd L. B. W. J. ghees, Th mechanics f the semi-circular ca l *J Physiol* 1948, 110 1-17
11. Engstrdm, E., Personal comm ication.
12. Fernandez, C., Personal comm ication
13. Gernandt, B. E., Vestibul mechanisms. I *Handbook f Ph ysiology Secti n I Neurophysiology Vol m I* edited by J. Fild, H. W. M g n, nd V. E. H l America Physiological Society Washington, 1959
14. H seg wa T. Die Verändern g der Labvri thare Reflex bei ze trifugierten Meer schw Inchen *Pfl eger Arch Ges Physiol* 1931 229 203-225
15. H l L. E. Die Arbeitsweise des Stat lithenapparates bei Flachen *Z vergl Physiol* 1930, 32 60-120
16. H ltlepohl, E., Untersuchungen über den Umdrehreflex währe d des frei F lls Rückenlag bei Fröschen. *Zool Jb (Physiologi)* 1934, 68 473-503.
17. J. ghees, L. B. W. On the function f the saccul *Act Physiol Pharmacol Neol* 1930, 1 303
18. Kleya, A. de nd C. V rsteegh, Labvri threflex nach Abschleudern g der Ot lithen-membra bei Meer schw Inchen. *Pfluegers Arch, G Physiol* 1923, 232 434-463.
19. M r g la, B. T. Gualtierotti, nd D. Spinelli, Protection gal t acceleration forces f lmal by immersion l water *J Italia Med* 1938, 29 433-437
20. McCabe B., Nyst gmus response f the ot lithic organs. *Laryngoscope* 1961, 71 373-381
21. McCabe B. F. nd M. Lawrence, The effect f intense sound l the n n-auditory labvri th *Act Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 1958, 49 147-157
22. McN lly W. J. d J. T. t, Abl tion experiment on the labyrinth f the frog *Am r J Physiol* 1977 155 179

20. Parker H. E., H. E. von Gierke, and W. P. Covey, Preliminary studies of vestibular damage in guinea pigs following high acceleration. In *The Role of the Vestibular Organs in the Exploration of Space* (NASA SP 77) National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, 1965, Pp. 183-194.
21. Pinc, B. W. and N. L. Barr, Some responses of squirrel monkey to high G belt duration acceleration profiles. *Aerospace Med.*, 1963, 34: 752-757.
22. Rademaker H. G. J. *Labyrinth et eqilib*. Masson, Paris, 1933.
23. Rlapelle, A. J. and H. H. Es, and M. Lawrence, Effect of intense vibration. U.S. Army Medical Research Laboratory Report N. 338, 1938.
24. Ruedi, L., and W. Forrer, Das künstliche Trauma. *Pract. Otolaryng.* 1947 33: 262-272.
25. Seböne H., Über den Einfluss der Schwerkraft auf die Anpassung und Funktion der Wahrnehmung der Lage im Raum. *Z. vergl. Physiol.* 1962, 36: 57-87.
26. Schöae H. On the role of gravity in human spatial orientation. *Aerospace Med.* 1964, 35: 764-773.
27. Schnknecht, H. P. Positional vertigo: clinical and experimental observations. *Trans. Am. Acad. Ophthalmol. Otolaryng.* 1962, 66, 319-332.
28. Spoendlin, H. H., Personal communication.
29. Spoendlin, H. H., Organization of the sensory hairs in the gravity receptors of utricle and saccule of the squirrel monkey. *Z. Zellforsch.* 1964, 62: 701-716.
30. Spoendlin, H. H. Ultrastructural studies of the labyrinth in squirrel monkeys. In *The Role of the Vestibular Organs in the Exploration of Space* (NASA SP 77) National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Washington, 1965, Pp. 7-22.
31. Spoendlin, H. H., H. P. Schnknecht, and A. Graybiel, Ultrastructure of the otolith organs in squirrel monkeys after exposure to high levels of gravitational force. *Aerospace Med.*, 1965, 36: 497-503.
32. Versteegh, C., Ergolaise Part III: Labyrinth Excitation bei Kanarienvögeln. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 1927 9: 393.
33. Vries, H. J. D. The mechanics of the labyrinth otoliths. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 1950, 33: 263-273.
34. W. H. E. G. Perception of motion following unilateral labyrinthectomy. A relation of threshold according to orientation on the head. *J. Physiol.* 1960, 133: 330-357.
35. Werner C. P. Die Differenzierung der Macula und Labyrinthi besonders bei Säugtieren. *Z. Anat. Entwickl. gesch.*, 1933, 99: 696-709.
36. Wiltmann, R., Über die Veränderungen im Innenohr nach Rotationen. *Verh. Dtsch. Otol.* 1909 18: 150-156.





PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell's Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1968

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

**S U P P L E M E N T U M 240**

**EPIDERMAL MIGRATION IN THE EAR. THE  
LOCATION AND CHARACTERISTICS OF THE  
GENERATION CENTER REVEALED BY UTILIZING  
A RADIOACTIVE DESOXYRIBOSE NUCLEIC  
ACID PRECURSOR**

**ACTA OTO-LARYNGOLOGICA KARVAVÄGEN 16, 11523 STOCKHOLM**



EPIDERMAL MIGRATION IN THE EAR THE  
LOCATION AND CHARACTERISTICS OF THE  
GENERATION CENTER REVEALED BY UTILIZING  
A RADIOACTIVE DESOXYRIBOSE NUCLEIC  
ACID PRECURSOR

W B LITTON

*A Thesis Submitted to the American  
Laryngological, Rhinological &  
Otolaryngological Society Inc. October 1968*



TED V W D

*Almqvist & Wiksells*

BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG

UPPSALA 1968

# CONTENTS

Introduction	5
Historical Review	6
Hypotheses for the Migration Mechanism	9
Experimental Method	12
Results	21
Interpretation of Results	33
Conclusion and Summary	37
References	38

FR

*Almqvist & Wiksells*

BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG

UPPSALA 1968

## CONTENTS

Introduction	5
Historical Review	6
Hypotheses for the Migration Mechanism	9
Experimental Method	12
Results	21
Interpretation of Results	35
Conclusion and Summary	37
References	38



## INTRODUCTION

What is probably the single most important characteristic of the external ear epidermis, its proliferation and migration, is never alluded to in modern monographs or textbooks dealing with the ear. This property has been sporadically investigated for at least three quarters of a century but few clinicians have been aware of its everyday implications. This report attempts to elucidate the exact physiologic mechanisms governing epidermal migration, to relate this cytokinesis to that of other organ systems, and to point out the importance of this complex and fascinating bit of otology to the clinician. Lastly new paths of research will be envisioned. Efficient assimilation of all this knowledge may assist in medical and surgical treatment of the ear.

The most obvious manifestation of epidermal migration the movement outward over the tympanic membrane and external canal of foreign materials, has probably been noted since otoscopy began. The first references in American medical literature are found almost 100 years ago. C. J. Blake (1882) noted the migration of paper patches placed over perforations in the tympanic membrane. He noted that the observation of foreign body migration was not new but proceeded to clarify his clinical observations by experimentation. The results of his experiments which consisted of the attachment of bits of glazed paper to the tympanic membrane and periodic inspection for migration patterns, were new he felt and correspond with those of more recent times. The patches migrated from the umbo outward but seemed to prefer a swirling pattern to the superior and posterior canal wall whence they progressed to the cerumen bearing canal.

Blake's statement admitting the fact of previous wide spread knowledge of the migration of aural foreign bodies is confirmed by Duck (1880) in his textbook who mentions this epidermal property as assisting in the prevention of cerumen impactions. Later textbook authors who included this explanation of normal canal physiology include Burnett (1881) and Bezold *et al* (1908).

Blake (1909) apparently maintained his interest in this bit of physiology and in 1909 extended the clinical implications of the lack of normal epidermal mobility.

In the chronic forms of epidermal disturbance which are a common sequence of the acute attacks more commonly observed in adults, the epidermal layer seems to have lost its normal progression or to have had it so much impaired as to result in the accumulation of superimposed epidermal layers in situ the result being, in some instances, a mass of epidermis, in more or less well defined strata nearly or wholly filling the inner half of the auditory canal the keratosis obturans of Wreden.

Ink (1952) studied the blood and lymph vessel distribution in the tympanic membrane and external canal in association with the pattern of movement of ink dots placed on the tympanic membrane. He noted the radial distribution of vessels as well as the radial progression of dots outward and implied a cause and effect relationship without clarifying the coincidence.

Slinson (1936) observed ink dot migration too but it is unclear as to the exact pattern that emerged from his observations. He stated the migration was from anterior to posterior over the tympanic membrane and

canal and noted no canal to drum migration. He related his observations to the healing of membrane perforations stating that the anteroposterior migration accounted for the poorer healing of anterior central perforations.

Epidermal migration and its relationship to cholesteatoma has aroused much speculation. Magnoni (1938) repeated Blake's experiments on human foreign body migration and concluded that cholesteatoma of the middle ear could not originate from the canal because no migration was ever noted of epidermis in a canal to drum head direction. Nevertheless Simmons (1961) employed the clinical test of ink dot migration into the middle ear to detect cholesteatoma in central perforations.

More recently there has been a renaissance of interest in canal and tympanic membrane lining characteristics. This has attended the development of aural microsurgery. Tympanoplastic surgeons have developed manipulative techniques requiring this knowledge for successful completion of reconstructive efforts.

Litton (1963) illustrated the normal pattern of epithelial migration and noted its rate to be 0.03 mm per day. The success of canal skin in myringoplasty over skin from other areas was attributed not only to its lack of accessory skin structures, but to its retention of epithelial mobility resulting in self cleansing. He noted low rates of migration in persons with chronic external otitis, much as Blake did 81 years previously.

Alberti (1964) made careful clinical investigation of ink dot migration patterns and rates and has related this phenomenon to clinical practice. He noted an average rate of migration of 0.07 mm per day and also noted the umbo to be the center of migration. The importance of this property to aurists was in its accounting for the self cleansing property of the ear canal and for the success of canal skin myringoplasty. This author felt that chronic external otitis resulted not from a defect of epithelial migration but from an abnormal proliferation of epithelium in a vertical direction which overwhelmed the lateral migratory rate and resulted in desquamation. This author doubted any relationship of epidermal migration to middle ear cholesteatoma because such migration would tend to prevent, rather than cause such an epidermal cyst.

In summary the effects of epidermal migration over the tympanic membrane and external auditory canal in expelling foreign bodies from the external canal have been noted since systematic otoscopy began. The pattern and rate of migration are known: this rate is rapid (about 0.03 mm/day in the human) and the pattern in normals quite constant (outward in humans from the umbo). Clinicians have been interested in the following implications of these basic observations:

1. This property keeps the canal open and free of keratin or sebaceous or ceruminous debris. Keratin is not sloughed into the lumen of the canal but is carried outward by the lateral rather than vertical movement of this specialized epithelium.



2 Epidermal migration is essential for tympanic membrane and canal healing. The basic normal migratory properties of this special epidermis are undoubtedly altered by trauma. Nevertheless the resumption of a pre-trauma pattern by homogenous tissue is necessary for the continued health of the ear. Epidermis without migratory properties cannot be substituted in reconstructive operations.

3 Persons with chronic desquamative external otitis have been observed to have a defect in migratory rate. The end point of this failure may be keratosis obturans.

4 Some epidermal cysts of the middle ear may arise from tympanic membrane or external canal skin. An understanding of the exact mechanism of production of such cholesteatomas, especially when the drumhead is intact, awaits more knowledge of normal external ear physiology.

Since the underlying physiologic principle explaining "epidermal migration" has not been uncovered and a better understanding of its basic mechanism would be of value, an experiment was designed to elucidate it in the guinea pig tympanic membrane and external canal.

# HYPOTHESES FOR THE MIGRATION MECHANISM

A number of mechanisms might be postulated to account for the movement over these structures of substances placed on the tympanic membrane and canal

## 1 *Lymph flow hypothesis*

Link (1832) noted that the ink dots he placed on the human tympanic membrane moved outward in the same direction as the vascular channels. He therefore proposed that the movement of the lymph in some way propelled the epithellum outward. The exact mechanism involved was not explained.

## 2 *Vibration hypothesis*

Many individuals consulted by the author favored a vibratory mechanism for the expelling of foreign materials placed on the eardrum. Because the membrane vibrates with maximal amplitude near its center with decrements of movement more peripherally (Bekesy 1941) when struck by low frequency sound waves, material might be carried towards its periphery by such vibration. However this explanation does not serve for the osseous canal which is rigid and yet transfers superficially placed foreign bodies. Stinson's (1936) observations of the migration of an embedded twig and the daily contemporary observation of the rapid expelling of large plastic tubes placed *through* the tympanic membrane also tend to discredit this as the operative mechanism.

## 3 *Whole organ growth hypothesis*

Perhaps the whole organ is growing maximally at some point and in its continual renewing pushes the lining outward. All three layers would participate in such movement and an explanation is offered for some observations of whole thickness membrane perforations migrating off the drum and out the canal. This theory is made unlikely by observations recorded under Results.

## 4 *Ameboid movement hypothesis*

One could postulate active ameboid movement of superficial squamous cells over more deeply placed cells. This would conflict with behavior of skin elsewhere which migrates upward by a differential rate of growth with the basal cells reproducing at a maximal rate and pushing the cells upward. Electron anatomical studies of body skin elsewhere demonstrate

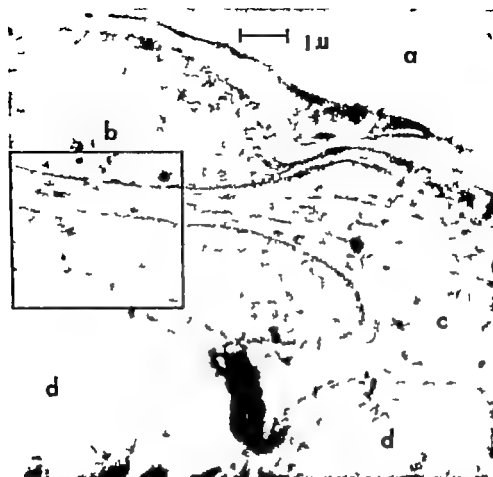


Fig 1 Thin power electron micrograph of cross section through the guinea pig tympanic membrane: a External anal; b keratinized cell of epidermal layer; basal cell epidermal layer; d cross section of connective tissue fibril of middle tympanic membrane; c The recta gul recta; the fibril magnified in the following micrograph.

myriad desmosomal interspaces (the "intercellular bridges" of light microscopy) locking the cells together and preventing lateral movement (Odland, 1958). The guinea pig tympanic membrane squamous epithelium was studied by electron microscopy and many desmosomal connections demonstrated (Figs. 1 and 2).

#### *a. Generation center-differential growth hypothesis*

Movement between the central connective tissue layer and the epidermal layer is postulated. The mechanism for such movement may be a differential rate of epidermal growth with the center of migration representing an area of most intense mitotic activity. This activity pushes the epithelial layer centripetally from the generation center. This would explain the retention of ink dots on the surface without slough into the canal lumen.

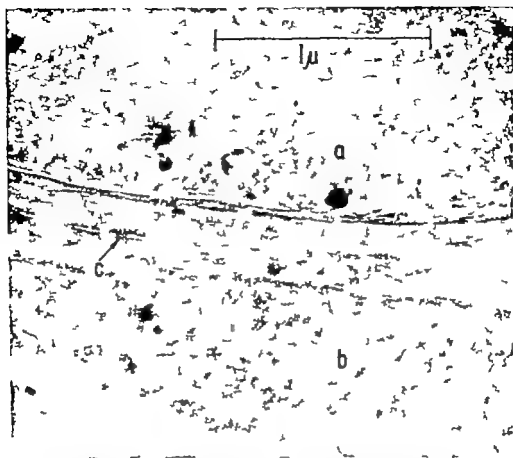


Fig 2 High power electron micrograph of epidermal layer indicated in Fig 1 guinea pig TM pidermis, reveals multitude of cell membrane plates binding cells together above the connective tissue level. a, Cornified cell; b, cell nucleus of basal layer pidermis; c, microfibrils approaching cell membrane plates ("intercellular bridges of cell")

there is only enough vertical proliferation of squamous cells to maintain an optimal epidermal thickness. This optimum thickness is slight over the tympanic membrane (see Fig 1) in order to allow maximal vibrating sensitivity. It is progressively thicker over the canal to provide protection of the underlying bone and cartilage.

## EXPERIMENTAL METHOD

India ink dots were placed at various locations over the adult guinea pig tympanic membrane and external canal. Because of the very narrow isthmus of the guinea pig's canal dots could not be placed in all peripheral locations. Nevertheless, after 44 ink dot applications to 13 guinea pigs and observations at daily intervals for periods up to 10 days the pattern of motion seen in Fig 3 was perceived. The guinea pig center of migration appeared to lie posteroinferiorly inferiorly and slightly anterior in the canal close to the tympanic membrane. Particles were propelled outward from this center. This contrasts with the human pattern of radial migration from the umbo.

Accurate measurements of particle velocity were difficult, but by comparing dot migration distance with malleus handle length an average rate of 0.67 mm for 24 hours was established over the tympanic membrane. This estimate is based on 30 measurements in 10 different guinea pigs. The range was from 0.10 mm to 0.94 mm per 24 hours. It should be noted that this rate is approximately ten times that observed in the human. Rates of migration over the canal were impossible to measure because of inaccessibility to view.

As interesting as the tracing of foreign body migration over the tympanic membrane and canal has been over the past 100 years, it indicates keratinized layer movement at the most. *If the secret of the physiology underlying these fascinating wanderings of twigs, papers, inks etc. is to be known individual cells must be labelled and followed. Furthermore some method of identifying proliferating epidermis as opposed to static or resting skin must be devised.* In 1957 Taylor et al (1957) first employed thymidine a deoxyribose nucleic acid building block which could be tagged by a radioactive isotope of hydrogen to study the generative cell cycle. This technique has provided valuable basic data about cellular reproduction in all organ systems. Cell populations have been divided into three categories (Messier et al., 1960; LeBlond et al. 1959; LeBlond et al. 1956): (1) *Static cell populations where no cell division is detected.* The cerebrum is an example. (2) *Expanding cell populations are marked by cellular division without loss of constituent cells.* The eye lens is an outstanding example (Harding et al. 1960). (3) *Renewing cell groups are continually produced and lost to the outside.* Cell division is most abundant in this category (Messier et al. 1960; Schultz et al., 1960; MacDonald et al., 1959). Examples are cells of intestinal mucosa, of the bone marrow of the testes and of the skin.



Fig. 2. This is summary of ink dot migration pattern on guinea pig drum head. If the general center-growth differential hypothesis explains these findings, the growth center must be about the margins of the tympanic membrane anteriorly, inferiorly and posteriorly.

Thymidine is a complex protein molecule which is incorporated into deoxyribose nucleic acid (DNA) and into no other cellular constituent. DNA is found only in the cell nucleus in contrast to the other nucleoprotein, ribose nucleic acid (RNA) which may be found in cytoplasm (Brown 1956, Swift 1950, Reichard *et al.* 1951). Therefore, a cell assimilating thymidine is preparing to duplicate its nucleus (Amano *et al.*, 1959, Messier 1959).

Cell generative cycles may be divided into phases (Quastler *et al.* 1959, Sherman *et al.* 1959, Baserga, 1965). Fig. 4 illustrates schematically how one may think about such a life cycle with the area of the circle corresponding to the time consumed in each phase. S phase represents the time spent in synthesis of DNA. It is here that thymidine as well as other nucleoprotein building blocks, is taken into the cell. G<sub>2</sub> is a premitotic phase, assimilated nuclear materials are being put into a condition for the M or mitotic phase. G<sub>1</sub> represents differentiation toward "adulthood" and the specific function of the tissue type.

Some cells never differentiate, but continue to function as "parents" or reproducers of the lineage. These cells may be called the generative cell fraction in contrast to the maturing cell fraction. This concept is schematized in Fig. 5. Our hypothesis concerning epidermal migration over the

### GENERATIVE CYCLE

TIME IN VARIOUS PHASES: NONE (AN EXCISE 1

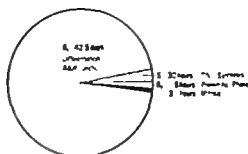


Fig 4 Times in various phases of epidemic in 19 generalists, expressed proportionally to intervals indicated for each

guinea pig tympanic membrane and external canal would concentrate a generative cell fraction deep in the ear canal or over the drum head.

Thymidine may be prepared so that it carries a tritium label (Bertalanffy, 1964). Tritium is the H3 isotope of hydrogen and is radioactive (Evans,

#### EPIDERMAL CELL POPULATION

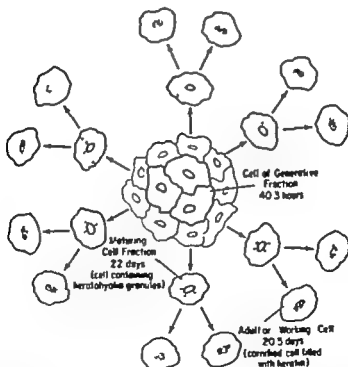


Fig 5 The scheme of the division of labor amongst cell type population must obviously be influenced by many variables. Physical disruption must allow some maternal cells to retain reproductive capacities. Neoplasia is an extreme example of alteration

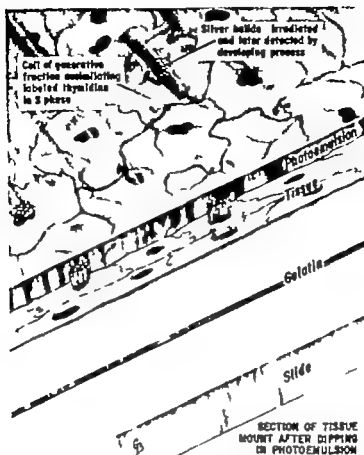


Fig 6. The silver granules are deposited on radioactive nuclei. The tissue sections have been simplified; an inner single layer of noncornifying cell is next to the gelatin and the connective tissue (middle) layer (TM) interspersed between these two epithelial layers; the tympanic membrane specimens are typically examined.

1966) Radioactivity may be divided into alpha, beta, and gamma varieties. Alpha radiation is particulate and consists of helium nuclei (2 protons, 2 neutrons). The particles velocity is slow with very low penetrance. Beta radiation consists of electrons and is the type given off by tritium. Its velocity and penetration potential is greater than alpha radiation but much less than gamma which is not particulate but is in the electromagnetic wave spectrum. Ordinary x-rays are electromagnetic waves with longer wave lengths than those of the gamma spectrum (Shilling 1960; Blahd 1965).

Tritiated thymidine, as well as other DNA precursors, will be taken into cells preparing to divide. The cells whose nuclei are later discovered to contain radioactivity (by a method to be explained) were in the S phase of the cell generative cycle at the time of tritiated thymidine administration and subsequent availability to the cell population under study. Studies



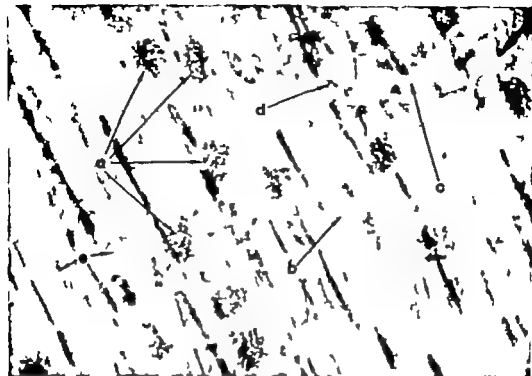


Fig 7 This is a high dry (435) photograph of guinea pig membrane specimen after completion of preparation. Labels (a) point to the flattened epidermal nuclei. Larger lighter granules are keratin. (b) Long narrow nuclei. (c) Keratin. (d) Endothelial cell wall of curving blood vessel.

have shown prompt excretion of this material in 20 to 60 minutes: a single dose is available to S phase cells for only a short time (Baserga, 1964). A pulse label of such nuclei results from intravenous, intraperitoneal or subcutaneous administration of tritiated thymidine. This label is bound tightly in the nucleus and is not washed out by any solvents. It is diluted only by division of nuclear substance during succeeding mitoses.

Beta radiation is given off for a long time (tritium half life is 12.26 years) by cells incorporating radioactive thymidine into their nucleus during the 60 minutes following its administration (Bazley *et al.* 1965). The presence of beta radiation can be detected by the changes the irradiation produces in photographic emulsion. Fig. 6 is schematic and summarizes the position of tissue, photographic emulsion and silver particles produced in the developed and fixed emulsion layer. Fig. 7 is an actual high dry light micrograph of a flattened section of guinea pig drum head showing nuclear labels. The observer is looking from above through the very transparent, lightly counterstained membrane. The epidermal layer is uppermost beneath the photoemulsion.

The method of dispersion of radioactive isotope as successive cellular divisions occur is summarized in Fig. 8. The original aliquot of radioactivity

## DILUTION OF RADIOACTIVITY OF DNA BY REPEATED DIVISION

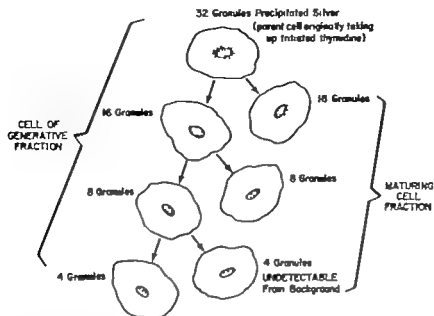


Fig. 8. Each division of cell originally taking up radioactive thymidine will result in halving of its radioactivity. Those first order "sons" not redividing will retain their labels (for example, the top two cells in maturing cell fraction).

appearing in the first generation cell (the cell in S phase at time of administration of tritiated thymidine) will be halved with each subsequent division. It is obvious that at some point the radioactivity will become undetectable from the emulsion background as the original mother cells divide and as their descendants redivide.

While detectable nuclear labels remain an idea of the place in the line of descent should be determinable by the amount of radioactivity in the nucleus compared to the cells with the maximum uptake. A quantitation of radioactivity is achieved by counting the number of precipitated silver particles above each labeled nucleus.

Guinea pigs were administered 1 microcurie of tritiated thymidine per gram of body weight subcutaneously. One half the calculated dose was deposited behind each external ear. Three animals, resulting in six tympanic membrane specimens and six canal skin specimens were enlisted in each time category except one day specimens where two animals were sufficient. The total number of guinea pigs was therefore twenty with 80 separate specimens. The animals were sacrificed at intervals of four hours, one day, two days, four days, six days, nine days, and twelve days. These times, however, were irregular and are expressed on the final diagrams in hours post injection.

The tympanic membranes and canal epithelium approximating the drum



Fig 9 Photomontage of the whole tympanic membrane mount used to precisely place nuclei label on the specimens. The actual size of the montage is 24 37 inches. The "map" effect of the branching canal pattern is clearly visible. This divides the mount into 11 "regions" each with quantifiable number of label according to number of lineage

were dissected out and placed epidermal layer upmost on gelatinized slides after fixation in neutral formalin. They were dried and then covered with photographic emulsion by the dip technique. They were incubated in the dark for two to four weeks and then developed, fixed and stained with hematoxylin and eosin. Fig 9 is a whole mounted tympanic membrane. The canal skin specimens were not counterstained so that the labelled nuclei would be better shown. Fig 10 is a whole mount of canal skin originally adjacent to tympanic membrane.

The specimens were photographed in multiple fields employing enlargements of about 100 times. The photographs were fitted together to enable study of the whole organ and taped in position on fiber board backing. Each tympanic membrane had a distinctive "map" occasioned by the capill

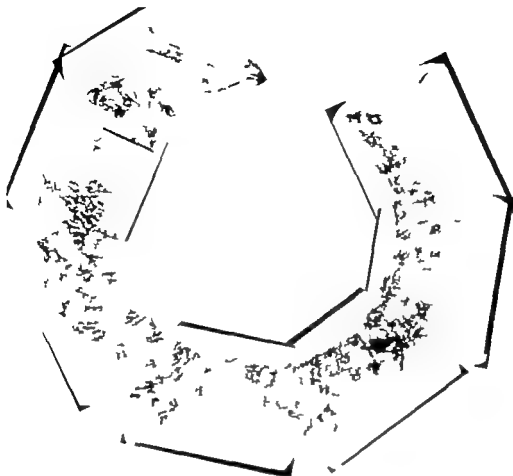


Fig. 10. The canal skin specimens included the four millimeters of epidermis and dermis closest to the TM. The upper portion could not be excised in continuity in most cases. Labels can be seen; the specimens are unstained.

lary network (Fig 9). Each "county" enclosed in a capillary boundary was scanned under high dry magnification and each labelled nucleus placed on the map on a sheet of transparent plastic placed over the assembled micrographs. Canal skin nuclear labels could be detected on the photographs of the whole mount and their positions were marked directly on the transparency.

In the specimen summaries to follow each dot represents a labelled cell. "Labelled cell" refers to a nucleus whose deposit of silver granules was definitely separable from the background. No attempt was made to quantify the number of granules per cell, as this would occasion several years of work. Nevertheless, impressions of relative position in cell lineage always agreed on check scans with the direction of migration as postulated by the ink dot movement and the deductions of position of generation center and subsequent growth patterns. This is, heavier labels occurred at the

advancing edge of migration the generative fraction of cells gradually lost their label

In summary the experimental method was as follows

1 *Pattern and rate of keratin layer movement* in the guinea pig was identified. This was done by conventional India ink dot stippling and observation of ink dot movement at intervals post application of dots

2 *Individual live cell labelling* was accomplished with a radioactive DNA precursor tritiated (hydrogen isotope) thymidine. To be precise the nucleus of cells about to divide in a very short time segment (1 hour) were labelled by incorporation of radioactive thymidine into the nucleus. Animals were sacrificed at various intervals after cell labelling to allow for these cells migration and the later deduction of migration steps

3 *Detection of labels* was carried out by autoradiographic techniques at stated intervals after the short labelling period and the position of labels noted on the whole specimens.

4 *Deduction of growth pattern* was allowed by the above maneuvers and was summarized by appropriate figures. The use of tritiated thymidine fulfilled both our demands as underlined in the statement on page 12. Individual live cells could be detected and movements traced and the generative fraction of cells could be detected. This pattern can then be compared with keratin layer movement. The generation center-growth differential hypothesis may thus be directly tested. It must be emphasized that we have chosen only a small segment of the cell population for our observations. The growth and renewing of the epidermal cell population over the tympanic membrane and external canal is a continual flowing process, never ending and probably subject to many external influences and to individual and species differences.

## RESULTS

India ink tattoos were placed in a guinea pig tympanic membrane ink was deposited on the surface as well as through the connective tissue substance. A more superficial bit of ink was seen to migrate away from the more deeply placed foreign material, which remained embedded for observation periods of one month. In the experiment to be described below very few elongate connective tissue cells were seen to take up thymidine. This indicates that multiplication of such cells is rare in the intact drum head. The same observation was made for middle ear mucosa stripped from the inside of the tympanic membrane and prepared separately with photo-emulsion.

The specimens of tympanic membrane four hours post-injection (Figs. 11, 12 and 13) show very few labels. Those seen are at the periphery antero-superiorly and posterosuperiorly. However, immediate (4 hour) canal skin specimens show heavy uptake near the tympanic annulus posteriorly anteriorly and inferiorly with few labels high in the canal. The canal skin from 11-1 o'clock could usually not be retained with the other skin and was placed separately on the slide. Therefore, many of the summarized specimens, including Fig. 14, do not include this bit of epithelium. These results are summarized in Fig. 15. Each summary figure is necessarily a conceptualization. Greater and lesser uptake densities are indicated but are never sharply demarcated in actuality. Uptake densities in the summary figures are not meant to be comparable between interval summaries. These summaries are merely intended to mate the canal and tympanic membrane and allow correlation of nuclear labels on the two specimens.

By 98 hours a heavy band of labels appears at the tympanic membrane margin inferiorly and posteriorly. There are scattered lighter labels along all margins and centrally. This indicates second and third order division probably from the original generative fraction located in the posterosuperior and anterosuperior quadrants of the four hour specimens. Canal skin specimens show labelling throughout the width of the resected specimen. Cellular proliferation is driving the epithelium outward in the canal and upward over the drum head (Fig. 17). Fig. 18 summarizes.

The 144 hours specimens are revealing. Fig. 19 being representative. Heaviest labelling over the tympanic membrane now occurs inferiorly and posteriorly. The weak labels elsewhere have been lost due to dilution of radioactivity by cellular division as explained above. The cells whose labels we can detect at this time have matured and not redivided and their progression over tympanic membrane and canal will help clarify the growth pat-



Anterior

Posterior

Fig 11 GP 101 tympanic membrane w take from guinea pig sacrificed four hours after admitt trall f trall ted th midle Each dot f thl figure nd those f fllow represe f nuclea label



Anterior

Posterior

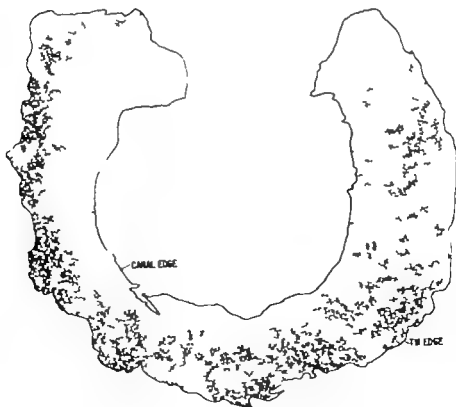
Fig 12 GP BL TM, four hours



Posterior

Fig 13. GP 5R TM, four hours

Anterior

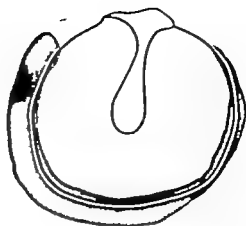


Anterior

Fig 14. GP 10R canal skin specimen, 6

Posterior  
hours.

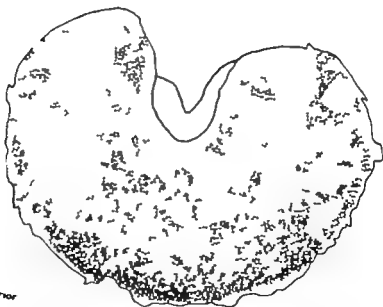




Posterior

Anterior

Fig 15. Summary of four hour specimen after reproximal match T11 in living animal. The darker stippling represents heaviest concentration of nuclei while the lighter stippled area has fewer labels.



Anterior

Posterior

Fig. 16. GP 16L TM 98 hours after injection



Fig 17 OP 16L canal skin, 98 hours.

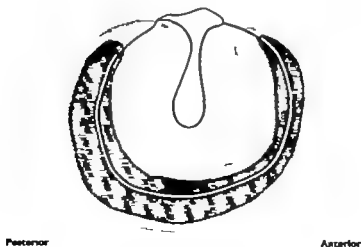
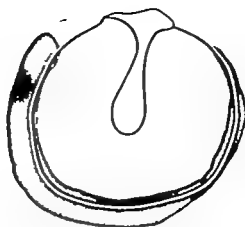


Fig. 18 Summary of label density at 98 hours. Heaviest nuclei label density is represented by darker shading



Posterior

Anterior

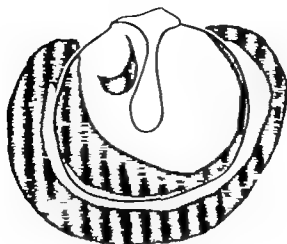
Fig. 13 Summary of four hour specimens after re-proportioning to match TM and canals in living animal. The darker stippling represents heaviest concentration of nuclear labels while the lighter stippled area has fewer labels.



Anterior

Posterior

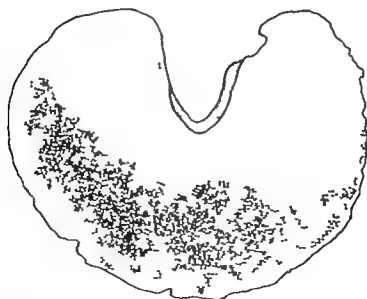
Fig. 18 GP 16L TM 98 hours after injection.



Posterior

Anterior

Fig. 21. Summary of 144 hours specimens. Darker shading represent highest thymidine uptake. The lighter areas have fewer radioactivity.



Posterior

Anterior

Fig. 22. GP 17th TM 221 hours after injection tritiated thymidine



Fig. 23. GP 18R T3L, 221 hours.

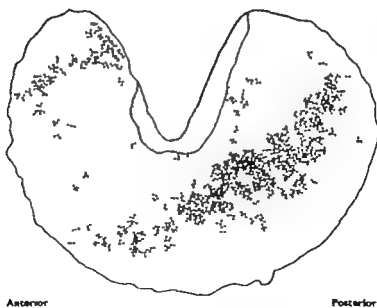


Fig. 24. GP 18L T3L, 221 hours.

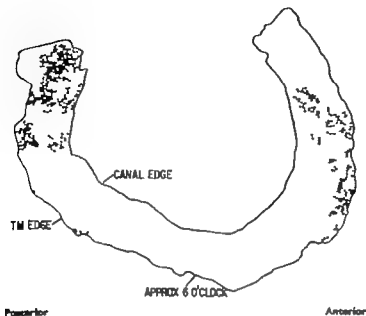


Fig. 25 OP 17L canal kin, 221 hours

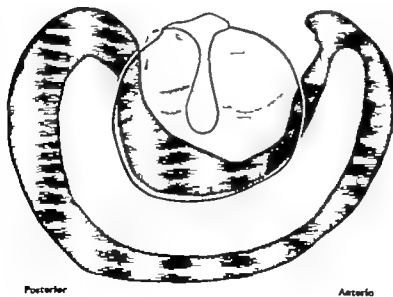


Fig. 26 Summary of 221 hour specimens. Shading is roughly proportional to belled nucleus density

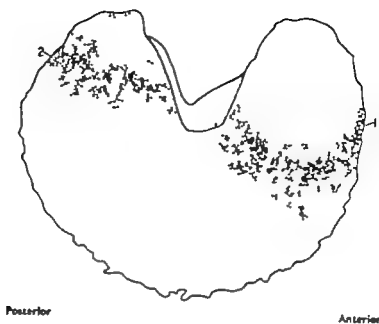


Fig. 27 GP 19H TM 238 hours.

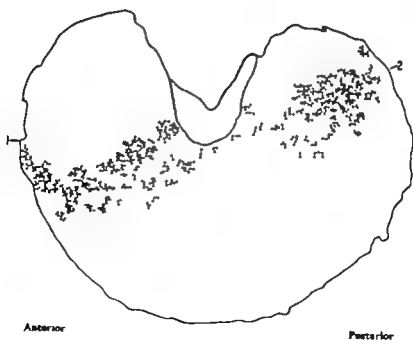


Fig. 28 GP 19L TM, 238 hours.

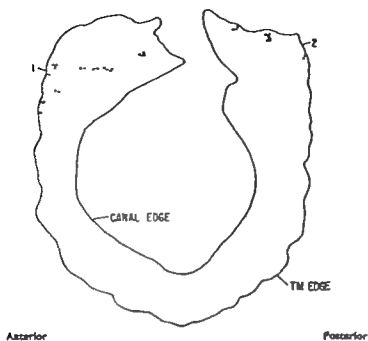


Fig 29 GP 19R canal skin, 288 hours.

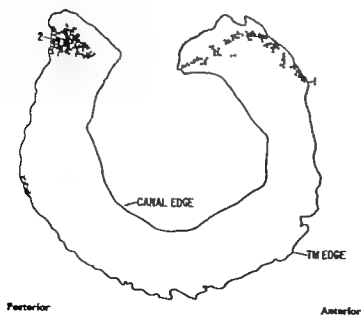


Fig 30 GP 19L canal skin, 283 hours.



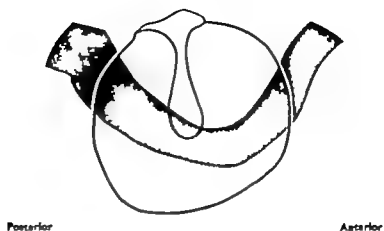


Fig 31 Summary of 238 hour specimens.



Fig. 32. GP 20R TM 316 hours

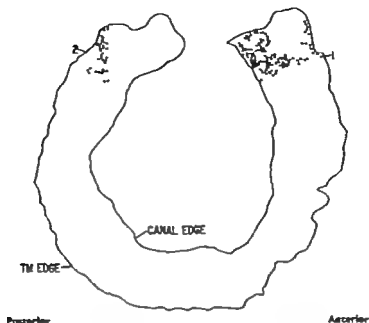


Fig 33. GP 20R canal skin, 318 hours

tern. The heavy uptake anterosuperiorly must represent an amalgamation by differential growth rate of labels originally seen in this same location in the four hour specimen. The labels anteriorly and posteriorly may be a band across the malleus labels cannot be separated from bone density here. The canal skin specimens (Fig. 20) show fairly uniform distribution of labels throughout, but become relatively more dense peripheral to the generative center (toward the canal edge). Fig 21 interprets these changes.

Figs 22, 23 and 24 are representative drum heads removed at 221 hours after injection. The band of labelled nuclei has progressed across the membrane. This band also appears in the canal skin (Fig 25). The labels

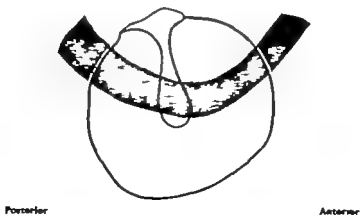


Fig. 34 Summary of 318 hour specimen

indicated as a band far out in the canal are postulated, no other pattern could be reasonably deduced.

Tympanic membrane specimens removed at 288 hours (Figs. 27 and 28) demonstrate a band of radioactive nuclei higher over the tympanic membrane and their fellows are likewise seen as a continuation of this band over the canal skin (Figs. 29 and 30). These labels have travelled about 6 millimeters in 288 hours for an average rate of 0.50 mm per 24 hours. This rate and direction of migration corresponds closely to those of the ink dots. An interpretation is seen in Fig. 31. The advancing wave far out in the canal is not shown.

Figs. 32 and 33 illustrate the fact that labels are still detectable high over the tympanic membrane and canal skin at 318 hours. Fig. 34 is the final summary.

## INTERPRETATION OF RESULTS

The experimental results support the concept that skin moves over the tympanic membrane and canal. More significantly it supports the hypothesis that a differential growth rate of skin from the generation center centripetally is the mechanism of this skin movement. The generation center or area of most intense mitotic activity takes place in canal epidermis just distal to the annulus in the guinea pig. By analogy this center in the human is at the umbo.

The mitotic activity at the generation center is intense with mitoses occurring elsewhere only in sufficient numbers to attain a suitable epidermal covering both in thickness and area. The radioactivity index, a count of the number of labelled nuclei compared to the total number of nuclei in the area, was 19% in both four day and six day specimens over the lower tympanic membrane. This placed the mitotic activity of skin in the generative area second only to that observed in duodenal epithelium. It is about 2 1/2 times greater than the activity in the basal layer of the epidermis elsewhere. The proliferation rate in this quiet unabrased area exceeds that of tongue epithelium (Odlund, 1958; LeBlond *et al.* 1956). In citing these figures we have compared guinea pigs with mice and rats.

This organ system moves the epidermis over the underlying connective tissue in a manner analogous to the specialized epidermal structure of the fingernail. It is obvious that some such mechanism must obtain in this cul de sac of skin if canal plugging by keratinaceous debris is to be avoided. The thinness and hence pliability of the tympanic membrane is thus assured. Vibratory sensitiveness is maintained. A complete canal lumen free of debris and cleaning itself of any foreign particles escaping the vigilance of cerumen gland products and meatal hair is guaranteed. A remarkable physiologic mechanism of extreme fineness takes place daily before the otologist's eye. A prosaic bit of anatomy to the daily observer takes on an unanticipated complexity and, reveals Nature's cunning matching of structure and function.

A slowing or cessation of this specialized function may be reflected in two disorders. Ink dot migration has been observed to be very slow in persons with chronic external otitis (Lifton, 1963). Blake (1909) seemed to agree as the result of observations made many years previous to the above and stated that keratosis obturans was the end point of such a disturbance with complete cessation of lateral epidermal migration and continuing vertical proliferation. Other opinion of recent times on keratosis obturans holds it to be related to bronchiectasis and reflex hyperemia of the ear canal (Mor

rison 1956) Though the author has never seen a case for testing the explanation of migration failure seems more plausible

The proliferation of epidermis over the tympanic membrane and canal is of great interest to the aural surgeon. He daily observes the results of such proliferation in the healing of wounds produced by physical force or infection. He depends on this mechanism (as it is modified by tissue reparative processes) for the repair of tissues he has rearranged particularly in myringoplasty and tympanoplasty he has relearned those canal skin properties which make it most desirable for repairing canal or tympanic membrane defects (House *et al* 1961; Wastenson 1961; Guilford *et al* 1965). Freedom from accessory skin structure cholesteatoma and retention of migratory properties are important in achieving the best results in reconstructive ear surgery. Further efforts expended on the study of the effects of variables on this rate of proliferation (e.g. age, steroid preparations applied topically, irradiation, infection etc.) might lead to even higher "take" rates in tympanoplasty grafting. An objective basis for these studies which can be carried on outside the operating room is offered in this description of normal events.

One cannot help conjecturing on the relationship of some types of cholesteatoma to abnormalities of rate, migratory direction or site of epidermal proliferation. Why do some tympanic membrane retraction pockets lead to cholesteatomas in the mesotympanum or epi-tympanum while others do not? Many otologists have commented on the possibility of an external ear or tympanic membrane origin of some cholesteatomas (Austin *et al.*, 1964; Harpman 1953; McGuckin, 1960). Though the normal epidermal migration rates and pattern would tend to prevent cholesteatoma formation, abnormalities of this mechanism, (for example previously induced by infection) could account for some of these puzzling clinical observations. Again it is hoped that this description of experimental method might be extended to the pathophysiology of otic epidermal proliferation and migration.

## CONCLUSION AND SUMMARY

Epidermal migration over the tympanic membrane and external auditory canal occurs by differential growth rates deep in the canal of the guinea pig as determined by radioisotope labelling and identification of the fate of cell sequences. This is a very rapidly proliferating tissue whose proliferation, however, is orderly and results in the maintenance of a thin pliable lining over the vibrating tympanic membrane and a full unobstructed lumen to the external auditory canal. There is every reason to expect a similar mechanism to occur in the human: the center of proliferation must be at or near the umbo in man. The migration rate in man is about one-tenth of that observed in the guinea pig.

This experiment explains events in a normal animal. Later studies should concentrate on factors influencing this mechanism such as irradiation, drugs, age, trauma, infection, etc. A relationship between this normal mechanism and the production of cholesteatoma in the middle ear or attic may exist.

# REFERENCES

- Alberti, P. W. 1964: Epithelial migration on the tympanic membrane. *J Laryng* 78: 805.
- Amano, M., Messier, B. & LeBlond, C. P. 1959: Specifically <sup>3</sup>H labelled thymidine as DNA precursor in radioautography. *J Histochem Cytochem* 7: 153.
- Altin, D. F. & Smyth, D. L., 1964: Cholesteatoma: The "vein graft" approach. *J Laryng* 78: 384.
- Baserga, R. 1963: The relationship of the cell cycle to tumor growth and control of cell division. *A review Cancer Res* 23: 551.
- 1964: Route of injection and uptake of tritiated precursors. *Arch Path (Chic)* 77: 352.
- Barly, R. J. & Evans, E. V. 1945: *Statistics and Statistics of Compounds Labelled with Radioisotopes*. Nucleon Chicago, Illinois.
- Bekesy, G. (n. 1941) Über die Messung der Schwingungsamplitude der Gehörknöchelchen mittels einer kapazitiven Sonde. *Ann d. Phys.* 6: 116.
- Bertalanffy, F. H. 1964: Tritiated thymidine versus colchicine technique in the study of cell population dynamics. *Lab Invest* 12: 871.
- Bezold, P. & Silbermann, P. 1908: *Textbook of Otolaryngology*. H. Copley Company, Chicago, Illinois.
- Bland, W. H., 1965: *Human Ear*. McGraw Hill, New York.
- Bliss, C. J. 1882: The progressive growth of the dermoid coat of the membrane of the tympanic cavity. *Amer J Otol* 4: 268.
- 1909: Superficial dermoid of the external auditory canal. *Boston Medical & Surgical Journal* 161: 152.
- Brown, H. B., 1936: Properties of biosynthetic nucleic acids. *Proc Natl Acad Sci* 22: 485.
- Hack, A. J. 1880: *Diagnosis and Treatment of Ear Diseases*, 1st ed. p. 67. William Wood & Co., New York.
- Burnett, C. H. 1884: *The Ear: Its Anatomy, Physiology and Disease*. 2nd ed. H. C. Lea Son & Co., Philadelphia, Pennsylvania.
- Evans, E. A. 1946: *Thymine and Its Compounds*. Butterworths, London.
- Gifford, F., Wright, W. K. & Hupert, B., 1965: Human tympanic plasticity with plastic thin ear skin. *Arch Otolaryng* 82: 403.
- Hardy, G. V., Hagen, W. L., Bond, V. P. & Schork, P. 1960: A radiographic localization of tritiated thymidine in whole mount preparations of the epithelium of the ear. *Arch Ophthalmol* 63: 55.
- Harpur, J. A. 1933: Some diagnostic and etiological aspects of otitis media. *J Laryng* 67: 189.
- Hause, W. F. & Sheehy, V. L., 1961: Myringoplasty. *Arch Otolaryng* 73: 407.
- LeBlond, C. P., Messier, B. & Kaplan, B., 1959: Thymidine H<sup>3</sup> as a tool for the investigation of the renewal of cell populations. *Lab Invest* 8: 296.
- LeBlond, C. P. & Wether, D. E., 1958: Renewal of cell populations. *Physiol Rev* 38: 255.
- Link, R., 1952: Über die Organisation des Trommelfells und des inneren Gehörganges. *Arch Ohren Nasen Kehlkopfheilk* 159-160: 561.
- Litt, N. W. D., 1963: Epithelial migration of the tympanic membrane and external ear. *Arch Otolaryng* 77: 234.

- MacDonald, R. A. & Mallory H. K., 1939. A radiographic study of tritiated thymidine. *Lab Invest* 3: 1547.
- McGuckin, F., 1940: Chronic otitis media. *Postgrad Med J* (Lond.) 36, 238.
- Magoni, A., 1938. Osservazioni sulla migrazione di cellule epiteliali della membrana timpanica. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 11: 734.
- Messier, B., 1939. Histologic localization of newly formed deoxyribonucleic acid by means of tritium labelled thymidine. *Canad. Cancer Conf.* 3: 23.
- Morrison, A. W., 1936: Keratosis bilaminaris. *J. Laryng.* 56: 317.
- Odlund, 1938. The fine structure of the cell and relationship of cell to the human epidermis. *J. Biophysics & Biochem. Cytol.* 1: 529.
- Questler H. & Sherman, F. B., 1939. Cell population kinetics of the intestinal epithelium of the mouse. *Exp. Cell Res.* 17: 420.
- Relehard, P. & Eastborn, B., 1951. Utilization of deoxyribosides in the synthesis of polynucleotides. *J. Biol. Chem.* 188: 829.
- Schultz, B. & Oehlert, W., 1960. Autoradiographic study of incorporation of thymidine into cells of the ear of mouse. *Science* 133, 737.
- Sherman, F. G., Wastler H. & Winkler D. H., 1961: Cell population kinetics of the epidermis of mice. *Exp. Cell Res.* 23: 114.
- Shilling, C. W., 1960. *Radiation Grafts*. & Stratton, New York.
- Simmons, F. B., 1961. Epithelial migration in cerumen type tympanic perforations. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 74: 435.
- Stinson, W. D., 1936. Regenerative processes of the membrana tympani. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 24: 600.
- Swift, H. H., 1930. The deoxyribonucleic acid content of animal nuclei. *Physiol. Zool.* 23: 169.
- Taylor, J. H., Woods, P. S. & Hughes, W. L., 1957. The organization and duplication of chromosomes as revealed by autoradiographic studies using tritiated thymidine. *Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci.*
- Wasterson, V., 1961. Myriaplasty with free graft from the external auditory canal. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.) 53, 862.







PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wikströms Boktryckeri Aktiebolag*

UPPSALA 1943

*Acta*  
OTO-LARYNGOLOGICA

S U P P L E M E N T U M 241

PERSTIMULATORY SUPRATHRESHOLD  
ADAPTATION FOR PURE TONES

*I Basic Studies on Normal Hearing Persons*

JUHANI KÄRJÄ



ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

SUPPLEMENTUM 241

---

*From the Department of Otolaryngology, University of Oulu, Finland. (Head Prof. Taimo Peltö, M.D.)*

# PERSTIMULATORY SUPRATHRESHOLD ADAPTATION FOR PURE TONES

## I

BASIC STUDIES ON NORMAL-HEARING PERSONS

JUHANI KÄRJÄ

OULU 1968



# CONTENTS

I	INTRODUCTION	5
II	REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE	7
	A. Psychoacoustic measurements of adaptation	7
	1. Adaptation recorded as shift of auditory threshold	7
	a) Poststimulatory threshold shift of short duration	7
	b) Poststimulatory threshold shift of long duration	8
	2. Adaptation measured as changes in loudness	11
	a) Poststimulatory comparison method	11
	b) Prestimulatory comparison method	12
	c) Influence of stimulus and comparison tone variables on results	15
	3. Influence of contralateral stimulation on adaptation	17
	B. Electrophysiological background of adaptation	18
III	AIMS OF THE INVESTIGATION	21
IV	APPARATUS, MATERIAL AND METHODS OF INVESTIGATION	22
	A. Apparatus	22
	B. Material and technique of testing	23
	C. Statistical treatment	26
V	RESULTS	28
	A. Normal adult group	28
	1. Prestimulatory balance	28
	2. Adaptation	30
	a) Adaptation in relation to sensation level	32
	b) Adaptation in relation to frequency	35
	c) Adaptation in relation to stimulus duration	37
	d) Changes in purity of the adapting stimulus	39
	i) Excursion widths of adaptation tracings	41
	3. Poststimulatory threshold shift	42
	B. Children and old age group	43
VI	DISCUSSION	47
VII	SUMMARY	57
VIII	ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	60
IX	REFERENCES	61



Kirjapaino Osakeyhtiö Kaleva  
Oulu 1968

# CONTENTS

I	INTRODUCTION	5
II	REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE	7
	A. Psychoacoustic measurement of adaptation	7
	1. Adaptation recorded as shift of auditory threshold	7
	a) Poststimulatory threshold shift of short duration	7
	b) Poststimulatory threshold shift of long duration	8
	2. Adaptation measured as change in loudness	11
	a) Poststimulatory comparison method	11
	b) Poststimulatory comparison method	12
	c) Influence of stimulus and comparison tone variables on results	15
	3. Influence of contralateral stimulation on adaptation	17
	B. Electrophysiological background of adaptation	18
III	AIMS OF THE INVESTIGATION	21
IV	APPARATUS, MATERIAL AND METHODS OF INVESTIGATION	22
	A. Apparatus	22
	B. Material and technique of testing	23
	C. Statistical treatment	26
V	RESULTS	28
	A. Normal adult group	28
	1. Prestimulatory balance	28
	2. Adaptation	30
	a) Adaptation in relation to sensation level	32
	b) Adaptation in relation to frequency	35
	c) Adaptation in relation to stimulus duration	37
	d) Changes in purity of the adapting stimulus	39
	e) Excursion widths of adaptation tracings	41
	3. Poststimulatory threshold shift	42
	B. Children and old age group	43
VI	DISCUSSION	47
VII	SUMMARY	57
VIII	ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	60
IX	REFERENCES	81



## I INTRODUCTION

Decreased response to sustained stimuli is a common feature of all receptors of the sensory system. It can be objectively demonstrated, for instance by electrophysiological methods, as a decline in the rate of discharged impulses per time unit. The phenomenon is known as adaptation and, according to Ranke's theory its essential object is the production of a purposeful balance between stimulus and response to stimulation (Ranke 1955 Keidel 1961). Adaptation however is not merely a peripheral event, it seems to occur in the central nervous system too (Keidel 1958 Keidel et al. 1960).

Adaptation in the human ear is easily demonstrable as a shift in threshold of hearing, or as a decline in loudness of suprathreshold stimuli or it may appear in the form of changes in sound quality, sound localization and in masked pure tone threshold. In animal experiments the phenomenon shows itself as a diminution in the auditory nerve action potentials and a reduction of the number of action potentials of individual nerve elements.

The concept auditory adaptation was suggested by de Maré in 1939. Up to the last few years, however the terminology has varied. All the following terms have been used interchangeably: auditory fatigue and its German equivalent *Ermüdung* (Békésy 1929 Schubert 1944 Hood 1950), physiological fatigue (Hood 1950) and in electrophysiological studies, equilibration (Derbyshire and Davis 1935).

Even though adaptation and fatigue may occur parallelly they should be clearly separated from each other. Auditory fatigue follows intensive stimulation in the normal ear: the maximum change taking place one half to one octave above the pure tone stimulus. The degree of fatigue increases continuously with the duration and the intensity of stimulation, or a balance is not reached until at abnormal sound intensities. Recovery is slow: it is related to the degree of fatigue and, if the stimulus is strong enough, an irreversible change may result. Pure adaptation quickly attains a definite level in relation to the stimulus and there is no further increase: the greatest change takes place at the stimulus frequency. Recovery is rapid and does not depend appreciably upon the amount of adaptation (Zwislocki and Pirodda 1952, Kietz 1960, Zwislocki 1960 Hood 1960, Dishoeck 1954 1960).

The methods used for measuring human auditory adaptation are based mainly on changes in three psychophysical entities, i.e. on pre- and poststimulatory threshold shift, the decrease in loudness of suprathreshold stimulus, and decline of masked pure tone threshold as measured by an intermittent masking tone. Of these, prestimulatory threshold adaptation is the best known (Schubert 1944 Hood 1954 Palva 1956 a, b 1957 1961 Carhart 1957 Jerger et

al 1958 Jerger 1960 1962, Sorensen 1960 Palva and Palva 1961 1963) and it has also proved a practical test in the diagnosis of perceptive hearing impairments (Reger and Kos 1952 Johnson 1956 Sorensen 1962 a, Palva and Palva 1966 Palva et al 1967)

As regards perstimulatory suprathreshold adaptation in which the number of inner ear and auditory tract units involved in the hearing process is greater than at threshold level highly variable results have been recorded. The other unadapted ear of the test subject has often been used as a reference without paying sufficient attention to the functional change caused by the comparison tone in the control ear (Wright 1960 Palva 1964). This source of error can be eliminated by using a suitable interrupted comparison tone, consisting of short impulses eliciting a response corresponding to normal even in the adapted ear (Hood 1950 1955 a, b). Because of this the adaptation of the control ear due to cross hearing of a strong stimulus becomes insignificant from the point of view of measurement, and on this basis the test can be applied reliably not only to the study of normal ears at high intensities but also to cases of unilateral hearing loss. The present study is limited to testing normal subjects by this method and to analysis of the various factors playing a part in the results.

## II REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

### A. PSYCHOACOUSTIC MEASUREMENT OF ADAPTATION

#### 1 ADAPTATION RECORDED AS A SHIFT OF AUDITORY THRESHOLD

The relationship between adaptation and auditory threshold can be studied either as a perstimulatory change by recording, as a function of time, the stimulus intensity required for obtaining the threshold, or it can be studied as the behaviour of threshold after stimulation. This latter method has been used to measure both the recovery after the slow phase of adaptation and, using a short stimulus, the rapid component of adaptation referred to in the literature variously as instantaneous adaptation (Lüscher and Zwislocki 1949) residual masking (Munson and Gardner 1950) short duration auditory fatigue or adaptation (Harris et al 1951 Harris and Rawnsley 1953 a) initial auditory adaptation (Langenbeck 1960), forward masking (Raab 1961 Pollack 1964) or short-term temporal threshold shift (Ward 1963)

#### 1 POSTSTIMULATORY THRESHOLD SHIFT OF SHORT DURATION

De Maré (1937), using a 0.4 sec. pure tone impulse, determined the threshold shift following a stimulus of equal duration, and somewhat later in his monograph (1939) using stimulation for 3.1 sec. at an SL (sensation level) of 44–88 dB. The loss in threshold sensitivity occurred in a few tenths of a second and recovery was equally rapid. With increased duration and intensity of stimulation the threshold shift also increased but was followed by a decrease as the difference between stimulus and test frequencies became greater. Later de Maré (1951) stated that the frequency distribution of the threshold loss is symmetrical around the stimulus frequency.

Lüscher and Zwislocki (1946 1947 1949) found that recovery became complete within 250 msec. from a threshold shift of 40–50 dB produced by a 0.4 sec. 3000 Hz stimulus at 80 dB SL and measured by 20–50 msec. test tones. At the same sensation level, the degree of threshold shift was independent of frequency. The amount of adaptation around the stimulus frequency corresponded in shape to the masking distribution, the main emphasis being on frequencies higher than the stimulus tone.

Harris et al (1951), Rawnsley and Harris (1952) and Harris and Rawnsley (1953 a, b) obtained similar results with the same testing values. An exception, however, was the frequency distribution of adaptation, which, as reported also by de Maré (1951), was symmetrical at sensation levels below 90 dB, extending to the higher frequencies with more intense stimulation — in agreement with Munson and Gardner's studies. In Zwislocki and Pirodda's report (1952) too, the maximum shift, with a 0.4 sec. 3150 Hz stimulus and

measured after 150 msec. interval with a 30 msec test tone, occurred at the same frequency at an SPL (sound pressure level) below 80 dB for 100 dB SPL stimuli; however the maximum was half an octave higher. This was considered by the authors a sign of incipient acoustic trauma or fatigue, similarly as by Munson and Gardner and Harris and Rawnsley (1953 a, b). Variations in stimulus duration (Zwislocki et al 1959) from 5 to 1000 msec. at 15–85 dB SL affected the amount of adaptation only slightly and recovery occurred in 150 msec., within which time the result was unaffected by the duration of the test tone.

Sorensen (1962 b) used a 1000 msec. pure tone stimulus and measured the threshold after 50 msec. with a 30 msec. impulse having a frequency half an octave higher than the stimulus. Adaptation was found for stimuli exceeding 50–55 dB SL, with increasing age at lower intensities; at intensities 20 dB above incipient adaptation the threshold loss was 12–14 dB in all age groups.

#### 3. POSTSTIMULATORY THRESHOLD SHIFT OF LONG DURATION

The amount of threshold shift following stimuli shorter than 1000 msec. was found to correlate only with stimulus intensity and recovery was also very monotonous up to the fatigue limit, irrespective of intensity and duration of stimuli. A long term threshold shift, however, depends not only on the frequency of the stimulus but also on its duration and intensity and there is a wide range of individual variations (Rawdon Smith 1935, 1936; Ewing and Littler 1935) although in one and the same subject the change is very stable on repeated testing (Riach et al 1964). Ewing and Littler found the fatigue threshold to be high for 2 min stimuli from 55 to 105 dB SL according to the frequency (128–8192 Hz) used. Rawdon Smith also failed to obtain a change with 1–2 min stimuli below 80 dB SL at any one of the frequencies tested (400–4000 Hz). The discrepancy compared with later studies is explained by the slow threshold measurement technique; in addition Ewing and Littler only regarded a shift of over 10 dB as significant.

Causse and Chavasse (1942) on their part demonstrated a 3–4 dB decline immediately after a 30 dB SL pure tone stimulus of 40 sec. duration, the frequency ranging from 800 to 10,000 Hz, but this decline did not occur below 600 Hz. The frequency distribution of the threshold was symmetrical with the stimulating frequency. In Hood's (1950) studies, a 2048 Hz tone of 1 min duration at 50–90 dB SL caused a 8–10 dB threshold drop when measured with a continuous tone 10 sec. after cessation of stimulus, whereas this drop at 110 dB SL was already 60 dB. The threshold shift produced at sensation levels above 80 dB with a 1000 Hz tone began to spread towards the higher frequencies and at 110 dB SL the maximum shift occurred at 1400 Hz. Hood referred to the threshold shift as poststimulatory fatigue and emphasized the difference between physiological and pathological fatigue after a given critical intensity limit, where the threshold shift began to increase rapidly extending towards the high frequencies while, at the same time, recovery

slowed down. At 2048 Hz the critical limit for a 1 min. stimulus was 95 dB SL. Jerger (1956, 1958) found the corresponding value for a 3000 Hz stimulus of 1 min. duration to be 95 dB SPL, the threshold being measured at 4000 Hz. The figure reported by Epstein and Schubert (1957) for 4000 Hz (3 min. exposure) was 80 dB SL, as appraised by the shift in the threshold and its maximum. R  di (1954) using white noise, found the corresponding limit to be 80–95 dB SL.

Davis et al. (1946, 1950) used intensive pure tone stimulation at 110–130 dB SPL, the stimuli varying in duration from 1 to 64 minutes; the maximum shift then always occurred half an octave above the stimulation frequency. The most effective stimulus tone turned out to be 4000 Hz; recovery, too, was always slowest at 4000 Hz irrespective of the stimulating frequency. Average hearing loss as determined between one and one-half and nine minutes following the end of exposure over two-octave range from the stimulating frequency upward at an SPL of 130 dB was 65 dB for a 12 min. 4000 Hz stimulus, and correspondingly for 2000 and 1000 Hz stimuli 40 dB, and for 500 Hz 20 dB. For a 60–65 dB threshold shift, an exposure of 32 min. was required at 2000 and 1000 Hz and 64 min. at 500 Hz. The above writers also called attention to changes during recovery in the quality of the test tone. No change occurred at the stimulus frequency; at the frequency corresponding to the maximum threshold loss the pitch always sounded higher and a number of frequencies sounded the same.

Hood (1950) found that stimulus duration had no such critical limit as was the case with intensity: the threshold shift increased linearly as a logarithm of time at 100 dB SL using 2048 Hz tones of 1–320 sec. duration. The same conclusion was reached by Glorig et al. (1958 a, b, c) with white noise at 100 dB SPL and by Ward et al. (1959) in noise bands of one octave at 80–100 dB sound pressure levels, the duration of stimuli varying from 1 to 100 min. (measured at 4000 Hz).

Recovery of the threshold shift is most rapid during the first few seconds after cessation of the stimulus and then continues at a slower rate (Hood 1950). For a 2048 Hz stimulus at sensation levels below 90 dB, recovery was complete in 1–2 min., but above 110 dB not even in 5 min. According to Epstein and Schubert the threshold shift produced for 4000 Hz by a 3 min. sustained stimulus at sensation levels from 70 to 100 dB, when measured at the same frequency with a B  k  sy audiometer continuous tone, was still about 10 dB in all cases 1 min. after cessation of stimulation. Palva (1958) corresponding results with the same technique after 20 dB SL stimuli were about 2 dB at 250 and 500 Hz, 6 dB at 1000 Hz, and 8–10 dB at 2000–6000 Hz. Using lower intensities (10–60 dB SL) and 1000, 2000 and 4000 Hz tones, Bell and Fairbanks (1963) found a threshold shift of only 2 dB when starting threshold determination with a continuous test tone, a 60 sec. interval being allowed after the 1 min. stimulus. Ward (1960, 1963) stated that recovery from intensive noise stimulation occurred linearly as a logarithm of time after a 2 min. interval, when the rapid phase of recovery was over.



It should be stressed in this context that when measuring threshold with a continuous tone the result is modified by the adaptation caused by the test tone itself recovery is slower and the results higher than with an interrupted tone (Harris 1954 Kopra 1955 Bell and Fairbanks 1963 Bradford and Goetzing 1964)

Hirsh and Ward (1951 1952) observed that recovery during the first two minutes consisted of two phases, when measured with short pure tone and noise impulses and using acoustic clicks after a 3 min pure tone and noise stimulation at an SPL of 100–120 dB The minimum in the curve occurred at 1 min and the second maximum or bounce 2 min after stimulation Hirsh and Bilger (1955) assumed that two independent components, R 1 and R 2 were involved while R 1 is complete in about 1 min and facilitatory in nature, R 2 occurs more slowly and regularly at a given rate and is related to the amount of threshold shift. In certain combinations there could be a transient sensitization of threshold as demonstrated by some investigators (Hughes 1954 Hughes and Rosenblith 1957 Rodda 1965) Hinchliffe (1957) expressed the view that the transition of a monotonous recovery curve into a polyphasic one is due not to adaptation alone but to the added fatigue effect too Rodda (1962 1965) also found these phenomena to be closely related to the transition periods and transition stimuli Without exception the observations made by other workers on the polyphasic recovery curve are all associated with intensive stimuli (Hirsh and Ward 1952 Hirsh and Bilger 1955 Jerger 1956)

Thus, poststimulatory threshold shift is affected primarily by the stimulating intensity and, above a given level, by additional changes to be considered fatigue phenomena, whereas below that level the change has been interpreted as associated with adaptation (Selters 1964) Selters first produced fatigue in one ear of the subject with loud noise, between 1700 and 2500 Hz, for periods of 4 min., followed by 1 min. rests until the sensitivity at 3000 Hz had been reduced by 35 dB After 50 min., when noise-produced threshold shift averaged 16 dB and ranged individually from 6 to 30 dB, he measured the additional change in the same ear at 3000 Hz for a 10 sec. stimulus using a 0.2 sec. test tone after an interval of 0.8 sec. and repeating the stimulus test tone in 11.5 sec. periods. The level of stimulation was 5 15 30 and 45 dB above TTS 50 min (temporary threshold shift 50 min. after primary stimulation) and 70 80, 90 and 100 dB above prestimulatory threshold The former threshold shift of long duration he attributed to the fatigue phenomenon, the latter solely to adaptation He compared the results with those obtained for 5–100 dB SL on the other ear The changes were directly additive, in other words fatigue in practice in regard to adaptation meant only a shift in stimulation level From this he concluded that the adaptation process is more centrally localized than the fatigue phenomenon Ward (1966) concurred in the opinion of Selters and, using the term intermediate TTS he stated that this (Selters's adaptation) possibly has the same localization as prestimulatory adaptation (Ward prestimulatory fatigue)

## 2. ADAPTATION MEASURED AS A CHANGE IN LOUDNESS

Determination of adaptation as a decline in loudness is based on measurement of the functional change in the stimulated ear by means of the other unadapted ear. In this respect the method differs in principle from those described above and is physiologically more complicated owing to the involvement of interaural factors. This method offers another possibility of studying adaptation above threshold, in addition to the masking method (Thwing 1956, Feldmann 1958 a, b, c, 1960 a, b 1962) which is associated with sources of error due to the long lasting measuring tone.

On the basis of the characteristics of the control tone it is possible to classify a number of methods, all having three phases as a common feature. The first consists of prestimulatory or initial balance: during this phase the test subject adjusts the loudness of the tone presented to the control ear equal to the signal heard in the ear being tested, thus giving a plane from which the amount of adaptation can be calculated. During the adaptation phase proper an adapting stimulus is applied on the ear under test, and balances with the control ear are again made at fixed intervals. Recovery represents the third phase: measurements are made at given intervals after the cessation of the adapting stimulus along the same principles as during the first phase.

## a) POSTSTIMULATORY COMPARISON METHOD

As early as 1927 Pattie carried out tests measuring, after the initial balance with alternating pure tone impulses, adaptation after cessation of the stimulus by a comparison tone presented immediately to the other ear. The intensity of the stimulus was 75–100 dB SPL and its duration 1–2 min. The balances were obtained with 1 sec. impulses. The results expressed as a percentage (the prestimulatory balanced comparison tone, when presented poststimulatorily to the other ear was then louder than the latter part of the stimulus) could be correlated with both duration and intensity of the stimulus and also be measured at frequencies other than that of the stimulus. Some of the test subjects made the balance in the prestimulatory phase, when fatigue — the term used by Pattie — was most distinct. Later (1929) he showed that the change was peripheral: if one and the same tone was presented in different phases to each ear separately the tone localized to the ear with leading phase. However there was no difference in adaptation between the ears, and if the tone was delivered only to one ear adaptation occurred on that side only.

The same technique was used later by von Békésy (1929), Wood (1930), de Maré (1937, 1939, 1948) and in part of their studies, by Hood (1950), Egan and Thwing (1955), Kietz (1957) and Cioce (1960). Von Békésy used comparison stimuli of 0.2 sec. duration arriving at the same conclusions as Pattie as regards stimulus intensity and duration. He also found adaptation to be rapid and to vary widely from one individual to another. Tests for the frequencies from

300 up to 8000 Hz yielded results which differed but little. Von Békésy noted further that following a pure tone stimulus, the tones lower than that stimulus appeared lower and the higher tones correspondingly higher than the comparison tone of equal frequency — an observation which he attributed to changes on the basilar membrane. Owing to reduced sensibility of the nerve-endings in the stimulated area, he assumed these to respond more poorly to subsequent stimulation than did the more distant areas.

De Maré (1939) studied the change in loudness caused by a short stimulus, 2.7 sec. A pair of test tones, both of 0.4 sec. duration differing from the stimulus in frequency were then presented without interval one to the test ear and the other to the control ear. The purpose of the change in frequency was to compensate the change in pitch due to adaptation and so to facilitate comparison. With a stimulus of 512 Hz and a comparison tone of 482 Hz, the measured loss was 30 dB at the sensation level of 88 dB and for 2048 Hz stimulus, measured at 1098 Hz, the loss was 37 dB.

If an interval of 0.2 sec. was allowed between the stimulus and the pair of test tones, adaptation decreased rapidly by about 20 dB. Thereafter the decline was slower: at an interval of 0.7 sec. the values were 6 dB (512 Hz) and 13 dB (2048 Hz). The corresponding observation was made by Hood (1950) who used alternate 0.3 sec. tones at intervals of 0.6 sec. (alternated binaural balance) at sensation levels ranging from 80 to 100 dB. In his later investigation (1955 a, b) with alternate 0.2 sec. stimuli adaptation could not be demonstrated although it was measurable even subsequently with longer (15 sec.) simultaneous tones. Hood offered the explanation that an adapted end-organ delivered a full on-effect viz. a normal initial potential. Egan and Thwing, using 0.5 sec. alternate 1000 Hz stimuli at an SPL of 80 dB confirmed this observation.

#### ■ PERISTIMULATORY COMPARISON METHOD

If the same pure tone or noise is delivered simultaneously in phase to each ear of the test subject, he hears the combined phantom sound which is localized to one or the other ear or is within the head. The localization of low frequency pure tones is influenced by both intensity and phase difference, that of high frequency tones by the former only. According to Mills (1960) a divergence from the midline was caused at 1000 Hz and 50 dB SL, by a 1 dB difference in intensity, the difference being slightly smaller at low frequencies but smallest (0.5 dB) at high frequencies.

Zwislocki and Feldman (1956) studied the effect of phase difference and found sensitivity to be about 2° for the low frequencies at medium intensity levels; above 1300 Hz the effect of phase was no longer measurable.

In the case of white noise Egan and Thwing (1955) found that, when the noise in the two ears was in phase or 180° out of phase, loudness balance was made by localization of a phantom sound. If phase relations were random

the balance represented comparison of the loudness of two separate tones. This was also the case if the components differed sufficiently in frequency the test subject then heard two separate tones (Egan 1955 a). Egan measured adaptation by the above two methods at 800 and 2000 Hz and there were no appreciable differences in results. Using one or the other of these methods, the following test modifications have been classified on the basis of the control tone variables (Wright 1960, Small 1963).

In the *tracking intensity method* the intensity of the control tone is varied continuously and the test subject adjusts it to the loudness required for balance. This technique with two audiometers was first applied by Dix and his co-workers (1949) and later by Hood (1950), whose study is actually the first extensive investigation of perstimulatory adaptation at suprathreshold levels. Hood measured adaptation at three frequencies, 500 1000 and 2000 Hz, and at sensation levels ranging from 20 to 100 dB the comparison tone was usually sustained for 10 sec. and measurements of adaptation (fatigue) were made at 20 sec. intervals. The decline in loudness was gradual and reached a maximum in 3 min. at less than 80 dB level. At 1000 Hz and 80 dB SL adaptation was 35 dB. It grew with an increase in intensity and frequency. An interesting observation concerning the physiological background of this phenomenon was that adaptation for a given group of receptors was always the same, regardless of the stimulating intensity i.e. when the adaptation caused by a 1000 Hz stimulus at sensation levels of 20 40 60, 80 and 100 dB was measured in each case at 20 dB SL, it was invariably the same, 5-10 dB. Hood measured recovery starting continuous balancing at varying intervals after cessation of the stimulus.

Kunze's (1950) technique was similar apart from the fact that he performed the balance in a very brief (*kurzfristig*) period at intervals of 5 or 10 sec. on the basis of the localization of phantom sound. At the sensation level of 60 dB, adaptation in the frequency range 125-4000 Hz was always about 20 dB under 2 min. stimulation in which time the maximum could be reached.

Palva (1955) studied the sensation levels of 60 and 80 dB at 500-4000 Hz using the same method on normal subjects and on patients with various groups of hearing impairment. The same technique was used by Small and Minifie (1961) in studying the effect of the on and off time of the control tone on the amount of measured adaptation, and by Sergeant and Harris (1963) who investigated the relations between the tests for adaptation. Tsukis (1965) modification was similar in principle but differed from the preceding in one point: the control tone was interrupted (repetition period 2500 msec. — no other values are given) and was sustained for the entire duration of adaptation period. Harbert et al (1966) have used the same technique with on-time of 350 msec. and off time of 650 msec. They obtained 13 dB adaptation at 80 dB SPL for 800 Hz stimulus.

Hood's technique modified was used by Pestalozza (1953) Manzini et al (1956) Mantegazzini et al. (1956) Bosatra (1957) Cioce and Pestalozza (1958 1960) Bocca and Pestalozza (1959) Pestalozza and Croce (1962) and Cioce

and Spelta (1963) In Pestalozza's modification the stimuli in prestimulatory ( initial ) balance were frequently interrupted to avoid adaptation and the adaptation ( final balance ) was measured with a 5-10 sec comparison tone. Normal adaptation was defined as a 30 % loudness level decline in 3 min. at 50 dB SL in the frequency range 1000-4000 Hz.

The *method of fixed intensity* differs from the above only as regards the way in which the control tone is varied, the adapting stimulus being maintained in both at constant intensity level In this method only one balance is performed during each presentation of the comparison tone. Egan (1955 a b) Egan and Thwing (1955), Thwing (1955) and Jerger (1957) used this technique varying the intensity of the continuous comparison tone in 2 dB steps the duration of a balance was usually 15 sec. at intervals of 45 sec and the balance was always started below the final loudness level The balance was made on the basis of both median plane localization of the phantom sound and equality of loudness of the components. The resulting figures were lower than Hood's (1950) and the maximum adaptation did not occur until at 6-8 min Thwing (1955) also studied the frequency distribution of adaptation at 1000 Hz using a stimulus of 80 dB SPL, reporting it to be almost symmetrical (range 100-2500 Hz) with the stimulating frequency Jerger (1957) called attention to the amount of individual variation in adaptation, obtaining for a 1000 Hz stimulus at an SPL of 70 dB a range of 5-45 dB Wright's (1959) results with the same technique agree well with those of the preceding investigators. In white noise of 60 dB SPL, adaptation measured for a 4000 Hz pure tone at 90 dB SPL was 5-10 dB greater than in the absence of noise.

Wituch (1966) measured adaptation on the basis of median plane localization varying a 190 msec comparison tone in 1 dB or 5 dB steps, the stimulus-control tone combination being repeated after a pause which permits full recovery Using this modification adaptation reached a maximum, at 33-73 dB SPL and 2000 Hz, in 16 seconds and then remained unchanged for the longest stimulus tested, i.e. 5 min. At an SPL of 73 dB adaptation was 24 dB

The *method of varied intensity* was developed by Egan (1955 a) He started from the assumption that balance could be influenced by the formation of a subjective loudness standard to eliminate this, he either reduced or increased the stimulus intensity for the duration of balance Thus measured, the adaptation values were greater than when using the method of fixed intensity

For 800 Hz tones at 80 dB SPL the maximum adaptation values reached with the respective methods were 27 dB and 17 dB Egan and Thwing employed the same modification in prestimulatory balancing, and so did Carterette (1956) in his studies dealing with adaptation for noise.

In the *method of moving phantom* the criterion for adaptation is the time required for the phantom sound to move from the control ear to the median plane, the other stimulated ear being fully adapted (Wright 1960 1963) Wright's results indicate that, on stimulation of one ear for 7 min. at 80 dB SPL with a 4000 Hz tone, 25-50 sec. were required for an identical comparison stimulus to reach the same adaptation level, but only 0-10 sec. when using a comparison

tone at an SPL of 40 dB. Conversely this means that the adaptation caused by primary stimulation is about 40 dB.

#### 1. INFLUENCE OF STIMULUS AND COMPARISON TONE VARIABLES ON RESULTS

The adaptation obtained by various experimenters seems to differ widely even when using the same balancing time, mostly a 15 sec. sustained tone. Thus, for instance, as pointed out by Wright (1960) and Small (1963) Hood (1950) varying the intensity level of the comparison tone rapidly reported a considerably greater adaptation than Palva (1955) who used a rate of 2.3 dB/sec. Hood's figures for a 3 min. sustained 1000 Hz stimulus at 80 dB SL were 30–35 dB, Palva's corresponding figures were generally below 10 dB for stimuli between 500 and 4000 Hz. The figures given by Small and Mimfie (1961) using an attenuation rate of 5 dB/sec., are intermediate between Hood's and Palva's adaptation after 6 min. stimulation at 4000 Hz and 75 dB SL was 20–25 dB when using the time variables corresponding to the control tone of the latter two. The result is of the same order as those obtained by Egan (1955 a) Egan and Thwing (1955) Thwing (1955), Jerger (1957) and Wright (1959) with the fixed intensity technique, the attenuation occurring in 2 dB steps and the rate being adjusted by the test subject.

It is obvious, because of the quick development of adaptation, that even a 15 sec. control tone must change in loudness during its presentation. If one uses a slow rate for intensity change of the control tone, its average level stays higher than when the change is rapid, the balancing being started in each case at the same prestimulatory level. This also implies that, in the former case the adaptation to the control tone is greater and the source of error therefore more marked, which accounts in part for the differences among the results.

Small and Mimfie studied adaptation in the comparison ear by varying the duration of the control tone and the tone interval, in 10–50 sec. limits, using a 4000 Hz stimulus at a sensation level of 75 dB. If the interval exceeded 30 sec., the result was not affected by varying the control tones from 10 to 30 sec.: maximum adaptation, 20–25 dB occurred at 5–6 min. If the interval was shorter less adaptation was measured — thus indicating a cumulative adaptation in the control ear.

A special study of the errors arising with a 15 sec. continuous comparison tone was undertaken by Wright (1960). He started balancing, based on localization of the phantom sound, either 15 dB above or 15 dB below the intensity of the stimulus (250 1000 and 4000 Hz pure tones). The results over a 15 sec. run differed slightly from one another which indicated different adaptation in the control ear depending on the condition of test. Secondly he stated that there is rapid adaptation when measured by the moving phantom method. Thirdly he showed, using 1 sec. control tones, that adaptation reached 50 dB in 7 minutes for a 500 Hz 90 dB SPL stimulus, whereas Egan's (1955 a) and Jerger's (1957) corresponding value was as low as 20 dB with a 15 sec.

continuous balance. Kunze (1950) used a very short balancing time and obtained 40 dB adaptation for a 500 Hz pure tone at a sensation level of 80 dB. Tanner's (1955) results with 2-4 sec. comparison tones were lower corresponding to those of Hood (1950).

Croce (1960) compared the technique of Hood with Wood's (1930) poststimulatory balance carried out with a 5 sec. test tone for a 3 min. 50 dB SL stimulus he obtained about 7 dB more adaptation at 1000 and 2000 Hz, i.e. 16-17 dB, with the former method.

Measured with short-duration comparison tones, maximum adaptation seems to be reached earlier than with long tones. Tanner obtained maximum in 2-4 min., Tsuiki (1964) in 1-3 min. Wittich (1966), who used a 2000 Hz stimulus and a single 190 msec. control tone in a repeated sequence obtained maximum adaptation in 16 sec. at 33-73 dB SPL. With Jerger's (1957) technique adaptation increased up to 7 min., except for frequencies at and below 500 Hz, which showed a maximum at 3 minutes. The corresponding results of Wright (1959) are in agreement with the above. Investigators using a similar technique also included Carterette (1955) who found that adaptation to noise increased up to 7 min. in the case of a 50 dB SPL stimulus but the maximum appeared in 1 min. when measured at lower intensities.

Independently of the measuring technique, investigators agree in principle about the relationship of the stimulus variables to adaptation. As reported by Jerger (1957) adaptation increases progressively as a function of frequency in the range 125-1000 Hz, remaining then fairly constant up to 8000 Hz, the tests were made at an SPL of 90 dB. The results of Hood (1950) and Wright (1959) support this finding. Jerger (1957) expressed adaptation in terms of log. adaptation in sones; the differences between frequencies were thus evened out and the curve as a function of loudness level (dB) was straight.

Wright (1959) measured adaptation to a 90 dB SPL pure tone under masking with white noise of 60 dB SPL (125-8000 Hz). Adaptation to a 4000 Hz pure tone both at 1 min. and at its maximum was higher than in the absence of noise; there was no cumulative effect at 250 and 1000 Hz, which shows that the effect of noise differs at the various frequencies tested.

Adaptation also increases with the stimulus intensity. According to Jerger (1957) the increase was roughly linear with the sensation level up to 60 dB after which it was more slow. Tested by Hood's (1950) technique, the increase was nearly linear up to the sensation level of 100 dB. By the same technique as modified by Tsuiki, adaptation did not increase further above the sensation level of 60 dB and after 85 dB there was rather a decrease. Wright (1956) obtained practically the same adaptation at 85 dB SL as at 55 dB. Correspondingly the values reported by Palva (1955) are essentially the same at 80 dB as at 60 dB SL.

Measurement of recovery from adaptation is a special problem. The result is decisively affected by the duration of the stimuli used. If a tone of long duration is used, it as such causes added adaptation which delays recovery.

If however short stimuli are applied no adaptation whatsoever can be measured (Hood 1950, 1955 a, b, Egan and Thwing 1955) Hood stated that the adapted end-organ produces a full on-effect. Wittich measured the recovery with simultaneous 190 msec. stimuli at 2000 Hz after the maximum adaptation reached by means of stimuli at sound pressure levels of 53 dB and 73 dB. Poststimulatory at 20 msec. adaptation was in each case 12 dB the respective maxima being 14 and 24 dB. After the longest interval studied, at 160 msec., the values were respectively 5–6 dB and 6–7 dB.

In general, the measurements of recovery have been made along the same principles as the initial balance. When the technique of Thwing (1955) was used, the recovery of adaptation was often complete in 2–3 min. following stimuli at sound pressure levels of 60–90 dB. Wright (1959) on the other hand, found that 3 min. after a 90 dB SPL stimulus (250 1000 4000 Hz) there was still on an average a 3 dB residual adaptation. According to Hood (1950) recovery after a 1000 Hz 80 dB SL stimulus lasting 3 min. became complete in 60 sec. Carterette (1955 1956) reported complete recovery of adaptation for white noise within 4 min. following 7 min. stimuli at sound pressure levels ranging from 30 to 100 dB. Recovery seems to be very rapid for the first few seconds and then to slow down.

### 3 INFLUENCE OF CONTRALATERAL STIMULATION ON ADAPTATION

The effect of contralateral stimulation may also appear during tests for TTS thus the pure tone poststimulatory threshold shift became smaller and the recovery period shorter as a result of perstimulatory contralateral low-intensity noise (Maspetiol et al. 1961 Pennetta and Pinto 1962, Burghoff 1962, 1963) Ward (1965) compared binaural pure tone and noise stimulation (115–125 dB SPL) with monaural stimulation obtaining about 5 dB lower values with the former he explained that the difference occurred on the basis of the stapedius reflex but that the part played by the efferent auditory bundles could not be excluded. Hirsh (1957 1958), who used 110 dB noise stimuli and 20–80 dB 1000 Hz pure tone stimuli, did not demonstrate any significant difference between binaural and monaural stimulation.

Hahn and de Michelis (1960) studied the effect exerted on perstimulatory adaptation at threshold level by continuous and interrupted (frequency 1/sec.) white noise at sensation levels of 15 and 30 dB. In test subjects who heard the test tone at threshold for 60 sec., the introduction of contralateral noise at 30 dB level reduced the duration of sensation to 15–20 sec. and intensity had to be increased by 10 dB for the sensation period to be 60 sec. The effect of interrupted noise was less marked. However those test subjects in whom the sensation period at threshold was shorter so that a further 5–10 dB was required for 60 sec. to be attained, showed the opposite result the sensation period at threshold was prolonged and the added intensity reduced to 0–5 dB. Brunetti (1960, 1961) Hahn (1962, 1963) and Maspetiol and his co-workers (1962) used an identical technique but usually obtained 5–10 dB more adaptation in 1 min.



It was stated by Collins and Capps (1965) and Capps and Collins (1965) that mental activity viz. mental arithmetic, increased the poststimulatory threshold shift by 5 dB after a 40 dB SL stimulus. Wernic and Tobias (1963) reported the corresponding value to be 2–4 dB increasing to 10 dB for stimulation at 90 dB SL. According to Hahn and de Michelis an intermittent light stimulus (frequency 20/sec.) caused a 5–15 dB increase in perstimulatory threshold adaptation in 60 sec. The effect was less at lower frequency rates (2/sec. and 4/sec.) Activity in the form of mental arithmetic caused adaptation to decrease in the group in which contralateral tone stimulation also reduced adaptation whereas increased adaptation resulted in the group in which a contralateral stimulus also increased the adaptation. The change resulting from the use of light stimulus was assumed to be a response of the bulbo-mesencephalic plane while in the case of mental arithmetic there was thought to be a cortical effect.

Price and Oatman (1967) made a control study on the work of Wernic and Tobias, concluding that it may be a question of artifacts. If the test subject in the final stage concentrated strictly on threshold determination the difference disappeared. Bell and Stern (1964) also were unable to confirm the results of the former investigators.

## B ELECTROPHYSIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND OF ADAPTATION

The literature dealing with the electrophysiology of hearing is very extensive. Only the main findings will be considered here, i.e. those contributing to better understanding of the adaptation phenomenon. It should be noted, however, that there may not be a direct correlation between the results of electrophysiological tests on animals and of psychophysical measurements on the human ear.

Cochlear microphonics (CM) represent very closely the electrical equivalent of sound energy up to a given intensity (Davis *et al.* 1958) after which follows a decrease interpreted as being due to fatigue. For the guinea pig the transitional limit at 500–2000 Hz was 95 dB re human threshold (Gisselsson and Sorensen 1959) for the cat it was 75–90 dB at 250–3000 Hz (Hughson and Witting 1934) and 100 dB at 5000 Hz (Burgeat and Burgeat Menguy 1964). The results thus correspond well with the fatigue limits of the human ear. At lower intensities CM are characterized by the fact that they do not change as a function of time: there is no adaptation.

Adaptation occurs, however, in the action potentials of the auditory nerve (Derbyshire and Davis 1935). There is a fast equilibration complete within 2 seconds or less and there is in addition the familiar slow equilibration, which is complete in about 7 minutes. Recovery requires about 30 seconds. No adaptation occurred in the cochlear potentials registered from the round window.

The response of single auditory-nerve fibres was measured by Galambos and Davis (1943). The auditory fibre responded to a continuous adequate stimulus

by a train of impulses which were initially numerous but declined rapidly (rate-adaptation), adaptation being complete in a few tenths of a second. The amplitude of the action potentials also diminished to some extent.

At the level of the superior olivary complex, adaptation to a 10 sec pure tone appeared as a decline of the firing rate but not as a change in the number of activated neurons (Goldberg et al. 1964).

In the inferior colliculi the response to white noise was slower than that of the cochlear nucleus (Thurlow et al. 1951) but in most cases response dropped practically to zero in a few seconds. A slow electrical component, such as that measured by Galambos (1952) from the medial geniculate body also became evident and it remained unchanged during 15 min. stimulation.

The recovery of the auditory cortex (Rosenblith et al. 1950) occurred parallel to the first neural component measured from the cochlea, the test tone being a click of 0.1 sec. duration and the stimulus a 500 Hz tone at 115 dB SL sustained for 60 sec. According to Keidel (1958), there was adaptation when measured from the auditory cortex with a series of clicks (frequency 10/sec.) even though no such response was obtained from the auditory nerve.

The efferent auditory bundles have been found to affect cochlear function and these findings shed new light on the adaptation problem.

The crossed efferent olivo-cochlear bundle described by Rasmussen (1942 1953 a, b,) the uncrossed olivo-cochlear bundle, and the direct efferent bundle from the reticular formation to the cochlea (Rossi and Cortesina 1965) constitute the peripheral part of the efferent system originating from the central nervous system. Electrical stimulation of the efferent bundle resulted in a decrease of the action potentials of the afferent bundle (Galambos 1955 1956 a, Desmedt and Mechelse 1958 and Sohmer 1965). Fex (1959 1962) and Sohmer advanced the opinion that a decrease in action potentials in the cat was associated with a slight rise in cochlear microphonics. In addition a slow positive potential possibly derived from the efferent endings was measured from the round window (Fex 1962, 1967). A change corresponding to the drop in action potentials of the auditory nerve was also found in all nuclei of the afferent tract (Ruben and Secula 1960, Desmedt 1962).

Fex (1962, 1963) and Pfalz (1962 a, b c, 1966) studied the activity set up in the olivo-cochlear pathways by a tone stimulus. They found that most of the neurons of both the direct and the crossed bundle were characterized by a well-defined best frequency by a definitely fixed threshold and regular function. Fex stated that, the crossed bundle responded mainly to stimulation of the ear into which it passed, the direct bundle responded to contralateral stimulation.

The efferent acoustic bundles are not important only in the formation of acoustic contrast (Pfalz 1962 a) in listening (Galambos 1956 b) and acoustic habituation (Hernández Pêon 1955 Hernández Pêon et al. 1956 1957 Galambos et al. 1956) the entire efferent nervous system also controls the information reaching consciousness (Keidel 1966).

Leibbrandt (1964, 1965) made interesting observations as regards the relations between the efferent bundles and adaptation. When action potentials were measured from the round window in the guinea pig, there was normally adaptation which was complete in 75–100 msec., the stimulus consisting of 2 msec impulses at 10 msec. intervals and the sound pressure level being 60 dB at 5000 Hz. If procaine was injected into the internal auditory meatus, the drop in action potentials failed to occur. He considered the failure of adaptation due to blocking of the efferent bundles.

### III AIMS OF THE INVESTIGATION

This investigation was designed to study normal-hearing subjects, under conditions as far as possible free from sources of error to determine the prestimulatory decline in loudness level of a continuous pure tone stimulus at suprathreshold levels using a binaural balancing method. Attention was directed to the following points

- the amount of adaptation as a function of sensation level, frequency and time
- the relations between adaptation and age of the test subject
- the changes in sound quality associated with decline in loudness level of the adapting stimulus
- the prestimulatory balance related to various sensation levels and frequencies
- the changes in excursion width of the tracings obtained with a self recording audiometer during adaptation measurement as compared with threshold recording and prestimulatory balance
- the recovery of the ear after pure tone stimulation based on threshold recording

The test was developed with a view to its application to the study of hearing impairments.

## IV APPARATUS MATERIAL AND METHODS OF INVESTIGATION

### A APPARATUS

The principle of the testing equipment is presented in Figure 1. A Grason Stadler Model E800 Békésy Audiometer was the main unit. The interrupted test tones used were those of the audiometer pure tone channel (channel 1) and their intensity was adjusted by the test subject by means of the subject switch. The rate of the intensity change, either 2.1 or 4.2 dB/sec., in 0.25 dB steps could be varied by the operator. In addition to the regular attenuator the operator also had a  $\pm 20$  dB fixed attenuator at his disposal.

The continuous pure tones were fed from an external sound source (Philips Tongenerator GM 238) into the Grason Stadler audiometer channel 2 through the masking external input jack. The pure tone stimulus selected was calibrated with the audiometer voltmeter for each frequency on each occasion of test, and the Grason Stadler audiometer attenuators alone were used for intensity control. The stimuli were delivered to the earphone either continuous or interrupted with the aid of an electronic switch. The audiometer allowed the sound pressure level of channel 2 to be adjusted by the operator in 5 dB steps.

The channels were connected to the earphones by means of a switch box with which the test tone could be switched from one ear to the other. The Grason Stadler M20L42 earphone was used on channel 1 and M11L35 on channel 2, and they were mounted in MX41/AR cushions and attached to a light weight headband. Calibration of the audiometer was checked with the artificial ear (coupler A 9) in the usual fashion.

The tests were made in the Audiologic Laboratory of the Otolaryngological Department of Oulu University. The apparatus and the test subject were in separate soundproof rooms, the operator having a view of the test subject through a 3-glass window.

Background noise measured (Precision Sound Level Meter Type 2203 Brüel and Kjaer, Denmark) at the test subject's position was less than 45 dB SPL re 0.0002 dyn/cm<sup>2</sup>. Measured by octave filter (Type 1613 Brüel and Kjaer) the noise proved to consist mainly of frequencies below 250 Hz. In octave bands at the mean frequencies 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000 and 8000 Hz, the attenuation rate being about 45–50 dB/octave, the noise never rose above 25 dB SPL re 0.0002 dyn/cm<sup>2</sup>.

Madsen Model OB 60 audiometer (NPL standard) was used to determine hearing thresholds by the descending ascending method in selecting test subjects.

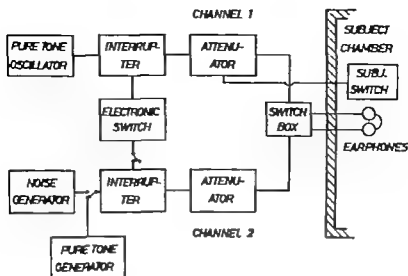


Fig. 1 Block diagram of testing equipment. (For explanation see text).

## B MATERIAL AND TECHNIQUE OF TESTING

The group termed normal consisted of 38 healthy test subjects with normal hearing; they ranged from 20 to 45 years in range with an average of 25.4 years. Two-thirds were medical students, the rest nurses, or other hospital staff. Three of the test subjects had previous experience of auditory testing. Those admitted to the series were free from any ear diseases and were also otherwise healthy. Air conduction hearing was better than 10 dB at the studied seven frequencies re normal threshold (NPL standard).

It became abundantly clear during the progress of the study that adaptation in children differs from that recorded in adults, and measurements were therefore made, after preliminary tests, on 29 subjects aged from 7 to 15 years (average 12.0 years). This group was selected among patients seen at the Otolaryngological Outpatient Clinic. All of these attended the Clinic for recurrent tonsillitis but were healthy on the occasion of test: the tympanic membranes were of normal appearance and air conduction hearing was within 10 dB of the normal threshold at the frequencies 125, 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 4000, 6000 and 8000 Hz.

In addition, tests were made on 10 subjects aged 56–70 years (average 60.0 years). One half of these were healthy old people who had been specially asked to present themselves for the tests, the other half consisted of patients earlier treated at the Otolaryngological Clinic; none of these had a history of ear disease and all had normal drum membranes. Air conduction hearing for these ears individually appears in Figure 2. Taking into account the age of

## FREQUENCY HZ

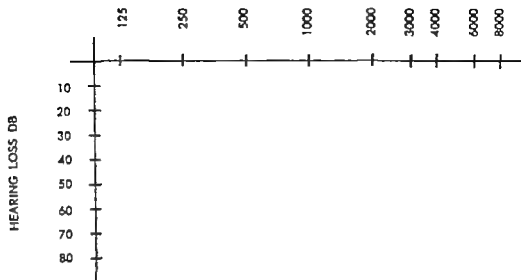


Fig. 2. Individual air conduction values (NPL-standard) obtained for test ear of 56-75 year old subjects.

each subject studied, the values are consistent with those reported in presbycusis (Staloff and Menduke 1957)

Adaptation was measured in one ear of each subject. The normal group included 16 right and 22 left ears, the children correspondingly 14 right and 15 left ears, and the old age group 7 right and 3 left ears. The normal group consisted of 20 women and 18 men, the children's group of 11 girls and 18 boys, and the old age group of 7 women and 3 men.

In the normal group each subject was tested for the frequencies 250, 500, 1000, 2000, 3000, 4000 and 6000 Hz at the sensation levels of 20, 40, 60 and 80 dB. Twenty-eight subjects were tested at each of these levels, the remaining 10 at one to three levels, in such a way that all four sensation levels were studied on 32 ears. The frequencies were so selected as to enable application of the test to the study of hearing impairments.

Each subject was only tested at one sensation level during one and the same day, the testing order being from the highest frequency 6000 Hz, downwards, to exclude the fatigue spreading chiefly to frequencies higher than the stimulus. To demonstrate possible fatigue effect, 27 subjects were also tested at 60 dB SL from the lowest frequency upwards. Tests at the various sensation levels were carried out in arbitrary order.

The measuring technique requires sustained concentration and it appeared that the interest and patience of the youngest subjects sufficed for only one or two recordings; for this reason the tests in this group were limited to 2000 and 4000 Hz on the basis of experience gained in the normal group as regards ease of comparison and amount of adaptation. In the old age

group the measurements were made at only one sensation level, 60 dB, for seven frequencies, at 250 500 1000 2000, 3000 4000 and 6000 Hz.

Both the threshold and adaptation tracings were registered at sound pressure levels re 0.0002 dyn/cm<sup>2</sup> (channel 2 basic level), the rate of attenuation being 2.1 dB/sec. in 0.25 dB steps. In two subjects adaptation developed so quickly that the audiometer rate 2.1 or 4.2 dB/sec. was not sufficient to keep up with adaptation during the first seconds. By means of the plus-minus 20 dB switch, the intensity of the comparison tone could be abruptly changed by 20 or 40 dB. It proved difficult, however for the test subjects to obtain a balance during the first seconds even by this means so it was decided, in these cases too, to use only a 2.1 dB/sec. attenuation rate for greater consistency of testing.

The durations of the interrupted pulse and of the pulse interval were 200 msec. at a rise-and fall time of 25 msec., sufficient to eliminate switching transients. It was decided to use this comparison tone because it had proved ideal from the point of view of measurement of adaptation, an added advantage being that this signal is available on the Grason-Stadler Model E800 audiometer and the test is thus easily applicable.

At the beginning of testing the subject was familiarized with the self-recording audiometer by letting him determine threshold values for each ear at a fixed frequency he was instructed to press the switch immediately he hears a pulsed tone and release it as soon as the tone disappears. For every frequency tested the subject, on each test occasion, determined first the thresholds for the two ears, using an interrupted signal and intensity being varied at a rate of 2.1 dB/sec. This threshold determination took on an average 60 sec. The operator then, using channel 2, measured once more the threshold for the experimental ear by the descending-ascending method with a pulsed signal the value obtained was taken as a basis for calculation of the sensation level.

This was followed by prestimulatory balancing on channel 2 an interrupted stimulus at the desired sensation level was presented to the ear under test and at the same time a comparison tone of the same frequency to the other ear the pulses being simultaneous. The test subject was asked to adjust the intensity of the comparison tone until its loudness equalled that of the stimulus, in other words to keep the switch in the up position as long as the comparison tone was softer than the stimulus and to press the switch down as soon as the comparison tone appeared louder thus trying continuously to keep loudness as closely matched as possible. When the test subject attained the level of balance and recorded it for 20-30 sec., in some cases for 60 sec., both signals were discontinued for a few seconds. An adapting, i.e. a continuous, stimulus was then introduced on the experimental ear for 3 min., or longer if adaptation continued to increase. Balancing with an interrupted tone was continued throughout the stimulation along the same principle as in prestimulatory balance. The subject was requested to pay attention also to changes in sound quality besides to possible loudness change.





The amplitudes of all the tracings were determined, interpolating the excursion maxima and minima for a period of 15–30 sec., at a point where the tracing was free from errors. For the adaptation tracing it was determined both during the first minute and at the end of the curve i.e. when adaptation was increasing and when it was fully developed. Post stimulatory threshold amplitudes were calculated at the end of the first minute.

The results were dealt with in the Computer Centre of Oulu University. Statistical analysis was made somewhat difficult by the skewness of the distributions and their wide variability. However the distributions were taken as normal distributions and the means compared by the *t*-test. The differences between the means were considered significant if the probability of error was  $P \leq 0.05$ .

For comparison nonparametric tests were also used in some cases the distribution then need not be assumed to be normal. The results in all these cases were consistent with those obtained by the *t* test.

## V RESULTS

The testing technique, especially continuous loudness balance, requires sustained concentration on the part of the test subject, and also some skill in adjusting the audiometer. It appeared however that even a child of 7-8 years if co-operative acquired the technique easily and could perform the test in every respect successfully. Exceptions were a few timid children and the test in their cases had to be discontinued because even threshold recordings failed. In the group of adults, the recording was always successful. The values for one subject however were omitted in calculating the results because of difficulties in interpretation of the tracings. Despite repeated instructions, this subject tended to make the balance with very small excursions and the tracing fell continuously the level being corrected by the subject at intervals in wide steps.

### A NORMAL ADULT GROUP

The results given represent means and standard deviations (SD) for 32 test subjects. An exception was the sensation level of 80 dB at 250 Hz only 27 subjects were tested at this intensity owing to technical difficulties at the outset.

#### 1 PRESTIMULATORY BALANCE

##### *Balance level*

On reaching balance, most of the subjects kept this level stable within the limits of 0-5 dB. In five ears, the tracing almost regularly fluctuated continuously but there were no excursions beyond  $\pm 5$  dB in any of the frequency SL combinations, and in these 5 cases the balance was recorded for 60 seconds.

Balancing could vary considerably from one subject to another but it was characteristic that in the case of one and the same subject, the balance at all sensation levels and frequencies was as a rule either higher or lower as compared to the averages. The results are presented in Table 1. The balance levels differed statistically significantly at all frequencies. Taking all sensation levels into account, they seemed to be higher for the medium frequencies than for the lower and higher frequencies. The differences were significant in the following combinations: 40 dB SL 500 and 1000 Hz v 6000 Hz; 60 dB SL 500 Hz v 3000 Hz; 80 dB SL 500 Hz v 250

TABLE 1

*Prestimulatory balance levels*

Frequency (Hz)	Sensation level (dB)							
	20		40		60		80	
	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.
250	20.8	5.6	40.5	7.8	57.7	8.7	75.2	9.2
500	21.2	6.6	41.6	7.8	61.3	8.8	80.0	8.1
1000	21.8	5.0	41.0	8.3	58.9	10.0	78.6	8.5
2000	20.9	6.6	40.6	8.4	57.4	11.4	75.3	11.1
3000	21.8	6.9	37.9	8.0	56.6	6.9	76.1	8.4
4000	21.2	5.6	37.9	8.1	57.1	8.8	76.5	8.9
6000	19.5	5.7	36.9	7.3	58.0	8.8	75.2	7.5

and 6000 Hz. With an increase in sensation level, especially at 60 and 80 dB SL, the balance level tended to decrease as compared with sensation level. At 80 dB SL, the difference between these levels was significant for the frequencies 250 3000 4000 and 6000 Hz, at 60 dB for 3000 Hz, and at 40 dB for 600 Hz.

TABLE 2

*Prestimulatory balance amplitudes (dB) compared with threshold amplitudes of control ear*

Frequency (Hz)	Sensation level (dB)															
	20				40				60				80			
	Thr	Bal.	Mean	S.D.	Thr	Bal.	Mean	S.D.	Thr	Bal.	Mean	S.D.	Thr	Bal.	Mean	S.D.
250	6.6	2.4	7.1	2.8	6.6	1.9	7.3	2.8	6.0	1.8	6.9	3.0	5.8	1.8	6.4	2.2
500	6.0	2.1	6.9	3.1	6.3	1.9	7.1	2.5	5.6	1.8	6.3	2.2	6.0	1.9	6.3	2.6
1000	3.9	2.1	7.0	2.8	6.0	1.8	7.1	2.9	5.6	1.9	6.3	2.2	5.5	1.7	6.3	2.6
2000	5.8	1.7	7.2	2.5	5.6	1.8	7.3	2.8	5.2	1.7	6.6	2.3	5.3	1.6	6.8	3.1
3000	5.7	1.8	7.6	3.2	5.8	1.5	7.2	2.3	5.3	1.7	6.2	1.7	5.4	1.7	6.7	2.4
4000	5.8	1.8	7.3	2.4	5.6	1.7	7.0	2.5	5.0	1.2	6.6	3.1	5.2	1.3	6.2	2.4
6000	5.4	1.4	7.9	3.1	5.3	1.6	6.9	2.2	5.0	1.1	6.3	2.3	4.9	1.3	5.9	1.8

Thr = Threshold

Bal. = Prestimulatory balance

= Difference between means significant ( $P \leq 0.05$ )

*Balance amplitudes*

The widths of the balance amplitudes are compared in Table 2 and Figure 4 with those of the control ear threshold recorded before the prestimulatory balance on each occasion of test. The balance tracings were significantly greater at all frequencies except 250, 500 and 1000 Hz, at which the threshold amplitudes tended to be greater than at the other frequencies. All frequencies considered, the minimum and maximum threshold amplitudes were 2 dB and 15 dB respectively those of the balance tracings correspondingly 2 dB

## FREQUENCY HZ

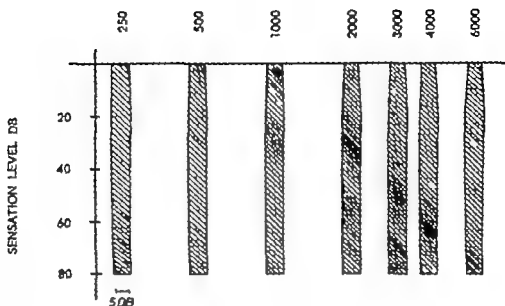


Fig 4 Excursion widths of prestimulatory balance tracings compared with threshold amplitudes of the comparison ear

and 20 dB most of the values in both groups ranged from 5 to 10 dB. The difference concerned is evidenced as greater dispersions of the balance amplitudes in Table 2.

At the threshold level the tracings showed a tendency to decrease with an increase in frequency; this was not observed as regards balance amplitudes. The balance excursions, however, tended to decrease at all frequencies with a rise in sensation level; the differences were significant only between 20 and 80 dB SL at 6000 Hz.

## 2. ADAPTATION

Prestimulatory suprathreshold adaptation at the four sensation levels and seven frequencies studied during 3 min (Table 3) was characterized by large individual variations, indicated by large standard deviations. In this series there were two subjects (5 per cent) in whom adaptation was almost always at all intensity levels and frequencies below 10 dB; only occasionally above 1000 Hz it could exceptionally be higher. As contrasted with these two, some of the test subjects regularly showed adaptation of remarkable amount in all frequency SL combinations. Figure 5 presents some individual tracings at 60 dB SL, 4000 Hz. Sensation to an adapting stimulus could disappear completely at 20 and 40 dB SL for the frequencies 2000, 3000, 4000 and 6000 Hz. This no longer occurred at 60 and 80 dB SL, nor was it found at 1000 Hz and lower frequencies at any sensation level.

TABLE 3

Peristimulatory suprathreshold adaptation for continuous pure tones of ring 3 min  
Results on 10- to 45-year-old subject

Frequency (Hz)	Sensation level (dB)	Time (sec.)											
		15		30		45		60		90		120	
		Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.
250	20	0.6	4.8	1.4	4.8	1.7	5.4	2.7	5.9	2.9	6.5	2.8	6.5
	40	2.1	7.1	4.5	9.2	5.9	9.2	6.9	9.8	7.6	10.4	8.3	10.6
	60	2.8	6.7	5.1	8.8	6.2	9.2	7.6	9.5	10.6	9.8	11.2	10.0
	80	2.7	6.5	4.2	7.9	6.1	8.9	7.5	9.3	9.5	9.8	10.5	9.3
500	20	0.5	5.3	1.9	6.7	2.5	6.9	3.3	6.6	4.8	7.1	4.6	7.8
	40	3.4	7.4	5.7	9.4	7.4	10.7	8.2	12.0	9.4	12.6	10.0	12.5
	60	2.6	6.9	5.5	12.2	8.0	12.6	9.6	13.6	11.5	14.6	13.4	15.4
	80	4.9	8.4	8.9	13.2	10.8	14.0	11.5	14.3	13.1	13.5	14.9	14.4
1000	20	0.8	4.8	2.5	5.9	3.9	6.6	3.2	4.8	7.1	6.6	8.0	6.6
	40	4.5	7.1	7.7	9.5	10.4	11.2	12.0	11.6	14.7	11.2	16.5	12.1
	60	4.7	8.9	9.5	14.0	12.2	14.9	14.9	15.8	18.6	16.0	21.5	16.1
	80	4.5	8.4	9.4	14.7	12.5	17.0	14.6	17.9	18.7	19.0	20.6	19.6
2000	20	3.8	6.4	6.5	8.4	8.7	8.9	9.7	9.2	10.6	9.9	10.8	9.1
	40	5.5	8.0	11.1	11.0	14.0	12.9	16.2	13.6	18.5	12.8	19.8	12.4
	60	5.1	9.1	11.0	13.4	15.8	15.7	19.2	17.2	24.3	18.6	26.5	18.4
	80	5.8	10.4	10.2	13.2	13.6	15.2	16.5	16.1	21.2	18.0	25.4	19.5
3000	20	4.2	6.2	7.8	7.0	9.8	7.4	11.1	7.8	12.1	8.4	12.9	8.8
	40	8.0	8.0	8.8	11.0	12.7	11.7	15.0	11.6	17.8	11.7	20.3	11.5
	60	6.2	8.0	12.8	12.0	17.0	14.2	20.5	15.4	23.9	15.6	27.4	19.1
	80	4.1	8.7	8.4	12.8	12.1	14.6	15.2	15.8	19.3	18.4	23.5	18.9
4000	20	3.6	6.4	6.6	7.8	8.6	7.3	9.2	8.0	10.5	8.6	11.2	8.4
	40	6.9	7.9	11.2	11.2	14.2	11.4	15.8	11.4	17.8	12.0	19.3	11.2
	60	6.5	8.2	11.9	12.5	16.2	14.6	20.0	15.5	23.6	16.5	27.5	16.8
	80	4.6	8.9	9.0	13.5	12.1	15.0	14.7	16.1	18.6	15.6	22.6	17.0
6000	20	3.7	6.0	7.3	6.1	9.2	6.0	10.2	5.6	11.0	5.6	11.5	5.5
	40	5.2	8.0	10.9	11.1	14.1	11.9	16.7	11.3	18.7	10.3	20.2	10.3
	60	5.0	7.5	11.0	13.2	15.3	15.9	17.7	16.2	23.5	17.2	26.6	17.5
	80	5.9	8.8	10.5	12.7	13.4	13.4	15.8	15.8	20.6	17.4	24.5	18.0

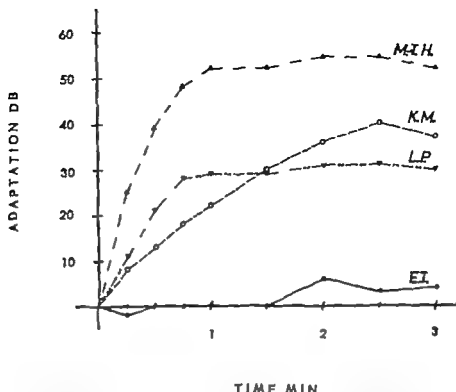
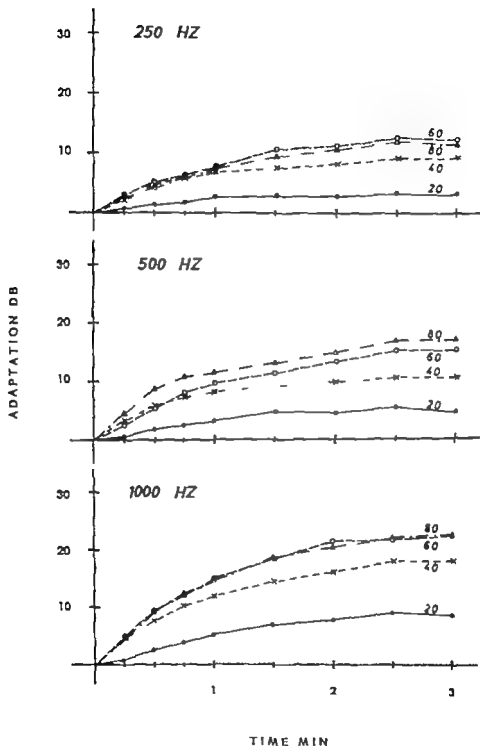


Fig 5 Individual adaptation tracings at 60 dB SL, 4000 Hz. Adaptation as recorded for test subject L.P. (30 years) and K.M. (27 years) was of moderate amount, in the latter the growth of adaptation was slow. In test subject M.T.H. (22 years) adaptation was large in amount and similar in type to subject L.P. The fourth subject here included, E.T. (22 years), represents a type with slight adaptation at all frequencies and sensation levels.

#### ) ADAPTATION IN RELATION TO SENSATION LEVEL

As illustrated in Figures 6—12, adaptation in the total series behaved in a very regular manner in spite of large dispersions: it grew at frequencies 250—6000 Hz with increasing sensation level from 20 dB to 60 dB reaching the values (3 min.) 12.2, 15.2, 22.6, 28.3, 28.6, 28.4 and 29.2 dB. At 250, 500 and 1000 Hz the increase was slower; at the frequencies 2000, 3000, 4000 and 6000 Hz practically linear.

When intensity increased from 60 dB SL to 80 dB SL, adaptation did not continue to grow but indeed seemed to diminish at and above 2000 Hz. Yet no significant differences were recorded for any of the frequencies tested at the various points of time. Adaptation at 20 dB SL (3 min.) differed significantly for all frequencies from the values measured at 40 dB SL and also at 60 and 80 dB SL. However a comparison of the values obtained at 40 dB SL and those obtained at 60 dB revealed significant differences for 2000, 3000, 4000 and 6000 Hz, but not at 1000 Hz and lower frequencies where the amount of adaptation was less. Between sensation levels of 40 and 80 dB there were no significant differences.



Figs 6-8 Peristimulatory suprathreshold adaptation during 3 min. at 250, 500 and 1000 Hz; sensation level as parameter



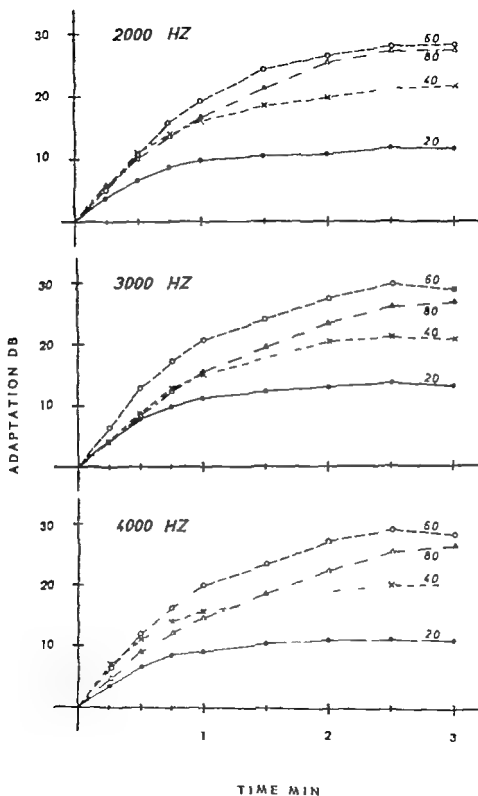


Fig 9-11 Peristimulatory suprathreshold adaptation during 3 min. at 2000, 3000 and 4000 Hz sensation level as parameter

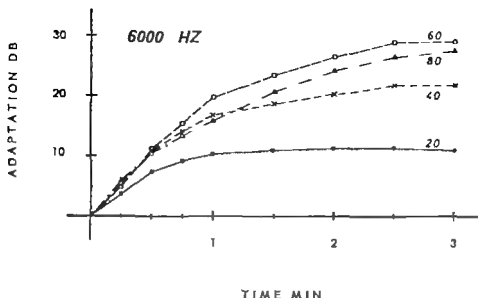


Fig 12. Peristimulatory suprathreshold adaptation during 3 min. at 6000 Hz sensation level as parameter

#### b) ADAPTATION IN RELATION TO FREQUENCY

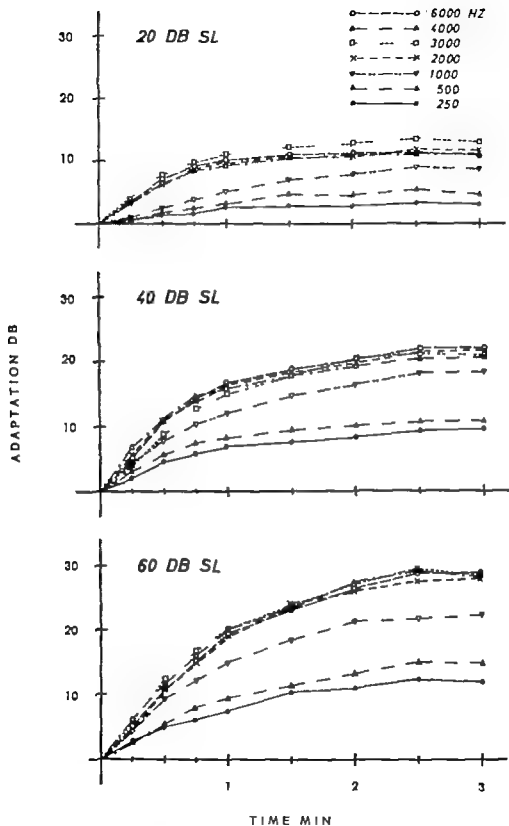
Adaptation for the various frequencies studied at different sensation levels is shown in Figures 13–16. The general conclusion to be drawn is that adaptation is larger at higher than at lower frequencies.

The results at 250 and 500 Hz were along the same lines at each of the four sensation levels studied; adaptation seemed to be larger for 500 Hz at all sensation levels but there were no significant differences between these two frequencies at any of the points of time.

At the frequencies 2000, 3000, 4000 and 6000 Hz adaptation was found to be of the same order at all sensation levels under study; there were no significant differences at the points of time studied.

Adaptation registered for 250 Hz at all four sensation levels was significantly smaller at 3 min than it was for 1000 Hz and higher frequencies. The result at 500 Hz differed from 1000 Hz and higher frequencies at 20 and 40 dB SL, the difference becoming significant at 60 and 80 dB SL for 2000 Hz and upwards. The frequency 1000 Hz did not differ from the higher frequencies at any one of the sensation levels.

The amount of adaptation was not affected by the order of frequencies tested, i.e. by whether measurements were started at 60 dB SL from the highest frequency 6000 Hz, proceeding systematically downwards, or from the lowest point, 250 Hz, upwards. The results will be found in Table 4. When testing was started at 250 Hz, adaptation at the low frequencies, most difficult to balance, seemed to be slightly less, the differences, however, were not significant for any of the frequencies.



Figs. 13-19 Perstimulatory suprathreshold adaptation during 3 min. at 20, 40 and 60 dB SL; frequency as parameter

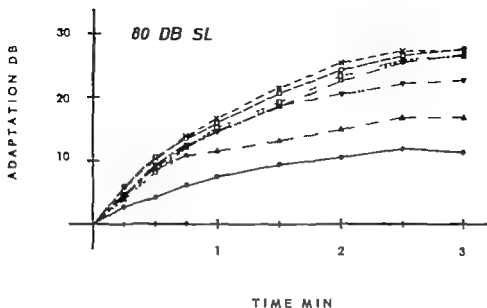


Fig 16. Perstimulatory suprathreshold adaptation during 3 min. at 80 dB SL frequency as parameter

#### ADAPTATION IN RELATION TO STIMULUS DURATION

The correlation between the amount of adaptation and stimulus duration is clearly evident in Figures 13–16. As a function of the time required for maximum to be reached, adaptation would seem to be affected by frequency and sensation level alike.

While at 20 and 40 dB SL three fourths of the adaptation occurred during the first minute of the testing run at all frequencies studied, the single exception being 1000 Hz with an apparently slower growth, three fourths of total adaptation was attained as late as after 2 minutes at the sensation levels of 60 and 80 dB. Growth continued, however in all frequency SL combinations up to  $2\frac{1}{2}$ –3 min.

As regards the growth rate of adaptation it was possible to separate two distinctly different groups of subjects, but, as already mentioned, there were also a few subjects (5 per cent) in whom adaptation did not appear at all or was generally slight, less than 10 dB.

In the other main group of normal subjects, consisting of 19 persons (50 per cent), the growth of adaptation was slow. It increased almost in the form of a straight line up to 2–3 min. Eight subjects, in 14 different frequency SL combinations, showed sharply increasing adaptation as late as at 3 min. and recording was continued. The growth of adaptation, however did not continue in most of these cases: in only four tests (3 subjects) did adaptation at  $3\frac{1}{2}$  min. exceed the value obtained at 3 min. the testing frequencies were 1000–6000 Hz at 60 and 80 dB SL. The differences compared

TABLE 4

*Periutulatory gap albrethold adaptation at 60 dB SL  
Descending order / frequency testing compared with ascending order*

Fre- quency (Hz)	Sensation level (dB)	Time (sec.)												180			
		15		30		45		60		90		120		150		Mean	S.D.
250	60 <sub>f</sub>	2.8	6.7	3.1	8.9	6.2	9.2	7.6	9.3	10.6	9.8	11.2	10.0	12.6	11.5	12.2	11.9
	60 <sub>n</sub>	1.9	6.4	3.0	9.8	3.3	10.0	3.8	10.3	4.6	10.2	5.6	10.4	6.2	10.7	6.0	10.6
500	60 <sub>f</sub>	2.6	6.9	3.4	12.2	8.0	12.6	9.6	13.6	11.5	14.6	13.4	15.4	15.2	15.9	15.2	15.4
	60 <sub>n</sub>	1.5	7.7	3.6	11.5	5.2	11.7	6.7	12.2	9.1	13.5	10.7	14.9	12.5	15.5	12.9	16.5
1000	60 <sub>f</sub>	4.7	8.3	9.5	14.0	12.2	14.9	14.9	15.8	18.6	16.0	21.5	16.1	21.9	15.8	22.6	16.2
	60 <sub>n</sub>	2.7	7.3	6.0	11.9	8.3	13.3	10.7	13.3	13.7	17.9	16.2	19.9	18.4	19.5	19.0	20.0
2000	60 <sub>f</sub>	5.1	9.1	11.0	13.4	15.8	15.7	19.2	17.2	24.3	18.6	26.5	18.4	28.0	18.5	28.3	17.9
	60 <sub>n</sub>	4.7	9.2	10.5	14.5	13.2	15.8	16.4	16.6	20.3	16.8	23.2	17.0	24.9	16.5	24.6	16.8
3000	60 <sub>f</sub>	6.2	8.0	12.8	12.0	17.0	14.2	20.5	15.4	23.9	15.6	27.4	15.1	29.7	15.3	28.6	14.9
	60 <sub>n</sub>	3.0	9.2	10.8	14.9	14.0	16.0	16.8	17.5	20.8	18.5	23.7	17.6	24.3	17.2	25.1	17.7
4000	60 <sub>f</sub>	6.3	8.2	11.9	12.5	16.2	14.6	20.0	15.5	23.6	16.5	27.5	16.8	29.3	16.2	28.4	15.0
	60 <sub>n</sub>	6.5	9.5	12.6	16.2	16.5	17.7	18.4	18.2	23.5	18.1	27.0	18.4	28.2	18.6	29.7	18.5
6000	60 <sub>f</sub>	5.0	7.5	11.0	13.2	15.5	15.9	19.7	16.2	23.5	17.2	26.6	17.5	29.1	17.5	29.2	16.6
	60 <sub>n</sub>	6.7	8.9	13.8	15.6	17.1	16.5	19.4	17.9	22.7	18.5	26.5	18.0	29.3	18.0	29.2	18.1

60<sub>f</sub> = Frequencies tested from 6000 Hz downward

60<sub>n</sub> = Frequencies tested from 250 Hz upwards

with the 3 min. values were 3 dB in 3 cases, 5 dB in one. In one subject an increase still appeared at 3½ min. but the adaptation value for 4½ min. equalled the one for 3½ min.

In 17 subjects (45 per cent) adaptation developed rapidly at most of the frequencies and sensation levels and was complete within the first minute. Two test subjects stated that the audiometer rate of 2.1 dB/sec. failed to keep up with adaptation at 40–80 dB SL for any of the frequencies during the first few seconds. One of them said the stimulus remained unchanged for a few seconds, then decreased very strongly for a few more seconds, after which it was again stabilized for up to 3 minutes. The adaptation value at 15 sec. was recorded as the audiometric value, though it was evidently greater.

#### a) CHANGES IN PURITY OF THE ADAPTING STIMULUS

Adaptation was associated with another subjectively recognizable feature besides the decline of loudness, i.e. the continuous pure tone stimulus changed in quality becoming less pure. There was not a single test subject who did not report this finding at some one of the frequencies tested, taking all sensation levels into consideration if adaptation was demonstrable. The majority stated of their own accord that, irrespective of the frequency the adapting stimulus began to resemble a noise or was either duller or in some way lower than the comparison tone. Three out of 38 test subjects described the stimulus as being cracked. Table 5 shows the results in terms of number

TABLE 5

*Changes in purity of adapting stimuli*

Fre- quency (Hz)		20		Sensation level (dB)				80	
		N		40		60		N	
250	Changed	0		0		1	3	0	
	Pure	32	100	32	100	31	97	27	100
500	Changed	2	6	5	16	4	12	6	19
	Pure	30	94	27	84	28	88	24	81
1000	Changed	6	19	11	34	11	34	10	3
	Pure	26	81	21	66	21	66	22	68
2000	Changed	18	56	20	62	19	59	18	56
	Pure	14	44	12	38	13	41	14	44
3000	Changed	22	69	25	78	21	66	21	66
	Pure	10	31	7	22	11	34	11	34
4000	Changed	27	84	25	78	28	88	27	84
	Pure	5	16	7	22	4	12	5	16
6000	Changed	25	78	26	81	26	81	27	84
	Pure	7	22	6	19	6	19	5	16

N = Number of stimuli

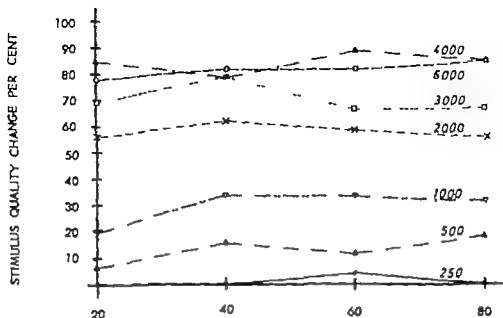


Fig 17 Changes in quality of adapting pure tone stimuli; number of cases with changed quality expressed as percentage

of changed and pure stimuli. The results are illustrated in Figure 17 with frequency as parameter. Tested at individual frequencies, the quality changes did not differ in principle from one sensation level to another in the series as a whole. But it was found that with rising frequency the proportion of cases with changes in purity increased definitely up to 4000 Hz, equalling, however, at 6000 Hz the figure for 4000 Hz at all sensation levels. Between 1000 and 2000 Hz the number of cases with changes in tone quality became greater than the number of those remaining unchanged in purity.

It was the rule that, in those cases in which the sensation to the adapting stimulus disappeared it first lost its purity. Even though there was a rough correlation between changes in purity and decline in loudness level, no distinct regularity was found in individual cases. The change was in some cases connected with loudness decline of very marked degree and in others with slight loss of loudness. On the other hand, in cases in which the decline in loudness was of more than average amount, the stimulus occasionally remained pure even at the highest frequencies.

Some of those tested were able to define the moment at which the change occurred, usually within the first minute; however in a few cases it did not appear until at the later stages of the test, regardless of the degree of loudness decline. There were also some who could not define the exact moment, stating that the change was gradual.

1. EXCURSION WIDTHS OF ADAPTATION TRACINGS

Table II lists the mean amplitudes of the adaptation curves and the standard deviations, during the first minute and for the fully adapted ear. The minimum and maximum values were 2 and 16 dB at the beginning of the test run and 2 and 17 dB respectively at its end, most of the values being within the range 5-10 dB. In Figure 18 are seen

TABLE 6

Excursion widths (dB) of adaptation tracings

Frequency (Hz)	Sensation level (dB)													
	20		40		60		80		100		120		140	
	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.
250	6.9	2.9	7.2	3.0	7.1	2.5	7.0	2.8	6.8	2.6	6.8	2.7	6.6	3.0
500	7.2	2.6	7.3	2.6	7.2	2.6	7.1	2.6	6.6	2.2	6.6	2.4	6.7	3.0
1000	6.9	2.5	6.5	2.8	7.5	2.6	7.0	2.6	7.0	2.1	7.1	2.6	6.7	2.8
2000	7.1	2.5	6.5	2.6	7.1	2.3	7.1	3.2	6.7	1.9	7.0	2.6	7.0	2.8
3000	7.4	2.8	6.7	2.9	7.4	2.5	7.4	2.9	6.9	2.1	7.2	2.6	6.9	2.4
4000	7.2	2.4	6.6	2.5	6.8	2.3	6.8	2.4	6.8	2.4	6.8	2.8	6.4	2.6
6000	7.9	3.2	7.0	3.1	6.9	2.1	6.5	2.1	6.6	1.9	6.8	2.8	6.3	2.3

Beg. = Developing adaptation  
End = Adaptation fully developed

FREQUENCY HZ

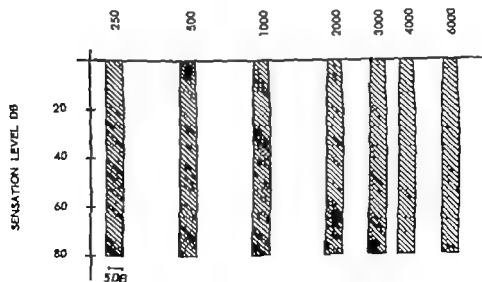


Fig. 18. Excursion widths of adaptation tracings in the fully adapted ear compared with threshold amplitudes of the control.



the averages for the fully adapted ear with threshold amplitudes of the control ear (Table 2 page 29). As regards the values for developing and for fully developed adaptation no significant differences were observed between any of the SL frequency combinations in the various groups nor between the groups. Neither were differences found when the values were compared with the corresponding prestimulatory balance amplitudes (Table 2 page 29). The initial values behaved in the same way as the latter group in the respect that they also showed a tendency to decrease with increasing sensation level. It was not possible to make the same observation at the end of the tracing.

### 3. POSTSTIMULATORY THRESHOLD SHIFT

Table 7 analyses the mean poststimulatory threshold shift, with standard deviations measured with an interrupted tone 60 sec. after cessation of the stimulus. For an overall picture of recovery those cases in which stimulus duration exceeded 3 min (12 recordings  $3\frac{1}{2}$  min, one 4 min, one  $4\frac{1}{2}$  min).

TABLE 7

*Poststimulatory threshold shift 1 min after cessation of adapting stimulus*

Frequency (Hz)	20		Sensation level of stimulus (dB)				80	
	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.
250	2.7	2.7	3.0	3.5	4.2	4.9	2.9	2.9
500	3.0	3.0	2.7	2.9	2.8	3.3	2.6	3.1
1000	3.2	3.2	3.2	2.7	4.0	2.6	3.2	2.7
2000	4.1	3.0	3.6	3.4	4.0	3.2	3.5	2.1
3000	3.2	2.9	2.9	2.8	3.8	2.9	2.8	2.9
4000	3.1	2.9	3.6	3.2	3.5	2.4	3.6	2.6
6000	4.3	4.6	3.7	4.1	4.7	3.6	3.9	3.5

TABLE 8

*Excursion widths (dB) of poststimulatory threshold tracing compared with immediate prestimulatory threshold amplitudes*

Frequency (Hz)	Sensation level of stimulus (dB)															
	20				40				60				80			
	Pre.	S.D.	Post.	S.D.	Pre.	S.D.	Post.	S.D.	Pre.	S.D.	Post.	S.D.	Pre.	S.D.	Post.	S.D.
250	6.2	1.8	5.8	1.9	6.5	1.7	6.0	1.8	6.3	1.9	5.8	1.8	6.5	2.0	5.9	1.9
500	6.2	2.2	5.5	1.8	6.2	1.8	5.9	1.8	6.0	1.9	6.0	2.1	6.1	1.8	5.9	2.1
1000	5.7	2.0	5.5	2.0	5.8	1.5	5.8	1.8	5.7	1.6	5.8	2.0	5.6	1.6	5.8	1.9
2000	6.0	1.8	5.4	1.8	5.9	1.7	6.8	1.8	5.4	1.9	5.4	2.0	5.6	1.7	5.5	1.7
3000	5.6	1.8	5.7	1.6	5.8	1.4	5.6	1.9	5.5	1.6	5.7	2.0	5.5	1.9	5.9	2.0
4000	5.8	1.7	5.6	1.8	5.6	1.6	5.4	1.6	5.1	1.3	5.4	1.9	5.2	1.6	5.4	1.7
6000	5.6	1.5	5.4	1.6	5.4	1.8	5.2	1.6	5.0	1.4	5.3	1.6	5.2	1.4	5.5	1.5

Pre. = Prestimulatory threshold

Post. = Poststimulatory threshold

min.) were also included. There was a tendency for threshold loss to increase with increasing frequency but the difference was not significant at any of the sensation levels. It is worth noticing that the results at the various sensation levels also did not differ statistically for any one of the frequencies tested.

The excursion widths of the prestimulatory (the ear under test) and poststimulatory threshold tracings at the end of the first minute are given in Table 8. The means show no significant differences for any frequencies. Similarly as the prestimulatory values, the poststimulatory values tended to decrease as the frequency increased.

Sixteen test subjects (42 per cent) reporting that the adapting stimulus lost its pure quality also stated that the poststimulatory threshold tone was impaired. This finding usually referred to the early phase of recording and almost exclusively to frequencies above 1000 Hz, and at these frequencies irregularly to all sensation levels. In this part of the study observations are necessarily subjective and uncertain because there were no possibilities of comparison.

## B CHILDREN AND OLD AGE GROUP

### *Children*

It appeared in the preliminary tests that practically no adaptation was demonstrable in subjects below 15 years of age though adaptation did occur in most of the subjects above this age limit. On the basis of experience gained in the normal group and in the preliminary tests, and with a view to ease of comparison and the greatest possible amount of adaptation, this part of the study was limited to testing 29 subjects aged 7–15 years at 60 dB SL, twenty of these at 2000 Hz and 23 at 4000 Hz. The results are shown in Table 9. Adaptation in excess of 10 dB (11–28 dB) in 3 min was found in only 5 subjects. These were

TABLE 9

*Prestimulatory suprathreshold adaptation at 60 dB SL in 7 to 15 year old subjects*

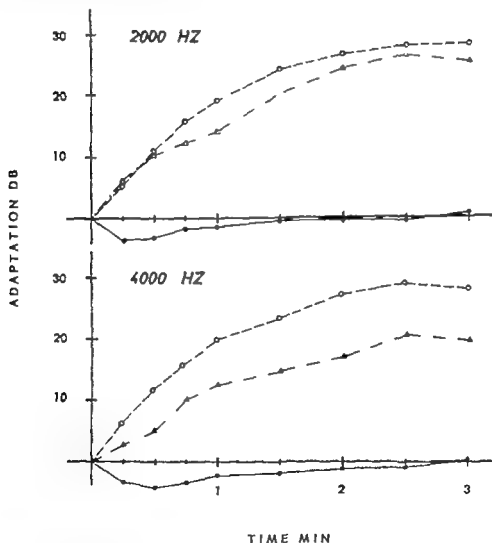
Time (sec.)	Frequency (Hz)				Remarks
	2000		4000		
	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	
15	-3.6	3.8	-3.3	4.6	Average age 12 y
30	-3.2	4.3	-4.3	5.4	Number of subjects
45	-1.6	4.8	-3.6	6.2	20 at 2000 Hz and
60	-1.2	5.5	-4	6.8	23 at 4000 Hz
90	-0.2	5.9	-2.1	7.7	
120	-0.2	6.9	-1	8.1	
150	-0.3	7.5	-0.9	8.7	
180	1.0	8.4	0.3	10.6	

TABLE 10

Excursion widths (dB) of prestimulatory balance tracings and of adaptation tracings at 60 dB SL compared with threshold amplitudes of control ear (same subjects as in Table 9)

Frequency (Hz)	Thr		Bal.		Beg.		End	
	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.
2000	7.2	2.2	7.4	2.1	8.0	2.8	7.8	2.8
4000	7.1	2.0	8.0	2.1	7.2	2.4	7.6	3.1

Thr = Threshold  
Bal. = Prestimulatory balance  
Beg. = Developing adaptation  
End = Adaptation fully developed



Figs 19-20 Prestimulatory suprathreshold adaptation in children (●—●) and in the old age group (▲—▲) measured 60 dB SL for 2000 and 4000 Hz compared with the normal group consisting of (20-45-) old subjects (○—○).

without exception among the oldest in their group (12 to 15 years). The results together with the tracings obtained for the normal group and for old people are found in Figures 19 and 20. The differences when compared with the normal group are significant for the two frequencies at each point of time. The negative values are accounted for by the automatic attenuation mechanism of the audiometer with the switch in the resting position the intensity increases and absence of response for 1-2 sec. at the beginning of stimulation means a decline of 2.1-4.2 dB.

The prestimulatory balance levels at 2000 and 4000 Hz were 61.6 dB S.D. 11.8 and 63.5 dB S.D. 9.7 respectively the latter figure exceeds the one obtained for the normal group ( $P < 0.01$ ). Table 10 compares the threshold amplitudes with those of prestimulatory balance tracings and of adaptation tracings. Apart from the threshold amplitudes, the values did not differ statistically from those of the normal group and their interrelationship was the same as in the normal group with the one exception that there was no significant difference between threshold amplitudes and prestimulatory balance amplitudes. In respect of poststimulatory threshold loss, the children did not differ from the normal group (2000 Hz, 4.4 dB S.D. 4.2 4000 Hz, 4.6 dB S.D. 5.4). As in the normal group there was no difference between poststimulatory and prestimulatory threshold amplitudes in the children's group.

### *Old age group*

Table 11 lists the results of adaptation measurements at 60 dB SL in 10 subjects aged 56 to 71 years. The values for 2000 and 4000 Hz are compared in Figures 19-20 with the corresponding results in the normal group and the children's group. At and above 3000 Hz, where the age-linked threshold loss appears most clearly adaptation seemed to diminish in amount with increasing threshold loss. The difference compared with the normal group however was not of significance until at 6000 Hz ( $P < 0.005$ ).

Two subjects had so much elevated thresholds that the test at 6000 Hz could not be made at 60 dB SL and was possible at the level of 40 dB. In each of these cases the recorded result was lower than the means in the normal group.

TABLE 11

*Prestimulatory suprathreshold adaptation at 60 dB SL in 10 old (56-70 y) subjects.*

Frequency (Hz)	Time (sec.)															
	15		30		45		60		90		120		150		180	
	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.	Mean	S.D.
250	1.2	5.3	4.0	7.0	4.2	7.9	3.7	8.9	6.9	8.3	8.4	8.3	9.6	8.8	10.7	8.9
500	1.1	5.8	2.8	5.3	2.9	5.3	3.2	6.0	5.3	7.4	9.4	9.6	11.9	10.4	12.9	12.7
1000	0.9	6.3	4.5	10.1	7.0	11.6	8.5	12.7	11.7	14.4	13.9	14.5	16.3	13.6	18.7	15.0
2000	5.9	6.9	10.2	7.9	12.2	9.7	14.1	13.8	20.2	16.6	24.4	15.1	26.6	16.9	25.3	16.1
3000	2.3	7.8	7.3	8.3	11.0	7.9	13.3	8.4	16.4	8.8	19.9	10.4	22.5	9.0	22.8	10.2
4000	2.7	4.0	5.0	6.1	10.1	10.6	12.6	15.2	14.8	19.3	17.1	18.4	20.8	18.6	19.9	17.2
6000	2.2	4.6	4.6	3.8	7.0	6.2	10.0	8.2	12.2	8.5	16.2	9.7	17.0	11.4	17.9	10.0

intensities, adaptation occurred in some ears to the extent that the sensation to the continuous tone disappeared nevertheless, the recognition of the additional impulses was not different from that found in other ears in the same group

A 200 msec. pulse is also sufficient for the threshold minimum as well as for maximum loudness at the suprathreshold levels to be obtained not only in the normal ear (Mukolczy Fodor 1959 Small et al. 1962) but also in hearing impairments of different types (Mukolczy Fodor 1953) According to Jerger and Jerger (1966) a 200 msec interval at threshold level suffices for recovery of a functional change caused by a 200 msec. pulse in such lesions also in which prestimulatory threshold adaptation is of large amount.

### *Prestimulatory balance*

When the audiometer channels have identical basic levels (re 0.0002 dyn/cm<sup>2</sup> SPL) the balance level reached in the control ear should be equal, in decibels, to the sensation level of the normal test ear if adaptation or other functional changes occur in neither ear. The results indicated (Table 1 page 29) that, with increased sensation level the balance level tended to be reduced in relation to it. There are no previous data on this phenomenon but the same tendency is apparent from Egan's (1955 a) study and indeed is of the same order of magnitude (2-5 dB) at the corresponding sensation levels, as in the present study

The result is probably explained by binaural interaction this in fact has been found to modify nearly all auditory functions. At high intensities, in addition the part played by the stapedius reflex cannot be excluded if stimuli are used which exceed the latency period of the reflex in duration.

Prestimulatory balance might also be performed using alternate impulses. Changes in interaural relations then could not fail to affect the balance levels to some extent. Dirks and Malmquist (1965) for instance, have obtained auditory threshold shifts from 1 to 4 dB according to whether the contralateral suprathreshold 0.4 sec. stimulus was presented simultaneously or alternately with the test tone.

### *Adaptation*

According to amount and growth rate of adaptation the test subjects can be divided into three groups the typical tracings appear also in Figure 5 (page 32)

- Type I, represented by test subject E. T., is characterized by total absence or generally minimal amount of adaptation (less than 10 dB) This type included 2 subjects (5 per cent) of the normal group and this seems to be the predominant type in the case of children

- In type II including subject K. M. the growth of adaptation is slow but may reach a large value Nineteen subjects (50 per cent) in the normal group were representative of this type.

— Type III (test subjects L. P. and M. T. H.) is characteristically associated with rapid decline in loudness level and there are then no significant changes after 60 sec. Seventeen (45 per cent) of the adults tested were of this type.

One and the same subject shows the same type of tracing at most frequencies and sensation levels. Using 250 500 and 1000 Hz stimuli however a tendency was observed in some cases for type III to shift analogously to type II and for type II to shift to type I. This was also noted in the same test subjects above 2000 Hz at 80 dB sensation level. Despite large individual differences, perstimulatory suprathreshold adaptation in one and the same subject is a very stable phenomenon — as demonstrated also by Harbert et al. (1966).

Considering the series as a whole, adaptation increased with sensation level from 20 dB up to 60 dB yet the value for 80 dB SL was essentially the same at all frequencies as for 60 dB (Figs. 6–12, pages 33–35). The same conclusion was formed by Palva (1955), Wright (1959) and Tsuiki (1965). It is clear beyond doubt that some additional factor becomes operative at high intensity levels. According to the theory advanced by Keidel (1966) the inner hair cells, having a threshold about 60 dB higher than the outer hair cells, are adapted to a less extent than the latter which might signify a slower growth of adaptation from 60 dB SL upwards, and so explain the result.

As a function of frequency the amount of adaptation, expressed in decibels, appears to behave similarly irrespective of the testing method used. Growth was roughly linear with the frequency up to 2000 Hz at all sensation level and then remained practically unchanged at 3000 4000 and 6000 Hz (Figs 13–16 pages 36–37). As a function of both sensation level and frequency types II and III behaved in the same way.

In type III however the individual values were inclined to be higher than the means for the total series in all frequency SL combinations in type II by contrast, slightly lower. There were no inter-group differences as regards the maximum adaptation values for example at 4000 Hz and 60 dB SL, it was in type II 51 dB and in type III 53 dB.

In respect of the time factor types I and III are easily explained: in the former there was no adaptation whatever in the latter no significant changes occurred after 60 sec. In type II on the other hand, there was growth of adaptation up to  $2\frac{1}{2}$ –3 min in all frequency SL combinations, from which it follows that adaptation also increased in the total series for as long as  $2\frac{1}{2}$ –3 min. Measurements were made on 8 subjects for over 3 minutes, and in three of these (a total of 4 tests) adaptation proved to be of greater amount at  $3\frac{1}{2}$  min. In three frequency SL combinations the increase was 3 dB and in one 5 dB.

In general terms, adaptation reaches a maximum in 3 minutes but growth may continue beyond this time limit in a number of normal-hearing subjects tested with 1000 Hz tones or higher at 60 and 80 dB SL.

Egan (1955 a), Thwing (1955), Egan and Thwing (1955), Jerger (1957) and Wright (1959) attained maximum adaptation at 6–7 min. using a

balance with a 15 sec. continuous tone. With 10 sec. duration of balance, Hood (1950) reached the maximum in 3–3½ min. In all the above studies the growth of adaptation proved slower than it was with the present short comparison tone. This is due to the adaptation occurring in the control ear since in the early part of the test, when adaptation in the ear being tested was still slight, the error caused by adaptation in the control ear is relatively larger than at a later stage, from which it follows that balance is also reached later.

Using 200 msec comparison signals the degree of adaptation in 15 sec. in type III was, for the frequencies 1000–6000 Hz, 10–20 dB at the sensation level of 20 dB and 10–30 dB at the levels 40–80 dB, thus a considerable error arises from the use of a continuous test tone when the duration of balance is 15 sec. In type II with slowly developing adaptation however it is possible to obtain relatively true values and measure large amounts of adaptation by this technique too.

A comparison of the mean values here obtained with earlier studies shows that they do not greatly differ from the corresponding values reported by Egan (1955 a), Thwing (1955), Jerger (1957), Wright (1959) and Small and Munfie (1962). This is understandable seeing that, in types I and II — to which more than half (55 per cent) of the test subjects belonged — the error due to a long balance time is comparatively small. In the total material here studied, adaptation at 15 sec. was on average 4–6 dB at all sensation levels measured for the frequencies from 1000 to 6000 Hz. (Table 3 page 31). In type III there was the greatest source of error but as adaptation is nearly always large, the error as far as means are concerned does not reach a remarkable amount in the series taken as a whole. If however comparisons are made at 3 min. (Palva 1955, Jerger 1957, Wright 1960, Small 1964) the values of the investigators mentioned in the preceding are 5–10 dB lower in the range 2000–6000 Hz at all sensation levels. By contrast, below 1000 Hz there are no appreciable differences because adaptation here is of less amount and the maximum appears earlier as pointed out by Jerger (1957). In Hood's (1950) study alone, based on very few test subjects, the values at 60 and 80 dB SL (at 1000 Hz) were about 10 dB higher than those given by others. Wright (1960) who used 1 sec comparison stimuli, obtained for 500 Hz at 90 SPL some individual adaptation values of 50 dB and Palva (1964) has reported comparable results with the same technique.

The use of a short-duration comparison stimulus in a proportion of cases (adaptation type III) results in decisively higher amounts of adaptation than is obtainable with a long continuous control tone. The error occasioned by adaptation in the control ear does not, however alone explain the differences between the results of various investigators (the balance time, for instance, being equal). The different results must be basically due to chance differences in the composition of the series, consisting as they do of different adaptation types. Even the studies most often quoted (Hood

1950 Palva 1955 Egan 1955 a, Thwing 1955 Jerger 1957 Wright 1959) are based on averages for a small number of subjects, almost without exception less than 10 and this being the case, the results have very likely been affected by such factors as outlined above.

It should be noted that no attention has been paid in previous studies to the association between the age of subjects and auditory adaptation. The difference in adaptation between the children and the adults is of great interest, and it is not here a question of possible unreliability of results obtained with an automatic audiometer in children. Stark (1965 1966) carried out threshold measurements with a Békésy audiometer on 5–11 year old children using both interrupted and continuous stimuli, and he demonstrated that from the age of 8 years the results were as stable as for adults. Delany et al. (1966) correspondingly arrived at 6 years of age they used an automatic Rudmose audiometer. The results in the present study too, can be regarded as representative. Children and adults showed consistent results in every respect except that the former had a higher prestimulatory balance level at 4000 Hz and larger threshold amplitudes, which therefore did not differ from the prestimulatory balance amplitudes, as they did in the adult normal group. The differences in favour of the normal group may be explained in part by the experience of subjects with the recording technique resulting from more numerous test occasions — a fact which Palva (1957) has drawn attention to. The relations between the excursion amplitudes were otherwise similar to those in the normal group. The poststimulatory threshold curve also proved identical in type with the curve for adults and shows that a child's ear does not adapt to an interrupted test tone. Nor was any one of those tested who showed no adaptation able to report a subjective loudness decline of any kind or any change in tone purity which features were typical in the adult group and a criterion for adaptation.

One possibility of error in the case of children is the development of a strong subjective absolute intensity constant, referred to by Egan (1955 a). With the object of throwing light on this question 10 subjects were tested for adaptation (4000 Hz) so that the measurements were started at 40 dB SL, intensity being increased unexpectedly by 20 dB after 1½ min. The balance level increased from 41.1 dB S.D. 12.6 (1½ min.) to 57.3 dB S.D. 10.1 (2 min.). The prestimulatory balance level had been 41.9 dB S.D. 10.3 and at 3 minutes — 1½ minutes after the intensity increase — balance was 56.9 dB S.D. 9.5. The obtained adaptation values did not differ significantly from the corresponding prestimulatory balance levels. None of the test subjects failed to notice the increase in intensity. Thus no adaptation was found; this factor then is not a decisive one.

Adaptation may be modified by central factors (Hahn and de Michelis 1960, Wernick and Tobias 1963, Capps and Collin 1965, Collins and Capps 1965) and it may be modified by contralateral stimulation (Hahn and de Michelis 1960, Brunetti 1960, 1961, Hahn 1962, 1963, Maspérol et al. 1962). Even though the attitude of children to the test differed from that of adults, this factor



balance with a 15 sec. continuous tone. With 10 sec. duration of balance, Hood (1950) reached the maximum in 3-3½ min. In all the above studies the growth of adaptation proved slower than it was with the present short comparison tone. This is due to the adaptation occurring in the control ear since in the early part of the test, when adaptation in the ear being tested was still slight, the error caused by adaptation in the control ear is relatively larger than at a later stage, from which it follows that balance is also reached later.

Using 200 msec. comparison signals the degree of adaptation in 15 sec in type III was, for the frequencies 1000-6000 Hz, 10-20 dB at the sensation level of 20 dB and 10-30 dB at the levels 40-80 dB thus a considerable error arises from the use of a continuous test tone when the duration of balance is 15 sec. In type II with slowly developing adaptation however it is possible to obtain relatively true values and measure large amounts of adaptation by this technique too.

A comparison of the mean values here obtained with earlier studies shows that they do not greatly differ from the corresponding values reported by Egan (1955 a) Thwing (1955) Jerger (1957) Wright (1959) and Small and Minifie (1962). This is understandable seeing that, in types I and II - to which more than half (55 per cent) of the test subjects belonged - the error due to a long balance time is comparatively small. In the total material here studied, adaptation at 15 sec was on average 4-6 dB at all sensation levels measured for the frequencies from 1000 to 6000 Hz. (Table 3 page 31) In type III there was the greatest source of error but as adaptation is nearly always large the error as far as means are concerned does not reach a remarkable amount in the series taken as a whole. If however comparisons are made at 3 min (Palva 1955 Jerger 1957 Wright 1960, Small 1964) the values of the investigators mentioned in the preceding are 5-10 dB lower in the range 2000-6000 Hz at all sensation levels. By contrast, below 1000 Hz there are no appreciable differences because adaptation here is of less amount and the maximum appears earlier as pointed out by Jerger (1957). In Hood's (1950) study alone, based on very few test subjects, the values at 60 and 80 dB SL (at 1000 Hz) were about 10 dB higher than those given by others. Wright (1960) who used 1 sec. comparison stimuli obtained for 500 Hz at 90 SPL some individual adaptation values of 50 dB and Palva (1964) has reported comparable results with the same technique.

The use of a short-duration comparison stimulus in a proportion of cases (adaptation type III) results in decisively higher amounts of adaptation than is obtainable with a long continuous control tone. The error occasioned by adaptation in the control ear does not, however alone explain the differences between the results of various investigators (the balance time for instance, being equal). The different results must be basically due to chance differences in the composition of the series, consisting as they do of different adaptation types. Even the studies most often quoted (Hood

made systematically from the lowest frequency upwards or vice versa. Using the former order however results at the lowest frequencies seemed to be slightly lower (Table 4 page 38). If a fatigue effect or a cumulative adaptation played a part, these should be present at the highest frequencies. The fatigue phenomenon in particular has been found to extend above the stimulus frequency and 4000 Hz, from the point of view of fatigue, is both the most effective stimulus and the one that is most sensitively modified (Davis et al. 1950) in addition, adaptation is maximal at frequencies exceeding 2000 Hz.

In the light of previous studies the recovery of adaptation as measured by the technique of Hood, occurred in 1 min. Carterette (1955) using a 30–87 dB SPL noise stimulus (white noise 100–5000 Hz) reported a recovery period of 4 min. Egan (1955 a) and Wright (1959) applied a 7 min. pure tone stimulus (250–4000 Hz) at 90 dB SPL and at 3 min measured 3 dB residual adaptation using a continuous balancing tone beyond this point recovery was not followed.

#### *Changes in purity of the adapting stimulus*

On inquiring about the test subjects own observations — something that Simmons and Dixon (1964) consider very important in all audiometric tests — it appeared that adaptation had another subjective characteristic besides loudness level decline namely a change in quality of the pure tone stimulus. It appeared to sound lower than the comparison tone, as described also by de Maré (1939) or the stimulus began to resemble noise. The ability of the ear to detect changes in quality is a very subjective characteristic which seems to account for the fact that there was no definite correlation between loudness level loss and changes in purity in the individual cases. But if there was no decline in loudness level, the subjects did not show any change in stimulus purity either. In the normal group however the change in quality behaved in much the same way as loudness decline as far as frequency was concerned the frequencies 250 and 500 Hz were in a group of their own whereas the results at 2000–6000 Hz were relatively similar as compared with the others (Fig 17 page 40). When passing from 1000 Hz to 2000 Hz, the proportion of distorted stimuli became greater as compared with those remaining unchanged. It aroused interest that at the individual frequencies the change in quality did not differ in principle from one sensation level to another. This is analogous with loudness level decline in that the loudness loss at 20–60 dB SL always represents the same proportion of the stimulation level at each individual frequency. It is of slighter amount at the level of 0 dB only. Thus the quality change at each sensation level is related to a functional change of definite degree.

#### *Excursion widths of prestimulatory balance and adaptation tracings*

The threshold amplitudes (Table 2, page 29) are of the same order of magnitude as the figures reported by numerous experimenters using the same

technique. Amplitude showed a tendency to diminish with a rise in frequency — a trend apparent also from the studies of Palva (1956 a 1957)

Prestimulatory balance amplitudes tended to exceed the threshold values in all age groups. The differences were not significant in the normal group between 250 and 1000 Hz, for which the highest threshold amplitudes seemed to be recorded, nor were they significant in the children's group. The tendency to decrease with increasing frequency as observed in the case of threshold amplitudes, did not appear in prestimulatory balance amplitudes. With rising sensation level, however there was a tendency for prestimulatory balance amplitudes to be reduced at all frequencies. An explanation is perhaps that the intensity difference limen as is well known decreases as sensation level increases and cannot fail to affect the balance amplitudes.

Diminution of amplitude with increasing sensation levels appears also in the adaptation values at the early stage which latter do not differ from prestimulatory balance amplitudes in any respect. This diminution is probably based on the fact that the change in auditory function as regards prestimulatory balance is still slight. Blegvad and Terkildsen (1966) and Blegvad (1967) studying the effect of continuous stimulation of one ear on the threshold amplitudes of the contralateral ear obtained significant differences at 1000 and 4000 Hz with white noise of 50 and 70 dB SPL, using both continuous and pulsed test tones. This interaural effect did not appear in suprathreshold balances.

The calculation of adaptation values for the early part of the balancing period was associated with difficulties in type III adaptation. In a number of cases the excursion widths could be determined immediately on starting stimulation for 15–20 sec. If adaptation was of large amount from the first few seconds on, then the tracing was sharply rising and excursion amplitudes could not be recorded until the rise began to be stabilized, i.e. when adaptation had already largely occurred. That is why it was necessary to calculate the values for beginning adaptation having regard to the entire first minute and during a comparatively short time.

The values for the latter part of balancing did not present the same difficulties these were determined for the period immediately preceding the cessation of the adapting stimulus. Statistically they did not differ significantly from the corresponding initial adaptation values nor did they differ from prestimulatory balance amplitudes. This shows that the sensibility of the ear in the adapted state, expressed with the aid of the control ear is not significantly altered. Luscher and Laepple (1958) who used the modulation technique to study the intensity difference limen at 80 dB SL, also failed to reach any results diverging from the normal. However in the fully adapted ear it was not possible to demonstrate the tendency for amplitudes to decrease with increasing sensation level which appeared in the prestimulatory balance amplitudes.

*Poststimulatory threshold*

The decline in poststimulatory threshold 60 sec after cessation of the adapting stimulus at all frequencies and sensation levels varied within 2.6 dB S.D. 3.1 (500 Hz, 80 dB SL) and 4.7 dB S.D. 3.6 (6000 Hz, 60 dB SL). The differences, compared with prestimulatory threshold, are significant. The values are of the same order as those reported by Hirsh and Bilger (1955) who used the same measuring technique and 2–4 min. stimulation of equal intensity. Introduction of a contralateral pulsed signal during stimulation seems not to affect the poststimulatory threshold shift. Neither did Hirsh (1957, 1958) find any differences between binaural and monaural stimuli in this respect. Experimenters in general have measured poststimulatory threshold shift with a continuous test tone, the result thus being modified by the adaptation caused by the test tone itself, and the resulting threshold values have therefore been higher (Hood 1950, Epstein and Schubert 1957, Palva 1958).

It is noteworthy that the sensation level in the range 20–80 dB had no effect on the result, a fact stressed also by Reger and Lierle (1954) when describing their results after 1 min. stimulation at 1000 Hz. At intensities above a fatigue limit, however, the correlation with threshold shift proved definite. This may be taken to indicate that the receptors under physiological conditions always respond to a continuous stimulus in much the same way and recovery after the exposure occurs similarly when measured at 60 sec.

In children and in those adults for whom no suprathreshold adaptation was demonstrated, poststimulatory threshold shift was nevertheless equal to that found in adults with a large amount of adaptation. This is in favour of the fact that perstimulatory suprathreshold adaptation and poststimulatory threshold shift are physiological processes of differing types.

All organ functions, hearing for instance, are associated with katabolic and anabolic processes of the metabolism. Stimulation has a definite upper limit above which the organism loses its power of compensation, and fatigue in the proper sense of the word ensues. In regard to hearing this can be demonstrated by psychoacoustic (Hood 1950, Rüdel 1954, Jerger 1956, 1958, Epstein and Schubert 1957) and electrophysiologic (Gisselsson and Sørensen 1959, Burgeat and Burgeat Menguy 1964) measurements, but also in the form of histochemical changes in the sensory cells (Vosteen 1958, 1961) and electron-microscopic changes in the mitochondria (Spoendlin 1958, Koide et al. 1960). According to Shimizu and his co-workers (1967) fatigue and adaptation were both associated with a decrease in electrical impedance between endolymph and perilymph which seemed to reflect changes occurring on hair cell membranes. Very likely the threshold shift following the physiological stimulus is an expression of katabolic processes like those referred to above and related to acoustic stimulation. This also seems to be the case, at least partly, with adaptation at threshold level which for 22 children included in this study

tested at 4000 Hz, and for 17 tested at 2000 Hz, was of the same magnitude at 3 min (6.7 dB S.D. 7.9 and 4.3 dB S.D. 5.7 respectively) as in a normal hearing adult, measured with a Békésy audiometer continuous stimulus (Palva and Palva 1961). Poststimulatory suprathreshold adaptation on the other hand, might represent a regulation mechanism, mainly by means of the efferent bundles, of the response to a continuous acoustic stimulus, and so it might, in man, be partly the result of a development connected with advancing age.

Poststimulatory functional changes did not appear in the form of changes in threshold amplitudes. The poststimulatory values were not different from the corresponding prestimulatory readings at any of the frequencies studied. The same conclusion was reached by Silbiger and Elliot (1962) under comparable experimental conditions.

## VII SUMMARY

The aim of the present study was to measure perstimulatory suprathreshold adaptation, using the decline in loudness level of a pure tone as criterion. The testing technique consisted of continuous binaural balancing of the stimulus with an interrupted comparison tone of equal frequency the pulse and pulse-intervals being of 200 msec. duration. With this pulse an onset response is obtained also in the adapted ear.

The basic tests were made on 38 normal hearing subjects aged 20–45 years (average 25.4 years) using tones of 250 500 1000 2000 3000 4000 and 6000 Hz at sensation levels of 20 40, 60 and 80 dB in such a manner that each level was tested for 32 different subjects. Adaptation was recorded as decibel units of the balance level determined with interrupted stimuli.

The prestimulatory balance level showed a tendency to decrease in relation to sensation level the means for the various frequencies at 20 dB SL varied from 19.5 to 21.8 dB at 80 dB SL from 75.2 to 80.0 dB (Table 1 page 29). Furthermore, the balance level tended to be lower at the lowest frequency 250 Hz, and at the highest frequencies (3000–6000 Hz) than it was for the middle frequencies.

Adaptation is a very stable phenomenon in one and the same subject, but individual differences proved very large. On the basis of this latter fact and the rate of growth, three types of adaptation emerged.

— Type I There is no adaptation whatever or it is very slight (less than 10 dB) in most frequency SL combinations. This type included 5 per cent of all subjects.

— Type II Adaptation develops slowly generally reaching a maximum in 2½–3 minutes exceptionally at 60 and 80 dB SL, later Adaptation may be of very large amount. This type was represented by 50 per cent of the subjects tested.

— Type III: This is characterized by rapid growth of adaptation. After 60 sec., adaptation does not change significantly and it tends to be on average of greater amount than in type II. This type included 45 per cent of all subjects.

The adaptation obtained, in the total series, during 3 min. for the seven frequencies studied and the four sensation levels is shown in Table 3 (page 31). As a function of frequency adaptation increased from 250 Hz to 2000 Hz but then remained unchanged up to 6000 Hz, at all sensation levels. Whereas 250 Hz did not differ from 500 Hz, adaptation for these two frequencies was significantly less than that recorded for 1000 Hz and higher frequencies at all sensation levels, except for 500 Hz v 1000 Hz at 60 and 80 dB SL. No significant difference was observed when 1000 Hz was compared with higher frequencies.

A rise in sensation level from 20 dB to 60 dB was associated with an increase of adaptation at all frequencies, but testing results for 250–1000 Hz at 40 dB SL were not statistically different from those measured at 60 dB SL. There was no further increase in adaptation from 60 dB to 80 dB SL in the frequency range 2000–6000 Hz adaptation seemed even to decrease.

As a function of time, the adaptation tracing generally reached a maximum in all combinations of frequencies and sensation levels in 2½–3 min. In certain cases (type II) however the increase at 60 and 80 dB SL continued for up to 3½ minutes when tested at 1000–6000 Hz.

The decline in loudness level was often accompanied with a change in the quality of the pure tone: it acquired a resemblance to noise or was of lower pitch than the comparison tone. The proportion of distorted stimuli increased with frequency so that at the four sensation levels it was less than 3 per cent for 250 Hz and 7–84 per cent for 6000 Hz. Between 1000 Hz and 2000 Hz, the proportion of changed stimuli exceeded at all sensation levels, those that remained unchanged.

Prestimulatory balance amplitudes were regularly wider than the threshold amplitudes in all frequency SL combinations, excluding 250–1000 Hz. The excursion widths measured just before the end of the adaptation tracing were of the same order as the prestimulatory balance amplitudes — an indication of the fact, demonstrated by the aid of the comparison ear that the sensibility of the ear does not change in the adapted state. The prestimulatory balance amplitudes showed a tendency to decline with increasing sensation level, but this was no longer detectable in the adapted ear.

Poststimulatory mean threshold shift measured at the stimulus frequency with an interrupted test tone at the 60 sec. point varied from 2.6 to 4.6 dB. The results were unaffected by the testing frequency and sensation levels, which is a sign of the physiological nature of stimulation in the normal hearing ear up to 80 dB SL.

In children as compared with adults, adaptation was of decidedly different character. In the group of 29 subjects aged 7 to 15 years (average 12.0 years) adaptation exceeding 10 dB (11–28 dB) could be demonstrated at 60 dB SL for 2000 or 4000 Hz in a total of 5 subjects, who were all among the oldest in their group (12–15 years). For 20 children tested the mean recorded at 3 min with a 2000 Hz stimulus was 1.0 dB S.D. 8.4 and for 23 children at 4000 Hz 0.3 dB S.D. 10.6 respectively. At 2000 Hz the prestimulatory balance level was the same as in the normal group, at 4000 Hz somewhat higher. Threshold amplitudes also were higher than in the normal group. Thus they did not differ from prestimulatory threshold amplitudes, as in the main group. In all other respects the results were consistent with the values found in the normal group.

In a group of 10 subjects aged 56 to 70 years (average 64.0 years) adaptation at 60 dB SL from 250 to 2000 Hz was of equal amount as in the normal group. At 3000, 4000 and 6000 Hz, where the age linked threshold loss is more obvious, adaptation tended to decrease as the threshold loss increased, the

difference acquiring significance at 6000 Hz. At all frequencies the prestimulatory balance amplitudes, as well as the excursion widths of the adaptation tracings, exceeded the threshold amplitudes; however the prestimulatory balance amplitudes did not differ from the excursion widths of the adaptation tracings, as they did not in the normal group. At each frequency tested the threshold amplitudes, prestimulatory balance amplitudes and the excursion widths of the adaptation tracings were all higher than in the normal group. On the other hand, there were no differences in prestimulatory balance levels and poststimulatory threshold shift.

The testing procedure used is applicable to the study of all types of hearing loss, and its value in the differential diagnosis of perceptive hearing impairments is at present under investigation.



## VIII ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I should like to express my deep gratitude to my teacher and chief Prof Tauno Palva, Head of the Department of Otolaryngology Oulu University who suggested to me the subject of the present investigation. Indeed without his help in solving practical questions, the study may not have proved possible. His unsparing help and constructive criticism were invaluable from the earliest stages of the study to the preparation of the manuscript.

My sincere thanks are also due to Miss Aino Wuolle, Mag. Phil., for the translation into English, to Mr Pertti Hyyrynen M. Sc., for the analysis of statistical problems to Mrs. Aino Janatuinen and Miss Kaija Hakkila for helping me with the measurements to the staff of the Library of Oulu University for help in assembling the required literature and to the Laboratory staff of Kuulolaitekeskus Oy for constructing and testing the apparatus.

I further wish to thank all subjects studied, who submitted to many time-consuming recordings, for their ready and helpful co-operation.

The investigation was carried out with the help of grants from the National Research Council for Medical Sciences, the Finnish Otolaryngological Society and the Oulu Research Council for Medical Sciences.

## IX. REFERENCES

- BLAIST G. von, 1929: Zu Theorie des Hörens. Über die Bestimmung des enorm reinen Ton empfinden entsprechenden Erregungsgebietes der Basilarmembran vermittelst Ermüdungerscheinungen. *Physik* 30 115
- BELL, D. W. and FAIRBRAMS, G., 1963: TTS produced by low-level tones and the effects of resting on recovery. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 35 1725.
- BELL, D. W. and STERN, H. W. 1964: Effects of extraneous tasks on auditory fatigue. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 36 1162.
- BILGIVAD, B., 1967: Contralateral masking and Békésy audiometry in normal listeners. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)*, 64 157
- BILGIVAD, B. and TERKILDSEN, K., 1966: Békésy audiometry SISI-test and contralateral masking. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)*, 62 453
- BOCCA, E., and PESTALOZZA, E., 1959: Auditory adaptation: Theories and facts. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)*, 50 349
- BONATTA, A., 1957: Sul fenomeno dell'adattamento e sui suoi rapporti con altre prov. udio-metriche liminari e sopraliminari. *Arch. Ital. Otol.* 68 946.
- BRADFORD, L. J. and GORTZENGER, C. P. 1964: A study of the order effects on tracings made with Békésy-type audiometer. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)*, 58 17
- BRUNETTI, M. 1960: Interférences sensorielles de l'adaptation continue et son comportement dans les troubles centraux de l'ouïe. *Int. Soc. Audiol., V<sup>e</sup> Congr. Bonn 1960* Lyon, 47
- 1961: Modifications de l'adaptation aud. d'origine centrale par interférences sensorielles. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)*, 53 145
- BURGESS, M., and BURGEAT-MENOUR, C., 1964: Etude des modifications du potentiel microphonique cochléaire survenant à suite de stimulations sonores intenses. *J. Physiol. (Paris)*, 56 225
- BURKHARDT, H., 1962: Die Beeinflussung der Gehöradaptation durch Gegenohrbeschallung. *Arch. Ohr Nas. K. halsheilk.* 181 437
- 1963: Die Beeinflussung der Höradaptation durch Gegenohrbeschallung. *Pflüger Archiv Ges. Physiol.* 278 89
- CAPPS, M. J. and COLLINS, W. E., 1965: Auditory fatigue: I. Influence of mental factors. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 37 167
- CARMAN, R., 1957: Clinical determination of normal auditory adaptation. *Arch. Otolaryng. (Chicago)*, 65 32.
- CARLHETTE, E. C., 1955: Permissible auditory fatigue for continuous and interrupted noise. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 27 103
- 1956: Loudness adaptation for bands of noise. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 28 863
- CAUDET, R., and CHASSE, P. 1942: Etudes sur la fatigue auditive. *Année Psychol.* 43 263
- CROCI, C., 1960: Studio comparativo sull'adattamento con il metodo del bilanciamento perimolatorio poststimolatorio. *Boll. Soc. Ital. Fonet.* 70 403
- CROCI, C., and PESTALOZZA, G., 1958: Considerazioni sull'adattamento binaturale e monaturale. *Arch. Ital. Otol.*, 69 846.
- 1960: Measuring auditory adaptation: The value of different clinical tests. *Int. Soc. Audiol., V<sup>e</sup> Congr. Bonn 1960* Lyon, 327
- CROCI, C., and SPILTA, O. 1963: La prov. di adattamento nell'epidemiologia delle ipoacusie traumatiche. *Arch. Ital. Otol.* 74 88.
- COLLINS, W. E., and CAPPS, M. J. 1965: Effects of several mental tasks on auditory fatigue. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 37 793

- DAVIS, H. DEATHERAGE, B. H., ROSENBLUT, B., FERNANDEZ, C., KIMURA, R., and SMITH, C. A. 1958: Modification of cochlear potentials produced by streptomycin poisoning and by extensive venous obstruction. *Laryngoscope* 68 596
- DAVIS, H. MORGAN C. T. HAWKINS, J. E. JR. CALAMBO, R., and SMITH, F. W. 1946 Temporary deafness following exposure to loud tones and noise. *Laryngoscope* 56 19
- 1950 Temporary deafness following exposure to loud tones and noise. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), Suppl. 88
- DILANTY, M. E., WHITTLE, L. S., and KNOX, E. C., 1966 A note on the use of self recording audiometry with children. *J. Laryng* 80 1133
- DEARSHNIRE, A. J. and DAVIS, H., 1935: The action potentials of the auditory nerve. *Amer. J. Physiol.* 113 476.
- DESMOND, J. E., 1962 Auditory-evoked potentials from cochlea to cortex as influenced by activation of the efferent olivocochlear bundle. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 34 1478
- DESMOND, J. E., and MICHIELS, K., 1958: Suppression of cortical input by thalamic stimulation. *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med.* 99 772.
- DRELL, D. D. and MALMQUIST, C., 1965 Shifts in air-conduction threshold produced by pulsed and continuous contralateral masking. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 37 631
- DIERCKX, H. A. E. VAN 1954: Quelques recherches sur les excitations expérimentales de l'oreille interne. (Adaptation in tonale, effect de masque, adaptation perturbatoire, fatigue et traumatisme sonore). *Acta Otorhinolaryng. Belg.* 8 46
- 1960 Adaptation et fatigue auditive, phénomènes analogues et leur importance clinique. Introduction du modérateur. *Int. Soc. Audiol., V<sup>e</sup> Congr. Bonn 1960* Lyon, 243
- DIX, M. R., HALLPIKE, C. S. and HOOD, J. D. 1949 Auditory adaptation in the human subject. *Nature* 164 59
- EGAN, J. P. 1955 Perturbatory fatigue as measured by heterophonic loudness balances. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 27 111
- 1955 b: Independence of the masking audiogram from the perturbatory fatigue. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 27 737
- EGAN, J. P. and THWING, E. J. 1955 Further studies on perturbatory fatigue. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 27 1225
- EPSTEIN, A., and SCHUBERT, E. D. 1957 Reversible auditory fatigue resulting from exposure to pure tone. *Arch. Otolaryng. (Chicago)*, 65 174
- EWING, A. W. G. and LITTLES, T. S. 1935 Auditory fatigue and adaptation. *Brit. J. Psychol.* 25 284
- FELDMANN, H., 1958 a Eine einfache Methode zur objektiven Messung der perturbatorischen und poststimulatorischen Adaptation oder Hörmüdigkeit. *Arch. Ohr. Nas. K. Hkpfheilk.* 171 304
- 1958 b Untersuchungen zum Phänomen der Höradaptation. *Arch. Ohr. Nas. K. Hkpfheilk.* 172 341
- 1958 Adaptationsmessung durch Verdeckung. Prinzip, Anwendung und klinische Bedeutung eines neuen Verfahrens. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)*, 49 17
- 1960 Über den Einfluss der Adaptation auf die Verdeckungsphänomene. Adaptationsmessung durch Verdeckung. *Int. Soc. Audiol. V<sup>e</sup> Congr. Bonn 1960* Lyon, 374
- 1960 b Erfahrungen mit der geräuschaudiometrischen Adaptationsmessung. *Acta Otolaryng. (Basel)* 22, 206.
- 1962 Adaptation measurement by masking. *Int. Audiol.* 1 237
- FEX, J. 1959 Augmentation of cochlear microphonic by stimulation of efferent fibres to the cochlea. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)*, 50 340.
- 1962 A ductory cavity in centrifugal and centripetal cochlear fibres in cat. *Acta Physiol. Scand.* 55 Suppl. 189
- 1963 Centrifugal activity in the olivocochlear bundle. A single unit analysis from a feedback system. *Int. Audiol.*, 2 45
- 1967 The olivocochlear feedback systems. I. A. B. Graham (Ed) *Sensory-neural hearing processes and disorders*. Little Brown & Co, Boston

- GALAMBOS, R., 1952 Microelectrode studies on medial geniculate body of cat. III Response to pure tones. *J Neurophysiol* 15 381
- 1955: Suppression of auditory nerve activity by stimulation of efferent fibres to the cochlea. *Fed Proc* 14 53.
- 1956 : Suppression of the auditory nerve activity by stimulation of efferent fibres to cochlea. *J Neurophysiol* 19 424
- 1956 b Some experiments on the neurophysiology of hearing. *Ann Otol* 61 1053
- GALAMBOS, R., and DAVIS, H., 1943: The response of single auditory nerve fibres to acoustic stimulation. *J Neurophysiol.* 6, 39
- GALAMBOS, R., SHIZATZ, G. and VERNER, V. G. 1956 Electrophysiological correlates of a conditioned response in cats. *Science* 123 376.
- GENDLSON, L., and SÖRENSEN, H., 1959 Auditory adaptation and fatigue in cochlear potentials. *Acta Otolaryng (Stockholm)*, 50 391
- GLOU, A., SCHMIDT, A., and WARD, W. D. 1958 a Observations on temporary threshold shift resulting from noise exposure. *Trans. Amer. Otol. Soc.* 46 220.
- 1958 b Observations on temporary auditory threshold shift resulting from noise exposure. *J. Am. Otol.*, 67 824
- 1958 c Observations on temporary threshold shift resulting from noise exposure. *J. Am. Otol.*, 67 838
- GOLDBERG, J. M., ADRIAN, H. O. and SMITH, P. D. 1964 Response of neurons of the superior olivary complex of the cat to acoustic stimuli of long duration. *J Neurophysiol* 27 706
- HAMM, R., 1962 Stimulation contralatérale et effet de masque. *Int. Audiol.* 1 179
- 1963 Phénomènes d'interférence centrale et d'intégration bilatérale pour des ton de longue durée. *Int. Audiol.*, 2 38
- HAMM, R., and DE MICHELIS, G., 1960 Fenomeni centrali dell'adattamento uditivo. *Minerva Otorinolaring* 10 335
- HARRIS, E. W., WELLS, B. G., and WILFELDER, C. R., 1946 Some effects of stimulus parameters on the measurement of suprathreshold auditory adaptation. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 18 409
- HARRIS, J. D. 1954 The roles of sensation level and of sound pressure in producing reversible auditory fatigue. *Laryngoscope* 64 89
- HARRIS, J. D. and RAVENHILL, A. L., 1953 Locus of short duration auditory fatigue or adaptation. *J. Exp. Psychol.* 46, 457
- 1953 b Patterns of cochlear adaptation at three frequency regions. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 25 760.
- HARRIS, J. D. RAVENHILL, A. L. and KELLEY, P. 1951 Studies in short-duration auditory fatigue I. Frequency differences as function of intensity. *J. Exp. Psychol.* 42 430.
- HAWKINS, J. E. J. and KRAUSOK, M., 1950 The recovery of auditory nerve action potentials after masking. *Science* 111 567
- HERNÁNDEZ PÉON, R., 1955 Central mechanisms controlling conduction along central sensory pathways. *Acta Neurol. Lat. Amer.* 1 256.
- HERNÁNDEZ PÉON, R., JOUVET, M., and SCHERRER, H., 1957 Auditory potentials: cochlear nucleus during acoustic habituation. *Acta Neurol. Lat. Amer.* 3 144
- HERNÁNDEZ PÉON, R., SCHERRER, H., and JOUVET, M., 1956 Modification of electric activity in cochlear nucleus during «attention» in anesthetized cats. *Science* 123 331
- HINCHIFFE, R. 1957 Threshold hangers 4 k/c produced by bands of noise. *Acta Otolaryng (Stockholm)*, 47 496.
- HIRST, I. J. 1957 Bilateral versus monaural auditory fatigue. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 29 1243
- 1958 Monaural temporary threshold shift following monaural and bilateral exposure. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 30 912.
- HIRST, I. J. and BIGGER, R. C., 1955 Auditory threshold recovery after exposure to pure tones. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 27 1186.
- HIRST, I. J. and WARD, W. D. 1951 Recovery of the audibility of clicks after exposure to pure tones and noise. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 23 633
- 1952 Recovery of the auditory threshold after strong acoustic stimulation. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 24 131

- DAVIS, H., DEATHERAGE, B. H., ROSENBLUT, B., FERNANDEZ, C., HIMURA, R., and SMITH, C. A., 1958 Modification of cochlear potentials produced by streptomycin poisoning and by external venous obstruction. *Laryngosc* **68** 596
- DAVIS, H., MORGAN, C. T., HAWKINS, J. E. J., CALAMBO, R., and SMITH, F. W. 1946: Temporary deafness following exposure to loud tones and noise. *Laryngosc* **56** 19
- 1950 Temporary deafness following exposure to loud tones and noise. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) Suppl. **88**
- DELANEY, M. E., WHITTIER, L. S. and KNOX, E. C., 1966: A note on the use of self-recording audiometry with children. *J. Laryng* **80** 1135
- DERBYSHIRE, A. J. and DAVIS, H., 1935 The action potentials of the auditory nerve. *Amer. J. Physiol* **113** 476.
- DESMET, J. E., 1962 Auditory-evoked potentials from cochlea to cortex as influenced by activation of the efferent olivocochlear bundle. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* **34** 1478
- DESMET, J. E., and MECHLER, K., 1958: Suppression of acoustic input by thalamic inhibition. *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med* **99** 772.
- DIX, D. D. and MALMQUIST, C., 1965 Shifts in air-conduction threshold produced by pulsed and continuous contralateral masking. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* **37** 631
- DUBOISE, H. A. E. VAN 1954 Quelques recherches sur les excitations expérimentales de l'oreille interne. (Adaptation in uale effect de masque adaptation perstimulatoire fatigue et traumatisme sonore). *Acta Oto-laryngol Belg* **8** 46
- 1960 Adaptation in fatigue auditive, phénomènes analogues et leur importance linque Introduction du modérateur 1: Soc. Acad. V<sup>e</sup> Congr. Bonn 1960 Lyon, 243
- DIX, M. R., HALLPIKE, C. S., and HOOD, J. D. 1949 Auditory adaptation in the human subject. *Nature* **164** 39
- EGAN, J. P. 1955 (Perium) auditory fatigue as measured by heterophonic loudness balances. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* **27** 111
- 1955 b Independence of the masking in diognm from the perstimulatory fatigue. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* **27** 737
- EGAN, J. P. and THIRING, E. J. 1955 Further studies on perstimulatory fatigue. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* **27** 1223
- EPSTEIN, A. and SCHUBERT, E. D. 1957 Reversible auditory fatigue resulting from exposure to pure tone. *Acta Otolaryng* (Chicago) **65** 174
- EVING, A. W. G. and LITTLE, T. S. 1935 Auditory fatigue and adaptation. *Brit. J. Psychol* **25** 284
- FELDMANN, H., 1958 a Eine einfache Methode zu monauralen Messung der perstimulatorischen und poststimulatorischen Adaptation oder Hörer müde. *g. Arch. Oh. N. Kehlkopfheilk* **171** 304
- 1958 b Untersuchungen zum Phänomen der Höradaptation. *Arch. Oh. Nas. Kehlkopfheilk* **172** 341
- 1958 Adaptationsmessung durch Verdeckung Prinzip Anwendung und klinische Bedeutung eines neuen Verfahrens. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), **49** 17
- 1960 Über den Einfluss der Adaptation auf die Verdeckungsphänomene Adaptationsmessung durch Verdeckung. *Int. Soc. Androl. V<sup>e</sup> Congr. Bonn 1960 Lyon*, 374
- 1960 b Erfahrungen mit der geräuschaudometrischen Adaptationsmessung. *Pract. Otolaryngol* (Basel) **22** 206.
- 1962 Adaptation measurement by masking. *Int. Androl.* **1** 237
- FEX, J. 1959 Augmentation of cochlear microphonic by stimulation of efferent fibres to the cochlea. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) **50** 340
- 1962 Auditory activity centrifugal and centripetal cochlear fibres in cat. *Acta Physiol. Scand* **53** Suppl. 189
- 1963 Centrifugal activity in the olivocochlear bundle. A single unit analysis from a feedback system. *Int. Androl* **2** 45
- 1967 The olivocochlear feedback systems. In A. B. G. Gahm (Ed) Sensoryneural hearing processes and disorders Little Brown & Co, Boston.

- 1965: The significance of the olivo-cochlear bundle for the adaptation mechanism of the inner ear. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), 59: 124
- LÜSCHER, E., and LAEPPLER, O. 1958 Der Einfluss der Beschallung auf die Intensitätsunterschiedschwelle des normalen und kranken Ohres. *Arch. Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 172: 299
- LÜSCHER, E., and ZWISLOCKI, J. 1946 Über Abklingvorgänge des Ohres. *Pact Otorhinolaryng* (Basel), 8: 531
- 1947 The decay of sensation and the remainder of adaptation after short tone impulses on the ear. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm) 35: 428
- 1949 Adaptation of the ear to sound stimuli. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* 21: 135
- MANTEGAZZINI, P., PELLEGRINI, A., and PREVALOZZA, C., 1956 Rilevati elettrofisiologici clinici sull'adattamento dell'apparato uditivo. *Riv. Audiol. Pratica*, 6: 91
- MAZZINI, R., PEARSON, A., and NICELLI, F. 1956 Il valore clinico prov. di adattamenti nella presbiacusia. *Minerva Otorinolaring* 6: 272.
- DE MASI, G. 1937 Ein neues Phänomen im Ohr. Nachwirkende Verdeckung. *Skand. Arch. Physiol.*, 77: 57
- 1939 Audiometrische Untersuchungen über das Verhalten des normalen und des schwerhörigen Ohres bei funktioneller Belastung; neben Bemerkungen zur Theorie des Gehörs. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), Suppl. 31
- 1948 Investigation into the functions of the auditory apparatus in perception deafness. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), Suppl. 74: 107
- 1951 Auditory fatigue and adaptation. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), 40: 104
- MARÉTIOT, R., MATHIEU, C., and SÉNÉTTÉ, D. 1961 L'inhibition centrale de la fatigue auditive. *Ann. Otolaryng* (Paris) 78: 339
- MARÉTIOT, R., SÉNÉTTÉ, D., and MATHIEU, C., 1962 Control central de l'admission et des tests audiométriques. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), 54: 38.
- MILLS, A. W. 1960 Lateralization of high-frequency tones. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* 32: 132.
- MONROE J. FODOR, F. 1953 Monaural loudness-balance-test and determination of recruitment degree with short sound-impulses. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), 43: 573
- 1959 Relation between loudness and duration of tonal pulses. I. Response of normal ears to pure tones longer than tick-pitch thresholds. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* 31: 1128
- MURPHY, W. A., and GARDNER, M. B., 1950 Loudness patterns — new approach. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* 22: 177
- PALVA, T. 1955 Scandies on perstimulatory adaptation in various groups of deafness. *Laryngoscope* 65: 829
- 1956 Absolute thresholds for continuous and interrupted pure tones. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), 46: 129
- 1956 b Recruitment test — low sensation levels. *Laryngoscope* 66: 1519
- 1957 Self recording threshold audiometry and recruitment. *Arch. Otolaryng* (Chicago) 61: 591
- 1958 Post-stimulatory fatigue in diagnosis. *Arch. Otolaryng* (Chicago), 67: 228
- 1961 Recruitment and post-stimulatory fatigue diagnosis. *J. Laryng* 75: 216.
- 1964 Auditory adaptation. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), 57: 207
- PALVA, T. KÁJÁ, J., and PALA, A. 1967 Auditory adaptation at threshold intensities. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), Suppl. 224: 195
- PALA, A. T. and PALA, A., 1961 Masking audiometry with self recording audiometry I. Normal hearing. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), 53: 405
- 1963 Masking audiometry with self-recording audiometer II. Clinical evaluation. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockholm), 56: 371
- 1964 Auditory adaptation. Clinical evaluation. *J. Laryng* 80: 437
- PIETZ, H. A. J. 1927 An experimental study of fatigue in the auditory mechanism. *Amer. J. Psychol.*, 38: 39
- PIETZ, F. A. J. 1929 A further experiment on auditory fatigue. *Br. J. Psychol* 20: 38.
- PINETTA, C., and PINO, F.: 1962 Ricerche di acustica fisiologica. Interdipendenza uditiva e testi di fatica uditiva. *Riv. Audiol. Pratica*, 12: 179

- PESTALOZZA, G. 1953: Valore pratico delle prove adattamento nella diagnosi differenziale delle sordità. *Arch Ital Otol* 64 835
- PESTALOZZA, G. and CROCI, C., 1962: Measuring auditory adaptation: The value of different clinical tests. *Laryngosc* 72 240.
- PEALZ, R. K., 1962 a: Centrifugal inhibition of afferent second order neuron in the cochlear nucleus by sound. *J Acoust Soc Amer* 34 1472.
- 1962 b: Einfluss schallgenerierter Hörbahnanteile auf den de-afferentierten Nucleus cochlearis (Meerschweinchen). *Pflüger Arch G Physiol* 274 533
- 1962 c: Erregung efferenter Einzelneuronen innerhalb der Cochlea durch kontralaterale Beschallung mit Klickfolgen (Meerschweinchen). *Z Biol* 113 215
- 1966: Gekreuzte, zentrifugale Hemmungen und Erregungen im Nucleus cochlearis durch lange Klickfolgen (Meerschweinchen). *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 186 9
- POLLACK, I. 1964: Interaction of forward and backward masking. *J Aud Res*, 4 63
- PRICE, G. R., and OATMAN, L. C., 1967: Central factors in auditory fatigue — an artifact? *J Acoust Soc Amer* 42 475
- RAAB, D. H., 1961: Forward and backward masking between acoustic click. *J Acoust Soc Amer* 33 137
- RANKE, O. F. 1955: Die Fortentwicklung der Hörtheorie und ihre klinische Bedeutung. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 167 1
- RASSMUSSEN, G. L., 1942: An efferent cochlear bundle. *Anat Rec* 82 441
- 1953: Further observations of the efferent cochlear bundle. *J Comp Neurol* 99 61
- 1953: Descending or feed back connections of auditory system of the cat. *Amer J Physiol*, 183 653
- RAWDON SMITH, A. F. 1935: Auditory fatigue. *Brit. J Psychol* 25 77
- 1936: Experimental deafness. *Brit. J Psychol* 26, 233
- RAWNSLEY, A. I. and HARRIS, J. D. 1952: Studies in short-duration auditory fatigue II Recovery time. *J Exp Psychol* 43 138
- REUTER, S. N. and KOS, C. M. 1952: Clinical measurements and implications of recruitment. *Ann Otol* 61 810.
- REGER, S. N. and LIEBKE, D. M. 1954: Changes in auditory acuity produced by low and medium intensity level exposures. *Trans. Amer. Acad. Otolaryng.* 58 433
- RIACH, W. D., ELLIOT, D. N. and FRAZIER, L., 1964: Effect of repeated exposure to high-intensity sound. *J Acoust Soc Amer* 36 1193.
- RODDA, M. 1962: Recovery from temporary threshold shift. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)* 55 553
- 1965: A further study of recovery from temporary threshold shift. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)* 60 83
- ROSENBLITH, W. A., GALAMBOS, R., and HARRIS, J. J. 1950: The effects of exposure to loud tones upon animal and human responses to acoustic ticks. *Science* 111 569
- ROSENZWEIG, M. R., and ROSENBLITH, W. A., 1953: Responses to successive auditory stimuli at the cochlea and at the auditory cortex. *Psychol Monographs* 67 5
- ROSSI, G. and COSTENLA, G. 1965: The efferent innervation of the inner ear: A historical-bibliographical survey. *Laryngosc* 75 212.
- RUBIN, R. J. and SEKULA, J. 1960: Inhibition of central auditory responses. *Science* 131 163
- RUMDI, L., 1954: Different types and degrees of acoustic trauma by experimental exposure of the human and guinea pig to pure tones and noise. *Ann Otol*, 63 702.
- SAXEN, A. 1937: Pathologie und Klinik der Altersschwerhörigkeit. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)*, Suppl. 23
- SCHUBERT, H., 1944: Höreinstimmung und Hördauer. *Arch Ohr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 51 19
- SELTZER, W. 1964: Adaptation and fatigue. *J Acoust Soc Amer* 36, 2202.
- SERGEANT, R. L. and HARRIS, J. D. 1963: The relation of poststimulatory adaptation to other short-term threshold-shift mechanisms. *J Speech Hearing Dis.*, 28 27
- SEWART, H., KOMASHI, T. and TAKEMURA, F. 1967: A experimental study of adaptation and fatigue of cochlear microphonics. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockholm)* 47 358

- SILVER, H. R., and ELLIOT D. N. 1964. Auditory fatigue and changes in audiometer penex cursor size. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 34 746.
- SIMMONS, F. B., and DIXON, R. F. 1964. On the importance of the question 'What do You hear?' *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chic go), 80 167.
- SMALL, A. M. J. 1963. Auditory adaptation. I. Jerger J. (Ed) *Modern developments in audiology*. Academic Press, New York and London.
- SMALL, A. M. J., BRANDT J. F. and COX, P. G. 1962. Loudness function of signal duration. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 34 513.
- SMALL, A. M. J. and MINISTIE, F. D. 1961. Effect of matching time on peristimulatory adaptation. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 33 1028.
- SOMMER, H., 1965. The effect of contralateral olivo-cochlear bundle stimulation on the cochlear potentials evoked by acoustic stimuli of various frequencies and intensities. *Acta Otolaryg.* (Stockholm), 60 59.
- SPOENDLIN, H., 1958. Submikroskopische Veränderungen am Cortischen Organ des Meeresschweinchens nach akustischer Belastung. *Acta Otorhinolaryng.* (Basel), 20 197.
- SPOON, A. 1965. Adaptation of action potentials in the cochlea. *Int. Audiol.* 4 154.
- STALOFF, J. and MINDESS, H., 1957. Presbycusis. *Trans. Amer. Acad. Ophthalmol. Otolaryng.* 81 141.
- SALK, E. W. 1963. Bekesy audiometry with normal-hearing and hearing-impaired children. *J. Aud. Res.* 3 73.
- 1966. Jerger types in fixed frequency Bekesy audiometry with normal and hyperacoustic children. *J. Aud. Res.* 6, 135.
- SØRENSEN, H., 1959. Auditory adaptation in nerve action potentials recorded from the cochlea in guinea pigs. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockholm), 50 438.
- 1960. A threshold tone decay test. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockholm), Suppl. 118 356.
- 1962 a. Clinical application of continuous threshold recording. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockholm), 54 403.
- 1962 b. Initial auditory adaptation. I. I. normal individuals. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockholm), 55 299.
- TANIGUCHI, K., 1955. Über Hörermüdung und akustisches Trauma und deren Beeinflussung durch vegetativ wirksame Pharmaka. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockholm), 45 65.
- TRUJILLO, W. R., CACIAS, N. B., KEMP, E. H., and LOVER, K., 1951. Microelectrode studies of neural auditory activity of cat. I. I. fovea colliculi. *J. Neurophysiol.* 14 289.
- TRUING, E. J. 1955. Spread of peristimulatory fatigue of pure tones to neighbouring frequencies. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 27 741.
- 1956. Masked threshold and its relation to the duration of the masked stimulus. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 28 406.
- TRUING, T. 1965. Studies on the peristimulatory loudness adaptation. *Int. Audiol.* 4 138.
- VOSTER, K. H., 1958. Die Erschöpfung der Phonorezeptoren nach funktioneller Belastung. *Arch. Ohr Nas. K. H. Kopfheilk.* 172 489.
- 1961. Neue Aspekte zur Biologie und Pathologie des Innenohres. *Arch. Ohr Nas. K. H. Kopfheilk.* 178 1.
- WARD, W. D. 1960. Recovery from high values of temporary threshold shift. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 32 497.
- 1963. Auditory fatigue and masking. I. Jerger J. (Ed) *Modern developments in audiology*. Academic Press, New York and London.
- 1965. Temporary threshold shifts following monaural and binaural exposure. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 38 121.
- 1966. *Anderson Ann. Rev. Psychol.* 17 273.
- WARD, W. D., GORDON, A., and SELAS, D. L., 1959. Temporary threshold shift from octave band noise: Applications to damage-risk criteria. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 31 522.
- WARTICK, J. S., and TOSTER, J. V. 1963. Central factor in pure-tone auditory fatigue. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 35 1967.
- WITTECK, B. A., 1966. Experimental studies on auditory adaptation. *Int. Audiol.* 5 3.



- WOOD A G 1930 U publ. thems. Univ Virginia, 1930 Cited by Pestalozza, G and Ciocc, C., 1962.
- WRIGHT H. N 1956; U published doctoral dissertation. Northwestern University E anston Illinois, 1956. Cited by Jerger J 1957
- 1959 A d t ry adaptat on in noise. *J Acoust Soc Amer* 31 1004
- 1960; Measurement of perstimulatory auditory ad ptation. *J Acoust Soc Amer* 32 1358
- 1963 The problem f measuring auditory adaptation. *I t. A diol.* 2 206.
- ZWISLOCKI J 1960 Relation of adaptation to fatigue, masking and recruitment. *Int Soc Audiol & Congr Bonn 1960* Lyon, 279
- ZWISLOCKI, J and FELDMAN, R. S., 1956; Just noticeable differences dichotic phase. *J Acoust. Soc Amer* 28 860.
- ZWISLOCKI, J and PIRRODDA, E., 1952; On the adaptation, fatigue and acoustic trauma of the ear *E perients* 8 279
- ZWISLOCKI, J PIRRODDA, E., and RUBIN, H 1959; On some poststimulatory effects at the threshold of audibility *J Acoust Soc Amer* 31 9



COVER

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wikströms Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1948

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 243

**PAGET'S DISEASE OF THE TEMPORAL BONE**

*A Clinical and Histopathological Survey*

**D GARFIELD DAVIES**

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVÄGÄN 16, 11523 STOCKHOLM**

COVER

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1944

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

**S U P P L E M E N T U M 242**

**PAGET'S DISEASE OF THE TEMPORAL BONE**

*A Clinical and Histopathological Survey*

**D GARFIELD DAVIES**

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVÄNGEN 14, 115 23 STOCKHOLM**



*From the Department of Otolaryngology  
Massachusetts Eye and Ear Infirmary Boston*

# PAGET'S DISEASE OF THE TEMPORAL BONE

*A Clinical and Histopathological Survey*

D GARFIELD DAVIES F R C S

*A. P. Warner Clinical and Research  
Fellow in Otolaryngology Massachusetts Eye and Ear Infirmary and  
Harvard Medical School*



*Present Appointment: Chief Assistant, Ear Nose & Throat Department,  
St. Bartholomew's Hospital, London, E.C.1*

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY  
*Almqvist & Wiksells*  
BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG  
UPPSALA 1968

## CONTENTS

Abstracts	5
Introduction	7
Incidence and Aetiology	9
Clinical Features	11
Complications	21
X Ray Appearances	23
Histopathology	26
Treatment	38
Summary and Conclusions	40
Zusammenfassung	43
Acknowledgements	44
References	44



Paget's original observations are outlined and it is observed that osteitis deformans probably existed in ancient times.

The incidence of Paget's disease increases with age, being one per cent in the fifth decade and eleven per cent in the ninth decade. The average age of the present group of 236 cases under review is 63 years. Osteitis deformans may be inherited as a sex linked recessive or as a simple Mendelian dominant gene. A family history is reported in 3 patients in the present study.

The paper reviews reports of deafness and vestibular disorders in this condition and the results of earlier tuning fork tests, audiological and radiological investigations in the present series is then presented. The incidence of tinnitus, vertigo and headache is outlined and complications are described, the most sinister being the development of osteogenic sarcoma.

Histopathological features of the disease process and its presentation in the temporal bone are described and the findings in temporal bones removed from patients suffering from osteitis deformans are then reported. The place of medical and surgical treatment is finally presented.



## INTRODUCTION

"My head is twice as big as yours,  
They therefore need must fit

*William Cowper (1731-1800)*

Paget's disease of bone was described in the latter part of the 19th century although it probably existed in ancient times. A skull from the Gallo-Roman era (Astre 1937) a parietal bone taken from an Egyptian tomb (Hutchinson, 1889) a femur from the neolithic period (Pales, 1929) several paleo-pathological specimens of American Indians (Denninger 1933 and Fischer 1935) were all thought to show features of Paget's Disease. In 1885 Butlin examined specimens in the South Kensington Natural History Museum and found the skull of a Neanderthal man which had Pagetic changes.

Czerny in 1873 named the disease *ostitis deformans*, but it was Sir James Paget of St Bartholomew's Hospital, London, who correlated and described the clinical and pathological features. In his first report in 1877 Paget analysed the case history of a man he had been following for 20 years (Fig 1) and reported four other cases of the condition. He pointed out the distinction between this disease and the several forms of hyperostosis, osteoperiostitis and other diseases among which it had been confused. Paget considered the disease to be an inflammation of bone and said, "I would suggest that for brief reference and for the present, it may be called after its more striking character *Ostitis deformans*." He then thought that a better name would be given when more was known of the condition. Paget had seen an additional eighteen cases in 1889 of "a rare form of chronic inflammation of bones accompanied by change of shape, size and direction of the diseased bones." Although two other cases may have been presented earlier (Rullier 1812, and Virany 1867) it was undoubtedly Paget who provided the most exact clinical picture. Since his description no-one has suggested a better name for this condition than that of "Paget's disease" for there is no conclusive evidence that the basic pathology is inflammation, nor is the disease in the majority of cases deforming. Thus the term "*ostitis deformans*" is perhaps rather less desirable than "Paget's disease." Although there are many reports alleging the occurrence of this condition in animals (Hutchinson, 1889 Orr 1937 and White, 1922) the accounts given do not seem convincing and Paget's disease appears to be restricted to humans.

In an attempt to review some of the general features and more especially the effect of the disease on the temporal bone the records of 230 patients

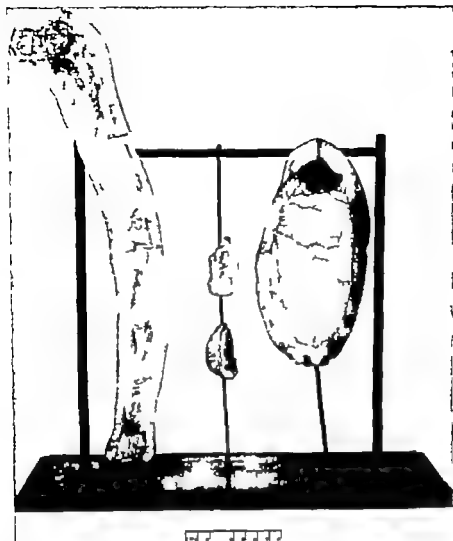


Fig. 1 The right leg. Part of the vertebra of the skull, patella and tibia affected by osteoid formans. The specimen was presented to St. Bartholomew's Hospital by Sir James Paget and the photograph is reproduced by kind permission of the Curator of the Museum.

with Paget's disease who were attending or had attended the Massachusetts General Hospital or Massachusetts Eye and Ear Infirmary were examined. More recently a further six patients were evaluated at St. Bartholomew's Hospital. Twenty-eight of these patients had a full clinical examination carried out in 1965-6. It is the object of this report to briefly review the general features and published data and then to emphasize radiological, audiometric and histo-pathological findings.

## INCIDENCE AND AETIOLOGY

The real incidence of the disease was not fully realised until Schmorl's classical work in Dresden, on the anatomical pathology of the disease, was reported in 1930. This author found 138 cases of Paget's disease among 4614 autopsies of patients older than forty years, an incidence of three per cent. A similar figure was obtained by Collins (1956) in a more recent survey in Yorkshire. The incidence increases with age, and is still only one per cent in the fifth decade. Hereafter it rises steadily, reaching five to eleven per cent in the ninth decade. In the patients reviewed in this report the youngest patient was thirty six years of age and the oldest was eighty nine. The average age of the group was sixty-three years. In rare cases, Paget's disease may start in young individuals and Ford (1960) quotes the case of Paget's disease beginning in a child of one year of age. Males are thought to be affected more frequently than females (Porretta *et al.* 1957, Pygott 1957) in the ratio of 4:3 although a few series have reported an equal sex influence (Gutman & Kasabach 1936 and Kay *et al.* 1934). In the present review of 236 cases, 130 patients were male and 106 were female. Of these, there were two Negro males and three Negro females.

Since the description of the malady little progress has been made in the search for an aetiological factor. Plausible and bizarre theories have been advanced since Paget described the disease as a chronic inflammatory process, although most of these now have only an historical interest. Causative factors were thought to be infection, syphilis or neurotrophic conditions. Endocrine glands malfunction have been blamed and it was suggested that an increase in growth hormone secretion might influence the local "enzyme mechanisms of calcification" (Rosenkrantz *et al.*, 1952) but immunological analyses for growth hormone carried out by de Deux chauxes & Krane (1964) were found to be within the normal range.

Many of these theories were based on inadequate data and have fallen in the path of modern micro-analytical and histopathological advances. No one has stood the test of time and not one offers the explanation for the basic process, i.e. the anarchic destruction of bone without respect for the existing architecture accompanied by an extraordinary increase in all the elements of the local vasculature forming the periosseal plexus (de Deux chauxes & Krane, 1964).

The hypertrophy and hyperplasia of the vessels, and particularly of the arterioles, is such that one gets the impression that Pagetic bone is built at a different scale than normal bone (Rutishauser *et al.* 1954). Whether this vascular hypertrophy is secondary to bone disease or whether it represents a primary cause of the disease is still in dispute. Certainly the increase in vasculature is not secondary to increased bone metabolism since the oxygen saturation of the venous blood is high (Lequime & Denolin





instance by Dickson *et al* (1945) Figure 2 summarises the history of a family who were attending St. Bartholomew's Hospital. Another English family in which six cases of Paget's disease have occurred in three generations has recently been reported by Jones and Reed (1967). Otosclerosis also has been reported in identical twins by Albrecht (1922) Shambaugh (1935) and Fowler (1947). Shambaugh's 1950 study of two thousand fenestrated patients yielded a positive family history in fifty four per cent. The mode of inheritance of otosclerosis cannot be established with certainty but the results of genetic analysis accord best with the hypothesis of a monohybrid autosomal dominant inheritance with a penetration of the pathological gene of between twenty five and forty per cent (Ruedl, 1963). While some wonder whether or not hereditary plays a significant role in Paget's disease (Gutman & Kasabach, 1936) others cite evidence that the disease is inherited as a sex linked recessive (Ashley Montagu 1940) or more probably as a simple autosomal Mendelian dominant gene (McHusick 1966). In the 236 cases reviewed, a family history of Paget's disease was discovered in eight patients. Three of these patients had Paget's disease of the skull and an associated conductive deafness. Goodhill (1961) recorded the successful mobilisation of a stapes apparently partially fixed by Paget's bone in a patient with a family history of osteitis deformans.

When a study is undertaken to determine the role of hereditary in a disease such as Paget's several difficulties are encountered. By the time the disease appears, late in life parents are likely to have died and the siblings may be widely scattered geographically and the children will probably not yet be old enough to have developed the disease. In the second place Paget's disease is often subtle in its manifestations. A very high proportion of the affected persons are asymptomatic and the changes in bone are discovered only incidentally upon radiological examination made for unrelated purposes or possibly in a search for an explanation of an otherwise obscure elevation of serum alkaline phosphatase.

The occurrence of angiod streaks (two patients in this study) in a certain number of patients with Paget's disease, an anomaly in common with pseudoxanthoma elasticum as well as the occasional association of Paget's disease with pseudoxanthoma elasticum (Larmande, 1957 Noretti *et al.*, 1962 Shaffer *et al.*, 1937 Woodcock, 1952) suggested to McHusick (1966) the possibility that osteitis deformans may be a more generalised disorder of connective tissue.

## CLINICAL FEATURES

It is not within the scope of this paper to cover every aspect of Paget's disease and its complications but to outline and stress some of the features that may be of special interest to otolaryngologists. Although excellent

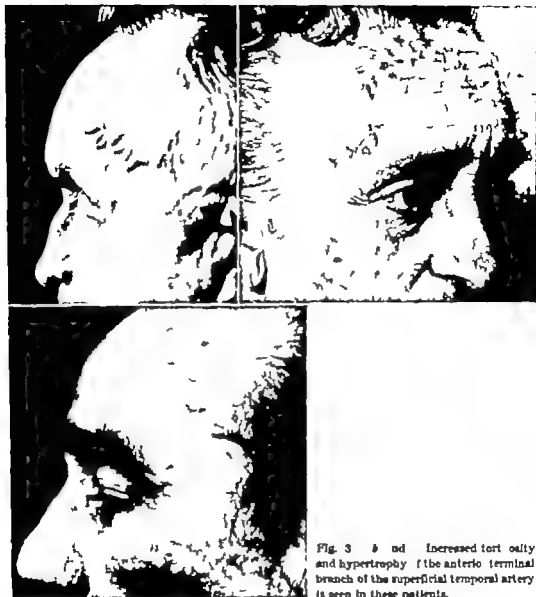


Fig. 3. a and b. Increased tortuosity and hypertrophy of the anterior terminal branch of the superficial temporal artery is seen in these patients.

reviews on large series of cases have outlined the general symptomatology (Dickson *et al.* 1945; Gutman & Parsons, 1936; Kay 1929; Newman 1946; Lackard *et al.*, 1901; Roberts & Cohen 1928; Rosenkrantz *et al.*, 1932; Sugarbaker 1940) the fully fledged clinical picture of a patient with an enlarged skull progressive kyphosis with shortening of stature is rarely seen. However the subclinical nature of the disease as mentioned above is a relatively common form of bone disease. The bones most frequently involved are those subjected to the greatest stress. However Sugarbaker stated in 1940 that the skull, spine and pelvis, femur and fibula are the bones most frequently involved in the order named.

Of the 236 patients that are being considered in this review 165 had skull involvement. In his first report (187) stated that his original



Fig 4 *Top Left* Patient (R.D.) in her twenties. *Bottom Left* Same patient when 33 years of age. *Right* Same patient when 73 years of age

patient "began to be somewhat deaf" and in his second paper in 1882 case number six was said to have impairment of hearing. Although Leri in 1913 drew particular attention to the narrowing of all basal foramina, including the foramen magnum, in advanced Paget's disease of the skull the interest of otologists in the deafness of this condition was first aroused when Otto Mayer (1913) pointed out the similarities between the histological picture of Paget's disease and otosclerosis. By 1917 he was able to report a study of nine cases of the disease in which there was a hearing impairment and also reviewed two temporal bones with this condition.

Nager in 1919 presented some evidence to explain the nerve impairment on the basis of involvement of branches of the auditory nerve by the formation of new bone. Jenkins in 1923 examined nine patients with Paget's disease of the skull and found that the patients "were invariably deaf". In a study of four patients with Paget's disease Wyllie (1923) found that two patients had impaired hearing and noted that the hearing deficit was of the middle ear type. Goldstein in 1926 reported the results of an extensive review of some four hundred cases which had appeared in the literature. He noted a history of impaired hearing in only twenty cases, an incidence of five per cent.

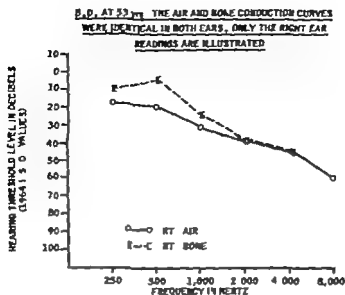


Fig. 5. Audiograph of the patient (B.D.) seen in Fig. 4 at 53 years.

Further studies were later reported by Weber (1930) Brunner (1931) and Nager & Meyer (1932)

In 1934 Barth discussed four patients and reviewed twenty four cases from the literature including cases of both Paget's and von Recklinghausen's disease of bone. In six patients there was inner ear deafness and in eight a combined middle ear and inner ear hearing deficit was noted. Barth found that the vestibular symptoms played an even greater role than the disturbance of hearing in these patients. As the individual cases were more critically examined from an otological viewpoint, the alteration in auditory function became more apparent. In 1936 Lindsay & Perlman reviewed

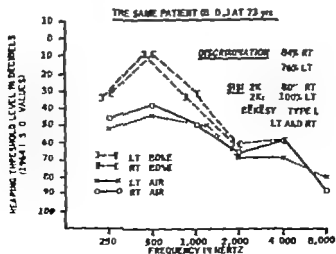


Fig. 6. Audiograph of the patient (B.D.) seen in Fig. 4 at 73 years.

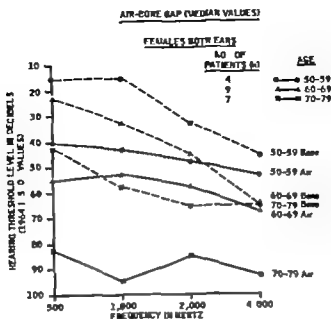


Fig. 7

twenty five cases of Paget's disease but only seven patients had skull involvement. In this latter group, three patients had tinnitus but there was no reported vertigo. The most striking feature in four patients was a high tone bone conduction loss but in two of the patients a pinkish hue was noted on the promontory through intact tympanic membranes. Lindsay and Perlman postulated that these changes could have involved the annular

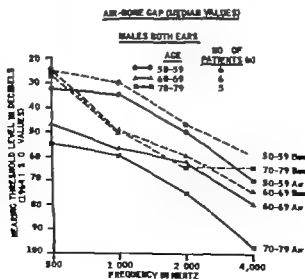


Fig. 8

MEDIAN AIR CONDUCTION HEARING  
LOSS AS A FUNCTION OF AGE

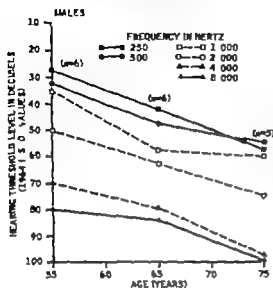


Fig 9

MEDIAN AIR CONDUCTION HEARING  
LOSS AS A FUNCTION OF AGE

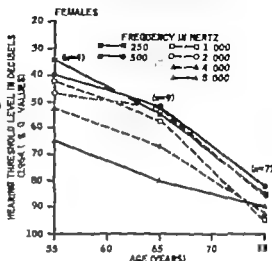
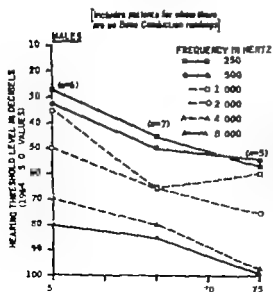


Fig 10

ligament or footplate of the stapes and might have accounted for the marked conductive loss in two patients. In ninety nine cases of Paget's disease Fowler (1937) reported deafness as the initial complaint in only three cases but in forty-one patients it was later the major symptom. Tinnitus

MEDIAN AIR CONDUCTION HEARING  
LOSS AS A FUNCTION OF AGE



1

MEDIAN AIR CONDUCTION HEARING  
LOSS AS A FUNCTION OF AGE

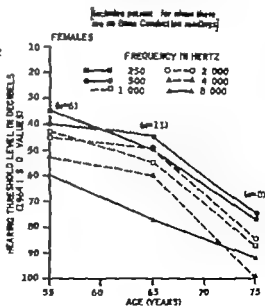


Fig 12

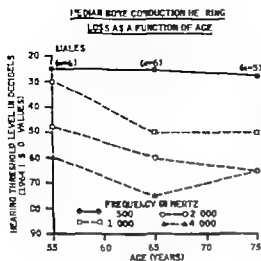


Fig 13

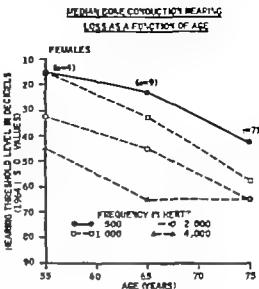


Fig 14

was present in ten instances and rotatory vertigo in twenty three Fowler concluded that the deafness usually occurring with Paget's disease is a "nerve deafness and affects the whole tonal scale or only the high tones"

In a review of 111 patients, Rosenkrantz *et al* (1952) found that bone pain was present in fifty five patients with Paget's disease defective hearing in fourteen, headaches in fourteen, vertigo in eight and gait disturbance in eight patients. Recently Clemis *et al* (1967) examined seventeen patients with proven Paget's disease and hearing loss. The hearing deficit was found most frequently to be of the mixed type. The audiometric tests used did not suggest any evidence of a retrocochlear focus of the disease to account for the sensori-neural hearing loss.

Although small plaques of "calcification" in the auricle have been reported in Paget's disease, no similar pathology was noted in the group under review. There is an occasional association of osteitis deformans with gout and three patients in this study were diagnosed as having this latter condition. It seems likely that the earlier observations probably described tophi which occur in gout. Klaykens & Geldof (1965) have stated that abnormal curvature of the external auditory meatus and exostoses are frequently found in patients with osteitis deformans of the skull. Goodhill (1980) reported a patient with marked curvature of the external auditory meatus and Fowler (1937) noted bony overgrowth causing such marked obstruction that a stapedectomy was necessary. A similar observation was mentioned by Sjogren & Duval in 1967 and in the present study one patient was found to have narrowing and mild tortuosity of the bony external auditory meatus as a result of Pagetic changes. One patient had prominent bony exostoses, but had been a very active swimmer for most of his life.



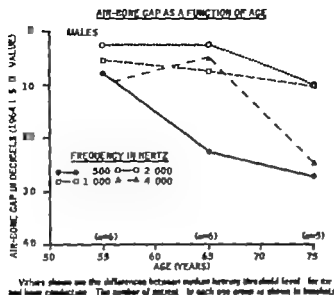


Fig 11

In many patients with Paget's disease of the skull prominence and tortuosity of the terminal branches of the superficial temporal artery was observed. Figure 3 illustrates three patients with hypertrophy of the anterior terminal branch of the superficial temporal artery and although this condition is not pathognomonic of Paget's disease its occurrence associated with deafness should make the clinician aware of the possibility of osteitis deformans. Of the 236 patients studied that is, those with skull involvement and/or long bone involvement it was found that deafness was present in ninety seven patients. Of these fourteen complained of deafness but had no evidence of the disease on plain skull X rays.

On reviewing the earlier records of patients with Paget's disease it was obvious that little attention had been paid to the objective testing of eighth nerve function by the general physicians that had examined these patients. Nevertheless, tuning fork tests alone had been carried out in certain cases and in these patients with skull involvement it was found that a negative Rinne (512) was observed in eleven patients, positive Rinne in three and equal in one case.

Nine patients had in the past air conduction audiograms carried out when they had attended the outpatients departments complaining of hearing loss. Full pure tone air and bone audiograms were obtained in forty patients, twenty-eight of these were examined in 1965 and 1966 and the readings from the remainder were obtained from the patients records and adjusted to 1964 ISO values.

One patient who had been followed up for twenty years, had remarkable changes in her appearance with the passage of time and this is illustrated. Fig. 4 is her audiogram at the age of fifty-three (Fig 5) and her present hearing at 73 years later is shown in Fig 6.

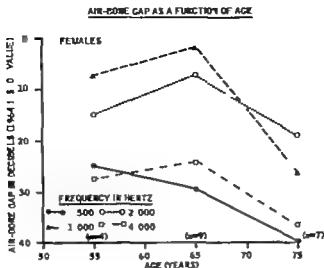


Fig 16 \ 1 et shown are the differences between mean hearing threshold level of air and bone conduction. The number of patients in each age group is shown in brackets.

The majority of patients examined were found to have a definite conductive deafness in the low frequencies the air/bone gap being greatest at the 500 frequency. The air/bone gap in the age group (a) 50-59 years, (b) 60-69 years, (c) 70-79 years for both male and female are seen in Figs 7 and 8. Bone conduction is seen to be better in the female samples and the air/bone gap is greater in this group. Air conduction, bone conduction and the air/bone gap as a function of age is plotted in Figs 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15 and 16.

## SPEECH DISCRIMINATION SCORES

Speech discrimination scores were carried out in twenty four patients. Scores range from six per cent to one hundred per cent, the median values were

Age group	Number of patients	Median discrimination score
50-59	7	92 %
60-69	9	84 %
70-79	8	78 %

In all but one patient similar scores were obtained in both ears but female patients usually had a ten per cent better discrimination score than male patients in the same age group.

### *Short Increment Sensibility Index (SISI)*

Twenty patients had this test carried out and in general the results agreed with Clemis *et al* (1967) in that at low frequencies the SISI scores were low but were high above 1000 Hz. At 4000 Hz all but one of the patients had SISI scores above eighty per cent.

### *Békésy Audiometry*

Eight patients had Békésy audiograms carried out and six tracings (twelve ears) were found to be of the Jerger Type I variety. One patient had a Type IV pattern and one patient could not be fitted into the Jerger classification.

## TINNITUS

Thirty-one of the 163 patients with skull involvement experienced tinnitus. In the majority (twenty) this was of a pulsatile nature and four patients noted that the frequency of the tinnitus was synchronous with their pulse. Six patients had bilateral ligation of their external carotid arteries carried out in the past in an attempt to slow the progress of the disease and to aid the vascular headaches and four of these noted temporary abatement of the tinnitus. It should be mentioned that a large number of patients with Paget's disease take aspirin as this relieves pain and like cortisone appears to induce a transient phase during which resorption is more decreased than bone formation. One patient experienced tinnitus on high aspirin dosage which disappeared soon after the removal of the drug.

## HEADACHES

In advanced Paget's disease headaches were found to be a prominent feature and a constant finding in every patient with more than minimal basilar impression. The most common seat of the discomfort was the occipital region but the temporal and frontal region was also a common localisation. When the Paget's disease was mild, the headaches were not pronounced and often well localised. In the earlier stages the headaches were intermittent but as Pagetic changes became more severe the headaches were constant.

## VERTIGO

Thirty-five patients of the 163 cases with skull involvement experienced vertigo. From the earlier records it was noted that one caloric test had

been carried out and this was normal but the diagnosis of Menière's disease had been given to five other patients although no caloric or other vestibular function tests were recorded. In the sub-group of twenty-eight patients seven patients complained of vertigo. Using the minimal caloric test of Kobrak it was found that two patients had bilaterally equal diminished caloric reaction and one patient had evidence of right canal paresis. The remaining caloric tests were normal. Patients with advanced osteitis deformans of the skull frequently have marked Pagetic changes in the cervical spine and this together with occipital condyle invagination will produce symptoms of vertebrobasilar ischaemia.

## COMPLICATIONS

The most sinister complication of Paget's disease is undoubtedly the development of osteogenic sarcoma. Eight of the patients under review developed sarcomatous changes. Coley & Sharp (1931) on reviewing seventy-one cases of osteogenic sarcoma reported that twenty-eight per cent were associated with Paget's disease and in all their cases of osteogenic sarcoma of the skull there was existing osteitis deformans. Porretta *et al* (1957) found that of the one hundred and twenty-eight cases of skeletal sarcoma with coexistent Paget's disease reported in the literature twenty per cent were in the skull. There was only one five year survival in this series. It is thought that the risk of osteogenic sarcoma in Pagetic individuals over forty is thirty times greater than in normal patients (Price 1962) and in twenty per cent of the cases the osteogenic sarcoma is multicentric. Two patients in this present review had skull lesions resected and were reported earlier by Ojemann & Jain (1963). The first patient had a mass in the right fronto-temporal region and complained of diplopia and diminished hearing. A diagnosis of Paget's disease of the right femur had been made several years earlier. The second patient had complained of a swelling behind the right ear of six months duration and X-ray examination revealed marked involvement of the skull by Paget's disease with bony overgrowth in the soft tissue in the right occipital region suggesting sarcomatous degeneration in this area (Figs. 17 and 18). It has been pointed out that branches of the superficial temporal artery can be hypertrophied and dilated in Paget's disease and when an angiogram is carried out hypertrophy of all the external carotid branches, particularly the meningeal, superficial temporal and occipital arteries, and occasionally the ophthalmic artery are discernible.

A fifty-five-year-old Negro woman entered the Ear, Nose and Throat Department complaining of a swelling which had been increasing in size and was situated just in front of the right ear. On examination a pulsatile mass was seen just in front of the ear and the superficial temporal artery ap-



Fig 17 This patient had complained of swelling behind the right ear. Bony overgrowth (S) in the soft tissue of the occipital region, suggestive of sarcomatous degeneration, was seen.

appeared to enter the confines of the swelling. Plain X-rays of the skull and a right carotid angiogram was carried out and these indicated that the external carotid artery was hypertrophied. The middle meningeal artery was found to fill an aneurysmal sac which originated in the anterior branch of the middle meningeal artery and this mass had eroded through both tables of the skull. The superficial temporal branch of the external carotid artery passed over the surface of the swelling and was stretched by it. Following ligation of the external carotid artery the mass became firm and was obviously filled with blood clot and slowly reduced in size.

Reports have been published describing Paget's disease in association with giant cell tumour and with lymphatic leukaemia. It seems that giant cell tumours co-existing with Paget's disease have a predilection for the bones of the face and skull. These sites are strikingly different from those usually involved with true giant cell tumours unassociated with Paget's disease. No giant cell tumours of the skull or temporal bone were noted in this present series.

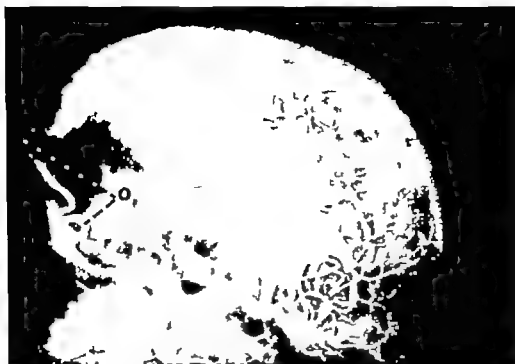


Fig 18. Grossly dilated occipital artery (O) applying the osteo-ge to sarcoma.

## X RAY APPEARANCE

In the present series, examination of X-rays showed that the initial process was predominantly osteolytic followed, often several years later by osteoblastic changes. In the skull areas of normal bone bone destruction, and bone repair were frequently noted in three adjacent areas. Osteoporosis circumscripta was noted in the skulls of five patients. These skulls showed large sharply circumscribed areas of demineralisation and appeared confined to the vault. Du Boulay (1965) has, however stated that the areas of translucency appear to begin low down in the vault, near the skull base and from there extend upwards. He stated that commonly the first parts of the vault to be affected are the squamous occipital and the area around the pterion.

The osteolytic phase eventually progresses into a more frequently observed type known as the biphasic or combined phase of osteitis deformans in which bone destruction and production occur simultaneously. X rays of the skull in this phase showed demineralisation and ill-defined bony structure so that the tables, vessel markings and suture lines become less distinct. There is a general thickening of the skull which loses its differentiation. In the normal three tables, the inner table being less severely affected than the others. Small circular areas of increased bone density may be scattered throughout the cal aria giving the so-called cotton wool appearance in the



Fig. 21 Left temporal bone  
cochlea

(P) can be seen a medio-medial line

In more inferior view of the Pagette involvement was seen to be in bone surrounding the carotid canal. The affected bone contained few osteoclasts.

Two temporal bones from the second patient (A.H.) a seventy five-year old male showed a more advanced form of osteitis deformans. This patient was known to have had Paget's disease for twenty years and five months before his death due to heart failure. A suboccipital decompression of the spinal cord and laminectomy of the first cervical vertebrae was performed for pressure symptoms due to bony overgrowth. It was seen from his record that this patient had bilateral progressive hearing loss for "many years" and wore a hearing aid in the right ear. Clinically this man's head was enlarged and X-ray examination revealed extensive Paget's disease of the skull. A general lower view of the right temporal bone is illustrated in Fig. 22 and it is seen that the bony changes were most marked in areas best supplied with marrow tissue. In serial sections the Eustachian tube region, the petrous apex and mastoid regions were involved to the greatest extent. The posterior margin of the left internal auditory meatus was enlarged to form a rounded bulge. The labyrinthine capsules were due to their thin marrowless structure least sensitive to attack. The periotic labyrinthine vasculature and provided with small marrow spaces showed the complete reconstruction. The middle enchondral layer possessing

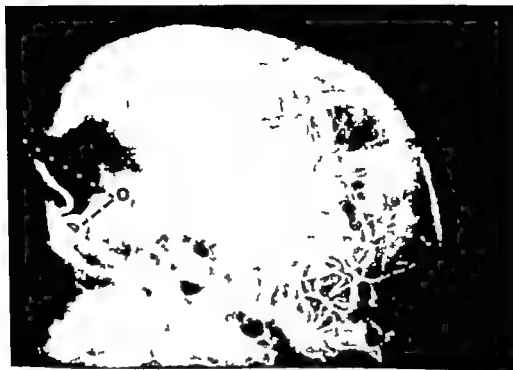


Fig 18 Grossly dilated occipital artery (O) supplying the osteogenic sarcoma.

## X RAY APPEARANCE

In the present series, examination of X-rays showed that the initial process was predominantly osteolytic followed often several years later by osteoblastic changes. In the skull areas of normal bone bone destruction, and bone repair were frequently noted in three adjacent areas. Osteoporosis circumscripta was noted in the skulls of five patients. These skulls showed large sharply circumscribed areas of demineralisation and appeared confined to the vault. Du Boulay (1965) has, however, stated that the areas of translucency appear to begin low down in the vault, near the skull base and from there extend upwards. He stated that commonly the first parts of the vault to be affected are the squamous occipital and the area around the pterion.

The osteolytic phase eventually progresses into a more frequently observed type known as the biphasic or combined phase of osteitis deformans in which bone destruction and production occur simultaneously. X-rays of the skull in this phase showed demineralisation and ill-defined bony structure so that the tables, vessel markings and suture lines become less distinct. There is a general thickening of the skull which loses its differentiation in the normal three tables, the inner table being less severely affected than the others. Small circular areas of increased bone density may be scattered throughout the calvaria giving the so-called cotton wool appearance in the



beginning and with time these areas increase coalesce and finally produce the classic mottled appearance of the "Tam O Shanter" skull. Guillain & Aubrey in 1936 studied X rays of the temporal bone in Paget's disease and noted increased visibility of the semi-circular canals and labyrinth in the temporal bone in patients with this condition. Lievre & Fishgold (1959) in their monograph on Paget's disease of the face and skull stated that whenever this condition affected the skull it nearly always affected the temporal bone. In a study of twenty four patients with Paget's disease of the skull these authors found that sixteen patients had "subjectively some degree of deafness". However full audiological assessment was not carried out. In 1955 Veltrano suggested that there were four stages in the X ray and audiological picture and thought that a relationship existed between the auditory functional deficit and X ray signs. However only one patient was studied. Clemis *et al* (1967) has recently observed that of twenty-eight ears examined by tomography twelve revealed footplate thickening. Two of these had no conductive loss, and this was thought to indicate a poor radiological-audiological correlation.

In an attempt to study the X ray changes in the temporal bone in this condition ten patients with advanced Paget's disease and five patients with early signs of Paget's disease had tomograms taken of this area. In the latter group it was seen that the initial osteolytic or resorptive phase was most pronounced in the petrous apex and in this stage the semi-circular canals and cochlea could be unusually well visualised. Jeroslial bone was first attacked and later the denser enchondral bone of the otic capsule itself was involved. The next stage of involvement appeared to be decreased visibility of the cochlea and lateral and superior semi-circular canals. The ossicles in this stage of the disease appeared normal and in the majority of cases of patients with moderate Pagetic involvement the margins of the oval window niche were discernible. More advanced cases of osteitis deformans had a complete blotting out of the otic capsule by the bony changes. Even though the labyrinth and cochlea could not be recognised in these patients on tomography they still had serviceable though poor hearing and there was no vestibular disorder. In advanced Paget's disease it was impossible to assess the size of the internal auditory meatuses. If stenosis existed it was probably caused by uncalcified new bone which did not cast a radiological shadow. Six of the thirty temporal bones examined by laminography revealed an upward tilting of the petrous apices. In three of these the internal auditory meatuses were seen to point upwards, due to excessive softening and twisting of the base of the skull. Examination of the right ear of one patient revealed that the handle of the malleus cast a very poor shadow and seemed more translucent than the handle of the malleus on the other side (Fig. 19). It was also found in this temporal bone that the oval window could not be readily identified and there seemed to be a fairly thick layer of bone around the lateral wall of the vestibule. Audiological assessment revealed a bilateral conductive deafness, the hearing loss in the



Fig 19 Head of malleus (M) is more translucent in the right ear

right side being forty db greater than that of the left. In another patient with advanced Paget's disease the mallei and incudes appeared to be greatly enlarged and were more massive on the right side (Fig 20). No marginal thickening of the footplate of the stapes was observed. In general it was found that osteolytic changes could well be present in one temporal bone and the blastic phase predominant in the other temporal bone. No unilateral involvement of the temporal bone was seen.

The complication of occipital condyle invagination or basilar impression was frequently seen in patients with moderate or advanced Paget's disease of the skull. The angle between the basal sphenoid and the basilar portion of the occipital bone, normally 110–140° is increased in these patients. The foramen magnum is deformed, the axis is occipitalised and the medulla is unusually low so that it and the upper end of the cervical cord can be compressed by the odontoid process. In the total number of patients with skull involvement, varying degrees of basilar impression was noted in thirty-five patients.

A patient may well have Paget's disease of the skull without any evidence of X-ray involvement. Normally 30–50 per cent of bone calcium in a local area must be altered before radiological changes are evident. However, if

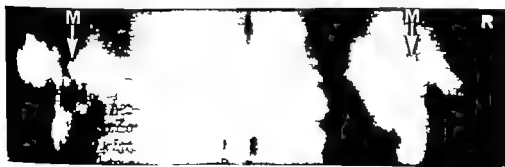


Fig 20 Head of the malleus (M) is more massive in the right ear

Strontium-85 scintiscans are employed bone disease in the skull can be detected early because of the demonstration of an accelerated mineral accretion rate which would not be evident initially by X ray examination

## HISTOPATHOLOGY

In all vital bone changes there is classically an interplay of destruction and regenerative changes taking place and thus many features of similarity exist in the histological pattern of clinically different diseases, such as otosclerosis, Paget's disease and Recklinghausen's osteitis fibrosa

When Mayer in 1917 gave the first account of the histological changes caused by Paget's disease in the temporal bone he described a case in which there was a bony bridge between the superior margin of the oval window and the footplate and noted that the newly formed red bone of Paget's disease was clearly separated by a cement line from the dark blue bone and cartilage of the footplate. Sections from three patients with Paget's disease were studied by Jenkins (1923) but the stapes were not found to be fixed. Nager & Meyer (1932) when studying a patient with this condition found calcification of the annular ligament that "almost fixed" the stapes and noted narrowing of the round window niche and some Pagetoid thickening on the promontory. In 1937 Anson & Wilson noted that in two patients with Paget's disease the newly formed bone had almost completely replaced the normal osseous architecture of the petrous bone but the stapedial footplate was found to be normal. Tamari (1942) on examining three patients with Paget's disease found that the newly formed bone was spongy in the petrous apex and in the mastoid process and more compact in the labyrinthine areas. The labyrinthine bone was profusely replaced by a compact, almost marrowless bone. Griffey (1960) in a report on the histopathological changes in the inner ear of an eighty-one year old patient noted that there was a mild bony protrusion in the medial aspect of the internal auditory meatus which might possibly have caused some slight pressure on the eighth nerve. "Involvement of the nerve to the macula" was stated to have occurred but the membranous labyrinth and cochlea were "free of any changes which can be attributed to Paget's disease". The ossicles in this patient were not examined.

Recently Waltner (1965) examined five temporal bones of patients suffering from Paget's disease of the skeleton and found that in three cases Paget's disease extensively involved the labyrinth. Every section (twenty four  $\mu$ ) in the oval window area was stained and he reported in one temporal bone finding "newly formed partly lamellar partly younger bone piled up on top of the anterior portion of the footplate". It was thus apparent that the penetration of Paget's bone from the rim of the oval window into the anterior margin of the footplate was very small and localised but it

was not stated how many serial sections demonstrated this finding. Wallner also reported the histological examination of three footplates removed during stapedectomy of patients who had suffered from Paget's disease of the skull. Evidence of new bone formation was identified in two of the three footplates but definite histological Pagetic changes were only demonstrated in one of the footplate fragments.

In view of these interesting observations and the fact that only two patients out of the twenty cases previously reported indicated histological ankylosis of the stapes footplate by Paget's disease a study of temporal bones taken from patients who had suffered from osteitis deformans was carried out. Eight temporal bones were examined in serial section and sections from three more patients were available for study. Of the eight serially sectioned temporal bones, no definite evidence of Paget's disease was found in three of these but in the remainder every consecutive section (twenty  $\mu$ ) was examined in the oval window area.

Different stages of osteitis deformans can appear in close proximity and the confusing variability of the diseased bone can usually be attributed to the combination of three labile factors:

- 1 The ratio of osteoclastic and osteoblastic activity which varies in any given area.
- 2 The speed of the regenerative and destructive process.
- 3 The frequency of local remissions and the ensuing resumption of active changes.

Local differences in the rates of osteoblastic and osteoclastic activities are responsible for the development of sclerotic and porotic areas, frequently observed in adjacent areas of the same bone. The mosaic pattern of Paget's disease may be attributed to two characteristics, the irregular and curved cement lines within the bony tissues and irregular notches and depressions on the surface of the spicules. The latter are caused by pronounced osteoclastic absorption and these structural features are caused by the simultaneous resorption of old and fully calcified bone and the deposition of new osteoid layers that calcify in a normal fashion. The resorptive process is carried to a certain point and then ceases. Later new bone is formed within this depression and a cement line remains to mark the point of application of new bone upon the old. At a later date, resorptive changes occur again so that the architecture of a given area is further disturbed. Increased vascularity and fibrosis of the intertrabecular spaces accompany this change in architecture.

The first temporal bone examined (VIM) was that of a fifty-nine year-old female who died of osteogenic sarcoma. There was no evidence of any otologic symptoms. Pagetic bone of the osteoblastic mature variety was found only anterior to the otic capsule (Fig. 21). The otic capsule and ossicles were normal as were the auditory and vestibular sense organs. The cochlear neuron population was also found to be within normal limits.



Fig. 21 Left temporal bone (M M) Paget's bone (P) can be seen latero-medial to the cochlea

In more inferior sections the main extent of the Paget's involvement was seen to be in bone surrounding the carotid canal. The affected bone contained few osteoclasts.

Two temporal bones from the second patient (A K) a seventy-five-year-old male showed a more advanced form of osteitis deformans. This patient was known to have had Paget's disease for twenty years and five months before his death due to heart failure. A suboccipital decompression of the spinal cord and laminectomy of the first cervical vertebrae was performed for pressure symptoms due to bony overgrowth. It was seen from his record that this patient had bilateral progressive hearing loss for "many years" and wore a hearing aid in the right ear. Clinically this man's head was enlarged and X-ray examination revealed extensive Paget's disease of the skull.

A general low power view of the right temporal bone is illustrated in Fig. 22 and it is seen that the bony changes were most marked in areas best supplied with marrow tissue. In serial sections, the Eustachian tube region, the petrous apex and mastoid regions were involved to the greatest extent. The posterior margin of the left internal auditory meatus was enlarged to form a rounded bulge. The labyrinthine capsules were due to their almost marrowless structure least sensitive to attack. The periosteal layer being least vascularised and provided with small marrow spaces showed the most complete reconstruction. The middle enchondral layer possessing



Fig 22. Right temporal bone (A h.) P tchy (vol cement by P get disease (P)

small and scanty vessels and cartilagenous enclosures resists for a time the rebuilding process. The changes of osteitis deformans were rather more active in the left temporal bone but very few osteoclastic cells were noted to be present. For the main part the Pagetic process was in the quiescent phase but areas of activity were noted especially around the Eustachian tube. In no place was the endosteal bone breached. In both temporal bones serial sections through the oval window area did not show any bony fixation of the stapes and in the right temporal bone a thin strand of lamellar bone separated the posterior part of the annular ligament from the Pagetic process. However the middle portion of this ligament was disorganised and replaced by a layer of loosely woven fibrous connective tissue similar in appearance to that filling the adjacent marrow cavity (Fig 23). Normally the shorter more resistant posterior ligament of the stapes allows this area to act as a fulcrum for a foot-pedal action when the stapes is rhythmically withdrawn and depressed into the oval window. Greater excursions occur at the anterior end than at the posterior end, and the action is around the short axis of the foot-plate at low frequencies. At high intensities the footplate no longer oscillates around the short axis but shifts to a rocking movement around the long axis. Involvement of the annular ligament by otosclerosis or by Paget's changes may manifest itself by a stiffness felt on audiometric examination. One very interesting feature noted in this patient's temporal bones was the presence of bilateral bony spurs from the anterolateral aspect of the tympanic walls to almost make contact with the



Fig. 23. Disorganization of the posterior annular ligament by new fibrous tissue (V). A thin strand of lamellar bone (L) separates the Paget's process (P) from the adjacent ligament.

heads of the mallei (Figs 24 and 25). These projections showed characteristic changes of osteitis deformans but no fixation of the mallei were noted. Bony projections in this position are not uncommon and occasionally when well developed the malleus head is fixed by a rigid bar to the outer attic wall (Davies, 1968). In the past in Paget's disease the conduction deafness has been assumed to be due to interference with the movement of the stapes by the disease but many surgical reports have indicated that the foot plate area was found to be normal at exploratory tympanotomy. Needless to say it is essential to palpate the handle of the malleus when a conduction hearing deficit is being surgically investigated.

A moderate loss of ganglion cells in the basal turn of the cochlea was seen and the organ of Corti was atrophied in the extreme basal end of the cochlea but elsewhere appeared normal. This mild degeneration of sensori-neural elements in the basal turn could not be regarded as being a major contributory factor in the deafness experienced by this patient. There was moderate to severe atrophy of the stria vascularis in a large part of the middle and apical turns of both ears but the vestibular sense organs appeared normal bilaterally.

The third set of temporal bones examined were removed from an eighty-four year-old woman (A.B.) who died as a result of a fracture of the left



Fig 24 Right temporal bone (A. K.) Paget's projections (S) arising from the epitympanic wall and lying in close proximity to the head of the malleus (M malleus I incus)

femur which was involved by Paget's disease. The patient had no complaints referable to the hearing or vestibular systems. The histopathological changes in the temporal bones were almost identical bilaterally. The entire bones, including the ossicles, were involved in Paget's disease. The otic capsules were irregularly eroded by a clearly defined layer of Pagetic bone (Figs. 26 and 27) and in the region of the superior canal in the right temporal bone the endosteum itself was involved and breached by fibrous connective tissue (Fig. 28). The greatest resistance to Paget's disease is normally shown by the endosteal layer, the modiolus and the macula cribrosa, for these parts are built by ossification of connective tissue and the resistance against replacement or reconstruction seems to a great extent to be dependent upon their vascular supply.

No anastomotic connections normally exist between the blood vessels of the bony otic capsule and the vascular system of the membranous otic labyrinth. Ruedi (1965) has stated that when a rapidly growing focus of otosclerosis has broken the capsular endosteum, such as in the region of the spiral ligament, new connections are formed between the otosclerotic vessels and the spiral veins of the membranous labyrinth as they pass through the spiral ligament, and venous blood from the otosclerotic mass then passes through the membranous labyrinth into the venous system of the inner ear. He observed that the stria vascularis reacts to this disturbance





Fig. 20 Right temporal bone (P K) A more active variety of Paget's disease is demonstrated. The oval window area is clear but breaching (B) of the endosteum can be seen in the basal turn of the cochlea.

of circulation with a swelling of the afferent and efferent capillary loops and epithelial hyperplasia in the region involved. In this patient's left temporal bone the endosteum was seen to be breached in the apical turn of the cochlea but although this area of the bone contained a large number of vessels, no venous shunt was discernable and the stria vascularis appeared normal. The resorptive process in this temporal bone had temporarily ceased and very few osteoclasts were seen. In both bones a good population of hair cells in the cochlea were apparent and the spiral ganglion cells and vestibular ganglia appeared normal. The serial sections of the foot plate region did not reveal any stapedial fixation although patchy Paget's changes were noted in the malleus, incus and stapes suprastructure.

A more active variety of Paget's disease of the temporal bone (P L.) is illustrated in Fig. 20. A full series of sections was not available but in those examined the otic capsule was almost completely replaced by abnormal bone extending down to the endosteum of the apical and middle turns and the internal auditory meatus appeared rather narrow. The presence of a large number of multinucleated osteoclasts and osteoblasts and the presence of marked fibrotic changes in the marrow demonstrated the obvious activity of the lesions. Apart from mild post mortem changes the cochlea and vestibular labyrinth appeared unaffected. In the limited



Fig. 30 Right temporal bone (S.G.) The endosteum has been breached in this area and there is almost complete replacement of the endosteum by a large pneumatic cell which had extended from the petrous bone. The petrous bone can be seen here to extend to the level of the internal

number of sections available from this patient no invasion was noted in the foot-plate area.

Temporal bone sections were available for study from a patient with Paget's disease. It was observed that there was invasion of the otic capsule with osteitis deformans. A large tract of bone had been attacked by Paget's disease and in many places the endosteum had been replaced. However, no invasion of the labyrinthine spaces were noted, and the middle ear ossicles were not affected by the disease process. A large tract of pneumatic bone in the superior region of the petrous bone was seen in the level of the internal auditory meatus (Fig. 30). Autolysis was severe; the organ of Corti was present but not identified. It was estimated that there was a loss of 50% of the spiral ganglion cells in the lower basal turn and Scarpa's ganglion appeared normal.

Three sections were available for study in an elderly (fifty-four year old) and examination revealed replacement of temporal bone by Paget's disease, breaching of the endosteum layer and the middle

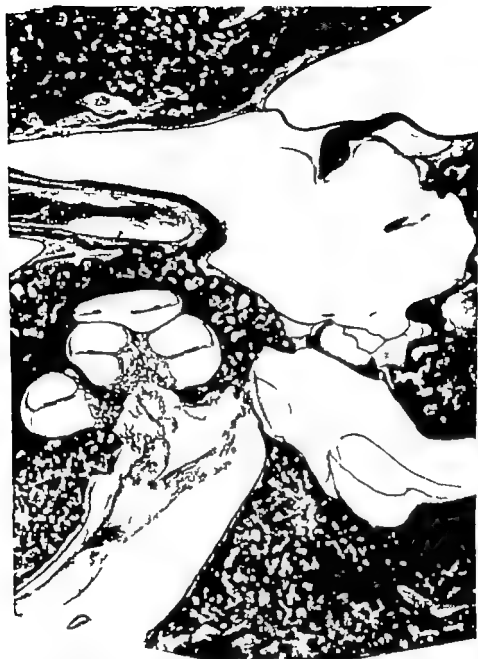


Fig 31 Right temporal bone (P K) widespread osteitis deformans. The endosteal layer is intact and the neural laminae within normal limits. Pigeon changes around the window area but the footplate is free of the disease process.

meatus and sense organs appeared normal. The spiral ganglion and Scarpa's ganglion also were within normal limits (Fig 31).

Allen & John (1931) first discussed fissure fractures in Paget's disease. They found that patients with osteitis deformans were more prone to fractures of the femur when this bone was involved by the pathological process. In normal temporal bones micro-fracture stress lines are fre-



Fig 32. Right temporal bone. This bone was removed from patient with widespread osteitis deformans. A Pagetic change can be seen in the vicinity of the transverse fracture line.

frequently found in the otic capsule and are without significance (Mayer 1930). Fowler (1937) however stated that the bone growth of Paget's disease actually fractures the labyrinthine capsule so as to deform the cochlea and so affect the end-organ of hearing, as well as the nerve trunk. A temporal bone from a patient who had died as an indirect result of a fracture through Paget's disease of the femur was examined, and a fracture was also seen in the temporal bone (Fig 32). However it was evident that although no past history of cranial trauma could be obtained from the patient's relatives, this fracture line was old and no evidence of Pagetic changes were noted in the surrounding areas. The fracture had involved the inferior division of the vestibular nerve and there was associated degeneration of this nerve trunk.

Nager & Meyer (1931) stated that it was sometimes impossible to distinguish between osteitis fibrosa and osteitis deformans in the temporal bone and occasionally today it is essential to examine other parts of the bony skeleton to ascertain the exact nature of the type of metabolic disorder present. In Paget's disease there is normally a more complete obliteration of the original osseous trabeculae than in the case in bone that has been involved by secondary hyperparathyroidism. Fig 33 is a lower power view of a patient with secondary hyperparathyroidism and superficial similarities

for the treatment of Paget's disease of the temporal bone and otosclerosis is fraught with danger if patients are not carefully observed and critically assessed.

## SURGICAL TREATMENT

It was mentioned earlier that six patients had their external carotid arteries ligated in an attempt to get rid of the vascular headaches and slow down the progress of the bone disease. However, only temporary subjective relief was noted.

Early attempts to mobilise the stapes were carried out with limited success (Gallard *et al.*, 1959; Goodhill, 1961). Waltner (1963) reports five patients with Paget's disease who underwent stapedectomy and states that three of the five had a useful improvement for at least one year. However, the air-bone gap was not closed in any of these patients. In the present series, stapedectomies were carried out in two patients with osteitis deformans. In the first patient the air-bone gap was closed in frequencies below two thousand cycles per second but a gap of fifteen decibels existed in the high frequencies. The second patient had advanced Paget's disease of the skull and an extremely narrow and tortuous external meatus. In exploratory tympanotomy the malleus handle was found to be stiff on palpation but mobilised easily when firmer pressure was applied. Pressure on the footplate did not produce a round window reflex but there was no evidence of any bony fixation of margins of the footplate. A total stapedectomy was carried out and histological examination of the stapes revealed the mosaic pattern of osteitis deformans to be present in the footplate and in the head of this bone (Fig. 34).

Though there was subjective improvement a month after surgery, audiometric assessment only indicated a gain of fifteen db and an air-bone gap of fifteen db still persisted. In retrospect it would have been far wiser to have exposed the epitympanum and removed the head of the malleus. It now seems likely that epitympanic fixation has recurred.

## SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

Any patient who complains of obscure pain in the head or exhibits an unexplained cranial nerve palsy should have a plain X-ray examination of the skull carried out to exclude osteitis deformans. Strontium 89 scintiscanning can detect Paget's disease by the demonstration of accelerated mineral accretion rates before any evidence of X-ray change is noted. Normally this is to fifty per cent bone calcium in a local area must be affected before radiological change is discernible.

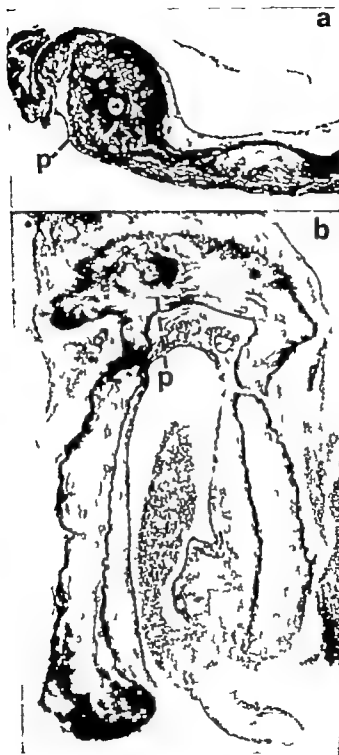


Fig. III Change of osteolytic deformations (p) of the footplate ( ) and of the head of the stapes (b) are indicated.

The recognition of sarcomatous changes in Paget's disease of the skull is often difficult but a change in the nature of chronic bone pain is suggestive. The development of a swelling is a later but more obvious sign. Generous biopsy of any suspicious area is mandatory for an early diagnosis. Although osteogenic sarcoma is the commonest, fibrosarcoma, chondrosarcoma or giant cell sarcoma are occasionally discovered.

A prominent anterior terminal branch of the superficial temporal artery was frequently observed in patients with Paget's disease and was related to the increased vascularity in this condition. The existence of this enlarged artery is by no means pathognomonic of osteitis deformans but its presence together with a conductive deafness, should make the otologist aware of the possibility of Paget's disease as an aetiological factor.

Of the 236 patients in this study a family history of Paget's disease was noted in eight patients. Undoubtedly this figure would have been higher if all asymptomatic relatives had been subjected to a skeletal survey.

Deafness in early Paget's disease in the majority of patients was of the conductive type and the air bone gap was greatest at 512 Hz. As the disease progressed the air bone gap widened in the lower frequencies and a sensorineural hearing loss became more prominent in the higher frequencies. No evidence of a retro-cochlear lesion was demonstrated as a cause of the deafness. Caloric testing of labyrinthine function revealed only depressed function in a minority of the patients. Paget's disease can produce advanced changes in the cervical spine and this, together with occipital condyle invagination can result in vertebro-basilar ischaemia.

Tomographic examination was found to be an useful adjunct in assessing the size of the ossicles and the oval window area. One patient was noted to have a massive malleus head. However no definite correlation was found between the X-ray findings and the audiological picture. It was impossible in advanced osteitis deformans to accurately assess the size of the internal auditory meatus for the presence of sclerotic or uncalcified bone casts a poor radiological shadow.

Eight temporal bones were examined in serial sections and sections from three more patients were available for study. Every consecutive section (20  $\mu$ ) in the oval window area was carefully inspected. Lagellar changes were most marked in areas best supplied with marrow tissue. The Eustachian tube region, the petrous apex and mastoid areas were involved to the greatest extent. The labyrinthine capsules were due to their almost marrowless structure least sensitive to attack. The periosteal layer being best vascularised and possessing rather small spaces, showed the most complete reconstruction. The middle enchondral layer having small and scanty vessels and cartilaginous enclosures showed more resistance to the rebuilding process. Eustachian bone was breached in several bones but no constant pathological changes were observed in the stria vascularis and no venous shunts were discernible.

Bony fixation of the temporalis plate was not noted but changes were

seen in the annular ligament in one temporal bone which were induced by adjacent Pagetic bone. Changes of osteitis deformans were observed in many of the ossicles examined and in one patient bilateral Pagetic bony spurs were seen, in the attic region to be in close proximity to the heads of the mallei.

Epi tympanic fixation of the malleus and incus by the disease process could account for the persistent mild conductive hearing loss following an otherwise successful stapedectomy in these patients.

The methods of treatment used were discussed and the dangers of fluoride therapy were stressed.

## ZUSAMMENFASSUNG

Das Auftreten und die Ätiologie von Pagets Krankheit wird diskutiert. 236 Patienten mit Otitis Deformans wurden untersucht und wo möglich audiologische und radiologische Proben wurden gemacht.

Eine Luft/knochen Kluft wurde bemerkt in den untersten Frequenzen bei den meisten Patienten und dies war am klarsten bei 12 Hz.

Als die Krankheit fortschritt die Luft Knochen Kluft wurde grösser in den untersten Frequenzen und in den höheren Frequenzen ein abnehmendes Gehörwahrnehmungsbestandteil wurde konstatiert.

Schwindeln war nicht eine hervorragende Eigenschaft aber wirbellose harte Blutleere könnte verursacht werden durch Beteiligung der Halswirbelsäule wie auch durch Invagination der Hinterhauptprotuberanz. Tympanogramme des Schläfenknochen gaben unbefriedigende Resultate bei der Feststellung einer Verengung in den inneren Gehörgängen stattfand weil verhärtete Knochen wertlose Röntgenschnitten werfen. Abweichungen in der Ovalfensterzone und in den Hämmerchen kamen öfters zu Licht im ersten Stadium der Krankheit.

Histologische Untersuchungen von 11 Schläfenknochen produzierten gar keinen durchschlagenden Beweis der Steigbügelfixierung wegen Fortschrittes der Krankheit epi tympanische Ausläufer. Jedoch, resultierend von der Pagets Krankheit, wurden bei einem Patienten in der Nähe der Hammerknöpfe gefunden.

Die verschiedenen Variationen der Behandlung kamen unter Diskussion und die Gefahren der Fluorverbindungstherapie wurde skizziert.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I am greatly indebted to Dr. Harold F. Schuknecht for giving me the opportunity and the facilities to carry out these investigations. The invaluable help of Dr. Herbert Fields in examining many of the earlier records is gladly acknowledged.

I would like to thank the many colleagues who gave me permission to study the patients and in particular Dr. Stephen Kranz, Dr. A. S. MacMillan, J. M. R. F. McNab Jones and Dr. G. du Boulay.



## REFERENCES

- Albrecht, W. 1932: Über Konstitutionsproblem I der Pathogenese der Hals- u. u. Ohrenkrankheiten. 2 Die Otosklerose. *Ztschr. Hals-, Nasen- u. Ohrenh. Hk.* 29: 55.
- Albright, F., Aub, J. C., and Haer, W. 1934: Hyperparathyroidism. A common and polymorphic condition. Illustrated by seventeen proved cases from one clinic. *J.A.M.A.* 102: 1276.
- Albright, F. and Henneman, P. H. 1935: The suppression of Paget's disease with ACTH and cortisone. *Trans. Ass. Amer. Physicians* 63: 238.
- Allen, M. L., and Johnson, R. L. 1937: Osteitis deformans (Paget's disease). Fluorine fractures—their histology and clinical significance. *Amer. J. Roentgenol.* 33: 109.
- Anson, D. J. and Wilson, J. B. 1937: Structural alterations in the petrous portion of the temporal bone in osteitis deformans. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chic.) 25: 560.
- Aschner, B. M., Hurst, L. A., and Riley, L. 1933: A genetic study of Paget's disease (osteitis deformans) in monozygotic twin brothers. *Acta Med. Scand.* (Hk.) 1: 111.
- Ashley Montagu, M. F. 1949: Paget's disease (osteitis deformans) and heredity. *Amer. J. Hum. Genet.* 1: 94.
- Atre, H. 1897: Mit der ossense pagetoiden crâne gallo-romain. *R. Path. Clin.* 7: 935.
- Barth, H. 1934: *Ztschr. Hals-, Nasen- u. Ohrenh. Hk.* 35: 305.
- Brallford, J. F. 1932: *The Radiology of Bone and Joint*. 5th ed. The Williams and Wilkins Co., Baltimore.
- Brunner, H. 1931: Die Beteiligung der Nahrungspassagen. *Ztschr. Hals-, Nasen- Ohrenh. Hk.* 30: 128.
- Butlin, H. T. 1885: Osteitis deformans. *Lancet* 1: 519.
- Can, H., W. H. 1950: In *Medical and Dental Aspects of Fluoridation*. Lewis, London.
- Chambers, J. D., Boles, J. H., Ford, E. H., and Ptasick, J. P. 1967: The clinical diagnosis of Paget's disease of the temporal bone. *J. Otol.* (St. Louis) 76: 511.
- Coley, B. L., and Sharp, G. S., 1931: Paget's disease. The predisposing factor in osteogenic sarcoma. *Arch. Surg.* (Chic.) 23: 918.
- Collins, D. H. 1936: Paget's disease of bone incidence and histological features. *Lancet* 1: 51.
- Cone, S. M. 1922: The pathology of osteitis deformans, Paget's disease. *J. Bone Joint Surg.* 4: 731.
- Czerny, A. 1873: Eine lokale Malade des Linsenknies. *Wien. Med. Woch.* 23: 895.
- Davis, H. B., and Field, 1948: Mallory Fixation. *J. Laryng.* 82: 311.
- de Deusch, J., and C. N. and Krane, S. M. 1964: Paget's disease of bone. Clinical and radiologic review. *Medicine* 43: 223.
- Denig, H. S. 1933: Pathological evidence of Paget's disease. *An. Med. Hist.* 3: 3.
- Dickson, D. H., Camp, J. D., and Gormley, R. K., 1945: Osteitis deformans—Paget's disease of the bone. *Radiology* 44: 449.
- de Bont, C. H. 1966: *Principles of X-ray Diagnosis of the Skull*. p. 51. Butterworths, London.
- Flint, A. H. 1925: Additional paleopathological evidence of Paget's disease. *Ann. Med. Hist.* 7: 197.
- Ford, F. H. 1966: *The Diseases of the Endocrine System in Infancy, Childhood and Adulthood*. 4th ed. p. 789. Charles C. Thomas, Springfield, Illinois.
- Fowler, E. I. 1937: Nervous foci from non-inflammatory lesion. *Trans. Am. Otol. Soc.* 27: 351.
- 1947: Otosclerosis. Identical twins. *An. Otol.* (St. Louis) 56: 368.
- Gaillard, J., Persillon, A., and Leve, H. 1895: Syndrome d'ankylose coxale et de Paget's disease. *J. F. ne d'ORL.* 8: 479.

- Galbraith, H. J. B. 1934: Paget's disease of bone. *Brit. Med. J.* 2: 79.
- Geall, M. G. and Bellin, L. J. 1964: Sodium fluoride and optic neuritis. *Brit. Med. J.* 2: 353.
- Goldstein, H. J. 1926: Paget's disease of the bones. *Med. Clin.* 55: 191.
- Goodhill, V. 1960: Pseudo-otosclerosis. *Laryngoscope* (St. Louis) 70: 722.
- 1961: *St. Paul's Symposium on Otolosclerosis*, p. 37. Paul B. Hoeber Inc. New York.
- Oralinger, R. G. and Laws, J. W. 1957: Paget's disease—active or quiescent? *Brit. J. Radiol.* 30: 120.
- Griffey, L. E., 1940: The temporal bone in Paget's disease. *Ann. Otol.* (St. Louis) 69: 178.
- Gullain, G. and Aubry, M. 1936: La lésion de la maladie de Paget. *Presse Médicale* 1: 823.
- Gutman, A. B. and Hasaba, H. 1934: Paget's disease (osteitis deformans). A review of 116 cases. *Amer. J. Med. Sci.* 191: 261.
- Gutman, A. B., and Parsons, W. B., 1935: Hyperparathyroidism simulating osteitis deformans associated with Paget's disease with three illustrative cases. *Amer. J. Med. Sci.* 130: 13.
- Henneman, P. H., Dell, T. A., Aitoli, L., and Lynch, T. V. 1963: Effects of aspirin and corticosteroids on Paget's disease of bone. *Trans. Cell Phys. Pathol.* 31: 10.
- Higgins, B. A., Vism, J. R., Alexander, H. and Hilb, A., 1945: Effect of sodium fluoride calcium phosphorus and nitrogen balance in patients with Paget's disease. *Brit. Med. J.* 1: 1159.
- Hutchinson, J. 1830: On osteitis deformans. *Illustr. Med.* 2: 169.
- Jenkins, G. J. 1923: Osteitis deformans and otosclerosis. *J. Laryng.* 33: 344.
- 1928: A pathologic and clinical comparison. Otosclerosis. *J. Laryng.* 43: 1.
- Jones, J. V. and Reed, M. F. 1967: Paget's disease: A family with six cases. *Brit. Med. J.* 4: 90.
- Kay, H. D. 1929: Plasma phosphatase in osteitis deformans and in other diseases of bone. *Brit. J. Exp. Path.* 10: 232.
- Kay, H. D., Simpson, S. L., and Riddoch, G. 1934: Osteitis deformans. *Arch. Intern. Med.* 53: 208.
- Klein, B., and Kreeger, K. 1934: Serum lactic acid in Paget's disease. *Amer. J. Med. Sci.* 228: 201.
- Kluykens, P. and Geld, I., 1965: La surdité héréditaire. *Act. Oto-Rhino-Laryngologica Belg.* 19: 580.
- Koller, F. 1946: Über die Heredität der Osteitis deformans. *Arch. Intern. Med.* 13: 359.
- Kotow, H. A., Kemp, V. E., and Sharpe, A. R., J. 1962: Coexistence of Paget's disease and primary hyperparathyroidism. Report of a case. *Amer. Practit.* 13: 620.
- Larmande, A. 1957: Maladie de Paget et syndrome de Groenblad-Strandberg. *Bull. Soc. Franç. Ophtal.* 70: 206.
- Lequene, J. and Den Heu, H. 1953: Circulatory dynamics in osteitis deformans. *Circulation* 12: 216.
- Leri, 1913: *Leçons de Salpêtrière* 26: 452.
- Lévesque, J. A., and Fischel, H. 1939: *Leçons et faits dans la maladie de Paget*. Masson et Cie, Edit. Paris.
- Lindsay, J. M. and Prisman, H. B. 1936: Paget's disease and deafness. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 23: 580.
- Martin, E. 1947: Considérations sur la maladie de Paget. *Arch. Intern. Med.* 13: 319.
- Mayer, O. 1913: *Int. Zbl. Ohrenheilk.* 11: 530.
- 1917: *Ueber die Ohrenkrankheiten*. Alfred Holder, p. 80. Wien, Leipzig.
- 1920: *Zeitschr. Hals-, Nasen- u. Ohrenheilk.* 25: 261.
- Moore, S. 1931: Osteitis deformans. A theory of its etiology. *J. Bone J. Surg.* 33A: 421.
- Morell, H. F., Texier, L., and Steffen, J. 1942: Elastorrhexis systématisée ou maladie de Paget. Urticaria histologique des lésions du tissu élastique. *Sem. Hôp. Paris.* 35: 3513.

- Mehusick, V. A. 1966. In *Her dit ble di rders f co nective tissue* 3rd ed C. V. Mosb Co., St. Louis.
- Nager F. R. 1919; Z. Ohrenh. 78: 193.
- Nager F. R. and Meyer H. 1932; *Die Erkrankungen des Knochensystems und ihre Beziehungen an der Innernährkapitel d. M. nach n. p. 121 A. G. Harger Basel*
- Newman, F. W. 1946; Paget's disease: A statistical study of eighty-two cases. *J. Bone J. Int. Surg.* 28: 798.
- Ojemund R. G. and Jain, K. K. 1963. Carotid blood flow in Paget's disease of the skull. *J. Neurosurg.* 20: 471.
- Orr J. W. 1837; Osteoporosis in a rabbit, with osseous changes resembling Paget's disease. *J. Path. Biol.* 53: 29.
- Parkard, F. A. Steel J. D. and Kirkbald T. S. Jr. 1961; Osteitis deformans. *Ann. J. Med. Sci.* 122: 333.
- Park, F. 1934; Diagnostic problems: No. 14. A case of malignant melanoma metastatic, Paget's disease and hyperparathyroidism. *Arch. Med. Hosp.* 1: 215.
- Paget, J. 1877; On the form of chronic inflammation of bones (osteitis deformans). *Med. Chir. Trans.* 66: 37.
- 1883; Additional cases of osteitis deformans. *Med. Chir. Trans.* 6: 325.
- Salen, L. 1939; Måladet de Paget (osteitis deformans). *Antikropologi* 39: 263.
- Sorretta, C. A. Dahlin, D. C. and Jansen, J. M. 1937; Sarcoma of Paget's disease of bone. *J. Bone Joint Surg.* 39A: 1313.
- Price C. H. G. 1962; The incidence of osteogenic sarcoma in South West England and its relationship to Paget's disease of bone. *J. Bone J. Int. Surg.* 39A: 1314.
- Purves, M. J. 1963; Correspondence. *Brit. Med. J.* 1: 1370.
- Pyg, H. F. 1957; Paget's disease of bone. The radiological incidence. *Lancet* 1: 1170.
- Rick, C. Enrich, J. and Ivanich, H. P. 1964; The effect of sodium fluoride on calcium metabolism of subject with metabolic bone disease. *J. Clin. Invest.* 43: 843.
- Roberts, R. E. and Cohen, M. J. 1970; Osteitis deformans (Paget's disease of bone). *Proc. Roy. Soc. Med.* 63: 13.
- Robinson, H. 1937. In *Fluorine Intoxication: A Clinical Study* Lewis, London.
- Rosenkrantz, J. A. W. H. J. and Katcher J. J. 1932; Paget's disease (osteitis deformans). Review of one hundred seven cases. *AJ. Arch. Int. Med.* 80: 610.
- Ruedi, L. 1963; Pathogenesis of osteoclasts. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 78: 469.
- Willer 1812. Sur un ossement extra-dorsal des os plats. *Bull. Fac. Med. P. 1: 2: 91.*
- Wilhauser F., Verrall, H. and Boullier C. 1934. Les ossements et des ossements. *Etude anatomopathologique. Press. Méd.* 62: 654.
- Schmorl, C. 1930. Zu Kenntnis der Osteitis deformans. *Pagetsche Krankheit. Path. Ges.* 20.
- Shaffer B. Copelan, H. W. and Beerman H. 1937. Pseudotuberculous lesions. A cutaneous manifestation of systemic disease; report of a case of Paget's disease and case of calcinosis with osteoclastosis. Manifestations of the syndrome. *IJA. Arch. Derm.* 6: 672.
- Shimizu, H. E. J. 1933. Osteoclasts in identical twins. *IJA. Arch.* 103: 1216.
- 1935. Fenestration operation for osteoclastosis. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.) Suppl.* 72.
- 1946. Therapy of cochlear osteoclastosis. *Ann. Otol. (St. Louis)* 75: 579.
- Sorby, A. and Harding, H. 1940; *The Manual of Pharmacology* 8th ed Saunders, Philadelphia.
- Sparrow, V. L. and Du, H. A. J. 1967. Hearing and Paget's disease. *J. Laryng.* 77: 601.
- Sugarbaker, J. D. 1910. Osteitis deformans (Paget's disease of bone). A review of fifty cases. *Ann. J. Surg.* 11: 414.
- Tamark, M. 1912. Histopathologic changes of the temporal bone in Paget's disease. *Ann. Otol. (St. Louis)* 21: 170.

- Vetrano, E. 1933: L'ipocausa d i paretici considerazi i diologiche radi logi be di uue caso osserv to. *Arch. i Italiani di Laringologia* 63: 212.
- Witner J. G. 1963: Stapedectomy i Page's disease. *Arch. Otol. ryng.* 82: 355.
- Wiber M. 1930: Otosclerosis i histologic rel ti i osteodystrophia fibrosa (ostiti fibrosa). *Arch. Otol. ryng.* 11: 1.
- Whit E. P. C. 1922: Ostiti deformans i monkeys. *Arch. Intern. Med.* 20: 90.
- Wilson, J. G. d Anson, B. J. 1936: Histologic changes in the temporal bone i ostiti deformans (Page's disease). *Arch. Otol. ryng.* 23: 87.
- Woodard, H. E. 1939: Long term studies of the blood chemistry i Page's disease of bone. *Cancer* 12: 1226.
- Woodcock, C. W. 1932: Pseudoxanthoma i sticium, glid breaks of retina. d ostitis d i rman. *A.M. J. Arch. Derm.* 65: 623.
- Wra 1847: Epiglotische Hyperostose des Schädels, des Beckens und des linken Oberarmkells. *Vjsch. Prakt. Heilk.* 88: 79.
- Wylli W. G. 1923: The occurrence i ostiti deformans (lesion of the central nervous system, with report of low cases. *Brain* 46: 336.





PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksells Boktryckeri Aktiebolag*

UPPSALA 1948

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 243

THE VASCULAR ANATOMY OF  
THE COCHLEA IN THE GUINEA PIG  
AND IN MAN

ALF AXELSSON

ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVAYÄGEN 16, 115 23 STOCKHOLM





*From the Ear, Nose and Throat Department, University of Göteborg, Sweden.  
(Head Professor Gösta Herberts, M.D.)*

---

ACTA OTO-LARYNGOLOGICA

SUPPLEMENTUM 245

THE VASCULAR ANATOMY OF THE COCHLEA  
IN THE GUINEA PIG AND IN MAN

ALF AXELSSON

GÖTEBORG 1968

Stevens Boktryckeri AB  
Göteborg 1968

# CONTENTS

	std.
I. Introduction	5
II. Survey of the literature	6
A. Methods	6
B. The vascular anatomy	8
C. Measurements of vascular dimensions	19
D. Summary	19
III. Present investigation	22
A. METHODS	22
1. Injection of contrast medium in the guinea pig	23
2. Injection of contrast medium in man	26
3. Measurements of the vascular anatomy in the guinea pig	28
4. Nomenclature	29
5. Summary	30
B. RESULTS	31
1. <i>The vascular anatomy of the modiolus</i>	31
a. Guinea pig	31
b. Man	39
c. Comment	46
2. <i>The vascular anatomy of the spiral lamina and the spiral limbus</i>	47
a. Guinea pig	47
b. Man	55
c. Comment	60
3. <i>The vascular anatomy of the external wall of the membranous cochlea</i>	62
a. Guinea pig	62
b. Measurements	75
The distribution of the radiating arterioles to different vessels in the external wall	75
Vascular anastomoses in the external wall	77
c. Man	78
d. Comment	87
4. <i>The vascular anatomy of the basal end of the cochlea</i>	91
a. Guinea pig	91
b. Man	96
c. Comment	101

C. GENERAL DISCUSSION	103
Nomenclature	103
The method	103
Comments on previous investigations	104
Similarities and differences between the guinea pig and man	106
Apex-base	106
Intralabyrinthine fluids	109
Oxygen supply to the organ of Corti	112
Clinical aspects	114
Concluding remarks	117
D SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS	118
Acknowledgements	120
Zusammenfassung und Schlusssatz	121
References	129

## I. INTRODUCTION

Although the cochlea has been extensively investigated, there remains a lack of information about the vasculature. The survey literature provides only short and sometimes inadequate statements concerning the vascular anatomy. Furthermore, the information available in individual research works is incomplete and sometimes conflicting. This confusion arises from the use of different species of animals, different techniques for the demonstration of the vascular anatomy and different nomenclature. Photographs of variable quality and drawn figures which are in varying degrees schematic have increased the difficulty of arriving at a clear concept of the vasculature. Only little quantitative data are available on vascular dimensions, occurrence, distribution, and the general vascular arrangement.

The physiological mechanism responsible for the production of the labyrinthine fluids is still not settled. Although the capillary sections of the vascular bed are obviously involved in both production and absorption of the intralabyrinthine fluids, the detailed descriptions of all capillary networks necessary for the understanding of these problems are still incomplete.

The functional integrity of the cochlea obviously depends upon the maintenance of an adequate blood supply. Clinical experience indicates that perceptive deafness is often attributable to pathological conditions of the cochlear vessels. Of necessity hypotheses attempting to account for pathological conditions of the circulation of the inner ear and their treatment have often been based upon insufficient knowledge of the vascular anatomy of normal physiological conditions, and of the pharmacological mechanism of the therapy used.

The aim of the present investigation was:

- to provide a critical survey of the literature concerning the vascular anatomy of the cochlea.
- to refine and simplify the method for the demonstration of cochlear vessels.
- to investigate the vascular anatomy of all areas of the cochlea in the guinea pig and man.
- to obtain quantitative data on vascular dimensions and relationships.
- to suggest how certain physiological processes and clinical disorders may be correlated with the vascular anatomy

C. GENERAL DISCUSSION	103
Nomenclature	103
The method	103
Comments on previous investigations	104
Similarities and differences between the guinea pig and man	106
Apex base	106
Intralabyrinthine fluids	109
Oxygen supply to the organ of Corti	114
Clinical aspects	114
Concluding remarks	117
D SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS	118
Acknowledgements	120
Zusammenfassung und Schlusssatz	121
References	129

## Comment

The advantage of direct *in vivo* observation of the vascular areas is that hemodynamic processes as well as the vascular anatomy may be observed and filmed under "normal" as well as induced pathological conditions. The limitations are that only small parts of the external wall in the apical turns of the cochlea can be observed after a very delicate preparation. The method is thus not appropriate for anatomical studies of all areas of the cochlea. Instead, this technique has generally been used in connection with vascular experiments. The use of serial sections gives access to all regions of the cochlea. However in addition to being time consuming and laborious, it provides only a relatively poor stereo conception. The advantages of abandoning this technique in favor of surface preparation methods have been emphasized by Engström et al (1962, 1966). Staining of the intravascular blood gives results similar to the injection of contrast medium, but requires the presence of blood corpuscles in all vessels, which is not always the case. Photos obtained by this technique clearly demonstrate the presence of partially un.injected vessels.

From previous results it appears that the injection of contrast medium is perhaps the most appropriate technique for studies of the vascular anatomy. It can be carried out in cadavers or in living animals under general anesthesia. The method allows a good stereo conception and photographic registration of all parts of the cochlea. The high contrast obtained with injected vessels is probably superior to other techniques for visualization of the vascular anatomy.

TABLE I

*Previous investigations of the vascular anatomy of the cochlea in mammals*

Guinea pig <i>in vitro</i>	Schwalbe, 1887; Nabeya, 1923; Aguzzi, 1948; Smith, 1951; Wüstenfeld & Köhner, 1964
Guinea pig <i>in vivo</i>	Seymour 1954; Welle et al., 1954; Welle, 1955; Perlman & Kimura, 1955 a, b; Naumann et al., 1958; Perlman et al., 1959 a, b; Nomura, 1961; Perlman & Kimura, 1962; Perlman et al., 1963; Bonaccori & Sambuco, 1964; Tazuo & Perlman, 1964, 1965; Costa, 1968.
Rat	Asai, 1908; Nabeya, 1923
Dog	Eichler 1892; Asai, 1908; Nabeya, 1923
Cat	Nabeya, 1923; Smith, 1954
Man	Eichler 1892; Siebenmann, 1894; Nabeya, 1923; Aguzzi, 1949; Scodari & del Bo, 1952; Smith, 1954; Charachon, 1961; Levta, 1964
Other mammals	Ibsen — different mammal including man, 1881; Shambaugh — embryo pig, 1903; Nabeya — rabbit, monkey 1923; Aguzzi — rabbit, 1949





latest papers on the subject have in general confirmed the findings of previous authors without further contributions of importance (Charachon, Wüstenfeld & Kühnert, Levin)

The survey of the vascular anatomy below is a compilation of the often conflicting information given by the various authors with a selection of predominating viewpoints.

### *The basilar the anterior inferior cerebellar and the labyrinthine arteries*

There is general agreement that the inner ear is supplied by only one main vessel the *labyrinthine artery* (also called the internal auditory artery). The origin of this vessel is the following: vertebral — basilar — anterior inferior cerebellar — labyrinthine artery (Fig. 1). In textbooks the distribution of these vessels is described as a symmetrical and fixed system. There are, however, great variations in their size, length, course and ramification (Stopford, 1915; Honaschko, 1927; Charachon, 1961). Variations have been shown in the origin of the labyrinthine artery which has led to confusion. Most commonly the labyrinthine artery is a ramification of the anterior inferior cerebellar artery which is one of the first large branches of the basilar artery (Watt & McKillop, 1935; Nabeya, 1923; Sunderland, 1945; Charachon, 1961; Levin, 1964). The branches supply a part of the pons, the labyrinth and parts of the cerebellum. However, the origin of the labyrinthine artery can vary. It can arise from the vertebral or basilar arteries, from proximal parts of the anterior inferior cerebellar artery or more distally in the inner acoustic meatus. When the labyrinthine artery arrives in the inner acoustic meatus it divides to form the *anterior vestibular artery* and the *common cochlear artery*. The latter in turn soon divides into two terminal branches: the *vestibulo-cochlear artery* and the *cochlear artery* (Fig. 1). The various names used by different authors for these vessels are given in Table VIII, page 124. No great differences seem to exist between the guinea pig and man concerning the distribution of these vessels.

### *Comment*

There is reasonable agreement concerning the main vascular supply to the cochlea. The variations of the ramifications can be explained by differences between species and by individual variations within the same species. Unfortunately the nomenclature used and the descriptions of the vessels in the inner acoustic meatus vary considerably giving rise to difficulties in the interpretation of the subject.

### *The posterior vestibular artery in the guinea pig and the vestibulo-cochlear artery in man*

These two names are used for the same vessel (Table VIII, page 124).

**Guinea pig.** The *posterior vestibular artery* ramifies from the common cochlear artery at the cochlear base. It takes an oblique course along the central margin of

## II Survey of the vascular anatomy

The authors and publication dates of detailed investigations of the vascular anatomy of the cochlea in mammals are compiled in Table I. Pioneering investigations were performed by Ibsen and Schwalbe. The work of Ibsen was carried out in 1841 but was not published until 40 years later after his death. At the end of the last century Eichler and Siebenmann performed the first investigations of the vascular anatomy of the contrast injected human cochlea and presented detailed drawings. Eichler further included a thorough survey of the previous literature on the subject. A subsequent comprehensive study by Nabeya (1923) of the vascular anatomy of different mammals is probably the most correct general survey available today. However this work is particularly focused on the larger vessels and, in minor degree, on the capillary regions.

More recently Smith made a detailed analysis of the capillary regions of the cochlea in the guinea pig, the cat and man. Smith's papers provide the first thorough descriptions of the vascular arrangement in the external wall and the spiral lamina. Nabeya, Smith and Scuderi & del Bo published the first photomicrographs of these areas. Scuderi & del Bo's paper also contains a survey of the literature on the main vascular supply and the capillary regions. Their investigations are focused on the latter and on the vessels in the modiolus. The

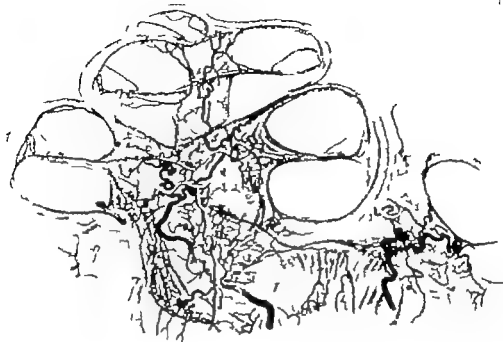


Fig 2. Drawing of radially-sectioned human cochlea showing the larger vessels in the modiolus and in the scalas. Arteries appear darker than the veins (from Siebenmann, 1894. Original in color)

vestibulum and parts of the labyrinth, and the other supplying the rest of the cochlea. According to Siebenmann three branches from the artery take part in the formation of the tractus spiralis arteriosus which runs a serpentine course around the modiolus (Fig 4). Siebenmann considers the primary branches to form arcades. The description of the arterial system as presented by Siebenmann is not always clear. Nabeya maintains that the trunk of the cochlear artery takes part in the formation of the tractus spiralis arteriosus and supplies the capillary regions of the cochlea, except the most basal parts. By the term tractus spiralis arteriosus Nabeya and Siebenmann mean that the main stem of the two arteries which supply the cochlea form a continuous route. Nabeya and Charachon could not always demonstrate the cochlear artery which was replaced in these cases by the cochlear branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery.

#### Comment

The cochlear artery is the most important in the cochlea. In man it is sometimes substituted for by the cochlear branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery. Opinions regarding its ramifications, the existence of "glomeruli" arcades and of the tractus spiralis arteriosus are varied. There is general agreement, however, that the branches supply the capillary regions of the whole cochlea, except the most basal parts.

### Capillary regions<sup>1</sup>

#### Modiolus

A compilation of published data indicates that there are three capillary regions in the modiolus of the guinea pig and man (Eichler Siebenmann, Nabeya, Levin) 1 in the acoustic nerve, 2. in the spiral ganglion, 3 in the bony modiolus wall (Fig. 2) The capillaries forming a dense network in these regions are branches of the cochlear artery or of its primary branches (Nabeya, Smith, Charachon) or from the tractus spiralis arteriosus (Siebenmann) Basally the capillaries derive from the vestibulo-cochlear artery in man and the posterior vestibular artery in the guinea pig

Apically the terminal branches of the cochlear artery end in an irregular capillary network connecting with the venous side. The capillaries in the modiolus are considered to drain to the spiral veins. The capillaries are endothelial walled tubes with occasional smooth muscle cells (Smith)

#### Comment

The capillary regions are situated in the nerve, the ganglion and the modiolus wall where they form irregular networks. These are supplied by the artery in the modiolus or its primary branches or the tractus spiralis arteriosus, and they drain to the spiral veins. There appear to be no great differences between the guinea pig and man in the distribution of these vessels.

#### Spiral lamina

Ibsen was the first to have a modern concept of the vasculature of the spiral lamina. He demonstrated that the vessels in this region form anastomosing loops and that small branches radiate over the whole spiral lamina to veins in the spiral ligament. Today's concept is that radiating arterioles penetrate the osseous spiral lamina at quite regular intervals (Fig 2, 3 4 5) They first run convoluted but straighten further peripherally. The radiating arterioles derive from the tractus spiralis arteriosus (Siebenmann) or from the cochlear artery or its primary branches (Siebenmann, Nabeya, Smith) or from the vestibulo-cochlear artery basally. The radiating arterioles gradually lose most of their muscle coating and are reduced to capillary size when they enter the spiral limbus (Smith)

The spiral vessels in the spiral lamina drew attention long ago and were the subject for much discussion in the latter half of the last century. The number of spiral vessels demonstrated in this region has varied from none to four in the same and different animal species (the reader is referred to the discussions by Eichler Scuderi & del Bo and Charachon). There has been general agreement that the spiral vessels and the vessels in the spiral limbus are terminal loops of capillaries running spirally for short distances. They are alternately supplied

<sup>1</sup> The vascular nomenclature is given on page 29



Fig 3 Drawing of transverse section of the spiral lamina from the basal turn of the guinea pig cochlea. In general the veins appear straighter and darker in the figure (from Nabeya, 1923. Original in color). ACP = A. cochleae propria, VLP = radiating venules of the spiral lamina.



Fig 4 Drawing of transverse section of the spiral lamina from the basal part of the human cochlea. The veins are represented as being somewhat straighter and lighter than the arterioles (from Siebenmann, 1894. Original in color).

by arterioles and drained by venules (Fig. 3-4). Viewed from above the capillary arcades formed by the spiral vessels are seen to be elongated in a spiral direction. At least in the basal turn this arrangement looks like a continuous vessel and has been considered to be so. In the guinea pig there are two spiral vessels, one under the tunnel of Corti and one in the tympanic lip. In addition, the capillaries in the spiral limbus form a spiral network (Nabeya, Smith) (Fig. 3). In man the spiral vessel in the tympanic lip is less evident and is replaced by two zones of capillary networks in the tympanic lip and the spiral limbus (Nabeya, Smith, Scuderi & del Bo) (Fig. 4). Apically the spiral vessels are much less continuous. The capillaries are endothelial walled tubes with occasional smooth muscle cells (Smith) and the vessel below the tunnel of Corti appears to contain fewer contractile elements than the other capillaries (Smith, Spoendlin, 1957).

In general no vessels have been demonstrated in adult guinea pigs or man in the vestibular membrane, the tectorial membrane, or in the zona pectinata. Siebenmann, however, demonstrated capillaries in the vestibular membrane in human embryos of the sixth fetal month. Siebenmann and Levin are the only ones claiming to have demonstrated vascular connections between the membranous cochlea and the surrounding bone.

### Comment

The vascular system of the spiral lamina is arcadic, i.e. arcades connect centrifugally radiating arterial branches with centripetally radiating venous branches. The arcades form spiral vessels under the tunnel of Corti and in the tympanic lip or capillary zones in the tympanic lip and the spiral limbus. The exact localization of the spiral vessels has been much debated and there may be differences between the guinea pig and man. Otherwise the two species seem to be largely similar.

### External wall

In addition to the supplying radiating arterioles and the draining collecting venules, a compilation of modern authors recognizes four vascular areas in the external wall (Fig. 5-6-7).

Capillaries of the spiral parts of the spiral ligament.

The stria vascularis of the scala media.

The vessel of the spiral prominence.

Anastomoses in the deeper parts of the spiral ligament.

The radiating arterioles have been described as deriving from three sources: a) the primary branches of the cochlear artery (Eichler — man, Nabeya — guinea pig and man); b) the tractus spiralis arteriosus or the arcades (Siebenmann — man); and c) the vestibulo-cochlear artery in the basal turn in man or the corresponding posterior vestibular artery in the guinea pig.

The radiating arterioles are given off at right angles and at regular intervals in the modiolus and form some anastomoses with each other centrally. The

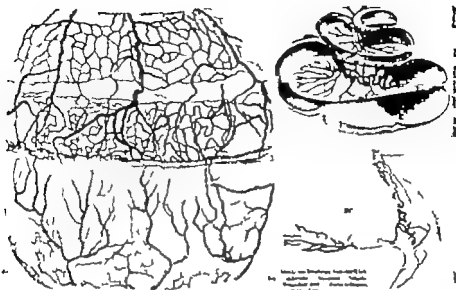


Fig. 5 Left: external wall of the human cochlea. Right, above: radial section of the human cochlea showing the course of the artery running around the modiolum. Right, below: radial section of the scala media in the dog (from Eichler 1892. Original in color).

arterioles follow a tortuous course through the bone but more peripherally they straighten. In general the arterial supply comes over the scala vestibuli and has been described as radiating for some distance in the scala tympani in the basal turn (Ibsen, Charachon, Siebenmann). Nabeya and Smith demonstrated the presence of some venules in the human scala vestibuli, while Siebenmann and Levin found that the frequency of arterioles and venules in this region is similar. The radiating arteriole consists of an endothelial lining with occasional smooth muscle cells and a thin adventitia (Smith-Schucker 1958).

The capillaries of the apical parts of the spiral ligament (Fig. 5 6, 7) form a spiral vessel above the attachment of the vestibular membrane in both the guinea pig and man (Nabeya, Smith, Scuderi & del Bo, Perlman & Amura, Nomura, Charachon). According to Smith a loose network spreads upward from this vessel to the spiral ligament in man. The capillaries either turn to the collecting venules of the turn immediately above (Smith-guinea pig) or to venules in the scala tympani. The capillaries are composed of endothelial cells and an infrequent smooth muscle cell (Smith).

The *stria vascularis* is situated in the external wall of the scala media (Fig. 5 6, 7). This is the vascular structure in the cochlea which has excited the most interest due to its apparent role in the formation and absorption of endolymph and as the source of electrical potentials. It also occupies an almost unique position in the literature in having "*stria vascularis*" as its only name and in being uniformly described by all authors. Retzius (1882) was the first to clearly establish the *stria vascularis* to be a vascularized epithelium, a question much





Fig. 5. Photomicrograph of a radial section of the external wall in the guinea pig cochlea. l.s.lg. = lower spiral ligament, r.a. = radiating arteriole, u.s.lg. = upper spiral ligament, I = capillary of the upper spiral ligament, II = network of the stria vascularis, III = vessel of the spiral prominence, IV = capillary descending in the depths of the spiral ligament (from Smith, 1951).

debated previously. Today there is general agreement that the conception of Retzius was correct. The stria vascularis consists of a capillary mesh-work which is stretched out in a spiral direction and which possesses a rather distinct apical and basal vascular borderline (Nabeyu Smith, Charachon). According to Smith and Scuderi & del Bo each radiating arteriole supplies the stria vascularis. The capillaries appear to be composed only of endothelial cells (Smith). Large arterioles enter and large venules leave at regular intervals in man (Smith).

The vessel of the spiral prominence was already mentioned by Corti (1851) and by Hensen (1863). In the guinea pig each radiating arteriole supplies a spiral vessel in the spiral prominence (Smith-guinea pig, Nomura) (Fig. 6) or a dense network of capillaries in man (Eichler Smith-man) (Fig. 5, 7). Ramifications from the vessel of the spiral prominence turn to the venules in the scala tympani and to the anastomosing vessels externally to the stria vascularis (Smith).

The anastomoses in the deeper parts of the spiral ligament consist of capillaries composed of endothelial cells and infrequent muscle cells in the guinea pig (Smith). They connect the radiating arterioles with the collecting venules (Fig. 5, 6, 7). In man some are capillaries without perivascular cells; others are larger and may represent a kind of arterio-venous shunt (Smith).



Fig. 7 Photomicrograph of radial section of the external wall in the human cochlea. 1 = radiating arteriole in the scala vestibuli, 2 = axis vascularis, 3 = vessel of the spiral prominence, 4 = spirally running vessel in the spiral crista formed by anastomoses, 5 = collecting venules of the scala tympani (from Scuderi & del Bo, 1952).

The collecting venules in the lower part of the spiral ligament drain the different vascular tributaries in the external wall (Fig. 5 & 7). The main venous drainage thus goes over the scala tympani. The veins are considered to project a little into the scala vestibuli, but arteries do not enter the scala tympani (Siebenmann, Nabeya). Siebenmann and Charachon demonstrated that arterioles coming from the modiolus supply the scala tympani of the basal turn and parts of the second turn. A spiral vessel has been described in or below the crista ligamenti spiralis (Siebenmann, Nabeya, Smith, Scuderi & del Bo, Svane-Knudsen 1958, Charachon). This vessel marks the upper limit of the vascular network in the scala tympani similar to that found in the scala vestibuli (Smith). Smith considers the spiral vessel in the guinea pig to be a spiral part of the capillaries before they turn to the venules. The venules extend downward over the scala tympani and communicate with the collecting venules. As the collecting venules leave the spiral ligament, a connective tissue adventitia can be demonstrated (Smith).

*In vivo* studies of the external wall of the guinea pig have confirmed many of these anatomical findings and have contributed knowledge about the circulation in the spiral ligament.

#### Comment

There are no great differences between the guinea pig and man in the distribution of the vessels in the external wall. Most authors agree that there is an

arterial dominance in the *scala vestibuli* and a venous dominance in the *scala tympani*. In fact, many authors totally exclude a venous drainage of the *scala vestibuli* and an arterial supply to the *scala tympani*. Spiral capillary vessels have been described as lying above the attachment of the vestibular membrane, in the spiral prominence (a vessel or a vascular network) and in the *crista ligamenti spiralis*.

### *Cochlear venous drainage*

All the capillary regions described above are drained by venous ramifications collecting to form venules and veins which finally empty into the principal vein of the cochlea the *vein of the cochlear aqueduct* (Fig 1) This vein runs close and parallel to the cochlear aqueduct and empties into the bulb of the jugular vein The anatomy differs in the guinea pig and man.

*Guinea pig* According to Nabeya, the whole cochlea except a small part at the basal end is drained by the *posterior spiral vein*. This vessel, situated in the lower central aspect of the *scala tympani* receives venules from the *scala tympani* on its convex aspect and venules from the spiral lamina, acoustic nerve, spiral ganglion, and the modiolus on its apical aspect. The posterior spiral vein runs a spiral course around the modiolus from apex to base. It empties into the vein of the cochlear aqueduct together with the *vein of the round window* and the *posterior vestibular vein*. The vein of the round window drains the region of the round window and the spiral ligament at the basal end. The posterior vestibular vein drains the vestibulum and the most basal parts of the spiral lamina.

*Man.* The principal vein, the *vein of the cochlear aqueduct* arises when the *anterior and posterior spiral veins* and the two *vestibular veins* join in the basal turn (Eichler Siebenmann Nabeya) There may be additional venous routes formed by connections with vessels in the surrounding bone and with veins in the inner acoustic meatus (Siebenmann) (Fig 2) With regard to man, Nabeya found only occasional connections between the posterior spiral vein and veins in the inner acoustic meatus. The capillaries in the modiolus are drained by branches of the spiral veins

The *vein of the spiral lamina* (Siebenmann) is situated centrally in the spiral lamina of the basal turn. It runs a spiral course and receives radiating venules from the spiral lamina and the spiral ganglion in the whole cochlea. The vein of the spiral lamina connects the spiral veins and the *internal auditory veins* (Siebenmann) (Fig 2) and is more often found in the basal turn than apically. While Eichler failed to demonstrate this vein, Nabeya found it in some cases but not so consistently as Siebenmann. Opinions vary concerning the course and distribution of the spiral veins and the internal auditory veins.

Eichler found the principal vein to be the vein of the cochlear aqueduct with eight ramifications. The description given of this system is difficult to interpret but probably is essentially correct.

According to Siebenmann there are three principal venous routes from the

cochlea in man. In order of descending importance these are the vein of the cochlear aqueduct, the internal auditory veins, and anastomoses to bone vessels. The posterior spiral vein drains the scala tympani of the basal turn and a small part of the middle turn. In the middle of the basal turn it divides into two branches running in opposite directions, but which subsequently converge. The anterior spiral vein is situated in the scala vestibuli close to the round window. In the modiolus it is situated above the cochlear spiral canal and drains the whole apical region of the cochlea, but only the scala vestibuli and the bone surrounding it in the basal turn. The internal auditory veins have branches which communicate with the posterior spiral vein and the vein of the spiral lamina via the so-called central cochlear vein (Fig. 2). The latter connection has not been confirmed by other authors.

According to Nabeya there are two different systems for cochlear drainage in which either the anterior or posterior spiral vein is significantly larger than the other. In 70% of the cadavers examined the large posterior spiral vein accounted for more than 2/3 of the blood from the cochlea and the anterior spiral vein the rest.

#### *Comment*

The principal venous drainage from the cochlea is carried out by the vein of the cochlear aqueduct. This vein leaves the cochlea at the base in the region of the round window and turns to the bulb of the jugular vein. By the confluence of smaller venules draining the capillary regions, one (guinea pig) or two (man) spiral veins are formed which terminate at the base in the vein of the cochlear aqueduct. There is disagreement about the existence of an additional venous drainage to bone vessels and through the inner acoustic meatus. On the whole it is difficult to form a clear picture of the venous system in the cochlea because of divergent opinions among the various authors.

#### *C. Measurements of vascular dimensions*

There are only a few measurements of vascular dimensions available in the literature for comparison with those of the present investigation. These are summarized in Table II (page 20). For comments and comparisons see chapter External Wall, Comment.

#### *D. Summary*

From the published papers it appears that the best technique for the visualization of the blood vessels in the cochlea probably is injection of contrast medium. Studies of the circulation *in vivo* in the external wall give further valuable information on this subject but are, of necessity limited in scope. Previous descriptions and drawings of the vascular anatomy are often difficult to interpret. This is to be expected since modern stereo- and photo-microscopy were unavailable when these investigations were made. The best available photographic documentation is given by Smith and by Scuderi & del Bo.

TABLE II

*Previous measurements of vessel diameters*

Author	Animal	Vessel	Turn	Diameter in microns	
				Lumen	Vascular wall
Schwalbe (1887)	guinea pig	Spiral modiolar vein	base	<120	
		Spiral modiolar vein	2nd	60	
		Major arteries in the modiolus	2nd	32 (mean)	
		Radiating arterioles of the "vascular spring-coils"	"mean	10-12	
		Radiating arterioles in the supe- rior part of the spiral ligament		8	
		Radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli		8-10	
		Collecting venules from the stria vascularis		10	
		Radiating arterioles in the exter- nal wall	3d, 4th	<20	
Nommers (1961) Perلمان & Kimura (1964)		Spiral ligament vessel		5-8	
		Capillaries of the stria vascularis		8-15	
		Radiating arterioles	"	8-10	
		Collecting venules	"	10	
Perلمان, Tammo & Spence (1963)		Capillaries of the stria vascularis		8	
		Radiating arterioles		7	
		Arterio-venous anastomoses		5	
Iurato (1962)	rat	Vessel of the basilar membrane		4-7	0.2-1.5
		Vessel of the tympanic lip		4-7	0.2-1.5
		Lumbar vessels		3-5	0.2-2
		Small capillaries of the spiral ligament		0.5-2	0.18-1.4
		Larger capillaries of the spiral ligament		≤4	0.18-3
Hinojosa & Rodríguez Echandia (1966)	cat	Capillaries of the stria vascularis			0.5-5
Scuderi & del Bo (1952) Charachon (1961)	man	Radiating arterioles of the vas- cular spring-coils		20-40	
		Capillaries of the stria vascularis		7	
		Arterio-venous anastomoses		15-20	
		Collecting venules		10-17	
		Capillaries of the scala vestibuli		5-10	
		Radiating arterioles of the spiral lamina	base	30-40	
		Vessel of the basilar membrane		10-20	

The few available descriptions of the vascular anatomy are often conflicting, both concerning major arteries and veins as well as capillary regions. The description of the latter has often been short and incomplete.

The inner ear is supplied by an endartery the labyrinthine artery. Before arriving in the cochlea it has divided so that the cochlea is supplied by two arteries, the vestibulo-cochlear artery and the cochlear artery. Opinions regarding the existence, course, and ramifications of these vessels vary greatly. Contrasting views on the "glomeruli" arcades and a tractus spiralis arteriosus are also numerous.

Previous investigations are more in agreement concerning the capillary regions. In the modiolus these are situated in the spiral ganglion, the acoustic nerve and the modiolus wall. In the spiral lamina there are one or two spiral vessels and a capillary network in the spiral limbus. The vascular arrangement is in general arcadic. In the external wall radiating arterioles run over the scala vestibuli and supply the capillary regions in the apical parts of the spiral ligament, the stria vascularis of the scala media, and the vessel of the spiral prominence. Arterio-venous anastomoses externally to the stria vascularis connect the radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli with the collecting venules in the scala tympani. The latter collect the blood from the above-mentioned capillary regions and empty into one or two spiral veins running around the modiolus. All the cochlear veins confluence to the vein of the cochlear aqueduct. Unlike the arteries, this vein does not leave the cochlea through the inner acoustic meatus but runs parallelly to the cochlear aqueduct and empties into the jugular vein.

### III PRESENT INVESTIGATION

#### A. METHODS

The original aim of the present investigation was to demonstrate the vascular system of the cochlea by a microradioangiographic technique according to Saunders et al (1957). This method, however, proved to give too many overlapping vessels in the radiograms. Even if dissected-out pieces of the membranous cochlea were examined, the vascular net was so dense that it proved to be very difficult to discern single vessels and to get a clear view of the vascular anatomy. Furthermore, the resolution was insufficient and the transformation of the radiograms to photographs involved a definite loss of information. After these disadvantages of microradioangiography were realized, it was decided to attempt the previously used contrast injection method. This method was subsequently modified empirically.

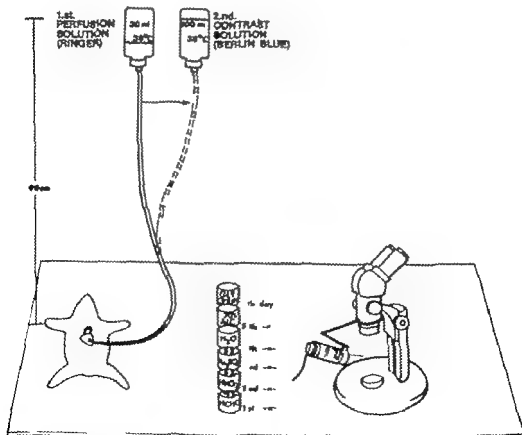


Fig. 8. Experimental lay-out illustrating the successive preparative steps in the contrast injection of the guinea pig cochlea.

### 1 Injection of contrast medium in the guinea pig

A total of 163 adult guinea pigs, each weighing approximately 300 g, were used in these experiments.

The animals were anesthetized by intraperitoneal administration of urethane, 3 g/kg body weight in a 10% solution. An incision was made in the pericardium and the left ventricle and a plastic tube (Intramedic Polyethylene Tubing PE 160 inner diameter 1.143 mm, outer diameter 1.575 mm, Adams Clay) was inserted in the ascending aorta and ligated. To avoid air emboli the tube was filled with Ringer's solution. The superior vena cava was then cut immediately above the heart and the animal bled for 30 seconds. The animal was subsequently perfused with 30 ml of 38 degree Ringer's solution for 4—7 minutes under a hydrostatic pressure of about 90 cm H<sub>2</sub>O (Fig. 8). The animal then was injected at the same constant pressure with up to 100 ml of Berlin blue (G. T. Gurr) at 38 degrees.<sup>1</sup> The vascular system of the animal was perfused until the contrast medium no longer entered it spontaneously. Asystole occurred 1—8 minutes after the perfusion was begun. After completed injection, the skull was opened in the occipital region, the temporal bones removed and the tympanic bulla opened.

### Preparation of the cochlea

Fixation, decalcification and storage were based upon Schaffer's method (Romeis, 1948)

Fixation	10% neutralized formalin solution	for 24 hours
Decalcification	5% nitric acid	" " "
Neutralization	5% sodium sulfate	" " "
Washing	tap water	" " "
Dehydration	70% ethyl alcohol	" " "
Storage	water free double-distilled glycerin	

During these preparative steps the entire cochlea, including the windows, was left intact. The cochlea was then ready for visual and photographic examination under the microscope (Fig. 8). The mucoperiosteum was peeled off leaving the cochlea semi-transparent (Fig. 9-10). The cochlea then was divided under a dissection microscope in different ways so that all membranous parts could be isolated and photographed. Survey photographs of the complete cochlea were taken by a Hasselblad 500 C camera with a Zeiss S-Planar 5.6/120 mm lens and extension tubes of various lengths. Microphotos were taken of specimens immersed in glycerin between an object slide and a cover glass using a Wild M 20 research microscope provided with phase-contrast equipment and a camera with Kodak Tri-X Pan film, 27 DIN. Phase-contrast microscopy was used in order to make uninjected vessels visible.

<sup>1</sup> The contrast medium was prepared from a Berlin blue powder (soluble Prussian blue, ferric ferrocyanide) dissolved in Ringer's solution for 8 hours at 40 degrees to a concentration of 2.5. It was then filtered twice at 40 degrees through a Pyrex filter, pore size 1 (100—120 microns) with negative pressure of 2.5 kg. The particle size of the final injection solution was less than 0.5 microns and the pH 5.75.



### Comment

The method described is the result of modifications of previously published techniques. The modifications were introduced to refine the contrast injection technique and to shorten the process of preparation.

A number of steps have been varied within the following limits without any significant influence on the result of the injections.

a. *Quantity of the preceding perfusion* 30—200 ml of Ringer's solution or no perfusion at all gave the same result.

b. *Quantity and concentration of the Berlin blue solution.* 15—100 ml of 2—10% Berlin blue dissolved in Ringer's solution.

c. *The injection pressure* Hydrostatic within the limits 50—120 cm H<sub>2</sub>O. It proved very difficult to find a pressure which allowed the filling of all vessels in the cochlea without rupturing the vessels in the inner meatus.

d. *Decalcification agent* 5% nitric acid, 5% hydrochloric acid, 10% formic acid, EDTA Parengy 5% trichloroacetic acid.

e. *Degree of dehydration* The complete series of dehydration steps to 96% ethyl alcohol was not found to be necessary. A satisfactory dehydration was achieved with a 24 hour immersion in 70% ethyl alcohol.



Fig. 1. The relative acidity of the various structures in the cochlea. The relative acidity of the various structures in the cochlea is shown in the following table. The relative acidity of the various structures in the cochlea is shown in the following table.

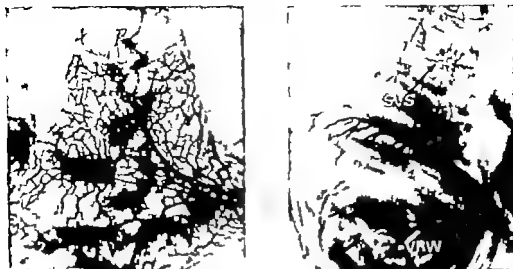


Fig. 10 Guinea pig cochlea. Left: the dense vascular net of the periestrum exposed. Arrow = main artery of the vascular net. Right: removal of the periestrum leaves the cochlea semi-transparent. Radiating arterioles predominate in the scala vestibuli and collecting venules in the scala tympani. VRW = vein of the round window SVS = stria vascularis (17°C).

Variation of the following steps appeared to significantly alter the result of the injection:

a. *The stage of anesthesia*. When the animal still reacted to pain the subsequent injection was less successful than if the animal was in deep general anesthesia.

b. *Bleeding of the animal before injection*. Better results were obtained when the animal was bled, regardless of where it was bled (section of the superior vena cava, incision in the liver, cardiotomy in the right ventricle).

c. *Nature of the contrast material*. Berlin blue, Indian ink, and Evan's blue were used. Berlin blue gave a markedly better and more uniform contrast injection than the others.

d. *The storage medium*. Immersion oil, Epon and glycerin were used. Storage in glycerin, used previously only by Konaschko (1927), proved to have many advantages. It is a transparent and nonvolatile medium. The latter property is important since the danger of evaporation is particularly great during the examination of the specimen under the strong microscope illumination. The cochlea keeps its elasticity in glycerin after decalcification. The color of the contrast did not change even after three years storage of both whole cochleas and dissected-out pieces. Further dissection can easily be carried out if desired. Whole cochleas and dissected-out pieces can be photographed in glycerin.

Subsequent examination with phase-contrast microscopy demonstrated that the capillaries of almost all areas of the cochlea were filled with contrast in the well injected preparations. A common exception was the stria vascularis where small parts of the capillary net often were uninjected. This could also be observed without phase-contrast as the vessels generally were injected to at least some extent, revealing their position. Ruptured vessels in the cochlea or coloration of the intralabyrinthine fluids were never observed.

## 2 *Injection of contrast medium in man.*

For these experiments 60 cadavers of different ages were used. Individuals with presumed cerebral or auditory circulation disturbances were excluded by the case histories.

The injection procedure was principally similar to that employed with the guinea pig cochlea. The cadaver was injected as soon as possible after death, preferably within 24 hours. The vertebral arteries were dissected free and cut at their departure. In some cases the brain was removed. A plastic tube (see specifications for the guinea pig) was inserted into the basilar artery from its anterior end and installed with its tip in the region of the departure of the anterior inferior cerebellar artery. In those cases where the brain was not removed, the plastic tube was inserted into one or both vertebral arteries. Perfusion was achieved with 400 ml of Ringer's solution at a hydrostatic pressure of 120 cm H<sub>2</sub>O. Subsequent contrast injection was carried out with 400 ml of 3% Berlin blue solution at the same hydrostatic pressure. In the beginning of the perfusion and contrast injection, free flow was allowed, but soon intermittent occlusion on the arterial system was introduced to direct the flow. As only minimal back flow could be detected through the venous system of the neck, no veins were occluded. Immediately after completed injection the temporal bones were removed and put in fixing solution.

### *Preparation of the cochlea*

The temporal bones were fixed in 10% formalin for 48 hours. The subsequent preparative steps were the same as presented for the guinea pig with the exception that the decalcification procedure required several days, during which a successive dissection of the cochlea was performed. Intact and dissected cochleas were studied under the dissection-microscope and photographed in the same way as described for the guinea pig.

### *Comment*

As with the guinea pig it was not possible to achieve uniformly good results with the method presented in spite of many variations in the injection technique.

The following variations did not appear to influence the results

- a Age and cause of death
- b Temperature of the perfusion solutions 20 or 37 degrees
- c Temperature and concentration of the Berlin blue solution. 20 or 37 degrees, 2.5–6%, diluted with Ringer's solution or 6% Macrodex. Filtered twice at 40 degrees in the same way as described for the guinea pig.
- d Presence or absence of the brain
- e Removal of clots in the venous sinusoids in the skull
- f Site of injection Basilar vertebral basilar + vertebral arteries.
- g Stasis Regulation of the flow of perfusion and contrast solutions into the venous system.

The following factors seemed to influence the results:

a. *Interval death — injection* If this interval was short the results usually were better

b. *Anemia or hemorrhage* These conditions in connection with death seemed to have a favorable influence on the injection.

c. *Quantity of the perfusion and contrast solution* Large volumes led to better results.

d. *Injection via the jugular vein* This was not successful as the contrast medium flowed directly into the venous sinusoid system.

e. *Injection pressure* Besides hydrostatic pressure, manual injection by syringe and controlled air pressure were attempted. The latter technique involved starting with low hydrostatic pressure which subsequently was raised to over 300 mm Hg by application of air pressure to the reservoir of contrast medium. This method gave satisfactory results in many cases. As in the guinea pig it is difficult to adjust the pressure of injection so that the contrast passes the vessels of the inner acoustic meatus without rupturing them.

Occasionally simultaneous injections in the vertebral and internal carotid arteries were attempted. This method of injection seemed promising, but it had to be abandoned because of disfigurement of the face of the cadaver

It was not possible to judge if the injection had been successful while the procedure was still being carried out. In most cases all superficial vessels of the cerebellum and the basal parts of the cerebrum were well filled. There was, however, no correlation between the degree of filling of these vessels and those of the cochlea.

Often basal parts of the cochlea were well filled with contrast while apical parts were not. In other cases the opposite condition was found. No extravasates occurred around the cochlear vessels, nor was coloration of the intralabyrinthine fluids found. In all cases the vessels of the inner acoustic meatus were injected and the surrounding tissues and meninges as well. In many instances there had been ruptures in the inner acoustic meatus and resulting completely uninjected vascular areas in the cochlea. Differences in contrast filling between the arterial and venous systems were striking in some cases. The stria vascularis and the capillary regions in the spiral lamina proved particularly difficult to fill completely. This also applied to the stria vascularis even if other parts of the external wall were well injected. This effect appears to be due to a shunting over of contrast along the "path of least resistance" directly from the arterial system on the scala vestibuli to the venous system on the scala tympani.

The dissection of the human cochlea is much more difficult than that of the guinea pig. The position deep in the temporal bone, the difficulty of removing this bone, the great diameter of the basal turn which makes observations from the outside difficult, and the strong attachment of the basilar membrane to the external wall contribute to these difficulties. Furthermore, the guinea pig can be injected *in vivo* thus avoiding the clots which obstruct the vascular system of human cadavers.

### 3 *Measurements of the vascular anatomy in the guinea pig<sup>1</sup>*

The animals were injected with contrast according to the method described. Whole cochleas, radial and transverse sectioned cochleas, and small dissected-out pieces from the membranous cochlea were used for the measurements. The following parameters were investigated under a stereo-microscope

- a. *Number of radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli*
- b. *Distribution of the radiating arterioles to different vessels in the external wall*
- c. *Occurrence of vascular anastomoses in the external wall and the spiral lamina*

The results of *a* and *b* are presented as means of measurements in 10 animals. In addition photomicrographs were taken of glycerin-embedded preparations. The magnification used was 7X—375X. The material was composed of samples from 7 guinea pigs. A measuring ocular (graduated in  $\square$  1 mm) and an odometer (graduated in cm) were used for making the following measurements:

- a. *Distances between vessels*
- b. *Diameter of vessels*
- c. *Vascular density (vessel length/tissue area)*

The material in the latter three measurements was treated statistically according to the methods of two-way analysis of variance and Tukey's procedure was adopted for the calculation of individual differences between turns (Brownlee, 1961). The total variance was decomposed into the following categories: variance depending upon differences between animal means,

"	"	"	"	"	turn means.
"	"	"	"	"	interactions.
"	"	"	"	"	differences between observations per animal and turn.

Level of significance\* 5 %

Number of animals 7

Number of turns 3

Number of photos per turn 2 (5 measurements per photo)

#### *Comment*

Studies hitherto available have furnished valuable information concerning the descriptive vascular anatomy and observations *in vivo* in the external wall. There is, however, a lack of published data concerning vascular diameters, ramifications, density etc. The present method does not pretend to reflect *in vivo* conditions concerning vessel diameters. Although the aim of the technique was to measure the diameter of the vessel lumen, a number of experimental variables can influence this value:

- a. Possible staining of the vascular wall by the injected medium, thus causing the wall thickness to be included in the measurement.

<sup>1</sup> These examinations were carried out together with Berthelm Maaß, M.D. Department of Otolaryngology University of Düsseldorf

b. Distension of the vessel as a function of the injection pressure and the possible presence of some smooth muscle activity in the vascular walls.

c. Distortion of the tissues during the different steps of post mortem preparation.

The precise degree to which these different factors contribute to the measured diameter is difficult to evaluate. However if the vascular walls were stained, one would expect that the contrast medium would pass the endothelial cells and stain the surrounding tissues as well, which was never the case. Further arterioles in which the smooth muscles are completely relaxed, which probably is the case during the preparation, are no doubt to some extent distensible (Folkow & Löfving 1956). The diameter changes are of relatively moderate degree, possibly within 20–30 %, when the transmural pressure is reduced from a normal level to the low pressure level which exists at the moment the tissues are fixed. Capillaries in general seem to be very little distensible. Veins do not demonstrate any high degree of true distensibility but rather a collapse of their lumen at very low distending pressure (Öberg, 1967). Further it is unlikely that vascular smooth muscle activity should remain to any significant extent since the animal is exposed to both hypoxia and the low pH of the injected medium during the experimental procedure.

In any case, the present method facilitates the visualization of the vascular arrangement, the calculation of the number of vessels, the measurement of distances between vessels, the estimation of the course, ramification and termination of the vessels and approximate estimation of vascular dimensions. The results thus provide new data.

#### 4 Nomenclature

The anatomical nomenclature adopted in the present investigation is given in Fig. 11. The vascular nomenclature has in general followed the available one

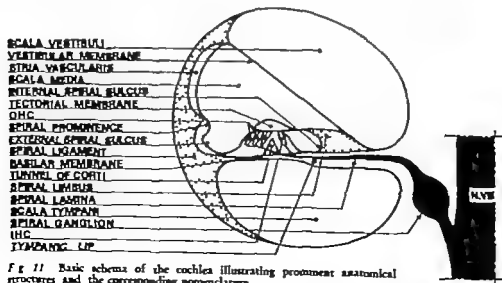


Fig. 11. Basic schema of the cochlea illustrating prominent anatomical structures and the corresponding nomenclature.

concerning artery — arteriole — capillary — venule — vein. However a strict anatomical nomenclature based only on the criterion of vessel diameter has been abandoned and the commonly used nomenclature preferred. This was necessary since it was not the aim of the present investigation to carry out histological studies of the vascular wall. By arterio-venous anastomosis is here meant the shortest vascular connection between the arterial and venous systems with a rapid blood flow. It may or may not have the function of a capillary. If transmural exchange occurs, which can only be settled by functional studies, the term "arterio-venous thoroughfare capillary" would be most appropriate. If no exchange is possible and therefore true shunting of blood occurs, the term "arterio-venous anastomosis" or "arterio-venous shunt" would be most suitable (Illig, 1961).

Identification of individual vessels was accomplished by following them from their origin in the readily identifiable major arteries and veins. Descriptive names have been suggested for certain vessels which hitherto have not been named in order to simplify future discussion. Suggestions have also been made to alter the established nomenclature of some vessels. In these cases, justification has been provided for the new name.

The different structures of the cochlea have been referred to in the following way:

Apical — basal any axis parallel to the midmodiolar axis.

Central — peripheral any axis perpendicular to the midmodiolar axis.

Radial section section parallel to the midmodiolar axis.

Transverse section: Section perpendicular to the midmodiolar axis.

Above — below apical and basal, respectively to a given point or structure used in describing localized areas of the cochlea.

Spiral the helical course around the midmodiolar axis described by the cochlea.

Turn a 360 degree segment of the cochlear spiral.

Modiolus the bony central axis including the acoustic nerve, spiral ganglion and vessels.

Spiral lamina the spiral plate consisting of the osseous and membranous spiral lamina as well as the basilar membrane.

External wall the peripheral tissue layer including the spiral ligament covering the cochlea from the most apical point of the scala vestibuli to the most basal point of the scala tympani.

Basal end: the partially uncoiled most basal segment of the cochlea.

## 5 Summary

The following method has been elaborated with the aim of visualizing the vascular anatomy of the cochlea in the guinea pig and man: injection of contrast medium, decalcification, dissection under the stereo-microscope, and photomicroscopy. With this method the vascular anatomy of the cochlea has been described and measurements carried out.

## B. RESULTS

## 1 The vascular anatomy of the modiolus

## a. Guinea pig

*Arterial system*

The *spiral modiolar artery* (SMA, *A. spiralis modioli*) is the direct continuation of the labyrinthine artery and its terminal branch (Fig. 12, 13). From its entrance in the modiolus, SMA is always situated in the interspace between the acoustic nerve centrally and the spiral ganglion peripherally. The artery is situated basally in the interspace and its branches more apically (Fig. 12, 13, 14). SMA runs an irregular serpentine course particularly at the base. The size of SMA gradually diminishes (Fig. 21 Table III) and in the apical turn the single arterial stem has divided into 2–4 terminal branches.

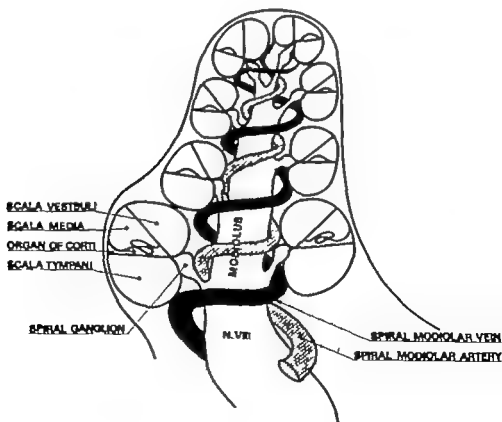


Fig. 12. Guinea pig cochlea, radial section, schematic. The main artery and vein in relation to the modiolus and scalae.



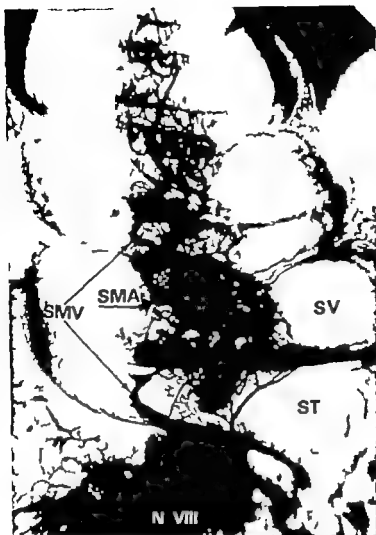


Fig 13 Guinea pig cochlea, radial section. Spiral modiolar artery (SMA) with primary and secondary arterial branches running around the modiolus at the level of the scala vestibuli with a winding course. Spiral modiolar vein (SMV) running around the modiolus in the central-basal aspect of the scala tympani with straighter course. SV = scala vestibuli, ST = scala tympani, N VIII = acoustic nerve arrow = capillary net the modiolus w ll (32.5X).

Two kinds of branches are given off. Large primary branches are not numerous but are given off regularly, usually two in each turn (Fig. 13, 14). They have a serpentine course and sometimes make loops. The primary branches soon divide into several secondary and further ramifications with an increasingly winding course resembling spring-coils. These structures were previously termed glomeruli. The radiating arterioles run from the modiolus to apical parts of the scala vestibuli and to the spiral lamina and limbus (Fig. 14, 15, 19). Centrally in the spiral lamina the arterioles sometimes connect with one another to form spirally running arcades (Fig. 16). The diameter of the



Fig 14 Guinea pig, second turn, radial section. Spiral modiolar artery (SMA) with winding course. Primary and secondary branches forming frequent loops. Spiral modiolar vein (SMV) receiving branches from the external wall (right) and the spiral lamina and ganglion (left). Arrow<sup>1</sup> = arteriole supplying the spiral lamina, arrow<sup>2</sup> = arterioles supplying the marginal vessels of the spiral lamina (75X).

radiating arterioles in the modiolus is somewhat greater in the basal than in the second and third turns (Fig. 21 Table III) SMA also gives off ramifications of quite different appearance. They are smaller and straighter and take part in the supply to the wall of the modiolus, the acoustic nerve, and the spiral ganglion (Fig. 16) They are numerous basally and form a vascular net around the artery



Fig 15 Guinea pig, modiolus, transverse section. Spiral modiolar artery giving off primary and further branches with an increasingly winding course forming "vascular spring-coils" (195X).

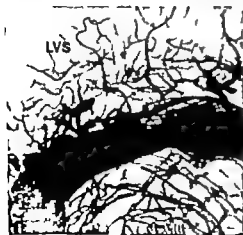


Fig 16 Guinea pig, modiolus, transverse section. N VIII = acoustic nerve surrounded by spiral modiolar artery. A dense net of capillaries surrounding the spiral modiolar artery is revealed post further dissection (right). LVS = lumbus venels, arrow = arcades between radiating arterioles (68X).



Fig 17 Guinea pig, radial section. VCAQ = vein of the cochlear aqueduct leaving the cochlea parallel to the cochlear aqueduct and not by way of the inner acoustic meatus. SMV = spiral modiolar vein, SMA = spiral modiolar artery, N VIII = acoustic nerve, arrow = vascular net on the modiolus wall (22X).



Fig 18 Guinea pig, modiolus, basal turn, transverse section. Spiral modiolar vein running around the modiolus receiving several collecting venules of the scala tympani on convex aspect and a few from the acoustic nerve, spiral ganglion and the spiral lamina on pical or medial aspect. Arrow = venule penetrating nerv radially (41X).

### *Venous system.*

The *spiral modiolar vein* (SMV = *V spiralis modioli*) originates in the fourth turn as the confluence of the venules from the capillary regions in the apical turn. SMV runs a spiral course around the modiolus in the whole cochlea (Fig. 12-13). It is always situated in the basal central angle of the scala tympani (Fig. 14). As compared with SMA the vein has a more even course and its diameter gradually increases toward the base (Fig. 21 Table III). At the base close to the round window SMV curves about 90 degrees and empties into the vein of the cochlear aqueduct (Fig. 17). SMV drains most of the capillary regions of the cochlea. Numerous primary branches coming from the external wall of the scala tympani empty into its convex aspect (Fig. 14-18). The diameter of these



Fig 19 Guinea pig, modiolus, second turn, transverse section. Central-left: acoustic nerve with capillaries. Central-right: spiral ganglion. Above: spiral modiolar vein. Below-left: "vascular spring-coils" of the radiating arterioles. Below right: vessels in the spiral lamina and limbus (95X).



Fig 20 Guinea pig, modiolus, second turn, transverse section. Spiral ganglion with arterial supply centrally and venous drainage forming margin peripherally. SMA = spiral modiolar artery (144X).

TABLE III

*The diameter of the vessels in the guinea pig modiolus*

Mean diameter of:	Base	Turn		SD <sup>1</sup>	Significant Differences
		2nd	3rd		
spiral modiolar artery <sup>2</sup>	82.5	70.9	47.8	17.3	AI T <sub>1</sub> > T > T
spiral modiolar vein	84.9	64.0	44.8	14.5	AI T > T > T
radiating arterioles <sup>3</sup>	15.0	12.0	12.0	3.2	AI T > T = T
collecting venules <sup>4</sup>	25.3	14.1	13.4	9.7	T > T = T
capillaries in acoustic nerve	5.4	4.7	4.5	2.5	A T = T = T

All measurements in microns.

<sup>1</sup> SD = standard deviation (error)

<sup>2</sup> Measured in 6 animals due to insufficient material.

<sup>3</sup> Measured immediately peripherally to the vascular spring-coils<sup>6</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Measured immediately before emptying into the spiral modiolar vein.

A = statistically significant difference between animals.

I = statistically significant interactions.

T = statistically significant difference between turns in the same animal.

(T = basal turn, T<sub>1</sub> = second turn, T = third turn)

venules is much greater in the base than in the second and third turns (Fig. 21 Table III). A small number of primary branches deriving from the capillary regions in the spiral lamina, spiral limbus, spiral ganglion, acoustic nerve and the wall of the modiolus are received by its apical aspect (Fig. 13 14 17 18). In the apical turn there is occasionally a special arrangement in which venules deriving from the scala tympani merge with venules from the modiolus wall before emptying into SMV. Basally in the cochlea these branches turn to SMV separately.

The basal end of the cochlea is drained by the vestibulo-cochlear vein and its branch the vein of the round window. The vein of the cochlear aqueduct is formed by the confluence of SMV and the vestibulo-cochlear vein. The anatomy of these veins is described in the chapter Basal End.

### Capillary system

The capillary regions of the modiolus are situated in the acoustic nerve, in the spiral ganglion, and in the wall of the modiolus.

The acoustic nerve is penetrated by a net of capillaries. Particularly at the base, larger arterial and venous branches also penetrate the nerve (Fig. 18). In general the capillaries have a spiral course peripherally and a straighter apico-basal course centrally without any regular pattern (Fig. 16, 19). The diameter



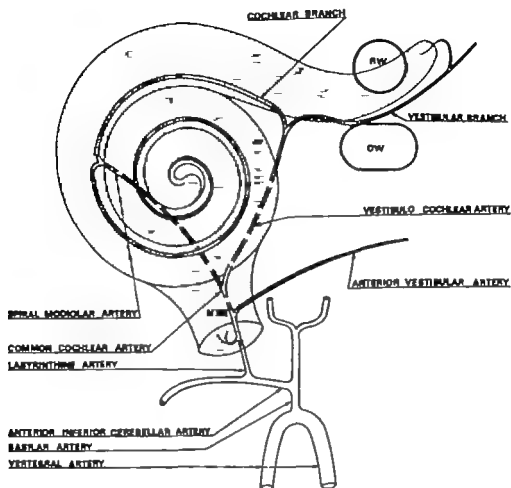


Fig. 22. Man, arterial system, schematic. OW = oval window RW = round window N VIII = acoustic nerve.

## b. Man

### Arterial system

After the ramification of the anterior vestibular artery the labyrinthine artery is called the common cochlear artery (Fig. 22). It soon divides into two terminal arteries, the vestibulo-cochlear artery and the spiral modiolar artery the latter formerly called the cochlear artery (*A. cochleae propria*)



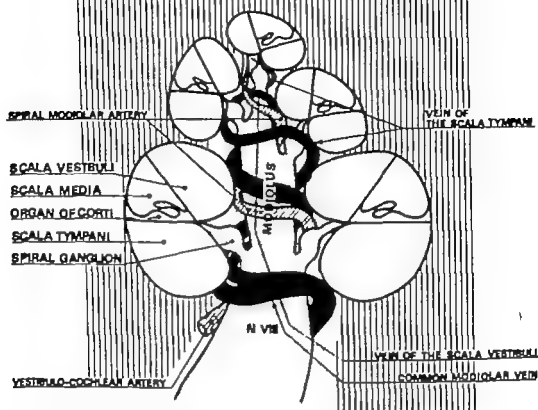


Fig 23 Man, modiolus, radial section, schematic. The basal half of the basal turn is supplied by the vestibulo-cochlear artery; the rest of the cochlea by the spiral modiolar artery. In contrast with the guinea pig, there is a double venous drainage, one in the scala vestibuli and one in the scala tympani.

In the inner acoustic meatus the *vestibulo-cochlear artery* (VCA A. vestibulo-cochlearis) is hidden by the coiling of the cochlear nerve, but can easily be observed if the latter is extended. On its course to the modiolus branches are given off to the surrounding tissues. Arriving in the modiolus it divides into two terminal branches, the vestibular and cochlear branches (Fig 22, 23 24).

The *vestibular branch* (VB Ramus vestibularis) supplies the basal end of the cochlea and the vestibulum. It is further described in the chapter Basal End.

The *cochlear branch* (CB Ramus cochlearis) runs in the opposite direction to VB i.e. apically. It is situated above the spiral ganglion and runs a serpentine course. It supplies 1/4 to 1/2 of the basal turn and ends by anastomosing with one or two basally running branches from the spiral modiolar artery (Fig 22, 24 25 26). As the two branches anastomose it is not possible to judge the exact



Fig 24 Man, modiolus, basal turn, radial section The vestibulo-cochlear artery (VCA) ramifying to form two terminal branches the cochlear branch (CB) and the vestibular branch (VB). Note the serpentine winding course (27X)



Fig 25 Man, basal turn, transverse section. AVA = anterior vestibular artery AVV = anterior vestibular vein, CB = cochlear branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery with winding course, giving off radiating arterioles (RAL) over the scala vestibuli. Arrow = region where the spiral modiolar artery enters the cochlea. VSV = vein of the scala vestibuli, SVS = vasa vasculata at the basal end, forming one or two large vessels (12X)

Fig 26 Man, modiolus, basal turn, transverse section. Double anastomosing vessels between the cochlear branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery and the spiral modiolar artery. Note the serpentine course. VSV = vein of the scala vestibuli (27X).

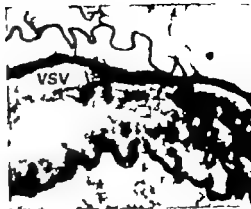


Fig 27 Man, basal turn, radial section. SMA = spiral modiolar artery. VSV = vein of the scala vestibuli, VST = vein of the scala tympani draining the spiral ganglion and external wall (30X).



Fig 28 Man, basal-second turn, transverse section, dissected. Venous system. VSV = vein of the scala vestibuli, VST = vein of the scala tympani, CMV = common modiolar vein, AVV = anterior vestibular vein (the posterior is un.injected), VCV = vestibulo-cochlear vein, VCAQ = vein of the cochlear aqueduct (7X).

region supplied by a given branch. From CB arterioles are given off to the capillary regions in the modiolus, the spiral lamina, and the external wall.

In the inner acoustic meatus the *spiral modiolar artery* (SMA, A. spiralis modioli) is even more hidden by the coiling of the acoustic nerve than the VCA. SMA arrives in the modiolus about a half turn from the basal end of the cochlea (Fig 22, 23 25). The main stem follows the spiral course of the cochlea up to the apex and supplies the whole cochlea except the first basal half turn. The position of SMA is above the spiral ganglion in the modiolus (Fig 27). The first branch running basally is described above. SMA has a pronounced serpentine course, particularly apparent in the base and straightening somewhat toward the apex. From the main stem radiating arterioles are given off at right angles, supplying the capillary regions in the modiolus, in the spiral lamina, and in the external wall. At their departure the radiating arterioles have a distinctly serpentine course and may also make loops but do not appear as the "vascular spring-coils" found in the guinea pig. Centrally in the scala vestibuli they connect with one another forming spirally running arcades.

The present investigation confirmed the findings of Nabeya and Charachon that SMA in certain individuals is replaced by the cochlear branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery. This branch then continues to the apex, supplying the capillary regions otherwise provided for by SMA.

### *Venous system*

The venous system is more complicated in man than in the guinea pig. In the whole cochlea there are thus separate venous systems in the scala vestibuli and in the scala tympani with corresponding veins running spirally around the modiolus (Fig 23 29).

There is a spiral vein in the basal central angle of the scala tympani corresponding to the spiral modiolar vein in the guinea pig. This is called the *vein of the scala tympani* (VST = V. scalae tympani). It is not, however continuous

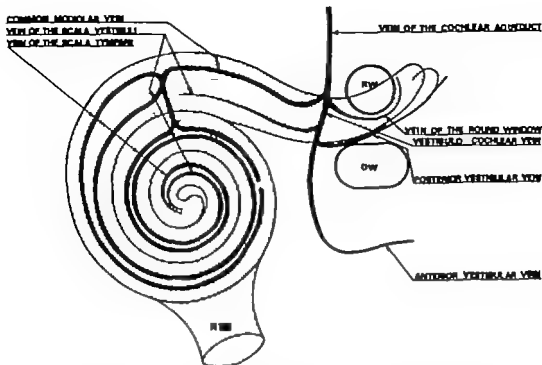


Fig 29 Man, venous system, schematic. Contrary to the arterial supply and to the case in the guinea pig, there is a venous drainage of both the scala vestibuli and the scala tympani. There are great variations in the course and distribution of venous ramifications. OW = oval window RW = round window N VIII = acoustic nerve.

from the apex to the base as in the guinea pig, but is rather formed by a series of venous segments often running in opposite directions. This is most easily seen in Fig 29. The veins which make up VST drain the spiral ganglion and the external wall of the scala media and of the scala tympani (Fig 27-28). Occasional ramifications run toward the tractus spiralis foraminosus. It was not possible to establish whether they connect with veins in the surrounding bone or with veins of the inner acoustic meatus.

The vein of the scala vestibuli (VSV = *V. scalae vestibuli*) is also composed of separate venous segments and drains the spiral lamina and the scala vestibuli of the whole cochlea (Fig 23-25, 26-27, 28). The first 1/4 turn is an exception in that it is drained instead by the vein of the round window and the posterior vestibular vein. VSV is situated centrally in the scala vestibuli in the modiolus wall. The complicated course of its different ramifications is most easily demonstrated in Fig 29. No two human cochleas were observed to be identical with respect to variations in the course, distribution and frequency of connections between the vein of the scala tympani and VSV. At varying distances from the basal end, usually about 1/3—1/4 turn, the veins forming the VST and VSV join to form the common modiolar vein (CMV = *V. modioli communis*) (Fig 23-28, 29). CMV runs toward the basal end of the cochlea in the central basal angle of the scala tympani. Just before arriving at the round window it turns sharply, conflates with the vestibulo-cochlear vein and thus forms the vein of the cochlear aqueduct. The latter two veins are described in the chapter Basal End.



Fig. 30 Man, basal turn, radial section. Spiral ganglion with irregular capillaries. Arterial supply above and venous drainage below (195°C).

### Capillary system

The capillary regions are situated in the acoustic nerve, in the spiral ganglion, and in the modiolus wall.

In the *acoustic nerve* there is a sparse net of fine capillaries which are often difficult to inject completely with contrast medium. They are supplied from the vestibulo-cochlear artery and the spiral modiolar artery and are drained by both the vein of the scala vestibuli and the vein of the scala tympani. The capillaries have an apico-basal course without any regular pattern.

The very numerous capillaries in the *spiral ganglion* make it one of the most vascularized areas in man. They do not, however demonstrate any typical arrangement (Fig. 30). The spiral ganglion is supplied by arterial branches centrally and venous branches peripherally as in the guinea pig. In the *modiolus wall* there is a net of arterioles, venules and capillaries whereas venules dominate in the scala tympani. The vessels are not so prominent as in the guinea pig and apparently lack a fixed system.

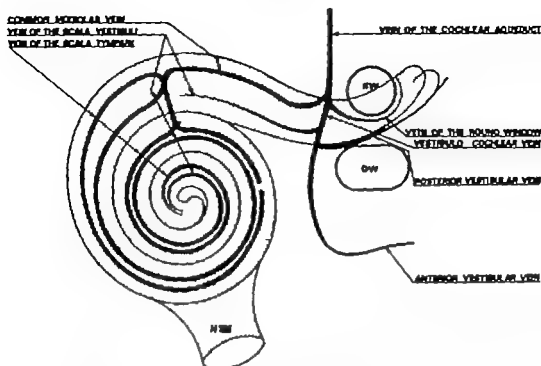


Fig. 29 Man, venous system, schematic. Contrary to the arterial supply and to the case in the guinea pig, there is a common drainage of both the scala vestibuli and the scala tympani. There are great variations in the course and distribution of venous ramifications. OW = oval window RW = round window N VIII = acoustic nerve.

from the apex to the base as in the guinea pig but is rather formed by a series of venous segments often running in opposite directions. This is most easily seen in Fig. 29. The veins which make up VST drain the spiral ganglion and the external wall of the scala media and of the scala tympani (Fig. 27-28). Occasional ramifications run toward the tractus spiralis foraminosus. It was not possible to establish whether they connect with veins in the surrounding bone or with veins of the inner acoustic meatus.

The vein of the scala vestibuli (VSV = V. scalae vestibuli) is also composed of separate venous segments and drains the spiral lamina and the scala vestibuli of the whole cochlea (Fig. 23-25, 26-27, 28). The first 1/4 turn is an exception in that it is drained instead by the vein of the round window and the posterior vestibular vein. VSV is situated centrally in the scala vestibuli in the modiolus wall. The complicated course of its different ramifications is most easily demonstrated in Fig. 29. No two human cochleas were observed to be identical with respect to variations in the course, distribution, and frequency of connections between the vein of the scala tympani and VSV. At varying distances from the basal end, usually about 1/3—1/4 turn, the veins forming the VST and VSV join to form the common modiolar vein (CMV = V. modioli communis) (Fig. 23-28, 29). CMV runs toward the basal end of the cochlea in the central basal angle of the scala tympani. Just before arriving at the round window it turns sharply confluates with the vestibulo-cochlear vein and thus forms the vein of the cochlear aqueduct. The latter two veins are described in the chapter Basal End.

## 2. The vascular anatomy of the spiral lamina and the spiral limbus

## a. Guinea pig

The following vascular structures can be identified in the *spiral lamina*

Radiating arterioles

Collecting venules

The vessel of the basilar membrane

The vessel of the tympanic lip

} Marginal vessels

and the following in the *spiral limbus*

Radiating arterioles

Collecting venules

The limbus vessels

The *radiating arterioles* (RAL, Arteriolae radiate) are tertiary or further ramifications of the spiral modiolar artery (Fig 31) and are situated more basally in the modiolus than the vessels supplying the external wall. Peripherally to the "vascular spring-coils" in the modiolus the RAL run through the bony parts of the modiolus to the osseous spiral lamina (Fig 13 14) They continue

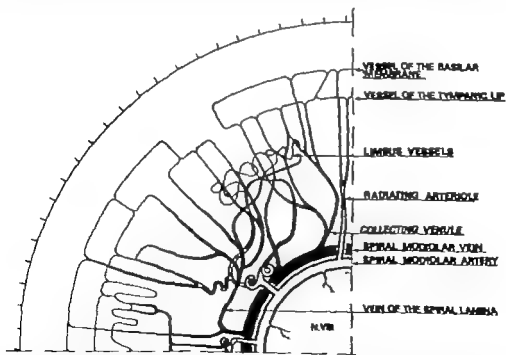


Fig 31 Guinea pig and man, spiral lamina and limbus, schematic. The vascular system is arcadic with peripherally radiating arterioles, spirally running capillary vessels, and centrally radiating venules. The region peripheral to the vessel of the basilar membrane is principally vascular. The vessel of the basilar membrane is situated under the tunnel of Corti. The vessel of the tympanic lip, which is located in the region of the habenula perforata, receives most of the radiating vessels. Capillaries in the spiral limbus form irregular limbus vessels. N VIII = acoustic nerve.



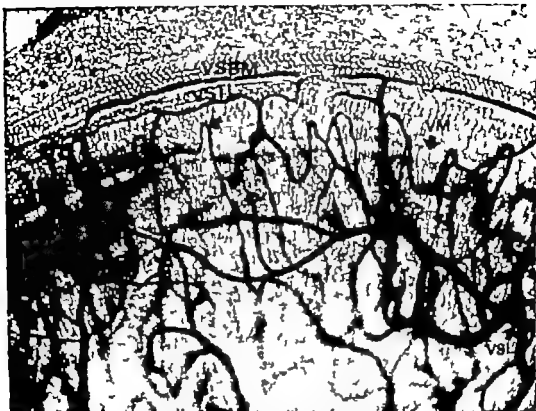


Fig 32. Guinea pig, spiral lamina, basal half of the basal turn, transverse section, phase contrast. VBM = the vessel of the basilar membrane which is located centrally to the outer hair cells and below the tunnel of Corti and is almost continuous. VSTL = the vessel of the tympanic lip which is situated below the habenula perforata and is more uneven and discontinuous. Arrow = arcades centrally to VSTL. VBM = attachment of the vestibular membrane. VSL = vein of the spiral lamina receiving collecting venules (155X).

radially in the tympanic lip and the basilar membrane, supplying the marginal vessels. The branches connecting with the vessel of the basilar membrane are often of greater diameter than those for the vessel of the tympanic lip and the limbus vessels (Fig 32, 33). Each RAL supplies a rather small segment. The diameter of the capillary ramifications of the RAL and the collecting venules immediately central to the vessel of the tympanic lip is less than that of the marginal vessels (Fig. 33-37 Table IV). The angles at the ramifications of the RAL and collecting venules are approximately 60 degrees. When the RAL reach the marginal vessels, they turn off squarely in a T formed manner or build up arcades (Fig 32). The branches from the RAL and collecting venules supply the vessel of the tympanic lip with about three times as many vessels as the vessel of the basilar membrane receives (Fig 37 Table IV). This condition is maintained in the three basal turns. The finest capillary ramifications of the RAL take part in the formation of an irregular sparse capillary network central to the marginal vessels.

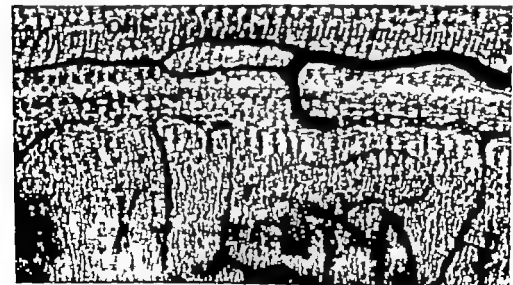


Fig 33 Guinea pig, spiral lamina, second-third turn, transverse section, phase contrast. Examples of exceptions to the straight continuous appearance of the marginal vessels. Above: umbrella-like structures of the vessel of the basilar membrane. Middle: double vessel of the basilar membrane and the ezel of the tympanic lip. "Umbrella". Below: double vessel of the basilar membrane and the vessel of the tympanic lip. The latter is partially replaced by arcades (left) OHC = outer hair cells, arrow = attachment of the vestibular membrane (375X)

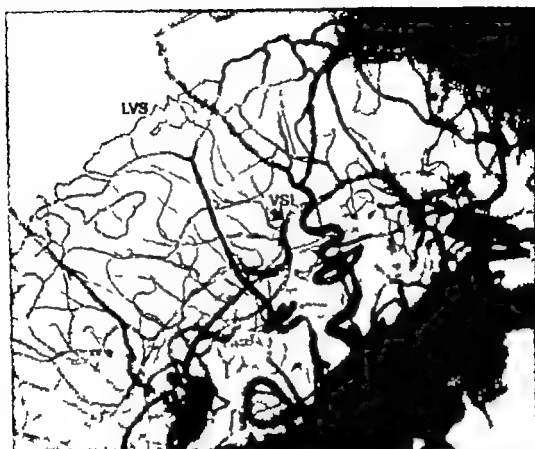


Fig. 34 Guinea pig, spiral limbus, basal-second turn, transverse section. Radiating arterioles with vascular spring-coils supplying the spiral limbus. An irregular peripheral margin, the limbus vessels (LVS), is formed by the arcades. Collecting venules drain the limbus vessels, often terminating in the vein of the spiral lamina (VSL). Note the capillary net centrally in the spiral limbus (95X).

Peripherally in the spiral lamina there are two parallel, spiral vessels which run at right angles to the radiating vessels. They constitute a vascular arcade and make up two vascular margins. The marginal vessel lying most peripherally is the vessel of the basilar membranæ (VSBM, Vas membranæ basilaris) (Fig. 31-32-33). VSBM is situated below the tunnel of Corti and can be demonstrated in the whole cochlea between the basal and apical ends of the spiral lamina. Principally VSBM curves smoothly following the organ of Corti throughout the whole cochlea. In the first half of the basal turn it is completely continuous, but apically one may find an increasing number of interruptions as well as a more uneven course (Fig. 32, 36). Occasionally the stems of the supplying vessels protrude peripherally beyond the level of VSBM forming umbrella-like structures with the two T arms curving back centrally to the vessel which can also be double for short distances (Fig. 33). The deviation from the right angle is generally within 70 degrees at the joining of the radiating vessels and VSBM.



Fig 33 Guinea pig, spiral limbus, basal turn, transverse section, phase contrast. Peripherally the limbus vessels form an irregular margin. Note open sparse loops of the capillaries centrally. Arrow = Henschke's dent, i.e. limbus cells (184X).

Peripherally in the tympanic lip and below the habenula perforata, parallelly and centrally to VSBM lies the other marginal vessel the vessel of the tympanic lip (VSTL, *Vas labii tympanici*) (Fig 31, 32, 33). The supplying and draining radiating vessels meet VSTL within 15 degrees of the right angle. In the first quarter of the basal turn VSTL is replaced by capillary arcades which lack a spiral marginal appearance. In the second quarter these arcades and VSTL can be demonstrated simultaneously (Fig 32). From the second half of the basal turn VSTL can be demonstrated to the apex. Apically it differs from the vessel of the basilar membrane in having more frequent interruptions and in running more unevenly. Particularly in the apical turn, short radiating connections from VSTL regularly communicate with the vessel of the basilar membrane. The diameter of the two marginal vessels is about 5 microns with VSTL usually being the larger of the two. The diameter is well maintained in the three basal turns for both marginal vessels (Fig 37, Table IV). The region between the two mar-

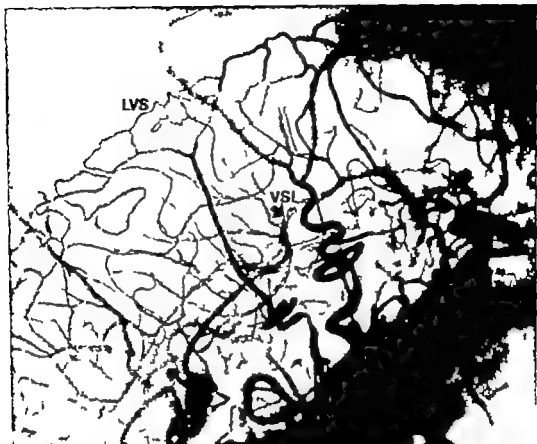


Fig. 34. Guinea pig, spiral limbus, basal-second turn, transverse section. Radiating arterioles with vascula spring-coils supplying the spiral limbus. An irregular peripheral margin, the limbus vessels (LVS), is formed by the arcades. Collecting venules drain the limbus vessels, often terminating in the vein of the spiral lamina (VSL). Note the capillary net centrally in the spiral limbus (95%).

Peripherally in the spiral lamina there are two parallel, spiral vessels which run at right angles to the radiating vessels. They constitute a vascular arcade and make up two vascular margins. The marginal vessel lying most peripherally is the vessel of the basilar membranae (VSBM, Vas membranae basilaris) (Fig. 31, 32, 33). VSBM is situated below the tunnel of Corti and can be demonstrated in the whole cochlea between the basal and apical ends of the spiral lamina. Principally VSBM curves smoothly following the organ of Corti throughout the whole cochlea. In the first half of the basal turn it is completely continuous, but apically one may find an increasing number of interruptions as well as a more uneven course (Fig. 32-36). Occasionally the stems of the supplying vessels protrude peripherally beyond the level of VSBM forming umbrella like structures with the two T arms curving back centrally to the vessel, which can also be double for short distances (Fig. 33). The deviation from the right angle is generally within 15 degrees at the joining of the radiating vessels and VSBM.

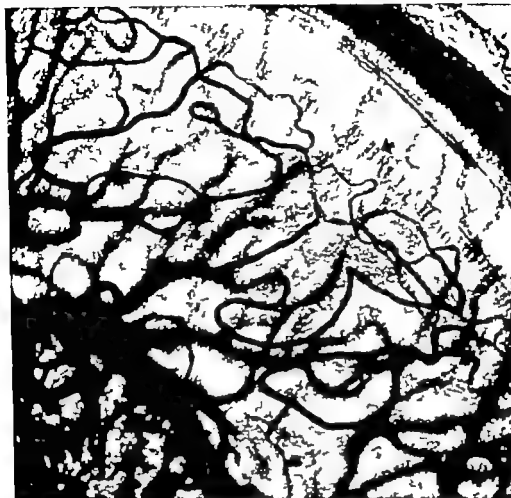


Fig. 35 Guinea pig, spiral limbus, basal turn, transverse section, phase contrast. Peripherally the limbus vessels form an irregular margin. Not open sparse loops of the capillaries centrally. Arrow = Hirschfeld's dentate cell, i.e. limbus cells (186X).

Peripherally in the tympanic lip and below the habenula perforata, parallelly and centrally to VSBM lies the other marginal vessel the vessel of the tympanic lip (VSTL, Vas labii tympanici) (Fig. 31, 32, 33). The supplying and draining radiating vessels meet VSTL within 15 degrees of the right angle. In the first quarter of the basal turn VSTL is replaced by capillary arcades which lack a spiral marginal appearance. In the second quarter these arcades and VSTL can be demonstrated simultaneously (Fig. 32). From the second half of the basal turn VSTL can be demonstrated to the apex. Apically it differs from the vessel of the basilar membrane in having more frequent interruptions and in running more unevenly. Particularly in the apical turn, short radiating connections from VSTL regularly communicate with the vessel of the basilar membrane. The diameter of the two marginal vessels is about 5 microns with VSTL usually being the larger of the two. The diameter is well maintained in the three basal turns for both marginal vessels (Fig. 37, Table IV). The region between the two mar-

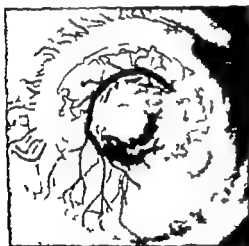


Fig. 36 Guinea pig, spiral lamina, a) basal turn (above left), b) 2nd turn (above right), c) 3rd turn (below left), d) apical turn (below right). The rich vascular supply of the basal turn is already reduced in the second turn. Principal arrangement maintained. Discontinuities in the marginal vessel increase in frequency. In the third turn the arrangement is still maintained with radiating and marginal vessels. The axilla arrangement is more open and sparse. Apically in the fourth turn the vascular arrangement is very simplified with sparse radiating vessels turning off at the level of the marginal vessels and forming simple arcades. ( $\times 27X$ ,  $\times 33X$ ,  $\times 39X$ ).

ginal vessels constitutes a relatively avascular zone which follows the spiral course of the cochlea and which is more or less of constant breadth in the three basal turns (Fig. 36-37 Table IV). The few vessels which are found in this area are those supplying the vessel of the basilar membrane. Since the absolute area of the spiral lamina decreases apically the avascular region between the two marginal vessels occupies a relatively larger portion here.

The radiating arterioles supplying the *limbus vessels* (LVS, *Vasa limbi*) have the same course and derive from the same vessels in the modiolus as those supplying the spiral lamina (Fig. 31-34). Different branches from the same arterioles and venules are provided for the marginal vessels and the LVS, but

there are no direct connections between the marginal vessels and the LVS. The LVS are situated immediately peripherally to the attachment of the vestibular membrane and make the spiral limbus one of the most vascularized regions in the cochlea. No cell in this region is further than 30 microns from a nearby vessel. The LVS are formed of short spirally-running parts of the arcades with an irregular looping course (Fig. 34-35). The diameter of the LVS is about 4–5 microns and somewhat smaller than that of the marginal vessels (Fig. 37, Table IV). The angles of the radiating vessels when these ramify to the LVS are a little less than the right angle. Immediately peripherally to the LVS lie the so-called Huschke's dents indicating the presence of the limbus cells (Fig. 35). More centrally in the spiral limbus there is an arrangement of vascular loops (Fig. 35). It is important to note that the LVS belong to the capillary regions in the wall of the scala media.

The *collecting venules* (CVL, *Venulae collectae*) draining the two marginal vessels and the limbus vessels run centrally to the modiolus. They then continue basally on the modiolus wall to meet the spiral modiolar vein on its apical aspect or to the vestibulo-cochlear vein (Fig. 13-14). Centrally in the spiral lamina the finest ramifications of the radiating arterioles and the CVL contribute to a capillary net, but larger anastomoses also occur between the arterioles and the CVL. In the basal turn the CVL empty into one (or two) *vein of the spiral lamina* (VSL, *V. laminae spiralis*) which has a spiral course (Fig. 31-32). VSL receives branches from the spiral lamina and limbus, spiral ganglion, acoustic nerve and the wall of the modiolus.

The *vestibular* and *tectorial membranes* are completely avascular regions in adult guinea pigs. Contrarily to the human cochlea, no vessels have been demonstrated in the basilar membrane between the vessel of the basilar membrane and the external wall of adult guinea pigs.

The vascular arrangement described in the spiral lamina and limbus is principally valid for the whole length of the cochlea. There is, however, a marked simplification of the vascular architecture in the apical parts (Fig. 36) where the marginal vessels and the limbus vessels form very simple arcades. In the apical turn the marginal vessels are often replaced by single arcades in which it is no longer possible to differentiate between the two vessels.



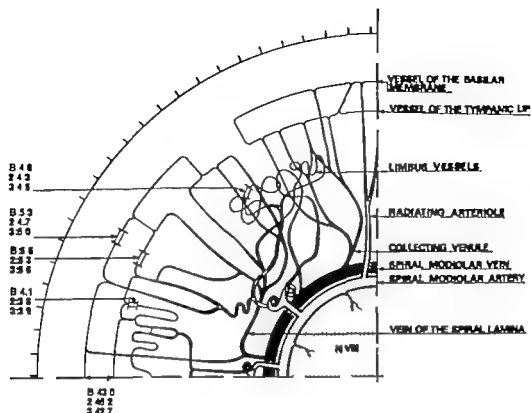


Fig. 37 Guinea pig, spiral lamina, transverse section, schematic, measurements,  $\|$  = diameter of vessels,  $\leftarrow \rightarrow$  = distance between vessels.

TABLE IV

*Measurements in the spiral lamina and limbus*

	Basal	T <sub>1</sub> turn and	3rd	SD <sup>1</sup>	Significant Differences
a. Distance between VSBM and VSTL	43.0	45.2	42.7	9.6	A T = T = T
b. Fractions of vessels supplying VSBM <sup>2</sup>	24.4 /	23.5	26.3		A T = T = T
$\frac{\text{VSBM}}{\text{VSBM} + \text{VSTL}}$					
c. Vessel diameters					
VSBM	5.3	4.7	5.0	1.8	A T = T = T
VSTL	5.5	5.3	5.6	2.0	A T = T = T
capillaries <sup>3</sup>	4.1	3.8	3.9	1.7	A T = T = T
limbus vessels	4.8	4.3	4.5	1.7	A T = T = T

All measurements in micron

<sup>1</sup> SD = Standard deviation (error).

<sup>2</sup> Two measurements per turn and animal.

<sup>3</sup> The first bifurcations of the radiating arterioles and collecting venules were measured immediately internal to VSTL. VSBM = basal vessel of the basilar membrane.

VSTL = the vessel of the tympanic lip.

A = Statistically significant difference between animals.

T = statistically significant difference between turns in the same animal.

(T = basal turn, T = second turn, T = third turn)

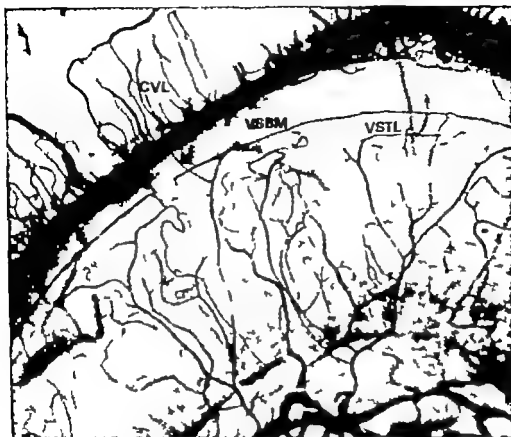


Fig 38 Man, spiral lamina, basal turn, transverse section. Note the incomplete injection. Arterioles and venules radiate over the spiral lamina supplying the marginal vessels, i.e. the vessel of the basilar membrane (VSBM) and the vessel of the tympanic lip (VSTL). VSBM is continuous and curves evenly in spiral direction. VSTL is discontinuous. Arrow = isolated branch radiating to the venules at the basilar membrane, CVL = collecting venules of the scala tympani (47X).

#### b Man

The preparation of the spiral lamina in the human cochlea is considerably more difficult than in the guinea pig. While in the latter it is easily detached from the external wall, in man the attachment is much stronger and the spiral lamina must be cut off from the external wall between the vessel of the basilar membrane and the venules at the basilar membrane, preferably without destroying these structures.

Principally the vascular arrangement is similar in man and the guinea pig, and the same vascular structures can be demonstrated (Fig 31-38).

*Radiating arterioles* (RAL, *Arteriolae radiatae*) and *collecting venules* (CVL, *Venulae collectae*) radiate at right angles from the artery and veins

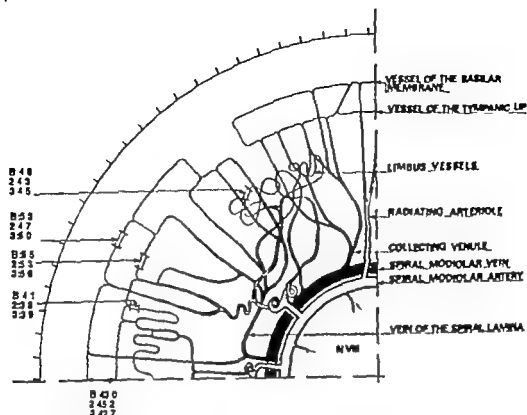


Fig. 37 Guinea pig, spiral lamina, an inverse section schematic, measurements,  $|$  = diameter of vessels,  $\leftarrow \rightarrow$  = distance between vessels.

TABLE IV

*Measurements in the spiral lamina and limbus*

	Basal	Turn 2nd	3rd	SD <sup>1</sup>	Significant Differences
a. Distance between VSBM and VSTL	43.0	45.2	42.7	9.6	A T = T = T
b. Fractions of vessels supplying VSBM <sup>2</sup>	4.4	23.3	26.3		A T = T = T
VSBM VSBM + VSTL					
Vessel diameters					
VSBM	5.3	4.7	5.0	1.8	A T = T = T
VSTL	5.5	5.3	5.6	2.0	A T = T = T
capillaries*	4.1	3.8	3.9	1.7	A T = T = T
limbus vessels	4.8	4.5	4.5	1.7	A T = T = T

All measurements in microns.

<sup>1</sup> SD = Standard deviation (error)

<sup>2</sup> Tw measurements per turn and animal

<sup>3</sup> The finest ramifications of the radiating arterioles and collecting venules were measured immediately centrally to VSTL.

VSBM = the vessel of the basilar membrane

VSTL = the vessel of the tympanic lip.

A = Statistically significant difference between animals.

T = statistically significant difference between runs in the same animal.

(T = basal turn, T = second turn, T = third turn).

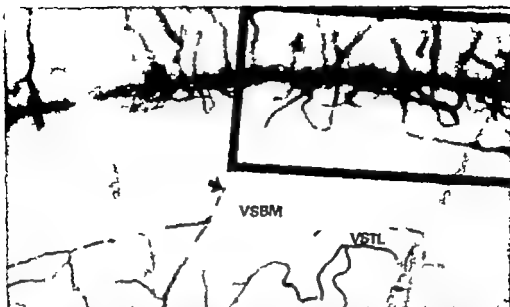


Fig 40 Man, spiral lamina, second turn, transverse section. The framed area above represents the region demonstrated below. VSBM = the vessel of the basilar membrane, VSTL = the vessel of the tympanic lip, arrow = radiating vessel crossing over the otherwise vascular area peripheral to VSBM and connecting to the vessels of the basilar membrane (VLBM) (above — 98X, below — 186X)

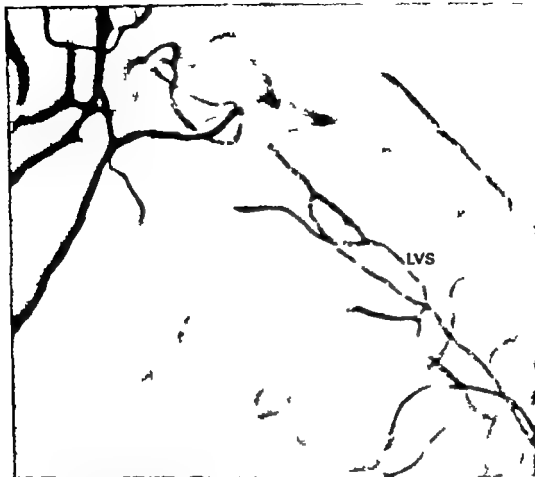


Fig 41 Man, spiral limbus, basal turn, transverse section. Radiating arterioles and collecting venules supplying the limbus vessels (LVS) which form a spiral arcadic margin peripherally in the spiral limbus (155X)

In some cochleas connections between vessels of the spiral lamina and vessels in the external wall have been demonstrated. In these cases isolated branches from the radiating or marginal vessels continue through the otherwise avascular region between VSBM and the external wall where they connect with the venules at the basilar membrane (Fig 38-40).

The spiral limbus is supplied by continuous arcadic vessels—the *limbus vessels* (LVS *Vasa limbi*) (Fig 41). The supplying arterioles and draining venules turn at more or less right angles to meet the LVS. The LVS follow a somewhat straighter course and comprise a looser network than the irregular looping formations observed in the guinea pig.

The same trends toward simplification of vascular structures are found in apical parts of the cochlea in both the guinea pig and man. Thus in the spiral lamina the vessel of the basilar membrane is more or less continuous to the apex while many interruptions are found in the vessel of the tympanic lip (Fig. 42, 43). Arterioles and venules supplying the marginal and limbus vessels decrease in number apically and the arcades of the limbus vessels become successively more open.

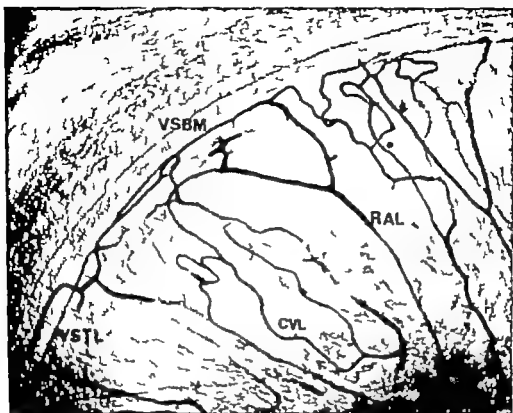


Fig 42. Man, spiral lamina, third turn, transverse section. Incomplete injection. The vascular arrangement is maintained with radiating arterioles (RAL) and collecting venules (CVL) the vessel of the basilar membrane (VSBM), and discontinuous vessel of the tympanic lip (VSTL) (95X).



Fig 43. Man, spiral lamina, helicotrema, second turn, transverse section. The principal vascular arrangement is maintained with sparse open arcades and spirally-running vessel of the basilar membrane (VSBM) the vessel of the tympanic lip (VSTL) and the labyrinthine vessels (LV3) (53X).

### c. Comment

Three names have been added to the sparse vascular anatomical nomenclature in this region the vessel of the basilar membrane the vessel of the tympanic lip and the limbus vessels. In general the vessel of the basilar membrane formerly has been called *vas spirale* or the spiral vessel (Table VIII). This designation may give the erroneous impression, previously widely held, that the blood flow in this single vessel is spiral from the base toward the apex. However the vascular arrangement very clearly demonstrates that the radiating vessels to the two marginal vessels are alternately arterioles and venules. The blood flow thus may run in opposite directions for short spiral distances (Fig. 84). Another important consideration is that the two named vessels constitute a spiral vascular margin peripherally to which a principally avascular zone is situated. Thus the vessel of the basilar membrane and the vessel of the tympanic lip have been referred to as *marginal vessels*. The suggested specific names of the marginal vessels and the limbus vessels are consistent with the proposed nomenclature in other parts of the cochlea i.e. that the vessels be named according to their anatomical position and relationship to other vascular structures.

The vascular arrangement in the spiral lamina is composed of three separate arcadic systems of which the limbus vessels are situated centrally to and above the marginal vessels. The limbus vessels belong to the wall of the scala media and make the spiral limbus a highly vascularized region, particularly in the guinea pig. The two marginal vessels might be considered as belonging rather to the boundary of the scala tympani. Rich anastomosing possibilities exist between radiating arterioles and collecting venules.

The measurements have demonstrated that the distance between the two marginal vessels is well maintained apically in spite of the decreasing volume of the scalas (Table IV). Although the vascular arrangement becomes less dense apically the diameter of the capillary vessels is nevertheless well maintained. Measurements of the angles between radiating vessels and the marginal vessels demonstrate that the deviation from the right angle is greater for connections to the vessel of the basilar membrane than to the vessel of the tympanic lip. Centrally in the spiral lamina, the ramifications of the radiating vessels show rather obtuse angles, especially when dividing to the limbus vessels.

The only measurements available for comparison with those from the present investigation are to be found in Table II page 20. The values found in the present study for the diameter of the vessel of the tympanic lip and the limbus vessels (Table IV) compare well with those of Iurato. Charachon, however found a greater diameter for the vessel of the basilar membrane in man than those found in the present investigation for the guinea pig.

The similarity between the vascular anatomy of man and the guinea pig concerning the spiral lamina and spiral limbus is striking. The arrangement of the limbus vessels is very similar. In both the guinea pig and man there is a pronounced simplification of the vascular architecture toward the apex. Vessels of all types become successively fewer show more frequent interruptions and

fewer anastomoses. Differences, however do appear. In man the vessel of the basilar membrane is continuous whereas in the guinea pig interruptions are frequent. The network of the limbus vessels comprises a simpler and more sparse arcadic system in man than in the guinea pig. The vessel of the tympanic lip is more defined in the guinea pig than in man.

Another interesting observation concerning the vascular anatomy of the spiral lamina is the lack of vessels peripherally to the vessel of the basilar membrane. However connections between the vessels of the spiral lamina and the external wall were demonstrated in a few human preparations in the present investigation. Only Smith (1954) mentions these connections and then only briefly. These structures might be a remnant from embryonic life (Bredberg, 1968) and are probably too sparse to be of any functional significance. With this exception found only in man, the periphery of the spiral lamina as well as the vestibular and tectorial membranes are completely avascular. The vessel of the basilar membrane is probably of greater importance during embryonic life when it is considerably larger than in the adult (Boettcher 1887, Bredberg, 1968).

It is interesting to note that the vascular arrangement in the spiral lamina is principally similar to that of the external wall if the latter is imagined folded so that the arterioles and venules radiate from the same common center as they do in the spiral lamina. In both structures there are spiral vascular systems at right angles to the radiating vessels. In the external wall there are several spiral systems in all three scalas without many anastomoses between them. In the spiral lamina, however there are frequent and regular anastomoses between the marginal vessels. There are no direct connections between these and the limbus vessels.

The vascular anatomy of the external wall has been well studied both *in vivo* and *in vitro*. However the anatomy of the spiral lamina seems to be rather unknown. From the technical point of view *in vivo* studies of the vascular anatomy of the spiral lamina are extremely difficult to perform. It is probable that further investigations of the vessels in the spiral lamina will confirm that they are of the same importance as those of the external wall.



### 3 The vascular anatomy of the external wall of the membranous cochlea

#### a Guinea pig

There are five different types of vessels in the *scala vestibuli* (Fig. 44)

Radiating arterioles

Collecting venules

The vessel of the *scala vestibuli*

The vessel at the vestibular membrane

A capillary net above the vestibular membrane

The *radiating arterioles* (RAL, *Arteriolae radiatae*) are branches from the spiral modiolar artery which peripherally to the "vascular spring-coils" in the modiolus, pass to the most apical parts of the *scala vestibuli*. They then continue radially along the external wall of the membranous part of the *scala vestibuli* (Fig. 45). The distance between two individual RAL varies greatly (Fig. 46) and in general increases toward the apex (Table V). The diameter of the two branches resulting from a ramification may differ considerably. Such divisions most commonly occur in the modiolus above the attachment of the vestibular membrane and in the wall of the *scala media* (Fig. 47). The RAL in the

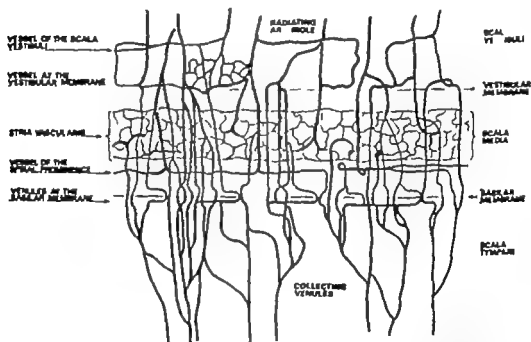


Fig. 44 Guinea pig and man, external wall, radial section, schematic. Radiating arterioles predominate in the *scala vestibuli* and supply spiral vascular systems: the vessel of the *scala vestibuli*, the vessel at the vestibular membrane, the stria vascularis, and the vessel of the spiral prominence. Collecting venules predominate in the *scala tympani* and drain spiral capillary vessels and the capillary net in the *scala vestibuli*. A spiral vessel is formed basally to the basilar membrane by the vessels of the basilar membrane. Radiating arterioles and collecting venules connect with one another by arterio-venous anastomoses lying externally to the stria vascularis.



Fig 45 Guinea pig cochlea with surrounding bone. Semi-transparency allows identification of the vessels in the external wall. OW = oval window, RW = round window VRW = vein of the round window. Note the simplification of the vascular arrangement at the apex (30X).

external wall are observed to ramify 0–7 times, the mean number being 3–4. In general the number of ramifications successively decrease apically. The angle at the ramification of the RAL is usually somewhat smaller (c. 70 degrees) than that between the RAL and the spiral vessels (usually close to 90 degrees). The branches join all types of vessels in the external wall (Fig 44–47). In the basal turn most of the branches from the RAL connect with the collecting venules as arterio-venous anastomoses which run externally to the stria vasculosa.

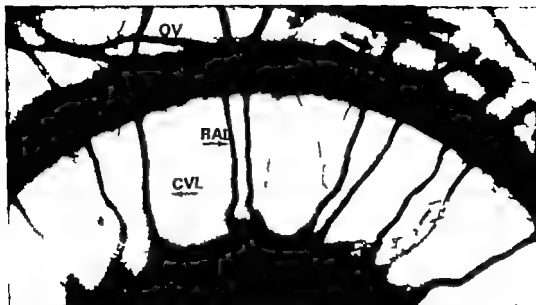


Fig. 46 Guinea pig, scala vestibuli, basal-second turn, transverse section, RAL = radiating arterioles of the scala vestibuli in the basal turn, CVL = collecting venules of the scala tympani in the second turn, arrows = delicate collecting venules of the scala vestibuli in the basal turn, OV = osseous vessels (95X).

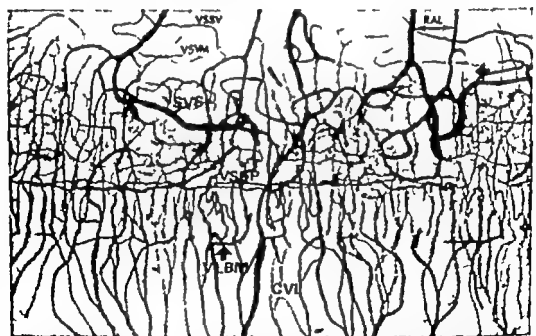


Fig. 47 Guinea pig, external wall, basal turn, radial section, RAL = radiating arterioles, VSSV = vessel of the scala vestibuli, VSM = vessel of the scala media, SVS = stria vascularis, VSP = vessel of the spiral prominence, VBM = venules of the basilar membrane, CVL = collecting venules. Arrow indicates the attachment of the vestibular membrane and the attachment of the basilar membrane (76X).

TABLE V

*Distances and vascular diameters in the external wall of the guinea pig cochlea*

	Base	Turn		SD <sup>1</sup>	Significant Differences
		2nd	3rd		
a. breadth of the stria vascularis	251.8	164.8	113.3	24.7	AI T > T > T
b. basal marginal vessel of stria vascularis — vessel of the spiral prominence	59.8	59.1	58.7	15.9	T = T = T
c. distance between two radiating arterioles at the level of the vessel of the scala vestibuli	109.8	125.5	187.4	90.3	T = T < T
d. distance between two collecting venules in the scala tympani <sup>2</sup>	20.2	31.8	44.2	18.7	T < T < T
e. diameter of the vessel of the scala vestibuli	4.6	4.7	5.0	1.3	AI T = T = T
f. diameter of the vessel of the vestibular membrane	5.1	5.9	4.9	2.9	A T = T = T
g. diameter of the capillaries in the stria vascularis	4.5	4.4	5.5	2.2	T = T < T
h. diameter of the vessel of the spiral prominence	7.1	6.0	6.7	2.4	A T = T = T
i. diameter of the radiating arterioles at the level of the vessel of the scala vestibuli	12.1	9.3	10.1	3.0	AI T > T = T
j. diameter of the arterio-venous anastomoses externally to the stria vascularis	6.6	6.3	6.4	2.1	AI T = T = T
k. diameter of the collecting venules <sup>3</sup>	9.8	8.7	8.7	3.2	T = T = T
l. vascular density in cm/cm <sup>2</sup> of the stria vascularis <sup>4</sup>	297.1	293.6	300.0	40.9	T = T = T

All measurements in microns

<sup>1</sup>) SD = standard deviation (error)<sup>2</sup>) measured immediately below the venules at the basilar membrane<sup>3</sup>) two measurements per turn in each animal

A = statistically significant difference between animals

I = statistically significant interactions

T = statistically significant difference between turns in the same animal

(T = basal turn, T = second turn, T = third turn)

laris. The stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence are supplied by the proportionally largest branches. The mean diameter of the RAL in the three basal turns is respectively 12, 9 and 10 microns (Fig. 48 Table V)

The number of RAL was measured in 10 cochleas in the stereo-microscope as apically as possible in each scala vestibuli, i.e. close to the joint connecting the scala vestibuli to the next scala tympani. The number of radiating arterioles diminishes significantly with each turn (Fig. 49 Table VI)

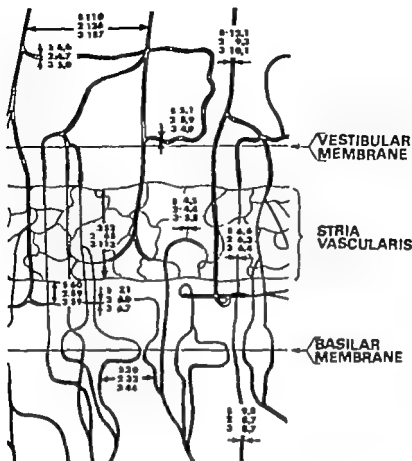


Fig 48 Guinea pig, external w ll, radial section, schematic. Measurements in microns.  
 ← → = distance between ensels, → ← = diameter of ensel

Isolated, delicate *collecting venules* (CVL, *Venulae collectae*) are found in the scala vestibuli at least in the basal turn (Fig 44-46). Branches from these venules and the radiating arterioles take part in the formation of the vessel of the scala vestibuli and the vessel at the vestibular membrane as well as a sparse *capillary net* most prominent between these two vessels (Fig 50). The CVL pass radially parallel to the radiating arterioles but in an apical direction. They then empty into the spiral modiolar vein in the turn immediately apical. Occasionally

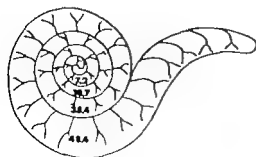


Fig 49 Guinea pig cochlea viewed from above, schematic. Number of radiating arterioles/turn in the scala vestibuli.

TABLE VI

*The number of radiating arterioles/turn  
in the scala vestibuli of the guinea pig cochlea*

Turn	Mean	Standard Deviation
Base	48.4	3.90
Second	35.4	1.62
Third	18.7	1.27
Fourth	7.2	1.25

The results are the mean of measurements on 10 cochleas examined under the stereo-microscope at the joint between the scala vestibuli and the next scala tympani. Statistically significant differences between all turns.

the CVL take a spiral course for some distance just before entering the spiral modular vein (Fig. 46)

A vessel which has hitherto not been described is the one here called the *vessel of the scala vestibuli* (VSSV *Vas scalae vestibuli*). VSSV describes a spiral course, in the basal turn 130 microns, in the second and third 80 microns above and parallel to the attachment of the vestibular membrane (Fig. 44-47-50). VSSV is not continuous but nevertheless is well-defined for intervals, especially in the basal turn. In the apical turns VSSV has a more serpentine course and occurs less frequently. VSSV generally connects directly with the vessel at the vestibular membrane and the venules in the scala tympani without previously ramifying. The diameter of VSSV is relatively constant in the three basal turns (Fig. 48 Table V).

Another spiral vessel lies parallel to and immediately above the attachment of the vestibular membrane: the *vessel at the vestibular membrane* (VSVM, *Vas membranae vestibularis*). Similarly to VSSV it is formed by branches of the radiating arterioles and collecting venules turning off spirally at about right angles (Fig. 44-47-50). VSVM can be demonstrated in the whole cochlea, but is best developed in the basal turn. VSVM has no anastomoses with the stria vascularis or the vessel of the spiral prominence, but does connect with collecting venules in the scala tympani. The distance from VSVM to the vestibular membrane increases somewhat in the apical turns. The diameter of VSVM is around 5 microns.

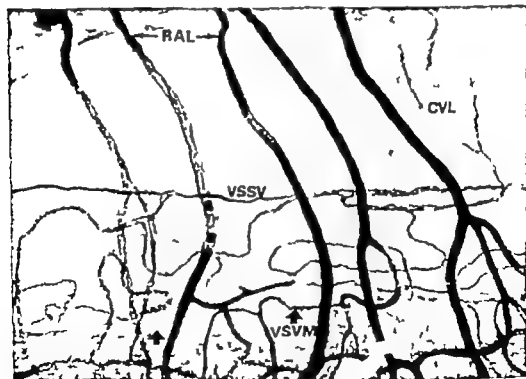
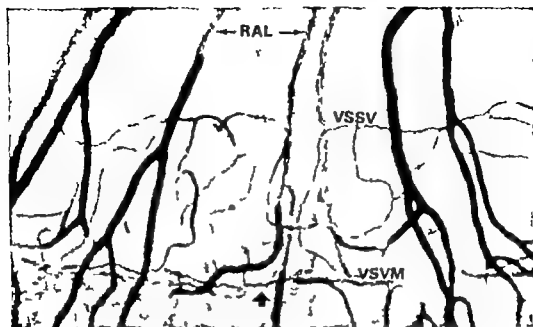
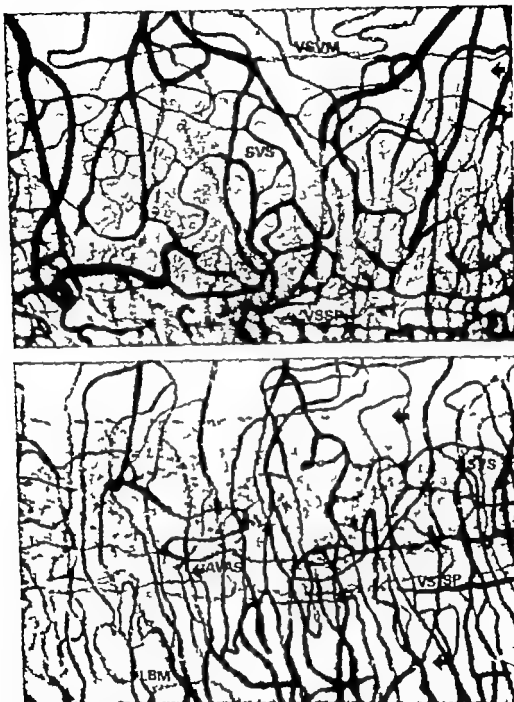


Fig. 50 Guinea pig, scala vestibuli, basal turn, radial section. RAL = radiating arterioles, CVL = collecting canules, VSSV = vessel of the scala vestibuli, VSVM = vessel of the vestibular membrane, arrow = attachment of the vestibular membrane. A capillary net is formed between VSVM and VSSV (above — 149X, below — 155X).



*Fig. 51* Guinea pig, scala media, radial section. Above: basal turn. A vascular net, seria vascularis (SVS), is formed by capillaries of different sizes. Arrow = attachment of the vestibular membrane, VSVI = vessel at the vestibular membrane, VSSP = vessel of the spiral prominence. Below: second turn. Seria vascularis is incompletely injected. Note the arterio-venous anastomoses externally the seria vascularis. Arrows = attachment of the cochlear membrane and the attachment of the basilar membrane, AVAS = arterio-venous anastomoses, VSSP = vessel of the spiral prominence, LBM = capillaries at the basilar membrane (above — 149X, below — 155X).



In the external wall of the *scala media* there are three different vascular structures (Fig 44)

*Stria vascularis*

The vessel of the spiral prominence

Arterio-venous anastomoses

A great deal of the external wall of the *scala media* is covered by the *stria vascularis* (SVS) which consists of a rich net of vessels forming closed polygonal loops (Fig. 44 47 51) At least in the basal turn there are well defined spirally running apical and basal marginal vessels. SVS narrows markedly apically and in the fourth turn only sparse open loops are left (Fig. 48 52, Table V) The vascular arrangement in the apex is so sparse as to scarcely deserve the name vascular net. However the distance between nearby vascular loops is similar in the whole cochlea lying within the range 40—60 microns.

In spite of the decreasing breadth of the SVS the ratio capillary length/tissue area remains the same in the three basal turns (Table V) The mean diameter of these capillaries is similar in the basal and second turns (4.5 microns) but is greater in the third turn (5.5 microns) (Fig 48 Table V) Relatively few of the radiating arterioles in the *scala vestibuli* supply the SVS and relatively few collecting venules in the *scala tympani* drain it, but those which do are of comparatively large diameter (Fig 47) These connecting arterioles and venules derive from a region external to the SVS and usually terminate in the middle of the vascular net. The SVS has no other vascular anastomoses than these. Unfortunately it is commonly experienced that, even in preparations which are well injected in all other regions, some of the capillaries in the SVS have not been filled.

Parallel to and below the *stria vascularis* runs another spiral vessel in the spiral prominence the vessel of the spiral prominence (VSSP *Vas prominentiae spiralis*) (Fig 44 47 53) Similarly to the *stria vascularis* it is supplied by few but relatively large branches from the radiating arterioles and collecting venules connecting at rather long intervals in a T formed manner Short sections of VSSP often appear to be formed by two and even three vessels. VSSP is well developed in the whole cochlea including the apical turns (Fig 52) Its diameter is similar in the three basal turns and is somewhat greater than that of the capillaries of the *stria vascularis* (Fig 48 Table V) VSSP has no vascular connections with the *stria vascularis* and the distance between them remains constant in the three basal turns (Fig 48 Table V)

In the basal turn most of the radiating arterioles supply neither the *stria vascularis* nor the VSSP, but instead ramify and merge externally to these structures with the collecting venules of the *scala tympani* to form arterio-venous anastomoses (AVAS, *Anastomosis arteriovenosa*) (Fig 49 51) There are frequent ramifications of the AVAS at rather small angles (c. 60 degrees) and the resulting capillary branches are of greater diameter than those of the *stria vascularis* but similar in size to the vessel of the spiral prominence. Some unramified larger branches are found in the basal turn In the apical turns the

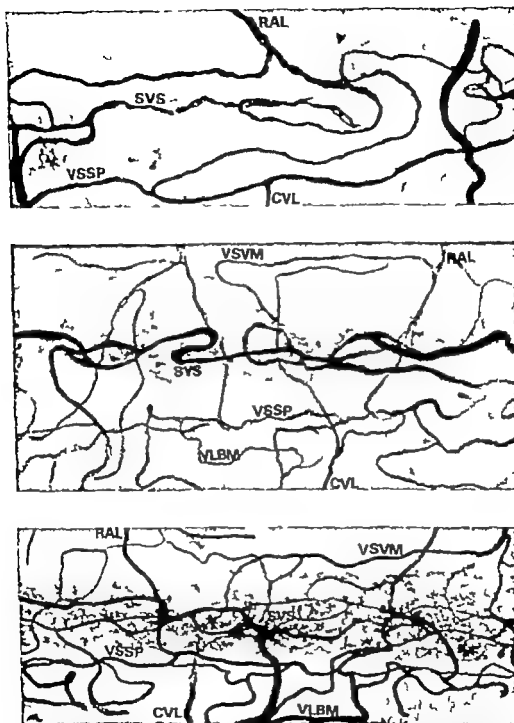


Fig 52. Guinea pig, external wall, radial section. Below: basal portion, third turn. Middle: apical portion, third turn. Above: fourth turn. The principal arrangement is maintained. Vascularis is simplified stria vascularis (SVS) narrowes. There are few arterio-venous anastomoses. A the apical end (above) the vascular components are greatly simplified and difficult to identify. RAL = radiating arterioles, CVL = collecting veins, VSSM = vessel at the vestibular membrane, VSSP = vessel of the spiral prominence, VLBM = vessels at the basilar membrane (below — 144°C, middle — 150°C, above — 186°C).

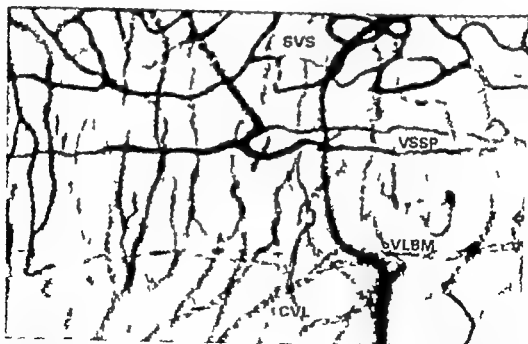
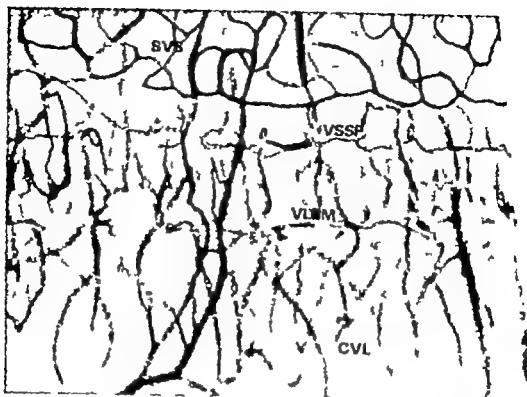


Fig. 52. Guinea pig, external wall, basal turn, radial section. SVS = stria vascularis, VSPP = vessel of the spiral plexus (at times double or discontinuous), VLBM = vessels of the basilar membrane, CVL = collecting enules, arrow = attachment of the basilar membrane (below - 213V b - 195X).

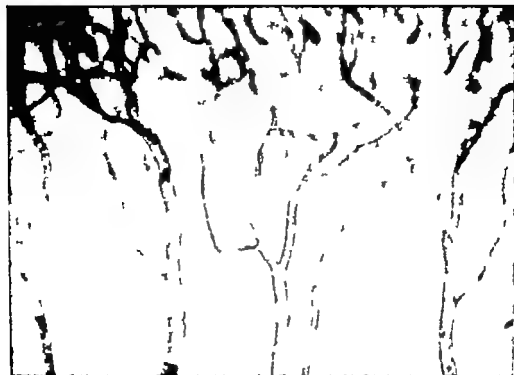


Fig 54 Guinea pig, scala tympani, basal turn, radial section. Collecting venules (195X).

number of these AVAS decreases more than other types of vessels in the external wall (Fig. 52)

In the external wall of the *scala tympani* there are two types of vessels (Fig 44)

Collecting venules

The venules at the basilar membrane

The *collecting venules* (CVL) constitute the drainage for all vessels in the external wall (Fig 44 47 51 53 54) and anastomose with one another. The CVL have a particular arrangement at the attachment of the basilar membrane immediately above it they turn off short spirally make an omega formed loop around the attachment and continue in their former apico-basal direction. In this manner the venules seem to "grip" around the attachment of the basilar membrane. Below this attachment the *venules at the basilar membrane* (VLBM, Venulae membranae basilaris) form a spiral vessel (Fig. 44 47 53) VLBM can be demonstrated in all four turns and are only a spiral part of the CVL. The diameter of the CVL is similar in the three basal turns and the distance between them increases apically. Small venules collect to form larger ones basally in the scala tympani. The ramification angles of the CVL in the scala tympani are about



Fig 55 Guinea pig, dome of the cochlea viewed from above. Spiral modiolar artery terminates apically by ramifying to form radiating arterioles (RAL) supplying the dome and extending over the external wall (78X).

50 degrees. In the apical turns the number of CVL and the number of their ramifications decreases. Due to the lack of an appropriate reference level in the scala tympani, the number of CVL was not counted as was done for the radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli. The general impression is that there are at least as many CVL as radiating arterioles.

In the apical turns of the cochlea the vascular arrangement is principally maintained as it is described here. There is, however, a pronounced simplification of the whole vascular anatomy (Fig 52). The vessel of the scala vestibuli can be demonstrated for intervals in the third turn but disappears in the fourth. The stria vascularis consists of sparse open loops. The arterio-venous anastomoses frequently observed in the basal turn also disappear in the fourth turn where all radiating arterioles join some of the spiral vascular systems. In the fourth turn the radiating arterioles thus turn off at right angles in a spiral direction at the level of some of these spiral vessels, run for some distance spirally and again turn basally to the collecting venules. The dome of the cochlea is supplied by the finger like terminal ramifications of the spiral modiolar artery (Fig 55). The measurements confirm many of these observations (Table V VI VII). The number of arterio-venous anastomoses and radiating arterioles and their ramifications decreases. Instead the vessel at the vestibular membrane and the vessel of the spiral prominence are supplied by twice as many radiating arterioles in the fourth as in the basal turn. The number of radiating arterioles supplying the stria vascularis increases less. In general there is no change in the occurrence of vascular connections in the external wall apically.

## b Measurements

*The distribution of the radiating arterioles to different vessels in the external wall*

The vascular anatomy and the measurements presented give a general idea of the vasculature in the external wall. There are, as demonstrated, several spiral vessels or spiral vascular systems at right angles to the radiating arterioles and collecting venules. These are

- The vessel of the scala vestibuli
- The vessel at the vestibular membrane
- Stria vascularis
- The vessel of the spiral prominence
- The venules at the basilar membrane

Some of the arterial branches, however run to the venous side in the scala tympani without supplying any of these spiral systems. These are the arterio-venous anastomoses which also were considered in the measurements. Those branches lying closest to the stria vascularis usually turn to the collecting venules above the attachment of the basilar membrane. Vessels lying more externally pass by the venous "pitchforks" at the attachment and connect to the venules more basally in the scala tympani. The terminations of the arterio-venous anastomoses thus were considered separately under "venules above" and "venules below" the attachment of the basilar membrane. As it is difficult to separate the vessel of the scala vestibuli from the vessel at the vestibular membrane in the fourth turn, the supplying vessels to these two were measured together. The results of the measurements are presented in Fig. 56 and Table VII and are expressed in terms

TABLE VII

*The percentage distribution of the radiating arterioles to different vessels in the external wall of the guinea pig cochlea*

	Base	2nd	3rd	4th
Vessel of the scala vestibuli	7 /	8	13 /	40 /
Vessel at the vestibular membrane	13	13	20 /	
Stria vascularis	13 %	10 /	18	19 /
Vessel of the spiral prominence	11 /	16	19	24 /
Venules above the attachment of the basilar membrane	34	29	23	15 %
Venules below the attachment of the basilar membrane	22 /	24 /	9 /	2 %
	100 /	100	100	100 %

The results are the mean of measurements taken in 10 cochleas under the stereo-microscope. All the ramifications of 10 radiating arterioles were followed in each turn and the figures give the percentage of the total number supplying each vascular entity.

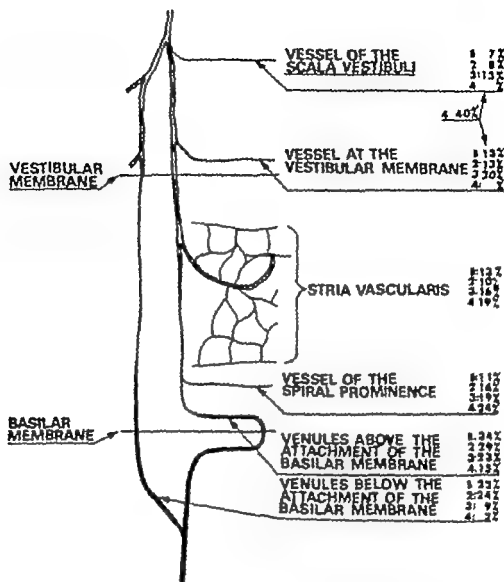


Fig. 56. Guinea pig, external wall, radial section, schematic. Measurements. Percentage distribution of the arterioles to different areas. In the basal turn the arterio-venous anastomoses predominate, decreasing apically. Anastomoses occurring above and below the attachment of the basilar membrane are grouped separately.

of percentages. The measurements did not include the diameter of the two further branches resulting from a ramification, which may vary considerably.

The results demonstrate a rather even distribution of the radiating arterioles to all vessels. It is important to note that the stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence are supplied only by comparatively few branches. The greatest change apically is, as described, the marked decrease of the arterio-venous anastomoses. This decrease corresponds to a rather even increase of connections with the spiral vessels apically. The importance of the vessel of the scala vestibuli and the vessel at the vestibular membrane is emphasized by the fact that these two receive about the same number of supplying vessels as the

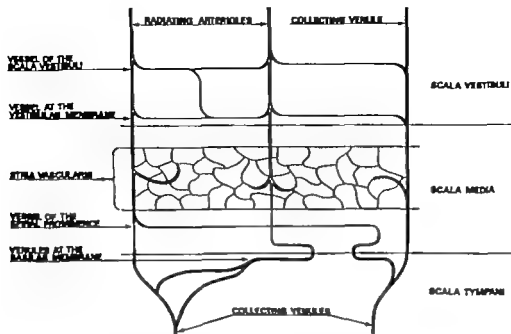


Fig. 57 Guinea pig and man, external wall, radial section, schematic. Vascular connections. Radiating arterioles and collecting venules connect with all types of vessels. Stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence only connect to supplying arterioles and draining venules. The venules at the basilar membrane form spirally-running vessel.

stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence in the two apical turns, even though the latter two vessels are supplied by larger branches. The number of branches supplying the stria vascularis is rather constant although it increases somewhat apically. In this connection, it is well to again note that the vascular density of the stria vascularis is maintained at least to the third turn in spite of the visible thinning out of the vascular net (Table V). Both the vessel at the vestibular membrane and the vessel of the spiral prominence receive as many or more supplying vessels as the stria vascularis, demonstrating the importance of a good vascular supply in these regions.

#### *Vascular anastomoses in the external wall*

The existence of vascular anastomoses between the vessels in the external wall was confirmed visually and photographically. The results are presented schematically in Fig. 57. The radiating arterioles supply all kinds of vessels in the external wall, and the collecting venules in the scala tympani drain all vessels. Stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence have only connections with these arterioles and venules and no connections with one another. In this respect they differ from the other spiral systems. The vessel of the scala vestibuli and the vessel at the vestibular membrane thus connect with all types of vessels except the stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence. The venules at the basilar membrane constitute a spirally running part of the collecting venules.



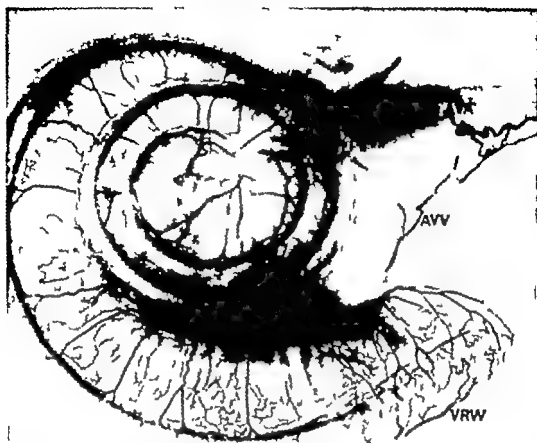


Fig 58 Human cochlea. Radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli are darker injected than the veins. A sparse capillary net is formed in the scala vestibuli. VRW = vein of the round window AVA = anterior vestibular artery AVV = anterior vestibular vein (12X).

### c. Man

In the external wall of the *scala vestibuli* four types of vessels can be demonstrated (Fig 44)

Radiating arterioles

Collecting venules

The vessel at the vestibular membrane

A capillary net above the vestibular membrane

Generally the *radiating arterioles* (RAL, *Arteriolae radiatae*) appear darker than the collecting venules and at least centrally have a larger diameter (Fig 58). Similarly to the RAL supplying the spiral lamina, the RAL leave the artery in the modiolus at about right angles. The RAL centrally have a pronounced winding course but further peripherally in the *scala vestibuli* they straighten (Fig 59). Centrally in the *scala vestibuli* branches forming spirally running arcades connect the RAL with one another. Larger arterioles sometimes deviate



Fig 59 Man, modiolus and external wall, basal turn, transverse section. Radiating arterioles are given off from the artery which runs around the modiolus. They first have a winding course but straighten further peripherally. Partially-injected arcades forming connections between the radiating arterioles can be seen (27X)

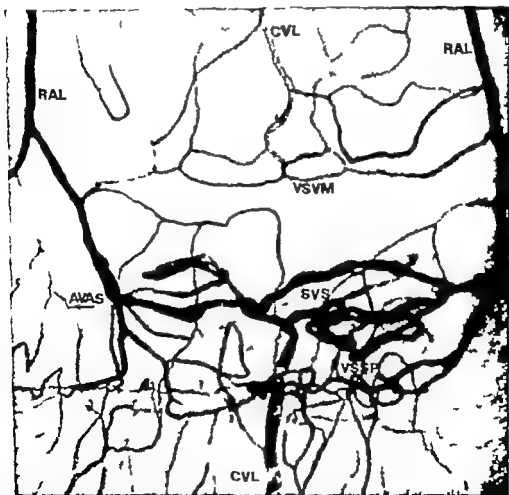


Fig 60 Man, external wall, basal turn, radial section. Radiating arterioles (RAL) supply all kinds of vessels in the external wall. A capillary net of the scala vestibuli is seen, basally bordered by the vessel of the vestibular membrane (VSVM). CVL = collecting venules of the scala vestibuli and the scala tympani, SVS = stria vascularis, typically only partially injected, VSP = vessel of the spiral prominence, AVAS = micro-venous anastomoses (103X)

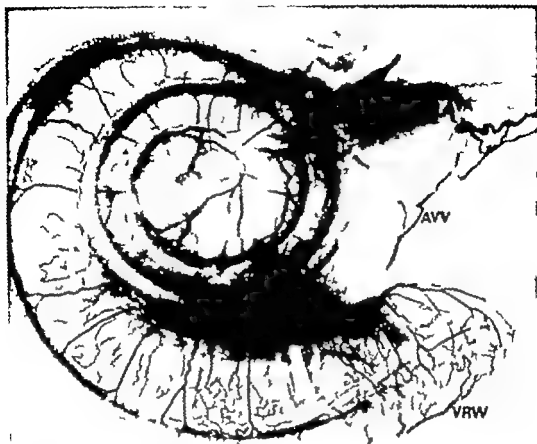


Fig 58 Human cochlea. Radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli are darker injected than the veins. A sparse capillary net is formed in the scala vestibuli. VRW = vein of the round window AVA = anterior vestibular artery AVV = anterior vestibular vein (12X).

### c Man

In the external wall of the *scala vestibuli* four types of vessels can be demonstrated (Fig 44)

Radiating arterioles

Collecting venules

The vessel at the vestibular membrane

A capillary net above the vestibular membrane

Generally the *radiating arterioles* (RAL, *Arteriolae radiatae*) appear darker than the collecting venules and, at least centrally have a larger diameter (Fig. 58). Similarly to the RAL supplying the spiral lamina, the RAL leave the artery in the modiolus at about right angles. The RAL centrally have a pronounced winding course but further peripherally in the *scala vestibuli* they straighten (Fig 59). Centrally in the *scala vestibuli* branches forming spirally running arcades connect the RAL with one another. Larger arterioles sometimes deviate

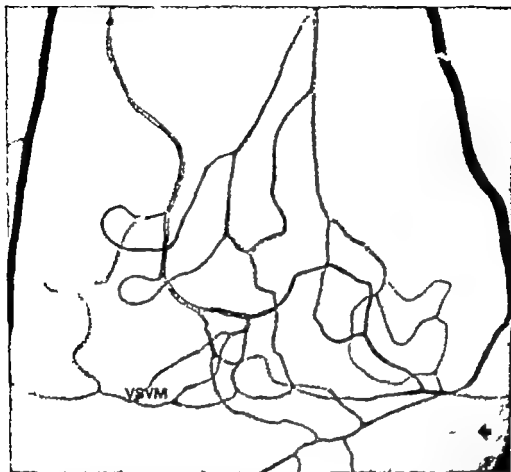


Fig. 62. Maa, external wall, basal turn, radial section, scala vestibuli. Two darkly injected radiating arterioles and two lightly injected collecting venules of smaller diameter. A capillary net, formed by the branches of both, is basally lined by spiral vessel the vessel at the vestibular membrane (VSVM). Arrow = attachment of the vestibular membrane (91X).

buli are considerably more frequent in man than in the guinea pig. As in the guinea pig the number of radiating arterioles and CVL decreases markedly in the apical turns (Fig. 63). Similarly to the radiating arterioles, larger branches of the CVL are sometimes seen to deviate spirally in the scala vestibuli (Fig. 25).

The capillary net in the scala vestibuli forms a basal marginal vessel lying close and parallel to the attachment of the vestibular membrane, the vessel at the vestibular membrane (VSVM, *Vas membranæ vestibularis*) (Fig. 60, 62, 63). There is a similar and corresponding vessel in the guinea pig. On the other hand there is no vessel in man corresponding to the vessel of the scala vestibuli in the guinea pig. VSVM connects the arterioles and venules in the scala vestibuli and further the venules in the scala tympani, the latter often by direct unramified anastomoses. VSVM is well formed in the whole cochlea, including the apical turn (Fig. 63).



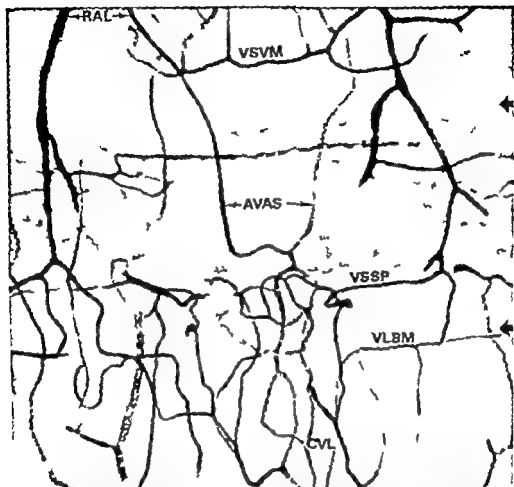


Fig. 64. Man, external wall, basal turn, radial section. Stria vascularis (corresponding here to the pigmented area) is typically difficult to inject. It appears that the contrast is being shunted past the stria vascularis to the other vessels. RAL = radiating arterioles, VSM = vessel at the vestibular membrane, AVAS = arterio-venous anastomoses, VSP = vessel of the spiral prominence, VLBM = venules at the basilar membrane, CVL = collecting venules. Arrows indicate attachment of the vestibular and basilar membranes (95X).

Three different vascular structures can be demonstrated in the external wall of the scala media (Fig. 44)

Stria vascularis

The vessel of the spiral prominence

Arterio-venous anastomoses

The *stria vascularis* (SVS) proved to be particularly difficult to inject in the human cochlea. While in a few preparations it is completely injected, in many others the contrast was apparently shunted directly over to the venous system (Fig. 64). In some cases the SVS seems to have been filled in a retrograde direction from the venules in the scala tympani (Fig. 61). As in the guinea pig, the only vascular connections are radiating arterioles from the scala vestibuli, and

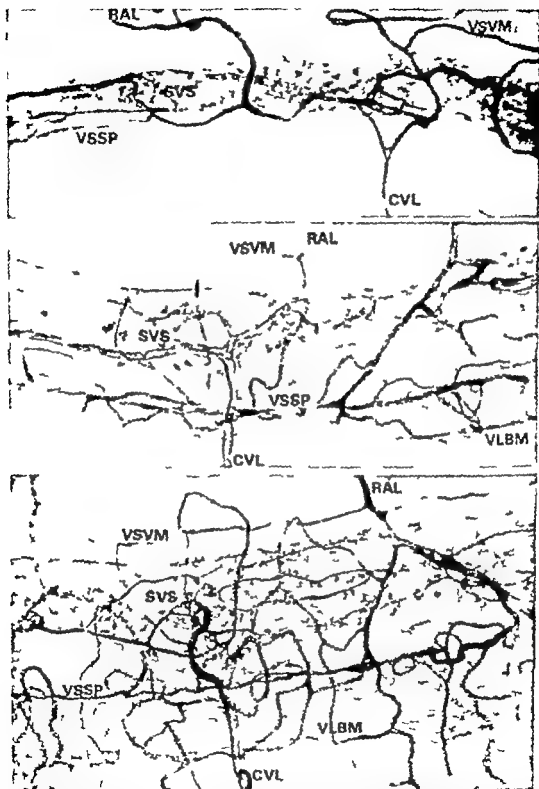


Fig. 63. Mollusk, *Adia*, adial section. Below middle of second turn. Middle basal portion third turn. Above middle of second turn. The principal arrangement is maintained, but more simplified and open. The vessel of the spiral prominence (VSP) follows a straighter course. (SVS) narrows. RAL = radiating arterioles, VSM = vessel of the spiral prominence, VLBM = vessel of the basal membrane, CVL = collecting venules (95X).

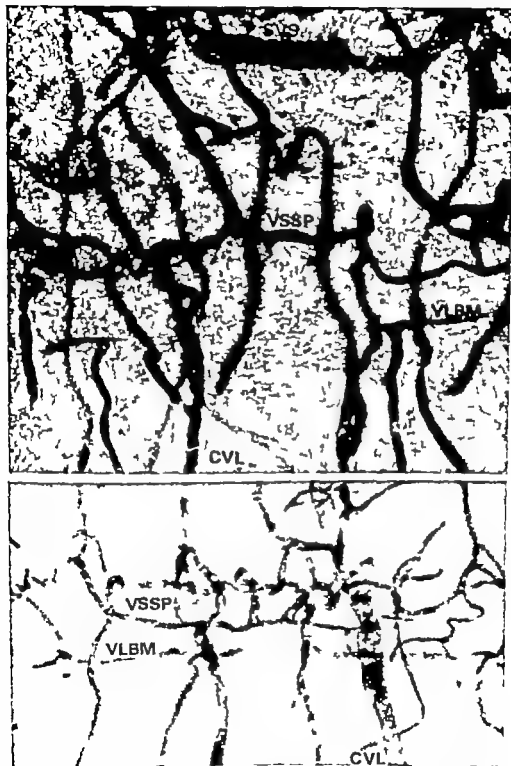


Fig. 66. *Man*, external wall, radial section. The vessel of the spiral prominence (VSSP), single or double, has an uneven course and is often complicated by supplying or draining small ramifying or looping immediately before arriving. SVS = stria vascularis, VLBM = vasa labyrinthina, CVL = collecting endles (155X).



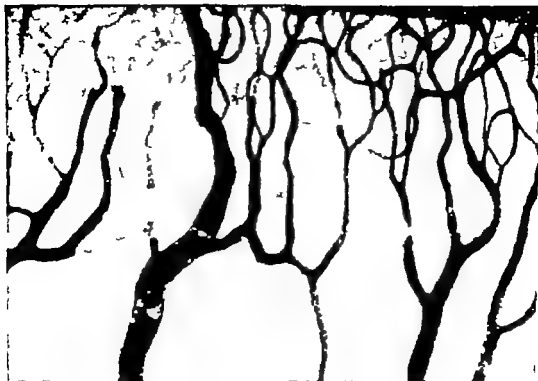


Fig 67 Man, external wall, basal turn, radial section. Collecting venules of the scala tympani with frequent anastomoses (95X).

Two different vascular structures can be identified in the external wall of the *scala tympani* (Fig 44)

#### Collecting venules

The venules at the basilar membrane

The *collecting venules* (CVL, *Venulae collectae*) pass around the attachment of the basilar membrane form a spiral vessel below the attachment here referred to as the *venules at the basilar membrane* (VLBM, *Venulae membranae basilaris*) and turn again basally in the *scala tympani* (Fig 63 64 66) VLBM can be demonstrated in the whole cochlea and, as in the guinea pig, they constitute a spiral part of the CVL. The CVL drain all the spiral vascular systems in the external wall Basally to the VLBM the venules collect to form larger vessels (Fig 67) which eventually empty into the vein of the *scala tympani* or the common modiolar vein (see chapter Modiolus)

In the *apical turn* the vascular arrangement is principally maintained as in the guinea pig. There is, however, a marked reduction in the number of vessels and ramifications and a general simplification. The dome is supplied by the terminal ramifications of the spiral modiolar artery (Fig 63 68)



Fig. 68. Man, second and third turns. Left: viewed from inside toward the helicotrema. Right: viewed from outside on the dome. Radiating arterioles ramify little compared with the base (17%, 29%)

#### d. Comments

The commonly accepted nomenclature has been applied to the radiating arterioles, collecting venules, arterio-venous anastomoses, stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence. The vessel of the scala vestibuli found in the guinea pig but not in man, hitherto has not been described and is here classified among the other spiral vessels. In addition, the seldomly described vessel at the vestibular membrane and the venules at the basilar membrane were demonstrated in both man and the guinea pig in the present study and were accordingly given names.

Principally the vascular arrangement in the external wall of the cochlea radiates apico-basally over the radiating arterioles, arterio-venous anastomoses and collecting venules. Several spiral vascular systems are found at right angles to these vessels, i.e. the vessel of the scala vestibuli, the vessel at the vestibular membrane, stria vascularis, the vessel of the spiral prominence and the venules at the basilar membrane. In the basal turn the radiating vessels predominate and give the impression that the main blood flow passes this way. The relatively small angles at the ramifications of the radiating arterioles and collecting venules as well as observations *in vivo* confirm this impression. The angles between the radiating and spiral vessels are throughout greater.

From the literature one receives the impression that all the radiating arterioles join the stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence. However the present investigation indicates that only a minor part of the radiating arterioles connect to these systems, even though they often may be branches of comparatively large size. As demonstrated, there are no vascular connections between the stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence. In addition, each is

provided with a separate system of supply and drainage vessels. The measurements indicate that the distance between them is rather small and unchanged in the three basal turns. An interesting fact is that the hitherto neglected vessels, the vessel of the scala vestibuli and the vessel at the vestibular membrane receive a considerable part of the radiating arterioles.

Reservations have been raised concerning the measurements of the diameter of vessels. Unfortunately very few previous measurements are available for comparison. Values obtained by previous workers are tabulated in Table II page 20. It is often difficult to make meaningful comparisons between figures presented in different works due to the variation in nomenclature and methodology. In general it can be said that the measurements of the present investigation compare well with those given by other authors on all types of vessels presented by them except the capillaries of the stria vascularis which were larger in the investigations of Perlman et al (Table II). Iurato's figures are relatively small and the values given by Charachon for man are uniformly larger than those found in the present investigation.

The measurements confirm the apparent apical simplification of the vascular anatomy in the guinea pig. Table V shows a considerable and statistically significant increase in the distance between pairs of radiating arterioles and collecting venules apically as compared with the base. The number of radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli decreases markedly and they ramify less. The figures from the present investigation (Table VI page 67) may be compared with those of Nabeya:

	Basal	Second	Third	Fourth
Nabeya:	34	20	16	7
	30	20	14	6
Present investigation	48	33	19	7

Nabeya's values are smaller than those of the present investigation, but are difficult to compare as it was not stated exactly where the measurements were made, but it seems to be in the same region.

The measurements further demonstrate a statistically significant decrease in the breadth of the stria vascularis apically.

However these measurements should be related to the decreasing volume of the turns apically. If the number of radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli in the present investigation is related to the length of each turn as given by Fernandez (1952) the number of arterioles per mm is respectively 5.7 7.4 5.5 3.4. In spite of the visibly increasing vascular sparseness of the stria vascularis, the total length of the capillaries per surface unit is similar in the three basal turns. The increasing sparseness is further well compensated for by the well maintained diameter of the vessels apically. The measurements also demonstrate that in the apical turns almost all of the branches of the radiating arterioles connect to some of the spiral vascular systems and the arterio-venous anastomoses decrease markedly.

It thus appears that the seemingly increasing sparseness of the vascular anatomy apically is not so great if the occurrence and length of the vessels is related to the length and the volume of the turn. The greatest difference between the vasculature basally and apically would appear to be that the simplified vascular system apically allows for fewer possibilities of adjustment in the event of circulation variations.

The similarity of the vascular anatomy in the guinea pig and man is striking. Only the vessel of the scala vestibuli present in the guinea pig is not found in man. Furthermore, the venules in the scala vestibuli are more numerous in man where they take part in the formation of a well developed capillary net. With these exceptions it can be stated that the occurrence, appearance and course of the vessels is largely similar in the guinea pig and man. These principal similarities are further evident when compared with the vascular anatomy as described in the rat, dog, cat and monkey (Asai, 1908; Nabeya, 1923; Smith, 1954).

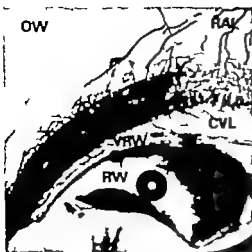


Fig 69 Guinea pig, basal end. The radiating arterioles (RAL) in the scala vestibuli run more obliquely as do the collecting enules (CVL) in the scala tympani when emptying into the  $\pi$  of the round window (VRW). The vascular arrangement narrows toward the exitulum. OW = oval window RW = round window (34X).

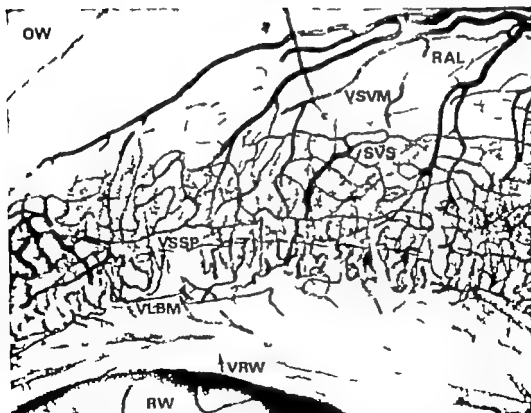


Fig 70 Guinea pig, basal end, radial section. All vascular structures can be identified and the principal arrangement is maintained. Radiating arterioles (RAL) run more obliquely. VSVM = vessel at the exitular membrane, SVS = stria vascularis, VSSP = vessel of the spiral prominence, VLBM = enules at the basilar membrane, VRW = vein of the round window receiving collecting enules running obliquely in the scala tympani, OW = oval window RW = round window (95X).

## 4 The vascular anatomy of the basal end of the cochlea

## 2. Guinea pig

By the basal end of the cochlea is meant the partially uncoiled terminal segment of the cochlea which turns from a plane perpendicular to the modiolar axis to a plane almost parallel to this axis. The same vessels can be identified as are found in the rest of the cochlea and in general the vascular arrangement is maintained.

In the external wall the radiating arterioles in the *scala vestibuli* deriving from the spiral modiolar artery do not have a straight apico-basal course but rather a more oblique one toward the basal end over the *scala vestibuli* (Fig 69-70). They do not supply the extreme basal end of the external wall which is supplied instead by 3-4 arterioles coming from the opposite direction, i.e. the vestibulum (see further below). In general both the vessel of the *scala vestibuli* and the vessel at the vestibular membrane are easily demonstrated, although the former is not found in the above-mentioned extreme basal region (Fig. 70, 75). In the *scala media* the stria vascularis gradually narrows toward the basal end, but nevertheless remains a well maintained vascular network (Fig. 70-75). The vessel of the spiral prominence is well formed and the arterio-venous anastomoses externally to the stria vascularis are numerous (Fig. 70-75). The collecting venules of the *scala tympani* resemble the radiating arterioles in the *scala vestibuli* in having an oblique course (Fig. 70). They empty into the

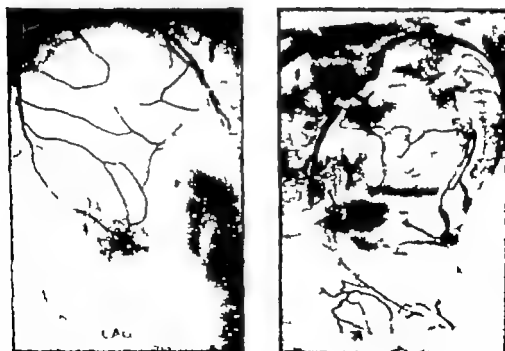


Fig 71 Guinea pig, basal end, round window. Note the capillary net on the round window membrane. The round window is 3/4 encircled by the rim of the round window. Arrow = peroneum. encl., CAQ = cochlear aqueduct (left = 39X, right = 52X)

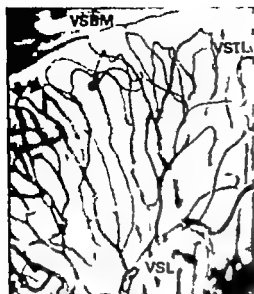


Fig 72 Guinea pig, basal end, spiral lamina, transverse section. The principal vascular arrangement is maintained, but the vessel of the tympanic lip (VSTL) is replaced by arcades (arrow) in the most basal part. VSBM = vessel of the basilar membrane, VSL = vein of the spiral lamina (81X).

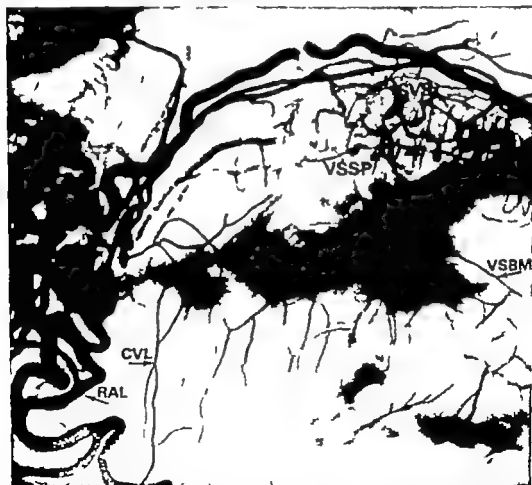


Fig 73 Guinea pig, extreme basal end. Serpentine radiating arterioles (RAL) and collecting venules (CVL) coming from the modiolus turn around the extreme basal end of the spiral lamina and turn to the basal termination of the vessels in the external wall. Stria vascularis (SVS) and the vessel of the spiral prominence (VSSP) connect with venules. The arterioles supply the scala vestibuli. VSBM = vessel of the basilar membrane (95X).

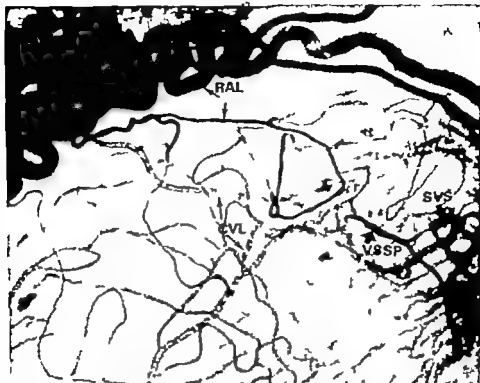


Fig. 74 Guinea pig, extreme basal end. A sparse capillary net is formed at the extreme basal end. RAL = radiating arterioles, CVL = collecting venules, SVS = sera vascularis, VSSP = vessel of the spiral prominence (152X).

vern of the round window (VRW = fenestra cochleae) which turns around the apical aspect of the window while gradually approaching the scala media (Fig. 70, 71, 75, 77). The collecting venules in the scala tympani are correspondingly shorter in this region. VRW encloses about  $3/4$  of the round window and eventually empties into the vestibulo-cochlear vein (Fig. 77). The round window membrane is supplied by a sparse net of anastomosing branches of the VRW (Fig. 71). The venules at the basilar membrane are generally easily demonstrated (Fig. 70, 75) and the venules "gripping" the attachment of the basilar membrane are particularly numerous.

In the *spiral lamina* the vessel of the basilar membrane is generally completely continuous, but the vessel of the tympanic lip is not demonstrable and is replaced by numerous arcades located centrally to its normal position (Fig. 72). The limbus vessels follow the general pattern found in the remaining parts of the cochlea.

The *extreme basal end* of the external wall is supplied by arterioles deriving from the vestibulo-cochlear artery in the vestibulum. They pass the basal end of the spiral lamina and turn apically to the scala vestibuli (Fig. 73, 74). A short anastomosing vascular net is formed where these arterioles meet the terminal ramifications of the spiral modiolar artery coming from the opposite direction. This interesting anastomosing region, which has not been described before, is particularly prominent in the scala vestibuli (Fig. 75).



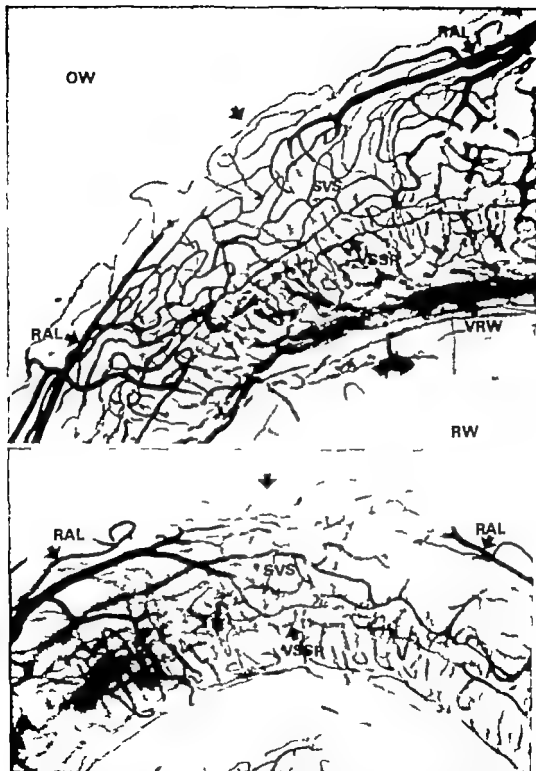


Fig. 75 Guinea pig, basal end, radial section. Photos from two different animals showing the interesting capillary net (arrow) formed in the scala vestibuli where the radiating arterioles (RAL) from the vestibulum (left) meet the radiating arterioles coming from the opposite direction (right). The principal arrangement is otherwise maintained. OW = oval window RW = round window SVS = stria vascularis VSSP = vessel of the spiral prominence, VRW = vein of the round window (above — 93X below — 95X)

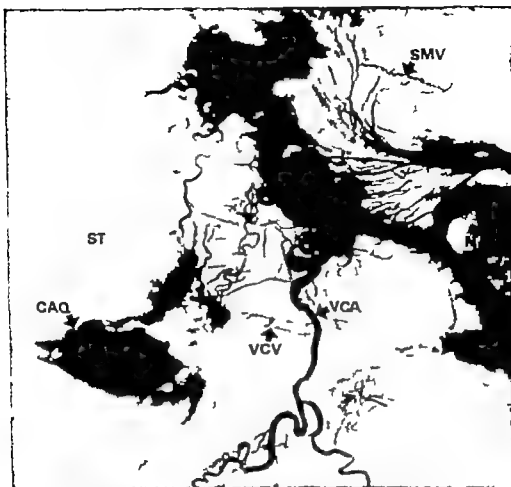


Fig 76. Guinea pig, base-vestibulum, radial section. The scala tympani (ST) at the basal end showing the origin of the cochlear aqueduct (CAQ). SMV = spiral modiolus vein, VCA = vestibulo-cochlear artery, VCV = vestibulo-cochlear vein, N VIII = acoustic nerv (49X).

Small venules deriving from the vestibulo-cochlear vein also accompany the larger radiating arterioles around the basal end of the spiral lamina (Fig. 73-74). They drain terminating regions of the stria vascularis, the vessel of the spiral prominence, and the collecting venules in the scala tympani at the extreme basal end. Branches from these arterioles and venules form a sparse irregular vascular net at the extreme basal end of the spiral lamina (Fig. 74).

The *vestibulo-cochlear vein* (VCV, V. vestibulo-cochlearis) crosses the vestibulum perpendicular to the corresponding artery (Fig. 76). VCV receives the vein of the round window and drains the extreme basal end of the spiral lamina and the external wall, in particular the vestibulum and superior parts of the labyrinth.

The *vein of the cochlear aqueduct* (VCAQ, V. aqueductus cochleae) is formed by the confluence of the spiral modiolus vein and the vestibulo-cochlear vein (Fig. 17-77). VCAQ begins below the round window, runs a short course in the

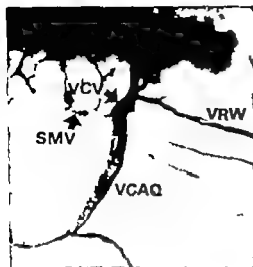


Fig 77 Guinea pig. Vein of the cochlear aqueduct (VCAQ) in the temporal bone is formed by the confluence of the vestibulo-cochlear vein (VCV) and the spiral modiolar vein (SMV). VCV is shown receiving the vein of the round window (VRW). (22X)

temporal bone close and parallel to the aqueduct, and empties into the jugular vein. It receives some venous branches from the temporal bone in this region, some of which can be followed to a niche below the scala tympani near the round window where the osseous vessels connect with mucoperiosteum vessels. VCAQ provides the main outflow for the whole membranous cochlea and probably also for some of the vessels of the surrounding mucoperiosteum and bony caprula.

#### b. Man

The vascular anatomy of the basal end of the cochlea in man is principally similar to that of the guinea pig (Fig 22, 29, 78). The main stem of the vestibulo-cochlear artery divides into two branches upon its arrival in the modiolus, and the vestibular branch supplies the spiral lamina and the external wall in the basal end. It then runs toward the vestibulum with an uneven serpentine course and upon arriving is situated between the sacculus and the basal end of the spiral lamina (Fig 79, 80). Branches are given off in both directions to the capillary regions and some branches turn around the basal end of the spiral lamina and reverse their direction apically to supply the most basal parts of the external wall (see further below).

The basal end of the human cochlea is drained by the vestibulo-cochlear vein or more properly by its two branches: the vein of the round window and the posterior vestibular vein (Fig 29). The *vestibulo-cochlear vein* (VCV, V vestibulo-cochlearis) begins close to the basal end as the confluence of the anterior and posterior vestibular veins (Fig 29, 78). The *anterior vestibular vein* (AVV, V vestibuli anterior) drains parts of the vestibulum and the labyrinth. The *posterior vestibular vein* (PVV, V vestibuli posterior) runs together with the vestibular branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery from the vestibulum,



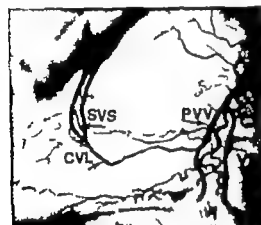


Fig 79 Man, basal end, radial section, viewed from vestibulum. Vestibular branch (VB) of the vestibulo-cochlear artery running toward the vestibulum together with the posterior vestibular vein (PVV). When arriving at the extreme basal end of the spiral lamina, radiating arterioles (RAL) reverse direction and supply vessels in the external wall. Collecting venules (CVL) drain the extreme basal end of the stria vascularis (SVS). ST = scala tympani, SV = scala vestibuli, N VIII = acoustic nerve (above — 13X, below — 22X).

draining the spiral lamina and the scala vestibuli (Fig 78 79 80). Venous and arterial branches accompany one another around the basal end of the spiral lamina (see further below). The vestibulo-cochlear vein also receives a small segment of the vein of the scala vestibuli running in the opposite direction to the posterior vestibular vein. This vein supplies the spiral lamina and the external wall in the region corresponding to the cochlear branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery but it can not always be demonstrated (Fig 29 78).

The vein of the round window (VRW = V fenestrae cochleae) resembles the corresponding vein in the guinea pig (Fig 29 78 81 82). It runs on the apical aspect of the round window enclosing 3/4 of it, and anastomoses in the region of the extreme basal end with the venous branches from the posterior vestibular vein running around the basal end of the cochlea. VRW receives short venules from the scala tympani at the basal end and eventually empties into the vesti-

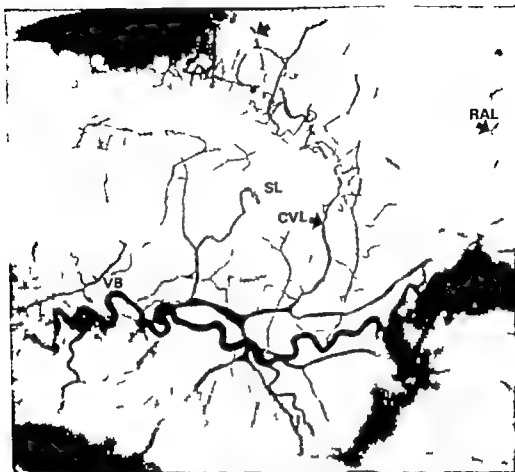


Fig. 80. Man, basal end, transverse section. As in the guinea pig, radiating arterioles (RAL) and collecting venules (CVL) turn around the extreme basal end of the spiral lamina (SL) and turn to the extreme basal end of the external wall. Arrow = venules turning to the scala vestibuli, VB = vestibular branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery (29X).

bulo-cochlear vein. Usually no vessels could be demonstrated on the human round window membrane, in contrast to the guinea pig.

The *vein of the cochlear aqueduct* (VCAQ, *V. aqueductus cochleae*) is formed by the confluence of the vestibulo-cochlear vein and the common modiolar vein. This region lies near the round window below the scala tympani (Fig. 28-29-78). VCAQ runs through the temporal bone closely parallel to the cochlear aqueduct. In most preparations it receives several osseous veins during its course to the basal aspect of the temporal bone where it empties into the jugular vein.

In the *external wall* the arterioles, instead of radiating perpendicularly over the *scala vestibuli* take a more oblique course toward the basal end similarly to the collecting venules in the *scala tympani* (Fig. 81-82). The radiating arterioles and collecting venules in the *scala vestibuli* form a capillary net basally bordered by the vessel at the vestibular membrane.

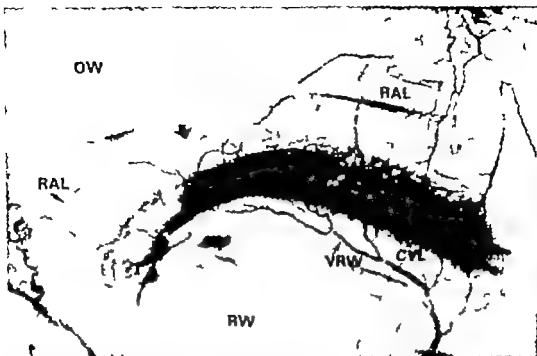


Fig 81 Man, basal end, radial section. Radiating arterioles (RAL) taking more oblique course. Collecting venules (CVL) of the scala tympani taking a short oblique course before emptying into the vein of the round window (V&W). Radiating arterioles (RAL) coming around the extreme basal end of the spiral lamina and turning retrograde to the scala vestibuli, forming an anastomosing net with arterioles coming from the opposite direction (arrow). OW = oval window RW = round window (25X)

In the *scala media* of the basal end as in the whole cochlea, stria vascularis is difficult to inject. There exists here a distinct difference between the guinea pig and man in that the human stria vascularis narrows to a very sparse net and often to only one or two vessels at the basal end (Fig 79 82). The most pronounced simplification, however is not found at the extreme basal end but rather somewhat more apically. Stria vascularis in the extreme basal end usually consists of at least two parallel vessels with interconnecting branches (Fig. 83). The extreme basal end of the external wall is supplied by ramifications from the vestibular branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery and from the posterior vestibular vein passing the basal end of the spiral lamina in a "retrograde" direction (Fig 78 79 80 81). At the extreme basal end of the spiral lamina the posterior vestibular vein receives venules from both the scala vestibuli and scala tympani as well as some ramifications constituting the extreme basal termination of the stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence (Fig 79). As in the guinea pig, an anastomosing region thus occurs in the scala vestibuli where the arterioles from the vestibulum meet those coming from the opposite direction. In this particular region the stria vascularis is especially poorly developed (Fig 81 82). The vessel of the spiral prominence is quite irregular at the basal end and this region is often difficult to inject. The vascular arrangement of the spiral lamina is similar to the rest of the cochlea (Fig 80).

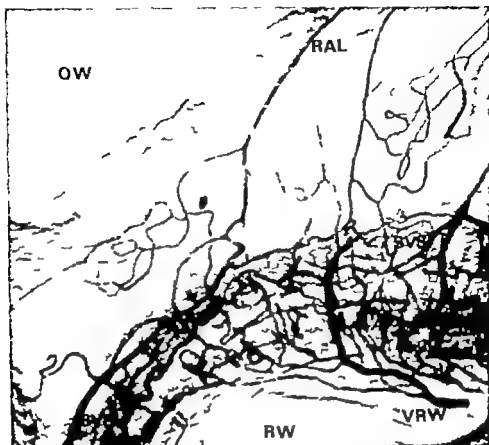


Fig 82 Man, basal end, radial section. Radiating arterioles (RAL) with an oblique course over the scala vestibuli anastomosing with radiating arterioles coming from the vestibulum (left). A small capillary net is formed where they meet. In this region seria vascularis (SVS) is particularly poorly developed (arrow) OW = oval window RW = round window VRW = vein of the round window (93%).

### c. Comment

The basal end is distinguished from other areas of the cochlea by a markedly different anatomy probably due to its unique position between the oval and round windows and to the fetal development. The vascular anatomy of this region has not been described previously in detail. It should be emphasized that this area in man is supplied by branches from the same artery which, however, come from opposite directions. Thus, when the basally running artery arrives at the basal end of the spiral lamina branches turn around this pivot point and run in a retrograde direction apically. An anastomosing net is formed where the branches of the same artery meet. The accompanying venous ramifications similarly make the turn at the basal end, eventually draining the extreme basal



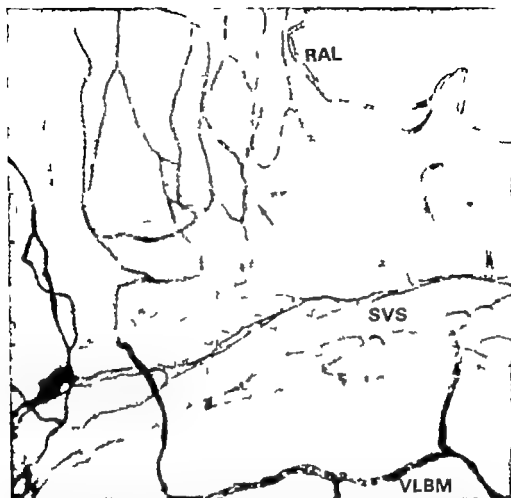


Fig 93 Man, extreme basal end, radial section. A capillary net (arrow) is formed at the extreme basal end in the scala vestibuli. Stria vascularis (SVS) is greatly simplified. The venules at the basilar membrane (VLBM) connect with a radiating arteriole (RAL) and the capillary net in the scala vestibuli (95X)

end of the stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence. They also connect with venules in the scala vestibuli and the scala tympani.

This interesting arrangement at the basal end is thus largely similar in man and the guinea pig with a few exceptions. The vestibulo-cochlear artery supplies a comparatively larger part of the basal end in man than in the guinea pig. The vessels on the round window membrane found in the guinea pig are seldom demonstrated in man and the stria vascularis in this region is rather different in the two species as mentioned above. The guinea pig stria vascularis is well formed in the extreme basal end in spite of progressive narrowing. In man, even though the general vascular arrangement in this region is well maintained the stria vascularis appears poorly developed, especially at the level where the radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli anastomose. The vascular anatomy of the spiral lamina is principally similar to the rest of the cochlea.

### C. GENERAL DISCUSSION

#### *Nomenclature*

In the present investigation the most commonly used nomenclature has generally been employed. It is felt that the attitude toward the introduction of new names must be one of great restrictivity. However, it has been considered necessary to suggest new names in certain cases. Firstly this was done with hitherto not described or named vessels. Secondly some names were changed to more descriptive ones indicating the localization of the vessel in relation to anatomical structures as well as to suggest a more uniform nomenclature. Some of these previous terms have been misleading as well as insufficiently descriptive.

The new names introduced in the present investigation are given in the table below (for a more complete survey see Table VIII page 124)

<i>Present investigation</i>	<i>Previously called</i>
Spiral modiolar artery (Guinea pig and man)	Cochlear artery A. cochleae propria
Common modiolar vein (man)	No name available
Vein of the scala vestibuli (man)	Anterior spiral vein
Vein of the scala tympani (man)	Posterior spiral vein
Vessel of the basilar membrane	Spiral vessel Vas spirale
Vessel of the tympanic lip	Table VIII
Limbus vessels	" "
Vessel of the scala vestibuli (guinea pig)	No name available
Vessel at the vestibular membrane	Table VIII
Venules at the basilar membrane	" "

#### *The method*

The guinea pig was chosen as the experimental animal since a large amount of morphological and physiological research has been carried out on this animal, allowing one to put the findings of the present investigation in relationship to previous studies.

One of the aims of the present investigation was to refine and simplify the method of contrast injection. The present method proved to have the following advantages:

- The injection with Berlin blue solution admits the demonstration of all vascular areas in the cochlea in the guinea pig as well as in man.
- The method is relatively fast, requiring one week including all steps of preparation.
- Glycerin was used as the storage medium with the advantage of preserving the elasticity of the preparations, in being transparent and nonvolatile and in not visibly changing the contrast in the vessels.

d. By focusing at different levels in the stereo-microscope, all vessels could easily be followed in the decalcified transparent tissues.

e. The method permits general surveys, detailed analysis of the vascular anatomy as well as measurements of vascular areas.

The present method is basically similar to previously employed methods of contrast injection. All these methods have their disadvantages, e.g. in not giving uniformly injected vessels. In addition, previous authors do not discuss the relative importance of the various steps in their procedures. The present method often failed to yield reproducible injection of all cochlear vessels in spite of extensive experimentation with variations in an attempt to overcome these defects. As in previously published methods, the present one includes many steps in the preparation, each of which must be carefully controlled to minimize variation in the final product. A rigorous documentation and statistical analysis of all variations in technique is thus neither practical nor particularly illuminating. The variations in methodology which were introduced were empirical modifications based on experience acquired during the elaboration of the method. An important weak point seems to be the vessels of the inner acoustic meatus. A relatively high injection pressure is required to pass these vessels and to fill all the capillaries of the cochlea with contrast, yet they are easily ruptured by extreme pressure. The safety margin between these two limiting factors seems to be small.

The varying results of the perfusion with contrast can be turned, however, to the researcher's advantage in certain cases. In this way independent observation of the arterial and venous systems is permitted in those instances when only one of them is filled. In addition, the study of certain areas is facilitated when covering parts are not injected, and a better survey of the larger vessels may be obtained when the capillaries are not filled with contrast.

Other techniques for the demonstration of the cochlear vessels have also given valuable information, in particular vascular studies *in vivo*. Such observations have the advantage of being more physiologically relevant and have given interesting findings in vascular experiments. For the study of the vascular anatomy the *in vivo* technique is less appropriate as only small parts of the external wall are exposed. The injection of contrast medium probably gives the most complete overall survey of the vascular anatomy as well as opportunities for detailed studies.

#### *Comments on previous investigations*

The findings of previous authors will not be discussed in detail here. The intention is not to compile a list of differences between the findings of previous authors and the present study but rather to present a few examples of the nature of these differences.

The studies by Eichler (1892) and Siebenmann (1894) may be considered the starting point for modern investigations of the cochlear blood vessels. Their descriptions and drawings mainly treat the larger vessels and provide a general

picture of the vascular anatomy. The descriptions of the venous system given by these two authors are probably essentially correct, but are difficult to interpret. Greater divergencies from the present investigation are found concerning the arterial system. Eichler does not describe the vestibulo-cochlear artery and Siebenmann's description of the tractus spiralis arteriosus is unclear. Eichler maintains that the capillary net in the scala vestibuli is merely arterial, and Siebenmann considers the scala tympani to have an arterial supply. Both of these views are probably incorrect. Capillary regions are in general only briefly treated.

The findings of the present investigation are in general agreement with the works of Nabeya (1923), Smith (1951, 1954), Scuderi & del Bo (1952) and Charachon (1961). Significant divergencies do occur, however, and certain vascular areas are not as thoroughly treated as others.

A considerable improvement was made by Nabeya, both through the study of the vascular anatomy of several mammals and by presenting a more thorough description accompanied by semi-schematic drawings and photos. However, Nabeya does not present the general arrangement or a detailed description of the capillary regions, nor does he describe the apical and basal vascular areas.

Smith presented the vascular anatomy of the capillary regions in the guinea pig, the cat, and man. The instructive photographic material is accompanied by simple schematic drawings. The basal end and apical parts, however, are not described. Smith's description of "a separate, narrow rolled network of vessels" in the spiral prominence in man is not adequate. The appearance of the vessel is complicated in the basal turn by the Y formed or looping connections of the supplying and draining vessels. Smith further erroneously considers each radiating arteriole to supply the stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence in the guinea pig. In the present investigation, only about 15% of the total ramifications from the radiating arterioles were found to supply the stria vascularis and a similar number the vessel of the spiral prominence. Smith describes sparse ramifications of the arterio-venous anastomoses externally to the stria vascularis. The present investigation demonstrated a considerable ramification of the anastomoses which constituted the majority of the vessels in the external wall in the basal turn.

A comparison of the present investigation with the work of Charachon is difficult since he almost completely omits a description of the venous system. His description of the arterial and capillary systems is similar to that of the present study. Of the capillary regions, only the external wall was treated in detail. The photographic material and the schematic drawings are less instructive than those of Smith and of Scuderi & del Bo. Wüstenfeld & Kühnert (1964) present a short description of the vascular anatomy of the guinea pig cochlea and present material largely covered by previous works. Levin's (1964) paper dealing with the vascular anatomy of the human cochlea contains a number of significant deviations from the present and previous investigations.

The findings of the present investigation are in good agreement with *in vivo*

observations of the vascular anatomy of the external wall of the guinea pig cochlea. Usually however the *in vivo* studies do not emphasize anatomical findings and only give general remarks on this subject.

### *Similarities and differences between the guinea pig and man*

As is well known, the guinea pig cochlea has 4 turns and a relatively slender conical form while the human cochlea has  $2\frac{3}{4}$  turns and a much greater diameter in the basal turn than in the others.

The vascular arrangement is similar in the guinea pig and man (Fig. 84). The main arterial supply in both consists of an artery running spirally around the modiolus and radiating arterioles supplying the external wall and the spiral lamina. The capillary regions also largely resemble one another in the two species. All the spiral capillary vessels in the guinea pig cochlea can be identified in man, except the vessel of the scala vestibuli. The simplification toward the apex and the special arrangement at the basal end are also principally similar.

A difference is found in the distribution of the vestibulo-cochlear artery which supplies a larger proportion of the base in man. The appearance of the radiating arterioles in the modiolus is also different. In the guinea pig there are structures resembling spring-coils consisting of very tightly wound arterioles. In man the arterioles run markedly serpentine but do not appear as spring coils. The vessel of the basilar membrane, located under the tunnel of Corti, is more continuous in man than in the guinea pig where discontinuities are quite numerous, particularly apically. On the other hand, the vessel of the tympanic lip seems to be better defined in the guinea pig than in man. In addition, the stria vascularis is better developed at the basal end in the guinea pig than in the human cochlea. The course and distribution of the veins in the modiolus is also different. In the guinea pig there is only one vein running spirally around the modiolus. In man this vein ramifies to form two large veins with frequent variations in the course and distribution of their ramifications.

The description of the vascular anatomy of the cochlea in other mammals is in good accordance with the one found in the guinea pig and man (Table I).

### *Apex-base*

The greatest difference between the apex and the base is the increasing simplification of the vasculature in all areas apically. The dense complicated vascular arrangement in the base is replaced by sparsely distributed vessels, although the general arrangement is maintained to the apex. The simplification, however is particularly marked in the two vascular structures discussed below.

The breadth of the stria vascularis decreases considerably apically. Of the dense vascular meshwork in the basal turn, only one or two vessels running spirally for short distances are left in the apical turn in both the guinea pig and man. Further there is a marked reduction of the arterio-venous anastomoses externally to the stria vascularis. These constitute the majority of vessels in the external wall basally particularly in the guinea pig. Apically the branches

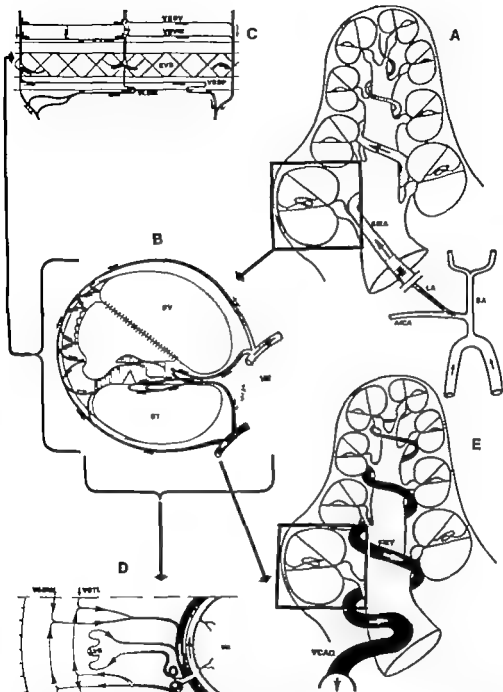


Fig 84 Composite schematic view of the cochlear vasculature with arrows indicating the direction of blood flow (veins solid, arteries unfilled).

A. Major arteries VA = vertebral artery BA = basilar artery AICA = anterior inferior cerebellar artery LA = labyrinthine artery SMA = spiral modiolus artery

B. Radial section of half turn (framed in A and E) SV = scala vestibuli, ST = scala tympani, N VIII = acoustic nerve. Cross-hatched areas are vascular

C. Radial section of the external wall. VSSV = vessel of the scala vestibuli, VSYM = vessel at the vestibular membrane, VSV = stria vascularis, VSSP = vessel of the spiral prominence, VLBM = encloses the basilar membrane.

D. Transverse section of the spiral lamina VSBM = vessel of the basilar membrane, VSTL = vessel of the tympanic lip, LV5 = limbus vessels, N VIII = acoustic nerve.

E. Major veins SkV = spiral modiolus vein, VCAQ = vein of the cochlear aqueduct.

from the radiating arterioles supply the spiral capillary systems before reaching the venous system. The rapid flow in these anastomoses has been observed *in vivo* and was increased experimentally by anoxia, increased CO<sub>2</sub>-tension pressor agents, acoustic stimuli and moderate hypothermia (Perlman & Kamura, 1955 a, b 1962 Perlman et al., 1959 a, b 1963 Nomura, 1961 Tsunoo & Perlman, 1964 1965) Weille (1955) considers the anastomoses to be of importance for the maintenance of a constant intracochlear temperature. The arterio-venous anastomoses thus may allow adjustment to circulation changes in the basal turn by shunting the blood past the capillaries in the stria vascularis and the other spirally running capillary systems.

However the apparently increasing sparseness apically of the vasculature has to be related to the decreasing volume of the turns. When this is done (see External Wall Comment) it appears that the actual apical simplification of the vasculature is not so pronounced. The most obvious change is then the decrease in the absolute number of arterio-venous anastomoses. This change probably admits fewer possibilities for adjustment to circulation variations apically than basally.

Not only the apical parts demonstrated a simplification of the vascular arrangement. This was also found at the *basal end* of the cochlea. Not all types of vessels are similarly affected by the simplification here. It is particularly the stria vascularis which is found to be reduced, in man often to the extent of being replaced by one single vessel.

The basal end is also interesting in being supplied and drained from two directions. Arterioles run obliquely over the scala vestibuli and anastomose with arterioles coming from the vestibulum. An interesting region not previously described appears in the external wall between the windows where the arterioles meet. In man the arterioles from both directions derive from the vestibular branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery. On its way to the vestibulum, radiating arterioles are given off over the scala vestibuli. Other radiating arterioles turn around the extreme basal end of the spiral lamina and reverse their direction toward the scala vestibuli. A similar arrangement is found with the venous system. Branches from the posterior vestibular vein accompany the radiating arterioles around the extreme basal end of the spiral lamina. They then connect with vessels in the external wall particularly the stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence.

As demonstrated (Bredberg, 1968), the development of the cochlea begins somewhat apically from the basal end and progresses simultaneously in both directions. This observation may account for the unique vascular arrangement at the basal end.

*Intralabyrinthine fluids**Perilymph*

The vessels surrounding the perilymphatic spaces in the *scala vestibuli* and the *scala tympani* are among the various sources suggested as the origin of perilymph. Perilymph has thus been considered to derive at least partly from the vessels in the *scala vestibuli* as an ultrafiltrate of plasma (Eichler 1892 Wittmaack, 1936 Mygind, 1945 1952 Altmann & Walther 1950 Graf & Poretta, 1950 Kley 1951 Seymour 1954 Naftalin & Harrison, 1958 Jako et al., 1959 Schreiner 1961 Maggio 1966 Schindler & Schnieder 1966). More specifically the vessel at the vestibular membrane has been suggested as this source (Mygind, 1948 Rüedi, 1951).

Since the circulation in the external wall of the *scala tympani* is venous, the collecting venules have been supposed to absorb perilymph (Wittmaack, 1936 Arvig 1951 Kley 1951 Svane-Knudsen 1958 Karikae et al. 1961 Rauch, 1964). Experiments with injected material have indicated that it is particularly the spirally running venules at the basilar membrane which take part in the fluid exchange (Altmann & Walther 1947 Svane-Knudsen, 1958). Perilymph secretion from both the *scala vestibuli* and the *scala tympani* has also been proposed (Eichler 1892 Naftalin & Harrison, 1958 Koburg & Plester 1962 Rauch, 1968).

Recently it has been demonstrated that there is a particular tissue resembling the plexus choroideus in the region of the "vascular spring-coils" in the *modioli*. This tissue may have a secretory function and take part in the formation of perilymph or its prestages (Balogh & Koburg 1965 Müsebeck, 1965 a, b Meyer zum Gottesberge & Koburg, 1968). The "vascular spring-coils" have also been considered to have a blood pressure regulating function (Schwalbe, 1887 Mygind, 1952) and may diminish the pulse wave (Levin, 1964). They are surrounded by perivascular fluid spaces which have been proposed to regulate their caliber (Mygind, 1952).

A transfer of perilymph from cerebrospinal fluid by *perineural* or *perovascular spaces* has been suggested (Kley 1951) but an absorption may also take place along these routes (Altmann & Walther 1950 Karikae et al., 1961).

On the basis of the findings in the present investigation the following comments can be made. In the *scala vestibuli* there is a capillary net and readily identifiable spiral vessels: the vessel of the *scala vestibuli* (guinea pig) and the vessel at the vestibular membrane (guinea pig and man). These vessels have been comparatively little noticed by previous authors. They are supplied by a large proportion of the radiating arterioles (guinea pig and man) and by collecting venules (man). These findings clearly indicate that there are definite possibilities for perilymph formation in the wall of the *scala vestibuli* and in particular in the region close to the attachment of the vestibular membrane.

In the *scala tympani* the circulation in the external wall is completely venous. This is in good agreement with the previously suggested absorption of perilymph



here. It is probable that the venules at the basilar membrane have a central role in this absorption

The "vascular spring-coils" in the modiolus consist of tightly coiled parts of the radiating arterioles. They are surrounded by circular smooth muscle cells and a longitudinal "elastica interna" internally (Schwalbe, 1887) or by sparse smooth muscle cells (Smith 1951). In man these vessels were considered to show about the same characteristics as those of the capillaries as their wall is thin, composed of a single endothelial tunic with very scarce smooth muscle cells and without elastic elements (Scuderi & del Bo 1952). The vessels are surrounded by abundant autonomic nerve fibers (Müsebeck & Mootz, 1966; Terayama et al., 1966).

The common type of vascular adjustment for controlling downstream pressures is produced by a narrowing of the vascular diameter rather than by changing vascular length, simply because the smooth muscles in most precapillary resistance vessels (arterioles) are nearly circular in arrangement. The curious and specific arrangement of the "vascular spring-coils" speaks in favor of a particular and specific function. The existence of innervated smooth muscles might indicate a regulating function, active or passive, of events in more peripheral capillary regions.

### *Endolymph*

The *stria vascularis* has long drawn attention as the presumed source of endolymph, of the oxygen supply to the organ of Corti, and of the generation and maintenance of the resting DC potential and the endocochlear potential. It is particularly the histological appearance and the high metabolic activity which support the hypothesis that it, at least to some extent, takes part in the formation of endolymph (Retzius, 1882; Shambaugh, 1906; Guild, 1927; Fieandt & Saxén 1937 a, Engström et al., 1955; Smith, 1957; Spoendlin, 1957; Rauch, 1963; Nakai, 1965). According to Borghesan (1957, 1967) the source of "crystalloids" is probably in the *stria vascularis* and of "plasma" in the spiral prominence. Some authors have proposed that both secretion and absorption may take place in the *stria vascularis* (Mygind, 1952; Naftalin & Harrison, 1958; Rauch, 1963; Nakai, 1965; Meyer zum Gottesberge et al., 1965; Rauch & Ruska, 1965; Maggio, 1966; Kikuchi & Hilding, 1966; Hinojosa & Rodriguez Echandia, 1966). The particularly high mitochondrial content in the *stria vascularis* indicates a high rate of oxidative metabolism and is interpreted as supporting the hypothesis of endolymph formation here (Engström et al. 1955; Chou & Rodgers, 1962; Nakai, 1965; Rauch & Ruska, 1965; Hinojosa & Rodriguez Echandia, 1966; Matschinsky & Thalmann, 1967; Nakai & Hilding, 1968).

Opinions have been divergent concerning the function of the *spiral prominence*. A secretory function in the adult (Borghesan, 1957, 1967) or in the embryo (Camino & Grisanti, 1967) has been proposed. A resorptive function has been suggested by Yamamoto & Nakai (1964) and both secretion and absorption by Kikuchi & Hilding (1966).

The *external spiral sulcus* is situated immediately below the spiral prominence. This region has been considered to have a secretory function (Shambaugh, 1909 Borghesan, 1965 a, b Lawrence, 1965) but has particularly been associated with absorption (Ficandti & Saxén, 1937 b, Altmann & Walther 1950 Saxén, 1951 Arnvig, 1951 Kley 1951 Mygind, 1952 Seymour 1954 Yamamoto & Nakai, 1964)

The *spiral limbus* has been little discussed in the formation and absorption of endolymph. An absorbing function has been suggested (Altmann & Walther 1947 1950 Borghesan, 1957 1967 Camino & Grisanti, 1967) The experiments of Voldrich (1967) however indicate that this region may take part in the formation of endolymph. The early and rich vascularization of the spiral limbus, found already in the embryo was emphasized by Camino & Grisanti (1967)

The vascular supply to the walls of the scala media make it the most vascularized of the scalas. The formation and absorption of endolymph (total volume 3—5 mm<sup>3</sup>) and the metabolic processes in the scala media thus apparently require a larger blood supply than that demanded by functions associated with perilymph (total volume 12—16 mm<sup>3</sup>)

The present investigation cannot answer the difficult question of which regions are responsible for formation and absorption of endolymph in the scala media. From the vascular viewpoint the following findings may be of interest. The regions which probably are involved in the formation and absorption of endolymph are the stria vascularis, the spiral prominence, the external spiral sulcus and the spiral limbus.

The *stria vascularis* is supplied and drained by comparatively few but large radiating arterioles and collecting venules. It is a separate vascular system connecting only with these arterioles and venules. The breadth of the stria vascularis decreases markedly apically but the length/tissue area of the capillaries is similar in the three basal turns in spite of the seemingly increasing sparseness toward the apex. It is furthermore difficult to inject with contrast which gives the impression that the contrast is predominantly shunted over to the venules through the arterio-venous anastomoses externally to the stria vascularis.

Similarly to the stria vascularis, the vessel of the spiral prominence only connects with few but large radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli and collecting venules in the scala tympani. The angles at the ramifications of the arterioles and venules to the vessel of the spiral prominence are nearly 90 degrees. There are no vascular connections with the stria vascularis. These facts may indicate separate and specific functions for the stria vascularis and the vessel of the spiral prominence.

The present investigation demonstrated that the venules in the region of the *external spiral sulcus* assume a complicated appearance, making loops before turning around the attachment of the basilar membrane. Recent studies with electron microscopy (Engström, 1968) have shown long extensions from the cells in the external spiral sulcus to adjacent blood vessels, which is in good agreement with the proposed absorbing function of the venules in this region.

In comparison with the stria vascularis, the *spiral limbus* has been very little

1967) This was interpreted as supporting the hypothesis that sodium, potassium, and fluid may be actively transported in the region of the organ of Corti

Data have also been obtained from histopathological investigation of the human cochlear vessels. Schuknecht & Igarashi (1964) found stria degeneration without simultaneous changes in the organ of Corti.

The accumulated evidence thus suggests that the vessel of the basilar membrane and the vessel of the tympanic lip are of definite importance for the maintenance of normal function in the organ of Corti and probably also for the embryological development of this organ. In the discussion of the oxygen supply to the organ of Corti it is surprising how seldom other vessels than the stria vascularis have been taken into account. However the limbus vessels, the vessel of the basilar membrane and the vessel of the tympanic lip are all situated closer to the organ of Corti than the stria vascularis. Rauch (1966, 1968) has further suggested that the organ of Corti may be supplied by a perineural route.

In the present investigation it was demonstrated that the vessel of the basilar membrane is supplied by 25 % and the vessel of the tympanic lip by 75 % of the radiating vessels in the spiral lamina. These figures may indicate that the latter vessel plays a relatively larger role. The capillary region of the spiral limbus is one of the few regions which have not been discussed at all in this problem, even though it should be emphasized that it is highly vascularized similarly to the stria vascularis.

### *Clinical aspects*

Attempts are constantly made to explain clinical hearing disorders on the basis of cochlear vascular pathology. Many of these suggestions are without adequate morphological and physiological foundation. Among other reasons, this has been due to a definite lack of detailed information on the vascular anatomy.

It is widely suggested today that the cochlear vessels may play an important role in such pathological conditions as congenital and hereditary deafness, presbycusis, sudden deafness, viral labyrinthitis and Ménière's disease. It was not within the scope of the present investigation to attempt to explain these disorders on the basis of the vascular anatomy. However some aspects will be presented on the basis of the findings in the present investigation.

#### *A. General remarks on circulation disturbances*

Since rich anastomosing possibilities exist in a spiral direction, all vascularized parts of the cochlea probably have a more or less constant circulation even in event of small peripheral flow disturbances. This suggests that higher degrees of perceptive hearing impairments of vascular origin must either be due to extensive vascular injuries peripherally in the capillary regions, or due to injuries in the larger vessels in the modiolus or in the inner acoustic meatus. A definite interruption of the circulation in the end arteries, the labyrinthine or the common cochlear arteries must result in deleterious consequences (Kimura & Perlman, 1958). On the other hand, interruption of the circulation in the

vestibulo-cochlear or spiral modiolar arteries need not lead to serious impairment since these vessels in man anastomose with one another in the basal turn. Individuals in which the spiral modiolar artery is missing and replaced by the cochlear branch of the vestibulo-cochlear artery may be more vulnerable to vascular disorders in the cochlea.

The high frequency of high tone loss of different etiology suggests that the most vulnerable parts of the cochlea are situated within the areas supplied by the vestibulo-cochlear artery and in particular the vestibular branch.

Small injuries peripherally i.e. in single radiating arterioles or collecting venules will probably not result in a clinically detectable change of hearing due to good anastomosing possibilities in a spiral direction. In the human cochlea there are also relatively good alternative pathways for the blood in case of circulation interruption in either of the spiral veins. However an interruption of the common modiolar vein or the vein of the cochlear aqueduct must have a very severe effect upon cochlear circulation. In the guinea pig arterial obstruction of the labyrinthine artery led to much more severe and rapid damage than venous obstruction of the vein of the cochlear aqueduct (Kumura & Perlman, 1956, 1958 Perlman & Kumura, 1957)

#### *B. Auditory function in diabetics*

Diabetes mellitus is a logical choice for investigation of a common disease which is known to be accompanied by vascular changes. It is well known that diabetes mellitus, particularly in young individuals, gradually leads to diabetic angiopathy. These changes can be demonstrated in most organs and have also been observed in the cochlea (Jørgensen, 1962 Costa, 1967). Widespread vascular changes would be expected to influence even cochlear vessels with a resulting perceptive hearing loss. Such hearing impairments have previously often been demonstrated in diabetics by audiological examinations (Camisasca, 1950 Vigi, 1950 Marullo 1950 Borruk et al., 1956 Ancona, 1956 Profazio & Baravelli, 1959 Jørgensen & Buch, 1961 Dietzel, 1964)

Recently a thorough investigation of young diabetics surprisingly revealed that the auditory function was well preserved when compared to a corresponding non-diabetic material (Axelsson & Fagerberg, 1968). This then can only be explained by a patchy distribution of the diabetic changes in the cochlear vessels where the rich vascular supply peripherally may leave many anastomosing pathways open.

#### *C. Noise induced hearing loss*

It has been demonstrated that noise decreases oxygen tension in the scala media (Misrahy et al. 1958 Koide et al., 1960). It has also been demonstrated that the cochlea is more vulnerable to noise during simultaneous lack of oxygen (Tommdorf et al. 1955 Beck & Beckert, 1958 Koide et al., 1960). As is well known, different forms of noise and also several other causes of injury often result in an audiometric high tone loss. The basal turn of the cochlea thus would appear

to be most vulnerable. This has been confirmed recently by Bredberg (1968) who, however could also demonstrate a rather constant occurrence of apical lesions. It has further been demonstrated that the oxygen consumption of the stria vascularis is greatest in the base (Hoide et al., 1964 Meyer zum Gottesberge et al., 1965 Rauch, 1966 Mizukoshi & Daly 1967) According to Falbe-Hansen & Thomsen (1963) the ability to carry out anaerobic metabolism is poorest developed in the base and the organ of Corti is most susceptible to "all kinds of actions"

It would thus appear that the reason for the common injuries due to noise in the basal turn can be the high oxygen consumption and the poor anaerobic metabolism (Conti & Borgo 1964) From the vascular anatomical point of view there is no apparent reason why the basal turn should be more vulnerable than the others, regardless of where the organ of Corti gets its oxygen supply

### D Otosclerosis

The vascular anatomy of the basal end corresponding to the region of the windows and the promontorium is of particular interest with regard to otosclerosis. The presence of perceptive hearing loss in otosclerosis has been questioned and has been demonstrated to be of the same frequency as in a general population (Glorig & Gallo 1962) However most authors consider that the conductive hearing loss may be accompanied by a perceptive hearing impairment (Carhart, 1966) This has been ascribed in general to cochlear involvement. Many findings indicate the central role of the cochlear vessels in these cases and the following explanations for the perceptive deafness have been suggested:

- 1 Pathological connections between the vessels of the membranous cochlea with those in the otosclerotic foci (Rüedi, 1965 Altmann et al., 1966 Rüedi & Spoendlin, 1966 Lanthicum, 1966)

- 2 Atrophic changes in the spiral ligament due to nearby otosclerosis of the cochlear capsula (Benitez & Schuknecht, 1962 Schuknecht & Igarashi 1964 Schuknecht & Gross, 1966 Lindsay & Beal 1966 Nager 1966)

- 3 Changes in the stria vascularis caused by the two above-mentioned processes with resulting secondary changes in the endolymph (Rüedi, 1964 1965 Altmann et al., 1966)

- 4 Chemical alterations of the intralabyrinthine fluids by substances released from the otosclerotic process (Rüedi, 1965 1966 Schindler et al., 1965 Altmann et al., 1966 Rüedi & Spoendlin, 1966)

- 5 Direct ingrowth of the otosclerotic process in the scala tympani (Nager & Fraser 1938 Nylén, 1949 Rüedi, 1961 1962 1964)

- 6 Vascular stasis by the influence of the otosclerotic process on nearby vessels (Rüedi, 1968)

The following findings of the present investigation are of interest concerning these problems. The basal end is comparatively poorly vascularized, especially the stria vascularis. The very nearby vessels to the oval window are the radiating arterioles running from two directions and anastomosing in this region. An

extension of the disease or the influence of stapes surgery on these arterioles may probably affect the blood supply. Furthermore, in more extensive cases of cochlear ossosclerosis the possibility exists that the larger arterioles and veins might be affected.

#### *Concluding remarks*

On the basis of the present investigation the following research areas seem to deserve the most emphasis in the future:

a. More post mortem investigations of the vascular anatomy with the present and other methods in cases with known hearing disorders and correlation to audiological examinations.

b. Examination of all vascular regions in the cochlea with the aid of electron microscopy for investigation of the vascular walls. These investigations may give important information on the role of the different vessels in the formation and absorption of the intralabyrinthine fluids.

c. Further development of the technique for *in vivo* observation of cochlear vessels under normal and induced pathological conditions.

## D SUMMARY AND CONCLUSIONS

1 A survey of the literature on the vascular anatomy of the guinea pig and human cochlea is presented as well as a survey of the methods adopted for the visualization of the cochlear vessels. The survey demonstrates that the subject has received much attention. There are, however, several conflicting points both concerning the larger vessels and the capillary regions. The apical and basal ends of the cochlea have been comparatively little studied. Many of the divergent opinions might have been due to nomenclature differences.

2. The present investigation deals with the vascular anatomy of the guinea pig and man. The cochlear vessels were visualized by a technique similar to previously used methods. The method includes the following steps: injection of contrast medium (Berlin blue), decalcification, microdissection of all parts of the membranous cochlea under the stereo-microscope and documentation of the findings with the aid of the photo-microscope. The different steps in the preparation have been shortened and the time-consuming embedding step has been eliminated. Whole cochleas as well as dissected-out pieces have been stored in glycerin, a medium in which the elasticity of the membranous cochlea is well preserved and further preparation is possible.

The description of the vascular anatomy in the cochlea has been separated into four regions: the modiolus, the spiral lamina, the external wall and the basal end. The larger vessels and the capillary regions in these areas are described. Particular emphasis is placed upon detailed descriptions of all capillary regions, especially the hitherto largely ignored apical parts and the basal end. The findings are presented as photomicrographs of whole cochleas and dissected-out pieces. The vascular arrangement of the different areas is presented as simple schematic drawings. Previously unavailable measurements of vascular dimensions are given. Comparisons are made between the findings in the guinea pig and man and between the findings in basal and apical parts of the cochlea. In general the commonly used vascular nomenclature has been employed. Previously undescribed vessels have been named, and more descriptive and specific names have been suggested for certain known vessels.

3 The vascular anatomy of the cochlea in the guinea pig and man is principally similar, particularly in the capillary regions. The arterial blood supply to the cochlea is maintained by an artery running spirally around the modiolus (Fig. 84 A). Arterioles leave the artery running centrifugally and radiate both over the scala vestibuli and over the spiral lamina, ramifying several times. The spiral capillary systems in the external wall and in the spiral lamina are drained by centripetally radiating collecting venules which empty into one or two veins running spirally around the modiolus. In man the veins take on a much more complicated and varied appearance than in the guinea pig.

In the external wall the arrangement is mainly apico-basal over the radiating arterioles in the scala vestibuli and the collecting venules in the scala tympani which connect with one another by arterio-venous anastomoses (Fig. 84 B, C). In the basal turn these anastomoses are frequent, creating possibilities for

shunting the blood past the capillary regions. These spiral capillary systems run at right angles to the arterioles and venules. This suggests that the blood flow in the spiral vessels is much slower than in the radiating arterioles and the collecting venules. This has also been confirmed by direct observation.

In the scala vestibuli there are one or two spiral capillary vessels and a sparse capillary net, all lying close to the attachment of the vestibular membrane. In the scala media there is a spirally running dense vascular net, the stria vascularis, and a spirally running capillary vessel in the spiral prominence. Both are supplied and drained by comparatively few but large vessels. The collecting venules in the scala tympani form a spiral vessel below the attachment of the basilar membrane.

In the spiral lamina the arrangement is arcadic since the radiating arterioles and collecting venules derive from the same central direction and connect to the spiral vessels at right angles (Fig. 84 B-D). These arterioles and venules constitute the pillars of the arcades, and the vessel of the basilar membrane, the vessel of the tympanic lip and the limbus vessels constitute the bow of the arcades.

There are additional capillary networks in the spiral ganglion, the acoustic nerve, and in the modiolus wall which, however, lack the same regular pattern.

The basal end is supplied by branches coming from two directions, i.e. arterioles radiating over the scala vestibuli anastomose with arterioles which turn around the basal end of the spiral lamina and reverse their direction apically (Fig. 78). An anastomosing net is formed where the arterioles connect. The arterioles are accompanied around the basal end by venules which form a capillary net at the extreme basal end and connect with vessels in the external wall.

Apical parts of the cochlea are distinguished by a marked simplification of the vascular arrangement. However this simplification is not so apparent when related to the correspondingly decreasing volume.

Due to the pattern of ramification, the vascular system of the cochlea is segmentally arranged, resulting in good anastomosing possibilities in a spiral direction. Almost all parts of the cochlea are richly supplied with vessels in both the guinea pig and man. The vestibular and tectorial membranes and the peripheral portion of the basilar membrane in both species are avascular. In the present investigation occasional connections between the vessels of the spiral lamina and those in the external wall have been demonstrated in man. The vascular systems of these regions are otherwise completely separated from one another.

Suggestions are made concerning the possible role of the cochlear vessels in cochlear physiology e.g. in the secretion and absorption of intralabyrinthine fluids and in the oxygen supply to the organ of Corti. Suggestions are also made regarding the possible role of the vessels in certain clinical disorders of the cochlea.



### *Acknowledgements*

The present investigation was carried out in the Ear Nose and Throat Department, Sahlgrenska Hospital University of Göteborg. The animal experiments were performed in the Department of Histology and the human cadaver preparations in the Department of Pathology.

The author would like to express his gratitude to Professor Gösta Herberts, head of the ENT Department, for his kind supervision stimulating discussions and constant encouragement. The author also wishes to express his debt to Professor Hans Engström for providing the original inspiration for this work for the helpful suggestions from his extensive knowledge of the inner ear and for much material aid. Associate professor Olle Hallén's tireless criticism and encouragement have been of great help during the entire project. Associate professor Hans Röckert contributed to valuable discussions of the microangiographic techniques as well as the later phases of the work. Professor Bo-Eric Ingelmark is gratefully acknowledged for all his help with nomenclature problems. Associate professor Per Ingvar Brånemark and Dr. Orosimbo Costa provided expert advice on angiologic problems.

The author wishes also to express his appreciation to Docent Uno Zachrisson and Fil. Kand. Ulf Runze for their generous help with the statistical treatment of the results. Mrs. Inga Britt Christoffersson and Mrs. Ulla Larsson offered excellent technical assistance during the animal experiments. Mr. Georg Borge Lind and Mr. Uno Glans offered the same skilful assistance in the human preparations. To Anton Andersson, Research Engineer, I wish to express my thanks for helpful technical cooperation during the entire work. The talented artistic assistance of Miss Maria Huhta deserves credit for the quality of the schematic drawings. The author wishes to thank Mr. Allen Johnson, B. S., for constructive discussions and correction of the English text.

This study has been supported in part by the Physiological Psychology Branch, Office of Naval Research, Washington D. C., under contracts N62558-4264 and F61052-67 C 0090 with H. Engström by the Faculty of Medicine, University of Göteborg and by AB Hässle.

### *Zusammenfassung und Schlusssatz*

1 Die Literatur der Gefässanatomie der Cochlea, sowie der bei der Darstellung der Cochleagefässe von Meerschweinchen und Homo angewandten Methoden wird zusammengefasst. Es geht aus diesem Überblick hervor dass diese Fragen grosse Beachtung gefunden haben. Es bestehen doch mehrere gegensätzliche Auffassungen sowohl im Hinblick auf die grösseren Gefässe, als auch auf die Kapillargebiete Sowohl die apikalen als auch die basalen Abschnitte der Cochlea sind verhältnismässig wenig untersucht worden Mehrere der gegensätzlichen Auffassungen können auf unterschiedliche Nomenklatur zurückgeführt werden

2. Die vorliegende Untersuchung beschäftigt sich mit der Gefässanatomie des Meerschweinchens und des Menschen. Die Cochleagefässe wurden durch eine, einer früher angewandten Methode ähnlichen Technik dargestellt. Die Methode besteht aus folgenden Momenten Injektion von Kontrastmittel (Berliner Blau) Entkalkung, Mikropräparation sämtlicher Abschnitte der membranösen Cochlea unter dem Stereomikroskop, sowie Darstellung der Befunde mit Hilfe des Photomikroskopes. Die verschiedenen Momente des Verfahrens sind abgekürzt worden, und das zeitraubende Einbettungsmoment wurde ausgeschaltet. Sowohl ganze als auch präparierte Teile der Cochlea wurden in Glycerin verwahrt, einer Substanz, die die Elastizität der membranösen Cochlea gut erhält und damit weitere Präparationen ermöglicht.

Die Beschreibung der Gefässanatomie der Cochlea wurde in vier Abschnitte aufgeteilt: der Modiolus, die Lamina spiralis, die Aussenwand und die basale Aussenschleife. Sowohl die grösseren Gefässe, als auch die Kapillargebiete in diesen Abschnitten wurden beschrieben. Besondere Aufmerksamkeit wurde der ausführlichen Beschreibung aller Kapillargebiete gewidmet, besonders der bisher im allgemeinen wenig beachteten apikalen Abschnitte und der basalen Aussenschleife. Die Befunde wurden als Mikrophotographien von ganzen oder präparierten Cochleateilen präsentiert. Die grundsätzlichen Gefässanordnungen der verschiedenen Abschnitte wurden durch einfache schematische Darstellungen erklärt. Bisher unzugängliche Werte der Gefässausdehnung und -masse wurden vermittelt. Vergleiche zwischen den Befunden am Meerschweinchen und am Menschen, sowie zwischen den basalen und apikalen Abschnitten der Cochlea wurden angestellt. Es wurde hauptsächlich die allgemein übliche Gefässnomenklatur angewandt. Bisher nicht beschriebene Gefässe wurden benannt. Genauere und mehr bezeichnende Namen wurden für gewisse Gefässe vorgeschlagen

3 Die Gefässanatomie der Cochlea des Meerschweinchens stimmt, besonders in den Kapillargebieten, im Wesentlichen mit der des Menschen überein. Die arterielle Blutversorgung der Cochlea wird hauptsächlich durch eine, um den Modiolus verlaufende Arterie aufrechterhalten (Fig 84 A). Arteriole gehen in zentrifugaler Richtung von ihr aus und verlaufen mit mehreren Verästelungen sowohl über die Scala vestibuli als auch über die Lamina spiralis. Die spiral verlaufenden Kapillargefässe der Aussenwand und der Lamina spiralis werden durch in zentraler Richtung verlaufende Sammelvenolen drainiert, die sich in

*Acknowledgements*

The present investigation was carried out in the Ear Nose and Throat Department, Sahlgrenska Hospital, University of Göteborg. The animal experiments were performed in the Department of Histology and the human cadaver preparations in the Department of Pathology.

The author would like to express his gratitude to Professor Gösta Herberts, head of the ENT Department, for his kind supervision, stimulating discussions and constant encouragement. The author also wishes to express his debt to Professor Hans Engström for providing the original inspiration for this work for the helpful suggestions from his extensive knowledge of the inner ear and for much material aid. Associate professor Olle Hallén's tireless criticism and encouragement have been of great help during the entire project. Associate professor Hans Röckert contributed to valuable discussions of the microangiographic techniques as well as the later phases of the work. Professor Bo-Eric Ingelmark is gratefully acknowledged for all his help with nomenclature problems. Associate professor Per Ingvar Brånemark and Dr. Orozimbo Costa provided expert advice on angiologic problems.

The author wishes also to express his appreciation to Docent Uno Zachrisson and Fil. Kand. Ulf Runze for their generous help with the statistical treatment of the results. Mrs. Inga Britt Christofferson and Mrs. Ulla Larsson offered excellent technical assistance during the animal experiments. Mr. Georg Borge-lind and Mr. Uno Glans offered the same skilful assistance in the human preparations. To Anton Andersson, Research Engineer I wish to express my thanks for helpful technical cooperation during the entire work. The talented artistic assistance of Miss Maria Huhta deserves credit for the quality of the schematic drawings. The author wishes to thank Mr. Allen Johnson, B. Sc., for constructive discussions and correction of the English text.

This study has been supported in part by the Physiological Psychology Branch, Office of Naval Research Washington D. C., under contracts N62558-4264 and F61052-67 C 0090 with H. Engström by the Faculty of Medicine, University of Göteborg and by AB Hassle.

Menschen ohne Gefäße In der vorliegenden Arbeit konnten hin und wieder auftretende Verbindungen zwischen den Gefäßen der Lamina spiralis und der Aussenwand beim Menschen nachgewiesen werden. Die Gefäßsysteme dieser Abschnitte sind im übrigen völlig voneinander getrennt.

Vermutungen werden angestellt teils über die mögliche Bedeutung der Cochlea-gefäße für die Phynologie der Cochlea, beispielsweise bei der Ausscheidung und Aufnahme von Perilymphe und Endolymphe und für die Sauerstoffversorgung des Cortischen Organs, teils über die mögliche Bedeutung der Gefäße bei einigen klinischen Störungen der Cochlea angestellt.

## TABLE VIII

*Present and previous nomenclature<sup>1</sup>**Arterial system, guinea pig and man.*

- |       |  |   |
|-------|--|---|
| 1     | Present<br>nomenclature:   | <i>Basilar artery A. basilaris</i>  |
| <hr/> |  |   |
| 2     | Present<br>nomenclature:<br><br>Previous<br>synonymous<br>nomenclature<br><br>Previous<br>different<br>nomenclature  | <i>Anterior inferior cerebellar artery A. cerebelli inferior anterior A. cerebellare anteriore inferiore</i><br><br>Stopford, 1913; Nabeya, 1923 Watt & McKillop, 1933; Sunderland, 1943; Scuderi & del Bo, 1952; Nager 1955 Beckert, 1962; Matson & Cretton, 1963; Levin, 1964; Bernstein & Silverstein (cat) 1966.<br><br><i>A. audiotra interna</i> Eichler 1892; Siebenmann, 1894   |
| <hr/> |  |   |
| 3     | Present<br>nomenclature:<br><br>Previous<br>synonymous<br>nomenclature:<br><br>Previous<br>different<br>nomenclature | <i>Labyrinthine artery, A. labyrinthica, A. labyrinthica Aa. labyrinthicae</i><br><br>Siebenmann, 1894 Shambough (embryo pig), 1903 Nabeya, 1923; Smith, 1951; Nager 1955; Kellner & Richter 1961; Beckert, 1962; Megighian & Giacomelli, 1962 Levin, 1964; Wassenfeld & Röhner, 1964 Williams, 1965<br><br><i>Internal auditory artery A. auditiva A. auditiva interna, Artère auditive interne</i> Engwilsche <i>A. auditiva interna</i> ; Toldt, 1884 Eichler 1892 Siebenmann, 1894; Stopford, 1913 Watt & McKillop, 1933; Sunderland, 1943 Perlman & Kumura, 1955; Nager 1955; Naumann et al., 1958; Perlman et al., 1959; Bonura & de Stefano, 1961; Charachon, 1961; Megighian & Giacomelli, 1962; Matson & Cretton, 1963 Alford et al., 1965 Terayama, 1966. |
| <hr/> |  |   |
| 4     | Present<br>nomenclature:<br><br>Previous<br>synonymous<br>nomenclature   | <i>Common cochlear artery A. cochleae communis A. cochlearis communis, Artère cochlaire commune</i><br><br>Siebenmann, 1894; Ami (dog, rat), 1908; Nabeya, 1923; Smith, 1951; Charachon, 1961 Levin, 1964   |
| <hr/> |  |   |
| 5     | Present<br>nomenclature:<br><br>Previous<br>synonymous<br>nomenclature<br><br>Previous<br>different<br>nomenclature  | <i>Vestibulo-cochlear artery A. vestibulo-cochlearis Artère vestibulo-cochlaire A. cocleo-vestibolare</i><br><br>Siebenmann, 1894; Ami (dog, rat), 1908 Nabeya (man), 1923; Scuderi & del Bo, 1952 Kellner & Richter 1961 Charachon, 1961 Megighian & Giacomelli, 1962; Levin, 1964<br><br><i>A. vestibuli posterior</i> Nabeya (guinea pig), 1923<br><i>The basal cochlear artery</i> Bernstein & Silverstein (cat), 1966.   |

<sup>1</sup>) The names in present nomenclature are the ones used in the present investigation in English followed by the ones in Latin and by previous authors suggested synonymous names in German, French, and Italian.

6. Present nomenclature: *Spiral modiolus artery A. spiralis modiolus*  
 Previous synonyms nomenclature: Introduced in the present investigation.  
 Previous different nomenclature: The cochlear artery *A. cochleae* Die Schneckenerterie *A. cochlearis, A. cochleae propria* Boettcher 1887 Eichler 1892 Siebenmann, 1894; Asai (dog, rat), 1908; Nabeya, 1923 Smith, 1951 Scuderi & del Bo, 1952 Perlman & Kimura, 1955 1962 Nomann et al., 1958; Charachon, 1961; Illig, 1961; Megighian & Giacomelli, 1962; Maroon & Creston, 1963 Wüstenfeld & Kühnert, 1964; Levin, 1964 Muesebeck, 1965 Muesebeck & Mootz, 1966; Lawrence, 1966 Terayama, 1966  
 The major cochlear artery Berenstein & Silvestri (cat) 1966.  
*A. spirale* Bonaccorsi & Sambuco, 1964

7. Present nomenclature: *Radiating arterioles Arterioles adiales*  
 Previous synonyms nomenclature: Smith, 1951 1954; Perlman et al., 1954; Perlman & Kimura, 1955 1962; Nomann et al., 1958 Kirikae et al., 1961; Nomura, 1961; Tamoo & Perlman, 1964; Lawrence, 1966.  
 Previous different nomenclature: Radiating arteries, Arteries adiales Shambaugh (embryo pig), 1903; Nabeya (guinea pig), 1923; Charachon, 1961  
 Radiating branches Nabeya (man), 1923  
 Radiating arterial branches Nabeya (man), 1923  
 Arterioles Asai (dog, rat), 1908 Mygind, 1948 Smith, 1954 Welle et al., 1954; Wüstenfeld & Kühnert, 1964 Lawrence, 1966  
 Vasa radialis arteriosi, Arteries adiales Arterial radiale Scuderi & del Bo, 1952; Bonaccorsi & Sambuco, 1964  
 Radial arterioles Maroon & Creston, 1963

# Venous system, guinea pig and man.

1. Present nomenclature: *Vein of the cochlear aqueduct V. aqueductus cochleae Schneckenaquiductvene* *Vein der Schneckenhörnerleitung*.  
 Previous synonyms nomenclature: Hyrd, 1845 Eichler 1892; Siebenmann, 1894; Asai (dog, rat) 1908; Tomendorf et al., 1962 Levin, 1964; Tamoo & Perlman, 1964 1965  
 Previous different nomenclature: *V. canaliculi cochleae* Shambaugh (embryo pig) 1903; Nabeya, 1923; Smith, 1951 1954 Karlner & Richter 1961; Amos, 1963  
*Inferior cochlear vein* Perlman, 1952; Kimura & Perlman, 1956, 1958 Perlman et al., 1959 Griffith, 1961; Tomendorf et al., 1962; Schuknecht & El Seifi, 1963  
*Schneckenhörn* Eichler 1892.  
*V. spiralis inferior* Illig, 1961  
*V. peralis interossea* Mygind, 1948

# Guinea pig.

2. Present nomenclature: *Spiral modiolus vein V. peralis modiolus*  
 Previous synonyms nomenclature: Schwalbe, 1887 Wüstenfeld & Kühnert, 1964  
 Previous different nomenclature: *V. spiralis posterior* Shambaugh (embryo pig) 1903; Asai (dog, rat), 1908; Nabeya, 1923; Smith, 1951, 1954; Kimura & Perlman, 1956 Perlman & Kimura, 1957; Kirikae et al., 1961; Bonaccorsi & Sambuco, 1964; Tamoo & Perlman, 1964; Muesebeck, 1963; Muesebeck & Mootz, 1966; Terayama, 1966

## Man.

- 3 Present nomenclature: *Common nodular vein V nodialis communis*.  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Introduced in the present investigation.  
Previous different nomenclature: *V spiralis posterior* Nabeya, 1923
- 
- 4 Present nomenclature: *Vein of the scala tympani V scalae tympani*  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Introduced in the present investigation.  
Previous different nomenclature: *Hintere Spiralkvene V spiralis posterior* Siebenmann, 1894; Nabeya, 1923; Scuderi & del Bo, 1952; Griffith, 1961; Levin, 1964; Maggio, 1966.  
*Spiral vein V spiralis* Arnvig, 1951; Kley 1951
- 
- 5 Present nomenclature: *Vein of the scala vestibuli, V scalae vestibuli*.  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Introduced in the present investigation.  
Previous different nomenclature: *V spiralis anterior Vordere Spiralkvene V spirale anteriore* Siebenmann, 1923; Nabeya, 1923; Scuderi & del Bo, 1952; Griffith, 1961; Levin, 1964; Maggio, 1966.
- 
- 6 Present nomenclature: *Vein of the round window V fenestras cochleae*  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Nabeya, 1923  
Previous different nomenclature: *Vein of the upper margin of fenestrae cochleae* Shambaugh (embryo pig), 1903
- 
- 7 Present nomenclature: *Vein of the spiral lamina V laminae spiralis, Spiralblattroene V della lamina spirale*  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Siebenmann, 1894; Asai (dog, rat), 1908; Nabeya, 1923; Scuderi & del Bo, 1952; Bonaccorsi & Sambuco, 1964
- 
- 8 Present nomenclature: *Collecting venules, Venulae collectae*  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Smith (guinea pig), 1951; Seymour 1954; Weille et al., 1954; Perlman & Kimura, 1955; Naumann et al., 1958; Perlman et al., 1959; Kirikae et al., 1961; Bonaccorsi & Sambuco, 1964; Terayama, 1966; Maggio, 1966.  
Previous different nomenclature: *Collecting vein* Perlman & Kimura, 1955  
*Venules* Myrland, 1948; Smith (cat), 1954; Perlman & Kimura, 1955; Naumann, 1961; Tsumoto & Perlman, 1964  
*Vv adiales Venues radiales* Nabeya, 1923; Charachon, 1961  
*Vasi adiales venosi Vene radiale* Scuderi & del Bo, 1952.

## Capillary regions, External wall, Scala vestibuli.

- 1 Present nomenclature: *Radiating arterioles* See *modioli*
- 
2. Present nomenclature: *Vessel of the scala vestibuli* *Vas scalae vestibuli*.  
Previous synonymous: Introduced in the present investigation.
- 
- 3 Present nomenclature: *Vessel of the vestibular membrane* *Vas membranae vestibularis*.  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Introduced in the present investigation.

## Scala media.

- 1 Present nomenclature: *Stria vascularis*.  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Generally accepted.  
Previous different nomenclature: *The vascular stria* *Saén*, 1951
- 
2. Present nomenclature: *Vessel of the spiral prominence* *Vas promontoriae spiralis*.  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Perlman & Kimura, 1955; Wüstenfeld & Kühnert, 1964  
*The spiral prominence vessel*, *Vas promontoriae*, *Vas prominence* Hensen, 1871; Waldeyer 1872 Toldt, 1884 Saxén, 1951; Smith (guinea pig), 1951; Perlman & Kimura, 1955; Bonaccorsi & Sambuco, 1964 Terayama, 1966.  
*Network of the spiral prominence*, *The blood vessel under the spiral prominence* *The vessels in the spiral prominence* *The vessels of the spiral prominence* *Gefäß der Promontoria spiralis*, *Spiralgefäß der Promontoria spiralis*, *Vasi della promontoria spirale* *Réseau du bourrelet spiral*.  
*Asai* (dog, rat), 1908; Scuderi & del Bo, 1952 Smith (man), 1954; Perlman & Kimura, 1955; Naumann et al., 1958; Charachon, 1961; Nomura, 1961
- 
- 3 Present nomenclature: *Arterio-venous anastomoses* *Anastomoses artério-veineuses*.  
Previous synonymous nomenclature: Perlman & Kimura, 1955; Charachon, 1961; Nomura, 1961; Irwin et al., 1964  
*Straight vessel in the thicker part of the spiral ligament* *Saikh*, 1951 1954  
*Arteriovenous arcades*, *Arteriovenosum* *Arbuden* Weille et al., 1954; Smith (man), 1954 Perlman & Kimura, 1955 1957; Perlman et al., 1959; Charachon, 1961; Illig, 1961 Bonaccorsi & Sambuco, 1964; Trunco & Perlman, 1964  
*Arctus anastomotiche arterio-venose* Agazzi, 1948; Scuderi & del Bo, 1952  
*Arteriovenous shunt*. Smith, 1954 Perlman & Kimura, 1955  
*Arterial venous shunt*. Matton & Creton, 1963

## Scala tympani.

- 1 Present nomenclature: *Collecting venules*. See *Modioli*.



2. Present nomenclature: *Venules of the basilar membrane Venules membranae basilaris.*  
 Previous synonymous nomenclature: Introduced in the present investigation.  
 Previous different nomenclature: *A spiral vessel in the crest of the spiral ligament* Smith (man), 1954  
*Vas ala-angularis* Svane-Knøden, 1958  
*Spiralgfässe der Crista basilaris* Asai (dog, rat), 1908
- 
- Spiral lamina.
1. Present nomenclature: *The vessel of the basilar membrane Vas membranae basilaris*  
 Previous synonymous nomenclature: Introduced in the present investigation.  
 Previous different nomenclature: *Spiral vessel, Vas spiralis, Vaisseau spiral* Kölliker 1854; Gortstein, 1871  
 Waldeyer, 1872; Toldt, 1884; Häginsky 1886 Boettcher 1887, Schwalbe, 1887; Eschler 1892; Arnvig, 1951 Rüdel, 1951; Scuderi & del Bo, 1952; Charachon, 1961; Rauch, 1964 Bonaccorsi & Sambucini, 1964 Alford et al., 1965; Terayama, 1966; Kikuchi & Hilding, 1967  
*Vessel below the tunnel of the organ of Corti, Spiralgfäss des Cortischen Tunnel* Siebenmann, 1894; Asai (dog, rat), 1908 Smith (man), 1954  
*Terminal loops of vessels lying under the tunnel of Corti* Shambaugh (embryo pig), 1903  
*Ausseres Spiralgfäss, Ausseres vas spirale* Kölliker 1852 Siebenmann, 1894  
*Spiral vessel beneath the tunnel of Corti.* Kikuchi & Hilding, 1967
- 
2. Present nomenclature: *The vessel of the tympanic lip Vas labii tympanici*  
 Previous synonymous nomenclature: Introduced in the present investigation.  
 Previous different nomenclature: *Inneres Spiralgfäss* Siebenmann, 1894; Asai (dog, rat), 1908  
*Spiralgfäss des Labium tympanicum, Vaso spirale del labium tympanicum, Vas spirale labii tympanici* Siebenmann, 1894; Asai (dog, rat), 1908; Scuderi & del Bo, 1952.  
*Spiral vessel below the inner pillar* Terayama, 1966.  
*Vas spirale internum.* Deiters, 1860.
- 
3. Present nomenclature: *Limbus vessels Vasa limbi.*  
 Previous synonymous nomenclature: Introduced in the present investigation.  
 Previous different nomenclature: *Vessels of the limbus* Smith (guinea pig), 1951  
*Rete capillare spirale della cresta spirale* Scuderi & del Bo, 1952.

# REFERENCES

- Agerzi, C., 1948 Angioarchitettonica del legamento spirale della cavia. *Biol. Lat.* (M. Iano) 1 59
- 1949 Appunti di idrodinamica vascolare del legamento spirale. *Arch. Ital. Otol.* 60, 4.
- Alford B. R., Shaver E. F., Rosenberg, J. J. and Guilford F. R., 1965: Physiologic and histopathologic effects of microembolism of the internal auditory artery. *Ann. Otol.* 74 728.
- Altmann, F. and Walzer J. G. 1947 The physiology of the perilymphatic fluid. *Trans. Amer. Acad. Otolaryng.* 48, 361
- 1950 New investigations on the physiology of the labyrinthine fluids. *Laryngoscope* 60, 777
- Altmann, F., Knefeld M. and Shea J. J. 1966 Inner ear changes in otosclerosis. *Ann. Otol.* 75 5
- Amoroso, F. 1956 Considerazioni sul disturbo dell'udito nel diabete giovanile. *Arch. ped. Atmos. Ferrara* 9 435
- Anderson H., Henriksen, B., Lundquist P.-G., Wedenberg, E. and Werell J. 1948 Genetic hearing impairment in the Dalmatian dog. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)*, Suppl. 232.
- Arwig, J. 1951 Relation of the ear to the subarachnoid space and absorption of the labyrinthine fluid. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)*, Suppl. 96
- Asd, K., 1908 Die Blutgefäße des häutigen Labyrinths der Ratte. *Anatomische Hefen* 36, 7
- 1908 Die Blutgefäße im häutigen Labyrinth des Hundes. *Anat. anst. Hefen* 36, 11
- Axelsson A. and Fagerberg, S. E. 1968 Auditory function in diabetes. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)*, 66, 49
- Balogh K. and Kobarg, E., 1965 Der Plexus cochlearis. *Arch. Otor. Nas. P. 156* 512
- 185 638
- Beck C., and Reichert P. 1958 Morphologische Veränderungen an der Schilddrüse des Mausechnechens bei Sauerstoffmangel und Lärmbelastung. *Arch. Otor. Nas. Kehlkopfheilk.* 172, 238
- Benitez J. T. and Schumacher H. F. 1962 Otosclerosis a human tempo. *Laryngoscope* 72 1
- Böttcher A., 1887 Rückblicke auf die neueren Untersuchungen über den Bau der Schilddrüse im Anschluss an eigene Beobachtungen. *Arch. Otor. Nas. Kehlkopfheilk.* 24 1 11 316.
- Bonaccorsi P. and Sambucini, G. 1964 Osservazioni "in vivo" del sistema circolatorio della stria del modiollo nella cavia. *Boll. Med. Orecch.* 82, 649
- Borgbensen, E., 1957 Modality of the cochlear humoral circulation. *Laryngoscope* 67, 11
- 1965 Development and function of the spiral canalicular system. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)*, 59 259
- 1965 b Construction, rapports et fonctions du système canaliculaire de la stria. *Bull. Otor. (Bordeaux)*, 86, 686
- 1967 On the function of the spiral prominence. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)*, Suppl. 236
- Borsak J., Lisiecka-Adamczak, H. and M. J. Krawiec, B. 1956 The effect of diabetes on the cochlea. *Pol. Arch. Med. Wewnętrz.* 26, 1159
- Bredberg, G. 1968 Cellular pattern and nerve supply of the human cochlea. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)*, Suppl. 236.
- Brownlee K. A. 1961 *Statistical theory and methodology in clinical research*. Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1961
- Casimiro, L., 1950 L'esame dell'apparato cocleovestibolare nell'animale. *Arch. Otor. Nas. P.* 156 5 45
- Carhart R. 1966 Cochlear otosclerosis: radiological considerations. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 82, 1

- Characbon R., 1961: *Anatomie de l'oreille interne chez l'homme*. Imprimerie Bow Frères, Lyon.
- Chow J T Y and Rodgers, K., 1962: Respiration of tissues lining the mammalian membranous labyrinth. *J Laryng* 76 341
- Cimino A and Grunau, G. 1967 The embryological development of the limbus and of the lateral and anterior wall of ductus cochlearis in the rabbit. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), Suppl. 243
- Conti A and Borge M. 1964 Behaviour of cytochrome oxidase activity in the cochlea of the guinea-pig following acoustic stimulation. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 58 321
- Corti, A. 1851: Recherches sur l'organe de l'ouïe des mammifères. *Z. Wiss. Zool.*, 3 109
- Costa, O. A., 1967: Inner ear pathology in experimental diabetes. *Laryngoscope* 77 68.
- 1968: Personal communication.
- Deal, M. S. 1936: The anatomy and development of the mutants paroutte, Shaker 1 and waltzer in the mouse. *Proc. Roy. Soc. Biol.*, 145 206.
- Dietzel K., 1964: Diabetes und Gehör. *Abhandlungen der Deutschen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin* Int. Symp. über Diabetesfragen, 1—3 Okt. 1962. Akademie-Verlag, Berlin.
- Eichler O. 1892: Anatomische Untersuchungen über die Wege des Blutstromes im menschlichen Ohrlabyrinth. *Abhandl. der mathem. phys. Classe der königlich sächsischen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaften* 18, 310.
- Engström H. Sjöstrand F. S. and Spornelius, H. 1955 Feinstruktur der Stria vascularis beim Meerschweinchen. *Pract. Otorhinolaryng* (Basel) 17 69
- Engström, H. 1960: The Cortilymph, the third lymph of the inner ear. *Acta Morph. Neerl. Scand* 3, 195
- Engström, H., Ades, H. W., and Hawkins, J. E. 1962: Structure and functions of the sensory hairs of the inner ear. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* 34 1556
- Engström, H. Ades H. W. and Andersson A. 1966: *Structural Patterns of the Organ of Corti*. Almqvist and Wiksell, Stockholm.
- Engström, H. 1968: Personal communication.
- Falke-Hansen J. and Thomsen, E., 1963: Histochemical studies on glycogen in the cochlea of the normal guinea pig. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 56, 429
- Fernández C. 1932: Dimensions of the cochlea. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* 24 519
- Fixandt H. von, and Saxén, A. 1937 Beiträge zur Histologie der Stria vascularis und der Prociensentia spiralis bei Säugern (Hund und Mensch). *Z. Anat. Entwicklungsgesch* 106, 424
- 1937 Struktur und Funktion der Region des Sulcus spiralis externus im Innenohr des Menschen und des jungen Hundes. *Z. Anat. Entwicklungsgesch* 106, 534
- Folkow B. and Löfving, B. 1956: The distensibility of the systemic resistance blood vessels. *Acta Physiol. Scand* 38 37
- Glorig, A., and Gallo R., 1962 Comments on sensorineural hearing loss in otosclerosis. *Otosclerosis* Ed. H. F. Schuknecht. Little Brown & Co., Boston, pp 63—73
- Graf K., and Perini G. 1930 Die Entstehung der Perilymphe. *Pract. Otorhinolaryng* (Basel) 12, 351
- Grüneberg, H. Hellpke C. S. and Ledoux A., 1940: Observations on the structure, development and electrical reactions of the internal ear of the Shaker 1 mouse. *Proc. Roy. Soc. (Biol.)*, 129 154
- Guild S. R. 1927 The circulation of the endolymph. *Amer. J. Anat.*, 39 57
- Hensen V. 1863 Zur Morphologie der Schnecke des Menschen und der Säugetiere. *Z. Wiss. Zool* 13
- Hinojosa R. and Rodriguez-Echandia, E. L., 1966 The fine structure of the stria vascularis of the cat inner ear. *Amer. J. Anat.* 118, 631
- Iken I. 1881 *Anatomiske undersøgelser over Orets labyrinth* Ed. Prof. Panum, København.
- Illig, L. 1961 *Die terminale Strombahn*. Springer Verlag, Berlin-Göttingen Heidelberg.
- Iurato S. 196 Submicroscopic structure of the membranous labyrinth. *Z. Zellforsch* 56, 40.
- Jako G. Weille F. L. Pinner P. E. and Irwin J. W. 1939: An experimental study of the dynamic circulation of the labyrinthine fluids. *Ann. Otol* 68, 733

- Jørgensen M B 1961 The inner ear in diabetes mellitus. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chic.), 74 373
- Jørgensen, M B., and Buch N H 1961 Studies on inner-ear function and cranial nerves in diabetes. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 53, 350.
- Kikuchi, K and Hildeng, D A 1966 The development of the stria vascularis in the mouse. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 62, 277
- 1967 The spiral canal and stria vascularis in Shaker 1 mice. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 63 393
- Kimura, R., and Perlman, H B 1956 Experimental obstruction of the labyrinth. *Ann. Otol.*, 65 332.
- 1958 Arterial obstruction of the labyrinth. *Ann. Otol.*, 67 5
- Kirikae I, Nomur Y, Nagakura M, Matsuba Y and Sugawara, S 1961: A consideration on the circulation of the perilymph. *Ann. Otol.*, 70, 337
- Kley E 1951 Zur Herkunft der Perilymphe. *Z. Laryng Rhinol. Otol.*, 30, 486.
- Koburg, E., and Fleiter D 1962 Zur Größe des Bluteinstroms wechself der Gewebe der Cochlea. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 54 319
- Koide Y, Yoshida, M and Komuro M 1960 Some aspects of the biochemistry of acoustic trauma. *Ann. Otol.*, 69 661
- Koide Y, Hamada R., and Yoshikawa Y 1964 Distribution of some oxidizing enzymes in the cochlea. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 58, 344
- Komatschko, P I 1927 Die Arterien und Venen des Menschen und ihre Labyrinthäste. *Z. Ges. Anat.*, 11 241
- Lawrence M 1965 Fluid balance in the inner ear. *Ann. Otol.*, 74 486.
- 1966 Effects of interference with terminal blood supply on organ of Corti. *Laryngoscope* 76, 1318.
- Leenep E C. C. van 1910 Het oorloop der fujielingen in het gehoorgaan van de Japanse dekmuis. Thesis. Univ. Utrecht, (in Grünberg et al. 1940).
- Leone, N A 1964 Die Vaskularisation des Ohrlabyrinthes beim Menschen. *Anat. Anz* 114 337
- Lindsay J R., and Beal, D D 1966 Sensorineural deafness in otosclerosis. *Ann. Otol.*, 75 436.
- Lindbom, F H 1966 Correlation of sensorineural hearing impairment and otosclerosis. *Ann. Otol.*, 75 512.
- Linn M H 1941 The waltzing (circling) guinea pig. *Ann. Otol.*, 50, 113
- 1942 The degeneration and absorption of the organ of Corti in animals. *Ann. Otol.*, 51 712.
- Manno, E., 1966 The humoral system of the labyrinth. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), Suppl. 212.
- Merrill T 1950 Osservazioni clinico audiometriche in soggetti diabetici. *Arclped.*, 5 *Anna Ferrera*, 3 233
- Matschinsky F M and Thalmann, R., 1967 Quantitative histochemistry of the organ of Corti, stria vascularis and macula sacculi of the guinea pig. *Laryngoscope* 77 292.
- Meng T 1933 Peking Nat. Hist. Bull., 7 355 (in Grünberg et al., 1940).
- Meyer zum Gottesberge A., and Fleiter D 1961 Autoradiographische Untersuchungen zum Stofftransport in der Cochlea des Meerschweinchens. *Arch. Ohr Nas Kehlk. gßheitk.*, 178, 143
- Meyer zum Gottesberge A, Rauch S and Koburg, E., 1963 Untersuede im Metabolismus der einzelnen Schneckenwindungen. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 59 116.
- Meyer zum Gottesberge A and Koburg, E 1968 Erwaerstoffwechsel und Stofftransport in der Cochlea. *Gegenwaertiger Stand der Cochleaforschung*, Johan Ambrosius Barth, Leipzig, p. 88.
- Mittrahy G A, Hildreth K. M, Shinnabarger E. W, Clark L. C., and Pace E. A 1958 Endolymphatic oxygen tension in the cochlea of the guinea pig. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer* 30, 247
- Mizukoshi, O and Daly J F 1967 Oxygen consumption in normal and kanamycin damaged cochleae. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 64 45

- Müsebeck A. 1965 a: Lichtmikroskopische Untersuchungen über den Plexus cochlearis. *Arch Ob Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 184 550.
- 1965 b: Die perivaskulären Lymphspalten des Innenohres. *Arch Ob Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 184 560.
- Müsebeck K. and Mootz W. 1966 Die vegetative Innervation der Meerschweinenschnecke. *Arch Klin. Exp. Obr. Nas Kehlkopfheilk.*, 186, 279
- Mygind S. H. 1945: Experimental histological studies on the labyrinth. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 33 75
- 1946: Experimental histological studies on the labyrinth. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 34 30.
- 1948: Further labyrinthine studies. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 68 1
- 1952: Beiträge zu Flüssigkeitsmysterie des Labyrinths. *Arch. Obr. Nas. Kehlkopfheilk* 160, 472.
- Nabeya, D. 1923 A study in the comparative anatomy of the blood vascular system of the internal ear in Mammalia and in Homo (Japanese). *Acta Schol. Med. Univ. Imp. Kioto* 6, 1
- Nachlas N. E. and Lurie M. H. 1931 The stria vascularis: review and observations. *Laryngoscope* 61 989
- Natalin, L., and Harrison M. S. 1958 Circulation of labyrinthine fluids. *J Laryng* 72, 118.
- Nager F. R., and Faser J. S. 1938 On bone formation in the scala tympani of otosclerosis. *J Laryng* 53 173
- Ngert G. T. 1966: Sensorineural deafness and otosclerosis. *Ann Otol* 75 481
- Nakai Y. 1965: Histochemical study of the stria vascularis in the inner ear by electron microscopy. *Ann. Otol.*, 74 326.
- Nakai Y. and Hilding D. 1967 Adenosine Triphosphatase distribution in the organ of Corti. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 64 477
- 1968: Oxidative enzymes of the cochlea. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 65 459
- Naumann H. H. Günther H. and Schücker S. 1958 Intratympanic Beobachtungen an den Gefäßen des Innenohres. *Arch. Obr. N. Kehlkopfheilk* 171 354
- Noma Y. 1961: Observations on the microcirculation of the cochlea. *Ann Otol* 70, 1037
- Nylen B. 1949 Histopathological investigations on the localisation, number activity and extent of ossific foci. *J Laryng* 63 321
- Perlman, H. B. and Kimura R. S. 1955 a: Observations of the living blood vessels of the cochlea. *Ann. Otol.*, 64 1176.
- 1955 b: Physiology of the cochlear blood vessels. *Angiology* 6, 383
- 1957: Experimental obstruction of venous drainage and arterial supply of the inner ear. *Ann. Otol.*, 66, 537
- Perlman H. B. Kimura R., and Butler R. A. 1959 a Cochlear blood flow during hypothermia. *Ann. Otol* 68, 803
- Perlman H. B. Kruger R., and Fernandez C. 1959 b: Experiments on temporary obstruction of the internal auditory artery. *Laryngoscope* 69 591
- Perlman, H. B. and Kimura R., 1962 Cochlear blood flow in acoustic trauma. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 34 99
- Perlman, H. B. Tsunoo M. and Spence A., 1963: Cochlear blood flow and function: effect of pressure agents. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 56, 587
- Profazio A. and Baravelli P. 1959 La funzione adriatica nel diabete. *Otorinolaring Ital* 28, 103
- Rasch S. 1963 Biochemische Studien zum Hörvorgang. *Acta Otorinolaryng* (Basel) 25 81
- 1964: *Biochemie des Hörgans*. Georg Thieme Verlag, Stuttgart.
- Rasch S. and Riek H. 1965 Z. elektronen-optischen Struktur und Funktion der Stria vascularis. *Arch. Obr. N. Kehlkopfheilk.*, 185 577
- Rasch S. 1966 Membran problems of the inner ear and their significance. *J Laryng* 80, 1144

- 1948: Biochemie der Innenohrflüssigkeiten. Gegenwärtiger Stand der Cochleaforschung. Johann Ambrosius Barth, Leipzig, p. 69
- Retzins, G. 1882 Über ein Blutgefäßes führendes Epithelgewebe im membranösen Gehörorgan. *Biologische Untersuchungen* 2, 97
- Rüedi, L. 1951 Some animal experimental findings on the functions of the inner ear *Ann Otol.* 60, 993
- 1961: Histopathologische Veränderungen im Innenohr bei Otosklerose. *Fortschr. Hal. Nas. Ohrenheilk.* 8 77 Karger Basel New York.
- 1962 Histopathology of sensorineural degeneration and other inner ear changes in otosclerosis. *Otosclerosis* Eds H. Schuknecht, Little, Brown & Co., Boston, p. 79
- 1964: Weitere histo-pathologische Veränderungen des Innenohres bei Otosklerose. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 57 236.
- 1965 Histopathologic confirmation of labyrinthine otosclerosis. *Laryngoscope* 75, 1582.
- Rüedi, L. and Spornelli, H. 1966 Pathogenesis of sensorineural deafness on otosclerosis. *Ann Otol.* 75, 325
- Rüedi, L. 1968 Are there cochlear shunts in Paget and Recklinghausen Disease? *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 63 13
- Sanders, C. H., Lawrence, J. and Maciver, D. A. 1957 Microradiographic studies of the vascular patterns in muscle and skin. I. *X-ray microscopy and microradiography* Eds V. E. Coslett et al. Academic Press, New York, p. 339
- Sanders, L. Z. 1965 The histopathology of hereditary congenital deafness in white mice. *Path. Vet. (Basel)*, 2, 256.
- Saxte, A. 1951 Histological studies of endolymph secretion and resorption in the inner ear. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 40, 23
- Schaffer, J. u. Roman, B. 1948 *Mikroskopische Technik* 15 Aufl., R. Oldenbourg, München
- Schroter, S. 1938 Zur Histologie der Gefäße des Lg. spirale. *Arch. Ohren Nas. Kehlkopfheilk.* 173, 370.
- Schneider, K., Schneider, E. A., and Wullstein, H. L. 1965 Vergleichende Bestimmung von Elektrolyten und organischer Substanzen in der Perilymphe Otosklerosekranker Personen. *Acta Otolaryng.* (Stockh.), 59 309
- Schneider, K., and Schneider, E. A. 1966 Perilymph in patients with otosclerosis. *Arch. Otolaryng.* (Chic.), 84 373
- Schroter, L. 1961 Untersuchungen zum Stoffwechsel und Herkunft von Perilymphe. *Arch. Ohren Nas. Kehlkopfheilk.* 178, 141
- Schuknecht, H. F. 1960 Discussion in *Neural mechanisms of the auditory and vestibular systems*. Eds Ramon, G. L. and Windle, W. F. Charles C. Thomas, Springfield
- Schuknecht, H. F. and Seft, A. E. 1963 Experimental observations on the fluid physiology of the inner ear. *Ann Otol.* 72, 687
- Schuknecht, H. F. and Igarashi, M. 1964 Pathology of slowly progressive sensorineural deafness. *Trans. Amer. Acad. Otolaryng.* 68, 222.
- Schuknecht, H. F. and Orss, C. W. 1966 Otosclerosis and the inner ear. *Ann Otol.* 75 433
- Schwalbe, G. 1887 Über die Glomeruli arterien der Gehörsehnecke. *Arch. Anat. 4* 93
- Snyder, R., and del B. M. 1952 La vascularizzazione del labirinto umano. *Arch. Ita. (Med)* 63, Suppl. 11
- Seymour, J. C. 1954 Observations on the circulation in the cochlea. *J. Laryng.* 64 447
- Shambaugh, G. E. 1903 The distribution of blood-vessels in the labyrinth of the guinea pig and domestic cat. *The decennial public of the Univ. of Chicago*, 10, 137
- 1906 Über die Herkunft der in der tieferen Schicht der Scala vascular wohnenden Zellen. *Z. Ohrenheilk.* 53 301
- 1909 Über Bau und Funktion des Epithels im Sulcus spiralis externus. *Z. Ohrenheilk.* 58, 280.
- Siebert, F. 1894 Die Blutgefäße im Labyrinth des menschlichen Ohres. *J. 8. Beitr. Anat. Wundaden.*

- Switb C A. 1951: Capillary areas of the cochlea in the guinea pig. *Laryngoscope* 61 1073  
 — 1954: Capillary areas of the membranous labyrinth. *Ann Otol* 63 435  
 — 1957: Structure of the stria vascularis and the spiral prominence. *Ann Otol* 66, 521
- Spoendlin, H. 1957: Elektronenmikroskopische Untersuchungen am Cortischen Organ des Meerschweinchens. *Pract. Otorhinolaryng* (Basel), 19 192.  
 — 1962: Ultrastructural features of the organ of Corti. *Ann. Otol.* 71 657
- Spoendlin H and Balogh K., 1963: Histochemische Darstellung von Dehydrogenasen in der Schnecke lebender Tiere. *Arch Obr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 182, 379
- Stopford, J S B. 1915—16: The arteries of the pons and medulla oblongata. *J Anat. Physiol.* 11:50, 131 253  
 — 1916—17: The arteries of the pons and medulla oblongata. *J Anat. Physiol.* 12:51 250.
- Sunderland S. 1945: The arterial relations of the internal auditory meatus. *Brain*, 68 23
- Svens-Knudsen, V. 1958: Resorption of the cerebro-spinal fluid in guinea pig. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 49 240.
- Terayama, Y, Holz, E., and Beck C. 1966: Adrenergic innervation of the cochlea. *Ann Otol* 75 88
- Tomodori J, Hyde R. W. and Brogan F A. 1955 Combined effect of sound and oxygen deprivation upon cochlear microphonies in guinea pigs. *Ann. Otol* 64 392.
- Tomodori J. 1961: Das Verhalten des Reizfolgestromes im Sauerstoffmangel. *Arch Obr Nas Kehlkopfheilk* 178, 137
- Tomodori J, Duvall A. J. and Reussen, J P. 1962: Permeability of intracochlear membranes to various vital stains. *Ann. Otol* 71 801
- Tsunoo M and Perlman H B. 1964: Venous obstruction of the cochlea. Blood flow and function. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 58, 127  
 — 1965 Cochlear oxygen tension. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 59 438
- Watt J C and McKillop A N. 1935: Relation of arteries to roots of nerves in posterior cranial fossa in man. *Arch Surg* (Chic.) 30, 336.
- Weille F L, Gargano S R., Pfister R., Martinez D and Irwin J W. 1954 Circulation of the spiral ligament and stria vascularis in living guinea pig. *Arch Otolaryng* (Chic.), 59 731
- Weille F L., 1955: The significance of the arteriovenous arcades of the spiral ligament of the cochlea. *Ann. Otol.* 64 173
- Vigi F. 1950: Malattie dell'orecchio nei diabetici. *Atti del S Anna Ferrara*, 3, 37
- Witmaack K. 1936: Betrachtungen über die Erkrankungsprozesse des inneren Ohres auf der Grundlage der Tonlehre. *Arch Obr Nas. Kehlkopfheilk* 141 25
- Volzrich L., 1967: Morphology and function of the epithelium of the limbus spiralis cochleae. *Acta Otolaryng* (Stockh.), 63 503
- Vosteen K H. 1961 Neue Aspekte zur Biologie und Pathologie des Innenohres. *Arch Obr Nas. Kehlkopfheilk* 178, 90  
 — 1964 Elektronenmikroskopische Untersuchungen über die Verteilung von Glykogen im Ductus cochlearis bei Meerschweinchen. *Pract Otorhinolaryng* (Basel), 26, 400.
- Wästenfeldt, E., and Kihlert, D. 1964 Experimenteller Beitrag zur Frage der Gefäßversorgung der Meerschweinchencochlea. *Z. Mikr Anat. Forsch* 71 172.
- Yamamoto K and Nakai, Y. 1964: Electronmicroscopic studies on the functions of the stria vascularis and the spiral ligament in the inner ear. *Ann Otol*, 73 332.
- Öberg, B. 1967 The relationship between active constriction and passive recoil of the veins at various distending pressures. *Acta Physiol. Scand* 71 233





PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell's Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1968

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 245

**CONGENITAL FIXATION  
OF THE STAPES FOOTPLATE**

**BURNS C. STEELE**

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVÄGSEN 16, 11523 STOCKHOLM**

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1968

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 245

**CONGENITAL FIXATION  
OF THE STAPES FOOTPLATE**

**BURNS C. STEELE**

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVAVÄGEN 16, 11523 STOCKHOLM**



ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

SUPPLEMENTUM 245

---

CONGENITAL FIXATION  
OF THE STAPES FOOTPLATE

BURNS C. STEELE

*Presented as Candidate Thesis  
to the American Laryngological, Rhinological &  
Otolaryngological Society 1967*

UPPSALA 1969

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY  
*Almqvist & Wiksells*  
BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG  
UPPSALA 1949

## INTRODUCTION

Today the otologic surgeon may attack problems of conductive deafness with confidence because of the wealth of knowledge investigators have compiled in the last decade. The mysteries of the middle ear have been unveiled well documented and beautifully reproduced on film (1 2) One of the mysteries which had gone unrecognized in the premobilization days is the entity congenital fixation of the stapes footplate which will be discussed in this paper. Thus, with this additional knowledge and a commensurate understanding of embryology the possibility of aiding the patient is greatly enhanced.

The purpose of this thesis is to discuss this recently established entity with reference to its origin, studies of literature, diagnosis, concepts of treatment and to present a long term review of the results of treatment on a series of cases. In addition, several recent cases will be presented.

None of the cases presented in this paper have shown any family history of congenital footplate fixation. However the possibility does exist that some hereditary (3) factors may predispose the patient to this entity. Certainly the progress that has been made in the study of genetics since the last 20 years had opened up new avenues of study and it is the hope of the author that this paper may stimulate otolaryngologists to take more of an interest in this field.

## EMBRYOLOGY

The comprehension of the embryogenesis of the stapes will prepare the otologic surgeon for any abnormalities present and will enable him to employ the proper modalities in correcting this defect. Of great importance is the present concept of the double origin of the stapes. The major part of the structure arises in mesenchyme at the cranial end of the second visceral (hyoid) bar while the medial (vestibular surface) of the footplate derives from the cartilaginous otic capsule—a condensation termed the lamina stapedialis.

The stapes is the first ossicle to make its appearance in the 7 mm ( $4\frac{1}{2}$  week) embryo and by the 6th week the mesenchyme primordia are formed and continuity of the ossicular chain established.

The stapes at this stage is a distinct ring-shaped, pre-cartilaginous mass, the center of which is pierced by the stapedial artery. It is adjacent to the cells which will later form the lateral wall of the otic capsule. The pre-cartilaginous cells eventually become the hard bony otic capsule.





Fig. 1 Early stage in development of human stapes, illustrating dual origin of stapes footplate—hyoid and second branchial bar and cartilaginous (1) capsule (lamina stapedia) derived from the capsule. Fetus of 40 weeks (40 mm crown-rump length). 45 Fig. 11 from the Wisconsin collection, series 168, courtesy of Dr. Barry J. Anso.

In the embryo of 30 mm the otic capsule and the stapes are undergoing similar change to true cartilage. An exception to this is the lamina stapedia, against which the stapes rests. This structure consists of two distinct cellular zones. The inner is of mesenchymal character and lies in contact with the perichondrium of the stapedia base. The outer layer, which is fibroblastic, blends medially with the loosely arranged mesenchyme which surrounds the epithelial labyrinth and in which the periotic spaces are already developing.

The development of a lamina stapedia prepares for the appearance of a future fenestra but does not represent the window itself and one may see that labyrinthine window as such never exists.

In the 40 mm embryo (10 weeks) the stapes is still entirely cartilaginous but has lost its simple form and is changing from a ring-shaped to a stirrup-shaped structure.

By the 17th week the stapes has increased considerably in size. The base has become flattened and fits snugly in the window and is attached to the window through a stapedia ligament. In the 161 mm embryo the stapes has almost reached adult size and a center of ossification has formed in the basal portion. The base becomes hollowed and acquires a narrow cavity and a fenestrated internal surface. The vestibular layer remains cartilaginous. At this stage the crura have reached their definite size and have be-

come hollowed by a marrow cavity which is continuous with that of the base. In addition, the vestibular window reaches its definite size and shape and conforms to the shape of the base of the stapes.

Of greatest importance in the understanding of congenital footplate fixation is the formation of the annular ring, which enables the stapes to become a separate mobile structure, capable of responding to vibratory stimuli. Subsequent fusion of the lamina stapediale with the otic capsule and the secondary differentiation of the laminar tissue provides the stapediale rim, the vestibular surface of the base and the basal perichondrium. Further modification of the peripheral laminar tissue leads to formation of the annular ligament of the stapes. The annular ligament, with the exception of the fissula ante fenestram is the most inconstant structure encountered and its site in the 43 mm and 50 mm stages is represented by the peripheral remnant of the lamina stapediale.

Of additional importance in the surgical considerations of a fixed footplate in the oval window is the possibility of an irregular oval cleft. The form of the oval cleft, which is thus produced between the stapediale footplate and the fenestral rim may not be uniform anteriorly it may slant in such a way as to cause a segment of the footplate to lie on the medial or tympanic aspect of the window. Thus it may override the margin. Clinically it would indicate that an attempt to mobilize a fixed stapes would find an obstruction in the part nearest the cochlea.

## ETIOLOGY

The embryological studies (5 6, 7 8 9 10) which have been presented clarify the concept as to the anatomical basis of congenital stapes fixation. Some of the factors which might cause a failure of the lamina stapediale to differentiate and separate from the otic capsule will be discussed. An observation by Elliott (11) may be a useful aid in studying congenital ear malformations. He has presented evidence suggesting that after six months the axial presentation of the fetus into the vertex or breech depends upon labyrinthine activated kicking by the fetus. Progressive dominance of vertex presentation appears due to the increase of specific gravity for the axially floating fetus in its capsule.

Persistent mal presentations result where damage or malformation of inner or middle ear exist. This is a convenient clinical manifestation on which to begin early investigation of congenitally acquired ear aplasias.

In the series of House (12) which is the largest number of reported cases of congenital footplate fixation no evidence of a positive family history of this condition exists. Altman (13) also states that a positive family history is extremely rare in congenital malformations of the middle ear.

From the work of Anson and Bast (7 8) the failure of separation

terminating in congenital fixation occurs at stages later than the 50 mm one

The effects of viruses, particularly of the rubella virus (14 15 16) have been studied as causes of deafness, however their mode of action has not been understood Richards (17) has reported several cases of rubella mixed deafness with congenital fixation of the stapes However Kelomen (18) in his investigation of the rubella effect on congenital stapes fixation found that in 25 hard of hearing persons with history of maternal rubella during the critical period, no evidence of conductive deafness existed Thus, since no exploration of the middle ear was performed, the presence of an anomaly could not be determined Connolly (16) stated that there is a 16% hazard of major congenital anomaly in live born children if maternal rubella is contracted in the first 2 months of pregnancy In addition he clarifies the effects of other viruses on the fetus as a whole during this period Polio-myelitis will cause a higher death rate but not a higher malformation rate Mumps and chickenpox do not have any apparently harmful effect in pregnancy while measles seems to produce a higher fetal morbidity and malformations than normal but less than rubella Smallpox vaccination in pregnancy is definitely contraindicated and further exploration of the hazards to the use of live polio vaccine is indicated

The action of various chemical agents on the embryo has initiated considerably investigation (9 16, 20 21) Certainly the disastrous effects of thalidomide (22) has awakened us to the danger and not surprisingly the literature on teratology is now becoming inundated by a mass of information on the teratogenic effect of the new generation of synthetic compounds According to Woolam (23) drugs such as antihistamines, alkaloids, antibiotics, cortisone, hormones, vitamins, have been known to have teratogenic effects.

U d Avignon and B Barr (24) have produced statistics illustrating effects of thalidomide Out of 904 children examined at the Karolinska Hospital during the pre thalidomide period 1944 to 1958 and found to be totally deaf or to have severe hearing loss, 13 had congenital atresia During the 1959 to 1962 period, when thalidomide was available, however this type of deformity was found in 16 out of 57

According to Livingstone (25) thalidomide has produced hearing loss due to congenital stapes footplate fixation per se reported in the literature due to thalidomide However Livingstone does offer a warning that some of the thalidomide babies, with apparently normal ears, may have a hearing defect

There are no reports in the literature listing radiation as a direct cause of congenital fixation of the stapes footplate However the effect of radiation on the stapes during the period of formation should be considered as a factor causing retardation or failure of the lamina stapediaalis to differentiate and separate from the otic capsule Experimental studies by Berg and Lindgren (26) consisting of radiation of the middle ear in rabbits showed



Fig 2. Photomicrograph of congenital fixation of stapes footplate to the union of the stapes footplate with the vestibular lamella. Anteriorly, partial ligament exists with bony fixation of the vestibular lamella to the footplate. Hematoxylin and eosin stain.  $\times 60$  Courtesy of The Los Angeles Foundation of Otolaryngology

that in milder reactions the mucous membrane became thickened and fibrotic. The ossicles were frequently involved, resulting in fixation.

Since congenital footplate fixation is the result of disturbed genesis, the otologist should be aware of some factors involved. Recent advances in the studies of DNA and RNA synthesis have provided us with much information on the orderly process of embryogenesis. One of the problems which troubles investigators (23) at the present time is revealed by the hypothesis which states that the teratogenic agents each produce one of a number of possible patterns of malformation and that the choice of pattern depends upon the particular metabolic phase with which the teratogen interferes.

Another problem that must be solved, when endeavoring to elicit the mechanism of action of the teratogen is the number of levels at which the activity can be regarded as taking place. This means that a decision must be made as to whether it is most important to investigate its effect upon the tissues at the molecular level, the level of the organelle or the level of the cell.

At the first level we shall be investigating possibilities such as the inhibition of DNA synthesis at the level of the organelle. We shall be studying for example whether the drug affects the lysosome, Golgi apparatus or mitochondria, at the cell level we shall be interested in its effects upon division of the cell.

There are five possible end results of the effect of the teratogen at the cellular level. It can stimulate cell division. It can leave a cell unharmed, it can slightly effect the cell slowing down rate at which it divides, it can stop it dividing, it can kill it. In practice, the effect of a teratogen is to prevent the cell from being in the right place, doing the right thing at the right time so that for example, two separate components, such as the lamina stapedialis and the otic capsule, which should separate and differentiate fail to do so, causing a retardation or prevention of the formation of an annular ligament. It would seem that in general the effect of teratogen is to kill cells without killing the embryo thus depriving the developing structure not only of a single cell but of all its descendants.

## PATHOLOGY

Histologic studies of relatively rare specimens of temporal bones have revealed only slight degrees of difference in the amount of osseous union between the stapes footplate and the surrounding portion of the otic capsule. There may be a complete osseous union between the footplate and the otic capsule, or in some sections, only fibroblasts may be present along the fenestral margin. This may indicate an attempt to form the annular ligament.

In footplates with minimal ossification, the footplate may be thicker along the fenestral margin and thinner in the center. In congenital footplate fixation the entire footplate blends into the surrounding otic capsule, which may have a faint bluish color. This color is often seen in other congenital middle ear deformities and has no particular significance, in addition there is no increase in vascularity which is seen in otosclerosis.

The footplate is composed of laminations found in primordial bone structure, however there may be islands in the crura and in the surrounding capsule showing an advanced bone formation. This structure may consist of two distinct layers, an outer layer which is continuous with the stapes crura and an inner layer blending with the capsule. Between the layers may be islands of cartilage and fibrous tissue, surrounded by cartilage.

In the case of congenital footplate fixation described by Lindsay (30) he found that the inner lamella of the stapes footplate was continuous or fused with the otic capsule, and the other layer was continuous with the crura of the stapes.

This histologic picture seems to confirm an incomplete fusion of the annulus stapedialis with the lamina stapedialis and the failure of the latter to separate from the otic capsule.

## REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

During the last decade we have learned that ossicular deformity with a patent meatus and normal tympanic membrane are not uncommon. A diag-



Fig. 3. Photomicrograph of congenital fixation of stapes footplate, showing normal appearing stapedial ligament anteriorly. Posteriorly there is partial bony fixation. Hematoxylin and eosin stain.  $\times 20$ . Courtesy of The Los Angeles Foundation of Otology.



Fig. 4. Photomicrograph of congenital fixation of stapes footplate showing complete fixation of footplate posteriorly with the bony otic capsule. Anteriorly in this section the stapedial ligament is present. Hematoxylin and eosin stain (60 $\times$ ). Courtesy of The Los Angeles Foundation of Otology.



Fig 5. Photomicrograph of the posterior margin of the footplate (right) and the adjoining lig. capsule (left). Note the partial formation of an annular ligament. 180. Courtesy of the Los Angeles Foundation of Otolaryngology.

nosis may be readily anticipated and confirmed by tympanotomy. Sham-  
baugh (27) in 1952, was one of the first otologic surgeons to advocate the  
use of the operating microscope in middle ear surgery. He presented five cases  
of congenital stapes fixation, and cited the difference between this condi-  
tion and otosclerosis. The salient points of differentiation showed that the  
deafness began at birth and was not progressive. No family history of oto-  
sclerosis was present in any of these cases and upon exploration of the  
middle ear fixation of the stapes was present without evidence of an oto-  
sclerotic focus. These cases were fenestrated and all showed hearing gain,  
the longest postoperative improvement being maintained after three years.

Holmgren (28) in 1957 described a case with incomplete development of  
the annular ligament resulting in a fixation of the stapes footplate.

In 1958, House (12) described congenital stapes footplate fixation as a  
definite entity which could be suspected and readily differentiated from  
otosclerotic footplate fixation. Characteristic audiograms showed a flat 40  
to 55 decibel pure conductive loss and that there is no progression during  
adolescence. As a result of House's review of a long term study of conduc-  
tive deafness, it seems logical that any child under 12 years  
of age with a pure conductive hearing impairment, who has a purely conductive hearing im-  
pairment, for example, 40 decibel has a congenital footplate fixation.

rather than clinical otosclerosis. An analysis of our operated cases of congenital footplate fixation in children confirms this hypothesis. 83% of our series noted hearing loss before they were 12 years of age." The long term results of surgery on these cases will be reviewed in this paper.

Hough (12) in his well illustrated presentation of middle ear malformations, describes a case of congenital stapes fixation with an abnormally small stapes with extremely thin crura. The footplate was small and thick and blended into the surrounding otic capsule. Mobilization of this footplate was successful. He has described several other immature stapes with congenital footplate fixation. One of them occurred in a five year old child whose hearing was restored to normal level by a partial stapedectomy.

Histopathologic studies of congenital atresia, with stapes fixation, were first made by Heleman (20) in 1943 who reported an abnormal stapes, in which an annular ligament was partially replaced by bone. Also, Altman (13) in 1949 reported a congenital atresia with normal stapes and an annular ligament however fixation occurred due to the presence of an osseous bridge between the head of the stapes and the fallopian canal.

The first case of congenital footplate fixation with a patent meatus to be studied histologically was reported by Lindsay Sanders and Nager (30) in 1960. Sooy (31) described four cases of congenital footplate fixation. These were taken from a series of 1112 operative procedures. In the case of a 12 year-old boy with a congenital footplate fixation, he states that in attempting to create a footplate by multiple circumferential perforation, a sudden profuse flow of perilymph erupted on the first perforation, which rapidly filled the middle ear and the auditory canal. The middle ear was filled with gelfoam and an external dressing applied. Several dressings were soaked with perilymph before the flow ceased spontaneously. Audiometry one month later showed a 5 dB gain, with a residual air bone gap of 60 decibels.

Cases of congenital footplate fixation have briefly been described in the literature by Henner (32) and Hajek (33) respectively however no definite treatment was described.

In 1902 Escher (34) reported a bilateral congenital stapes fixation in the daughter of an otosclerotic mother whose diagnosis had been confirmed at the time of surgery. In another case the son of an otosclerotic father was found to have bilateral congenital stapes fixation and malformation of the incus.

The occurrence of facial anomalies, of a less severe nature than Treacher Collins, with congenital fixation of the stapes, was described by Edwards (33) in 1964. He cites the case of a 3-year-old child with a bilateral conductive deafness. The child's mother contracted rubella before the 12th week of pregnancy. Various facial anomalies were present. The meati were present but narrow and normal tympanic membranes were present. Exploratory tympanotomy revealed bilateral congenital fixation of the stapes footplate.

Edwards states that he has performed successful total stapedectomy with vein graft, polyethylene prosthesis on two cases (three ears). The durati-



## CASE 1 PRE-OPERATIVE TYMPANOPLASTY

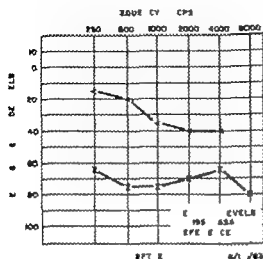


Fig. 6.

## CASE 1 PRE OPERATIVE AUDIOGRAM

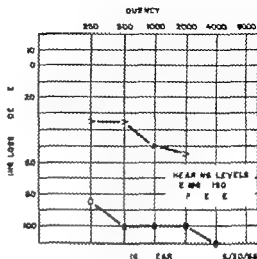
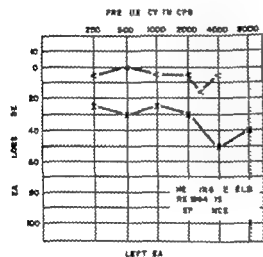


Fig. 7

## PRE OPERATIVE AUDIOGRAMS



LEFT EA

Fig. 8.

Fig. 6. Case 1 Preoperative audiogram (left ear). Air bone gap with evidence of sensorineural component

Fig. 7. Case 1 Preoperative audiogram. Air bone gap present, how ver sensori neural loss greater than the left ear

Fig. 8. Case 3 Preoperative audiogram showing mass lift produced by fluid in the middle ear and superimposed upon a congenital fixation of the stapes footplate

of this hearing gain is not mentioned. It is however his opinion that stapedectomy involves a considerable risk to the patient's hearing.

Ombredanne (36) whose experience has included over 100 cases of minor auditory aplasia, discusses his surgical treatment of some cases of congenital footplate fixation. Whenever possible he attempts to remove the footplate and apply a thin vein graft to the oval window. The stapes is then turned over in such a manner that the head is placed over the center of the vein graft. The crura are then maintained under the long process of the incus. He reports a similar case as Sooya (20) in which a very marked perilymph flow lasting three days, occurred in a case with congenital fixation of the stapes footplate. This followed an attempt to free the footplate by multiple punctures. No labyrinthine or meningeal complication

followed this and after six months he reports a significant hearing gain. His paper reports two cases operated upon, using the above technique and on a third case he performed a fenestration.

Walsh (37) in 1965 described the case of a 25-year-old male with a history of having been deaf since birth. In February 1962 a left exploratory tympanotomy which was performed revealed the stapes to be joined to the long process of the incus by a thin spicule of bone. The footplate was solid, and the posterior crus was abnormally thick and wide. No attempt had been made to remove the abnormal stapes. In March 1962, fenestration was performed and two years later the right side was fenestrated. Hearing of a very serviceable level had been restored to this patient by fenestration and according to Walsh, attempt at stapedectomy might have been disastrous.

In 1965 T. M. Banham (38) reported the case of a 36-year-old white female, who complained of a unilateral deafness since childhood. There was no family history of deafness, nor was there any history of middle ear infection. Both meati were patent and the tympanic membranes were normal. Tympanotomy revealed congenital fixation of the stapes. A detailed description of the footplate was not given and stapedectomy was performed in October 1964 using the vein graft and polyethylene strut. A 35 dB gain was reported for the lower frequency two weeks postoperatively, however no long term results have been mentioned.

So intensified has the search for evidence of stapes fixation become, as is evidenced by the investigations of Holzhuter, Gregg and Clifford (39) on ancient Indian skulls. Specimens ranging from birth to over 40 years were examined. Despite long interment, some burials dating to about the time of Christ showed that the skeletal details were preserved. In all 417 temporal bones from 221 skulls were examined. In 10 temporal bones the stapes was in the oval window (4.5%). There was no evidence of stapes footplate fixation and no congenital anomaly of the auditory ossicles found.

The presence of a congenital footplate fixation may occasionally preclude anomalies of the facial nerve. A normal fallopian canal may be present, however at times a bare nerve can be seen traversing the middle ear. Caparosa and Klasen (40) recently reported the presence of a bilateral congenital fixation of the stapes footplate in a 15-year-old white male. In each ear the transverse portion of the facial nerve divided and passed over the stapes footplate and then united posterior to the posterior crus. Footplates were described as being bluish in color but were very hard. A small fenestra was made in the left footplate using a cutting burr; the footplate was approximately 1 1/2 to 2 mm in thickness. A wire fistula was used, however no change in hearing postoperatively was reported.

## DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

Although the other pathologic entities producing air bone gap in the patent meatus in an intact tympanic membrane are very important in ex-

establishing a diagnosis, this paper will limit the discussion to the entities producing fixation of the stapes footplate *per se*.

Although clinical otosclerosis in a child under the age of twelve is uncommon it is an important entity to be differentiated from congenital footplate fixation. Family history and audiometry may aid in the diagnosis, however confirmation may only be attained by exploratory tympanotomy. During adolescence a rapid progression of hearing loss in otosclerosis is a salient point of differentiation. In contrast there is no progression of hearing loss in congenital footplate fixation. Often the history of deafness in congenital footplate fixation may be misleading because as the child matures the hearing deficiency may appear to be greater due to the increased demands of society in the outside world.

In congenital stapes footplate fixation, the great majority of patients first notice hearing loss before the age of twelve, they have a negative family history of deafness, they have normal physical findings and they have an audiometric graph of a flat curve between 45 and 55 decibels pure conductive loss.

In the child with the sequelae of a chronic otitis media with an intact tympanic membrane and a conductive loss of about 45 dB or more, a diagnosis may perhaps only be established by exploratory tympanotomy. Such a problem will be presented by this writer in the case presentations.

Another condition to be considered in the differential diagnosis is fixation of stapes footplate as the result of an ossifying otitis media, resulting from an intra-uterine and neo-natal otitis, as described by Hemsath (41).

Fixation of the stapes footplate may occur as the result of osteogenic activity involving free cartilage rests in the annular ligament itself. As a result, the bridges of cartilage in the annular ligament could become ossified in the middle decades of life such as cartilage in other areas of the body becomes ossified, thus producing fixation.

As a result of repeated attacks of chronic otitis media, a footplate fixation may occur due to actual arthritic changes, circumferential involvement of the annular ligament may mimic a congenital footplate fixation.

The fixed malleus syndrome is an important entity to recognize and differentiate from a congenital footplate fixation. It has been described to co-exist or occur as a complication of otosclerosis and it can be present with a congenital hearing loss. Goodhill (42) has described the stapedia involvement to be a lateral fixation rather than the customary medial or footplate fixation. A well defined annular ring may be present which does not exist in a congenital footplate fixation. Audiologically in contrast to the flat graph of congenital footplate fixation, the bone conduction curve is usually depressed and consistently seems to slope downward in the higher frequencies.

Osteogenesis imperfecta, a disease characterized by blue sclera, brittle bones and hearing loss, is known to be transmitted as a dominant mendelian trait. Audiometrically an air bone gap is present in cases with hearing loss, grossly and histologically the lesion is identical with otosclerosis.

Page's disease which is a chronic progressive condition beginning in middle or later life may involve the temporal bones, producing deafness. Deafness may be conductive mixed of sensorineural character depending upon the stage of development of the disease in the labyrinth. Histologic examination of footplate reveals new bone formation with typical mosaic pattern.

Tympanosclerosis, an entity which is the end result of chronic inflammatory middle ear disease, may produce fixation of the stapes footplate. It is possible for it to occur silently with an intact tympanic membrane, thus producing a marked conductive loss. The fixation of the stapes footplate may be due to tympanosclerotic plaques which, when carefully removed, would result in mobilization of the footplate. Due to ossification of the tympanosclerotic plaques in the oval window the stapes may become solidly fixed, requiring stapedectomy.

In concluding discussion of the differential diagnosis of stapes ankylosis, it is important to mention the possibility of anomalies of the ossicles and windows in a patient with a patent meatus and normal tympanic membrane.

## TREATMENT

In congenital fixation of the stapes footplate in which the footplate is relatively thin, an attempt should be made to mobilize the footplate. Mobilization may be accomplished in certain difficult cases by shattering the footplate. If exploratory tympanotomy on a child reveals a congenital fixation of the stapes footplate with a complete fusion of the footplate with the surrounding otic capsule, fenestration *non-ovalis* should be considered only when the child has reached young adulthood. The reason for this is that the postoperative care of the child after fenestration is much more difficult than the adult and the danger of infection is greater. Until the time that fenestration can be performed, the child should be provided with a hearing aid.

There is no contraindication to stapedectomy, particularly if it can be performed without a drill-out. Since the incidence of sensorineural loss in fenestra *non-ovalis* and stapedectomy in congenital footplates is 2%, stapedectomy is the operation of choice because of the decreased incidence of infection postoperatively.

Several authors (35-37) have cautioned against performing a stapedectomy because of the possibility of causing a severe sensorineural deafness. Edwards (35) states that the failure of differentiation in the annular area may also be accompanied by a variation in the anatomical position of the utricle and saccule in relation to the vestibular surface of the footplate. House (43) contends the danger to these structures may be avoided by gently sucking out the perilymph and allowing these structures to collapse away from the oval window.

## PRESENTATION OF CASES

The case presentations consist of three children under the age of twelve years observed during the performance of 450 transcanal tympanotomies by this writer

In all of these cases a loss of hearing at an early age was the chief complaint Since two of the cases had chronic otitis media, a hearing loss due to the sequelae of this disease had to be considered in the diagnosis No family history of deafness was present in any of these cases

Postoperatively the cases have been followed from a minimum of two months to a maximum of three years

### *History*

**Case 1 V H** This 8-year-old white female was first seen on 12.6.62 the chief problem according to the mother was marked difficulty in hearing since birth A school nurse, who had advised immediate examination stated that the child talked very little There was no history of maternal rubella

### *Physical examination*

The right tympanic membrane showed evidence of an old otitis media and consisted chiefly of a thin mobile neotympanum The Rinne test was negative The eustachian tube was readily inflated Nose and throat examination revealed no abnormalities Radiologic examination revealed infantile development of the mastoids Examination of the left ear revealed a large central perforation of the tympanic membrane At the time there was no discharge present in the middle ear mucosa appeared normal the ossicles were not visualized Rinne test was negative

### *Impression*

The findings indicated a possibility of an interruption of the ossicular chain in addition to a large central perforation Tympanoplasty with temporal fascia and canal skin graft was planned

### *Surgical findings and procedure*

Exploration of the left middle ear via the postauricular incision after the canal skin and temporal fascia grafts had been taken revealed limited motion of the long process of the incus After adhesions were removed from around the stapes, it was apparent that there was a complete absence of the annular ligament and that the bony footplate blended with the surrounding otic capsule There was a slight bluish tint to the bone of the otic capsule Mobilization of the stapes was not possible in this case Malleus and incus were normal and mobile Round window and fallopian canal appeared to be normal and no evidence of an aberrant facial nerve was seen Since no further pathology was present in the middle ear of mastoid

bone the tympanoplasty was completed in the usual manner by placing the temporal fascia graft upon the deepithelialized remnant of the tympanic membrane and replacing the canal skin graft in its normal position. The operative findings thus presented a diagnosis of congenital fixation of the stapes footplate.

#### *Preoperative impression (right)*

Since the audiometric findings in each ear were similar and since a congenital footplate was present in the left ear the same finding was anticipated in the right ear. In addition the possibility of ossicular fixation or interruption might be present.

This patient was referred to Dr. Howard P. House, who performed exploratory tympanotomy on 6.23.66.

#### *Surgical findings*

Exploratory tympanotomy revealed an intact ossicular chain, with a normal mobile stapes footplate. The annular ligament was complete and movement of the stapes elicited a round window reflex. Remainder of the middle ear was normal, however a faint bluish color was also noted in the otic capsule of this ear.

#### *Comment*

This case has presented a unique problem in diagnosis and certainly the only solution was in the exploratory tympanotomy. Similarity in the audiogram suggested similar findings. A congenital fixation of the stapes footplate was presented in the left ear; however in the right ear a normal mobile stapes was found. At the time of surgery House commented on his finding and called this an inner ear conductive deafness. The possible cause according to House (43) is an obstruction in the cochlear duct. To date he has seen fifty such cases and will report on this unusual finding when histopathologic studies are available. This case illustrates two distinct findings, one of which as yet cannot be embryologically explained.

#### *History*

Case 2 H. D. This 12 year-old white female was first seen on 9.24.64. Her chief complaint was loss of hearing in both ears for four years, during this period she had considerable difficulty in school.

#### *Past history*

Essentially negative.

#### *Family history*

Indicates a 10 year-old sister with normal hearing and the remainder of the family apparently has normal hearing.

*Physical examination*

Both auditory canals and tympanic membranes were normal eustachian tubes were readily inflated nose and throat examination was normal

*Audiometric findings*

The right ear reveals a flat curve of 40 dB ISO air conduction loss The left ear reveals a 30 dB air conduction loss. Bone conduction tests revealed normal cochlear function.

*Impression*

The presence of an air bone gap reveals the possibility of an ossicular fixation More specifically the possibility of a juvenile otosclerosis or a congenital footplate fixation.

*Surgical findings and procedure*

On 7/20/65 exploratory tympanotomy of the right ear revealed a fixed stapes footplate, which was markedly thickened at the periphery and thinner at the center There was no evidence of increased vascularity around the oval window No definite annular ligament was seen A stapedectomy was performed using a stainless steel prosthesis and gelfoam placed over the oval window

*Postoperative results*

After one year the right ear showed an average loss of 16 decibels.

*Comment*

This case illustrates a typical congenital fixation of the stapes footplate Since no unusual difficulty was encountered in performing the stapedectomy it can be assumed that the union with the otic capsule was not an entirely osseous one There was not an unusual flow of perilymph encountered during the removal of the stapes footplate.

*History*

Case 3 DeC This 6-year-old white female was first seen on 3/28/66 According to her mother she had difficulty in hearing for approximately 3 years or more She has had repeated attacks of otitis media with particular involvement of the left ear Audiometric examination at school revealed a definite loss in the left ear

*Past history*

Negative except for measles chickenpox and an adenotonsillectomy which was performed at the age of 3½

*Physical examination*

The right tympanic membrane was slightly thickened, injected and somewhat mobile. The left tympanic membrane was thickened, injected, slightly bulging and immobile.

*Surgical findings and procedure*

On 7.23.66 exploratory tympanotomy revealed a moderate amount of thick tenacious discharge in the left middle ear. This discharge was removed with an aspirator. No gross abnormality of the ossicles was noted, however palpation of the stapes head did not produce a round window reflex. Examination of the stapes footplate disclosed the absence of a complete annular ligament and removal of the mucosa around the anterior portion of the footplate showed that it blended into the bone of the otic capsule. Elsewhere there appeared to be an indistinct separation of the footplate and otic capsule. This footplate did not appear to be as thick as the footplate in case II. Small puncture holes were made around the stapes footplate and pressure upon the head of the stapes appeared to produce a round window reflex. No evidence of an aberrant facial nerve was noted and the fallopian canal appeared to be intact.

*Postoperative results*

A one month postoperative audiogram revealed an average dB gain of approximately 15 dB.

*Comment*

Audiometric examination preoperatively of both ears shows the effect of mass increase due to the presence of fluid behind the tympanic membrane. In the left ear it is superimposed upon a fixed stapes footplate. This case illustrates a relatively thin congenital stapes footplate which was mobilized with considerable difficulty. If re-fixation should occur a stapedectomy will be performed at a later date.



Table 1 Long term results of surgery on patients with congenital footplate fixation

Case	Ear	Age At Operation	Pre-operative Loss Average Decibels	Surgical Procedures	Post-operative Average Decibels	Time
1	R	52	55	Mobilization (footplate shattered)	28 (ISO)	8 yrs
	L	50	57	Mobilization (footplate shattered)	32 (ISO)	9 yrs
2	R	32	58	Stapes Mobilization	20	2 1/2 yrs
	L		35	Stapes Mobilization	10	1 1/2 yrs
3	R	49	33	Stapes Mobilization	8	4 1/2 yrs
	L	50	50	Stapes Mobilization	12	5 yrs
4	R	10-1/2	40	Stapes Mobilization	20 (ISO)	8 yr
	L	11	43 (ISO)	Stapedectomy	0	3-1/2 mos
5	R	19	40	Mobilization	5	6 mos
	L	20	30	Mobilization	0	3 mos
6	R	17	40	Mobilization	5	15 mos
7	R	28	52	Mobilization	42 (ISO)	7 yrs
		33	53 (ISO)	Stapedectomy	38	1 yr
	L	36	60	Stapedectomy	17	1 yr
8	R	17	37	Stapes Mobilization (footplate shattered)	11	6 yrs
	L	14	13	Stapes Mobilization	55 (ISO)	9 yrs
9	R	47	40	Stapes Exploration	40	9 mos.
		49	40	Forerotation	30 (ISO)	6 yrs
	L	48	42	Mobilization	20 (ISO)	8 yrs
10	R	60	50	Mobilization	17 (ISO)	7 yrs
	L	62	78	Mobilization	43 (ISO)	3 yrs
11	R	32	37	Mobilization	10	2 1/2 yrs
		34	40	Mobilization	30	3 yrs
	L	35	30	Stapedectomy with Veil Plug	15	1 1/2 yrs
12	R	22	55	Mobilization	30	2 yrs
		25	30	Stapedectomy	80 (ISO)	3 yrs
		23	60	Mobilization	53	6 yrs
	L	26	63	Stapedectomy (drill-out with P.E. strut)	35	6 yrs
13	R	51	58	Mobilization	58	1 yr
		52	53	Stapedectomy	17	5 yrs
14	R	30	60	Stapes Exploration (mobilization attempted)	50	4 mos
		33	65	Stapedectomy with Wire Veil Plug	48 (ISO)	5-1/2 yrs
	L	31	48	Mobilization	19 (ISO)	4 yrs
15	R	49	50	Stapes Mobilization	22	1 yr
	L	54	30	Stapedectomy	18 (ISO)	2 yrs
16	R	46	50	Stapes Exploration	50	
		47	50	Forerotation	25 (ISO)	6 yrs
	L	48	48	Mobilization	8 (ISO)	5 yrs
17	R	60	73	Mobilization (shattered footplate)	90	5 yrs
			60	Stapedectomy	50	3 yrs
	L	6	55	Stapedectomy	37 (ISO)	2 yrs

## LONG TERM SURGICAL RESULTS OF CONGENITAL FOOTPLATE FIXATION

This presentation includes the long term review and analysis of 30 ears operated on by Howard P House and represents the largest number of cases reported to date. The initial records of these cases have been made available through the courtesy of Howard P House. Originally 28 cases of congenital footplate fixation were explored by tympanotomy. These cases represented 1% of House's (10) mobilized cases.

The author has conducted his own research on the long term results, and has presented his own analysis of these cases. It will be noted that there is a difference in the number of the initial cases and the number of cases that could be reached for long term study. This indicates the difficulty encountered in any long term study in maintaining contact with patients. Contacting 17 patients out of 28 may be considered a better than average response.

All of the 28 ears on which mobilization of the footplate was performed showed evidence of an initial hearing gain except two. Of these 23 mobilized footplates, six cases showed evidence of refixation. Of the total 30 ears which had been operated upon either by stapes mobilization, stapedectomy or fenestration, 23 have maintained a practical 30 dB level or better at the most recent test.

Nineteen of the operated ears have maintained results for one year or longer and 12 have maintained the hearing gain for 3 years or longer. The longest duration that hearing has been maintained in any one ear is 8 years.

### COMMENT

All of these patients had good preoperative cochlear function indicating this to be a pure conductive loss. Although insufficient histologic studies have been done on the organ of Corti in cases of congenital footplate fixation, it is apparent that the cochlea was not involved in these cases. In contrast, otosclerosis may exhibit cochlear damage which is now thought to be due to vascular causes. Ruedi (44) has stated that the sensorineural changes are the result of vascular shunts which result in congestion of the cochlear veins.

Although this series of congenital footplates, which have been mobilized is very small as compared to the otosclerotic footplates which have been mobilized, there is less possibility of refixation in congenital footplates.

It would appear that the reason for this would be the absence of osteogenic activity such as would occur in an active otosclerotic focus.

In the ears in which stapedectomy was performed, there was no evidence of bony closure. This again would indicate a lack of osteogenic activity in the oval window area following surgery.

mild Embryopathie (Dargestellt nach den Untersuchungsbefunden bei 70 in den Jahren 1935-52 geborenen Kindern) *Z Laryng Rhinol Otol* 43 344-67 June 1964

23. Williams, D. H. M.: Principles of teratogenesis. Mod. of action of thalidomide. *Proceed Rg Soc. Med* 58 497-501 July 1965
24. M. d'A. Ignou, and B. Barr: Ear abnormalities and cranial nerve palsies in thalidomide children. *Arch. Otolaryngol* 80 136-140, Aug 1964
25. Livingston, G.: Congenital ear abnormalities due to thalidomide. *Proceed Rg Soc. Med* 58 493-497 July 1965.
26. Berg, N. O. and Lindgren, M.: Dose factors and morphology of delayed radiation lesion of the internal and middle ear in rabbits. *Acta. Oto-Laryngol* 58 313 Feb 1961
27. Shambaugh, G. E., Jr: Developmental anomalies of the sound conducting apparatus and their surgical correction. *Ann. Otolaryng Rhinol and Laryngol* 81 873, 1952.
28. Holmgren, L.: Stapedialitis in otosclerosis. *Acta. Oto-Laryngol* 49 219-223, Sept. 1957
29. Kelemen, G.: Malformation involving external, middle and internal ear with otosclerotic focus. *Arch. Otolaryngol* 37 183-188 Feb. 1943
30. Lindsay, J. R., Sanders, S. H. and Hager, G. T.: Histopathologic observations of so-called congenital fixation of the stapedial footplate. *The Laryngoscope* 70 1887 1962, Dec. 1962.
31. Sooy, P. A.: The management of middle ear lesions simulating otosclerosis. *Ann. Otol* 69 546-558, June 1960
32. Henner, R.: Congenital middle ear malformation. *Arch. Otolaryngol* 71 454-458, March 1960.
33. Hajek, E. F.: Conductive deafness of congenital origin. *J. Laryng* 75 371-88, 1961.
34. Eaeher, F.: Otosklerose und kongenital Stapesankylose. *Oto-Rhino Laryngol* [L.] 1 Klein Bern 21/2 94-110, 1962.
35. Edwards, W. O.: Congenital middle ear deafness with anomalies of the face. *J. Laryngol and Otol* 78 153-163, 1964
36. Ombredanne, M.: Chirurgie des aplasia mineures. Ses resultats dans les grandes surdités congénitales par malformations ossiculaires. *Ann. Otolaryngol (P. r.)* 31 201-221 April 1964
37. Walz, T. E.: Fenestration and stapedectomy cases. *Arch. Otolaryngol* 82 348-354, Oct 1963
38. Banham, T. M.: Congenital columella type tapers. *The Journal of Laryngology and Otolaryng* 80 98-100, Jan. 1966.
39. Holzhauser, A. M., Gregg, J. B., and Clifford, S.: A search for stapes footplate fixation in an Indian population, prehistoric and historic. *Am. J. Phys. Anthropol.* 23 33-40, March 1965.
40. Caparosa, R. J. and Klassen, H.: Congenital anomalies of the stapes and facial nerve. *J. Otolaryngol* 83 420-421 Ma 1966
41. Hemmrich, F. A.: Intra-uterine and neonatal otitis: Study of 7 cases including otitic meningitis. *Arch. Otolaryng* 23 78-92, J. 1936.
42. Goodhill, V.: The fixed malleus syndrome. *Trans. Am. Acad. Ophthalmol. and Otolaryngol* 78 370-380, May-June 1966.
43. House, H. P.: Personal communication
44. Raedt, L., and Spoendlin, H.: Pathogenesis of sensorineural deafness in otosclerosis. *Ann. Otol. Rhinol and Laryngol* 75 824-831 Ju 1966

## LONG TERM SURGICAL RESULTS OF CONGENITAL FOOTPLATE FIXATION

This presentation includes the long term review and analysis of 30 ears operated on by Howard P. House and represents the largest number of cases reported to date. The initial records of these cases have been made available through the courtesy of Howard P. House. Originally 26 cases of congenital footplate fixation were explored by tympanotomy. These cases represented 1% of House's (10) mobilized cases.

The author has conducted his own research on the long term results, and has presented his own analysis of these cases. It will be noted that there is a difference in the number of the initial cases and the number of cases that could be reached for long term study. This indicates the difficulty encountered in any long term study in maintaining contact with patients. Contacting 17 patients out of 26 may be considered a better than average response.

All of the 25 ears on which mobilization of the footplate was performed showed evidence of an initial hearing gain except two. Of these 23 mobilized footplates, six cases showed evidence of reflexion. Of the total 30 ears which had been operated upon either by stapes mobilization, stapedectomy or fenestration, 23 have maintained a practical 30 dB level or better at the most recent test.

Nineteen of the operated ears have maintained results for one year or longer and 12 have maintained the hearing gain for 3 years or longer. The longest duration that hearing has been maintained in any one ear is 8 years.

### COMMENT

All of these patients had good preoperative cochlear function indicating this to be a pure conductive loss. Although insufficient histologic studies have been done on the organ of Corti in cases of congenital footplate fixation, it is apparent that the cochlea was not involved in these cases. In contrast, otosclerosis may exhibit cochlear damage which is now thought to be due to vascular causes. Ruedi (44) has stated that the sensorineural changes are the result of vascular shunts which result in congestion of the cochlear veins.

Although this series of congenital footplates, which have been mobilized is very small as compared to the otosclerotic footplates which have been mobilized, there is less possibility of reflexion in congenital footplates.

It would appear that the reason for this would be the absence of osteogenic activity such as would occur in an active otosclerotic focus.

In the ears in which stapedectomy was performed, there was no evidence of bony closure. This again would indicate a lack of osteogenic activity in the oval window area following surgery.

## CONCLUSION

1 Embryological and histologic studies have shown that congenital footplate fixation is an entity resulting from the failure of the annular ligament to develop. This is due to the retardation or failure of the normal maturation process in which the lamina stapedialis separates from the otic capsule.

2 Although studies have shown that in a greater number of cases of congenital deafness, only the middle ear or the labyrinth may be involved. Some cases of congenital fixation of the stapes footplate with mixed deafness may occur such as in rubella.

3 Diagnosis of congenital footplate fixation may be confirmed by audiometric findings, lack of progression and classical findings upon performing an exploratory tympanotomy.

4 When possible the treatment of congenital fixation of the stapes footplate should be mobilization of the stapes and if this is not possible, a stapedectomy may be performed.

5 Footplate fixation with complete fusion of the stapes footplate with the surrounding otic capsule should be treated by fenestration. In children fenestration should be delayed at least until adolescence.

6 This long term analysis of surgical results on congenital fixation of the stapes footplate has revealed that refixation or bony closure of the oval window is less likely to occur than in the cases of fixation of the stapes footplate involved with otosclerosis.

7 A wide search by the author among leading otologists and temporal bone laboratories in this country has failed to produce any histopathologic material. The two places where histopathologic material was present were the Histopathological Laboratory of the Department of Otolaryngology (30) at the University of Chicago, and the temporal bone bank of the Los Angeles Foundation of Otolaryngology.

8 More cases of congenital fixation of the stapes footplate may exist than we think, due to the fact that cases may exist in children which may not be diagnosed due to its relative rarity and possibly cases go unrecognized at the time of surgery due to the surgeon's unfamiliarity with this condition.

9 Studies of the effect of various chemicals or virus agents on the genes, with subsequent inhibition of RNA synthesis and its effect upon the cell or organ at a particular stage of development may possibly yield the answer to the formation of a congenital fixation of the stapes footplate.

## REFERENCES

1. Hough, J. V. D.: Malformations and anatomical variations seen in middle ear during operation for mobilization of the stapes. *Laryngoscope* 67: 1337-1379 Aug. 1958.
2. Hough, J. V. D.: Congenital malformations of the middle ear. *Arch. Otolaryngology* 72: 325-342, Sept. 1962.
3. Wedenberg, E.: Hereditary background of auditory impairment. *Acta Oto-Laryng* 49: 431-452, 1938.
4. Anson, G. J., Hanson, J. S., and Riechman, S. F.: Early embryology of the auditory ossicles and associated structures in relation to certain anomalies observed clinically. *Ann. Otol. Rhinol. and Laryngol.* 69: 428-447 June 1960.
5. Anson, B. J., Karabin, J. E., and Martin, J.: Stapes, fissula ant fenestram and associated structures in man I From embryos of seven weeks to that of twenty-one weeks. *Archives of Otolaryngology* 78: 676-697 Nov. 1938.
6. Anson, B. J., Karabin, J. E., and Martin, J.: Stapes, fissula ant fenestram and associated structures in man II. From the fetus to term to the adult of seventy. *Arch. Otolaryngology* 79: 929-973, 1939.
7. Caldwell, E. W., and Anson, B. J.: Stapes, fissula ant fenestram and associated structures in man III. From embryo 6.7 to 50 mm in length. *Arch. Otolaryngol.* 36: 891-923, Dec. 1942.
8. Anson, B. J., and Bass, T. H.: Development of the stapes of the human ear. *Quart. Bull. Y. Rheumatism C. Med. School* 33: 44-69 1939.
9. Anson, B. J., and Caldwell, E. W.: Stapes, fissula ant fenestram and associated structures in man IV. From fetuses 75 to 160 mm in length. *Arch. Otolaryngology* 37: 650-671 1943.
10. Anson, B. J., and Caldwell, E. W.: Stapes, fissula ant fenestram and associated structures in man V. From the fetus of 160 mm (11 months) to newborn infant. *Arch. Otolaryngology* 48: 263-300, Sept. 1948.
11. Elliot, G. B., and Elliot, K. A.: Some pathological, radiological and clinical implications of the precocious development of the human ear. *Laryngoscope* 74: 1169-1170, 1964.
12. House, H. P.: Differential diagnosis between otosclerosis and congenital footplate fixation. *Ann. Otol.* 67: 849-87 Sept. 1958.
13. Altman, F.: Problem of so-called congenital lesions of the ear: Histologic report of new case. *Arch. Otol.* 80: 759 Dec. 1949.
14. Kalmann, O., and Gottleib, B.: Pathohistology of fetal ears after maternal rubella. *Laryngoscope* 69: 170, 1959.
15. Fraser, H. R.: Profound childhood deafness. *J. Med. Genet.* 1: 139-140, 1964.
16. Connolly, J. P.: Viral and drug hazards in pregnancy. *Clinical Pediatrics*, 3: 587-590, Oct. 1964.
17. Richards, C. S.: Middle ear changes in rubella deafness. *Arch. Otolaryngol.* 80: 48-54, July 1964.
18. Kalmann, O.: Rubella and deafness. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 83: 820-82, June 1966.
19. Kohnstamm, D. S.: Vomiting of pregnancy and drugs. *Brit. Med. J.* 2: 1476, Dec. 1963.
20. Mellin, G. W.: Drugs in the first trimester of pregnancy and the fetal life of homo-sapiens. *Am. J. Obst. Gynec.* 90: 1169-1180, Dec. 1964.
21. Willmer, M. M.: Maternal deficiencies of the fetus and newborn relationships to drug effects. *Clin. Pediat.* 4: 3-12, Jan. 1965.
22. Kleinsasser, O., and Schlothane, R.: Die Ohrmolebildgen im Rahmen der Thalido-

- mild Embryopathie (Dargestellt nach den Untersuchungsbefunden bei 70 in den Jahren 1950-62 geborenen Kindern) *Z Laryng Rhinol Otol* 43 344-67 J n 1964
23. Wollmer D H. M.: Principles of teratogenesis. Mode of action of thalidomide. *Proceed. Roy Soc Med* 58 497-501 July 1965.
24. M d'Avignon, and B. Barr: Ear abnormalities and cranial nerve palsies in thalidomide children. *Arch Otolaryngol* 80 138-140 Aug. 1964
25. Livingston, H. Congenital ear abnormalities due to thalidomide. *Proceed Roy Soc Med* 58 493-497 July 1965
26. Berg, A O and Lidgren, M: Dose factors and morphology of delayed radiation lesions of the internal and middle ear in rabbits. *Acta. Oto-Laryngol* 56 312, Feb. 1961
27. Shambaugh, G E., J. Developmental malles of the sound conducting apparatus and their surgical correction. *Ann. Otolaryng Rhinol and Laryngol* 61 873, 1952.
28. Holmgren, L.: Stapediolysis in otosclerosis. *Acta Oto-Laryngol* 19 219-233, Sept 1957
29. Kelemen, H.: Myrmall involvement of external, middle and internal ear with otosclerotic focus. *Arch Otolaryngol* 37 183-198, Feb. 1942.
30. Lindsay J R., Sanders, S. H. and Berger H. T.: Histopathologic observations in so-called genital fistula of the stapedial footplate. *The Laryngoscope* 70 1857 1962, Dec 1960
31. Sooy F A.: The mesegment of middle ear lesion imitating otosclerosis. *Ann Otol* 69 540-553, J 1960
32. Henner R.: Congenital middle ear malformations. *Arch Otolaryngol* 71 434-458, March 1960
33. Hjek, E. F. Conductive deafness of congenital origin. *J Laryng* 75 371-84, 1964
34. Esche F. Otosklerose und kongenital Stapes kylose. *Oto-Rhin Laryngol* 1 in Kl f Bern 21/2 III 110, 1962.
35. Edwards, W G.: Congenital middle ear deafness with malles of the face. *J Laryngol and Ot* 78 182 183, 1964
36. Ombredan M.: Chirurgie des plaies mineures. See results dans les grandes lésions congénitales par malformation ossiculaires. *Ann Otolaryngol (Paris)* 81 201-221 April 1964
37. Walsh, T E.: Frenectomy and stapectomy ear. *Arch Otolaryngol* 82 346-354 Oct 1963
38. Banham, T M.: Congenital columella type tapes. *The Journal of Laryngology and Otolaryng* 80 93-100, J n. 1960.
39. Hishenter A M. Gregg, J B and Clifford, S.: A search for stapes footplate fixation in India population, prehistoric and historic. *Am J Phys. Anthropol* 23 33-40, March 1963
40. Casparosa, R. J. and Klassen, D.: Congenital anomalies of the stapes and facial nerve. *Arch of Otolaryngol* 83 420-421 M 1966
41. Hemmrich, F A.: Intracranial and neonatal otitis. Study of 7 cases including otitic meningitis. *Arch Otolaryng* 83 78-82, J 1936.
42. Goodhill, V.: The fixed malleus syndrome. *Trans Am Acad Ophthalmol and Otolaryngol* 60 370-388, May-June 1966.
43. House H P.: Personal communication.
44. Ruedi, L., and Spoendlin H.: Pathogenesis of sensorineural disorders in otosclerosis. *Ann Otol Rhinol and Laryngol* 75 524-531 J 1966.





PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wikströms Boktryckeri Aktiebolag*

UPPSALA 1 60

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 244

**TYMPANIC MEMBRANE GRAFTS  
OF FULL THICKNESS SKIN,  
FASCIA AND CARTILAGE WITH ITS  
PERICHONDRIUM**

*An Experimental and Clinical Investigation*

BENGT SALÉN

ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVÄGEN 16, 118 23 STOCKHOLM



ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA  
SUPPLEMENTUM 244

F I N T E R D M T H N L A Y O Y  
( B F O H M D H N M.D.), T H N I T T U M J  
T H D H E L A Y Y  
(H. D. G. ARNOLDSEN, JR., M.D.), THE HOSPITAL OF BOSTON, SWEDEN

TYMPANIC MEMBRANE GRAFTS  
OF  
FULL THICKNESS SKIN,  
FASCIA AND  
CARTILAGE WITH ITS PERICHONDRIUM

## AN EXPERIMENTAL AND CLINICAL INVESTIGATION

82

BENGT SALÉN



*To My Wife*



# Contents

I	INTRODUCTION	7
II	MYRINGOPLASTY — SURVEY OF THE LITERATURE	9
	Historical notes	9
	Skin grafting	10
	Connective tissue grafting	12
III	HISTOLOGIC STUDY OF EXPERIMENTAL TYMPANIC CLOSURE IN CATS	13
	Introduction	15
	Material and methods	15
	Results	17
	Discussion	28
	Conclusion	32
IV	COCHLEAR MICROPHONIC RESPONSE AFTER MYRINGOPLASTY	33
	An experimental study in the cat	33
	Introduction	33
	Material	33
	Methods	31
	Results	36
	Discussion	42
	Conclusion	46
V	FULL THICKNESS SKIN, FASCIA AND CARTILAGE WITH ITS PERICHONDRIUM IN MYRINGOPLASTY	47
	A summary and analysis of the results of 232 consecutive clinical operations	47
	Introduction	47
	Material and methods	48
	Results	51
	Discussion	55
	Conclusion	57
VI	GENERAL DISCUSSION	58
VII	GENERAL SUMMARY	63
VIII	ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS	67
IX	REFERENCES	68





# I Introduction

During the last decade great efforts have been made to improve the tympano-plastic surgery introduced by Zöllner and Wullstein in the early 1930s. To this end a large number of tissue materials have been proposed as the most suitable for drum grafts (Table 1). As a result of development in recent years there has been an increasing tendency to discard epithelium-covered grafts in favour of various tissues of a purely mesenchymal nature. That any one of these is definitely superior to the others has not been proved.

During this development divergent opinions have been voiced for instance while Guilford (1962) declared the use of external body skin to belong to the historic past, Wullstein (1966) has defended the procedure pointing out that the occasionally unsatisfactory results obtained with this material were possibly due to deficient surgical technique rather than to shortcomings of the tissue. That the views on the other tissues used in tympanic grafting are no less divergent is suggested by the fact that new types of graft have constantly been proposed, even when those already introduced by their advocates have yielded excellent results.

While several of these tissues have made only a transient appearance in the literature others have found comparatively frequent clinical use. It seems, however, reasonable to assume that no one otologist can personally perform enough cases to evaluate all these tissues from the aspect of tympanic closure and hearing restoration. Since only a few studies of the various types of tissues have been performed in laboratory animals, it has been necessary to rely on the clinical results reported by different otosurgeons. The fact, however, that such reports have almost invariably been concerned with one particular graft tissue renders them unreliable as a basis for comparison because the reported results will have been influenced to an unknown extent by various conditions, such as the state of the ears operated on, the length of the follow up period, and the skill of the surgeon. It is therefore understandable that there are still no truly representative comparisons between the various types of tympanic grafts.

The present investigation was undertaken with the object of comparing autogenous full-thickness skin, fascia and elastic cartilage with its perichondrium with regard to their suitability as tympanic membrane grafts. Of prime interest was the possibility of obtaining with these materials a permanent tympanic closure: the result of the transplantation from the aspect of a acoustic function was also assessed.

The tissue transplants were studied in experimental grafts in the cat and in connection with clinical myringoplastic operations in man. Answers were sought to the following questions:

- 1 In what way and to what extent do these tissues integrate when transplanted to perforated but otherwise normal tympanic membranes?
- 2 In what way and to what extent do these tissues integrate when transplanted to post inflammatory fibrotic drum remnants?
- 3 If an integration and closure of the perforation has been obtained what effect do these tissues have on the transmissions properties of the middle ear?

In an attempt to answer the first of these questions and perhaps to obtain enlightenment on the third the three tissues were used in experimental closure of fresh traumatically produced perforations of the ear drum in the cat. The membranes so formed were then examined from the aspect of morphology and function.<sup>1</sup> To answer the second question and possibly to gain a further insight into the third a uniform series of 252 clinical myringo-plastic operations were followed up. In these operations the three types of tissue had been used consecutively and to about the same extent.

<sup>1</sup> These studies were performed in collaboration with Dr J. A. W. Lund, Assistant Professor at the Department of Otolaryngology Karolinska Sjukhuset Stockholm and Dr M. H. Bergstedt, Assistant Professor at the Department of Otolaryngology The University of Lund.

## II Myringoplasty—Survey of the Literature

### *Historical notes*

In 1878 Berthold reported 2 cases in which he had closed tympanic membrane perforations with free full-thickness skin grafts—with initial success. He designated this surgical procedure "myringoplastik" and stressed the importance of properly preparing the vascular bed. He also pointed to the difficulty of getting external body skin to survive in the warm moist environment of the bottom of the external auditory canal. Elv (1881) and Tange-mann (1884) reported 9 and 2 similar operations, respectively, all of which were judged to be initially successful. After longer follow up periods, however, Berthold (1889) expressed negative views on the suitability of skin for myringoplasty and tried in a few cases to use instead corneal tissue from the rabbit.

*Table 1. Drum graft tissues proposed since 1952.*

Graft tissue	Author	Graft type
External body skin	Moritz (1952), Zöllner (1953), Wallstein (1953)	autologous
Amniotic membrane	Schriempf (1954), Verilub (1966)	homostatic
Mental skin	Freuehaer (1953), Pfister et al. (1959)	autologous
Mucous membrane of the cheek	Hall (1956), Borisova (1963)	autologous
Dermis	Burian (1958) Reed (1963)	homostatic ologous
Cornea	Holewinski (1958), Forman (1960) Plotkes et al. (1963)	homologous heterostatic
Pariosteum	Charles-Domenach (1959), Bocca et al. (1959)	autologous
Fascia	Örtengren (1959), Heermann (1961) Jantack (1966)	homostatic
Vein	Shea (1960), Tabb (1960) Schiff et al. (1963) King (1961), Williams et al. (1965)	autologous homostatic homostatic
Pariosteum	Birch (1961)	ologous
Dura mater	Preobrazhensky (1961), Albrite (1966)	homologous
Adipose tissue	Rungberg (1962), Sterkers (1964)	autologous
Perichondrium	Goodhill (1963)	
Cartilage with its perichondrium	Holmgren (1963), James (1963), Salén (1963)	ologous
Pericardium	Trombetta (1963)	homologous
Tympanic membrane	Chalat (1961), Marquet (1966)	
Umbilical cord		
artery	Hsiao et al. (1961)	homostatic
Collagen	Salén et al. (1965), Patterson (1967)	heterostatic
Heart ab. tissue	Corrigan (1963)	homostatic

As the above attempts to close drum perforations with free tissue grafts apparently did not come up to expectations, interest in the method lapsed until the beginning of the 1950s, by which time situation had undergone a transformation. The use of external body skin was again advocated as a graft material in myringoplasty this time by Zöllner (1952) and Wullstein (1952). In a few years, however, differences in opinion on its suitability for drum grafts led to the testing and clinical application of other tissues (Table 1).

### *Skin grafting*

Wullstein (1952) started using free retroauricular skin grafts of three-quarters thickness, while Moritz (1952) and Zöllner (1952) preferred the pedicular type. Before long, however, Wullstein (1953) changed to the full thickness skin grafts and Zöllner (1954) abandoned the pedicle on realizing that it was of no value in the nutrition of the transplant. Guilford *et al* (1958) likewise advocated retroauricular skin but preferred the split-thickness type. House *et al* (1961) shared this opinion: they considered that with this material the conditions for incorporation should be better because of the greater number of transected capillaries open to the vascular bed.

Although the external body skin graft was the type in by far the most common use in myringoplasty throughout the 1950s remarkably few reports of results obtained with this technique were published, and of those many were deficient in various respects: for instance only the functional or the anatomic results were reported and the follow up period was often not given.

In general the first results to be reported were good but this situation did not last as is evident in some measure from table 2. Lebo (1963) stated that in myringoplasty with full thickness skin postoperative perforations might be expected in 75 per cent and still more if split thickness skin is used.

Wullstein (1959) maintained that full thickness skin cannot provide a functionally perfect eardrum. Because skin is acoustically inferior to the normal tympanic membrane, there will always remain an air-bone gap of at least 15 dB. In an experimental study Allen *et al* (1960) found a moderate rise of the air-conduction threshold already at 100 Hz, at 4000 Hz the loss was about 20 dB.

When Peer (1955) pointed out that after a successful transplantation to a heterotopic environment skin will retain its biologic character unchanged this has long been a familiar fact. As external body skin differs both histologically and physiologically from the natural drum tissue it follows that its use in myringoplasty may imply permanent implantation in the restored membrane. If foreign structures such as glands and hairs

In animal experiments Burlan *et al* (1959) found that following a typical autotransplantation of external body skin the epithelial crests that are

Table 2 Reported percentages of closed perforations following external body skin grafting

Author	Year	N. of cases	Follow-up period (years)	Perforations closed (%)
FULL THICKNESS SKIN				
Bandtlow	1960	300 <sup>a</sup>	3	94
Agazzi	1960	292	> 1	70
Thorburn	1960	92	> 0.5	70
Beules	1961	87	—	75
Houme et al.	1961	39	—	72
Guilford	1962	187	—	89
Mawson et al.	1962	63	1-5	41
Wright	1963	207	—	89
Conway et al.	1963	87	—	60
Mitchell	1967	27	> 3	70
SPLIT THICKNESS SKIN				
House et al.	1961	31	—	72
Guilford	1962	195	—	68
Wright	1963	195	—	66
Örtengren	1964	20	2	15

<sup>a</sup> 800 operated on, 300 followed up.

absent in the squamous epithelium of the eardrum not only penetrated deeper into the papillary portion of the dermis but also formed epithelial cysts there which closely resembled graft cholesteatoma.

Beleckert (1958) and Schuknecht *et al* (1960) showed that glands and hair follicles can lead to perforations both directly and indirectly the former would be the case if these preformed ducts, lined with squamous epithelium, were transected on removal or tailoring of the graft, and the latter if they were widened so much through epithelitis or cyst formation that eruption into the middle ear resulted.—In the retroauricular skin, however Wullstein (1960) disputed the occurrence of such structures reaching into the deepest portion of the dermis.

The accumulation of desquamation products through the absence of any migratory power of the cells of external body skin is generally accepted as a factor predisposing for inflammatory reactions and the formation of cysts. Guilford (1962) found dermatitis in nearly 10 per cent and epidermoid cysts in about 3 per cent of the cases in whom full thickness skin had been used in myringoplasty and in a corresponding series Wright (1963) reported inflammatory changes and cysts in nearly 8 and 7 per cent, respectively.

Thorough studies have been made of the development of the circulation in autogenous skin grafts. Conway *et al*. (1951) showed that during the first 24 hours the vessels of the graft are contracted, with no circulation, so that fluid exchange between graft and bed in this period occurs

only by diffusion according to Hley *et al* (1950) this plasmatic circulation is found as early as 20 minutes after myringoplasty. After about 24 hours, however, the capillaries of the graft are dilated and some then lie in direct contact with the vascular orifices in the bed so that a "mouth-to-mouth" circulation is established (Hynes, 1954). This is, however, insufficient for the nutrition of the graft to ensure this it is necessary for vascular buds from the bed to penetrate into the graft but according to Converse *et al* (1956) there is a delay of about 3 days before blood begins to circulate in these new vessels. Then the corium is supplied at first, as is manifested according to Cränberg *et al* (1964) by the resumption of the metabolic activity of the connective tissue cells of the graft at about this time.

In ordinary external body skin transplantation Schäfer (1949) found regressive changes to be more common in full thickness than in split thickness grafts. The opposite situation that obtains in myringoplasty is due to the perforation as Amiel *et al* (1960) have shown experimentally. Because of the anatomy of the vessels in the skin in thin split skin grafts the part of the epidermis situated over the perforation will have no preformed vascular communications with the bed whereas in full thickness skin grafts these are provided by the vessels of the deep portion of the dermis.

The reduced vascular bed due to the presence of the perforation will not always meet the requirements of the skin graft, especially as regards the oxygen supply of the epithelial cells (Rambo 1961 Thorburn 1961 Cullford 1962 Goodhill *et al.*, 1964). Degenerative reactions in the epidermal portion will ensue that decrease the resistance of the graft to bacteria.

### Connective tissue grafting

The knowledge that the epithelium of the ear drum easily regenerates so long as the vascular lamina propria is intact, together with the experience gained in myringoplasty with external body skin led to a simultaneous, worldwide adoption of connective tissue transplants instead of epithelial grafts. The intention was to use the connective tissue to replace only the substance lost in the lamina propria leaving the corresponding defects in the surface epithelium to be covered by the regeneration from the environment. As a tissue graft suitable for myringoplasty should have a high survival capacity and, after integration bear a close resemblance to the aponeurotic lamina propria several types of connective tissues were tried out.

Periosteum from ilium has been recommended by Claros-Domenech (1959) and Bocca *et al* (1959) while Cuertler (1963) Berger *et al* (1965) and Wells (1965) preferred the same material but obtained from the mastoid region. Fascia was introduced by Orlegren (1950) Heermann (1961) and Storrs (1961) all of whom took the graft from the temporal muscle fascia.

Cartilage and perichondrium from the nasal septum has been used by Jansen (1963) and Salén (1963) while Goodhill (1963) advocated perichondrium from the tragus which Brockman (1963) also used.

While an external body skin graft can be adapted to the edges of the perforation in only one way the non-epithelial connective tissue graft can be attached to the outer or inner surface of the de-epithelialized drum remnants (Wright 1963) or placed between the connective tissue frame and the epithelium of the membrane fragments (Plester 1963)

From the literature it is evident that the results of myringoplasty with connective tissue were good from the standpoint of both function and closure of the perforation (Table 3) Austin (1964) obtained closure of the perforation in 93 per cent and Storrs (1966) in 90 per cent of their series. Using connective tissue grafts, Portmann (1965) also obtained functionally acceptable restoration in 82 per cent of his cases

From a histologic standpoint fascia, periosteum and perichondrium are extremely closely related variants of aponeurotic connective tissue being composed chiefly of fibrocytes and collagenous fibres deriving from them (Stearns, 1940)

The comparatively low oxygen requirement of connective tissue means that tympanic grafts of this material integrate more easily with a deficient vascular bed (Burian, 1958 Heermann 1961 Thorburn 1963) Moreover the relatively primitive nature of the connective tissues involving a certain degree of weakness in their biologic character facilitates the creation of a

*Table 3 Reported percentage of closed perforations following connective tissue grafting*

Author	Year	No. of cases	Follow-up period (months)	Perforations closed (%)
<b>FASCIA</b>				
Heermann	1962	55		90
Palva	1963	24	4—24	100
Harponen	1961	30		100
Örtengren	1964	87	24	81
Charland	1965	10		80
Nielsen	1965	27	6—30	78
Saary	1965	20		80
Storrs	1966	301	36	90
Wright	1967	97		98
<b>PERIOSTEUM</b>				
Wright	1963	20		100
Berger et al.	1965	300		98
Wells	1966	40		90
<b>PERICHONDRIUM</b>				
Goodhill et al.	1964	15	1—6	100
Brockman	1963	30	3—20	97



restored drum resembling the natural tympanic membrane (Belckert 1962 Perret 1963 Portmann, 1964)

Although fascia, periosteum and perichondrium are almost identical histologically; they differ slightly from the clinical standpoint Wallstein (1963) and Kley (1963) found that fascia grafts granulate too much thus retarding the regeneration of the mesothelial epithelium. Because of a greater homogeneity a graft of periosteum or perichondrium adapts itself better to the vascular bed than does the fascia transplant (Wright, 1966). This is true especially of perichondrium from the tragus, whose natural vaulting is directly adaptable to the outward concave surface of the tympanic membrane (Goodhill 1967). The prospective osteogenic tendency of periosteum was pointed out by Zöllner (1963). After identical observations Wright (1967) abandoned periosteum for fascia or perichondrium the latter is considered to display no chondrogenic tendency (Goodhill 1961 1967).

# III Histologic Study of Experimental Tympanic Closure in Cats

by

BENGT SALÉN M D and JAN WERSÄLL, M D

N H D YH NY N L NY Y  
 (HEAD H H H D H H D), H UNI Y H I  
 D H D H H Y Y Y  
 ( D CA L I H H R, M. D), KA KA OJCKHC H H H

## Introduction

Surgical closure of persistent tympanic membrane perforations by means of tissue transplantation is a generally accepted method, though the tissue originally recommended for this purpose, namely external body skin, is no longer in common use. Curiously enough, like the original skin, practically all the newer tissues that have been adopted as drum grafts have been tested directly on human subjects, without the preliminary studies on animals that are customary in other fields of reconstructive transplantation surgery. Even in the case of materials that have been in general clinical use for a period, parallel animal studies of their behaviour in closure of the ear drum perforations have been remarkably few. Withers *et al* (1963, 1965) have examined autologous fascia, vein and canal skin in the cat, Chalat (1964) homologous tympanic membrane in the frog, Guilford *et al* (1964) autologous vein in the dog, Richards *et al* (1965) autologous and homologous vein in the cat, Williams *et al* (1965) homostatic vein in the dog, Watson *et al* (1965) autologous fascia in the cat, and Salén *et al* (1965) and Patterson (1967) heterostatic collagen in the cat.

The object of the present study was to examine in laboratory animals the integration of some common types of autogenous tympanic membrane grafts, namely fascia, full thickness skin and cartilage with its perichondrium, when transplanted to perforated but otherwise normal drum remnants. The last two would appear not to have been used previously in experimental myringoplasty in animals.

## Material and methods

The study was performed on 22 cats weighing between 2 and 4 kg. In 9 of these animals bilateral, and in 13 unilateral a fresh perforation of the drum, produced traumatically, was closed with autogenous grafts of full-thickness skin, fascia and cartilage with its perichondrium.

In all 31 ears the operation and treatment were standardized. Anaesthesia was induced by means of an intraperitoneal injection of 42 mg pentobarbitone sodium (BP) per kg of body weight. Throughout the operation strict surgical sterility was maintained. The drum was reached from a retroauricular incision after the mental canal had been opened about 4 mm laterally of the tympanic ring. A central perforation 3–5 mm in diameter was produced by excising part of the drum with Zöllner's tympanoplasty instruments; an operation microscope (Zeiss Epitknooskop) was used. The perforation was situated mainly in the more accessible ventral quadrants. After careful de-epithelialization of the outer surface of the drum remnant the defect was closed with the selected graft tissue. This was full-thickness skin in 10 ears, fascia in 10 and cartilage—perichondrium in 11.

The skin graft was a confetti sized piece from the canal wall at the place where it was transected about 4 mm outside the drum. In the cat the skin in this area is furnished with glands (Fig. 1) and hairs, and covered with stratified squamous epithelium whose border with the corium is rendered uneven by epithelial crests.

The fascia tissue was obtained from the outer fascia of the temporal muscle chiefly from the ventral portion where the aponeurotic character is most clearly evident.

The cartilage—perichondrium graft was taken from the elastic cartilage of the outer ear quite near the ear tip. From the approximately confetti sized piece of tissue one layer of perichondrium was removed. The retained layer was made to overlap the cartilage by about one millimetre; this had previously been tailored to the perforation.

The grafts were handled with the greatest care. The skin graft was placed over the fresh traumatic perforation with the corium approximated to the de-epithelialized outer surface of the drum remnant. A similar mental apposition was obtained for the fascia graft. The cartilage—perichondrium graft was applied so that the cartilage lamina lay in the actual drum defect, with the bare surface medially and the side bearing the perichondrium facing externally; the overlapping perichondrium then adhering to the outer surface of the denuded drum remnant. No retaining pack was placed in the canal. The retroauricular tissues were sutured but not the canal wall. No antibiotics or chemotherapy were given.

After perfusion with formaldehyde (3 per cent aqueous solution) under general anaesthesia the cats were decapitated, 5 of those with a unilateral graft after a follow up period of 3 1/2 months and all the others after 6 months.

Preliminary postmortem evaluations of the results of healing were made immediately by means of the operating microscope. The temporal bone was then dissected, fixed in a 10 per cent solution of formaldehyde, decalcified and treated with cellidin. From each specimen about 300 microscopic sections were prepared, stained with haematoxylin and eosin or by Mallory's azan method and examined histologically.

## Results

A preliminary examination at the end of the follow up period showed all 31 perforations to be closed. In 30 ears the graft was identifiable.

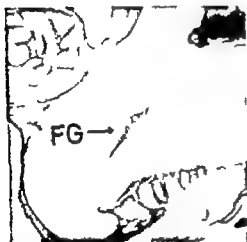
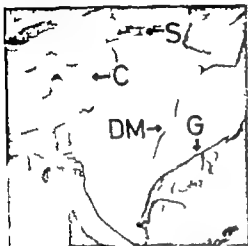


Fig. 1. Section through the middle ear of a treated normal cat. DM, drum membrane; S, stapes; C, cochlea; G, gland in the canal wall skin (Haematoxylin and eosin)  $\times 8$ .

Fig. 3. The middle ear and the healed drum membrane in cat 6 months after fascia graft. FG, remnant of the fascia graft. Cat no. 753. (Haematoxylin and eosin)  $\times 8$ .

Fig. 2. The middle ear of the healed drum membrane in cat 3 1/2 months after skin graft. SG, skin graft. Cat no. 13a (M. Ilory's size)  $\times 8$ .

Fig. 4. The middle ear and the healed drum membrane in cat 6 months after cartilage-perichondrium graft. CPG, cartilage-perichondrium graft. Cat no. 767 (M. Ilory's size)  $\times 8$ .



### Full thickness skin

The macroscopic appearance of the skin grafts after closure is illustrated in Figure 11. At the end of the follow-up period all 10 drums were healed, with no signs of infection. In 9 of them the grafts were seen in the ventral part of the transparent membrane as yellowish white, opaque and sharply demarcated areas. In one drum (nr 14a) no trace of the graft could be found. The approximation of the graft to the drum was good in 8 ears. In one (no 757a) it was marred by a small peripheral flap at the posterior

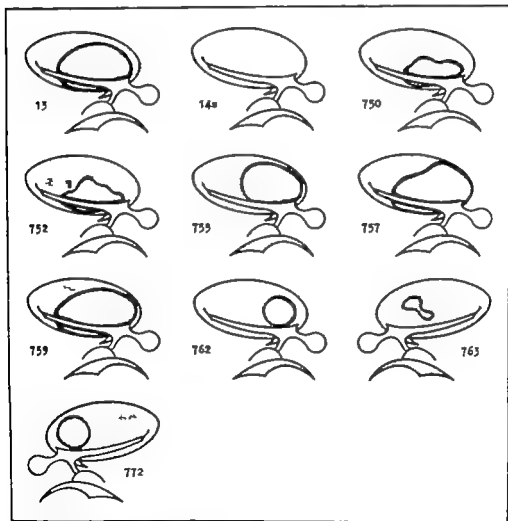


Fig. 5. Drum graft of full-thickness skin in 10 cat ears.

Follow-up period 312 months for nos. 13 and 14, 6 months for the others.

The drawing shows the middle ears and drums from the entromedial part of the tympanic bulla, with the innominate. The black lined area denotes the configuration of the integrated graft in cat ears. In the graft in middle ear



Fig. 6 Cat no. 13a.

Full-thickness skin graft in the drum membrane after 3 1/2 months. The squamous epithelium penetrates the connective tissue with epithelial crests of varying size. Hair follicles and epithelial cysts are found deep in the dermal portion. A large vessel (V) can be seen close to the handle of the micromanipulator (MH)  $\times 40$ .

part of the graft lying just outside the drum membrane this flap was, however, not inflamed and was normally epithelialized.

In 9 ears histologic examination disclosed vital incorporation of the graft with the drum by reactionless union between the dermal portion of the graft and the lamina propria of the vascular bed. In the ear (no. 14a) in which there was no evidence of the graft the drum was quite normal in appearance. The microscopic picture of the 9 incorporated skin grafts was fairly uniform (Figs. 2, 6—8). Apart from a covering of the tympanic surface of the graft with an epithelium typical of the site, all grafts had integrated without any considerable structural modification. On the outer surface all showed thick keratinized squamous epithelium. The subepithelial connective tissue contained both sebaceous glands and hair follicles (Figs. 6 and 7). Hairs were sometimes seen to protrude from the surface (Fig. 8). The border of the squamous epithelium with the underlying tissue was somewhat diffuse and irregular because of epithelial crests penetrating more or less deeply into the connective tissue. Epithelial cysts filled with a horny mass were found below the surface epithelium. Although these cysts were sometimes located deep in the graft there was no sign that they had erupted into

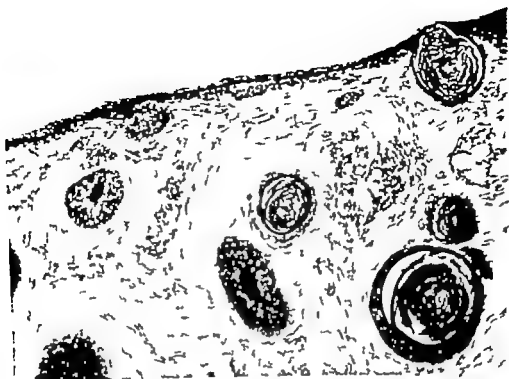


Fig. 7 Cate no 12a.

Higher magnification of part of the skin graft seen in figure 6. The cysts in the graft are filled with lamellated keratinous substance. On the cysts breaking through the mental surface epithelium. A number of transected hair follicles are visible.



Fig. 8 Cate no 757

Part of the 11-thickness skin graft at 6 months. This is



the middle ear. Some of them, however, opened on the meatal surface of the graft (Fig. 7). In none of the grafts were inflammatory cells observed and the external auditory canal, the middle ear and the inner ear were almost invariably free of inflammation.

### Fascia

The gross appearance of the fascia grafts is illustrated in figure 8. At the end of the follow up period all 10 perforations were closed and displayed no signs of infection or inflammation. At the site of transplantation the other wise transparent drums were more or less opaque. In one ear (no. 764) the

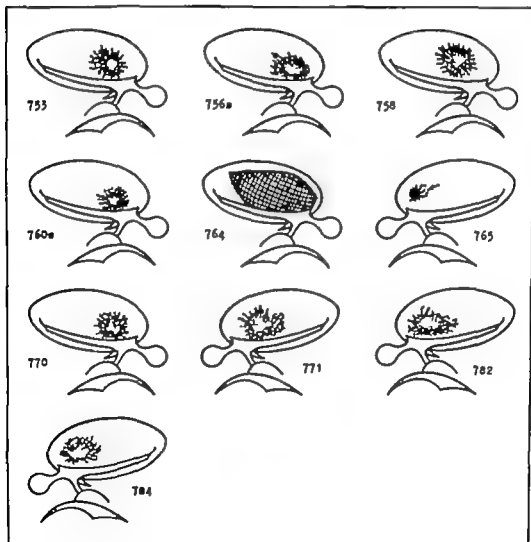


Fig. 9. Drum graft. Left ear. 10 cut ears. Post-operative period 6 months. Interpretation of the drawing is in figure 3.



Fig. 10 Cates no. 733.

The centre of the drum membrane 8 months after the fit of scia graft. The histologic section shows thickening of the subepithelial connective tissue. A regular post-neurotic layering of the fibres is only partly visible. A large vessel (V) is evidence of revascularization.  $\times 40$

grossly unchanged graft had the appearance of a thick, nacreous, sharply demarcated area. In the others, however, there were only irregular fibrotic plaques, concentrated where the centre of the original perforation had been located, and becoming increasingly diffuse towards the periphery. Thus, the border with the surrounding normal membrane was poorly defined in these specimens. In the sclerotic part of these drums there was a large winding vessel (Fig. 10).

Histologic examination showed all the drums to be free of inflammation, and normally epithelialized on both outer and inner sides (Figs 3, 10 and 11). The graft (no 704) displaying a gross resemblance to fascia was found also under the microscope to have a lamellar structure typical of aponeurotic connective tissue (Fig. 11). To judge from the staining of the nuclei, the fibrocytes in this connective tissue were vital. In the other 9 membranes, however, there was no such fascia-like tissue but instead a diffuse and fairly small interspersation of a non-specific well organized and revascularized connective tissue. This contained no inflammatory cells or foreign-body giant cells. The auditory canals and the middle and inner ears were all normal.



Fig. 11 Cat ear no. 764

Part of the integrated grossal changed f scl graft after 6 mo ths. Th lamell arrangement of the f scl fibres and the thin epithelium II f g both sides f the graft re seen  $\times 350$

### Cartilage—perichondrium

The gross appearance of the cartilage—perichondrium grafts is illustrated in figure 12. None of the 11 drums in which this tissue was used displayed any macroscopic signs of inflammation at the end of the follow up period. In each case the graft had the appearance of a sharply demarcated, opaque bluish-white lamina in the otherwise transparent membrane. Approximation to the drum was excellent in 4 of the grafts (nos. 114, 124, 701 and 7014), acceptable in 4 others (nos. 144, 7244, 707 and 708) and rather poor in 3 (nos. 706, 709 and 783). In the intermediate group a small peripheral part of the graft lay a little outside or inside (no. 144) the membrane. In the poorest group only the ventral half of the cartilage was located within the membrane while the dorsal part had sunken into the middle ear where it was attached to the promontory wall by adhesions.

Histologic examination showed the drum grafts to be normally epithelialized. After organization the perichondrial component had integrated with the lamina propria in the same way as the fascia. The cartilage component on the other hand, was in the whole unchanged and situated in a connective tissue envelope. This consisted on the meatal side of a layer probably deriving from the perichondrium and on the tympanic side of a thinner

layer of connective tissue regenerated from the remainder of the lamina propria. In 10 grafts the chondrocytes were vital (Figs. 4, 13 and 14) and in 2 of them (nos. 767 and 783) new cartilage had formed in places (Fig. 16). In one graft (no. 11a) the cartilage component consisted only of intercellular substance the chondrocytes being non vital. The medial surface of this graft displayed fairly loose granulation with no giant cells. In the 3 ears (nos. 766, 769 and 783) in which most of the cartilage had sunken into the tympanic cavity (Figs. 15, 16 and 17) and adhesions had formed between the graft and the promontory wall, these were in 2 ears extremely loose in structure and poor in cells (Fig. 16) but in one ear (no. 766) fairly solid and

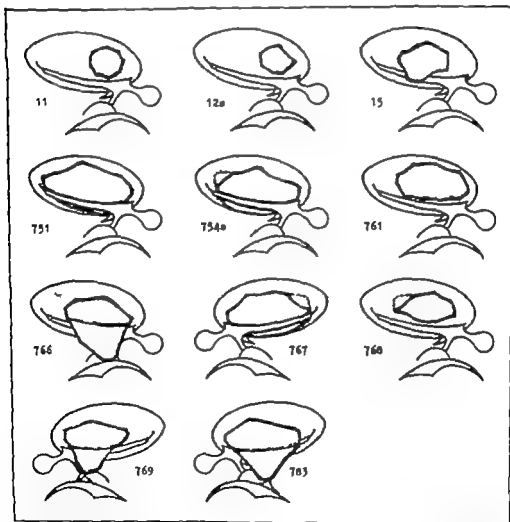


Fig. 12. Drum graft of cartilage with its perichondrium in 11 cat ears. Follow-up period 31-2 months for nos. 11a, 12 and 15; 8 months for the others. Interpretation of drawings in figure 8. Note that in nos. 766, 769 and 783 the dorsal part of the transplanted cartilage lamina has sunken into the middle ear cavity where it has become adherent to the promontory wall.

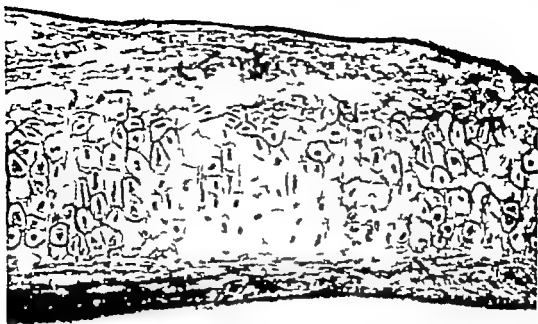


Fig. 13 Cat. no. 787

Part of incorporated cartilage graft 8 x 8 mm. This can be judged from the histologic picture the chondrocytes are vital in both sides the graft is covered with connective tissue which has been covered with epithelium  $\times 330$



Fig. 14 Cat. no. 783

A section through the ventral portion of partly dislocated cartilage graft 8 months. This picture of the graft was incorporated with the drum membrane and appeared completely healed.

Cf figures 12, 1 and 16



Fig. 15. Cat no. 783.

A section through the dorsal part of the cartilage graft seen in figure 14. This portion of the transplant is partly swollen in the middle ear cavity in spite of the perforation in the bone. The central part of the graft is well incorporated with the drum membrane  $\times 12$ .

Cf figures 12, 14 and 16.

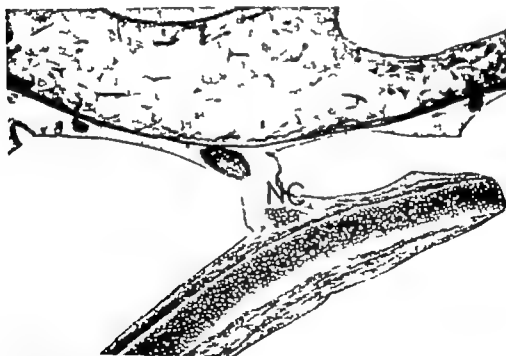


Fig. 16. Cat no. 783.

A section through the extreme dorsal segment of the cartilage graft seen in figures 14 and 15. This part of the graft is loosely connected to the prominent wall with mucosal fold. The transplant appears to be dead and newly formed cartilage (NC) is found on the side facing the promontory  $\times 40$ .

Cf figures 12, 14 and 15.

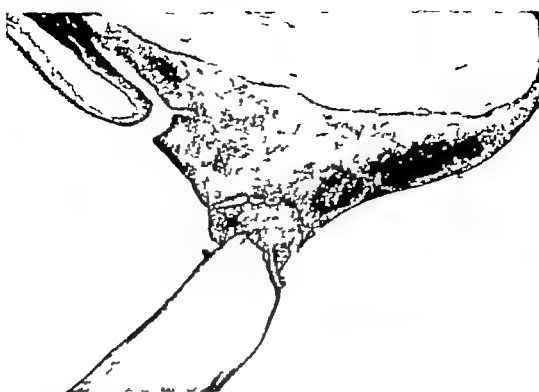


Fig. 17 Cat no. 104.

A section through the distal part of cartilag graft site 6 months. This segment of the graft is protruding freely into the tympanic cavity. The graft tissue is associated with the graft with the prominent wall contains a large number of lymphocytes, suggestive of mild inflammatory reaction  $\times 40$ .

See figure 12.

containing accumulations of inflammatory cells (Fig 17). In this ear moreover there were granulations in the bulla tympanica. Apart from this isolated middle-ear reaction there was in the other 10 cases no sign of inflammation in either the middle or inner ear.

## Discussion

It is often difficult if not impossible to elucidate obscure problems in human medicine by means of experiments on animals, but in the present study which is concerned only with the behaviour of certain simple tissues in tympanic membrane autografts, the biologic background constituted by cellular structures and the mode of reaction of the tissues is probably so nearly the same for most mammals that it is justified to assume certain parallel between the conditions in the cat and man.

The advantages of animal experiments in the present context are obvious. The integration of various tissue transplants can be compared under fairly standardized conditions, the normally vascularized drum remnant afforded most favourable conditions for tympanic graft survival.

and after the animal has been sacrificed, the result of each transplantation can be examined most carefully under the microscope

The choice of laboratory animal was dictated by the need to work with a drum as large as possible compatible with ready availability and reasonable cost. In these respects the cat is ideal, the area of the membrane being on average 42 mm<sup>2</sup> (Iirikae 1960)

The surgical procedure in the animal experiments followed the usual principles for myringoplasty in man. Full-thickness skin, fascia and cartilage—perichondrium were chosen for the grafts because these tissues have been commonly used in clinical myringoplasties. From the aspect of myringoplasty the mental skin in the cat was considered to be comparable with external body skin in man because of their similarity in histologic structure.

The follow up period—on average just less than 6 months—was considered long enough to provide an impression of the completed integration of the respective grafts. The same interval is often used clinically before evaluation of the results of myringoplasty. Furthermore, preliminary experiments in the cat showed that subtotal traumatic perforations close spontaneously after only 2 or 3 weeks.

#### Full-thickness skin

The skin grafts had integrated with the surrounding drum with retained viability and character. Sebaceous glands and hair were therefore incorporated.

Of greater interest, however, is the fact that the squamous epithelium of the graft displayed signs of proliferation. The border between the epithelium and the underlying connective tissue was therefore less regular after the transplantation than before. A large number of epithelial cysts containing horny masses were developed within the dermal portion, possibly as a result of degenerative changes. Although these cysts were sometimes large and even opened on the mental side of the graft there was no perforation found to the middle ear cavity.

According to Beickert (1938) and Schuknecht *et al* (1960) among others, the cystic formations and the late perforations found after clinical myringoplasty are due mainly to the glands and hair follicles accompanying the graft. It is likely that even the majority of the cysts in the skin grafts of the present series originated from hair follicles and glands, but possibly also from more deeply penetrating crests of the proliferating squamous epithelium.

As mentioned in Chapter II inflammatory processes in tympanic grafts of external body skin tend to increase the likelihood of secondary breakdown of the graft. A possible reason for the absence of perforations in the present series is then that the grafts did not display dermatitic reactions. This is perhaps due to the fact that the skin grafts were taken from the auditory canal and that they were adapted to fresh, traumatically produced perfora-



tions the grafted skin was therefore naturally suited to the environment of the canal—as regards both climatic conditions and possibly also the property of cell migration—moreover the completely normal tissue of the drum remnants provided an ideal vascular bed from the aspect of myringoplasty.

The absence of perforations and inflammation in the series may well have been temporary and due to the comparatively short follow up time. The epithelial cords and the cysts of the squamous epithelium constituted loci *minores resistentiae* and therefore reperforation would probably have occurred if the follow up period had been extended.

### Fascia

When fascia was used only one graft integrated faultlessly (that is to say with retained viability, structure and volume). At the site of the other 9 grafts there was only sparse atypical connective tissue.

The changes that these 9 fascia grafts underwent are somewhat obscure. According to Weis (1929) the fibre content and the arrangement of the fibres in the connective tissue are due to the mechanical stress to which the tissue is normally exposed. It is then conceivable that there will be a decrease in the collagen content of a piece of fascia transplanted to an environment where it is subjected to less tension. In the present study, however, this explanation would apply to all the other fascia grafts as well as these 9. According to Peer (1959) on the other hand autogenous fascia grafts retain their structure and character provided that the fibrocytes survive the transfer. If they do not the succumbing graft will be replaced by connective tissue from the bed so that a tissue pattern identical with that of the host site results. If this view is correct it is doubtful whether the fibrocytes of the 9 altered fascia grafts really survived the transplantation.

How the superfluous collagen is disposed by the organism is still not fully understood. It has been shown by Lullinger *et al.* (1942) in another connection that purely acellular collagen produces a foreign body reaction, and they inferred that the cause of certain chronic granulative processes in man was such a reaction to the collagen in a necrotic or otherwise altered connective tissue. On the other hand, Peer (1955) states that he had never seen such a reaction in connection with autografts of fascia lata, nor has Salen *et al.* (1965) using heterostatic acellular collagen in myringoplasty. In animal experiments. Curiously enough in 2 experimental studies on myringoplasty with autologous fascia Wilbers *et al.* (1963, 1965) does report finding a foreign body reaction, with giant cells in the graft zone.

In the present series no foreign-body giant cells were found, and it would appear that superfluous collagen is normally accepted and absorbed.

### Cartilage—perichondrium

When elastic cartilage with adherent perichondrium was used the perichondrium integrated in the same way as the fascia, whereas the cartilage was enveloped by connective tissue and without any remarkable structural modification.

The feasibility of cartilage grafting has long been questioned. Loeb (1926) was the first to consider it established that autogenous cartilage with adherent perichondrium could in fact be transferred from one site to another with retained viability a view that was shared by Peer (1939) Young (1941) showed that even small pieces of cartilage from which the perichondrium had been removed could survive transplantation, the connective tissue of the host site then being converted to perichondrium Billingham (1954) however expressed his doubts maintaining that most of the chondrocytes die at an early stage because the cartilage tissue has no vessel bound circulation. The animal experiments by Davidson (1959) have convincingly shown, however that at least elastic cartilage with its perichondrium can survive and retain its normal tissue structure when transplanted as an autogenous graft in favourable transplantation sites. This is presumably due to the low oxygen needs of cartilage tissue which, according to Krebs *et al* (1948) are considerably lower than for other tissues.

In the present series the viability of the cartilage varied both within and between the grafts. In the periphery there were occasionally degenerated and even non vital chondrocytes, though new formed, vital cartilage was also found. One graft was devoid of vital chondrocytes after only 15 weeks, but the other 10 were quite vital after twice as long.

That the cartilage was so often viable is surprising in view of the fact that in the animal experiments the cartilage grafts were placed so that a completely naked surface faced the air filled cavity of the middle ear. The explanation may well be that immediately after the operation the cavity was filled with blood and tissue fluids, which served as a medium from which the chondrocytes could obtain nourishment by diffusion.

The remarkable tendency for demarcation of vital autogenous cartilage grafts from the surrounding tissues Peer (1963) ascribes to the fact that the intercellular substance of the vital cartilage is so well accepted by the organism. If however the chondrocytes die the matrix is no longer tolerated and it is not long before it is invaded and absorbed by host granulation tissue. The reversal of the behaviour of the environment to the cartilage is attributed to the fact that when the chondrocytes die the matrix undergoes chemical modification.

In all but one graft of this series the vital cartilage was accepted well with no signs of inflammation. In the exceptional case however granulations with lymphatic cell accumulations were observed adjacent to the cartilage here an infectious origin cannot be ruled out, since granulations were also found in the tympanic bulla. In that case, on the other hand, where the cartilage

was non vital there was still no more than a local trace of connective tissue invasion

In more than one half of the cartilage grafts the approximation to the drum was not entirely satisfactory. One possible reason for this is that owing to the irregular curvature of the drum the perforation rim did not lay in one plane and the plain cartilage lamina then could not easily be adapted to the rim along the whole of its perimeter. Another possible reason, suggested by the sections, is that when the adherent perichondrium was organized the scar tissue shrinkage caused the cartilage to bend with the convexity inwards.

### Conclusion

The results of the study suggest the following conclusions as regards the behaviour of the three graft tissues when experimentally transplanted to sound comparatively well vascularized drum remnants in the cat

- (a) Free autogenous grafts of *full thickness skin* usually integrate with retained viability size and character. After transplantation the squamous epithelium of the graft tends to proliferate and as a result of this the grafts are penetrated not only by the ordinary hair and gland structures but also by newly formed epithelial strands and cysts.
- (b) Free autogenous grafts of *fascia* integrate only rarely with a retained size and structure. Instead most of them undergo such an extensive modification of character and form that the survival of the fibrocytes of fascia grafts is open to doubt.
- (c) Free autogenous grafts of *cartilage with its perichondrium* usually integrate—the cartilage in an unchanged and for the most part viable form but the perichondrium like fascia, in a reduced state. The incorporated cartilage is sometimes not perfectly adapted to the restored drum.

# IV Cochlear Microphonic Response after Myringoplasty

An experimental study on the cat

by

MARTIN BERGSTEDT M D and BENGT SALÉN M D

## Introduction

In the space of the last decade more than a dozen tissues have been proposed for drum grafts. Their suitability has been indicated in the reports of the results achieved with them in clinical series. There have however been few basic comparative studies of the various graft tissues in laboratory animals, those that have been published have been concerned largely with how a particular tissue integrates with the graft bed, while the acoustic properties of the membranes healed in this way has been completely neglected.

The experimental study reported here was undertaken with the object of ascertaining whether drums, that have been reconstructed with autogenous grafts of full-thickness skin, fascia or elastic cartilage with its perichondrium function differently as regards trans tympanic sound transmission.

To obtain a comparable measure of the ability of the middle ear to transmit air-borne sound to the inner ear no knowledge of the auditory threshold was considered necessary. Instead, the transmission properties of the middle ear were assessed on the basis of the relations that Wever *et al.* (1936) found to exist between sound intensity and the electrical response of the cochlea—a method that in studies of the transmission properties of the middle ear has been used by among others, Bordley *et al.* (1937) Wever *et al.* (1948) Wever (1950 1959) Lawrence (1950 1960) Payne *et al.* (1951) Simmons *et al.* (1962) Möller (1963, 1965) and Allen *et al.*, (1964).

## Material

The normal reference material for the study was composed of one ear of each of 10 young adult cats not previously submitted to operation and with no signs of wax, squamous products or local inflammation in the external auditory canal.

The experimental series consisted of 17 adult cats in sound health, in which myringoplasty had been performed 6 months previously—in one ear

in 8 of them and in both ears in 9. Full thickness skin was used in 8 ears, fascia in 10 and elastic cartilage with its perichondrium in 8 ears. The histologic picture of the grafts have been reported elsewhere (Chapler III and Salén *et al.* 1966).

The experimental material was grouped with respect to the type of graft and in each such group with respect to the size of the integrated transplant and any postoperative changes in the middle ear.

## Methods

### Apparatus

The sound generating system consisted of a beat frequency oscillator (Brüel & Kjaer 1022) and an Elega 8-ohm loudspeaker. The sound was carried to the animal via a 100 mm long rubber tube tightly fitted into the transected cartilaginous ear canal. The rubber tube had an inner diameter of 3 mm and its 1 mm thick wall was conically tapered towards the mental orifice of the tube within a 3 mm wide zone.

The cochlear microphones were picked up by a 100  $\mu$  platinum wire resting on the round window membrane. Around parts of the platinum electrode a glass rod had been cast and this was attached to a stand by several articulated arms. This arrangement prevented other than the required contact between the electrode and the animal. The reference electrode was a stainless steel hypodermic needle located in the trapezius muscle. The potentials were amplified 1000 times in a Teetronix 122 AC pre-amplifier and displayed on a Teetronix M 502 oscilloscope.

During the experiment the cat was kept in a ventilated, sound insulated and electrically shielded box.

The apparatus for stimulation of the cochlea was calibrated separately and after the experiments on the animals. The sound-generating system was then connected to an artificial test ear resembling the cat ear with a coupler volume of 1.0 cm<sup>3</sup>. In order to determine the frequency response of the sound-generating system the sound pressure level near in the coupler was measured by a probe microphone (Brüel & Kjaer 4134). This was calibrated by a probe microphone coupler (Brüel & Kjaer UA 0010).

In the calibration the frequency relationship between sound pressure level and the electrical output of the beat frequency oscillator was that shown in figure 18. The measured sound pressure level was found always to be proportional to the voltage output of the oscillator.

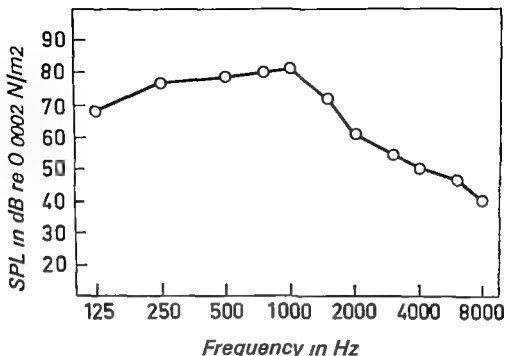


Fig 18. Sound pressure level as a function of frequency of 1.2 mV RMS electrical output of the beat frequency oscillator. The measurement, by calibrated probe microphone, was performed with the sound-generating system connected to artificial ear.

### Procedure

Anaesthesia was induced with an intraperitoneal injection of pentobarbitone sodium (BP). The dose 42 mg per kg of body weight permitted satisfactory abdominal respiration. Oxygen was added to the inspired air continuously throughout the experiment and hypoxaemia due to obstruction of the respiratory tract was avoided by fixing the tongue in the fully protruded position.

From a retroauricular incision the bulla tympanica was reached by a ventrolateral approach. The parotid gland was removed, and the digastric muscle and hyoid chain were partly excised. The bulla was opened fairly wide so as to afford easy access to the round window. The bony septum, however that in the cat almost completely screens the bulla from the middle ear cavity was left intact. The external auditory canal was transected 4 mm outside the tympanic ring at the level where the fixed cartilaginous canal lead towards the mobile part. After careful haemostasis and microscopic examination of the tympanic membrane the rubber tube connected to the loudspeaker was inserted into the canal stump. As its walls in the contact zone diminished in thickness towards the orifice the tube could be inserted into the transected canal deep enough to obtain a stable and tight connection. Because of the variation in width of the auditory canals in the various animals, the end of the tube was situated 2–3 mm from the plane through the

tympenic ring. So as to eliminate any possibility of leakage the joint between the tube and the canal was sealed regularly with animal fat.

With the aid of a binocular operation microscope (Zeiss Epilekioskop) the bare tip of the platinum electrode was brought into contact with the centre of the round window membrane. The bone defect in the wall of the bulla was left open. Just prior to the registrations, when all the instrument had been adjusted, the box was placed over the insulated operation table.

Pure tones were applied to the ear by the loudspeaker and the intensity of the sound was adjusted to produce a standard cochlear microphonic response of  $3.5 \mu\text{V}$  RMS. The sound level producing this response was recorded. The pure tones used were 200 500 700 1000 1500 2000 4000 6000 and 8000 Hz.

### Report of examination results

*Reference series* — The sound intensities that gave a cochlear microphonic response of  $3.5 \mu\text{V}$  RMS at the various frequencies at the round window of the 10 normal ears are reported indirectly as the voltage output of the beat frequency oscillator expressed in decibels. The attenuator was related to a zero level equivalent to an electrical output of 1.2 mV RMS. The results are presented in tables and as sensitivity curves.

*Experimental series* — The sound intensities for the test ears, expressed indirectly as the voltage output of the beat frequency oscillator which gave a cochlear microphonic response of  $3.5 \mu\text{V}$  RMS at the round window are reported relative to the corresponding means for the reference material. The differences between the values recorded for the experimental series and the comparative values in the reference series are given in decibels re 1.2 mV RMS, and designated a threshold shift or a change in sensitivity. A plus sign denotes that the stimulation necessary to produce the standard cochlear microphonic response was higher than the mean for the reference material and a minus sign the reverse. The results for the 3 test groups are reported separately and they are presented in tables and graphically.

## Results

### Reference series

The sound intensities that gave a cochlear microphonic response of  $3.5 \mu\text{V}$  RMS in the 10 ears not previously operated upon are reported for each ear and frequency in table 4. The table also gives the mean of the individually measured stimulation intensities calculated for each frequency. The mean sensitivity curve based on these means is given in figure 19 where the range is also indicated. For the respective frequencies in the order 200—8000 Hz the ranges were 18, 13, 17, 11, 11, 15, 17, 12 and 25 dB. On average for the 10 frequencies it was 15 dB.

Table 4 The best frequency oscillator output required to produce cochlear microphonic response of  $2.5 \mu V$  RMS dB re  $1 \mu V$  RMS Round window recordings. Ten treated ears in 10 healthy cats.

No	Frequency in Hz								
	200	500	700	1 000	1 500	2 000	4 000	6 000	8 000
718	-10	-17	-21	-21	-25	-16	-5	-3	0
727	-3	-13	-14	-11	-23	-20	-15	-13	-10
731 a	-3	-18	-21	-26	-25	-20	-12	-10	0
734	-6	-20	-21	-25	-21	-23	-14	-13	+15
754	-18	-25	-31	-35	-31	-25	-13	-12	-8
755	-15	-18	-27	-29	-28	-23	-21	-15	-2
758	-8	-18	-20	-32	-25	-10	-5	-3	-2
759	0	-12	-20	-25	-20	-18	-4	-7	+10
760	-5	-25	-37	-32	-27	-18	-13	-13	-10
81	-18	-24	-28	-32	-26	-19	-11	-12	-2
Mean value	-8	-19	-24	-28	-25	-19	-12	-10	-1

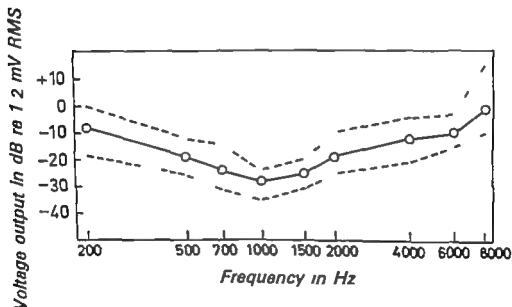


Fig 19 Sensitivity curves for 10 ears in normal cats.

○—○ Med line      --- First quartile range

The sensitivity or threshold is defined as the minimum voltage output (dB re  $1.2 \mu V$  RMS) for the best frequency oscillator required to produce a cochlear microphonic response of  $2.5 \mu V$  RMS, recorded at the round window.



## Experimental series

## Full-thickness skin

For the 8 ears on which myringoplasty with full thickness skin had been performed the differences in the required intensity of cochlear stimulation, relative to the corresponding mean for the reference material are given in table 5. From results obtained for the ears in this group the mean sensitivity

Table 5. Full-thickness skin graft ears after myringoplasty. Threshold shifts (dBi) relative to the means for the reference series

Ear No.	Frequency in Hz									Size of graft (mm <sup>2</sup> )
	200	500	700	1000	1500	2000	4000	6000	8000	
703	-8	-3	-1	-3	0	-10	+2	+1	-1	<10
63	0	-5	-6	-2	0	+7	+17	+8	+9	
772	+8	-6	-1	-3	+6	0	+3	0	+1	
750	+8	-1	0	-6	+1	+7	+17	+8	+11	10-20
752	+8	+1	0	0	+1	+11	+8	+15	+11	
755	-2	+3	0	-1	0	-3	+8	+14	+13	
757	+33	+25	+28	+27	+21	+29	+29	+27	+21	<20
759	+24	+21	+21	+28	+10	+39	+17	+55	+61	

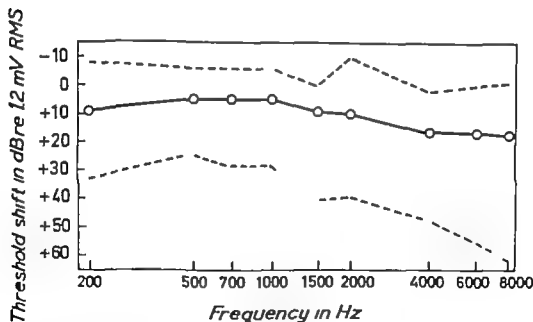


Fig. 10. Full-thickness skin graft; 8 ears—Chang's sensitivity

○—○ Medial ears      Interritt range

The sensitivity threshold is defined as the voltage input (dB re 1.2 mV RMS) of the best frequency oscillator required to produce cochlear microphal response of 2.5  $\mu$ V RMS, recorded at the recorded tone.

shift was calculated for each frequency these are illustrated in figure 20. From this figure it is seen that the voltage output of the beat frequency oscillator after myringoplasty with full thickness skin had to be increased by a mean of 10 dB for the 9 relevant frequencies in order to produce the standard cochlear microphonic response ( $3.5 \mu\text{V}$  RMS). The reduction in sensitivity was more pronounced at the higher than lower frequencies: at 1000 Hz it was 16 dB, at 200 Hz 9 dB and at the frequencies of 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz the mean was 7 dB.

### Fascia

For the 10 ears on which myringoplasty had been performed with fascia grafts, the differences in the required intensity of cochlear stimulation, relative to the corresponding means in the reference series, are given in table 6. From results obtained for the ears in this group the mean sensitivity shift was calculated for each frequency: these are illustrated in figure 21. From this figure it is seen that the voltage output of the beat frequency oscillator after myringoplasty with fascia had to be increased by a mean of 4 dB for the 9 relevant frequencies in order to produce the standard cochlear microphonic response ( $3.5 \mu\text{V}$  RMS). The reduction in sensitivity was slightly greater at the higher than lower frequencies: at the frequencies of 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz the mean was 2 dB.

Table 6. Fascia: 10 cat ears after myringoplasty. Threshold shifts (dB) relative to the means for the reference series.

Ear No.	Frequency in Hz									Size of grafts (mm <sup>2</sup> )
	200	300	700	1 000	1 800	2 000	4 000	6 000	8 000	
753	+ 3	+ 5	+ 2	- 2	- 3	+ 7	+ 3	+ 8	+ 6	<10
754	+ 3	- 1	+ 4	+ 8	+ 7	+ 1	+ 7	+ 3	+ 4	
758	+14	- 1	+ 4	+ 4	+ 5	+26	+27	+37	+32	
760	+ 8	- 1	- 2	- 1	+ 2	+ 9	+ 9	+10	+ 6	
761	+ 7	+ 9	+ 9	+ 6	+ 2	- 2	+ 6	+ 2	+ 6	>15
85	+10	+ 8	+ 3	+ 4	+ 6	+ 4	+ 5	+ 6	+ 9	
770	- 9	- 7	- 4	- 2	- 2	- 1	+ 4	0	+ 1	
771	- 3	- 9	- 6	- 2	- 1	- 2	+ 7	+ 6	0	
782	+13	- 1	+ 2	+ 1	- 2	+ 1	- 2	+ 2	+ 9	<10
781	+ 8	+ 5	- 4	+ 1	+ 4	+ 6	+ 7	+ 9	+12	

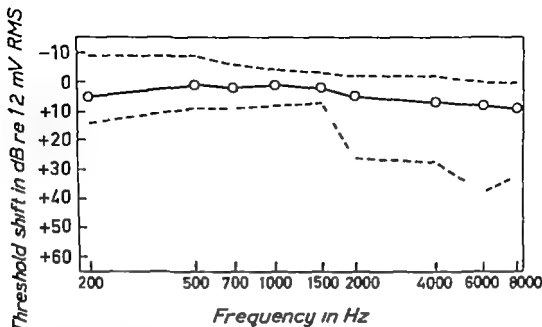


Fig. 31 Patel graft 10 test ears—Change in sensitivity  
 ○—○ Median 1st quartile range

The sensitivity threshold is defined as the voltage output (dB re 12 mV RMS) of the beat frequency oscillator required to produce cochlear microphonic response of 3.5  $\mu$ V RMS, recorded at the round window.

#### Elastic cartilage—perichondrium

For the 8 ears on which 6 months earlier myringoplasty had been performed with elastic cartilage—perichondrium grafts the differences in the required cochlear stimulation relative to the corresponding means for the reference series, are given in table 7. From results obtained for the ears in this group the mean shift in sensitivity was calculated for each frequency. These are illustrated in figure 22. From this figure it is seen that the voltage output of the beat frequency oscillator after myringoplasty with elastic cartilage—perichondrium had to be increased by a mean of just below 0 dB for the relevant 9 frequencies in order to produce the standard cochlear microphonic response (3.5  $\mu$ V RMS). The reduction in sensitivity was greater at the higher and lower frequencies than at the intermediate ones. At 4000 Hz it was 13 dB, at 200 Hz 9 dB and at the frequencies of 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz the mean was about 3 dB.

Table 7 Elastic cartilage with its perichondrium 8 test ears after myringoplasty Threshold shifts (dB) relative to the means for the reference series.

Ear	Frequencies in Hz									Size of graft (mm)
	200	500	700	1 000	1 500	2 000	4 000	6 000	8 000	
51	+ 3	+ 3	+	+ 4	+10	+15	+16	+ 1	+2	> 20
731	+ 8	+14	+12	+ 4	+ 9	+11	+17	+13	+16	
781	- 1	- 1	- 4	- 2	+ 8	+ 3	- 5	- 3	0	
787	+23	+ 4	+ 4	0	+ 4	+ 4	+18	+12	+ 5	
788	+13	+ 9	+ 4	+ 6	+ 7	- 1	+ 7	+ 3	- 3	< 20
789	+13	- 1	- 1	- 4	0	+ 7	+13	+20	-16	
789	+ 8	+ 9	+ 4	- 1	+ 1	+ 6	+22	+16	+ 9	
789	+ 4	- 7	- 1	- 1	+ 1	+ 1	+ 9	- 8	- 6	

Adhesions between the graft and promontory wall

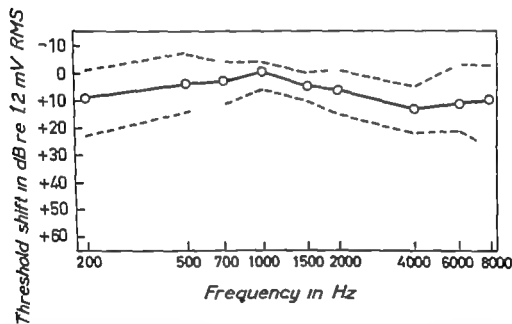


Fig. 11 Cartilage-perichondrium 8 test ears—Change in sensitivity  
○—○ Median lines      1st quartile range

The sensitivity or threshold is defined as the voltage output (dB re 12 mV RMS) of the beat frequency oscillator required to produce a cochlear microphonic response of 1.5  $\mu$ V RMS, recorded at the round window.

## Discussion

The method of trying to solve clinical problems by means of animal experiments has both advantages and disadvantages. It is true that the problems can be clarified and the examinations made more efficiently in a manner that would be inconceivable in clinical studies, but as the results cannot often be applied directly to a human medical pattern the greatest caution is called for in drawing any conclusions.

While animal experiments have been a great aid in widening our knowledge of the normal function of the human ear in the case of the functional conditions in pathologically altered ears such experiments have often proved futile because most such conditions do not have their true counterparts in animals.

In the present study the object of which was to compare only a few different drum graft tissues often used in human medicine an experimental study on the cat was judged to be valuable because on this elementary plane there should be some agreement—as regards both morphology and function—between the conditions in the ears of the higher mammals.

The drum grafts that were tested functionally in the 26 cat ears were of full thickness skin, fascia and elastic cartilage perichondrium. These types were chosen because they have been used fairly often from time to time in clinical myringoplasty and because they differ considerably in structure. As the intention in this investigation was to examine not the tissues in themselves but the results of the grafts in which they were used a period of 6 months was chosen for the interval between the transplantation and the functional tests. This period should be long enough to ensure that the healing processes were completed and that the reconstructed drum was structurally stationary.

For comparison of the transmission properties of the middle-ears where drum grafts had been performed with middle-ears not operated upon it is, of course, possible to determine and compare the auditory thresholds. In the case of the cat this means that the auditory acuity must be determined on the basis of conditioned reflexes—for instance—by the method reported by Neff (1947). Such a procedure is time-consuming and laborious, however, and for the unpractised investigator not very reliable: all animals cannot for instance be habituated and even when this is possible the intensity of the reflex-eliciting stimulus is still influenced by various conditional factors. For this reason it was decided to use the cochlear microphonic response instead of the hearing as the reference function. Within a certain range the magnitude of this function is proportional to the pressure of the stimulating sound (Wever *et al.* 1949). In the cat the cochlear microphonic response is directly proportional to the volume displacement of the cochlear fluid (Møller 1963).

The apparatus used for this purpose functioned well and the reproducibility was satisfactory.

For the stimulation a closed system was used to lead the sound from the loudspeaker to the ear drum. The advantages of this arrangement over the open tube method in which the end of the tube is situated 2.5 cm outside the ear are that distortion is less and that through removal of the external ear the drum region is more easily accessible for observation and cleaning (Weyer *et al.*, 1954).

Since the magnitude of the cochlear microphonic response recorded from the round window varies quite widely with the position of the electrode in the region (Møller 1963) in comparative studies it is necessary to ensure reproducible positioning of the electrode and for this reason the tip of the platinum wire used in these experiments was placed in the centre of the round window membrane.

The cochlear microphonic response to which the sound stimulation was always referred was  $3.5 \mu\text{V}$  RMS ( $10 \mu\text{V}$  p—p). This value is often used in similar studies and it was also suitable for the local conditions because this relatively low potential difference could always be distinguished clearly in the oscilloscope from the constant background noise.

As regards the intensity of the sound that gave the standard cochlear microphonic response this was measured indirectly as the voltage output of the beat frequency oscillator for the purpose of the comparative study the absolute value of the sound pressure level was considered to be of only secondary importance.

To assess the transmission properties of the ears in which myringoplasty had been performed all were grouped and each group correlated with the mean ear of the reference series. The correctness of this procedure is open to discussion. The volume and configuration of the middle ear cavity, the elasticity of the walls, and the diameters of the drum and canal vary from one animal to another. As these factors, which were not determined here influence the individual measurement results, the bases for comparison could be fairly unreliable. But the autocorrelative method, too, has its disadvantages, which in the present context are considerable: exposure and opening of the bulla tympanica at the same time as the experimental myringoplastic operation might damage the arteries of the region, and infections or traumatic lesions can give exudative and granulative processes in the bullar part of the middle ear. The former then perhaps have a detrimental effect on the circulation in the vascular bed possibly leading to impaired incorporation of the graft, while the latter perhaps gives rise to postoperative changes in the niche of the round window such that the cochlear microphonic response recorded after the transplantation is more or less difficult to relate to that before the myringoplastic operation. As, finally, the present study was not intended to provide an exact picture of the effect of the various drum grafts on the transmission properties of the middle ear but only to give an impression of these conditions, the mode of comparison used was judged to be applicable.

As regards the results it may be mentioned that the sensitivity curves for the 10 normal ears composing the reference material could not be recorded with equal stimulation intensities. The difference between the strongest and weakest stimulus that gave rise to the standard cochlear microphonic response in these 10 ears—that is, the range—was, on average 15 dB for the 9 frequencies—a value that exceeds by only 2 dB the range reported graphically by Allen *et al.* (1964) for a similar series. As mentioned earlier this range is probably due to anatomic and structural differences between the ears in question. An important factor in this connection is the bony septum that almost completely separates the bulla from the middle-ear cavity in the cat. If the bulla is left open but this septum is persistent as was the case in the present series, the impedance will suddenly and transiently increase at the frequency of the principal resonance of the middle-ear cavity while there is a parallel decrease in transmission—a phenomenon that almost disappears if this septum is removed (Møller 1965). Although the principal resonance frequency of the middle-ear cavity in the cat is about 7500 Hz there are fairly large individual variations owing to the normal anatomic variations, and this must be taken into account when results obtained in the different animals are compared. In the study quoted above (Allen *et al.*, 1964) this septum was not persistent and this partly explains the difference in results. Other factors that may have contributed to the ranges of the sensitivity curves of the reference series is the anaesthetic used and the fact that tracheotomy was not performed. The barbiturates affect the middle ear muscles and hence the transmission to a comparatively marked extent (Møller 1965). Any differences in the sensitivity to anaesthesia in the animals can therefore have given deviant recordings. A the cochlear potentials diminish with falling tissue oxygen tension obscure hypoxaemia in an animal can also have led up to random results.

When the ears with drum grafts were compared with the mean middle ear in the "normal" reference series the following was observed. The test group in which myringoplasty was performed with *full thickness skin* was characterized as a whole by a general reduction in sensitivity over the whole of the frequency range examined. This functional impairment was slightly more marked at the higher than the lower frequencies and it was least pronounced at frequencies around 1000 Hz. From an examination of the individual cats in this experimental group it is seen (table 5) that the general reduction in sensitivity or transmission occurring in the mean ear was accounted for largely by the ears 757s and 769s. In both these the drum grafts were quite large but this factor alone can hardly account for the marked general reduction in sensitivity in these ears. If this point is disregarded, however it would seem that in both these ears, as in the other 6 of the experimental group there is evidence of the effect on the middle-ear transmission indicated above—namely slight impairment of the transmission at 200 Hz (about 2–9 dB) and to

a somewhat greater extent in the range 4 000—8 000 Hz (about 0—16 dB) whereas around 1 000 Hz the impairment was hardly anyone at all.

In the test groups where the graft tissue was *fascia or elastic cartilage with its perichondrium* the sensitivity curves appeared to follow largely the same pattern as was recorded for skin grafts though they were slightly flattened for fascia (fig 21) and accentuated for cartilage—perichondrium (fig 22) This means that the impairment of the transmission with fascia—which was moreover small—was more uniformly distributed over the frequency range while the impairment with cartilage—perichondrium was slightly greater in the base and treble regions, but slightly smaller at 1 000 Hz, where the transmission appeared to be practically normal This applied remarkably enough also to the 3 ears (nos 766 769 and 783) in which loose adhesions had formed postoperatively between the cartilage and promontory wall

The above impairments of the ability of the middle ears to transfer air conducted sound are presumably due to the fact that the drums were under lower tension than normal ones and also to their increase in mass due to the graft.

As the pieces of tissue used for grafts themselves lacked tension and as the natural tension of the tympanic membrane was destroyed when the perforations were produced, it would be expected that a drum restored by myringoplasty would not possess its normal tension As in the case of an atrophic drum scar such a postoperative slackness would be expected to impair the conditions for transmission of low-frequency sound The explanation of this dysfunction is probably that a drum with reduced tension is unable to vibrate as a rigid cone—a vibration pattern that is essential for the proper transmission of sound at frequencies below 2 400 Hz (v Békésy 1941 1960)

The increased mass of the grafted drums, on the other hand probably affected the transmission at higher frequencies—a supposition that is borne out by the experimental series, where there appears to be a direct proportionality between the size of the graft and the impairment of high-frequency sound transmission Furthermore a comparison of the sensitivity curves in the respective test groups (figs. 20—22) with the threshold value curves calculated by Johansen (1948) on the basis of impedance formula discloses evidence of a parallelism or agreement with the curve that, according to the calculations, corresponds to an increase in the mass of the sound-conducting system Since the middle-ear transmission of sounds at frequencies higher than 2 400 Hz is influenced to a considerable degree by the elasticity in the incudostapedial joint (Möller 1983) it is conceivable that the increase in mass in the grafted drums reduces the elasticity in this joint with consequent impairment of the transmission of high frequencies.



### *Conclusion*

In the experimental series the grafts of full thickness skin fascia and elastic cartilage—perichondrium tended slightly to impair the transmission properties of the middle ear. This reduction was least pronounced at 1 000 Hz, slightly more at 200 Hz and most marked at 4 000—8 000 Hz.

The impairment of transmission was not so pronounced with the fascia as with the full thickness skin or the cartilage—perichondrium but the differences were very small.

# V Full Thickness Skin, Fascia and Cartilage with its Perichondrium in Myringoplasty

A summary and analysis of the results of 232 consecutive clinical operations.

## *Introduction*

For the last 25 years the otosurgical treatment in the County of Norrbotten in the extreme north of Sweden has been centred at the Department of Otolaryngology of the Central Hospital in Boden (Head Gunnar Holmgren Jr MD). At this Department as in most other centres for middle ear surgery at the end of the 1950s only external body skin of full thickness were being used in myringoplasty. Here as elsewhere, the unsatisfactory longterm results obtained with this graft tissue led to an increasing tendency to replace full thickness skin with various types of connective tissue. Free autografts of fascia were thus commonly performed in 1962. When, however, these too did not meet the perhaps, too high expectations placed on them, autogenous grafts of elastic cartilage with its perichondrium were introduced the following year as a conceivable alternative.

Drum grafts containing cartilage were tested clinically by the author as early as 1961 but these were obtained from the hyaline skeleton of the nasal septum. Owing to the difficulty of obtaining the required material from this site, since 1963 the cartilaginous graft has been taken from the elastic frame work of the tragus—following Goodhill's (1961) favourable experience of tragal perichondrium in stapes surgery.

The reason for including cartilage in these grafts was the supposition that the cartilage lamina fitted into the perforation might prove so substantially resistant to the poor nutrition at this site that closure through overgrowth from the surrounding host structures would occur even when the regenerative capacity of the vascular bed was low. It was considered, moreover that this centrally positioned rigid plate would induce the restored membrane to vibrate like the normal drum—that is, as a rigid piston—at lower frequencies.

So as to obtain a long term impression of the results of autogenous tympanic grafts of full-thickness external body skin, fascia and elastic cartilage with its perichondrium the present follow up study was undertaken. As the object was to assess the actual drum graft with respect to its role in both anatomic and the functional restoration the only cases of interest were those in which, prior to operation, the drum defect had been judged to be solely responsible for any reduction in middle ear transmission.

### *Material and methods*

During the 5 year period from 1st July 1960 to 30th June 1965 a total of 241 myringoplasties (Wullstein type I tympanoplasties) were performed with autogenous grafts of full thickness external body skin, fascia or elastic cartilage with its perichondrium. This number does not include such myringoplasties performed on ears on which modified radical mastoidectomy had been carried out earlier or at the same sence.

Of these 241 cases 232 could be examined with respect to the closure of the drum and the hearing restoration. The follow up period was 3 1/2 years  $\pm$  12 months, unless a failure occurred before that.

In the follow up series retroauricular full thickness skin was used on 70 occasions in 77 ears (2 re-operations), fascia on 74 occasions in 68 ears (6 re-operations) and elastic cartilage with its perichondrium on 70 occasions (0 re-operations).

Prior to operation the mean of the air bone gap at 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz was on average 26 dB for the ears given skin grafts and 25 dB for those in which fascia or elastic cartilage—perichondrium was used.

In the 9 myringoplasties the result of which could not be followed through out the stipulated time owing to lack of co-operation by the patients, full thickness skin, fascia and cartilage—perichondrium were used in 4, 3 and 2 operations, respectively.

All the drum perforations in the series were due to infection. Two of the defects had been present for only 6 months, and the others for several years, some for decades.

The decision to perform myringoplasty was based on analysis of the ear before and at the actual operation.

A preoperative microscope examination and puretone audiometry were routine measures, while radiographic examination was seldom performed. In about a third of the cases the transmission properties of the middle ear were tested by the use of temporary drum membrane prosthesis. The transmittance of the Eustachian tube was tested only roughly by Ioltzer's or Valsalva's manœuvre.

To minimize the danger of burying infection no operation was made on any ear that had not been dry the whole month prior to the myringoplasty.

All the operations were performed in accordance with the generally accepted principles, insofar as these were applicable. All were done by 4 qualified otologists. Local anaesthesia was usually preferred.

In the drum and middle ear examination and in the otosurgical manipulations the fine meato-tympanic structures were observed by means of a binocular magnifying glass (stereoscopically by Cullstrand's method) or an operation microscope (Zeiss Otopskop).

In the preparation of the graft bed any membrane remnants were carefully de-epithelialized and the perforation rim together with any parts of the lamina propria displaying tympanosclerotic changes were excised. In the case of skin grafts in sub-total or total defects of the membrane the mental epithelium was removed within a zone 3 mm from the annulus tympanicus and out into the auditory canal. When fascia or cartilage with perichondrium was used the corresponding canal wall skin was instead curled outwards before the adaption of the graft. In the case of anteriorly located perforations the canal wall bulge in this region was removed with a diamond stone drill as proposed by Guilford *et al* (1950).

The full thickness skin grafts were taken from the retroauricular area. The transplants consisted of all the skin layers. About one half of the grafts were of the pedicle type (Moritz's method 1932) and the other half free (Wulstein's method, 1953).

The fascia grafts were obtained as described by Örtengren (1959) from the superficial fascia of the temporal muscle and then from its ventral portion where the aponeurotic character is most prominent.

The grafts of cartilage with perichondrium were taken from the elastic cartilage of the tragus by a technique similar to that described by Goodhill (1964). From the thumb-nail sized pieces of cartilage invested with connective tissue the perichondrium on one side was removed, while that on the opposite side was kept intact. This perichondrium layer was made to overlap by about 2 mm the adherent cartilage lamina, which had been tailored to the size of the drum perforation.

The greatest care was observed in manipulating the grafts. The skin grafts were placed over the perforation with the dermis portion against the de-epithelialized mental side of the bed. The fascia grafts, which were likewise adapted, were covered on the canal side with a piece of oxidized regenerated cellulose (Surgicel® Johnson & Johnson) and, where feasible in the peripheral parts with the replaced canal wall skin. The grafts of cartilage with perichondrium were applied so that the cartilage lamina lay in the drum defect with the bare surface of the cartilage facing the middle-ear cavity. The overlapping perichondrium on the opposite side then adhered to the denuded mental structures surrounding the perforation. If possible the perichondrium portion was covered peripherally by the pedicled mental skin flap.

After the operation the drum grafts were covered with a piece of gauze — dry for fascia transplants but otherwise moistened with a suspension of hydrocortisone and oxytetracycline (Terracortril® Pfizer). Gauze was also packed in the canal in such a way that the graft was only gently pressed against its bed.

Usually the patient was kept in hospital for 2 days after the operation. The pack was removed after 7—10 days. Further checks were made on average 3 times during the first 6 months. If at the last of these examinations the status was satisfactory the patient was asked to report at intervals of

Of the 79 ears in which *retroauricular full thickness skin* was used 35 (44 per cent) showed an intact drum membrane. Seven of these resembled the normal healthy tympanic membrane. In 12 there was diffuse sclerosis under the ordinary shining, mental epithellum, and 16 consisted largely of typical external body skin. Epithelial cysts were seen in 3 cases and in 10 the skin transplants were red, swollen and covered with desquamation products—manifestations of dermatitic processes.

In 32 of the 44 ears where the graft had taken more or less incompletely or had later re-perforated the perforation were partly surrounded by external body skin. In 28 of these ears the transplanted skin was dermatitic; in 5 small graft cholesteatomas were seen.

Of the 74 ears in which a *fascia graft* was done 45 (61 per cent) showed complete closure of the drum perforation. About one third of these drums resembled a quite normal tympanic membrane. In one third the connective tissue stroma was to a varying extent thickened and opaque under the typical mental epithellum and in the others this sclerosis was partly replaced by atrophy. In 2 ears the intact drum membrane was the site of myringitis.

In 19 of the 29 ears in which no closure was effected there was an extremely small perforation situated within an atrophic scar. All but one of these 29 perforations were dry.

Of the 79 ears in which grafts of *elastic cartilage with its perichondrium* were used the perforations were closed in 58 (73 per cent) at the end of the follow up period. One of these drums looked like an ordinary tympanic membrane. 2 displayed diffuse sclerosis, while the other 55 were characterized by the grossly unchanged, sharply demarcated cartilage lamina. In all these ears the restored drum membrane was covered with mental epithellum which in one case was the site of myringitis. In 35 ears the incorporated cartilage graft was surrounded by a fairly normal membrane tissue. In 20 there was some degree of atrophy in a zone of variable width adjacent to the cartilage lamina. In 47 ears the cartilage graft was in close apposition to the adjacent tympanic membrane while in the other 8 the graft was partly dislocated. In one ear the cartilaginous component was partly situated inside the restored membrane while in the other 7 ears some peripheral part of the graft deviated in the opposite direction giving rise to a local intumescence on the mental surface of the drum.

In 17 of the 21 ears where the myringoplasty operation had failed the perforation was minimal and situated within an atrophic area just outside the intact cartilage lamina. In 4 ears the cartilaginous part of the transplant was missing and then the perforation was about the same size as originally. All but one of these ears with persistent perforation were dry.

### Functional results

The results from the aspect of hearing restoration are reported in figures 24 and 25.

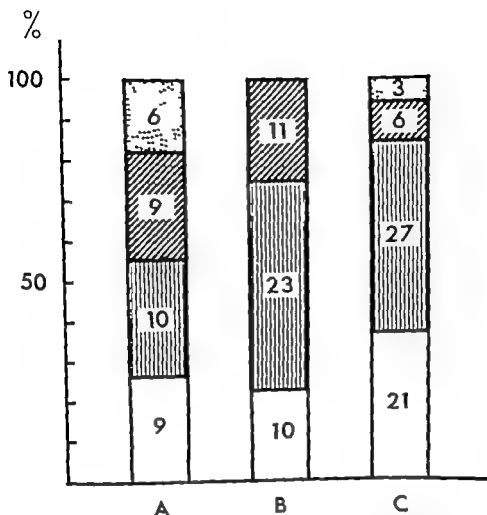


Fig. 24 Result of myringoplasty assessed with respect to the hearing result registered after successful lowering of tympanic membrane perforations. The results are presented as the mean shift of air-conduction threshold at the frequencies 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz. The preoperative data are related to the results 3 1/2 years  $\pm$  12 months after the operation.

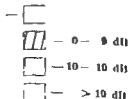
Column A — Full thickness skin (34 cases)

B — Fascia (11 cases)

C — Cartilage with its perichondrium (57 cases)

Postoperatively rise in air-conduction threshold

lowering of air conduction threshold



x Number of ears in the respective group

For full thickness skin grafts the mean lowering of the air-conduction threshold at 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz was 10 dB or more in 86 per cent of the ears. The corresponding figures for fascia and cartilage with perichondrium were 70 and 185 per cent respectively.

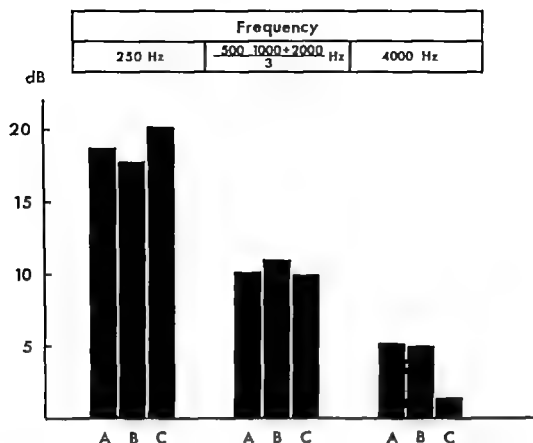


Fig. 25. Result of myringoplasty assessed with respect to the hearing result registered after successful repair of tympanic membrane perforations. The mean reduction in dB of the air-bone gap at 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz, and the reduction of the gap at 250 and 4000 Hz are presented for the mean for the ears grafted with the same type of tissue. The two-operative data are related to the result 312 ears  $\pm$  12 months after the operation.

Column A — Ear from regular full-thickness skin (31 cases)

B — Fascia (15 cases)

C — Cartilage with its perichondrium (37 cases)

At 250 Hz the reduction in the air-bone gap was on the average greatest for the ears with cartilage—perichondrium grafts (20 dB), the mean reduction of the gap at 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz was on the average greatest for the ears with a fascia graft (11 dB), and at 4000 Hz it was on the average greatest for those with skin (5 dB). The range of the mean reduction of the gap for the 3 ear groups was comparatively small at the frequencies up to 2000 Hz, but at 4000 Hz it was nearly 4 dB. This is because at this frequency the gap on average hardly diminished at all where cartilage was used.

To compare various tympanic graft tissues on the basis of the results of clinical myringoplasties it is necessary not only that the various materials shall have been applied under similar conditions and the assessment have been made consistently. It is also necessary that each tissue shall have been used in series large enough for random negative results due to extremely poor restorative conditions to be fairly equally distributed between the various types.

These 3 conditions would appear to have been satisfied in the clinical material constituting the basis for the present comparisons between full thickness skin, fascia and cartilage with its perichondrium. Each tissue was used in more than 70 myringoplastic operations. In the 3 tissue groups the distribution of the perforations with respect to size was much the same. This is indicated by the mean pre-operatively registered air bone gap at 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz which, on average for the fascia and cartilage-perichondrium groups was the same (20 dB) and only 1 dB greater for the full-thickness skin group. Throughout the time all these myringoplasties were performed the ENT Department in Boden was under the same head, thus increasing the chance of uniform assessment and management.

The follow up period of 3 1/2 years  $\pm$  12 months was long enough to ensure that in no ear was the result of the operation regarded as successful unless it had remained so for at least 2 1/2 years. It is possible that the various grafts had integrated within 6 months, but it is not certain that their structural transformation will have been completed so soon. In an assessment of the suitability of various tissues as drum grafts the state of the restored membranes after a few months is of minor relevance; rather it is required to know whether the restored drums have tolerated the stress to which most tympanic membranes at times are subjected. The observation time should thus be long enough for the reconstructed membranes to provide convincing evidence of their resistance—for instance in the case of upper respiratory tract infections or occasional barotrauma.

In reports of the results of various clinical operations for hearing restoration the change in hearing obtained has usually been expressed as the difference between the pre- and postoperative air bone gap. The reason for doing so is probably that the diastasis between the air and the bone-conduction threshold is regarded as a more reliable basis for comparisons than the threshold values themselves, which for a particular ear can vary from time to time—for instance from the point of the alertness of the patient and through differences in the calibration of the audiometer.

In the present context, however, this does not apply entirely. According to Onchl (1954) and Fournier (1949) the slightest impairment of the functional conditions in the middle ear not only leads to a rise of the air-conduction



threshold but is also reflected in a relatively small but definite rise in the bone-conduction threshold. If such a poorly functioning middle ear is restored the registered improvement in hearing will be a little better when expressed as the lowering of the air-conduction threshold than as the reduction of the air-bone gap. Since however the graft tissues in this study were of structurally different types, it is likely that under the same conditions in identical ears they would after integration give rise to the same lowering of the air-conduction threshold but a different lowering of the corresponding bone-conduction threshold. This means that the drum grafts used here can hardly be correctly assessed from a functional standpoint solely on the basis of the difference between the pre- and postoperatively registered air-bone gap.

The comparison of the 3 types of grafts was therefore made primarily on the basis of the surgically induced shifts in the air-conduction threshold, and only secondarily from the standpoint of changes in the air-bone gap. Because of the comparatively large size of the test groups, whereby any measurement error would be distributed fairly evenly within the groups, this mode of procedure should be applicable in the present context.

Ideally however the comparisons should have been made on the basis of speech audiometry, but at the beginning of the present study this was not yet a standard method.

The results of the myringoplasties as regards the closure of the drum were best for cartilage with its perichondrium, slightly poorer for fascia and poorest for full thickness skin. Complete closure of the perforations was recorded in 73, 61 and 44 per cent of the ears, in the respective groups.

The overall relatively large number of failures is probably due to the fact that the only criterion of selection of the ears for the operations was that they should have been dry just the month prior to the operation, that the auditory tube should be passable by hyperbaric air, and that the ossicular chain should be intact. It would be extraordinary if such a series did not include a number of ears in which no restoration of the drum was possible—for instance because the tubal function was in fact insufficient, because cryptogenic infection had been overlooked, or because of extremely reduced mastoid cellularity, a factor that, according to Diamant (1965) tends to inhibit closure of ear-drum perforations.

The comparatively long follow-up period and the length of the intervals between the examinations of the ears are other factors that might have influenced the results. Follow-up periods of some years would be expected to increase the likelihood of drum injuries from for instance middle ear otitis or barotrauma, and in the long interval an incipient slough of a tympanic membrane graft afflicted by myringitis would be completed. Since a comparatively frequent follow-up treatment is desirable after skin grafting in order that the subsequent desquamation products can be removed without delay, the fairly sporadic after-care in the present series would probably have affected the ears in which full thickness skin was used more than the

others. Thus, in a large series of such myringoplastic operations reported by Bandilow (1960) 82 per cent of the ears were dry after the operation when a frequent and regular examination had been carried out, against 34 per cent for patients only sporadically attending for inspection. Since such frequent after-care is, from the patient's aspect, neither encouraging nor desirable, the mere necessity for it constitutes a disadvantage of external body skin in myringoplasty.

As regards the improvement in hearing recorded post-operatively in the successful cases, there was no remarkable difference between the ears in which the various tissues were used.

In the case of fascia and full thickness skin it is difficult to analyse the effect of the grafted tissues on the hearing, because the restored drum membranes thus obtained varied so greatly in shape—from completely normal ones to those bearing a close resemblance to the grafted tissue. As it is impossible clearly to predict the post-operative appearance of any drum thus restored, the question of the acoustic properties of these 2 tissues is without practical significance. In the case of cartilage with its perichondrium, however, this was obviously not the case, because in more than 90 per cent of the ears in which this tissue was used the cartilaginous part of the graft was grossly unchanged. The crucial point in this connection will then be whether the sound transmission in the ears in which the drum consisted partly of a cartilage lamina was worse than in those to which either of the 2 other tissues had been grafted. As regards the post-operative lowering of the air-conduction threshold it is then evident from the results of the audiometric tests that the ears with cartilage and perichondrium were slightly better than those of the other 2 groups. If the reduction in the air bone gap is accepted as a suitable measure of the improvement in hearing, the above results show that the ears in which the missing drum tissue had been replaced by a cartilage graft were as good as, or slightly better than those of the other 2 groups at frequencies up to 2000 Hz, but at 4000 Hz perhaps slightly worse.

### Conclusions

It was found in this clinical study that permanent closure of the tympanic membrane perforations resulting from inflammation was obtained more often after the use of tympanic grafts of autogenous cartilage with its perichondrium than of those of autogenous fascia, and more often after the use of fascia than autogenous external body skin of full-thickness. The closure of the perforations with the 3 graft tissues resulted in, on average, approximately the same mean reduction in the air bone gap at the frequencies 500, 1000 and 2000 Hz.

of the graft survive the transfer. If this cell survival theory is generally valid and the grafted connective tissue cells have in fact survived the change of site the drum closed with a fascia graft should have the typical appearance of aponeurotic connective tissue. In the present experimental series, where the host site was supposed to be well vascularized this was the case for only one fascia graft. In the corresponding clinical material too there was no membrane that truly resembled fascia but instead most of the post-operatively closed drum membranes displayed only sparse and diffuse sclerosis.

Another interesting feature of these human drums, however, was the more or less extensive atrophy that was often observed in the restored membranes. When re-perforation occurred the perforation was almost invariably found within these atrophic areas.

These observations would suggest that in myringoplasty the fascia graft does not readily integrate with the bed with a retained viability. If this is the case the drums repaired with fascia and reported as being healed would be largely composed not of the graft tissue but of regenerated elements from the bed. Since the regenerative power of the human body tends to diminish with age the above view would seem to be borne out by Örtengren's (1964) observation that myringoplasty with fascia is less often successful above than below 40 years of age.

As fascia and tendon tissues are morphologically closely related it is perhaps possible in this connection to draw a parallel between a gliding tendon graft placed in interposition and a fascia graft approximated over a drum perforation for the vascular beds are just as incomplete in the two cases. As regards the integration of such a free tendon graft Heinemann (1963) found that the transplant usually succumbs and is substituted completely by connective tissue deriving from the bed.

As the oxygen needs of full thickness skin per unit of volume are about twice that of connective tissue (Krebs et al., 1948) it might appear curious that the full thickness skin grafts of the present experimental series survived transfer to the drum bed better than the fascia grafts, which underwent marked changes. A possible explanation is to be found in the different vascular pattern in the two tissues. In the fascia the vessels lie in a plane which is coincident with the surface of the underlying muscles while in the skin they course for a part perpendicular to the surface. This means that many more transected capillary vessels are directed towards the opened vessels of the bed in a skin than in a fascia graft.

If however fascia is less fitted to survive the transfer to the drum remnants than external body skin it might appear curious that the fascia grafts in the present clinical series yielded considerably better results than the corresponding skin grafts in respect of closure of the tympanic membrane. The explanation would then lie in the completely different reaction of these two tissues in closure of the perforation. Here the fascia graft is obviously less involved than the skin graft, which, while replacing the

original defect at the same time actively inhibits any natural regeneration of the drum tissue. The fascia tissue on the other hand, probably supports passively such regeneration in serving as a scaffold for the proliferating connective tissue cells of the bed, and as a vector for the both mentally and tympanically regenerating host integumentary cells. Hence if the vascular bed is more or less unfavourable for both these grafts the course of healing should favour the fascia grafted drum. After fascia grafting the subsequent degeneration of the transplant will take place many times under cover of invaded host epithelial cells. If then the regenerative capacity of the bed is sufficient to produce a substantial connective tissue replacement, a membrane of appropriate thickness will be obtained otherwise a more or less atrophic drum will result. The corresponding degeneration of a skin graft, however starts, within the epithelial portion. When these structures degenerate and die they are unlike the connective tissue in the fascia graft completely unprotected from attacks by the numerous micro-organisms normally present on the surface of the skin. This combination of degenerative and inflammatory changes will in the long run, result in perforations in a great number of cases.

It is thus tempting to conclude that a full skin graft by incorporation as such prejudices the permanent closure more than a fascia graft which disappears during the healing process.

#### Cartilage—perichondrium

When the pieces of elastic cartilage with adherent perichondrium had been transplanted to the well vascularized beds in the cat ears the cartilage integrated without any gross changes. Histologic examination showed the corresponding chondrocytes to be largely vital. The parts of the perichondrium that initially overlapped the cartilage, on the other hand, had greatly diminished during healing. In the corresponding clinical series, too, the cartilage almost invariably lay macroscopically unchanged within the host site. Several of these human transplants, however were situated in membranes that were more or less atrophic next to the cartilage when there was a perforation it was almost invariably situated within such an area.

From the above observations it would seem that the cartilage component of these grafts had a greater capacity than either full thickness skin or fascia to survive intact the transfer to the incomplete vascular bed of a perforated drum. This superior power of the cartilage is probably due to this tissue's nutrition by diffusion and its low oxygen consumption.

As regards the behaviour of these transplants in closure of drum perforations, it would appear that the integrated cartilage component, like a skin graft, can in fact replace the tissue defect in the drum but that the cartilage unlike external body skin, instead tends to promote natural regeneration. The cartilage lamina acts in this sense as a neutral but vital substratum for

the proliferating host tissue cells that envelope the graft. Even in the case of a relatively low regenerative power of the bed this would mean that there is a good chance that closure of the perforation will occur not with an atrophic scar but with a cartilage armed, and hence slightly thickened membrane. On the other hand the perichondrium component the purpose of which in this context is to anchor the cartilage probably takes the same part in the closure as was ascribed earlier to the fascia. In consequence myringoplasty with grafts of cartilage and perichondrium probably will give a higher proportion closures provided that the cartilage lamina is tailored to fill the perforation completely.

*Acoustic restoration*—Although the tissue grafts of elastic cartilage with its perichondrium proved to be slightly better as regards drum closure than those of fascia, and decidedly better than those of full thickness skin in an evaluation of the suitability of these tissues for drum grafts it is necessary also to know whether the definitive restorations obtained with them differ appreciably in acoustic quality—that is, as regards their effect on the transmission of sound. To examine this the transmission properties of the middle ear were determined in the experimental and clinical series. In the cats this was done by comparing the grafted ears with ears not operated upon on the basis of a predetermined cochlear microphonic response. In the patients, pure tone audiometry was used. These two studies disclosed no essential difference between the 3 groups as regards the capacity of the middle ear to transmit sound at the speech frequencies. At lower and higher frequencies, however there was probably a slight difference. Low frequency sound was transmitted a little better in the ears of the clinical series with cartilage—perichondrium grafts, while at 4000 Hz the opposite was the case for both the experimental and clinical series. As mentioned in chapter IV these small differences might be due to the comparatively greater rigidity and mass of the cartilage graft.

## VII General Summary

The object of this investigation was to compare autogenous full-thickness skin, fascia and elastic cartilage—perichondrium as materials for tympanic grafts. Of principal interest was their capacity of restoring the perforated drum, and, secondly the acoustic quality of the membranes obtained.

So that these comparisons might be made on a wider basis than is usual, studies were performed experimentally in laboratory animals as well as in man. In the experimental series the conditions for transplantation were considered to be favourable and in the clinical series less so.

### *Material and methods*

The experimental study was performed on the cat. Freshly produced perforations of the ear-drum were closed with grafts of full-thickness skin (10 ears), fascia (10 ears) and elastic cartilage—perichondrium (11 ears). After a mean follow up period of just less than 6 months the healed drums were examined as regards function and, after the animals had been sacrificed, from the morphologic aspect. In the functional evaluation a comparison with respect to the middle-ear transmission properties was made with an average ear in which no graft had been performed. The point of reference then used was a cochlear microphonic response of 3.5  $\mu$  RMS, recorded at the round window. In the morphologic evaluation the sectioned temporal bone was examined histologically.

The clinical study consisted in a follow up investigation of a consecutive clinical series of myringoplasties. Grafts of retroauricular full thickness skin were used on 79 occasions, fascia on 74 and elastic cartilage—perichondrium on 79. The follow up period for the series was 3 1/2 years  $\pm$  12 months.

### *Results*

#### *Experimental study*

(1) *Full-thickness skin* — The grafts were integrated and retained their character of full skin. Glands, hair follicles and proliferations of the squamous epithelium caused the formation of multiple epithelial cysts. No dermatitic processes were observed.

(2) *Fascia* — With one exception the grafts were reduced to, or replaced by a sparse atypical connective tissue. In the exceptional case the graft was fully and microscopically unchanged.

(3) *Cartilage—perichondrium* — The cartilage component of the grafts was usually unchanged but the perichondrium portion like fascia was reduced to or replaced by a non specific connective tissue

(4) The middle-ear sound transmission was, on average slightly poorer in the experimental than in the "normal" ear a difference that was least marked at 1000 Hz, slightly more so at 200 Hz, and most pronounced at frequencies above 3000 Hz. The transmission properties was slightly better in the ears with a fascia graft than in those where the other tissues had been used

### Clinical study

(1)—In the ears with full thickness skin grafts structures with the character of skin were rarely to be seen and when such structures were observed they usually displayed dermatitis—In the ears with fascia grafts there was no typical fascia tissue. Instead there were irregular sclerotic areas and atrophic scars of varied extent—In the ears with grafts of elastic cartilage—perichondrium the cartilage component was almost invariably present in a grossly unchanged state. The perichondrium on the other hand, had the appearance of integrated fascia

(2) Of the ears with grafts of retroauricular full thickness skin 44 per cent of the perforations were closed. For fascia and elastic cartilage—perichondrium the corresponding figures were 61 and 73 per cent

(3) In 56 per cent of the ears in which the full skin transplantations resulted in closure of the perforation the air-conduction threshold was reduced by more than 9 dB (the mean value for tones of 500 1000 and 2000 Hz). For fascia and cartilage—perichondrium the corresponding figures were 75 and 84 per cent

### Conclusions

The results of the study suggest the following conclusions.

- (a) Drum grafts of autogenous fascia and cartilage—perichondrium are superior to those of full thickness external body skin
- (b) In ears in which the drum remnant is rendered fibrotic and regeneratively insufficient autogenous cartilage—perichondrium is probably more suitable than fascia as a material for drum grafts.

## Zusammenfassung

Die vorliegende Untersuchung hatte zur Aufgabe, die Anwendbarkeit von autogenem Gewebetransplantat aus Vollhaut, Faszie und elastischem Knorpel mit dazugehörndem Perichondrium als Material bei der Myringoplastik zu untersuchen und zu vergleichen. Es interessierte sowohl die Möglichkeit der Defektdeckung am Trommelfell mit dem genannten Gewebematerial als auch die tatsächlichen Eigenschaften der dabei gebildeten Membranen zu studieren.

Die verschiedenen Arten der Transplantate wurden tierexperimentell und klinisch untersucht. Den Vergleichen sollte dadurch eine etwas breitere Basis verliehen werden. Die Bedingungen eines erfolgreichen Einheilens wurden in dem experimentellen Material als günstiger angesehen, verglichen mit dem klinischen Material auf Grund besserer zirkulatorischer Bedingungen.

### Material und Methode

Die tierexperimentellen Studien wurden an Katzen vorgenommen. Zentrale frische traumatische Trommelfellperforationen wurden mit Vollhaut (10 Ohren), Faszie (10 Ohren) und elastischem Knorpel Perichondrium (11 Ohren) gedeckt. Nach einer durchschnittlichen Beobachtungszeit von ungefähr 6 Monaten wurden die geheilten Trommelfelle funktionell und nach Tötung der Tiere ebenfalls morphologisch untersucht.

Funktionell wurden die myringoplastisch operierten Ohren in Hinsicht auf die Mittelohrtransmission verglichen mit einem nicht operierten „Durchschnitts-Ohr“, wobei als Referenz ein Microphonopotential der Schnecke von 3,5  $\mu$  RMS, abgeleitet vom runden Fenster angewandt wurde. — Die morphologische Untersuchung der Membranen wurde an den zu histologischen Präparaten verwandelten Temporalknochen vorgenommen.

Die klinischen Studien umfassten Nachuntersuchungen eines konsekutiv myringoplastisch operierten Patientenguts. In diesem war retroauriculäre Vollhaut in 19 Fällen, Faszie in 74 und elastisches Knorpel Perichondrium in 79 Fällen zur Anwendung gekommen. Die postoperative Beobachtung betrug 3 1/2 Jahre  $\pm$  12 Monate.

### Ergebnisse

#### A. Experimentelle

1. *Vollhaut* — die Transplantate hatten hauptsächlich gleichen Charakter wie die Haut der Entnahmestelle: sie enthielten Haare und Drüsen. Im Chorion fand man zahlreiche Zysten, jedoch keine entzündlichen Prozesse.



- 2 *Fas ie* — die Transplantate waren bis auf eine Ausnahme reduziert zu oder ersetzt durch ein sparsames, uncharakteristisches Bindegewebe. In dem einzigen Ausnahmefall war das Faszientransplantat sowohl makroskopisch wie mikroskopisch unverändert.
- 3 *Knorpel Perichondrium* — die Knorpelkomponente der Transplantate waren hauptsächlich unverändert, der Anteil des Perichondrium dagegen reduziert oder durch Bindegewebe ersetzt.
- 4 *Mittelohrtransmission* — allgemein etwas schlechter in den experimentellen Ohren als im „Normalohr“. Der geringste Unterschied bestand bei der Frequenz von 1000 Hz, etwas stärker merkbar bei 200 Hz und am meisten ausgeprägt bei Frequenzen die 3000 Hz überstiegen. Das Transmissionsvermögen war etwas besser bei den mit Faszien- und Knorpel-Transplantaten operierten Ohren als in den übrigen Experimentiohren.

#### B Klinische

- 1 — In den mit *Vollhauttransplantat* operierten Ohren wurden verhältnismässig selten epidermale Strukturen beobachtet, und falls vorhanden waren diese myringotisch verändert. — In den mit *Fasientransplantat* operierten Ohren konnte man niemals eine typische Faszienstruktur nachweisen, stattdessen fand man in variierendem Ausmass sklerotische Streifen und atrophische Narben. — In den mit *Knorpel Perichondrium* operierten Ohren sah man fast immer die Knorpelkomponente, die makroskopisch unverändert erschien. In dem Teil des Einheilungsproduktes, der dem überschliessenden Perichondrium entsprach, sah man dagegen in wechselndem Ausmass nur Sklerose und Atrophie.
- 2 In den mit retroaurikulärer *Vollhauttransplantat* operierten Ohren waren 44 % der Perforationen geschlossen. Für Faszien- und Knorpel-Transplantate waren die entsprechenden Ziffern 61 % respektive 73 %.
- 3 In 56 % der Ohren, in denen die *Vollhauttransplantation* zur Ausheilung der Perforation führte, war die Hörschwelle für luftübertragenen Ton mit mehr als 9 dB gesenkt (Mittelwert für die Frequenzen 500, 1000 und 2000 Hz). Für die mit Faszien- und Knorpel-Transplantaten operierten Ohren waren die entsprechenden Ziffern 75 % respektive 84 %.

### Konklusion

Als Resultat der Untersuchungen ergibt sich

- 1 dass autogene Trommelfelltransplantate mit Faszien- oder Knorpel-Perichondrium Vollhauttransplantaten überlegen sind.
- 2 dass autogene Trommelfelltransplantate mit Knorpel-Perichondrium vermutlich Transplantaten mit Faszien- und Knorpel-Transplantaten in solchen Ohren überlegen sind, in denen die Trommelfellreste fibrotisch und regenerativ insuffizient sind.

## VIII Acknowledgements

I am glad to have this opportunity of acknowledging a great debt of gratitude to my chiefs, Professor Herman Diamant, M D and Gunnar Holmgren Jr M D for their guidance and their unfailing interest, and for the numerous other ways in which they have facilitated this investigation throughout the years.

I also wish to express my sincere thanks to Professor Carl Axel Hamberger M D for his encouragement and help in a variety of ways.

It is a pleasure to express my thanks to Martin Bergstedt M D and Jan Wersäll M D. The collaboration with them, their guidance and advice have been of inestimable value.

To Aage Möller M D who read and constructively criticized the chapter on cochlear microphonics, and to Lennart Tunemalm, Res. Eng. who contributed with skilful technical assistance I wish to express my gratitude.

My thanks are also due to Mr Victor Braxton, who translated the manuscript. His experience and profound knowledge of medical writing have been a great asset.

This study has been supported in part by grants from the Medical Administration of the County of Norrbotten and the Swedish Medical Research Council.

## IX References

- Agard, C., 1960: Dauerresultat der Tympanoplastik nach Ergebnisse der HNO-Klin. H. Mallard. Z. Laryng. Rhinol., 39, 331.
- Albright, J. P. and Leigh, B. G. 1946: Dural bone graft (Hostatic) in ringoplasty. Laryngoscope 76, 1687.
- Allan, G. W. and F. Nander, C., 1960: The mechanism of bone conduction. A. O. T. 69, 3.
- Allan, G. W., Dallas, P. J. and Ku, H. L., 1964: Experimental study of perfect myringitis. Ann. Otol. 73, 684.
- Austin, D. F. 1964: Pressure study of the graft tympanoplasty. Laryng. (Borden) 83, 743.
- Azhar, N. F. 1911: Technik und Ergebnisse der freien Transplantation. Med. Klin. 7, 1801.
- Bandt, W. O. 1940: Über Spätresultate nach Tympanoplastik. Z. Laryng. Rhinol. 39, 335.
- Beal, P. H. 1961: Is myringoplasty a rhinopharyngitis? J. Laryng. 73, 807.
- Bickert, P. 1934: Das Lappencholesteatom. Z. Laryng. Rhinol. 37, 567.
- Bickert, P. 1962: Beobachtung an gehörlos-bessernd Operation bei chronisch-mesotympanal Otitiden. Acta oto-laryng. 51, 335.
- Békésy, G. 1941: Über die Messung der Schwingung amplituden der Gehörknöchelchen mittels der kapazitiven Sonde. Akust. Zsch. 6, 1.
- Békésy, G. 1960: Experimental hearing. G. M. Graw Hill Book Company Inc. New York.
- Benson, F. H., Ingren, C., Voth, A. and Salt, B. 1968: Heparin syringe abhandling of the larynx radical partial laryngectomy. J. S. Ensk. of laryngology. G. M. Graw Hill Book Company Inc. New York.
- Berger, F. and Hessberg, K. 1963: Tympanoplastik mit retroaurikulärer Incision. In: Ann. Otol. 72, 331.
- Bethold, E. 1878: Über Myringoplastik. Zsch. f. Ohrenheilk., 12, 143.
- Bethold, E. 1889: Über die Heilung der eitrigen Trommelfellperforation. Zsch. f. Ohrenheilk., 20, 34.
- Billingham, R. E., 1934: The preservation of tissues. Biological applications of freezing and drying. Academic Press, 1, 233.
- Birch, D. A. 1961: Preliminary communication. Myringoplasty performed with partial bone homograft. J. Laryng., 73, 922.
- Bocca, E. C. and Zerk, H. E., 1939: The implantation of the larynx. J. Laryng. 73, 1452.
- Bordley, J. F. and Hady, M. 1937: Effect of the larynx on the tympanic membrane. In: The larynx. Arch. Otol. 73, 649.
- Bor, K. Z. 1963: Tympanoplasty with application of free ototransplantation from the mucous membrane of the back. Zh. Ushn. Nos. Gorge. Bol. (USSR) 23, 83.
- Brock, S. J. 1963: Cartilage graft in tympanoplasty. J. Laryng. 73, 1452.
- Brian, K. 1958: Vergleich der plastischen und der tympanoplastischen Methoden. Arch. Oh. 1, 116.
- Brian, K. and Can, W. 1939: Tiersperimentelle Untersuchungen über die Verhaltung des Epithels frischer otitischer und konservierter homologischer Harnstoffplantat im HNO-Blick. Entstehung von Lappencholesteomen. Z. Laryng. Rhinol. 38, 577.
- Craig, E. and Holb, M. 1963: On perforations with myringoplasty. Ca. Oto-laryng. 12, 373.

- Chadai V J 1944 Tympa le membran transpl t Harp. Hosp. B II J n.—F br 27
- Charland, R. A 1943 Lempl i d l'ponévrose temporal en otocirurgie L Méd Canada, 94 459
- Classe-Dom arch, A 1935 Cent tympanoplasties pratiquées à l'id d'une greff libre d membran périostique Rev Laryng. (Bordeau ) 80 917
- Conway H Stark, R B nd Joslin D 1931 Observ ti on the developme t f circula ti In ski grafts. Plast. Reconst S rg 8, 312.
- Converse J M nd R paport F T 1934: The scularization f skin tograft nd homografts. An experiment l stud i man. A S rg 143, 308.
- Cornish C. B 1963: Use f freeze-dried orl i hom graft in cal surgery La ret. 7372, 943
- Davidson, M 1959: A stud f the f i f togeous cartill ge grafts. Laryngoscope 69 1219
- Diamond M 1945 Chroni middle ea discharg E Ea Nose Thr Monthl 44 81
- Dunlap, A. M and Sch Luecht H F 1947 Cl sure f perf ratl f the trampa i membran Laryngoscope 57 479
- Ely E T 1881 Ha t Transplantation bei hronischer Eiteru g des Mit i hres. Cited by Stei brügg Heidelberg. Zachr f Ohrenheilk., 10 148.
- Flottes L, Rix, R., Le De R. nd Harpel J 1963 L'utilisati des cornées d eau deshydratées dan les tympanoplasties. J Franç Oto-Rhl Lary g., 12, 835
- Forman F S., 1950: Corneal graft i middl ea surgery Laryngoscope 70, 1691
- Fourni J E., 1939 Bone conduction. In The Middl Ea by H i rich G K brak; Chapt V The U i ersity f Chicago Press, Chicgo (1939)
- F schne P 1933 Eine Operati methode zum plastischen Verachl ss on Trommel-fellperforationen Acta oto-laryng 48, 19
- Goodhill V 1961 Articulated polyeth lene prosthesi with perichondral graft i stapedect my Rev Laryng (Bordeau ) 82, 205
- Goodhill V 1943 Personal communicati n.
- Goodhill V Harris I nd Brockman S 1964 Tympanoplasty with perichondral graft Arch. Ot l ryng 79, 131
- Goodhill, V 1947 Tragal perichondrium d cartilag i tympanoplast Arch. Oto-lary g 83, 480
- Grü berg H nd Brandtlow H 1944 Di Deso yribo ucl i säuresynthese des freien Vollhauttranspla tates. Arch. Ohr Nase. u. Kehlk. H Rk., 181 811
- G rler J 1963 Le materi l d greff cours des tympanoplasties. J Franç Oto. Rhl.—Laryng 12, 859
- G lford F R. and Wright W K 1938 Ba i tech niques i m ringoplasty nd tympo oplast Lary goscope 68, 823
- G lford, F R Wright W K nd Drape W L., 1959 Tympa le ski grafti g nd reconstruction f the middl ea sound-conducti mecha ism. Arch. Ot laryng 69, 70.
- G lford F R., 1962 Tympa le grafts Personal xpience with surgical repai f tympani perf ratl na. Lary goscope, 72, 1028.
- G lford F R., Williams, G H nd H lper R 1964 Tympa i perf ratio clos re with ut gen fresh i Arch. Ot l ry g 80 398.
- Hall A 1936 Centralis trumhi perforati er Prof s- Her f ltranspl tatbehandlung? Sv Läkartid 53, 140
- Harpman J A 1964 M ri g pl at Proced res, techniques, re lts. J Lary g 78, 421
- Heerman H 1941 Trommelf ilplastik mit F scleng webe om Muscul temporalis nach Begrüdigung der ord ren G hörg gew nd HNO 8 138
- Heerman J 1962 Erf hrn ge m t frei tra pl. Hierem l'zien Bindegewebe des Muscul temporalis bei Tympe pl alk und V skiel eru g der Radicallhöhl Z. Lary g Rhl L., 41 141
- Hei mann, H 1963 Z m El ha t pla tische Sehzentra pla tat Fortschr Med 81 227

- H I *widaski J* 1938: A trial f coveri g the tympan ic membr with corneal graft  
*Ot laryng pol.*, 12, 319  
 H *Imgren, C J* 1963: Person l commu lation  
 H *ase W F* d *Sheehy J L.* 1961: Myri goplasty *Arch. Ot laryng* 73, 407  
 H *ao S-C* *Chao C-F* *Hang T-F* *H g Y F* *H u C-C.*, and *H u L.* 1941:  
 Myri goplasty perf rmed with preserved umbilical cord rtery *J Chin Med* 83, 116  
 H *gne W* 1954: Early irulation in ski graft with con id ratio of method to  
 courage tbei survival *Brit J Pl t Surg.*, 6, 237  
 Jan C., 1963: Cartilage-tympanoplasty *Laryngoscope* 73, 1388  
 J *nisek G* 1966: Tru pla tation f deep-frozen il scler i t i tympan pl st *Ful*  
*Orr-Gégyóg.* 13 10  
 John n H 1948: B l t i n f d i gram i the imp d ace f rcula *Acta oto-lary g.*  
*Suppl* 74 83  
 K *ng P F* 1964: The se f s in hom graft in tympan plasty *J Laryng* 78, 840  
 K *irkoe J* 1960: The structure nd fu ct i n of the middl ear The U i rsity of T kyō  
 Press, Tokyo  
 K *irsch e M* 1913: Der g gewürtlig St d u d d i n d h e l n A sal hien der to-  
 plasischen freien Fascien-Übertragu g Hru s. Belle lli *Chl* 86, 5  
 A *leg W* and *Bandt m O* 1939: U tersuch gen übe d i Einheilung des frei Haut  
 trn plantat z. Z. Lary u Rhin l 38, 490  
 A *l g W* 1963: P acia temporali rum s rchlu om Trommelf ilperforati nen bei  
 de Tympanopla tik. *Nach Ohre bell.*, 97 83  
 K *ba, H A* nd *J hn on W A* 1948: Cell metabolism T b. bl i Amsterdam 100  
 L *umre ce M* 1950: Recv t i vsaligati f so nd conduction. A m *Ot i* 33 1020  
 L *awrence M* 1960: Aco sli ffect f middl e brili ti *Trans. Amer Acad*  
*Ophthal. Ot i* 33 233.  
 Lebo C. P 1963: Graft selection for tym n plast *An Ot i* 72, 40  
 Lo b L., 1926: Autotra pl tall d homototra pl st ti f cartil ge i the guinea  
 pig *J Am r Path* 2, 111  
 Lund, R., 1955: Det ydre øres og mell møret peci il pathologi med komplikati ne  
*N rdisk Lærebok i Oto-Rhino-Laryng logi* Ejna M skag rd København 1955.  
 Marqu i J 1966: Reconstructi microsurgery f the eardrum by mea f trampa i  
 m mbrane homograft *Acta to-l ry g.*, 82, 459  
 M *ason, S* d *P l k rd R* 1963: M i goplast *Brit. med J* 10 336  
 M *il h il J F* 1967: Myri goplasty by homog n in graft *J Laryng.*, 81 330  
 M *øll d R.* 1963: Transf f acti n f the middl ear *J Aco st Soc Ame* 35 1578.  
 M *øll d R* 1956: A expe im t i study f the co sli imp d ce f the middle ear  
 and il transmission properties. *Acta oto-lary g* 60 129.  
 M *ll., W* 1952: Pl stische El griff am Mitt l b su Wled herat il g de I en hr  
 schall itung *Z. Laryng. Rhin l.*, 31 336.  
 V *ff W D* 1947: Effect f parti l section f m d i t ry n ry *J Comp Physl* i  
*Pay bol.*, 40 203  
 V *il e A* 1966: Myri gopl stikk. T A skae Laegef ren., 80 608.  
 Onch i 1954: The blocked ho conduction test il diff renti l d i gnos. A *Ot i*  
 63, 81  
 P *lea T* 1963: S rg ry f hro ic ear witho t ca lly Result i 130 cases with  
 m scul periotra l fl p nd f nd tympanoplasty *Arch. Ot laryng* 77 870  
 P *all rao M E* 1967: E perimental tympan ic m mbrane losure with collage film  
*Arch. Ot i ryng.*, 80, 486  
 P *aga M C* nd *Glith F J* 1951: Effect f perforati f the tympan ic membrane  
 cochl pot ti l *Arch. Ot i ryng* 54 666  
 P *e L A* 1939: The f t f il l g d dead cartil g tru spla ted i b m s. *S rg.*  
*Gynec Obstet* 68, 603  
 Act to-laryng 5 ppl 244

- Fee L. A. 1935: Cell survival theory versus replacement theory. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 18, 181
- Fee L. A. 1938: Transplantation of tissue. V. L. I. The Williams & Wilkins Company Baltimore
- Fee L. A. 1939: Transplantation of tissues. V. L. II. The Williams & Wilkins Company Baltimore
- Fee L. A. 1963: Behavior of graft and implants. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 77, 34
- Ferrel P. 1963: Proposals in tympanoplasty. *Pract. Oto-Rhino-Laryng.* 25, 231
- Fleiss H and Vagten H. 1959: III Beitrag zum Problem der Plastische Abschlüsse der Pauke. *Z. Laryng. Rhinol.* 38, 683.
- Flester D. 1963: Myringoplasty methods. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 78, 310
- Fortmann, M. 1964: Enseignement lire des nos 500 derniers cas de tympanoplastie. *J. Franç. Oto-Rhino-Laryng.* 13, 713
- Fortmann M. 1965: A proposal of tympanoplasties. *Ann. Oto-Laryng.* (Paris) 82, 498
- Prochazkashy Y. B. 1961: The employment of preserved dermal graft in tympanoplasty. *Vest. Otorinol. ri g* (USSR) 23, 60
- Fullinger B. and Piri A. 1943: Chronic inflammation of the middle ear. *J. Path. Bact.* 63, 341
- Rambo, T. J. 1961: The use of paraffin to create a middle ear space in man. *Ear, Nose & Throat J.* 40, 612.
- Reed H. F. 1963: The use of dermal graft in otolaryngology. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 74, 769
- Richards, S. H. and M. C. T. M. 1963: Experimental observations on the graft myringoplasty. *J. Laryng.* 79, 832.
- Ringsberg J. C. 1962: Free graft myringoplasty. *J. Laryngoscope* 72, 188.
- Schäfer B. 1964: Myringoplasty and septum cartilage Transact. of the 14th Congress of the Scand. Oto-Laryng. Soc. 1963. *Acta oto-laryng.* 5, pp. 183, 82
- Schäfer B. and Simboch J. 1963: III. Genes collagen in the closure of tympanic membrane perforation. *J. Laryng.* 79, 189
- Salén, B. and R. Røhl J. 1960: Experimental intrabulbous transplantation. *Acta Otolaryng.* 5, 183
- Schäfer B. 1963: La greffe de tympan. *Laval Med.* 26, 337
- Schiff M. and Viederling P. H. 1963: A study in homograft otology. *Laryngoscope*, 73, 1446
- Schrimpf W. J. 1964: Repair of tympanic membrane perforation with human mucosa. *Ann. Otol.* 83, 101
- Schäfer B. and F. M. Gee M. T. and O. K. L. S. 1960: Comments on tympanoplasty. *Laryngoscope*, 70, 1157
- Schäfer P. 1949: Die Decke der Himmelpolster. I. Bedeutung für die Erfolgsrate. *Arch. path. Anat.* 148, 484
- Shen, J. J. 1960: A study of graft closure of eardrum perforation. *Arch. Oto-laryng.* 72, 188
- Simmons F. B. and Beatty D. L. 1962: The significance of round window closure in cochlear potential hearing: an uncorrelated study of the cat. *Trans. Amer. Soc.* 60, 181
- Smith J. J. and J. J. J. 1966: Importance of thickness of free skin in ear surgery. *J. Sporn. Ved. Pra. Loh. F. L. Hradel Králové* 9, 161
- Stearns M. L. 1940: Studies in the development of cochlear tissue. *J. Anat.* 87, 55
- Stearns M. L. 1964: Graft diploëtic transposition of tympanoplasty. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 78, 310
- Stearns M. L. 1961: Myringoplasty with the use of fascia grafts. *Arch. Otolaryng.* 74, 769
- Stearns M. L. 1964: Myringoplasty. *J. Laryngoscope* 74, 183
- T. B. H. G. 1960: Closure of perforation of the tympanic membrane. *J. Laryngoscope* 70, 371

- Tangemann C. H. 1884: Ersatz des Trommelfells durch Hauttransplantation. Cited by Steinbrügge Heidelberg. Zsch. f. Ohrenheilk. 12, 174
- Thrburn I. B. 1968: A critical review of tympanoplasty surgery. J. Laryng. 74, 453.
- Thrburn I. B. 1961: Experience with pedicled temporal muscle flaps in radical mastoid and tympanoplasty operations. J. Laryng. 73, 883.
- Thrburn I. B., 1963: Tympanomastoidectomy with or without the use of pedicled temporal muscle flaps. J. Laryng. 77, 501.
- Trombelli A. 1963: Perforation of tympanic membrane and tympanoplasty. Arch. Otolaryng. 77, 81.
- Wason D. R. and Magud T. A. 1963: An experimental study of closure of tympanic perforations with fascia and chondrocytes. S. W. Med. J. (Bgham Ala.) 58, 844.
- Wefers P. 1929: Erhaltung der Struktur der verschiedenen Arten von Gewebe. Arch. Entwickl. Gesch. 116, 438.
- Wills, R. J. 1966: Tympanic membrane grafting with pericardium. North. Carol. Med. J. 27, 373.
- Vertlib M. T. 1966: Anatomic graft material in tympanoplasty. Vest. (Moscow) 25, 98.
- Werner E. C. and Bray L. W. 1936: The effect of acoustic response: the relation between sound intensity and the magnitude of responses in the cochlea. J. Exper. Psychol., 19, 129.
- Werner E. C., Lawrence M. and Smith K. R. 1948: The middle ear sound conduction. Arch. Otolaryng., 48, 19.
- Werner E. C. and Lawrence M. 1949: The pattern of response in the cochlea. J. Acoust. Soc. Amer. 21, 127.
- Wiese E. G. 1930: Recent investigation of sound conduction. Ann. Otol. 39, 1637.
- Wiese E. G. and Lawrence M. 1951: Physiological Acoustics. Princeton Univ. Press, Princeton, N. J.
- Wiese E. G. 1939: The cochlea potential and its relation to hearing. Trans. Amer. Otol. Soc., 47, 13.
- Willis H. G. and F. R. and H. Iper B. 1965: Histologically phylized ear. Experimental study of tympanic membrane in dogs. Arch. Otolaryng. 81, 557.
- Withers B. T. and H. Iper B. and Richmond H. W. 1963: Drum and middle ear graft. I. cat. Part I. Laryngoscope 73, 1022.
- Withers B. T. and H. Iper B. and H. Iper B. 1963: Drum and middle ear graft. I. cat. Part II. Laryngoscope 73, 22.
- Wright W. K. 1943: Tympanic grafting. Arch. Otolaryng., 76, 291.
- Wright W. K. 1966: Current status of middle ear surgery. Ear Nose Throat J. 45, 45.
- Wright W. K. 1967: Reconstruction of the middle ear with fascia and bone. Arch. Otolaryng. 85, 492.
- Wullstein H. 1952: Fünftel Operation im Mittelohr mit Hilfe des freien Spaltapparat. Transplantation. Arch. Ohrenheilk. 181, 422.
- Wullstein H. 1953: Die Tympanoplastik I. Gehörverbessernde Operation bei Otitis media chronica und ihre Resultate. Proc. 5th Int. Congr. Oto-Rhino-Laryng. 104.
- Wullstein H. 1959: Tympanoplasty I. The Middle Ear by H. Iper B. G. Kobrak; Chap. X. The University of Chicago Press, Chicago (1959).
- Wullstein H. 1960: Fünftel und andere Operationen der Ohrchirurgie. In: Die Wiederherstellung der Gehör. Minerva. Otolaryng. 10, 180.
- Wullstein H. 1963: Panofsky myringoplasty methods. Arch. Otolaryng. 78, 294.
- Wullstein H. 1966: Die histologische Untersuchung freier Transplantate bei der Wiederherstellung des Gehörs. In: Die Ohrchirurgie. 1. Teil. P. K. Hradl. Kral. 9, 137.
- Yung F. 1941: Autolog cartilage grafts. Surg. 10, 7.

- Zöllner F 1932 Plastische Eingriffe in den Labyrinthfenstern Arch. Ohren- u. Nasenheilk., 161 414.
- Zöllner F 1954 Die Schallleitungsuplastiken I. T II. Acta oto-laryng., 43 270
- Zöllner F 1963 Knochenbildung aus Periosthautlappen bei Tympanoplastik. Arch. Ohrenheilk., 97 31
- Örtengren, U 1939 Trommhinneplastik. Förhållanden i Svensk otolaryngologisk förening. Örtengren, U 1964 Myringoplasty. Acta oto-laryng., Suppl. 193.





*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 246

**HUMAN COCHLEAR AQUEDUCT**

**T PALVA and K DAMMERT**

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVÄGGEN 14, 116 23 STOCKHO**

COVER

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiknells Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1966

ACTA OTO-LARYNGOLOGICA  
SUPPLEMENTUM 246

---

From the Departments of Otolaryngology and Pathology  
University of Oulu, Finland.

# HUMAN COCHLEAR AQUEDUCT

T. PALVA and K. DAMMERT

OULU 1969

Kirjapaino Oskariin Kallea  
Oulu 1969

# CONTENTS

I	INTRODUCTION	5
II	REVIEW OF EARLIER STUDIES	6
III	MATERIAL AND METHODS	13
IV	RESULTS	14
	A. <i>The Bony Aqueduct</i>	14
	B. <i>Soft Structures within the Aqueduct</i>	31
	1. <i>Dura and Arachnoid</i>	31
	2. <i>Corpora Amylacea</i>	33
	3. <i>The Inferior Cochlear Vein</i>	41
	4. <i>The Barrier Membrane</i>	45
	C. <i>Albumin Mobility of Perilymph and CSF Correlated with Cochlear Aqueduct Patency</i>	48
V	DISCUSSION	49
VI	SUMMARY	55
VII	REFERENCES	58



## I INTRODUCTION

The connections between the labyrinthine fluids and the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) space have stimulated the interest of otologists for a long time. Since 1774 when Cotugno described a narrow passage passing from the scala tympani to the CSF space, the cochlear aqueduct has been considered the main anatomical pathway between the two fluids. In the early part of the 20th century the thorough studies of Karlefort, Mearman and Jarbowski in particular supplied much detailed new knowledge on this canal, and recently there have been a number of studies connected with the efforts to determine the origin of the labyrinthine fluids.

Nevertheless, as will appear from the following review there are still a number of controversial questions, and the patency of the aqueduct, in particular has remained in doubt.

Some of the reasons for the divergent results appear to be due to technical details in sectioning of the specimens. If the sections are cut across the main course of the aqueduct — a procedure mainly used earlier — a correct idea may be formed of some aqueduct dimensions. However misleading opinions may be formed particularly on the aqueduct patency if only every 5th or 10th section is studied, while the slope of the aqueduct is not straight.

We intend here to evaluate the anatomy of the cochlear aqueduct mainly on the basis of sections cut parallel to the slope of the aqueduct for its whole length and studied one by one. By this means it is also possible to keep the number of sections per specimen within reasonable limits, and a reliable basis should be found for evaluation of various details of the aqueduct and the surrounding structures.



## II REVIEW OF EARLIER STUDIES

Karlefors, in 1924 started his study on the cochlear aqueduct by first treating a 13.5 cm long human embryo with a dye solution injected through the round window into the scala tympani. Dye from the labyrinth was found in histologic sections in the aqueduct in the CSF space, particularly around the glossopharyngeal nerve, but not in the meatus acusticus internus. However it also appeared around the aqueduct and in the surrounding marrow spaces. Since only little dye was seen in the aqueduct, it was thought that the main amount might have passed by a route other than the aqueduct. Karlefors emphasized the importance of histological studies stating that passage of the fluid into the CSF space does not necessarily imply patency of the duct.

The studies were then continued using fifteen embryos and fetuses, from 28.8 mm crown rump length to the mature fetus, without preliminary injections of dye. The canal was found to start developing in 53—56 mm embryos beginning from the scala tympani it opened in the subarachnoid space. The loose connective tissue in the canal was considered a direct extension of the arachnoid. Close to the internal opening at the scala tympani the canal generally was filled with loose connective tissue. The cochlear vein was found near the internal orifice of the aqueduct and it was then running parallel to the canal and in front of it, ending in the inferior petrosal sinus.

For further elucidation of whether the aqueduct is open in adult ears or not, the vertical semicircular canal was opened in 4 cadaver ears and a suction tip employed at this place while dye solution was placed at the external opening of the cochlear aqueduct. In two ears dye solution filled the aqueduct and was seen in the cochlea one of the specimens showed similar filling in the case of the aqueduct and the vein canal. In the fourth ear no dye entered the cochlea after suctioning of the vertical canal.

Karlefors performed further histological studies on 14 temporal bones, subjects aged eight months to seventy years. He concluded that both the subdural and subarachnoid space continue in the aqueduct the subdural space varied widely being sometimes nearly absent and sometimes of considerable size for the entire course of the aqueduct. As a rule arachnoid tissue appeared inside the canal and the subarachnoid space could vary in large limits. Along the course of the aqueduct the subarachnoid space was found to be at its minimum about 1 mm from the scala tympani, where it was filled with loose connective tissue, the internal opening being again wider. The length of the canal was measured in two adult cases, and was 11 mm in one, 15 mm in the other. The distance from the aqueduct to the parallel cochlear vein channel was about one mm.

Karlefors thought that the connective tissue in the subarachnoid space near the scala tympani caused an occlusion of the whole duct leaving no free passage for fluid from the CSF space into the cochlea. In children with a wider canal the fluid appeared to pass through more easily.

A few years later Meurman (1930) studied various aspects of the cochlear aqueduct in 55 temporal bones from 32 persons. Similarly as Karlefors, he cut most of the sections across the aqueduct only one temporal bone was cut parallel to it. The canal was found to pass through compact bone but was often surrounded by pneumatic or marrow spaces. Its cochlear orifice was generally situated 0.3 mm from the round window membrane. In one case with a high jugular bulb the canal was short and seemed to adjoin the bulb without any separating bony canal.

Because the sections were cut across the canal estimation of its length was uncertain. In one newborn infant, the canal was about 5 mm long and was found to grow longer with age. The general adult length according to Meurman was 10—15 mm, which included the dural cover of the canal. The width of the canal was measured at various points the narrowest area was about 500  $\mu$  from the cochlear orifice average width being 90  $\mu$  from endosteum to endosteum and 110  $\mu$  from bone to bone. Average width 1 mm from the cochlea was the same, but thereafter increased, so that 4 mm from the cochlea the bony canal had a width of 420  $\mu$ . The diameter increased further: 6 mm from the cochlea it was 920  $\mu$ , and over 8 mm from the scala tympani as much as 1650  $\mu$ . Corresponding to this increase of width, the soft tissue inside the canal grew in thickness 0.5 to 1 mm away from the cochlea it measured 10 to 20  $\mu$  but 7 to 8 mm from the cochlea it reached the figure 205 to 230  $\mu$ .

Meurman claimed that in four of his cases the canal was totally obliterated for a short distance. This he thought was due to a developmental disorder or to endosteal (perosteal) bone proliferation during life particularly in old age. Perusal of his text suggests, however, that there was total obliteration in none and that, possibly the sections did not represent the area of the aqueduct. He also noticed that in some cases small bony exostoses stuck into the canal lumen.

In children the canal had about the same size as in adults because it was short, it was relatively wider.

The greater part of the bony canal lumen in certain areas seemed to be filled by the arachnoid tube, starting from the glossopharyngeal nerve in some cases, on the other hand, there was a wide space between the arachnoid lining and the periotic bone. However Meurman had the astute thought that this subdural slit in cadavers may be artificial and absent during life. He also supported Karlefors in stating that 1 to 2 mm from the cochlea the arachnoid tube was often very dense sometimes one could not find any lumen. In 11 cases, 0.5 mm from the scala tympani, the arachnoid lumen was found to be occluded in 7 loosely filled in 3 and open in one only. One mm from the scala tympani the lumen was closed in all except one.

The corpora amylacea first noted in the cochlear aqueduct by Habermann

(1882) were also noted by Meurman, mostly at the borderline between the arachnoid and dura, sometimes in the dura and in the lumen of the canal. They varied in form, being sometimes round or oval, sometimes longitudinal. Meurman speculated that they might originate from an atrophic part of a blood vessel: this particle then collected extra material on its surface and assumed various forms.

The cochlear vein channel was reported by Meurman to run  $1/2$  to 2 mm away from the aqueduct. The vein ended in the inferior petrosal sinus or directly in the jugular bulb. In some cases it ran in the same canal as the aqueduct, but was always separated from it by the dura. It was of same width as the aqueduct in the middle part, but somewhat larger near the scala tympani.

The third investigator of that time, Karbowski (1930) noted that the arachnoid lining in the aqueduct was as a rule adherent to the dura. The arachnoid lumen often contained a loose netlike connective tissue, which could vary in size and sometimes filled the channel wholly. The duct was found to be open in only 3 out of 14 cases, and in these three there was no additional tissue in the arachnoid tube. Karbowski also noticed deep-blue longitudinal or roundish particles in the walls of the channel — the corpora amylacea of Meurman — but did not observe the subdural open spaces described by the latter.

Karbowski injected Chinese ink into the suboccipital space, and demonstrated it in the scala tympani and in the aqueduct proper sometimes in large amounts. He concluded that, in the cases in which the aqueduct is open it clearly functions as a pathway for fluid circulation. In agreement with Karlefors, he found that ink appeared in the air cells and also in the sub-epithelial tissue close to the veins in the lower part of the middle ear.

Of recent writers Waltner (1947) studied a material of 70 temporal bones (age from 3 days to 86 years) for corpora amylacea. The amylaceous bodies were on average 0.03 mm in diameter (range 0.01 to 0.1 mm) and elongated or elliptic in shape. Stained with hematoxylin-eosin, some seemed to appear structureless, some showed three to sixteen concentric rings, the colour alternating from light to deep blue. The rings were separated from each other by dark cement lines. With iodine stain all corpora amylacea stained deep brown since the calcium salts are removed in the process of decalcification what remains is probably starchy material.

Waltner noted that the corpora amylacea appeared from the age of six upwards. They were seen in the arachnoidea and dura surrounding the glossopharyngeal nerve in all cases in which the sections contained the region of the ganglion at the inferior opening of the cochlear aqueduct. In general the bones of old people contained more corpora amylacea than those of the young, but there were numerous exceptions.

Waltner considered corpora amylacea normal landmarks of the cochlear aqueduct their absence being associated with the absence of the arachnoid reticulum pulled out during removal of the petrous bone from the skull. There were no clear connections between the corpora amylacea and any disease,

and the bodies were distributed along the entire course of the cochlear aqueduct and sometimes within the scala tympani at the base of the cochlea.

In studying the histogenesis Waltner found that one or more ghost cells of the arachnoid type may be visible in the center of many of the amylaceous bodies. Arachnoid like cell clusters were frequently present side by side with corpora amylacea. The cells had large nuclei they were closely packed round, with more or less recognizable cell outlines. The fact that all these stages up to the fully developed corpora amylacea were found in several specimens and that they were never found in fetuses or bones before the age of three, pointed strongly against the claim that the corpora amylacea are artefacts.

Besides in the aqueduct, corpora amylacea occurred in the meninges of the seventh, eight and ninth cranial nerves. Waltner postulated that the same circulating substance reaches the arachnoid cells in various parts of the skull and participates in the infiltrating process of the arachnoid cell clusters. Corpora amylacea were never found around the cochlear vein — a fact suggesting that the substance originates from the spinal fluid rather than from the blood. The aqueduct was never completely obliterated by corpora amylacea, although in the narrow portion 1—2 mm from the cochlea, a marked narrowing of the lumen was often seen.

Waltner called attention to the fact that the aqueduct is never a fully open canal the narrow part of the aqueduct at the distance of 1—2.5 mm from the scala tympani and the ever present reticulum prevent any rapid flow of the spinal fluid. The only physiologic role of the corpora amylacea might consist in further reducing the lumen of the aqueduct and slowing down the flow of the spinal fluid.

In another paper Waltner (1948) described a barrier membrane situated in the internal opening of the aqueduct. This membrane seemed to prevent the flow of erythrocytes or pus cells from CSF space into the perilymphatic space. He claimed that the membrane is present in 11 cm long fetuses, at which stage it consists of two to three layers of arachnoid type cells one end of the separating membrane adjoins the endosteum of the scala tympani directly and the other the inner surface of the round window membrane. In adults the barrier membrane is a direct continuation of the neighbouring endosteum it consists of a single layer of cells and measures 1 micron or less in thickness. In some instances the reticulum of the aqueduct was in contact with the barrier membrane, in others it was clearly separated by an empty space. Waltner's conclusion was that under physiologic conditions a diffusion but no direct flow occurs between the spinal fluid and perilymph through the barrier membrane.

Anson et al. (1964 1965) studied the cochlear aqueduct in 10 temporal bones from adults and found the average diameter of the internal aperture of the cochlear aqueduct to be 0.09 mm with a range of 0.05 to 0.125 mm. The average dimension of the external aperture was 0.83 mm (range 0.5 — 1.25 mm). These measurements were made 1 to 2 mm inside the funnel-shaped opening of the aqueduct on the bone surface. In the same specimens the

average length of the aqueduct was 11.5 mm (range 10.0 — 14.0 mm). Prominent vessels were lacking in the aqueduct, which contained connective tissue. The cochlear vein was found to occupy a separate osseous channel adjacent to the aqueduct. The final conclusion of these investigators was that the cochlear aqueduct is filled by tissue through which fluids generally pass in the body.

Contrasting results were reported in the same year (1965) by Ritter and Lawrence. In five human temporal bones the length of the aqueduct varied from 5.2 — 7.4 mm (average 6.45 mm) — about one half of the length previously reported. The width was measured in 19 temporal bones at three points: the entrance of the aqueduct into the scala tympani, its exit from the temporal bone, and approximately midway between these two. As the lumen did not always contain the periotic duct, the distance between the bony walls only was recorded. Contrary to earlier data, the aqueduct was most narrow in its middle part and thus had an hourglass shape. The diameter at the opening into the scala tympani in 19 specimens averaged 0.1 mm, at the mid point 0.09 mm and at the exit from the temporal bone 1.3 mm.

In 9 temporal bones the canal contained soft tissue which in some sections had the appearance of a solid core of tissue filling the aqueduct, while in others there was merely a loose syncytium. In no specimen could a layer of cells be identified across the internal orifice of the aqueduct as recorded by Waltner.

In 17 patients subjected to stapedectomy 2 cc of indigo carmin was instilled into the CSF space prior to surgery during the operation perilymph was collected from the oval window and examined for the dye. Despite the fact that the patients were asked to lie with the ear undermost in a Trendelenburg position, no dye was ever seen in the perilymph. A second lumbar puncture was therefore done on one patient 24 hours later and the fluid was a brilliant blue colour. In another patient, a lumbar puncture 74 hours after injection showed clear fluid. Ritter and Lawrence concluded that connective tissue fills the cochlear aqueduct, which is not sufficiently open to permit a free fluid flow.

In addition to studies on the normal structure of the cochlear aqueduct, reports are available on the patency of the aqueduct in diseases. One of the most extensive papers, by Growe (1930) describes a series of cases of meningitis in relation to changes in the internal ear. It includes a child aged 4 months with a widely open cochlear aqueduct. This was lined throughout with dura and the lumen was filled with arachnoid tissue which continued and merged with that covering the cerebellar lobes. Another patient, aged 9 1/2 years, had streptococcic meningitis and labyrinthitis: the open cochlear aqueduct showed a typical infected appearance with a destroyed arachnoid.

Similar observations of a free passage through the cochlear aqueduct were made in patients who had succumbed to an intracranial operation for brain tumour. One patient, aged 31 years, showed blood in the aqueduct and in the basal coil of the scala tympani on both sides. Crowe assumed that blood did not

gravitate into the cochlea after death or during the manipulations at autopsy and this was proved by the fact that, during a five year period, the removed temporal bones did not reveal erythrocytes in the scala tympani unless there was infection, leucemia, or an operative or traumatic skull injury

In cases of subarachnoid hemorrhage Perlman and Lindsay (1939) also found red blood cells in the scala tympani at the mouth of the aqueduct. These observations suggested a fluid flow though a slow one, from the subarachnoid space to the cochlea. This opinion was corroborated by the finding that, in cases in which the cochlea had been experimentally injured to produce bleeding within the perilymphatic spaces, there was no tendency for the blood cells to collect in the aqueduct region

Recently Henneford and Lindsay (1968) reported on 2 patients who lost their hearing at the ages of one and two years apparently due to meningitis. The probable pathway of infection was the cochlear aqueduct although, in the latter case at autopsy in old age it was obliterated by bone at its opening into the scala tympani. Holden and Schuknecht's (1968) series of 12 ears with spontaneous subarachnoid hemorrhage showed that the cochlear aqueducts of 6 ears were large enough to admit erythrocytes into the scala tympani. Blood had entered the internal auditory meatus in all ears and had extended into Rosenthal's canal in 7 ears and the osseous spiral lamina in 3. These last three had small cochlear aqueducts suggesting that circulation between the cerebrospinal fluid and perilymph occurred through the internal auditory meatus and modiolus. There was no evidence, however that blood cells could enter the scalae of the inner ear through the modiolus.

To sum up in the studies reported above there is a clear difference of opinion as to whether the cochlear aqueduct allows a free passage of fluid from the CSF space into the scala tympani. Of the early writers, Karlefors held the opinion that in children with a wider canal the fluid passes through it, but in adults there is no exchange of fluids. Meurman stated that there is no difference in width between children and adults but, since the former have a shorter canal, it is relatively wider. Both he and Karlefors doubted the free interchange of fluids in Meurman's view the arachnoid tube appeared blocked in nearly all cases 1 mm from the scala tympani. In Karbowski's series most of the temporal bones had a closed aqueduct it was fully open in 3 out of 14. On the other hand, the suction experiments of Karlefors and the instillation of dye into the CSF space (Karbowski) are in favour of the cochlear aqueduct being an open fluid exchange pathway.

The observations made by Crowe and by Perlman and Lindsay after lethal meningitis or subarachnoid hemorrhage are arguments for an open cochlear aqueduct. Crowe explained the fact that meningitis in adults only seldom causes labyrinthitis and deafness by stating that, in these longer canals, the arachnoid tissue is capable of totally filling the aqueduct lumen due to infectious swelling and so protects against the spread of infection by this route.

Of recent writers, Anson et al. are convinced that fluid easily passes

## IV RESULTS

### A THE BONY AQUEDUCT

Before starting decalcification of the temporal bones, an attempt was made in the 15 cases with removed round window membrane to determine whether or not the cochlear aqueduct is open to injected fluids. For this purpose an eosin dye solution was injected with a blunt-tipped needle into the external orifice of the aqueduct. This was done before any trimming of the specimens when the soft tissues were still intact. No force was used in these experiments to avoid the possible false routes demonstrated by Harleford. When the internal orifice of the cochlear aqueduct was examined by loupe magnification eosin solution was seen to enter the scala tympani in 11 specimens during injection under gentle pressure. In 9 specimens no dye entered the scala tympani and an immediate resistance was felt on attempted injection.

Though it was endeavoured to section the cochlear aqueduct parallel to its course and thus demonstrate it from the external orifice up to the opening in the scala tympani, this succeeded in none of the specimens. In the majority of cases it was possible to demonstrate the whole aqueduct in a few consecutive sections mostly about half of it was seen in one section. This was in part because the sections were not exactly parallel, and in part because the course of the aqueduct itself is not straight, but its slope can include even a considerable curve. By studying each consecutive section however a clear idea emerged about the structure and patency of the aqueduct.

The measurements and the observations on aqueduct anatomy are presented in Table I. The length was measured from the cochlear orifice of the aqueduct through the bone to the point where a far larger funnel-shaped depression begins to form on the inferior surface of the petrous pyramid. In most instances the length of the canal of the aqueduct proper was clearly definable in the consecutive sections. Examples of these measurements in parallel sections are seen in Figs. 1 to 3. Fig. 1 shows that the aqueduct gradually changes into a large funnel without a sharp borderline at the external orifice. The use of a section 200  $\mu$  away from this level (Fig. 2) gives additional information about the external orifice by defining the bottom of the channel just outside the aqueduct lumen. Fig. 3 shows more than half of the aqueduct (except its external orifice), exemplifying the majority of cases with a slightly oblique course of aqueduct (or section) in which the length could be measured exactly from one section.

TABLE I

Dimensions of rotifers and duct

Base No	Length (mm)	Width		(μ) at various points (mm) from scala tympani										Penetration
		Internal Orifice		0.5	1	1.5	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	
1	5.7	300		180	150	190	390	340	370	990				1900
2	6.5	450		180	210	220	330	420	480	690	1020			2100
3	6	270		150	210	300	350	420	450	340	510			690
4	7	210		90	180	90	90	150	120	120	480			900
5	8	230 X 390		150 X 310	150 X 390	150 X 390	160 X 410	160 X 410	390 X 600	390 X 600		410 X 900		1500
6	8	250		160	150	160	190	270	350	550	600	700	730	2400
7	6.5	400		210	140	180	240	300	360	630	690			2700
8	7	350		180	120	150	160	190	240	240	290	690		2300
9	7	210		150	150	150	180	300	390	460	580	700		1800
10	7	210		150	150	210	220	320	780	1500	2400			3000
11	6	210		150	160	210	260	300	350	410	800			2100
12	5	310 X 400		150 X 290	300 X 400	300 X 400	360 X 460	300	310 X 360	600	1100			1800
13	4	300		120	125	120	180	240	300	600				2400
14	5	270		180	120	150	180	180	One wall missing					
15	6	280		190	130	150	170	200						
16	6	450		120	120	150	210	220	270	330	360			1200
17	5	600		180	110	120	150	170	190	300				750
18	5	450		150	170	200	210 X 750		300 X 1050					1900
19	6	300		120	190	150	150 X 630		210 X 630		1990 X 1300			1500
20	6	300		120	120	150	210	330	450	1010				1500
Mean	6.2	322		151	145	175	231	276	371					



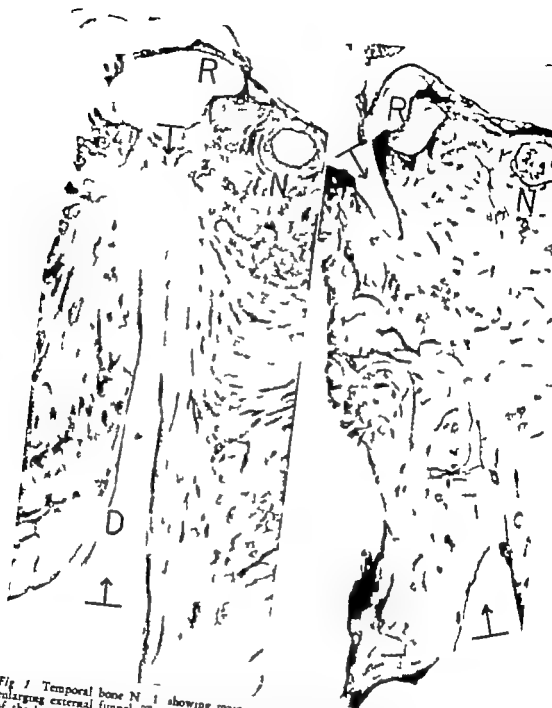


Fig 1 Temporal bone N 1 showing main part of the cochlea aqueduct with gradually enlarging external funnel. The length of the canal is 5.2 mm and its width 220  $\mu$  at the area of the bend. PAS stain magnification  $\times 20$  (left).

Fig 2 Same case as in Fig 1 section 200  $\mu$  deeper. The opening of the aqueduct (width 380  $\mu$ ) adjacent to round window membrane is now clearly visible. R = round window membrane, N = round window branch of tympanic nerve, D = dura. Arrows indicate the points between which aqueduct length was measured. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 20$  (right).

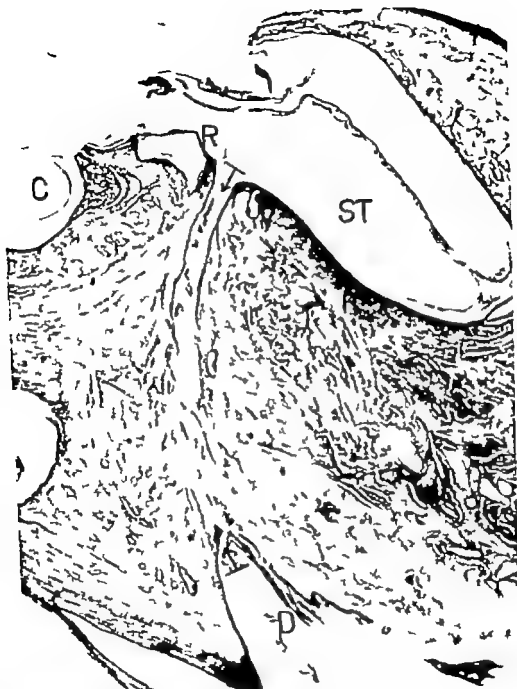


Fig 3 Temporal bone N 2, showing internal half of the cochlear aqueduct. The canal (bet  
ween the arrows) is 1.8 mm long. The width of the aqueduct at its opening adjacent to the  
round window membrane (R) is 300  $\mu$  and 1 mm away from this point 310  $\mu$ . The aqueduct  
shows curved slope. V = inferior cochlear vein, ST = scala tympani, C = semicircular  
canal, D = dorsa. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 17$



Fig 4 Temporal bone N 4 showing the narrowest cochlear aqueduct in the whole series. The section runs along the wall of the aqueduct for 3 mm length from the cochlear orifice: the open part is 80  $\mu$  wide; it has bony speculum in the right wall and is filled partly with loose arachnoid tissue. R = round window membrane, V = inferior cochlear vein. Hematoxylin-corn stain, magnification  $\times 32$ .



Fig. 3 Case 20, showing smoothly curved slope of the aqueduct (A) and a large funnel (F) containing the external part of inferior cochlear vein (V) and the glossopharyngeal nerve (N) with numerous corpora amygdacea. The internal part of the vein (V) is seen adjacent to the depression of the internal orifice of the aqueduct. ST = scala tympani, V = vestibulum. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 11$ .

The mean length obtained was 6.2 mm when including the funnel-shaped extension of the external orifice (no longer aqueduct proper) thus adds an average extra length of 2 to 3 mm in various preparations.

The width of the cochlear aqueduct, measured from bone to bone, varied in considerable limits. The smallest diameter 80  $\mu$  was seen in case No 4 (Fig. 4), the only case in which the width of the canal was really narrow for a considerable length, 0.5 to 2 mm from the scala tympani. In all others, minimum width was at least 110  $\mu$ . The narrowest bone-to-bone distance occurred at an area 0.5 to 1 mm from the scala tympani and the canal rapidly widened at the internal orifice, the opening reaching a diameter between 210 to 600  $\mu$  (average 322  $\mu$ ). Towards the external opening the width of the lumen increased steadily but more slowly. However at the funnel like common external orifice the recorded widths varied enormously from 690 to 2100  $\mu$ , depending upon the individual aqueduct and the course of the section.



Fig. 6 Case 18 showing the internal orifice of the aqueduct (A) and an open lumen for distance of 1.5 mm. ST = scala tympani, Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 60$  (left).

Fig. 7 shows section of the same case 500  $\mu$  removed demonstrating oblique cross-sections of the aqueduct (A) and vein (V) due to an angled slope at the internal end. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 63$  (right)

It appears from the table that for cases 5 and 12, in which cross sections were employed, the maximal and minimal widths clearly indicate oval or elliptical shape of the canal. This appears also from the diameter values for the external part of the aqueduct in cases 18 and 19 large values indicate that sections were cut obliquely along the long diameter.



Fig. 8 Case 20 showing network of paracanalals (P) starting from the external funnel (F) between the vein (V) and the external depression of the aqueduct (A). ST = scala tympani, C = semicircular canal, Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 13$ .

The general slope of the aqueduct had two distinct forms. One was a slightly curved form (Figs. 3 and 5) without major deviations and the other a more or less straight canal (Figs. 1-2) combined in two (cases 18 and 19) with a marked angle 1 mm from the scala tympani. There are examples of this latter type in Figs. 6 and 7 in which 1.5 mm of the aqueduct was seen in



Fig. 6 Case 18 showing the internal orifice of the aqueduct (A) and an open lumen for a distance of 1.5 mm. ST = scala tympani, Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 60$  (left)

Fig. 7 shows section of the same case 500  $\mu$  removed demonstrating oblique cross-sections of the aqueduct (A) and vein (V) due to an angled slope at the internal end. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 63$  (right).

It appears from the table that for cases 5 and 12, in which cross sections were employed, the maximal and minimal widths clearly indicate oval or elliptical shape of the canal. This appears also from the diameter values for the external part of the aqueduct in cases 18 and 19: large values indicate that sections were cut obliquely along the long diameter



Fig. 18 Temporal bone No 7 showing large paracanal (P) from the middle of the aqueduct. The aqueduct (A) lumen is widely open while the lateral extension is filled mostly with dura peroneal tissue. Hema oxylin-eos stain, magnification  $\times 15$





*Fig. 11* Case 16, showing a short paracanal (P) parallel to the slope of the aqueduct (A), separated by thin bony septum. Both are lined by dura and arachnoid and communicate with each other. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 163$

parallel section but the course then changed at an angle of about 60—70° into cross sections continuing up to the external orifice.

While the bony walls of the cochlear aqueduct were in most cases smooth, some showed many irregularities. This was the rule at the external orifice of the aqueduct where in addition to the lumen proper there were sometimes several channels starting from the funnel and extending for varying distances, 0.5 to even 5 mm into the bone outside the aqueduct (Fig. 8). Some of these canals had an unmistakable lumen lined by dural tissue which finally totally filled the blind end in the bone, while some of the side-channels — filled with loose connective tissue — led to the air cells of the temporal bone (Fig. 9). In other cases, large side-canals opened from the mid-portion of



Fig. 12. Case 16, showing a 0.7 mm long paracanal (P) extending laterally from the aqueduct (A). Several corpora amylacea are seen in the aqueduct lumen. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 156$ .

the cochlear aqueduct to end in blind pockets, filled with dura, in the temporal bone (Fig. 10). In several ears these paracanals were only 0.5 to 1.0 mm in length, running parallel (Fig. 11) or transversely (Fig. 12) to the aqueduct and only by studying the consecutive sections could a connection between the two be established. In several specimens bony spiculae (Fig. 13) and once an exostosis like formation (Fig. 14) projected from the canal wall, and the latter caused distinct narrowing of the aqueduct lumen. In no case, however was there even a suggestion of bony occlusion of the aqueduct.



Fig. 13 Temporal bone N 10 showing the area of the external funnel with a prominent bony spiculum on the right side. Dura (D) is strongly adherent to the spiculum and between dura and arachnoid (A) and attached to the arachnoid, are some corpora amylacea. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 70$ .



Fig. 14 Temporal bone No 4 with an exostosis formation on the right wall. The canal lumen has width of 170  $\mu$  at area of the arrow and has loose arachnoid tissue and a few corpora amyloidea in the lumen. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 65$



*Fig 15* Temporal bone No 2, demonstrating a narrow (50  $\mu$ ) paracanal (P) extending from the middle ear side of the round window membrane (R) into bone along the inferior cochlear vein (V). The paracanal is covered with middle ear epithelium and is filled with loose connective tissue. PAS stain, magnification  $\times 60$ .

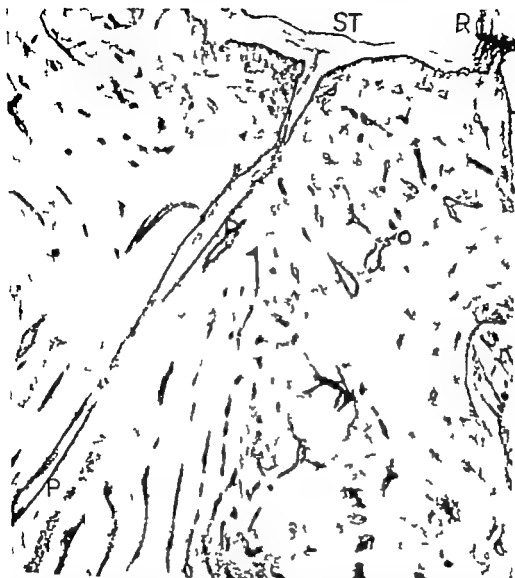


Fig. 16 Temporal bone N 13 with 3 mm long and narrow (70  $\mu$ ) paracanal (P) in the scala tympani (ST) starting 0.7 mm away from the insertion of the round window membrane (R). The paracanal is situated 200  $\mu$  deep of the cochlear aqueduct. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 50$ .

In addition to side-channels starting from the external funnel or from the cochlear aqueduct, there were, close to the internal part of the aqueduct (or cochlear vein channel) parallel bony canals which started from the middle-ear or scala tympani side of the round window membrane (Figs. 15 and 16). Similarly as the channels starting from the external orifice, these canals filled with connective tissue, attained a length of 2 to 4 mm and ended blindly in bone.



Fig 17 Temporal bone No 6, showing external half of the aqueduct with the glomopharyngeal nerve (N) at the funnel. The queduct (A) measures 380  $\mu$  in width at the upper part of the visible lumen. Near the funnel the section approaches the wall and shows prominent dura. IM = internal acoustic meatus. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 11$

## B SOFT STRUCTURES WITHIN THE AQUEDUCT

### 1 DURA AND ARACHNOID

During trimming of the bones before decalcification a considerable part of the soft structures in 12 temporal bones were sharply removed with a knife in the area of the funnel with a view to having a well identifiable external opening when cutting the sections. Therefore, only 8 specimens showed the glossopharyngeal nerve (Figs. 5 8 17) which crosses the area of the external funnel. However removal of any soft parts inside the channel was avoided and the dura and arachnoid were identified inside the channel lumen in all preparations. The dura was thin (from 5 to 20  $\mu$ ) in the sections which were cut parallel to the canal (Figs. 1 3—6 13—14) in its midline, and in all transversal sections (Figs. 7 11—12). In some cases the dura was artificially separated from the bone, an extradural slit being formed. Some sections conveyed the impression that the dura was very thick and practically occluded the lumen. This, however was because the section at that point did not pass through the free middle part of the aqueduct lumen but along the dural cover sections at the midpoint in the same area always showed the lumen to be well open.

The arachnoid lining (Figs. 4 11—14) of the aqueduct was demonstrable in most preparations as a very thin cellular layer sometimes disarranged, generally lying on the dura although in some slides the arachnoid was apparently torn and there was a subdural space between the dura and the arachnoid.





Fig. 18 Temporal bone No 2, showing several round, oval or longitudinal corpora amylacea in the queduct lumen which has width of 300  $\mu$ . The corpora amylacea are partly free in the lumen, partly attached to arachnoid tissue. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 180$ .



Fig. 19 Case 17 showing the external funnel (F) with the widely open aqueduct (A) lumen and the external part of the inferior cochlear vein (V). Proteinoes precipitates together with several corpora amylacea is seen adjacent to dura. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 31$

## 2. CORPORA AMYLACEA

Corpora amylacea were regularly seen inside the cochlear aqueduct. In some cases they were long measuring about  $100\ \mu$ , but only  $10\ \mu$  in thickness in some they were shorter and more or less elliptical or oval in shape (Figs. 12—14) In some areas the corpora amylacea were gathered into larger clusters and then presented a more rounded appearance with concentric nuclei in their central parts (Fig. 18) Corpora amylacea were most frequent in the funnel area (Fig. 19) and close to the funnel inside the aqueduct, but they appeared in smaller numbers along the arachnoid lining of the aqueduct up to the scala tympani (Figs. 20—22) In none of the cases was the impression

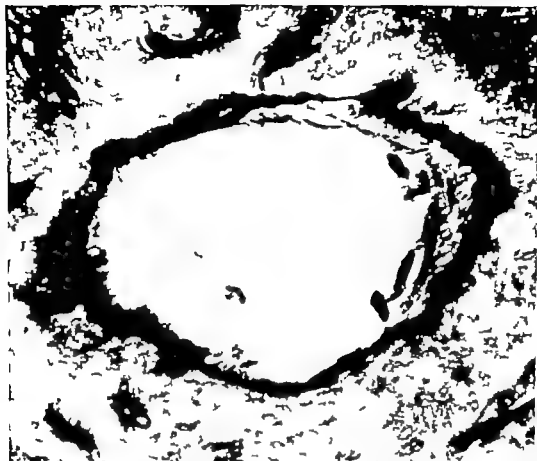


Fig. 20 Temporal bone No 12, showing rounded transverse section of the aqueduct 250  $\mu$  away from the scala tympani. Horizontal width 350  $\mu$ , vertical 350  $\mu$ . Dura and arachnoid cover the walls, a few corpora amylacea adhere to the arachnoid in left wall. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 180$ .

gained that the corpora amylacea filled the aqueduct lumen to the extent of restricting the fluid flow

Large numbers of corpora amylacea of varying sizes and developmental stages were seen in the frozen sections. They were most frequent in the boundary between the dura periosteum and the loose arachnoidal structures, and sometimes inside the glossopharyngeal nerve. The earliest stage was a whorl-like accumulation of degenerating arachnoidal cells and fibres accompanied by proteinous precipitates. After contraction and sequestration of these components, basophilic and weakly metachromatic clusters were left in the sections. In the next stage the material at their centre was contracted to a dense, hyalinized and strongly refractile core, whereas the outer borders remained basophilic.

The corpora amylacea thus seemed to develop as a result of degeneration and contraction (sequestration) of cells and fibres infiltrated by calcium salts and proteins. In cross sections the corpora amylacea had the appearance



Fig 21 Temporal bone No 5 showing an elliptical, oblique section of the aqueduct at the area of the head 0.4 mm away from the scala tympani. Vertical width 230  $\mu$ . Dura and arachnoid follow the walls, some corpora amylacea are reached to the arachnoid. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 125$

of rounded grains well known as psammoma bodies in the pathology of meningiomas. In longitudinal sections the refractile core appeared laminated, resembling glistening yellowish canes. The basophilic wall seemed to contain rests of the cell nuclei.

In the mural cellular and fibrous aggregates there was nothing to remind one of former vascular structures, nor was the refractile central material reminiscent of cells.

As seen in figures 19—22, the corpora amylacea, in this temporal bone series, occurred either freely in the aqueduct lumen, partly attached to the arachnoid, or rarely below the arachnoid in the dura (Fig. 23). They were seen in abundance at all stages of formation at the external orifice where the end products were demonstrated also in the paracanals outside the aqueduct, as well as around the inferior cochlear vein during its course towards the inferior petrosal sinus. They were also frequently seen in the internal acoustic meatus around and in the cochlear nerve near the spiral ganglion but only in two temporal bones were such bodies seen in the lumen of the inferior cochlear vein (Figs. 24—25).



Fig. 22. Temporal bone No. 2, showing internal orifice of the squeduct. The lumen here measures  $300\ \mu$  and contains many corpora amylacea surrounded by arachnoid tissue meshwork. The dura is thin and adherent to the walls. V = inferior cochlear vein, ST = scala tympani, R = round window membrane. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 70$ .



Fig. 23 Temporal bone N 10, showing bony spiculum with several corpora myeloida inside the dural tissue. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 180$



*Fig 24 Case 16 showing a large corpus amylaceum inside the inferior cochlear vein (V). Another corpus amylaceum is seen at the orifice of the cochlear aqueduct (A). Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 38$*



Fig. 25 Case 16, showing the collecting vein near the external foramen, (before the inferior cochlear vein joins it) with several corpora amyloacea inside *Stomatocysta-cornu* mass, magnification  $\times 200$ .





Fig. 28 Temporal bone N 15 showing an oblique view of the inferior cochlear vein 2 mm away from the internal orifice. The thin endothelium is surrounded by loose connective tissue meshwork. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 150$ .

The vein wall is made up of very thin endothelium (Fig. 24), which, supported by the bony walls of the channel, clearly differs from the thick wall of ordinary veins. A fine meshwork of connective tissue supports the thin vein wall in the bony canal (Fig. 28). The vein channel then continues parallel with the bony cochlear aqueduct towards the external orifice the distance as a rule grew larger being on average 700—900  $\mu$  removed from the aqueduct. In 3 cases the distance exceeded 1 mm near the external funnel (Fig. 29).

Measurements of the width of the vein channel were also made in 18 temporal bones. At the floor of scala tympani the vein averaged 150  $\mu$ , while during its proper course, 0.5 to 1 mm from the scala tympani, it was clearly larger than the aqueduct, measuring about 150—200  $\mu$ . During its further course the individual and local differences in vein width were greater than those for the aqueduct, but no great average difference between the two was observed. In cross sections, the vein had a more roundish form than the aqueduct.

The inferior cochlear vein in two cases joined another somewhat larger transversal vein near the external funnel (Figs. 30—31) the origin of this vein could not be determined. In other specimens the vein had a straight course into the external funnel where it started a slope anteromedially at an angle of about 60—70° and had a course towards the inferior petrosal sinus, although the junction was not included in the specimens.



Fig 29 Case 17 showing the slightly curved slope of the inferior cochlear vein canal (V) from the scala tympani (ST) to the external funnel (F). The latter contains the glomus pharyngeal nerve (N) and the whole base reveals many corpora amyloacea in various developmental phases. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 11$



Fig 30—31 Case 16, showing joining of the inferior cochlear vein (V) with a larger transversal canal. The sections are 150  $\mu$  apart. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 40$ .

## 4 THE BARRIER MEMBRANE

Considerable attention was directed to the medial end of the cochlear aqueduct at the scala tympani. In this material a barrier membrane, similar to that presented by Waltner was clearly seen in one specimen belonging to the series of perilymph albumin analyses and in one case of the 5 temporal bones with an intact round window membrane (Figs. 32 and 33). The covering endothelium seems to be a direct continuation of the lining of the scala tympani endothelium crossing over the cochlear aqueduct to join in the round window membrane. It consists partly of a thin layer of cells and partly of basophilic arachnoid mesh type connective tissue. In all other cases there was no evidence of any membrane closing the orifice of the cochlear aqueduct (Figs. 2—3 6 22).

On the other hand, the nutrition canals starting from both sides of the round window membrane and extending deep into the bone, running parallel to the cochlear aqueduct, all had a barrier membrane covering their orifice (Figs. 15 and 16). This membrane was a direct continuation of the endothelial lining of the neighbouring bone.



Fig 32. Temporal bone N 14 showing the orifice of the cochlear aqueduct in the scala tympani (ST). The endothelium continues as a kind of barrier membrane (B) over the orifice to the insertion of the round window membrane. Cochlear aqueduct (A) lumen containing arachnoid-type mesh under the membrane with wide lumen. In the lower part of the lumen, separated in the area of the bend by bone, there are dura, arachnoid and some corpora myelacea to be seen. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 80$ .



Fig. 33 Case 16 showing "barrier membrane" (B) consisting of endothelial cells and arachnoid-type mesh with basophilic staining. The cochlear aqueduct (A) is wide open. Hematoxylin-eosin stain, magnification  $\times 525$ .

# C. ALBUMIN MOBILITY OF PERILYMPH AND CSF CORRELATED WITH COCHLEAR AQUEDUCT PATENCY

Of the 12 specimens (Table II) included in the perilymph mobility studies (Palva and Raunio, 1968) 6 showed eosin dye in the scala tympani orifice of the aqueduct following injection of dye into the external funnel. In three of these cases (1, 3 and 15) the mobility of perilymph and CSF albumin was identical and faster than that of serum albumin. In cases 12 and 14 serum albumin had the lowest mobility CSF albumin was somewhat faster and perilymph showed the fastest moving albumin. In case 13 serum and CSF albumins had identical mobility but perilymph albumin was clearly faster.

The remaining 6 cases, with negative injection of eosin included cases 2, 9 and 10 in which perilymph and CSF albumin had identical mobility both being faster than serum albumin. Whereas one case (5) showed identical mobility for all three fluids, the mobility of serum and perilymph albumin in another case (6) was similar and slightly faster than that of CSF albumin. In the third case (7) the fastest albumin was recorded in perilymph while the mobility of CSF was somewhat slower than that of serum albumin.

TABLE II

*Albumin mobility and cochlear aqueduct patency*

Case	Albumin Mobility			Eosin Injection	Minimum Width of Aqueduct (μ)
	Serum	CSF	Perilymph		
1	2.022	2.073	2.065	+	150
2	2.029	2.074	2.064		180
3	2.036	2.205	2.190	+	150
5	2.205	2.195	2.189		150
6	2.118	2.091	2.114		150
7	2.164	2.143	2.188		140
9	2.137	2.176	2.180		150
10	2.075	2.134	2.146		150
12	2.072	2.095	2.146	+	150
13	2.092	2.094	2.148	+	120
14	2.085	2.108	2.118	+	120
15	2.081	2.141	2.137	+	130

## V DISCUSSION

Despite a number of thorough and painstaking studies on the anatomic variations in the cochlear aqueduct in the early part of this century several questions have remained open. Owing to the fact that the aqueduct has not been routinely sectioned parallel to its slope, measurements of its length and width and data on its patency have apparently been less accurate.

The length of the canal has varied widely from one report to another. Most of the earlier studies stated that the average length of the bony aqueduct exceeded 10 mm being generally 10 to 15 mm. Indeed Meurman pointed out that in adults the length of the canal is rarely less than 10 mm.

Our figures for the length of the aqueduct (Table I) showed some variation from case to case (range 5 to 8 mm) with an average of 6.2 mm. The only study in which the length of the aqueduct is similar to our measurements is that of Ritter and Lawrence who arrived at these figures (average 6.4 mm) by direct dissection of the aqueduct. Since our data are mainly based on sections parallel to the canal, the measurements can be made accurately and we feel confident that these figures, as well as those of Ritter and Lawrence, represent the real length of the aqueduct. However the external orifice funnel was not included in these measurements and this apparently is one of the reasons why the above figures are smaller than previous ones. Examination of for example, Meurman's table II giving the width of the aqueduct, clearly shows that at least part of the external funnel was included in the length calculations.

If the cochlear aqueduct was short, 5 to 6 mm, it generally had a straight slope except near (0.5 — 1.0 mm) the internal orifice at the scala tympani. Here there was often a slight bend of the order of 200  $\mu$  and the whole canal could not be shown in one section. In two cases (18 and 19) the bend approached 110—120° and, after demonstration of the straight course during the last 1 mm the following parallel sections showed oblique cross sections (Fig. 7). In cases with a longer canal, the slope was generally slightly curved and sometimes a considerable angle formed between the two ends, at the funnel and in the scala tympani (Figs. 3 and 5).

As regards the width of the aqueduct, our results differ considerably from those of Ritter and Lawrence. Their finding of an hour-glass aqueduct, most narrow at the middle area (average 90  $\mu$ ) is not corroborated. Our results substantiate the findings made by the early investigators that the narrowest point is near the cochlear orifice. This may vary slightly from case to case but is generally 0.5 to 1.5 mm away from the scala tympani. On the other hand, their observations of an elliptical form of the cross section was corroborated with the long axis of the oval transverse to the long axis of the petrosa.



Our canal width measurements (Table I) agree in principle with Meurman's data although our minimum figures are larger. The general increase in canal width from the point of about 1 mm from the scala tympani towards the external funnel also essentially accords with Meurman's measurements but our rate of increase inside the aqueduct proper is somewhat less. This probably is due to the fact that some of Meurman's figures refer to areas outside the aqueduct proper.

The paracanals demonstrated by us in several specimens were discussed briefly by Karlefors, who found that fluid from the scala tympani could be forced into the CSF space by routes other than the cochlear aqueduct. The bony canals starting from either side of the round window membrane run for various lengths parallel to the region of the aqueduct although in our study they were not seen to merge with it; these apparently are partly normal nutrition canals of bone and may partly represent attempts at duplication of the aqueduct. Some of the side channels clearly connected the cochlear aqueduct with the neighbouring bony air cells or Volkman's canals. Several shorter or longer channels started particularly at the external orifice of the cochlear aqueduct and then ran parallel to the aqueduct from the funnel into the bone, sometimes close to the scala tympani. In all cases, even if the width of the paracanals approached that of the aqueduct proper they were found to end blindly in bone.

A connective tissue similar in structure to dura generally filled the paracanals whether they started from the external funnel or from the aqueduct itself. If serial sections had not been studied, it would have been possible in some cases to consider the paracanals wrongly as the aqueduct proper. This might have led to the conclusion that the aqueduct was first blocked with connective tissue and finally occluded totally by bone. The paracanals starting centrally had a lumen containing a loose connective tissue meshwork.

In some specimens bony spiculae appeared along the course of the aqueduct but the external orifice showed irregular bony contours in all ears. In one temporal bone (Fig. 14) the aqueduct wall showed formations suggesting the endosteal bone proliferation described by Meurman, to which he also had attributed total closure of the canal in advanced age. Even though the canal in this case of ours was the narrowest (80  $\mu$ ) the lumen remained patent for the whole course. We must also take exception to Meurman's opinion that bony changes are caused by old age since 5 of our 14 cases were over 70.

Our findings differ basically from Meurman's conclusions in that we could not demonstrate any bony occlusion of the aqueduct, nor did we find even indications of total soft tissue obliteration. Whereas Meurman claimed this latter to be the rule, we demonstrated that all canals in the present series had an open lumen. The free space in the cochlear aqueduct always clearly exceeded the space occupied by the soft structures on the walls, which at the midpoint varied between 5 to 20  $\mu$ . Since it was the handling of the specimens that apparently caused separations of the arachnoid tube from the

dura and also of the dura from the bony walls there is no reason during life — when both the dura and arachnoid are near the bony walls — to doubt the patency of the lumen.

The idea that soft structures occlude the aqueduct in our view derives from the fact that, in the areas where there are bends in the aqueduct tangential sections may show no lumen at all the dura and arachnoid taking up the total space. We suspect that the soft tissue obstructions observed by Meurman exactly where the bone-to-bone distance is the shortest and where the aqueduct turns before entering the scala tympani are due to this section effect and thus do not represent real soft tissue obstructions. Another reason may be that the long para aqueducts ending only a short distance from the floor of scala tympani, may have been taken for true aqueducts.

As pointed out by Waltner the corpora amylacea in this area can be considered specific to the cochlear aqueduct and we have only in two specimens found them inside the inferior cochlear vein. Our observations as regards shape and size of these bodies concur largely with those of Meurman and of Waltner. However we cannot agree with Waltner in considering that the function of the corpora amylacea is to control and prevent the free passage of fluid into the scala tympani. Their presence at various places at the skull base argues against this specific functional hypothesis and their presence suggests only a perilymph richer in protein than in several other areas of the CSF-system. Our detailed studies of the corpora amylacea in frozen sections indicated that they originate from degenerating arachnoid cells and fibres encircled by proteinous precipitate and infiltrated by calcium salts.

A barrier membrane at the orifice of the cochlear aqueduct in the scala tympani was found in 2 of the 20 temporal bones. The membrane seemed to effectively obstruct the passing of erythrocytes from the scala tympani into the aqueduct. However since the membrane consisted of only normal endothelial cells and arachnoid-type tissue it probably has no specific ability for selective filtration comparable to the specialized cells of Reussner's membrane.

In the majority of the specimens studied, there was not the slightest sign of such a membrane and it must be concluded that as a rule the fluid exchange between the CSF space and the scala tympani is not obstructed by any membrane. The same conclusion was also reached later by Altmann and Waltner (1947) in their studies on rabbits, in which a continuous membrane could not be demonstrated in all consecutive sections.

The patency of the aqueduct might be questioned, in spite of all the above evidence, by pointing to our eosin injection experiments in which only 6 out of 15 temporal bones apparently had an open lumen. This, however was due to a technical fault: figures 5, 8, 19 and 29 show convincingly how easy it is to insert the tip of the needle wrongly i.e. so that the proper site of injection at the external opening of the aqueduct, is missed.

The inferior cochlear vein contains a separate channel, parallel to the-

cochlear aqueduct. In addition to the very thin endothelial wall of the vein, the channel showed loose connective tissue. The width from bone to bone was approximately the same as that of the cochlear aqueduct — with occasional larger lacunae — but in cross-sections the vein had a more rounded diameter than the elliptical aqueduct. At the scala tympani, the vein could always be distinguished from the aqueduct because of its location further off from the round window membrane the distance between the vein and aqueduct walls averaging  $300\ \mu$ .

During their course in the temporal bone the two structures could be distinguished because the cochlear aqueduct contained both dura, arachnoid and corpora amylacea, which all were absent from the cochlear vein channel, apart from corpora amylacea in two cases. In none of the specimens did the vein run in the channel of the cochlear aqueduct and the distances between the two increased towards to external funnel (average  $800\ \mu$ ). Thus, the main observations of Harlefors and Meurman were confirmed.

This study was started because we found that the mobility of perilymph albumin corresponded on average to that of CSF albumin and both of these had a faster mobility than serum albumin. This suggested that perilymph albumin was derived from the CSF space, which was further supported by the appearance in the perilymph of a fast prealbumin fraction (Palva and Rauhio 1967 a and b), identical in disc electrophoresis to that of brain tissue. Obviously it seemed, there must generally be a functioning connection between the perilymph and the CSF space, though most earlier reports on the cochlear aqueduct testified to the contrary. The cochlear aqueduct, however need not be the only pathway for passage of fluids the vestibular aqueduct might serve as a connecting link between the CSF and perilymph in the vestibule, and the spinal fluid may have access into the inner ear along the foramina of the VIII nerve fibres. Nevertheless, since the cochlear aqueduct is the logical pathway for any major exchange of fluids, the special aim of the study was to examine whether this pathway was patent or not.

The twelve temporal bones subjected to mobility studies included 6 in which the CSF and perilymph had similar and greater mobility than serum albumin three of these ears had a cochlear aqueduct widely open to eosin injection with slight pressure. There were 3 additional cases in which the perilymph showed higher albumin mobility than the other two fluids and 3 cases in which perilymph and serum albumins had identical mobility.

In all temporal bones studied in this series, the cochlear aqueduct was anatomically patent though it varied in width. Thus there can be no doubt as to the possible pathway for exchange of fluids between the CSF space and the perilymph. The fact that albumin mobility studies do not in all cases indicate a similar mobility of perilymph and CSF albumin seems partly due to the contamination of fluids from the small blood vessels and capillaries always present in post mortem temporal bones. This has become apparent particularly in researches for determination of the ionic concentration of

human labyrinthine fluids (Rodgers and Chou 1967 Palva and Tikanmäki 1968 Palva and Raunio 1968)

Considering that in most post mortem specimens the average values for CSF and perilymph albumin mobility are identical and faster than for serum albumin, this strongly favours the view that perilymph albumin really originates from the CSF space. If it did derive solely from the blood, viz. from the capillary network in the walls of the perilymphatic space, then the post mortem analyses should show no difference in the mobility of these two albumins. The slightly faster mobility of CSF albumin compared with serum albumin has been demonstrated in immunoelectrophoretic studies (Lowenthal et al., 1960)

Our observations on the patency of the cochlear aqueduct correlated very closely with the pertinent clinical reports by Perlman and Lindsay Crowe, and Schuknecht et al. The apparently obvious difference between children and adults as regards patency of the cochlear aqueduct in purulent meningitis, seems to be explained by the fact, already mentioned by Crowe, that in adults the longer cochlear aqueduct with its funnel both containing soft tissue in abundance can be temporarily closed by inflammatory swelling of the arachnoid and dura. Thus, in adults a purulent infection seldom reaches the inner ear though a non-inflammatory disease, such as subarachnoid hemorrhage, can result in an abundance of erythrocytes in the scala tympani. In children, in whom the cochlear aqueduct including its external funnel is shorter than in adults, the infection may more easily penetrate into the cochlea. In some ears, the barrier membrane, when it occasionally exists, can also prevent the spread of bacterial infections into the inner ear. This, however must apply to both children and adults since there is no reason to suppose that the membrane would develop only later in life

Naturally our study does not explain the role of the cochlear aqueduct in labyrinth physiology as such, but it supplies a firmer basis for speculations. We have no doubt that part of the perilymph derives from the capillary network in the cochlea but think that the majority of the fluid, particularly during life derives from the CSF space. It is equally obvious that these two are not the sole sources of various substances in the perilymph some of the more complex substances, particularly enzymes, apparently originate from the sensory cells of the organ of Corti. These cells have a lively metabolism and being surrounded by fluid which is in connection with perilymph, these constituents of the cellular metabolism have access to the perilymph.

The animal experiments of Schuknecht and Sefti (1963) showed no evidence of operative closure of the cochlear aqueduct resulting in altered conditions in the cochlea. When the endolymphatic sac or duct was blocked (Hamura and Schuknecht 1965), a distension of the endolymphatic space was demonstrated later at the time the animals were killed. Thus the cochlear aqueduct as such may not be necessary for the maintenance of fluids in the inner ear.

An interesting personal observation was made some years ago by Arvola

(1963) who had a lumbar puncture made on himself this was followed by symptoms resembling Ménière's disease for a short time. The symptoms were thought to arise from a decreased fluid pressure in the subarachnoid space possibly causing a temporary reversal of the general direction of the fluid flow from the CSF space into the scala tympani.

In Ménière's disease particularly more information on the dimensions of the cochlear aqueduct is required. Hitherto attention has been mainly focussed on endolymphatic hydrops. Data on aqueduct width and patency in confirmed cases might add valuable matter for speculation on the mechanism of this disease.

## VI SUMMARY

Previous studies on the human cochlear aqueduct were reviewed, paying special attention to the early work of Karlefors, Meurman and Karbowski. Analysis of their results and more recent data showed that the patency of the aqueduct, in particular caused division of opinion several other structural characteristics also seemed insufficiently known.

The material consisted of 20 temporal bones 12 of these were removed for comparison of serum perilymph and CSF albumin mobility. In 15 ears perilymph had been removed through the round window membrane but in 5 the scala tympani had not been opened. The bones were serially cut to 25  $\mu$  thickness. In 18 cases the sections were made parallel to the aqueduct and each consecutive section was examined.

The length of the canal averaged 6.2 mm when measured from the orifice at the scala tympani to the bottom of the external funnel. This agrees with the results of Rutter and Lawrence and it is concluded that the length reported in most earlier studies is not realistic for the aqueduct proper. If the walls of the external funnel are included, a somewhat bigger length is obtained, but even then the average length will not exceed 10 mm.

The slope of the aqueduct, when short, was nearly straight, but several longer canals presented a considerable curve in their slope from the external funnel to the internal orifice. Five specimens showed a marked bend from a straight base line during the last 1—1.5 mm from the internal orifice (30—40° in three specimens and 60—70° in two). These irregularities caused failure of the demonstration of the whole aqueduct in one section study of consecutive sections, however always gave a clear picture of the aqueduct dimensions.

The smallest width of the aqueduct was recorded 0.5 to 1.5 mm from the internal orifice, and minimum width varied from 80 to 150  $\mu$ . In both directions width increased consistently — most abruptly at the orifice of the aqueduct at the scala tympani, although at the external funnel the lumen was two to four times as large as at the internal orifice. The aqueduct lumen was oval or elliptical. Although it was generally smooth-walled, there were specimens in which bony spiculae extended from one wall into the canal parallel to its lumen once an exostosis like formation narrowed the lumen considerably. There were no bony obliterations.

The aqueduct lumina contained extensions of the dura and arachnoid up to the internal orifice, where the lining was smoothly transformed into the endosteal covering of the scala tympani. Even if in some of the parallel sections traversing the margin of the canal the dura appeared thick and seemed to occlude the canal, in sections through the midline the lumen was always

patent and the soft tissues were no more than 5 to 20  $\mu$  in thickness. There was no evidence to support the earlier claim that a soft tissue obliteration of the canal was the rule.

There were several paracanals starting from the external funnel and varying in depth from 0.5 to 4 mm these terminated blindly in dura like tissue or opened into bone spaces containing air cells. Similar but generally much shorter extensions started from the aqueduct proper. Paracanals around the internal orifice started close to the round window membrane insertion on either side and sometimes extended as deep as 3 to 4 mm at a distance of only 100  $\mu$  from the aqueduct or the inferior cochlear vein. These internal orifices always terminated in the loose endosteal connective tissue, covered by a thin endothelium. They were thought to have a function comparable to normal nutrition canals of bone, while some of those starting from the external funnel might represent attempts at duplication of the canal.

Corpora amylacea were constantly present, particularly in the whole external funnel comprising the area of the inferior cochlear vein and the glossopharyngeal nerve, and in the aqueduct proper up to the scala tympani. With iodine these bodies stained weakly in fresh frozen soft tissue preparations removed from the tunnel. Various staining techniques showed that the majority of the corpora amylacea develop as a result of degeneration and contraction of arachnoid cells and fibres infiltrated by calcium salts and proteins precipitates. In two temporal bones, corpora amylacea were seen also inside the inferior cochlear vein and more regularly in the internal acoustic meatus. Although there were many corpora amylacea in some sections, there was nothing to suggest that they might occlude the fluid exchange between the perilymph and CSF.

In two temporal bones there was a barrier membrane at the mouth of the internal orifice as demonstrated by Waltner. This membrane seemed to consist of a arachnoid-type tissue network rather than a real endothelial membrane. In all other specimens the aqueduct lining continued towards both the round window membrane and the apex of the cochlea, joining the thin endothelial lining of the scala tympani. The interchange of perilymph and CSF was thus not restricted by any obstacle at the internal orifice of the aqueduct in 90 % of the specimens. It was felt that even the membrane did not much hinder the fluid exchange although it might restrict the passing of larger corpuscles.

The inferior cochlear vein was demonstrable in 18 of the specimens starting as a boomerang like curved structure about 300  $\mu$  towards the apex from the internal orifice of the aqueduct the latter was adjacent to the insertion of the round window membrane. The vein channel diameter was roundish but otherwise the dimensions did not differ appreciably from those of the aqueduct. The distance between the two varied and increased towards the external funnel up to a maximum figure of 1.2 mm at the external funnel the vein made a 60—70° turn towards the inferior petrosal sinus. The vein channel had a thin endothelial vein wall surrounded by loose connective tissue.

This study was initially stimulated by the finding that perilymph albumin

mobility on average equalled that of CSF and both were faster than serum albumin. Immunologically perilymph albumin seems to be similar to CSF albumin and it is reasonable to assume the latter to be the source of the former. This finding was further substantiated by the fact that perilymph contained fast-moving prealbumins identical to those of CSF and brain tissue extract, but lacking in serum. The present studies on cochlear aqueduct patency definitely demonstrated that this type of fluid exchange through the cochlear aqueduct is fully feasible. The other possible pathways, viz. the vestibular aqueduct and the foramina of the VIII-th nerve fibres, may play a minor role.

That the cochlear aqueduct in adults seldom transmits purulent infections into the inner ear despite its patency to erythrocytes was attributed to the fact, already pointed out by Crowe, that the soft tissues of the combined funnel and aqueduct, particularly narrow 0.5 to 1.5 mm from the internal orifice, are capable because of infectious swelling to hinder the transmission of bacteria into the inner ear. In 10 % a membrane across the aqueduct mouth at the scala tympani might be of further assistance.

Finally it is felt that the course and structural status of the cochlear aqueduct is insufficiently known for instance in cases of Ménière's disease. Further studies based on temporal bones of autopsied patients might shed additional light on the problematic issues of this disease.



## VII REFERENCES

- ALTMAN, F. and WALTNER, J. G., 1947: The circulation of the labyrinthine fluids. Experimental investigations in rabbits. *Ann. Otol.*, 56, 684.
- ANSON, B. J., DONALDSON, J. A., WARFESSA, R. L., and WINCH, T. R., 1964: A critical appraisal of the anatomy of the perilymphatic system in man. *Laryngoscope*, 74, 945.
- 1965: The vestibular and cochlear aqueducts: their variational anatomy in the adult human ear. *Laryngoscope*, 75, 1203.
- ARNVIG, J., 1963: Transitory decrease of hearing after lumbar puncture. A personal experience which throws some light on the function of the aqueduct of the cochlea. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)*, 56, 699.
- COTOGNO, 1774: De quaeductibus humanae internae. *Zit. nach Habermann.*
- CROWT, S. J., 1930: Pathologic changes in meninges of the internal ear. *Arch. Otolaryng.*, 11, 537.
- HABERMANN, 1887: Beiträge zur pathologischen Anatomie des Gehörorgans. *Zeitschr. f. Heilk.*, 8, 347.
- HENDERFORD, G. and LINDSAY, J. R., 1968: Deaf-mutism due to meningogenic labyrinthitis. *Laryngoscope*, 78, 251.
- HOLDER, H. B. and SCHUKNECHT, H. F., 1968: Distribution pattern of blood in the inner ear following spontaneous subarachnoid haemorrhage. *J. Laryng.*, 87, 321.
- HARROWITZ, B., 1930: Vergleichend anatomische Studien über den Aquaeductus cochleae und über seine Beziehungen zum Subarachnoidalraum des Gehirns. *Monatsschr. f. Ohrenh.*, 64, 687.
- KARLSSON, J., 1924: Die Hirnhäuträume des Kleinhirns, die Verbindungen des 4. Ventrikels mit den Subarachnoidalräumen und der Aqueductus Cochleae beim Menschen. *Acta Otolaryng. (Stockh.)*, 3, ppl. 4.
- KIMURA, R. S. and SCHUKNECHT, H. F., 1963: Membranous hydrops in the inner ear of the guinea pig after obliteration of the endolymphatic sac. *Prac. Otorhinolaryng.*, 27, 343.
- LOFENTHAL, A., KARCHER, D. and VAN SANDT, M., 1960: Measurement of relative mobility after gel electrophoresis as a means of identification of spinal fluid protein fractions. *Proc. Biol. Fluids, Proc. 7th Coll. Bruges, 1959*. Elsevier Amsterdam, p. 309.
- MEYERMAN, Y., 1930: Zur Anatomie des Aquaeductus Cochleae nebst einigen Bemerkungen über dessen Physiologie. *Acta Soc. Med. Fenn. "Duodecim" (ser. B, fasc. 1)*, 13.
- PALVA, T. and RAUNIO, V., 1967: Disc electrophoretic studies of human perilymph. *Ann. Otol.*, 76, 23.
- Disc electrophoretic studies of human perilymph and endolymph. *Acta Otolaryng.*, 63, 128.
- 1968: The origin of perilymph albumin. *Acta Otolaryng.*, 66, 136.
- 1968: The total protein of human perilymph. *Acta Otolaryng.* (in press).
- PALVA, T. and TIKAMÄKI, P., 1969: Sodium and potassium concentrations in post mortem human labyrinthine fluids. *J. Laryng. (London)*, (in press).
- PERLMAN, H. B. and LINDSAY, J. R., 1939: Relation of the internal ear paces to the meninges. *Arch. Otolaryng. (Chic.)*, 29, 12.
- RITTER, F. N. and LAWRENCE, M., 1965: A histological and experimental study of cochlear aqueduct patency in the adult human. *Laryngoscope*, 75, 1224.
- RODGERS, K., and CHOU, J. T. Y., 1966: Concentrations of inorganic ions in guinea-pig inner ear fluids. *J. Laryng.*, 80, 885.
- SCHUKNECHT, H. F. and SEIF, A. E., 1963: Experimental observations on the fluid physiology of the inner ear. *Ann. Otol.*, 72, 687.
- WALTNER, J. G., 1947: Histogenesis of corpora amyloacea of the cochlear aqueduct, the internal auditory meatus and the associated cranial nerves. *Arch. Otolaryng. (Chic.)*, 43, 619.
- 1948: Barrier membrane of the cochlear aqueduct. Histologic studies on the patency of the cochlear aqueduct. *Arch. Otolaryng. (Chic.)*, 47, 656.



COVER

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1969

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 247

**HEARING IMPAIRMENT IN TURNER'S  
SYNDROME**

H ANDERSON B FILIPSSON E FLUUR,  
B KOCH, J LINDSTEN and E. WEDENBERG

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA KARLAVÄGEN 14, 115 23 STOCKHOLM**



*From the Departments of Audiology and Otology Karolinska Hospital, Stockholm,  
the Departments of Orthodontics and Roentgenology School of Dentistry  
Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, and the Department of Endocrinology and  
Metabolism, Karolinska Hospital, Stockholm*

## HEARING IMPAIRMENT IN TURNER'S SYNDROME

H ANDERSON H FILIPSSON E. FLUUR,  
B KOCH, J LINDSTEN and E. WEDEBERG

PRINTED I WEDLN BY  
*Almqvist & Wiksells*  
BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG  
UPPSALA 1969

## CONTENTS

Summary	5
Introduction	5
Material	6
Methods	6
Results	9
<i>Middle Ear Infections</i>	9
<i>Audiometric Analysis</i>	10
<i>Cephalometric Measurements</i>	13
<i>Studies On The Vestibular Function</i>	14
Discussion	14
Acknowledgements	18
References	18
Appendix	20





## SUMMARY

The hearing was studied in 79 clinically and cytogenetically analysed patients with Turner's syndrome of different ages. Middle ear infections had occurred in 52 out of 76 patients (68 per cent) generally during childhood. Six of the patients had chronic infections after the puberal years. Accordingly 17 patients (22 per cent) showed a conductive or mixed type of hearing impairment. Cephalometric analysis showed the external auditory meatus to be caudally displaced which points towards an abnormal orientation of the Eustachian tube, a condition that may explain the predisposition to middle-ear infections. Other infections were apparently not overrepresented. Sensory neural hearing impairment with recruitment was found in 51 patients (64 per cent) generally as a bilaterally symmetrical dip in the audiogram, generally centered around 2 kHz (42 per cent). This finding is interpreted as a defect in the outer hair cells of the organ of Corti localized to the upper part of the basal and the lower part of the middle coils of the cochlea. Only one of the 10 children demonstrated hearing impairment indicating a degeneration rather than a congenital malformation. There was however no striking progression in the later age groups. The aetiological significance of the abnormal sex chromosome constitution for the hearing impairment is discussed.

## INTRODUCTION

The genetics of sensory-neural hearing impairment in man has not yet been clarified even if the recent application of more advanced audiometric test methods has shed some new light on this problem (Anderson & Wedenberg, 1968 a). Small but distinct dips in the middle frequency range of the hearing threshold and/or abnormally high thresholds for the acoustically elicited stapedius reflex could be demonstrated in an unusually high frequency among the carriers of a presumptively recessive gene. Among different types of hearing impairment dips are also found in a high proportion of supposedly homozygous propositi. A similar dip is commonly observed in patients with Turner's syndrome (short stature ovarian dysgenesis and different malformations in females) (Lindsten, 1963). This is of special interest since Turner's syndrome is almost exclusively caused by well-defined numerical and structural abnormalities of the X chromosome (review in e.g. Lindsten & Fraccaro, 1965; Turpin & Lejeune 1965; Barlaos

& Baramki, 1967) It was therefore considered of importance to investigate in some greater detail the nature of the hearing impairment in these patients.

The present study which deals with this problem consists of three parts: an interview regarding the previous history of middle ear infections, an audiometric analysis, and cephalometric measurements with regard to the position of the external auditory meati. In addition, tomography of the cochlea, analysis of the vestibular function and electroencephalogram were studied in parts of the case material.

## MATERIAL

Seventy nine clinically and cytogenetically analysed patients with Turner's syndrome were used for the present study. Their chromosome constitution and age at the time of the hearing investigation are given in Appendix 1. The eight infants were studied after their diagnosis had been made at birth because of the finding of oedema on the hands and feet, and loose skin folds in the back of the neck. The 71 non infants were studied when they sought medical advice because of short stature and/or primary amenorrhoea.

Forty five of the 71 non infants were randomly selected for the cephalometric analysis, which also included two control materials. One consisted of 33 apparently healthy 11 years old girls corresponding to the case material with regard to body height. The other comprised 46 females, 16-28 years of age (mean age 20.5 years) with approximately the same age distribution as the patients (mean age 22.5 years).

## METHODS

The previous history of ear infections was based upon an interview with the patient and/or her parents, and if possible on earlier hospital records.

Different audiometric methods were used to study the hearing. The hearing threshold was determined by air and bone conduction octave audiometry on the following test frequencies: 0.125, 0.250, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 3.0, 4.0, 6.0 and 8.0 kHz. In order to obtain a more detailed picture of the hearing threshold continuous frequency Békésy-audiometry was used in many cases. Since this latter method gives an exact pattern of the hearing threshold for all frequencies it is possible to detect minor impairments which may not show up in the octave audiogram.

Acoustic recording of the intra-aural muscular activity (the stapedius

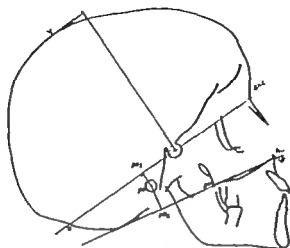


FIG. 1 Lateral projection. Cephalometric reference points and lines. The junction of line through  $S$  and  $X$ , and the external surface of the occipital bone is the most anterior point of the naso-frontal suture;  $PM$  point representing the dorsal margin of the maxilla;  $P$  the level of the nasal floor;  $PO$  the centre of the metal ring of the plastic rod of the cephalostat;  $PO_1$  the perpendicular of  $PO$  on  $S-X$ ;  $PO_2$  the perpendicular of  $PO$  on  $P-L$ ;  $P$  the centre of sella turcica;  $P$  the point of the anterior nasal spine; the uppermost point of the cranial vault;  $S-X$  line through  $S$  and  $X$ ;  $P-PM$  line through  $P$  and  $PM$ ;  $S-X$  line through  $S$  and  $X$ .

reflex) was used to distinguish between sensory neural and conductive hearing impairment, *i.e.* defects in the neural or the sound transmitting mechanisms, respectively. This is not always possible with the ordinary audiometric technique. It has earlier been shown that the presence of a stapedius response excludes any conductive component of clinical significance (Klockhoff 1961).

The stapedius reflex was also used to decide whether a sensory neural hearing impairment was of recruiting or non recruiting type. According to Metz (1952) the impairment is connected with recruitment if the span between the elevated air conduction threshold and the threshold for the stapedius reflex is reduced.

Children too young to cooperate in the ordinary tone audiometric test were examined by play audiometry according to Barr (1935). Special methods were used to test the hearing of the children who were too young to cooperate also in play audiometry. In these cases the auro-palpebral reflex (*i.e.* a contraction of orbicularis oculi muscle elicited by sound stimulation) and the awakening of the child by sound stimuli (Wedenberg, 1956 and 1963) were used. These methods make it possible to decide with reasonable certainty already from birth whether a child has a hearing impairment and also to some extent the type and degree of this impairment (Wedenberg, 1963).

The cephalometric measurements were performed on X-ray films taken

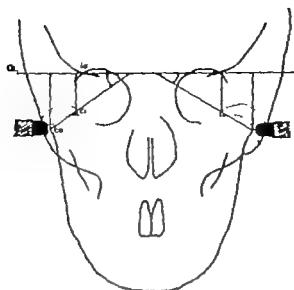


FIG. 2. Frontal projection. Cephalometric reference points and lines. *cl*: The midpoint of the ear drum; *co*: the junction of the lateral surface of the ramus of the mandible and the lower margin of the external auditory canal; *l*: the junction of the lateral border of the orbit and the greater wing of the sphenoid bone; *OL*: a line through *lo* both, *lo*.

In a cephalostat. In this device the head was fixed in the external auditory meati by plastic rods with metal indicators, a ring in the periphery of the left one and a central point in the right. The median plane of the head was parallel with the film and the beam from the X-ray tube was centered on the rods. The projection of the ring was used for localization of the external auditory meatus on the film. The distances between the focus of the X-ray tube on one hand, and the median plane of the head and the film on the other were kept constant.

The following measurements were used to determine the position of the external auditory meatus: in horizontal direction the distances ( $s_n$ ) ( $n-p_1$ ) ( $s-p_1$ ) and ( $e-p_1$ ) in vertical direction ( $v-s$ ) ( $p_1-p_2$ ) and ( $p_1-p_3$ ) (for explanation see Fig. 1). All measurements were transformed into indices because of differences in size of the skull between the patients and the control materials (Filipsson, Lindsten & Almqvist 1965).

In order to determine the slope of the external auditory canals 11 patients with Turner's syndrome and 11 control females of the same age were randomly selected and investigated as follows. The canals were inspected in order to exclude damage of the ear drum, cleaned from cerumen and filled with contrast medium (Pharmbary<sup>2</sup>) diluted in water to a consistency which made it suitable to exclude air close to the walls and the ear drum. The meati were plugged with the plastic rods of the cephalostat described above and one X-ray film was taken in frontal projection. The length of the auditory canals was estimated by projecting the points *co* and *cl* on the

*OL*-line the slope was measured as the angle between a line through *co* and *ci* and the *OL*-line (Fig. 2)

Tests for significance were performed with Student's *t* test. A difference was considered statistically significant at the 0.01 level

The analysis of the vestibular function included registration of spontaneous and positional nystagmus and caloric and rotatory tests. The caloric test was performed according to Fitzgerald & Hallpike (1942) using water of 30 and 44 C temperature. The rotatory test included four different speeds: 1, 2, 4 and 8 /sec<sup>2</sup>. It was started with acceleration to 40, 80, 120 and 160 followed by constant rotation for three minutes and then deceleration. Lag periods, duration of steady state and postacceleratory nystagmus were recorded.

## RESULTS

### MIDDLE EAR INFECTIONS

The detailed results regarding the previous history of middle ear infections are given in Appendix 1. Information could not be obtained for three of the patients.

Altogether 53 out of 76 patients (68 per cent) had had middle ear infections for which they had been treated by a physician. Thirty five out of the 52 patients had had one or a few such infections leading to spontaneous perforations of the ear drum or to surgical treatment (paracentesis). The remaining 17 had had repeated infections for which they had been hospitalized, and in four of these (nos. 10, 34, 39, 72) middle ear surgery had been performed.

Regarding the role of ear infections as a possible cause of hearing impairment, the following observations were made on the 76 informative patients. Twelve out of 26 patients with a normal hearing had suffered from ear infections. Ear infections were recorded for all 17 patients with a conductive or mixed type of hearing impairment, and also for 24 out of 34 with the pure perceptive type of impairment. The cell system of the mastoid processes was studied on X ray films and considered smaller than normal in five (nos. 20, 29, 54, 56, 79) and normal in seven cases (nos. 14, 15, 25, 26, 33, 46, 73). Of these two and four patients, respectively had had ear infections.

The ear infections generally occurred before the age of 10 years, but six patients had chronic infections after the age when puberty normally occurs. Three of the eight patients below three years of age had already had middle ear infections. Thus Turner patients seem to get such infections to a rather high extent. There is no suitable control material available, however. In our experience other types of infection are not represented among these patients.

Table 1 Number of patients with Turner's syndrome classified according to age at the first examination and type of hearing impairment

Age group (years)	Number of patients			Number of patients classified according to type of hearing impairment				
	Total	With normal hearing	With hearing impairment	Mono- and bi-lateral dips	Mono-lateral dip, mixed other side	Other sensory neural types	Bilaterally mixed	Conductive
0-9	10	9	1	1	—	—	—	—
10-14	5	—	5	2	2	1	—	—
15-19	32	9	23	11	1	2	1	8
20-24	17	5	12	9	1	2	—	—
25-29	6	1	5	—	1	2	2	—
> 30	9	2	7	4	1	2	—	—
Total	79	26	53	27 <sup>b</sup>	6	9	3	8

This patient had monolateral dip and pure conductive impairment on the other side

<sup>b</sup> Five patients had a monolateral dip, the others bilateral. One patient with monolateral dip had flat loss on the other side.

### AUDIOMETRIC ANALYSIS

**Definitions** (see also Appendix 1) The hearing was considered to be within normal limits if the hearing threshold was below 20 dB in the frequency range 0.125-8 kHz. From this follows that the hearing was considered to be impaired if the threshold was at least 20 dB or more, and if the impairment covered at least one octave. Recruitment was defined as the phenomenon which causes the sensation of a tone to rise more rapidly with increasing sound intensity than in the case of the normal ear. Hearing impairments with recruitment are considered to be caused by changes within the cochlea (Dix, Hallpike & Hood, 1948).

**Hearing impairment below 4 kHz** (Table 1 detailed results in Appendix 1) Of the 70 patients studied 53 (67 per cent) had hearing impairment according to the above definitions. Sensory-neural impairments were clearly predominating, but some cases demonstrated impairments of a conductive or mixed type. In the majority of cases the hearing impairment was moderate. In fact most of the patients had not even observed a reduction in their hearing acuity.

The most common type of pure sensory-neural hearing impairment observed was a characteristic basin-shaped threshold curve—a dip (Fig. 3) which was found in 33 patients (42 per cent). It was generally bilaterally symmetrical (22 cases) but sometimes unilateral with normal (five cases) or mixed (six cases) impairment on the other side. The dip was generally located between 0.25-4 kHz, but could occasionally cover 0.125-8 kHz. The maximum impairment of the dip was almost exclusively found between 0.5-2 kHz, and the magnitude was 20-70 dB with a median value of 30 dB.

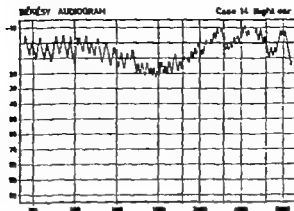


FIG. 3. Continuous recording showing the complete course of hearing threshold with minimal middle frequency impairment which easily is missed in routine audiometry.

Recruitment was found in all these cases (Fig. 4) except one which was questionable. Thus, the impairment is clearly of cochlear origin.

Nine patients (11 per cent) showed bilaterally symmetrical sensory-neural hearing impairment of other types (flat loss, sloping or high tone loss) which also demonstrated recruitment.

There remain no doubts that patients with Turner's syndrome demonstrate sensory neural hearing impairment of a specific type—a dip—in a proportion far above what is observed in the general population. According to Anderson & Wedenberg (1968, 1969) dips of the same type occurred in 0.8 per cent of the boys and 0.7 per cent of the girls in a population consisting of 10 778 healthy school children (5623 boys and 5155 girls) around the age of 14 years.

Eight patients (11 per cent) demonstrated hearing impairment of *pure conductive type* six of which were unilateral and two bilateral. Another nine (12 per cent) patients showed a *mixed type* of impairment, six unilateral and two bilateral. In most of these cases, the audiometric pattern suggested an involvement of an underlying sensory neural dip. Conductive and mixed hearing impairment occurs only in about 1.8 per cent of healthy children around 14 years of age (Anderson & Wedenberg, 1969).

In a few cases the parents were studied (both in cases 11, 17, 21, 27 and 75 only the mother in nos. 28 and 76 and only the father in no. 19) and most of them were normal and no hearing defects similar to those found in the daughters were observed. Interviews with the patients and their parents did not indicate an increased frequency of hearing impairment among the close relatives (grandparents and their descendants).

It should be pointed out that none of the children studied before 10 years of age demonstrated hearing impairment. Between 10–19 years of age 20 out of 37 patients (54 per cent), between 20–29 years 17 out of 23 (74 per cent) and above 30 years seven out of nine patients (78 per cent)



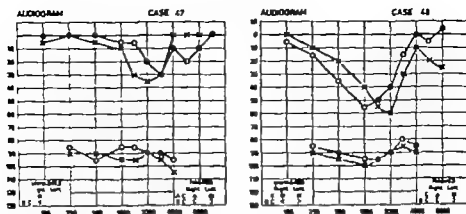


FIG. 4 Octa audiograms in two Turner cases showing pronounced hearing threshold dips and reflex threshold (dashed line) within normal limits; the reduced span between hearing and reflex threshold indicates recruitment.

demonstrated sensory neural hearing impairment (Table 1). Twenty three patients were studied on several occasions, the intervals varying between one to eight years. In six of these patients a progress of the sensory neural impairment of 10–30 dB was noted. On the other hand, the mean depth of the dips did not vary significantly between different age groups. Thus, the hearing impairment generally seems to appear around or after ten years of age and then remains stationary or progresses very slowly.

**Hearing impairment between 4–8 kHz.** Hearing impairment above 4 kHz is much more difficult to measure and classify and there is no suitable Swedish control material. Therefore, only a brief summary will be given and no detailed results have been included in Appendix 1. At 4 kHz 32 per cent of the patients showed hearing impairment of 20 dB or more, 18 per cent showed 30 dB or more. The corresponding values at 6 kHz were 53 and 29 per cent, respectively. There were no differences between the ears. There is a clear progression of hearing impairment with age and according to Glorig (1957) females between 30–39 years, show in 25 per cent an impairment greater than 10.7 dB (right ear)–22.2 dB (left ear) at 4 kHz. The corresponding values for 6 kHz were 28.2 and 28.0 dB respectively. If this material is used for comparison, our Turner patients have a clear hearing impairment also above 4 kHz. The occurrence of high tone loss is greater in the Turner group and only nine patients were 30 years or more. A more detailed comparison could not be made due to the presentation of the control material.

The cochlea was studied on X-ray films in ten cases (nos. 14, 15, 20, 26, 29, 46, 54, 56, 63, 79) using tomography at 3–4 mm intervals. Nothing abnormal was observed in any of the patients. Furthermore, an attempt was made to study the cochlea electronmicroscopically in cases 2 and 73 who died during the course of this investigation. It failed, however, because of too pronounced autolytic changes.

Table 2 Cephalometric indices, lateral projection

The nomenclature used is described in Fig. 1. Significance of difference:  $-P < 0.01$ 

Indices	Turner's Syndrome (I)			Normal subjects, age						Difference between means			
	n	mean	s.d.	11 years (II)			16-25 years (III)			II I	III I	III II	
				n	mean	s.	n	mean	s.d.				
(s-po <sub>1</sub> ) 100	45	30.4	4.9	33	31.5	3.7	46	32.1	4.5	1.1	1.7	0.6	
(- )													
(s-po <sub>2</sub> ) 100	44	94.9	12.4	33	94.4	9.5	46	91.1	9.3	-0.5	-3.8	-2.3	
(- po <sub>2</sub> )													
(po-po <sub>2</sub> ) 100	44	17.5	6.5	33	17.9	3.3	46	16.6	4.4	0.4	-0.9	-1.3	
(- )													
(po-po <sub>1</sub> ) 100	45	90.6	52.1	33	91.7	28.6	46	118.8	50.8	1.1	28.2	27.1	
(po-po <sub>2</sub> )													

(s-po) and (-) could not be measured in one case

## CEPHALOMETRIC MEASUREMENTS

The results are given in Table 2. There was no difference between the patients and either of the control groups with regard to the horizontal position of the external auditory meatus.

In vertical direction the distance between the external auditory meatus and the SNL-line (po-po) relative to the height of the brain case (v-s) did not differ between any of the groups. However (po-po) was relatively larger than the distance between the external auditory meatus and the NL-line (po-po<sub>2</sub>) in the patients than in the controls of the same age, but not in comparison to the controls of the same body height. Thus, the external auditory meatus is caudally displaced in Turner patients which explains the clinical observation of low-set ears.

It is known that the brain case grows very little from the beginning of puberty but that the facial skeleton grows markedly mainly in vertical direction. This can for instance be visualized as a lowering of the nasal floor (NL-line) i.e. a relative increase of (po-po<sub>2</sub>). The development of the facial skeleton in adult patients with Turner's syndrome is impaired and only reaches a level corresponding to that of 11 years old normal girls (Filipsson, Lindsten & Almqvist, 1965). This impaired development of the facial skeleton might explain why (po-po<sub>2</sub>) was found to be relatively shorter than (po-po) in the patients than in the controls of the corresponding age but not than the 11 years old controls of the same body height.

No significant differences were observed with regard to the position of the external auditory meatus between groups of patients with different types of hearing impairment or different sex chromosome constitutions.

Table 3 Cephalometric measurements frontal projection

The nomenclature used is described in Fig. 1 N = significant differences.

Measurements	11 patients with Turner' syndrome		11 normal females		Difference between means
	mean	S.D.	mean	S.D.	
<i>linear mm</i>					
(co-cl) left	18.2	2.7	18.2	2.9	0.1
(co-cl) right	18.7	2.7	18.9	2.4	0.2
<i>angular degrees</i>					
(co-cl)/OL left	24.9	5.7	28.2	5.0	3.4
(co-cl)/OL right	26.4	6.6	28.8	6.0	0.4

As seen from Table 3 there were no differences between the patients and the controls as far as the slope and length of the external auditory meati are concerned

#### STUDIES ON THE VESTIBULAR FUNCTION

Patients nos. 11 15 20 23 26 41 52, 53 and 66 were studied with regard to the vestibular function. All patients studied demonstrated a sensory neural hearing impairment except one (no 23) whose hearing was normal. Hyporeflexia was noted at the caloric reaction in two patients (nos. 15 and 66) one of whom also had spontaneous nystagmus (no 66). Case 20 also had spontaneous nystagmus, but reacted normally. Preponderance was noted at the rotatory test in case 15 and secondary nystagmus in case 52.

Similar findings are frequently made in the general population. Thus, the Turner patients did not demonstrate any striking abnormalities in the vestibular function.

#### DISCUSSION

The present work clearly confirms the preliminary observation by Lindsten (1963) that patients with Turner's syndrome demonstrate hearing impairment in a markedly increased frequency. The most common type of impairment is of a specific type: a bilaterally symmetrical sensory neural dip in the middle frequency range, but other types of impairment were also found occasionally. Some patients have a combination of sensory neural and conductive i.e. mixed type of impairment. Hearing impairment has earlier been occasionally reported in patients with Turner's syndrome and has generally been termed congenital unilateral or bilateral deafness (review in Hauser 1961; Silver & Dodd 1957; Haddad & Wilkins, 1959; De la Chia

pelle & Hortling, 1960 Slater & Zilkha, 1961 De la Chapelle, 1962 Jossio, De Grouchy Prézal & Lamy 1963 Pittis, Stanesco Flores, Ionesco & Poenaru, 1963 Engel & Forbes, 1965 and Hugh Jones, Wallace Thornber & Atkin, 1965) The presence of a dip in some patients with Turner's syndrome has been confirmed by Giaccai, Zurli, Ricci & Piolanti (1966) Thus, even if the hearing impairment is found over the whole frequency range, the most characteristic change is the dip in the middle frequency range.

Patients with Turner's syndrome might have an increased frequency of repeated middle ear infections (Lenz, 1957 Silver & Dodd, 1957 Kaljaer Söderhjelm, Enell & Klnch, 1959 Lindsten, 1963 Engel & Forbes, 1965 Stratton, 1965 and the present work) and conductive and mixed hearing impairment is clearly overrepresented This is probably due to changes localized to the ear itself Other infections do not seem to occur in an increased frequency and there are no clear indications of a defect in the immune response The growth disturbance in the cranial base including the temporal bone as demonstrated in the present work and by Philipsson, Lindsten & Almqvist (1965) probably causes an abnormal orientation of the middle ear and Eustachian tube which might predispose to the ear infections. Defects in the mucous membranes can of course theoretically do the same. Middle ear infections can in our opinion explain only the conductive type of hearing impairment but not the commonly observed sensory neural types, especially not the dip

There are no reasons to believe that other exogenous factors like asphyxia or intracranial haemorrhage at delivery or noise are of any significance in this connection Turner patients demonstrate a lower than normal birth weight and a slightly shorter than normal gestation time The deliveries are almost exclusively normal (Lindsten, 1963) and all infants studied in the present work had a normal hearing. Our patients with Turner's syndrome, generally below 30 years of age had hardly been heavily exposed to noise. Even if they were considerably more sensitive to noise than normal this would mainly explain the impairment above 4 kHz, but not the dips below this frequency The conclusion will then be that both the typical sensory neural hearing impairment below 4 kHz and the impairment above this frequency are mainly of endogenous origin.

The use of the stapedius reflex test in recruitment diagnosis is based on the fact that in cases of recruiting hearing loss, the elevation of the hearing threshold is not accompanied by a corresponding elevation of the reflex threshold, i.e. the distance between the two thresholds is reduced. In contrast, cases of non recruiting impairment demonstrate elevation of both the hearing and reflex thresholds. Although recent data has thrown some doubt on the absolute validity of this principle (Anderson & Wedenberg, 1968 b) this hardly affects the interpretation of the results in the Turner cases where the outcome of the reflex test with a few exceptions unequivocally indicated the presence of recruitment.

The rather uniform group of bilaterally symmetrical dips turned out to

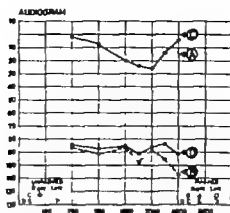


FIG. 5 Thresholds of hearing (A) and reflexes (B) in characteristic group of Turner (7 cases, 14 ears) and corresponding normal curves of hearing (C) and reflexes (D). Note divergent courses of hearing and reflex thresholds in upper frequency range above 2 kHz for the Turner group.

be of special interest since the reflex thresholds did not reflect the characteristic appearance of the hearing threshold. Consequently the impairments were judged to be recruiting. In addition an elevation of the reflex threshold was commonly found at the highest test tones (3 and 4 kHz), i.e. well above the center of the impaired area, where the hearing threshold curves were normalized. This peculiarity was more or less pronounced in the individual cases, but the tendency was quite noticeable as seen from the median of the reflex thresholds for the seven most characteristic cases of dips submitted to reflex measurement (Fig. 5). The figure also contradicts the possibility that this phenomenon can be regarded as a simple function of the relatively small high frequency hearing threshold loss. The divergent course of the hearing and reflex threshold above 2 kHz in Turner cases is rather unique and no explanation to the phenomenon can be offered at present.

The fact that the dips almost exclusively demonstrated recruitment formally localizes the defect to the outer hair cells of the organ of Corti. It then remains to be shown why the dip is localized to the middle frequency range especially to 2 kHz. Judging from the experiments of Békésy (1960) this suggests a defect restricted to a comparatively short distance of the basilar membrane at the end of the upper and of the basal and at the beginning of the middle coil of the cochlea. This part is of special interest since it has been shown that in the opossum (Larsell, McGrady & Larsell, 1944) as well as in the cat (Boxler & Hallpike 1964) and the mouse (Lorente de Nó, 1933) the embryological development of the receptors of Corti's organ starts in this region. In man it is not yet known where this development starts, but there are no reasons to believe that man differs from the other mammals in this respect.

The histological studies just described are supported by physiological

observations in mammals during foetal life. The first electrical responses from the organ of Corti can be obtained in the opossum within the frequency range 1-13 kHz (Larsell McCrady & Larsell, 1944) and in the rabbit within 2-5 kHz (Ånggård, 1965). The first autonomic responses to acoustic stimuli appear in human foeti in the frequency range 1-3 kHz (Johansson, Wedenberg & Westin, 1964). These frequencies correspond to a stimulation area in the middle of the cochlea, in man to the upper part of the basal and the lower part of the middle coil. It is not known why this developmental region would be especially predisposed to hearing defects in patients with Turner's syndrome. An embryological maldevelopment seems less likely since all the Turner infants demonstrated normal hearing. The picture rather indicated a degeneration of sensory cells after the age of about 10 years. A longitudinal study of the hearing starting with newborn Turner patients might give further information regarding the pathogenesis of the sensory neural hearing impairment as might a histological and/or electronmicroscopical analysis of the cochlea in abortuses and perinatally dead children with a 45,X chromosome constitution.

It seems reasonable to assume that the abnormal sex chromosome constitution is the etiological factor to the hearing impairment in patients with Turner's syndrome. X-linked gene(s) or an unspecific genetic imbalance would then be the most obvious alternative explanations. The dips observed in our patients are indistinguishable from those presumed to be determined by an autosomal recessive gene in heterozygous condition (Anderson & Wedenberg, 1968). In contrast to the Turner patients these cases frequently demonstrate, in addition to the dip, an abnormally high reflex threshold and a family history of hearing impairment.

We are then left with the hypothesis of a genetic imbalance which is supported by the observations of abnormalities in morphology and function of probably all organ systems (review in Lindsten & Fraccaro 1965). As far as the nervous system is concerned different neurological symptoms (Lindsten, 1963 and the present work in 14/75 patients) abnormal electroencephalograms (Mellbin, 1966 and the present work in 13/20 patients) and abnormal vestibular function (Slater & Zilkha, 1961; Glacal, Zurli, Ricci & Ploanti, 1966, and the present work in 2/0 patients) have been described. Furthermore the so-called "space-formed blindness" observed at the intelligence testing points in the same direction (e.g. Money and Granoff 1965). In this connection it is worth mentioning that there were no obvious differences between groups of Turner patients with different sex chromosome constitutions.

The specific dip pattern, although less pronounced in five out of eight patients with Klinefelter's syndrome and an abnormal sex chromosome constitution (Anderson, Lindsten & Wedenberg, 1969) raises once more the question if there are specific factors on the human X chromosome influencing the hearing, or if certain parts of the cochlea are predisposed to changes in patients with unbalanced sex chromosome constitutions.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The expenses for the present investigation were covered by grants from the Swedish Medical Research Council to Drs. J. Lindsten and E. Wedenberg.

Dr. B. Hellström, Stockholm, is kindly acknowledged for valuable discussions regarding the electroencephalographic study.

## REFERENCES

- Anderson, H., Lindsten, J., and Wedenberg, E., 1969: Audiometric studies in patients with Kliefiter's syndrome (personal observations).
- Anderson, H. and Wedenberg, E., 1968: Audiometric identification of normal hearing carriers of genes for deafness. *Acta Otolaryng* 65, 535.
- Anderson, H. and Wedenberg, E., 1969: Genetic aspects of hearing defects in children. An analysis of the results of hearing measurement by earless frequency aids in Stockholm school comprising 10778 children. *Acta Otolaryng* in press.
- Åggård, L., 1965: An electrophysiological study of the development of cochlear potentials in the rabbit. *Acta Otolaryng* 8 pp. 263.
- Barr, B., 1955: Pure tone audiometry for pre-school children. *Acta Otolaryng* 8 pp. 121.
- Bartalos, M. and Baramki, T. A., 1967: Medical Cytogenetics, Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore.
- Békésy, G. von, 1960: *Anatomical Techniques in Experiment in Hearing* 19. Edited by E. G. Weyer.
- Bosher, S. K., and Hallpike, C. S., 1965: Observations on the histological features, development and pathogenesis of the inner ear degeneration of the deaf white cat. *Proc R Soc Biol* 162, 147.
- Chapell, A., 1962: Cytogenetical and clinical observations in familial gonadal dysgenesis. *Acta Endocr* (Kbh.) Suppl. 45.
- Chapelle, A. and Hilding, H., 1960: Frekvens i Kliefiter's syndrom och gonadal dysgenesis. *Uppsala Läkartidning* 63, 256.
- Dix, M. R., Hallpike, C. S., and Hood, J. D., 1948: Observations on the deafness resulting from the disease, with special reference to the differential diagnosis of disorders in the internal ear and VIIIth nerve. *Proc R Soc Biol* 41, 516.
- Engel, E., and Fuchs, A. P., 1965: Cytogenetic and clinical findings in 48 patients with congenitally defective or absent ovaries. *Medicine* 44, 125.
- Fillipson, R., Lindsten, J., and Almquist, S., 1965: Time of eruption of the permanent teeth, cephalometric and tooth measurement and lipiotion (act) in 45 patients with Turner syndrome with different types of X chromosome aberrations. *Acta Endocr* (Kbh.) 48, 91.
- Fitzgerald, G., and Hallpike, C. S., 1942: Studies in human vestibular function. Observations on the directional preponderance of caloric vestibular responses from cerebral lesions. *Brain* 65, 118.
- Glaser, G., Hall, A., Ricci, T., and Piola, M. P., 1966: Alterazioni dell'orecchio nelle distrofie genetiche del tipo fenotipo femminile. *Riv. Neurol.* 29, 187.
- Grotrian, A., Wheeler, D. E., Quigley, R., Griggs, W. W., and Zimmerman, A., 1957: *Wisconsin Study of Hearing Survey. Statistical Tables of Clinical and Audiometric Data*. American Academy of Ophthalmology and Otolaryngology.

- Haddad, H. M., and Wilkins, L., 1939 Congenital anomalies associated with gonadal aplasia. *Pediatrics* 33 835.
- Hansen, G. A. 1981: In: Overholt, C., Ed. *Diagnosis of Malnutrition*. Thieme, Stuttgart.
- Hughes, K., Wallace, J., Thornber, J. M., and Atkin, B., 1963 Gonadal dysgenesis with unusual abnormalities. *Arch. Dis. Childh.* 40 274.
- Hansson, B., Wedenberg, E., and Westin, B., 1964 Measurement of the response by the human foetus. *Acta Otolaryng* 57 183.
- Jiao, N., De Grouchy, J., Frézal, J. and Lamy, M., 1963 Le syndrome de Turner familial et de ses deux formes avec caryotypes XO et XX. *Ann. de Pédiatrie* 39 773.
- Kaljaer, K., Söderhjelm, L., Enell, H., and Kinch, A., 1959 Gonadal dysgenesis. *Acta Soc Med Upsal* 64 502.
- Klockhoff, I. 1961 Middle ear muscle reflexes in man. A clinical and experimental study with special reference to diagnostic problems in hearing impairment. *Acta Otolaryng Suppl.* 164.
- Larsell, H., McCrady, E. J. and Larsell, J. F. 1944: The development of the organ of Corti in relation to the inception of hearing. *Arch. Otolaryng* 50 333. *Trans Am Acad. Ophthal Otolaryng* 1944, 337.
- Lenz, W. 1957 Diagnose des Geschlechtes aus segmentkernigen Leukocyten bei Störungen der embryonalen Geschlechtsdifferenzierung. *Ann. Paediat* 133 63.
- Lindsten, J. 1963 The nature and origin of X chromosome aberrations in Turner's syndrome. Almqvist & Wiksell, Stockholm.
- Lindsten, J. and Fraccaro, M., 1963 In: Rashad, M., and Morton, W. Ed. *Genital Anomalies*. C. C. Thomas, Springfield (in press).
- Lorentz, R., 1933 Anatomy of VIII nerve. *Laryngoscope* 43 1.
- Milham, G. 1966 Neuropsychiatric disorders in sex chromatin negative women. *Brit J Psychiatry* 112 145.
- Metz, O., 1952 Threshold of reflex contraction of muscles of middle ear and recruitment of loudness. *Arch. Otolaryng* 55 536.
- Mowry, J. and Graboff, B. 1965 IQ and the somatic stigmata of Turner's syndrome. *Am J Med Def* 70 69.
- Pith, M., Stanesco, V., Fléret, I., Lescro, V. and Poenaru, S. 1963 Sur 50 cas de syndrome de Turner. *Sem. Hôp Paris* 39 86.
- Silver, H. K., and Dodd, S. B. 1957 Gonadal dysgenesis. *Amer J Dis. Children* 94 702.
- Slater, E., and Zilkha, K., 1961 A case of Turner mosaic with myopathy and Schizophrenia. *Proc Royal Soc Med.* 54 10.
- Stratton, H. J. M., 1965 Gonadal dysgenesis and the ears. *J Laryngol. Otol* 79 343.
- Turpin, R., and Lejorbe, M. 1933 *Le Chromosome Humain*. Gauthier Villars, Paris.
- Wedenberg, E., 1934 Auditory tests on new-born infants. *Acta Otolaryng* 46 446.
- Wedenberg, E., 1963 Objective auditory tests on non-cooperative children. A follow-up examination of 60 new-born infants and pre-school children with suspected hearing loss. *Acta Otolaryng* 5 suppl. 175.



## APPENDIX

Middle ear infections audiometric and neurological analysis in 70 patients with Turner's syndrome classified according to sex chromosome constitution and age at examination

Case no.	Chromosome constitution	Initials	Age (exam), years	Middle ear infections	Audiometric analysis		Cephalometric analysis	Neurological symptoms	Electroencephalogram
					Method	Type of impairment < 3 kHz			
1	45 X	F H.	2/52	-	W	-	•	-	•
2		L S.	2/52	-	W	-	•	-	•
3		A. B.	3/52 2 1/2	-	O	Probably normal	•	Delayed psychomotor development into epileptic seizures	At two and three months of age the EEG showed a right-sided slow wave-abnormally. At five months the pattern had changed into a marked and generalized epileptogenic abnormally characterized as modified hypsarhythmia. At six months these changes had regressed.
4		F E.	1 1/2 2 1/2	-	O	-	•	-	-
5		K. B.	1 1/2 3 1/2	+	O	-	•	•	-
6		M. G.	1 1/2 4	-	O	-	•	•	•
7		H G.	1 1/2 3 1/2	+	O	-	•	-	•
8		K. B.	3 1/2 4 1/2	+	O	-	•	-	-
9		A. M.	10	++	B	Right, mixed, flat - 60 dB Left, sens, dip 0.5-3 kHz	+	-	•
10		B. E. A.	12 17	++	O	Right, sens, dip 0.25-4 kHz Left, mixed, flat - 60 dB N. program	•	-	•

12	L. A. L.	13	+	O	ment. N. progress IUL, sym, sens, dip 0.125-2 kil Max, 0.5 kilz - 25 db	●	—	●
13	A. Fa.	15-17	+	O	IRL, mixed Right sloping boys 1 kil 10-80 db Left flat 25 db	●	—	●
14	G. B.	16	+	OHR	No progress IML, sym, sens, dip 0.75-2 kilz Max, 20 db 11 kilz	●	—	Slight generalized and diffuse slow-wave-abnormality
15	J. L. J.	18	-	OHR	Recruitment? IRL, sym, sens, dip 0.5-1 kilz Max, 2 kilz 20 db	●	—	Slight generalized and diffuse abnormality consisting of mild (f) and slow wave-activity
16	J. L. J.	15	-	OHR	No recruitment IML, sym, sens, dip 0.25-1 kil Max, 2 kilz 25 db. Recruitment	+	—	●

Slight generalized and diffuse slow-wave abnormality

Slight generalized and diffuse abnormality consisting of mild slow and slow wave-activity

— = With normal limit; kil = test frequency; per second divided by 1000 dB = decibel; bil = bilateral; sym = symmetrical; threshold = normal threshold; dip = dip; sh = sharp; freq = frequency; fig = figure; th = threshold; grad = gradually; h = high; l = low; a = abnormal; n = normal; r = right; l = left; s = slow; f = fast; g = generalized; d = diffuse; ab = abnormal; act = active; in = in; m = mild; m = moderate; s = severe; n = normal; n = not; n = not studied.

— = N. triki = abnormality; ● = not studied.

A normal re of the Ciba Conference (1968) Xq1=pre-imp-  
 ti isochromosome for the 13th pair of X. 7 = mother cell type w  
 burred in rows. This cell type could, however, not be found in the  
 human body. 13 blood cells. Xp = probable deletion of the  
 short arm of X. X = 13th chromosome. Xq = deletion of the  
 long arm or isochromosome for the short arm of X. m = metachromic  
 fragments.

Atrophic disorder (patient) studied earlier from di logic and  
 cytogenetical point of view (Li disen 1963)

— = 13th pair of chromosomes; a few re 13 chromosomes; whi h  
 the patient had been treated by physiotherapy, post-natal perform  
 of the ear drum on paracetamol; + = as ear as 13 chromosomes for  
 whi h the patient had been hospitalized at age and f which  
 some had been operated upon

O = Oct. diagram; B = conil one frequency a diometry  
 second g 1. Nékéty; R = 13th pair reflex means remant; W = h r l g  
 first for 13 (see 13)

Case no.	Chromosome condition	Initials	Age at examination, years	A diometrical analysis		Cerebalometric analysis	Neurological symptoms	Electroencephalogram
				Method <sup>4</sup>	Type of impairment < 4 kHz			
17	45, X	L. B. J.	10-18	O	HR, ym, sens, dip 0.25-1 kHz Max 1 kHz - 13 dB No progress	+	Slight spontaneous nystagmus	Moderate generalized slow wave-abnormality sometimes of an episodic character and with changes most marked in temporal and central regions
18		F. B.	17	OBR	—	•	—	•
19		M. B.	17	O	—	+	—	—
20		K. M.	18	O	HR, abrupt high tone Loss above 3 kHz	•	—	•
21		E. N.	18	O	Right	—	—	—
22		L. J.	18	O	Left cond, max, 55 dB fixation of the ocular chain	•	—	•
23		K. A.	18	O	Right cond, flat 60 dB Left	+	—	•
24		R. H.	18-20	O	—	+	—	•
25		D. F.	18-22	O	Right Left sens, dip 0.25-1 kHz Max, 1 kHz - 55 dB	+	—	•
26		L. O.	19	OBR	Progress 10 dB 1 kHz Right Left sens, dip 1.5-3 kHz Max, 3 kHz - 30 dB. Recruitment.	+	—	Slight diffuse increase of slow frequencies in frontal and temporal regions, possibly within normal limits
27		L. L.	19	O	—	+	—	•
28		M. O.	19	O	Right Left cond, flat - 25 dB	+	—	•
29		L. L.	20-23	OBR	HR, ym, sens, dip 0.25-3 kHz Max, 1 kHz - 40 dB. Recruitment No progress	+	—	Slight, diffuse increase of slow wave-activity especially in frontal and temporal regions with slight left-sided predominance

30	45,X	R. L.	Rt.	+	O	III, sym, acua, dip 0.125-1 kHz Max, 1 kHz - Right 15 dB, left 30 dB	+	—	•
31		R. S.	21	++	O	III, acua, dip 0.25-3 kHz	+	—	•
32		L. A.	21	++	O	Right max, 1 kHz - 15 dB Left max, 2 kHz - 40 dB	+	—	•
33		L. IL	31	+	OR	III, sym, acua, dip 0.125-1 kHz Max, 0.5 kHz 55 dB, Recruitment	+	—	•
34		S. 1 IL	21	++	O	Right mixed sloping - 40-80 dB Left acua, dip 0.125-1 kHz	+	Spontaneous yagmurs	•
35		V. S.	20	+	O	M x, 2 kHz 55 dB III, flat, mid ed. light 10 dB left 30 dB	+	—	•
36		R. L.	27	+	O	III, mixed: light dip 0.25-4 kHz	+	—	•
37		O. A.	28	+	O	Max 1 kHz 55 dB Left sloping 20-65 dB	+	—	•
38		G. K.	29-33	+	ORR	III sym, acua, sloped above 1 kHz 0-75 dB. Recruitment. Progress light 10 dB at 4 kHz and left 20 dB 1-6 kHz	+	Pinsla right	•
39		M. S. L.	20	++	O	III, sym, acua, dip 0.25-2 kHz	•	Straubismus	•
40		A. F.	31	++	OR	Max, 0.5 kHz - 20 dB, Recruitment	+	I (vertical) cycl, strabism	•
41		U. O.	32	+	O	III, sym, acua, flat, 40-30 dB	•	—	•
42		V. P.	31	+	O	III, sym, acua, dip 0.25-1 kHz M x, 2 kHz 35 dB	+	—	•
43		I. J.	11-12	•	O	Right mixed flat 80 dB Left acua, dip 0.125-1 kHz M x 1 kHz - 70 dB Progress left 20 dB at 0 and 6 kHz	+	—	•

Moderate diffuse slow wave-ab-  
n normally most marked in poste-  
rior and lateral regions





PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell's Boktryckeri AB*

UPPSALA 1989

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M II

**THE STAPEDIOVESTIBULAR JOINT  
NORMAL STRUCTURE AND  
PATHOGENESIS OF OTOSCLEROSIS**

**RUTH GUSSEN**

**ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA NARVÄGEN 16, 11523 STOCKHOLM**





ACTA OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

SUPPLEMENTUM 248

---

*Departments of Pathology and Surgery Division of Head and Neck Surgery Otolaryngology Section,  
University of California, Los Angeles, California*

THE STAPEDIOVESTIBULAR JOINT  
NORMAL STRUCTURE AND  
PATHOGENESIS OF OTOSCLEROSIS

RUTH GUSSEN M.D

*Assistant Professor of Pathology  
University of California, Los Angeles*

UPPSALA 1969

Supported by grants from USPHS NB-06606, Deafness Research  
Foundation, American Otological Society Inc and The Hope for  
Hearing Research Foundation.

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY  
*Almqvist & Wiksell*  
BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG  
UPPSALA 1969

# CONTENTS

Review of Labyrinthine Capsule Structure, Normal and Abnormal	5
Stapediovestibular Joint—A Redefinition	6
The Normal Stapediovestibular Joint	10
Abnormal Changes (Degenerative Arthritis)	17
Early Otosclerosis	22
Degenerative Arthritis and Otosclerosis	27
Mechanical stress associated with genetic and hormonal factors	28
Metabolic factors	29
Osteochondrodysplasias	30
Irradiation	31
Summary	33
Zusammenfassung	35
References	37



## REVIEW OF LABYRINTHINE CAPSULE STRUCTURE, NORMAL AND ABNORMAL

Otosclerosis occurs most frequently in the anterior portion of the labyrinthine capsule in relation to the oval window. Any theory of the pathogenesis of otosclerosis would have to account for the predilection of this area for the disease and yet still be consistent with the pathogenesis of the disease as described elsewhere in the bony labyrinth.

In a previous study (Gussen, 1968 b) it was shown that, although the labyrinthine capsule is preformed in cartilage only small portions of the cartilage undergo bit by bit replacement by endochondral bone (globuli ossei). The great bulk of the cartilage degenerates and is replaced by marrow. This marrow is then gradually filled in by bone which is not endochondral bone since it is not formed by a bit by bit replacement of degenerating cartilage. The replacement bone is formed by mesenchymal cells within the marrow which transform into osteoblasts. This new bone is endosteal membrane bone which encases the scattered endochondral globuli ossei of the middle layer. The marrow spaces, after being largely filled in with endosteal convoluted membrane bone remain as the blood vessel canals. The labyrinthine capsule therefore is essentially a membrane bone with scattered foci of endochondral bone (globuli ossei).

To understand the bone of the labyrinth, one must study the characteristics of membrane bone in general. One such characteristic of membrane bone is its ability under certain conditions, to form cartilage. This cartilage, formed by cells that normally form bone has been referred to in the literature as secondary cartilage or chondroid cartilage. An important characteristic of secondary cartilage is its ability to be converted into bone by two different processes. One process follows the usual degeneration of the cartilage with its bit by bit replacement by endochondral bone the other is a direct transformation of the cartilage cells and the cartilage matrix into bone cells and bone matrix without degeneration and resorption of the cartilage resulting in membrane (chondroid) bone. This type of bone forms most of the inner endosteal circumferential lining of the bony labyrinth.

It was demonstrated that secondary cartilage foci form throughout life from the mesenchymal cells adjacent to the inner lining of the bony labyrinth. These cartilage foci then either (1) remain as cartilage foci, or (2) undergo degeneration and replacement by endochondral globuli ossei, or (3) undergo direct transformation to bone as the inner endosteal circum



in its normal physiological manner due to the increased mineralization present within the canaliculi and lacunae which normally are free of mineral. The micropetrotic perivascular bone may then break down by osteoclastic resorption and lacunar erosion. The eroded bone areas are filled with mesenchymal tissue containing mesenchymal cells which form new bone as a repair mechanism. This new bone forms as membrane bone within mesenchymal or fibrous tissue and represents "otosclerotic" bone.

To be consistent, therefore, a theory of pathogenesis of otosclerosis originating in the stapediovestibular joint region should involve the same principles of new membrane bone forming within the fibrous areas of eroded bone. In addition, the predilection of the joint area for this otosclerotic process must be explained.





## THE STAPEDIOVESTIBULAR JOINT— A REDEFINITION

The author wishes to present a more composite anatomical and functional view of the stapediovestibular joint. Descriptions of the joint usually refer only to the actual articulation between the stapedial footplate circumference and the oval window by means of the annular ligament. Yet, Richany Anson & Bast (1960) and others have described the continuation of the cartilage lining from the articular portions of the joint to line the immediately adjacent areas of the middle ear and vestibule, and continuing also to line the fissa ante fenestram and the fossula post fenestram (when present) as well as the vestibular surface of the footplate itself.

Brunner (1954) has described fibers of the annular ligament joining the connective tissue of the fissa ante fenestram. Wolff & Bellucci (1956) concurred with Brunner's observation, describing the continuation of the fibers of the annular ligament into the fissa ante fenestram for their attachment. They also observed that the fibers extend posteriorly to the fossula post fenestram and stapedius tendon and are continuous with the attachment of the spiral ligament fibers of the basal cochlear turn.

The stapediovestibular joint, therefore, may be viewed in a much broader sense as having an articular portion and a non-articular portion. The articular portion refers to the direct stapedial footplate—oval window attachment by means of the annular ligament, and the non-articular portion refers to the cartilage-lined areas of the immediately adjacent tympanum and vestibule together with the fissa ante fenestram and the fossula post fenestram. This broader interpretation is believed to be tenable because of the directly continuous cartilage lining the articular and the non-articular portions, and because of the fiber connections from the annular ligament which, in their broad attachments and insertions serve for a more secure anchorage of the joint during motion. The fissa ante fenestram and the fossula post fenestram will therefore be considered to be fibrous extensions of the stapediovestibular joint, providing for additional broad anchorage of the footplate and stabilizing the joint.

## THE NORMAL STAPEDIOVESTIBULAR JOINT

Human temporal bones from 30 patients (51 specimens) were studied, ranging in age from birth to 82 years of age. Sixteen of the patients were males, from one day to 79 years of age and fourteen of the patients were females, ranging in age from 18 minutes to 82 years of age. Two of the specimens contained otosclerotic foci involving the oval window without ankylosis of the stapediovestibular joint and were from a 47 year old white male. Four specimens were from Negro males, one pair from a one day old baby and the other pair from a 48 year old male.

The temporal bones were fixed in 10% neutral buffered formalin, demineralized by chelation with a 0.7 M solution of the tetrasodium salt of EDTA at pH 7.4 and 37 C and vacuum embedded in parlodion. Sections were cut at 20 micra and were stained with hematoxylin and eosin.

The normal histological structure of the stapediovestibular joint has been presented in a previous study (Cussen 1968a). The cartilage lining the footplate, the oval window, the fissula ante fenestram and the fossula post fenestram is normally uncalcified. At all ages, varying degrees of degeneration of the chondrocytes within the uncalcified cartilage was demonstrated with the presence of small numbers of macrophages within some of the involved cartilage lacunae. The cartilage adjacent to the bone of the footplate, oval window and fissular tract undergoes a slow process of endochondral bone replacement throughout life. Once the macrophages have phagocytized the degenerated cartilage cells, osteogenic vascular buds extend from the underlying bone into the opened, excavated, "prepared" cartilage lacunae (Fig. 1). At times, endochondral bone gradually replaces large areas of the cartilage of the vestibular surface of the footplate.

While endochondral bone formation is occurring in the deep portions of the cartilage of the articular and non-articular portions of the joint, the surface cartilage of the joint undergoes a constant repair and replenishment of its cartilage by mesenchymal cells within the annular ligament and fibrous extension of the joint. At all ages, but most prominent during the early active growth years, varying numbers of mesenchymal cells of the annular ligament and fibrous extensions are lined up alongside the cartilage surface becoming incorporated by cartilage matrix. Small surface defects in the cartilage are filled in or repaired by this process (Fig. 1). This process of continual cartilage degeneration and endochondral bone formation at the bone-cartilage junction with new cartilage forming by apposition on the articular surface occur at all ages, varying in degree after the



FIG. 1A (Reproduced from the American Journal of Anatomy Gussen, 1968 a.) Posterior margin of oval window with degenerating chondrocytes and scattered smaller irregularly shaped macrophages (m) within the cartilage layer and newly forming chondrocytes at the cartilage surface. Endochondral bone formation progresses from about the prominent blood vessel left of center. On day 10 male. H & E 280.



FIG. 1B Anterior margin of footplate (right) and oval window (left). Note defect in cartilage of oval window (between arrows) with mesenchymal cell lined pit lined and in part lacunae, forming new cartilage, in addition to cartilage repair on the surface. No endochondral bone formation in footplate and oval window 3 yrs old (male). H & E 220.

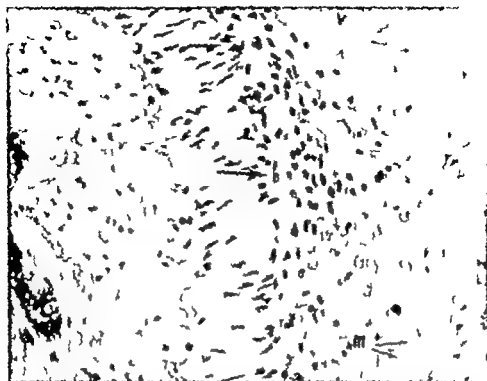


FIG. 1C. Anterior margin of footplate (l f) and oval window (right) with annular ligament (between). Note mesenchymal cells lined up alongside forming new cartilage (large single arrow) and degenerating cartilage cells and small red macrophages (m) are present within the cartilage. 8-year-old male II & E  $\times 250$ .



FIG. 1D. Posterior margin of footplate (l f) and oval window (right). Note newly forming cartilage (l f) from mesenchymal cells (l f) annular ligament, and degenerating cartilage cells (l f) and small red macrophages (m) are present within the cartilage. 8-year-old male II & F  $\times 250$ .

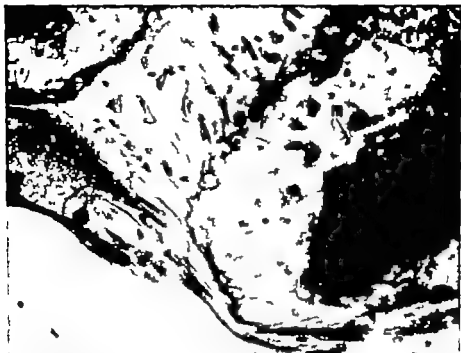


FIG. 1 E Anterior margin of oval window (right) and footplate (left). Note uneven cartilage surface with degenerating cartilage cells, occasional macrophages (m) and new endochondral bone formation. Calcification of the surface cartilage is noted in a few places, as well as occasional new cartilage cells at the surface. 79 year old male. H & E. 430



FIG. 2 Posterior margin of footplate (right) and oval window (left). Note calcification of cartilage surfaces and dense band of calcification in footplate. Reticular cartilage and at the underlying bone. Mesenchymal cells are lined up alongside for repair. Late degeneration of cartilage. 79 year old male. H & E. 430



FIG. 2. A Stapediovestibular joint in newborn (male) Not continuation of cartilage lining (from os) window (at right) (line the fissula ante fenestram) (1) cartilage (2) deep part of fissula. Not abundant marrow within otic capsule replaced by membrane bone which ossifies the endochondral globular ossicle. H & E.  $\times 42$ .

active growth years from specimen to specimen and appears to represent physiological repair and remodeling of the joint.

After approximately the third decade the cartilage of the articular and non articular portions of the joint commonly reveal foci of surface calcification which may extend in narrow linear bands to the underlying subchondral bone. Fig. 2 demonstrates both surface and linear bands of calcification in the posterior portion of the footplate articular cartilage of a 10 year old male. Small erosions of the surface cartilage result from the breakdown of the calcified cartilage matrix, which is unable to maintain itself and mesenchymal cells form new cartilage (physiological repair). Figs. 3B and 3C demonstrate surface calcification and linear calcification of the cartilage lining the fissula ante fenestram.

The fissula ante fenestram in addition to the changes already described also revealed certain changes which were localized to that structure. In virtually all specimens, the deep portion of the fissula ante fenestram was no longer lined by a cartilage layer but contained either a mass of cartilage (Fig. 3A) or cartilage undergoing endochondral or membrane chondroid bone transformation. It was lined by bone (Fig. 3B and 3C). In all specimens available to the author these changes were limited to the deep portion of the fissula ante fenestram and did not fill the entire structure.



FIG. 3B Fissula ante fenestram (between arrows) with calcification of cartilage lining deep portion and filling of deep portion with cartilage in transition to membrane chondroid bone. A linear band of calcification in cartilage lining upper right field. 62 year old male H & E 130

Fig. 3A demonstrates the fissula ante fenestram in a newborn female. The deep portion of the fissula is filled with cartilaginous tissue. Fig. 3B demonstrates the fissular tract in a 62 year old male. Here, the deep portion of the tract is lined by calcified cartilage and contains new matrix secreted by the mesenchymal cells which resembles an intermediate stage of cartilage-bone matrix. This represents the formation of membrane bone in this area which is going through a modified secondary cartilage stage. Fig. 3C is the fissula ante fenestram in a 48 year old Negro male and demonstrates the deep portion asymmetrically filled with membrane chondroid bone. Bast & Anson (1949) have described this type of change in the fetus and young child, and interpret it as an attempt by the tissues to reduce the size of unusually large portions of the fissula. The presence of cartilage and/or bone in the deep portion of the fissula is probably related to the constant motion of the fibers inserting in this area which are continuous with fibers in the annular ligament. This will be discussed more fully later. The author believes that some degree of cartilage or bone formation within the deep portion of the fissula represents a physiological process of remodeling related to mechanical loading.

Since foci of cartilage calcification and superficial erosion of the stapedio-vestibular joint are present to such universal degree, these changes are





FIG. 2C. Fissula of fenestra demonstrating asymmetrical id membrane chondroid bone filling deep portion (arrows). Note calcification of surface cartilage. 48 year old Negro male H & E 130

considered to be a part of the physiological wear and tear of the joint surfaces, with repair and remodeling occurring in the form of endochondral bone formation at the cartilage-bone junctions, and appositional cartilage formation at the articular surfaces. A sharp dividing line between the changes seen physiologically with function and age and the beginning changes of degenerative joint disease (osteoarthritis) is difficult to define.

The stapediovestibular joint, therefore, differs from the majority of joints in the body which are lined by typical hyaline cartilage and in which growth and repair of the cartilage occur by proliferation of cartilage cells deep within the cartilage layer. The stapediovestibular joint is not lined by this typical hyaline cartilage. In this respect it resembles such joints as the temporomandibular joint (Moffett Jr *et al.*, 1964) and the sternoclavicular joint, which have in common repair of the articular cartilage surface by apposition of cartilage formed by mesenchymal cells in the adjacent fibrous tissue. Miles & Dawson (1962) point out that in the case of the temporomandibular joint, this has been attributed to the fact that the temporal and mandibular components of the joint are derived from membrane bone. The cartilage of the stapediovestibular joint is secondary cartilage (or chondroid cartilage) and, as has been demonstrated in previous studies, is associated with bone which has been formed predominantly as membrane bone (Gussen, 1968b).

## ABNORMAL CHANGES (DEGENERATIVE ARTHRITIS)

Occasional specimens exhibited deep erosion of the articular cartilage of the oval window and of the footplate. Figure 4 A reveals such a deep erosion or ulceration of the anterior articular surface of the footplate, with calcification and superficial erosion of the cartilage lining of the fissula ante fenestram in a 75 year old white male. The erosion of the footplate cartilage lining extends almost to the underlying bone. Only a thin, irregular rim of cartilage matrix remains separating the mesenchymal tissue filling the erosion and the subchondral bone. Severe degenerative arthritis also involved the stapediostibular joint, bilaterally of a 57 year old white female. Both articular and non-articular surfaces were affected. Fig 4 B demonstrates deep erosion of the cartilage of the anterior surface of the left stapelial footplate. The surface of the remaining cartilage is calcified. The apposing oval window surface and the fissula ante fenestram reveal thinning of the cartilage lining with calcification and mesenchymal cell repair. Congested capillaries are present just beneath the middle ear mucosal surface of the annular ligament, presumably as part of the reaction to the articular degenerative changes. The eroded portion of the stapelial articular cartilage contains mesenchymal tissue in which mesenchymal cells and increased amounts of mucopolysaccharide material (from the degenerated cartilage matrix) produce an illusion of outline of the original uneroded footplate contour. Fig 4 C is a high power view of the footplate erosion demonstrating the dense calcific material obscuring remnants of degenerating eroded cartilage. The mesenchymal cells and tissue within the erosion resemble fibrocartilage. Fig 4 D reveals an eroded portion of the left oval window margin anteriorly at a slightly deeper level. Remnants of the cartilage lining are seen at the bottom of the photograph. Above this, the cartilage lining has been completely eroded with continuing erosion of the underlying bone which has now been exposed by the arthritic process. Mesenchymal cells are present within the pitted, irregular eroded surface of the exposed bone. Fig 4 E demonstrates erosion of the posterior portion of the footplate articular cartilage in the right temporal bone. Degenerating cartilage undergoing repair is present on either side of the erosion. In the eroded area itself the cartilage has been completely destroyed and erosion of the subchondral bone is evident. Mesenchymal cells are present within and alongside the eroded, pitted bone surfaces. Fig 4 F demonstrates erosion of the non-articular surface of the joint in the

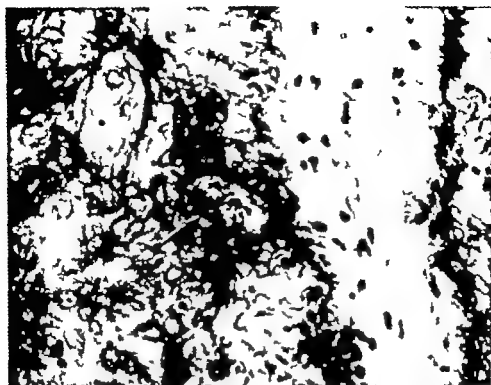


FIG. 4 E Right tarsometatarsal joint with calcification and marked thinning of foot plate cartilage posteriorly. Not small deep erosion (arrow) of articular surface down to and involving the underlying bone. Not mesenchymal cell within pitted, eroded bone surface as well as repairing cartilage at bottom of photograph. 57 year old female II & E 450

form of a large eroded area within the vestibular surface of the right foot plate adjacent to the articular surface. Erosion of the underlying bone has occurred, and mesenchymal tissue fills the eroded area. Mesenchymal cells are present alongside the pitted irregular eroded bone surface. Such severe degenerative arthritis was seen in only a few specimens, and in no such case was any history of hearing disorder present.



FIG. 4F Right pedal footplate with reticular surface (left) and vestibular surface (bottom). Not large erosion of vestibular surface with erosion of underlying bone (single arrow). Mesenchymal cells fill the erosion cavity. Note small irregular resorption cavity (small arrows) within articular cartilage. 57-year-old female. H & E. 450.

## EARLY OTOSCIEROSIS

Temporal bones from one patient demonstrated very severe degenerative joint disease with deep erosion of the underlying bone and exhibited early new bone formation (repair) by mesenchymal cells. This new bone formed by the mesenchymal cells partially filled in the deeply eroded articular surface. Interestingly enough these bilateral changes of severe degenerative joint disease with resulting repair by new bone formation occurred in a three-year old white Mongoloid female with congenital heart disease. The etiology of the degenerative arthritis in this case is undetermined. As far as is known there were no symptoms referable to the ears. The patient died following corrective cardiac surgery.

Fig 5 A demonstrates the articulation between the footplate and the oval window posteriorly. Extensive deep ulceration of the articular surface of the oval window is evident with complete destruction of the cartilage lining in this area and deep erosion of the underlying bone of the labyrinthine capsule. A narrow rim of newly formed bone is present beginning to fill in the eroded area. A few calcific plaques are present within the erosion remnants of the previously calcified cartilage. The articular cartilage of the footplate appears normal in Fig 5 A. However in Fig 5 B which is at a slightly deeper level erosion of the apposing footplate cartilage is evident with mesenchymal cells lined up alongside the defect. Here cartilage is present along one edge of the large oval window erosion. New bone formation is evident beginning to fill in the deeper portions of the eroded area. Note the cellularity of the newly forming bone as compared to the adjacent older bone of the labyrinthine capsule. Fig 5 C demonstrates erosion of both oval window and footplate articular surfaces posteroinferiorly. The oval window erosion is filled in by new bone at the edges of the erosion up to the original surface. However the midportion of the erosion has not yet completely filled in with new bone. The photograph demonstrates well the sharp demarcation between the bone filling in the erosion defect and the uninvolved cartilage. The apposing footplate surface is eroded down to the underlying bone with clusters of mesenchymal cells within the area. Fig 5 D is a high power view of the newly forming bone filling in the erosion defect in the oval window. The new bone is membrane bone formed by the mesenchymal cells.

Fig 6 demonstrates ossification replacement of the oval window without ankylosis in a 47 year old white male. It also demonstrates a deep erosion of the apposing cartilage surface of the footplate down to the subchondral bone. The annular ligament has been encroached upon by the

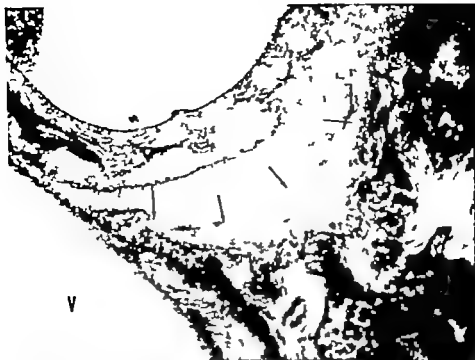


FIG. 5A. Stapediovestibular joint, posterior view. Not visible: deep erosion of oval window surface (arrows) with complete destruction of articular cartilage and deep erosion of underlying bone. Not visible: narrow rim of new bone forming along eroded bone surface. Calcific plaques are present in the eroded area, remain is of previous calcified cartilage. Vestibular 3 years old female. H & E  $\times 125$ .



FIG. 5B. Slightly deeper than box. Not visible: long left edge of erosion. Not visible: newly forming membrane (arrows) beginning to fill deep part of erosion. Not visible: rim of new bone compared to adjacent bone of capsule. Not visible: erosion of posterior surface of footplate with calcification of mesothelial cells. H & E  $\times 125$ .



FIG. 5C. Newly forming membrane bone has completely filled in oval window erosion (left arrow) and formed oval window surface (right arrow). At right newly formed bone is sharply demarcated from uninvolved articular cartilage (right arrow). Between these two points, the erosion is only partially filled in with new bone. Apposing footplate surface is eroded and undergoing repair. H & E  $\times 150$ .

actively forming new bone of the oval window. The spread of such actively forming new bone to the footplate does not appear to occur by invasion of the cartilage lining of the footplate. Rather mechanical function of the joint is further impaired by the new bone repair of the oval window surface and results in degeneration of the footplate articular cartilage. With deep erosion of the footplate cartilage and eventual erosion of the underlying bone of the footplate bone repair may ensue to fill in the defect in the footplate which may gradually merge with the actively forming new bone of the oval window surface. The process seems to be one of continuing degenerative arthritis and repair where the malfunction of the joint prepares the way for further erosion of cartilage and bone with resulting new bone formation.

This new membrane bone involved in the repair of arthritic lesions where erosion of subchondral bone has occurred, is identical to osteosclerotic bone. Osteosclerotic bone per se is therefore not abnormal bone. It is membrane bone formed by mesenchymal cells which normally form secondary cartilage in this area but which have the capability of forming bone directly. The erosion of the subchondral bone stimulates the mesenchymal



FIG. 5D High power view of newly forming membranous bone filling residual window articular erosion. H & E 230.

cells to form bone as a means of repair. A vicious cycle is then set up where increasing repair further increases the malfunction of the joint, which accelerates the degenerative lesions, requiring further repair.

None of the specimens available to the author demonstrated complete filling of the fissula ante fenestram with bone. However, one can speculate that such extensive bony replacement of the fissular soft tissue represents a response of this area to mechanical overloading, exerted through the fibers from the annular ligament which insert deep within the fissula ante fenestram. There is considerable evidence available in the literature to indicate that cartilage (and its conversion to bone) can be induced to form in connective tissue at points where there is movement combined with pressure or mechanical loading (Murray 1936; Ham & Harris, 1956). It is conceivable that when such new bone is found in excess within the fissular tract, that the oval window articular surfaces will demonstrate severe degenerative arthritic changes with possible deep erosion involving the underlying bone and beginning new bone repair (otosclerosis). Yet it would seem that arthritic lesions may involve the articular surfaces severely without necessarily overloading the fissular area. Much additional study of this area is necessary.



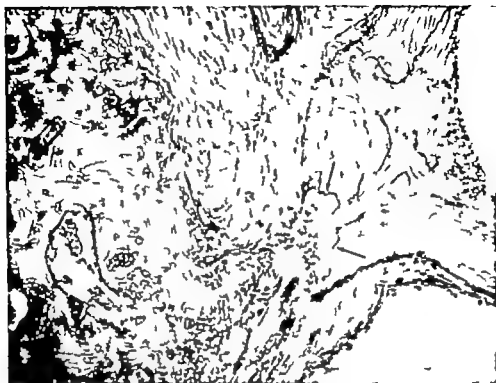


FIG. 6 Oval wound margin (1 ft) is replaced by otosclerotic bone which is extending through the ligament of the bone. Not deep erosion (arrows) of the footplate cartilage down to subchondral bone. 47 year old male II & E 150

## DEGENERATIVE ARTHRITIS AND OTOSCLEROSIS

The stapediovestibular joint throughout life suffers the effects of physiological wear and tear and is able to maintain its articular surfaces by apposition of new cartilage formed by the mesenchymal cells of the annular ligament and fibrous extensions of the joint. The articular cartilage of the joint is normally uncalcified, but with increasing age small foci of calcification and surface erosions occur. These foci of cartilage degeneration and erosion may increase in number and dimension and merge into the early stages of degenerative joint disease (or degenerative arthritis or osteoarthritis). Degenerative arthritis implies the degeneration of articular surfaces with continuing attempts at repair by the joint tissues. As the degenerative changes become more and more severe the mechanical function of the joint is further impaired, and, in turn, exacerbates the degenerative changes, producing a vicious cycle and acceleration of the degenerative arthritic changes. With focal erosion and destruction of the cartilage lining, the underlying bone is exposed and becomes eroded. When this occurs, the mesenchymal cells within the annular ligament bordering on the eroded areas (and probably the mesenchymal cells about the blood vessels of the eroded bone) are stimulated to form new bone in an attempt to fill in the erosion defect. This new membrane bone, formed to repair the eroded bone, is identical to "otosclerotic" bone. Otosclerotic bone therefore is not abnormal bone, *per se*. It is membrane bone formed in an area of bone erosion, presumably to repair the defect. Its formation in the stapediovestibular joint is analogous to its formation in the labyrinthine capsule proper. In that, in both places it forms to repair areas of bone breakdown or erosion. The breakdown or erosion of bone in the labyrinthine capsule proper is related to vascular insufficiency and micropetrosi (Gussen, 1968 b) whereas the erosion of bone in the joint area is related to severe degenerative joint disease. Once the erosion or breakdown of bone occurs in either area, the repair process of new membrane bone (otosclerosis) formation follows. The predisposing factor in the joint region is the occurrence of degenerative joint disease.

Degenerative arthritis may result from many types of specific joint disease in addition to occurring as an independent entity. Some of the specific disease processes in which degenerative arthritis occurs are certain of the osteochondrodysplasias, certain metabolic disorders such as ochronosis and gout, trauma, and irradiation. When degenerative arthritis involves a joint where no specific etiology is recognized, the factor of

mechanical stress to that joint associated with such factors as genetic predisposition and hormonal influence is implicated

*Mechanical Stress Associated with Genetic and Hormonal Factors* One of the main factors implicated in the etiology of degenerative arthritis is mechanical stress. This raises the question of *what* constitutes mechanical stress to the stapediovestibular joint—a joint which is normally in constant motion. Johnson (1959) in his discussion of the kinetics of osteoarthritis, states that tangential shearing forces are essential for the development and localization of the joint lesions. A shearing force implies a sliding contact of parts which move in opposite directions from each other. The action of the stapedial footplate against the oval window fits into this category of tangential shearing motion. However the manner in which mechanical factors operate is poorly understood, and other factors, such as genetic predisposition and hormonal influence are usually implicated as associated with the mechanical stress theory of degenerative joint disease.

Age changes within cartilage matrix may well predispose to its mechanical erosion. Silberberg & Silberberg (1941) studied the age changes of bones and joints in various strains of mice and found definite genetic differences in the rate of development and severity of such changes. Sokoloff *et al* (1962) found hereditary factors to be of major importance in the development of degenerative joint disease in various strains of mice. Sokoloff *et al* (1967) also demonstrated a predisposition to degenerative arthritis specifically of the intervertebral disks in small rodents (*Peromyscus* *Natalensis*).

A similar genetic predisposition has been demonstrated in humans with Heberden's nodes (Siecher 1940; Kellgren 1964) where the incidence of this degenerative arthritis of the terminal phalanges of the fingers is higher in women and genetically appears to depend on a single autosomal dominant gene, whereas in men it appears to be recessive. Approximately 25% of Caucasian women are predisposed to this form of osteoarthritis, whereas it is less prevalent among Negroes, Eskimos and possibly Japanese.

Other factors, perhaps in conjunction with mechanical stress and genetic predisposition may be involved. For example, Sokoloff *et al* (1960) found in experimental studies in rats and mice that a high fat diet enhanced the joint degeneration in certain strains. Articular cartilage responds to physiological stimulation in several respects. For example, Silberberg & Silberberg (1941) in their study of age changes of bones and joints in mice observed that the age changes occurred more slowly in males than in females, and that pregnancy exerted an accelerating effect. Excessive secretion of pituitary growth hormone results in acromegaly in the adult. Hypertrophy of articular cartilage which then degenerates has been demonstrated in this condition, both in humans (Walne *et al* 1946) and experimentally in animals (Kellgren *et al* 1952).

It is interesting to note here that some of these factors predisposing to

degenerative arthritis are also factors which seem to have significance in the incidence of otosclerosis. For example otosclerosis has been considered to have a hereditary basis, the mode of inheritance being through an autosomal dominant gene (Larsson, 1960). The incidence of otosclerosis is also much higher in the white race than in the Negro and Oriental races (Guild, 1944; Altmann *et al.*, 1961). The hormonal effects of pregnancy on clinical otosclerosis are well known. It may well be that these factors predispose the stapediovestibular joint to degenerative arthritis, setting in motion the events which may culminate in "otosclerotic" membrane bone repair of a severely eroded articular surface.

There are numerous studies and discussions in the literature on the possible role of mechanical stresses and strains in the development of otosclerosis (Mayer 1931; Sencer & Krmpotic 1966, and others). These studies discuss the mechanical factors resulting from extrinsic forces and resistance of the otic capsule or from rotation of the capsule during development or from the changing angulation of the base of the skull. However hardly any reference is found to the more obvious mechanical factors involved through the motion of the stapediovestibular joint itself. It would seem that the stumbling block has been the search for a common etiological factor for the development of otosclerosis in the joint area and the labyrinthine capsule proper rather than a common pathogenesis. The pathogenesis of otosclerosis is the same in both regions, provided that one starts with the basic lesion of erosion or destruction of bone. Once this occurs, in either area, the resulting bone repair recognized as otosclerosis occurs. However the events leading up to the erosion of bone in the two separate locations, are different.

Mechanical stress has been implicated in the pathogenesis of otosclerosis in the joint region in the past, but with no clear understanding of the normal and abnormal tissue reactions in this area. For example Brühl's mechanical irritation theory as discussed by Mayer (Brühl, Mayer 1931) stated that mechanical irritation of the area anterior to the oval window resulted from the constantly moving annular ligament and the contraction of the tensor tympani muscle bringing about the formation of otosclerotic bone. Brunner (1932) recognized degenerative changes in the cartilage of the oval window considering them to be "pre-otosclerotic". These changes involved loss of nuclei and calcification. He described the changes as occurring normally to a certain extent, but occurring more extensively in pre-otosclerosis. Brunner believed that the degenerative changes were atrophic changes and were probably hereditary.

**Metabolic Factors.** Any mechanism interfering with the normal articular structure may lead to the development of degenerative arthritis. For example ochronosis is a hereditary disorder of metabolism of the amino acids tyrosine and phenylalanine which lead to the deposition of a pigment (homogentisic acid) in cartilage and certain collagenous structures. The

homogentisic acid hyperpolymerizes the mucopolysaccharide of the cartilage matrix to a brittle glasslike consistency that is easily fractured. This articular cartilage involvement results in the gradual development of degenerative joint disease (Johnson 1959).

Brunner (1929) has described the temporal bones of a 54-year old male with ochronosis. The patient died of heart disease, and also suffered from degenerative joint disease of the vertebral column. Brunner's main interest in the temporal bones was the demonstration of the abnormal pigment. An incidental finding was a focus of otosclerosis involving the oval window without ankylosis of the joint. Unfortunately no photomicrograph of the focus is included in his presentation. However it is logical to consider that degeneration of the articular cartilage of the oval window had occurred secondary to pigment deposition, and that the otosclerotic focus represented a repair of a severely eroded articular surface down to and involving the subchondral bone. Brunner did not see abnormal pigment in the cartilage however the cartilage in the involved area had probably been destroyed.

*Osteochondrodystrophies* Severe precocious degenerative arthritis has been described in humans in association with various osteochondrodystrophies (Voldawer *et al.*, 1962). Certain breeds of dogs with inherited peculiarities of articular cartilage are prone to degenerative arthritis. Dachshunds, for example have a high incidence of degenerative intervertebral disk disease (Hansen, 1959) and degenerative arthritis of the hip is very common in certain breeds of dogs, such as German Shepherds where it develops secondary to dysplasia of the hip (Riser 1963).

An increased incidence of otosclerosis is found in some osteochondrodystrophies, and may well be related to degenerative changes involving the articular surfaces of the stapediovestibular joint, predisposing to erosion of the subchondral bone. The dystrophic diseases all have in common some failure of matrix formation. In Morquio's disease, for example, there is an abnormal accumulation of mucopolysaccharides in cartilage matrix resulting in degenerative arthritis. In Marfan's syndrome the basic lesion appears to be an over-accumulation of chondroitin sulfate followed by disruption of elastic fibers. It is not illogical to postulate a degeneration of articular cartilage of the stapediovestibular joint in either of these diseases. Once degeneration of the articular cartilage occurs, the likelihood of injury (erosion) to the underlying bone increases, with attempts at repair and the formation of new bone.

Osteogenesis imperfecta has been the main osteodystrophy associated with otosclerosis. This disease is essentially a failure of periosteal and endosteal membrane bone formation (Rubin, 1964). Articular surfaces are usually described as normal in accounts of the disease although there is hyperlaxity of ligaments which leads to frequent dislocation. However it must be borne in mind that the cartilage of the labyrinthine capsule is not

primary hyaline cartilage, but is secondary cartilage formed by mesenchymal cells by apposition. In other words, it is cartilage which is formed by cells that also normally form membrane bone. The articular cartilage of the stapediovestibular joint is also secondary cartilage formed by apposition of mesenchymal cells. This secondary cartilage formation therefore of the articular surfaces of the stapediovestibular joint, is analogous to membrane bone formation, in that the same mesenchymal cells are capable of forming either tissue. This differs from the majority of the joints in the rest of the body which are lined by hyaline cartilage, and which maintain themselves by slow growth of cartilage from cartilage cells within the bulk of the cartilage itself and not by apposition. Since osteogenesis imperfecta is primarily a disorder of membrane bone formation (or a form of connective tissue failure) it is logical then that the secondary cartilage lining of the stapediovestibular joint which is formed by the same mesenchymal cells that form membrane bone—that the articular cartilage of this joint will be involved in defective formation with resultant predisposition to degenerative arthritic changes. This may be the explanation for involvement of such a joint as the stapediovestibular joint in the disease process and the sparing of the joints lined by typical primary hyaline cartilage. It would be interesting in this respect to examine the temporomandibular and sternoclavicular joints in patients with osteogenesis imperfecta to determine if these joints, which are also lined by secondary cartilage react as does the stapediovestibular joint.

Paget's disease of bone represents an error in the remodeling of bone where both bone resorption and membrane bone formation are increased, with first one phase and then the other being more active. The poor structural quality of bone in this disease predisposes it to injury. In this regard, there is some impressive evidence (Sokoloff 1960) that erosion of articular cartilage is especially likely to occur in domesticated animals where there is insufficient mineralized bone tissue. Again, one can also speculate on the involvement of the secondary cartilage lining of the stapediovestibular joint in the process, since its formation is analogous to membrane bone formation.

*Irradiation* Recently the possible relationship of irradiation in the region of the ear to the subsequent development of otosclerosis has been raised. Kristensen & Jørgensen (1967) demonstrated such a possible relationship between otosclerosis and irradiation. There have been numerous reports dealing with the effects of irradiation on cartilage cells and osteoblasts. These are summarized by Gall *et al* (1940) and Heller (1948).

The early post irradiation changes in bone and cartilage have been studied by Melanott & Follis, Jr (1961). They studied the effect of a single exposure of x irradiation of increasing intensities from 400 to 1800 r on epiphyseal cartilage and osteoblasts of the tibia in rats. Not only was the growth of cartilage affected but the cartilage cells were disorganized. The

Solche Faktoren wie mechanische Belastung verbunden mit genetischer Veranlagung, hormonale und metabolische Faktoren (so wie Schwangerschaft und Ochronose) gewisse von den Osteochondrodysplastien und Ausstrahlung wurden in ihrer Rolle als Faktoren die empfänglich machen für die Entwicklung von degenerativer Arthritis besprochen im allgemeinen sowohl als auch in ihrer möglichen Rolle in der Entwicklung von degenerativer Arthritis des stapediovestibulären Gelenks (auf diesem Wege empfänglich machend für Otosklerose)

Osteogenesis imperfecta ist eine Krankheit der Membranknochenbildung. Der sekundäre Knorpel der das stapediovestibuläre Gelenk auskleidet ist analog dem Membranknochen insofern als dieselben Zellbindegewebe beide Gewebe bilden. Daher steht das häufigere Vorkommen von Otosklerose bei Patienten mit Osteogenesis imperfecta wahrscheinlich in Beziehung zu degenerativer Arthritis sekundär zu artikulärer Knorpeldefektbildung.

Man nimmt an, dass die neue Knorpel- und Knochenbildung die man gelegentlich innerhalb der *fenestra ante fenestram* antrifft, sekundär eine gesteigerte mechanische Belastung dieser Struktur ist.

# REFERENCES

- Altman, P. Glasg Id, A and MacDuff J H 1967 The incidence of otosclerosis related to age and sex *Ann Otol Rhinol Laryng* 76 377
- Brahl G (as quoted by) Meyer O 1931 Die Entstehung der postamen Frakturen der Labyrinth-Kapsel und ihr Bedeutung für die Otosklerose *Koch f Hals Nase u. Ohr* 2, 228
- Brunner H., 1929 Über die Veränderungen des Schläf beines bei der Ochronose *Monats. für Ohre h. und Laryngo-Rhinol* 63 997
- 1932 Pathology of otosclerosis. *Arch. Otolaryng* (Chic.) 55 389
- 1934 Attachment of the stapes to the oval window in man. *Arch. Otolaryng* (Chic.) 59 18.
- Gill, E. A., Lingley J R., and Hickey, J A., 1940 Comparative experimental studies of 200 kilovolt and 1000 kilovolt roentgen rays I. The biological effects on the physiology of the albino rat. *Am J Path.* 16 605
- Gullid, S. R 1944 Histologic otosclerosis. *J Otol Rhinol and Laryng* 53, 248
- Gussen, R., 1948 Articular and internal remodeling in the human middle ear capsule. *Am J Anat* 122, 397
- 1948 b The Labyrinthine Capsule Normal structure and pathogenesis of otosclerosis. *Act Otolaryng* (Stockh.) Suppl. 235
- Ham, A. W and Harris, W H 1936 *Repar and transplant of bone* The Biochemistry and Physiology of Bone (ed. G H Bourne) p. 478. Academic Press Inc New York.
- Hansen, H.-J 1939 Comparative views on the pathology of disk degeneration I *Im la. Lab laser t* 8, 1212.
- Hiller M 1948 *Bone I Histopathology of Irradiation* from External and Internal Sources (ed. W Bloom) p. 79 McGraw Hill, New York.
- Johnson, L. C., 1959 Kinetics of osteoarthritis. *Lab Invest* 8 1223
- Kellgren, J H 1943 Hereditary Osteoarthritis The epidemiology of rheumatic disease *Ann Rheum Dis* 23 109
- Kellgren, J H Ball, J and Talbot, R K., 1952 The articular and other limb changes in chromopaly *Quart J Med.* 21 463.
- Kilb J Vrabeck R and Chyba, J 1947 Arthropathies after irradiation. *J Bone and Joint Surg* 49 4 1167
- Kristensen, H. K., and Jørgensen, M B., 1947 Irradiation and otosclerosis. *Act Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 63, 114
- Larsson, A., 1960 Otosclerosis. A genetic and clinical study *Act Otolaryng* (Stockh) 8 suppl 151
- Mayer O 1931 Die Ursache der Knochenveränderung bei der Otosklerose *Act Otolaryng* (Stockh.) 15, 35.
- Macnott P L and Filla, J R. H., 1961 Early effects of  $\gamma$ -irradiation on cartilage and bone *Am J Path.* 39 1
- Miller, A E. W and Dawson, J A 1962 Elastic fibers in the articular fibrous tissue of some joints. *Arch Oral Biol* 7 219
- Moffitt J B., Johnson, L. C., McCabe J D., and Askew H C., 1964 Articular remodeling in the temporomandibular joint *Am J Anat* 113 119
- Mulder M H. H., and Bauer W 1962 Fibrillar precocious degeneration



- thritis and the natural history of osteochondrodystrophy. In *Medical and Clinical Aspects of Aging* (ed. H. T. Blumhail) p. 226. Columbia University Press, New York.
- Murray P. D. F. 1936: *Bones. A study of the development and structure of the vertebrate skeleton*. Cambridge University Press.
- Nichols S. F., Anson, B. J. and Bast, T. H. 1960: The ear and the temporal bone. Development and histological structure. *Otolaryngology* (ed. H. M. Coates and H. P. Schenk) Vol. 1. W. F. Prior Hagerstown, Md.
- Riser W. H. 1963: A new look at developmental subluxation and dislocation of the hip. *Small Animal Pract* 6: 421.
- Rubin, P. 1964: *Dysplastic Classification of Bones*. Year Book Medical Publishers, Chicago, Ill.
- Sereer, A., and Krmpotic, J. 1968: Thirty years of osteoarthritis studies. *Arch. Otolaryng* (Chic.) 88: 598.
- Silberberg, M. and Silberberg, R. 1941: Age changes of bones and joints in various strains of mice. *Am. J. Anat* 62: 69.
- Sokoloff L., 1960: Comparative pathology of arthritis. In *Advances in Veterinary Science* 6: 193 (ed. C. A. Brandt and P. L. Jaugherr). Academic Press, New York.
- Sokoloff L., Critchfield, L. B., Yamamoto, R. S. and Jy J. G. E., 1962: The genetics of degenerative joint disease in mice. *Arthritis and Rheum* 5: 631.
- Sokoloff L., Mikkelsen, O., Bilvestein, E., Jy J. G. E., and Yamamoto, R. S. 1966: Experimental obesity and osteoarthritis. *Am. J. Physiol* 193: 763.
- Sokoloff L., Smith, K. C., and Stewart, H. L., 1967: Degenerative joint disease in Prairie (Mus mus) talensis. *Ann. Rheum. Dis* 26: 146.
- Stecher R. M. 1940: Heberd's nodes. The incidence of hypertrophic arthritis of the fingers. *New Eng. J. Med* 222: 300.
- Wine H. Bennett, G. A., and Baker W. 1945: Joint disease associated with acromegaly. *Am. J. Med Sci* 209: 671.
- Will D. and Bellucci, R. J. 1958: The human osicular ligaments. *Ann. Ot. Rhin. and Laryng* 65: 825.



PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell's Boktryckeri Aktiebolag*

UPPSALA 1960

*Acta*  
**OTO LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L S. E. S. E. T U M 245  
J 19/12/69

**CONTINUED STUDIES ON  
THE FUNCTIONAL MECHANISM OF  
THE LABYRINTHINE  
SENSORY EPITHELIA**

*The Vestibular Part  
particularly the Otolith Organs*

**S H. MYGIND**



*Acta*  
OTO LARYNGOLOGICA

S U P P L E M E N T U M 249

CONTINUED STUDIES ON  
THE FUNCTIONAL MECHANISM OF  
THE LABYRINTHINE  
SENSORY EPITHELIA

*The Vestibular Part,  
particularly the Otolith Organs*

S H MYGIND  
*Vedbæk by Copenhagen*



CONTINUED STUDIES ON  
THE FUNCTIONAL MECHANISM OF  
THE LABYRINTHINE SENSORY EPITHELIA

*The Vestibular Part particularly the Otolith Organs*

S.H. MYGIND

*Foreword by Copenhagen*

*To the memory of  
Aug. Krogh, professor  
of Zoophysiology  
my moral support and  
source of inspiration.*

While we elsewhere in sensory physiology admittedly have to do with influences acting in the axis of the sensory cells, producing partly a topographically localized sensation, partly oppositely directed motor reactions, serving the positional adjustment, as is the case in sight and sensation of touch, a corresponding mechanism of the labyrinthine senses, acoustic as well as vestibular is unanimously rejected in our days.

Quix maintained that the otoliths were acting by pressure. This conception was disproved by a series of ingenious experiments, carried out by Magnus and de Kleyn, apparently proving that the otoliths were acting by hanging (for details Mygind<sup>4</sup>). About the same time I had started working with clinical problems which I could not make to fit into the above theories. My first step into the right direction was a comparison with the eye where a stimulation of the one part of the retina releases an opposite feeling of orientation and an oppositely directed motor reaction in relation to the stimulation of the other part. The one side of the retina thus cooperates with the homolateral part of the other eye, while the temporal and the nasal parts of the single eye are oppositely orientated, as are also the upper and lower halves. I also recognized that the same place of a vestibular epithelium gives corresponding reactions of eyes, neck, body and extremities, reactions which, previously at least partially had been considered as originating in different epithelia. As incitement I accepted pressure because I in our Menièrepatients had observed so many phenomena indicating an existing intralabyrinthine over-pressure (D Dederding<sup>1</sup>). And I also found out, that clinical and experimental facts became explainable, if the sensibility throughout a sensory epithelium was not, as hitherto supposed, equal all over the same surface, (S.H. Mygind<sup>1, 2, 3, 4</sup>).

By studying the famous work of G. Retzius from 1881 and 1884 3 of the comparatively few microscopical preparates showed very interesting pictures of the ma-



cula utriculi in a cod-fish, an alligator and a pigeon. Both the cod-fish and the pigeon showed in a sagittal section an increase in height from behind forwards of the sensory cells, ending in front with a sudden steep fall, while the backward part showed evenly diminishing cells with no sharp frontier towards the surroundings. The upper surface was in the pike (fig. 1) somewhat excavated in the pigeon nearly horizontal and flat (fig. 2). Corresponding differences were seen in the alligator only it is not noted what is front or outside. In all 3 cases the part with the highest cells, what I have termed dominant, was supplied by the at the same time stronger and more peripheral part of the nerve while the opposite part, which I termed subordinate, was supplied by the weaker more central part.

But I realized that this rule of dominance was not only of greatest importance for the understanding of labyrinthine function but also a part of a general rule. The snout is thus more sensitive than the cheek, the finger-ends than the palm, the hand than the arm the arm than the shoulder the belly than the back etc. Often there is an intermediate neutral or blind part interposed between dominant and subordinate parts. In the eye there is the macula caeca, while the peripheral dominant temporal part holds the fovea. The temporal part also shows its superiority in certain transplantation experiments on newts by Stone. In the organ of Corti the roof of the tunnel forms the blind part separating between the inner subordinate with one range of hair cells and the outer dominant part with several ranges of larger cells.

It is the dominance difference which explains the special vulnerability of the base of the cochlea in contradistinction to the apex (treble deafness) and of the internal in contradistinction to the external hair cells, as clearly seen in the streptomycin experiments of Engström and Engström and Kokonen—as also in further intoxication experiments of Engström, Ades and Anderson.

I further drew the conclusion that the well known sensibility differences between the canalicular and the utricular surfaces and the opposite direction of this relation in the horizontal and in the vertical crests depend on a corresponding difference. This difference is directly visible only in the Myxine and perhaps in the *Acanthias*, as we later will see.

How acceleration, rectilinear or curved acts by an alteration of pressure on a macula, respectively a crest, is illustrated in fig. 3 and 4. Gravity acts as a continuous perpendicularly downwards directed pressure.

The principle of oppositely orientated and reacting parts of static organs seems to be a very old one, as we find it in the otolith organs of the tail-feet of the crustacean myxids (fig. 5) (v. Buddenbrock).

Also the vestibular tonus reactions are pressure reactions. Quix believed this reaction to be due to the pressure of the heavy otoliths on the maculae. I referred it to a diffuse hydrostatic pressure of the endolymph on both maculae and crests. Ewald had thought it caused by a constant vibrating movement of the sensory hairs. As all the vestibular epithelia except the macula lagenae face more or less upwards and backwards, the constant hydrostatic pressure of the endolymph will produce a tonus reaction directed upwards and backwards, counteracting the influence of gravity and the tendency to topple by advancing. This reaction may be increased by injection of pilocarpine salicylate and quinine (Dederding<sup>2,3</sup>), producing an increased endolabyrinthine secretion (fig. 6). The opposite reaction, the loss of tonus,

may be seen by temporary setting the labyrinth out of function by instillation of chloroform oil in the external meatus, unilaterally (fig. 7) or bilaterally (fig. 8).

These observations and considerations were published 1924-1927 (S.H. Mygind 1 2 3-4), not without several admittedly false conclusions. 1927 the experiments of Versteegh disproved the whole system of Magnus and de Kleyn. To my opinion their many very fine experiments in so far have kept their importance, as any acceptable labyrinthine theory must be in accordance with their experimental facts, a proof hitherto disregarded by all other authors.

In the meeting of the collegium in 1948 (S.H. Mygind<sup>4</sup>) I sought to form a consequent synthesis of the then existing knowledge of the vestibular labyrinth and my own ideas, and maintained that the vestibular function depends upon the size dominance, spatial position or fronts and curvature of the epithelium in question. As in the saccular macula as well dominance as curvature are very weak, and as all eye reactions are rotations, vestibular saccular reactions become very difficult to observe. Therefore the old belief that the saccular macula had no static function. I made an alteration from my former view which considered the posterior part of the saccular macula as dominant. Certain experiments showed that the anterior part must be the dominant. Before this, but without my knowledge, Werner<sup>1</sup> had made some very minute histological measurements of the saccular macula, showing the anterior part of the epithelium as slightly but constantly higher than the posterior. Later fine experiments of Jongkees have demonstrated a saccular function, just as theoretically foreseen. The experiments by Magnus and de Kleyn were found in accordance with the new theories. The only fault of the system presented, was, as far as I can see that the pressure stimulation was thought as depending upon piezo-electrical processes. The correspondence with the motor-reactions by monocular prawns (Alverdes) unilabyrinthine vertebrates and cray fishes (Kuhn) and certain motor-correspondances of the feeling of touch were further described and depicted (Mygind<sup>4</sup>).

In a series of lectures on aural medicine (S.H. Mygind<sup>8</sup> 1952) I took up the whole problem again, largely widening the knowledge of the law of dominance by histological material. )

Then came (1953) the next decisive step forward with the discovery of hyaluronic acid in the labyrinth by Vilstrup<sup>1 4</sup> and the following studies by J.A. Christiansen and their co-workers. The hyaluronic acid forms giant molecules, very slender with a length of about 0,5  $\mu$ . When bended they emit electric potentials, which give rise to stimulation. J.A. Christiansen believed the molecules to be sitting on the hearing hairs, but here is hardly room enough. I have therefore (S.H. Mygind<sup>12</sup>) proposed a modification of this theory according to which hyaluronic molecules form bridges over the interval between the hair cells and their appertaining supporting cells in such a way that the molecules become curved by the slightest dislocation between these two forms of cells, resulting into an electric firing of sti-

<sup>\*)</sup> The polarity of the kinocilium in relation to the stereocilia, demonstrated by electronic microscopy by Wernli and his coworkers (Lorwenstein, Osborne and Flock) does not seem to have anything directly to do with dominance, although the two phenomena may follow each other as in the crista, but only partly in the utricle. In the saccule they do not correspond. In the lagena the polarity is reversed from the one neighbouring cell to the other.

mulating outputs. As far as may be judged from the histological material from the lateral organ (Flock and Wersäll) and the vestibular and acoustic epithelia (Engström and others) structure and dimensions do not speak against the theory. Such stimulating dislocations seem to be just of the molecular dimensions required by the calculations of de Vries.<sup>2,3</sup> (See fig. 9)

In the cochlea a dislocation between sensory cell and supporting (Delters') cell is only possible by oppositely contemporaneous influences and therefore only over a restricted area. (For details see S.H. Mygind<sup>11</sup> fig. 15). The same mechanism also hinders a producing of a tonus in the cochlea. v. Bekesy's ingenious experiment of exposing the organ of Corti of a living guinea-pig to various frequencies, while observing the movements produced was found in full correspondance with our hearing theory. In the same paper the fish experiments of v. Holst and co-workers were shown to be only a tautological pseudo-proof. Also the theory of the meritorious Breuer of gliding otooliths, equipped with special furrows, was unveiled as a histological misunderstanding. It was further demonstrated that the cochlear microphonics do not represent the nervous stimulation, but are caused by pure mechanical processes in the organ of Corti and the tectorial membrane spreading widely by low frequencies even over the whole length of the cochlea.

The vestibular tonus reaction with its upward and backward direction, against the influence of gravity and the tendency to topple by advancing, is caused by the hydrostatic endolymphatic pressure acting on the vestibular epithelia, all, except the macula lagense facing more or less upwards and backwards. This is reflected in the differences of the postrotatory vertical nystagmus, the upward deviation or the downward nystagmus being double as strong as the oppositely directed. Some apparent discords in the rotating experiments of Arriano are explained by a nystagmus reaction always being stronger when it coincides with the tonus reaction being syntonic than when it goes against it, being antitonic. The tonus reaction is as already mentioned, clearly demonstrated in the experiments of Dederding.\*)

That a gliding of the otooliths under certain conditions, however is possible, is demonstrated in the X ray experiments of the Vries<sup>1</sup> and of Vilstrup.<sup>3</sup> But an otoolith or a cupola cannot glide without exercising at the same time a pressure on the one and a traction at the opposite part of the neuroepithelium. Particularly the heavy fish otooliths are hampered in their gliding movements by a specially developed system of strong strings (Werner<sup>1</sup>). Such are also met with in the saccular macula of the frog. \*\*)

\*) As the paper is going into print, I quite accidentally discover that Leboeuf<sup>2</sup> already in 1948 observed, in frogs, that such reactions from a certain crest increased and decreased according to the position of the head. When the ampulla was upward, the reactions increased, while they decreased when the ampulla was downward. In the following discussion Holsting suggested wisely that such difference might be due to a hydrostatic reaction.

\*) Investigations of Vilstrup seem, however to show that such strings are artefacts, caused by a shrinkage of the very large gelatinous masses enveloping the otooliths. Ulrich also made very minute stimulation experiments by pressing a hair at different points of these masses. The results are not quite according to expectation, though better than his predecessors Kubo and Maxwell, the gelatinous masses, probably also existing in higher vertebrates in a more limited degree, may perhaps have a retarding influence on the otoolith reactions which at least in certain cases seem to require some time for reaching their maximum.

We should at this place perhaps preliminary remark that an increase of this physiological tonus reaction may be noticed as an everyday observation in normally hearing individuals who when they are lying on their back with their head hanging downwards, as by suction-treatment for sinusitis, very often complain of giddiness and at the same time, behind the spectacles of Bartels, present a distinct spontaneous vertical nystagmus. The downward direction of this proves that it is released as an increased tonus reaction on account of the increased endolymphatic hydrostatic pressure and not as physiological otolith reaction. In the last case namely the course would have been just the opposite. These observations fit with the so-called rocking experiments of Palbe Hansen<sup>2</sup> carried out at the suggestion of Krogh and controlled by him in his laboratory. In these a normal individual, with the head hanging, regularly shows a moderate head bearing with bass deafness just as in our Meniere cases. Observations and experiments thus correspond with our pressure theory. At the same time the intraocular pressure became increased.

The tonus reaction gives of course rise to a continual fire of potentials from crests and maculae (Loewenstein and Sand<sup>1 2</sup> Ledoux, Loewenstein and Roberts).

It is our intention to see how these views, principally based on pressure, dominance, spatial position or front, curvature and size of the individual static epithelia, are able to explain the variations found in a series of vertebrates in accordance with their various ways of living and particularly of locomotion.

The principal material for our investigations has been the work of Retzius. Notwithstanding its more than 80 years of age its value remains untouched, as far as our purpose is concerned. It embraces 91 different vertebrate species. All the illustrations have been done by one man, Retzius himself. In many cases I have found details in them, not mentioned in the text, but which I have been able to verify myself.

My dimensional statements are admittedly approximative. We particularly should like to point out the difficulty in determining the dimensions of the macula utriculi and its otolith. The macula often extends mostly in transverse direction and presents itself seen more or less from the edge, i.e. comparatively too small. The ciphers given in parentheses refer to the relative size of the maculae of the utriculus (u.) sacculus (s.) and lagena (l.).

In the following I have used the old-fashioned order of Retzius (R) as being my main source, and have put informations from other authors in between.

Besides I have personally examined more than 70 vertebrate species histologically many in several specimens from the collections at the Anatomical Institute of Groningen (G), the Embryol. Institute of Lund (L) and the Comparative Anat. Institute of Copenhagen (Cp) and added as extensive literary studies as possible. The total material therefore by far surpasses that of any prior publication on this subject.

### I. Cyclostomata.

The hag-fish (*Myxine*) is generally considered as a degenerated form with only one macula communis and one (vertical) canal with two crests (fig. 10). It should, however be remarked, although not mentioned in the text, that the

lower part of the macula is depicted with a somewhat steeper fall of its lower border showing this part, according to rule, to be dominant with its nerve coming from above. The macula shows typical tendency to divide in two opposite halves. The crests (fig. 11) of the only existing vertical canal show a decided dominance of the side supplied from the peripheral part of the nerve.

Regarding the lamprey (*Petromyzon*) there is a more modern description by de Burlet and Versteegh (fig. 12). According to their scheme the relations of size between the macula sacculi, the macula neglecta, macula lagenae and macula utriculi should be something like 1:2-4-8 a relation not met with in any other vertebrate. As in the embryonal state of higher vertebrates, there is no sharp division between the individual maculae. De Burlet and Versteegh describe how the extensive macula utriculi is situated horizontally while the extremely small macula sacculi and the large macula lagenae have nearly vertical positions. The lamprey has only two (vertical) semicircular canals, embracing two ciliated endolymphatic sacs. In the large ampullae the crests are furnished with a septum cruciatum (fig. 14). The function of the ciliated sacs has been explained by me (Mygind<sup>5</sup>) as presenting a sort of gyroscope mechanism. The constant circulating endolymphatic currents, set up by the cilia in the sacs (fig. 13-14) will, by changing of position in the horizontal plane continue their direction, get free, and as may be seen from fig. 15 be directed out into the ampullae with opposite directions in each of the halves, twisting both cupulae the same way round. My formerly published illustrations have, unfortunately become faulty but the text is alright.

The ostracoderms living for ca. 300 millions of years ago, now found as fossils, particularly at Spitzbergen, and thoroughly examined by Stensioe, were cyclostomes (fig. 16). They had also only two semicircular canals, but no endolymphatic ciliated sacs. They lived buried in the mud with their body and their large heavily armoured head free. A little over the lower border of their head and again on its top they had an organ which will be discussed later (page 13). They had an immoveable parietal eye which probably furnished them with a vertical orientation by the light coming diffusely down through the water. The organ presents a distinct anterior dominance. As the parietal eye is immoveable, without muscles, it cannot have worked together with the ordinary eyes by positional changing and thus cannot have been an organ of sight (Mygind<sup>7</sup>).

## II Fishes, including Plagiostomes (Sharks and Rays).

As water animals all these species have no orientating contact with the ground. The extraordinary demands have resulted into relatively very increased dimensions of their labyrinth. The semicircular canals are particularly developed in the flying-fish (fig. 26). The septum cruciatum of the ampullae of the lamprey has disappeared as being superfluous after the developing of the horizontal semicircular canals. In the dog-fish (*Acanthias*) Vilstrup found a distinct difference between the external crest on the one and the vertical crests on the other hand. In the first the side of the sensory epithelium facing the utricle (fig. 17) is somewhat more curved, perhaps some-

what higher and certainly shorter. In the vertical canals (fig. 18) the opposite relation was found. In my opinion the shorter parts represent the dominant ones.

When we regard the 45 different species of fishes represented by Retzius it is immediately seen that the saccular macula, with exception of the bow-fin (*Amla*, fig. 19) (u. 1 1/2, s. 1, L2) and to this we may add the *Calamoichthys* (u. 1 1/2 s. 3 L5) described by Greve (fig. 30) always is the largest. In the sturgeon (*Acipenser* fig. 20 u. 1, s. 3 L2) the macula sacculi is only somewhat larger than the mac. lagenae.

It is further seen that large maculae sacculi and great speed correspond. Perch (*Perca*, u. 1, s. 20 L1) pike-perch (*Lucioperca Sandra*, u. 1, s. 20 L1) mackerel (*Scomber* u. 2, s. 10 L2) weever (*Trachinus Draco* u. 1, s. 25 L1), goby (*Gobius*, u. 2, s. 30 L1) dragonet (*Callionymos Lyra*) u. 1, s. 12 L2) wolf fish (*Anarrhichas Lupus*, u. 2, s. 20 L1), cod (*Gadus Morrhua*, u. 2, s. 15 L1) lesser fork-beard (*Raniceps Ranina*, u. 2 s. 20 L2) sole (*Solea*, u. 1, s. 20 L2) salmon (fig. 22) (*Salmo* u. 2, s. 10, L2), herring (*Clupea*, u. 1, s. 5 L2) white fish (*Coregonus*, u. 1, s. 8 L1) pike (fig. 23) (*Esox lucius* fig. 23 u. 1, m. 10 L1) eel (*Anguilla vulgaris*, u. 1, s. 10 L1) dog-fish shark (fig. 24) (*Acanthias vulgaris*, u. s. 10 L1).

In all these cases the maculae utriculi and lagenae remain small, the macula sacculi surpassing them 5-20 times in size. One of the most excessive relations is found in a pelagian fast swimmer the garfish (*Belone vulgaris*, u. 1, s. 20, L1). But comparatively considerable size may also be found in some bottom fish, particularly such of rapacious habits and therefore equally fast swimming (*Gobius*, *Anarrhichas*).

Most bottom-fish are, however slowly moving, and have distinctly smaller saccular maculae. Gar-pike (fig. 21), *Lepidosteus* (u. 3 s. 5 L1) mullet (*Mulius barbatus*, u. 1, s. 7 L1) *Pagellus centrodontus* (u. 2, s. 8, s. 8, L2 1/2), John Dory (*Zeus faber*, u. 1 1/2 s. 4 L1) angler (*Lophius piscatorius*, u. 1, s. 9 L1), grey gurnard (*Trigla gurnardus*, u. 1, s. 5 L1) fifteen-spined stickleback (*Gasterosteus Spinachia*, u. 3 s. 5 L1) fig. 25) wrasse (*Labrus mixtus*, u. 3 s. 10, L2), trunkfish (*Ostracion cornutus*, u. 1, s. 3 L1) sea-horse (*Hippocampus*, u. 1 1/2 s. 2 L1/2) needle-fish (*Siphonostoma typhle* u. 1 1/2 s. 2 L1/2). Some root in the mud and feed on worms and other small organisms, as the sturgeon and the bow-fin or mud-fish, or on larger slowly moving prey as molluscs, crabs. In such fish the saccular but not the two other maculae, are reduced.

In the following fish the whole inferior part of the labyrinth with all 3 otolith organs are very much reduced.

In the flying-fish (fig. 26) (*Exocoetus volitans*) all maculae together with their otoliths and nerves are very much reduced, while, as said before, the semicircular canals are particularly large. All this is in strictest accordance with the moving habits of the fish. During the flight over the water the possession of strong otolith righting reflexes would impede the flight by making the large breast-fins brake the projectile-like movement and also by carrying the body back to its normal position in relation to the horizontal plane. In the porcupine-fish (*Tetodon Mappa*) the otolith organs are also very much reduced, particularly those of the sacculus and the lagena (fig. 28). The animal likes to inflate itself with the belly turned upwards and float, swinging up and down on the top of the waves. It has consequently no use for righting reflexes. Only the comparatively large upward facing utricular maculae may furnish it

with a special vertical orientation. In this way therefore it may remind of the air type later to be met with. In the lump sucker (*Cyclopterus Lumpus*) all 3 otolith organs are very much reduced (fig. 27). The fish sits fastened with its suckers immovable to a stone or a piece of floating timber without any use for righting reflexes.

The mac. utriculi and lagenae are in most fishes of the same size. A difference is, however found in favour of the utricular macula in the following species: *Lepidosteus* (fig. 21), *Gobius*, *Callionymus*, *Anarrhichias*, *Gasterosteus*, *Labrus*, *Tetradon* *Siphonostoma* (needle-fish), *Hippocampus* (sea-horse) *Anguilla* (eel)

In several of these cases the preponderance of the upwards facing utricular macula does not seem to be accidental. The saucient *Lepidosteus* has often to seek upwards for its air respiration. The utricular tonus reaction will favour this ascending movement. The same is perhaps the case in the eel, where it may help the fish to cross by land to another water and it is remarkable that the only 3 nest-builders in the material belong to this group (*Gobius*, *Gasterosteus*, *Labrus*). The explanation may be that the complicated positions and movements required in their special work embracing i.e. side-positions and vertical changes, are favoured by the comparatively large utricular maculae. The utricular predominance in the *Tetradon* has been discussed above. In the *Siphonostoma* and the *Hippocampus* the comparatively large utricular maculae correspond to the vertical horse-like carriage of these fishes. No explanation for the dimensional difference between the two minor maculae is to be found in *Anarrhichias* nor in the *Callionymus*.

The maculae lagenae are on the other hand larger than the maculae utriculi in *Acipenser*, *Amia*, *Calamoichthys*, *Plagellus*, *Solea* and *Clupea*. The difference is, however only pronounced in the first three species, where as said above the macula lagenae reaches or even surpasses the macula sacculi in size. All these fishes rood at the bottom or live in muddy water. In the *Amia* also the maculae utriculi are comparatively large, probably because this, also saucient fish is an air-breather.

For the small difference mentioned in the *Plagellus* and in the *Clupea* I found no explanation. For the *Solea* it might be suggested that it lives buried in the bottom, watching for prey. But other flat fish as the rays, using the same trick, show as we later shall see, rather a preponderance of the utricular maculae.

The ostariophysarian fishes as sheat fish (fig. 29) and carps have a connection (The Weberian ossicles) between their swimming bladder and their labyrinth. And the forepart of the macula sacculi is transformed into a hearing epithelium (de Burlet<sup>1</sup>), a device that was unknown to Retzius, (just as the probable hearing capacity in the herring of a part of the maculae utriculi (Tracy). But what, however can be seen is that only about one half of the macula sacculi is left as static epithelium. And the whole saccular macula is only of about the same length as the utricular or the lagenar maculae, while at the same time its vertical dimension is considerably lower. The usual very conspicuous superiority of this macula has thus changed to a distinct inferiority reducing its static part to about 1/4 of each of the other two maculae, which are of about equal size.

Yone Z. Nakagawa has by altering the air pressure in an airtight aquarium exposed ostariophysarian fishes to an increased air pressure which immediately made them ascend while a decreasing pressure made them seek the bottom and at the

same time spit air. This is in due accordance with our tonus theory. But leaches and cat-fish did not react or showed inverse reaction. Such fishes are bottom dwellers (unknown tonus regulating reflexes?).

The considerable size of the utricular and lagenar maculae in all these fishes is obviously caused by the change of function in the anterior half of the saccular macula. The greater part of its static activity must have been transferred to the two other otolith organs. There is, as said above, no principal difference in the perception nor in the reactions of the different otolith organs. It only depends on their front, curvature, dominance and size. It is therefore easy to explain, how the vertical outwards and somewhat forwards and backwards looking parts of the lagenar macula necessary will react on rectilinear horizontal accelerations and in this way substitute the usual function of the macula sacculi. The reduced (partial) vertical function of the macula sacculi is probably taken over by the enlarged macula utriculi.

Particularly in the *Malapterurus* (fig. 32) the electric eel-fish, also an osteophysarian, the utricular and the lagenar maculae are of a quite extraordinary size for a fish. It should be noted that there are several other electric fishes belonging to this group.

It was originally my idea that the macula lagenae had something with digging and bottom seeking habits to do, as we in higher vertebrate species with such way of living have a more or less downward facing macula lagenae. In the 5 osseous fishes: *Esox*, *Perca*, *Gadus*, *Cottus* (sea-scorpion) and *Scardinius* the macula is formed as a flat cup situated on the inner wall of the lagena, facing outwards and sometimes also more or less forwards or backwards or with its upper border even somewhat downwards. The otolith is hanging at the side of its macula (Werner<sup>1</sup>).

This shows us that the macula lagenae should be expected principally to react to horizontal rectilinear accelerations, coming transversely. This means that its function should be very much like that of the macula sacculi from which it has developed.

Neither in the plagiostomes we find any indications for the lagena having anything to do with a downwards directed tonus or with a special disposition for digging habits, as the macula lagenae in most, but not all species is rather poorly developed, also in the rays with their typical digging habits. According to Vilstrup<sup>3</sup> the maculae faces outwards in sharks, but upwards in rays. This is in accordance with the directions to be expected of mechanical vibrations from the surroundings.

A more intimate study in the plagiostomes, based mainly on the work of Reizis and the also very solid work of Werner<sup>2</sup> (1950) give some important informations on facts observed, but not understood before, relating to the vestibular anatomy and the way of living of these animals.

The sharks rush at their prey and catch it with their sharp teeth. In this manoeuvre they make use of a sudden arresting, producing, as in all vertebrates, a pressure of the otolith on the dominant anterior border of the maculae utriculi. Vilstrup<sup>2</sup> has a histological picture of this utricular dominance in the *Acanthias*, corresponding to the findings in *Calamoichthys* by Greve (fig. 31). It is, according to the direction of the nerve, always particularly well developed in sharks, as in the sea-cat (*Scylium canicula*, fig. 33) and the angel-fish (*Squatina Angelus*, fig. 34) and further in the *Pristurus melanostomus* and perhaps also in the *Galeus caninus* (Werner<sup>2</sup>). To this may be added the *Pristiophorus japonicus* (Ischstätter<sup>1</sup>). This special possibility of



in lagoon in lung-fishes is difficult to understand. Is it to avoid vibrational disturbances from the exterior that might disturb the encapsulated sleeping fish with its extremely reduced metabolism?

On the other hand we have, as said, met three fishes with remarkably small maculae sacculi and large maculae lagenae, the maculae utriculi being of the usual small size in fishes. In *Amlia* (fig. 19) and *Calamiochthys* the macula lagenae is very large, larger than the macula sacculi. In the *Calamiochthys* the histological reconstruction by Greve (fig. 30) shows a practically vertically standing outward facing positions of both these maculae. The sturgeon (fig. 20) roots, as said, the muddy bottom for small organisms. The *Amlia* is also called the mud-fish and the *Calamiochthys* lives in muddy rivers. One cannot help contemplating whether a reduced possibility for sight has been compensated for by a development of sensitivity for mechanical vibrations, just as the same deficiency in muddy waters have been made good for in other fishes by electrical communication (Lissmann). Such vibrations will principally progress horizontally.

The macula lagenae has developed from the macula sacculi with which it in the early stages often is seen to coalesce or not to be recognized as independent organ. In its position it often seems to follow the macula sacculi. The circumstance however that it, on a whole, does not follow the dimensional variations of the macula sacculi, neither when this is particularly large or small, even surpassing sometimes the macula sacculi in size, corroborates the suspicion of a quite special function belonging to this organ.

When I in 1926 founded the rule of dominance I believed the posterior part of the saccular macula to be the dominant, apparently being the most peripheral. Some years later I met Werner in Hamburg. He was very sceptical and doubted the possibility of histologically verifying real differences in height of the epithelia. Afterwards, in order to explain certain experimental facts, I as above said recognized that it was the anterior outer and in this way more peripheral part of the saccular macula, that must be the dominant (1948 Mygind<sup>2</sup>). In the meantime Werner<sup>1</sup> had made investigations with some very careful measurements, which (before me) proved the correctness of the final rule: measurements which only recently have come to my knowledge. In the macula sacculi the anterior part was found a few my higher than the posterior part: reaching in the scorpion-fish (*Cottus scorpio*) to 39 my against 36 my. In the mac. utriculi the difference between the dominant anterior and lateral part (Rampa) and the subordinate central inner and posterior part (Cotillus) was always much greater: reaching first, in the tench (*Tinca*) from 60 my to 15 my. Such differences of height Werner never observed in the lagenar macula.

Werner strange to say gives no information of the dominance relation in his extensive work on the plagiostomes. In an embryo of a dog-fish (fig. 41) I found, as expected, the lower part of the saccular macula dominant. Vilstrup<sup>3</sup> found the anterior and exterior part of the mac. utriculi in the *Acanthias*, as said, as the highest as is seen, but not described in the photos of Greve of *Calamiochthys* (fig. 31).

Werner<sup>1</sup> has further given a very thorough description of the otoliths, the otolith membranes and the maculae in osseous fish. As a rule a part, often a considerable part of the macula is found perfectly naked without any connection with its membrane nor with its otolith. Vilstrup<sup>3</sup> basing himself on his histological expe-

rience in *Acanthias*, thinks however that also in osseous fishes, such areas have been covered by gelatinous and fibrous tissues, later destroyed by the preparation.

In all the osseous fishes, treated by Werner<sup>1</sup> he found the comparatively enormous bony otoliths riding with their relatively small central part and resting on their maculae with the otolith membrane interposed. This may take a shape more or less reminding of that of a semicircular canal cupola with a striated, tubular structure, as seen in the lagena of the cod-fish (fig. 42). Maybe there is even a central space filled with endolymph (?) between the otolith and its macula. The otoliths have enormous *swings* the weight of which will make the otoliths with a lever effect tip over around their central connection with their macula, exposing this to a strong pressure on its lower and to a strong traction on its upper part. Very strong fibers arising from the marginal epithelium of the maculae and sometimes also more peripherically fasten the otoliths and counteract a gliding, but not a tipping over. The whole arrangement is distinctly more pronounced in the principally vertically standing saccular and lagenar maculae than in the principally horizontally situated utricular macula (fig. 43). As far as I can see, the result must be the acquisition of a greatly increased power to resist a capsizing, a reaction otherwise principally depending on the macula utriculi. This is, however in fishes, as in most water animals, only small. And perhaps there may even result a faculty of reacting to curved accelerations.

The plagiostomes, the lung-fishes and other ancient forms of fishes have no otoliths, but a rough powder of otoconia embedded in their otolith membranes. The plagiostomes have also particles of sand, brought in via their open endolymphatic duct. Here the above arrangements are of course absent. The risk of capsizing of the osseous fishes, generally having comparatively small transverse and large vertical dimensions, becomes of course negligible in the flat rays. But also the sharks have rather broad bodies. The risk is further counteracted by the often excessive development of their dorsal fin. In lung-fishes a capsizing is counteracted by the size of their large utricular maculae.

And here we may add some remarks prior to as well the real fishes as the plagiostomes. The *Myxine* lives dug down into the bottom. Neither its worm-like living here, nor its crawling around in dead fishes, feeding on their entrails, make a special body position necessary. Neither does its vestibular organs indicate any features of a special static orientation. In the *Petromyzon* we meet the only water vertebrate with on the one side a quite minimal macula sacculi and on the other side and overwhelmingly large macula utriculi. The macula lagena is also extraordinarily large, only surpassed by the macula utriculi. It is, as said, vertically standing and outward facing and may have taken over from the macula sacculi the function of reacting to horizontal transverse accelerations, as suggested in the ostanophysarians. Such movements may perhaps come into play when the host tries to free itself from its parasite. The very reduced size of the saccular macula, seems to suggest a very poor swimmer. The dimension and the position of the lagenar macula might also indicate a sensibility for mechanical vibrations, in certain situations presumable the only influence from the outside able to reach the animal. As to the for a water animal extraordinarily large macula utriculi, it may be, that the absence of the horizontal canals with their crests facing upwards and somewhat backwards may cause a corresponding lack

in the usual upward-backward directed tonus reaction demanding a compensation from the utricular macula. A strong upward directed motor tonus may perhaps also be of importance for the animal in seeking for its prey and advancing in its interior.

Regarding all the fish-like species as whole we will see that they with a few exceptions, with their comparatively large saccular and small utricular maculae answer to the type of water animals, which we earlier have set up founding on our principles of pressure and dominance. The mainly outward and backward facing, nearly vertically standing and downwards always dominant macula sacculi has a size and a facing corresponding to the horizontal, transverse as well as longitudinal, rectilinear accelerations to which the animal is mainly exposed from the surrounding water. The influence of gravity is counterbalanced by the buoyancy force of the water. The macula utriculi is therefore only small. Neither is there in fish-like animals the tendency to topple over by arresting of a forward movement. The outer part of this macula is, as in all vertebrates, always dominant.

### III Amphibia.

All amphibians are particularly when compared to the following group rather stiff-necked according to their possession of two-nape knots. The cristae of their semicircular canals are smooth without any septum cruciatum just as in the stiff necked fishes. The macula sacculi is always dominant in its lower part.

#### A. Urodelea.

This first group is by Retzius represented by 10 species. *Proteus anguinus* (u.l. s.4 l. 1 1/2, small gills), *Siren lacertinus* (u.l. s.4 l. 2, all rather small, no hind legs), *Menobranchius maculatus* (u.l. 3.5 l.l, gills), *Amphiuma means* (u. l. s.5 l.l, gills), axolotl (*Siredon mexicanus*, u.l. s.4 l.3 all very small) crested newt (*Triton cristatus*, u.l. s.2 l. 1 1/2 all rather small), (fig. 44), *Pleurodeles Walthi* (u.l. s.3 l.l. all rather small), hellbender (*Menopoma alleghen*, u.l. s.20 l.l), spotted newt (*Salamandra maculosa*, u.l. s.1 1/2), *Cercilia annulata* (u.l. s.1, l.l, wormlike, without legs).

They all show relations very much resembling those of the fishes, especially the slow moving forms of these. Only in one, the salamander like, gill-less *Menopoma* an overwhelming development of the saccular maculae is found with at the same time only small utricular and lagenar maculae. In the other forms the saccular predominance, though existing, is, comparatively limited. The utricular and lagenar maculae are about of the same size. In none of the species represented the macula lagenae reaches quite the macula sacculi in size.

All urodeles have low and slender legs. Their toes are without claws nor swimming webs. Legs may even be wanting. In the water they swim adroitly as fishes by means of their tail. On the ground they move clumsily. They do not dig, but may hide themselves in crevices, between leaves etc.

In prepares of a newt (*Triton vulg.*) which I have had opportunity to examine (Cph.) I found the same distinct dominance of the utricular macula as in other verte-

brates and the same position and lower dominance of the macula sacculi as met with in fishes and sharks. The macula lagenae faces outwards and also distinctly upwards (also seen in illustrations of Harrison). The same I found in a preparate of *Ichthyophis* (L.). Mechanical vibrations in the shallow water will hit horizontally and probably often somewhat obliquely from the entouring brinks above.

## II Anura.

The limbs are here much stronger particularly the hind-legs, which have developed into saltatory legs. They are often furnished with swimming web, but have no claws. Most anures are able to dive and dig. 5 species are represented by Retzius: Common toad (fig. 45) *Bufo vulgaris* (u.1 s.2, L.4) Tree-frog (*Hyla arborea* with sucking discs on its toes, u.2, s.3 1/2 L.1), Midwife-toad, (*Alytes obstetricans*, u.3 s.4 L.1), Spate-footed toad (*Pelobates fuscus*, u.1 s.3 L.3), Common water-frog (fig. 46), (*Rana esculenta*, u.1 s.3 L.2).

That the special »fish-macula« the macula sacculi, is only of half the size in the common toad as in the water frog, may hardly be accidental, the first one being principally a land the other a water animal. The large saccular otolith consisting of chalky masses is fixed by a membrane with marginal fibres (shrinkage of gelatinous masses?).

In the *Pipa americana* (fig. 47) the maculae lagenae are seen leaning outwards and downwards about 20° from the vertical (L). The same position is seen in casual or partial illustrations by Weston and by de Burlet<sup>1</sup>. The downward facing position of the lagenar macula fits, according to our theory with a downward directed motor reaction, showing itself by the digging and diving habits of the anura. The possibility of a sensivity to mechanical vibrations coming from the side and from below may however also be taken into consideration. We all know how apt the frogs are to jump into the water how cautiously and well covered we are nearing ourselves their bank.

McNally and Mac Naughton have cut the lagenar nerve on the one side in a frog. This resulted in the animal lifting the operated side upwards, i.e. in full correspondance to the anatomical findings and our theory of a hydrostatic pressure stimulation of the vestibular labyrinth. That experimental destruction of the lagena in fishes has on the other hand been without result (Werner v Frisch and Stetter, Loewenstein) cannot wonder McNally and Mac Naughton on the other hand found that a frog bereft its utricular and saccular maculae, but still possessing its lagenar maculae intact had still its righting reflex preserved.

The macula neglecta will be treated in a following separate publication.

## IV Reptiles.

All reptiles have only one nape-knot. This allows an extreme mobility of their neck. They are consequently particularly exposed to curved accelerations. This is

probably the reason for their having a septum cruciatum in each of their vertical ampullae, just as before met with in the lamprey. All reptiles have claws, they grip and cling more or less to the ground. Most of them dig.

#### A. Tortoises.

4 species are represented by Retzius: europ. pond-tortoise (*Emys lutaria*, u.l. a.5 1.2) river-tortoise, (*Trionyx subplanus*, u.l. a.5 1.2) sea-tortoise (*Chelodina*, u.l. a.5 1.2) alligator tortoise (*Chelydra serpentina*, fig. 48 u.l. a.4 1.2). The macula lagenae has thus the double size of the mac. utriculi and nearly half the size of the mac. sacculi. In the *Chelydra* the *Chelodina* and the *Trionyx* Retzius expressly describes the cochlea with the lagena as inwards directed. As the macula always expands particularly medially this means that it is facing downwards with its main part.

All tortoises dig. In the land-tortoises all toes are united forming a club-foot. The other tortoises have their toes separated and furnished with very strong claws. Most tortoises swim.

Their small maculae utriculi and large maculae sacculi indicate them still as water animals, only the increasing size of the maculae lagenae makes a difference. In the *Testudo graeca* I found a modest size of the maculae utriculi with pronounced dominance of the outer part (Cph). In 3 different preparations (L.) of the *Chelydra* I found the usual inferior dominance of the macula sacculi, the lower part of which is sloping more outwards than the nearly vertical main part. This is at the same time somewhat increasing gradually in epithelial height upwards, leaving a neutral part between it and the lower distinctly dominant part. There seems also to be an indication of such neutral part in forward-backward direction, the anterior part being as usually the dominant. A corresponding differentiation I did not remark in the *Emys* or in the *Chelodina*. In the *Testudo graeca* (Cph) I have recently sought it in vain. The *Chelydra* has a relatively small carapace and is very mobile. In the picture of Retzius the distribution of the saccular nerve shows a corresponding difference between the *Chelydra* on the one side and *Emys*, *Trionyx* and *Chelodina* on the other side.

The lagena forms a sac narrow from side to side with its upper border sloping downwards and forwards (Miller). The macula is situated at the top expanding more or less on both sides (fig. 55 D). The type is more or less repeated also in the following reptiles. As a whole the macula is downward facing.

#### B. Serpents.

Only 5 are represented by Retzius: horned viper (*Vipera Rhinoceros*, u.l. 1/2, a.2 1.4) rattle-snake (*Crotalus horridus*, u.l. a.1 1.3), Python Zebrae (u.l. a.3 1.4), *Zamanis hippocrepis*, (u.l. a.1 1.4) *Coelopeltus Lacerta* (u.l. a.1 1.5).

In all these the macula lagenae has become the dominating otolith organ. If we conceive the lagenar function as consisting in an incentive to a downward moving, it will be seen that this is exactly what the serpents are needing in order to advance, pressing their abdominal scales against the ground. In the *Vipera* (fig. 49), the *Crota-*

lus and the Zamenis the somewhat reduced saccular nerve still runs distinctly downwards as in all vertebrates hitherto described. In the Phylon (fig. 50), however nearly one half of the fibres run upwards, a trend which we will find developing further in the following group where it will be explained. The macula utriculi is always of modest size.

And here we find the position of the macula lagenae which we have sought for. In the Vipera no special description is given. But in all the other four cases it is expressly described by Retzius how the lagena is directed not only downwards, but with its lower part also inwards, i.e. the macula must be principally downwards facing.

Miller describes the serpent lagenae (in *Pitheophis catenifer*) as having ordinary reptile shape with the mac. lagenae lining the anterior border and the inner side.

### C. Saurians.

12 species are represented by Retzius: *Phrynosoma cornuta* (u.1, s.1, L5), *Chamaeleon* (*Chamaeleo vulgaris*, u.1, s.1, L5) glass-snake (*Pseudopus pallasi*, u.1, s.2, L4), slow-worm (*Anguis fragilis*, u.2 s.1, L2 1/2 3), *Iguana tuberculata* (u.2 s.1 1/2, L4), gecko (*Platydictylus*, u.1, s.1, L4) green lizard (*Lacerta viridis*, u.2, s.1, L4) eyed lizard (*Lacerta ocellata*, u.7 s.1, L4) monitor (*Psammisaurus casp.*, u.7 s.1, L4) (*Plestiodon Aldrovendi*, u.1, s.1, L3), skink (*Egernia Cunninghami*, u.7 s.2 L3), *Sphenodon Hatteria punctata*, u.7 s.1, L3

In the *Anguis fragilis*, the slow worm all 3 maculae are (fig. 52) of equal size but in all the other species represented the macula lagenae is by far the largest, surpassing the macula sacculi in many cases by 4 to 5 times (*Chamaeleo* (fig. 51), *Platydictylus*, *Lacerta* (fig. 54)). All the saurians cling more or less to the ground, hooking on to it with their well developed slender grasping claws; many dig and hide in holes. The specially developed prehensile feet of the *Chamaeleo* are better adapted for clinging to a branch than to make a real walk along it. The same is the case in the *Iguana*.

In the saurians a very interesting development takes place. In real water vertebrates a sideward push will only tend to dislocate the animal towards the side. First when supporting legs develop a possibility for tipping round over the legs in this situation begins to start. But as long as the limbs are principally tools of support, with the feet directed more outwards than forwards, the risk is minimal. When the limbs, however become principally tools of walk and therefore longer and not so much as before directed outwards, but forwards, the equilibrium situation alters radically and the animal comes in danger of tipping over its feet. This altered situation is reflected in the vestibular structure. In all vertebrates below the saurians the saccular nerve is directed outwards and downwards. The lower part of the macula consequently always in dominant as histologically demonstrable as mentioned before and f. inst. visible in the *Protopterus* (lung-fish), fig. 39. The same I found in the Triton and in the tortoises.

In the real saurians (except in the slow-worm) the saccular nerve points always upwards. The upper part of the epithelium thus becomes the dominant. By this

change of dominance a sideward push will no longer elicit a straight oppositely directed motor reaction, but, owing to the upper dominance, an upward curved reaction, against the push, counteracting the tendency to tip round over the feet.

This changed upward direction of the saccular nerve is seen in all saurians represented, except, as said in the slow-worm, that moves like a serpent. In its near relative the glass-snake however the upward directed change of the saccular nerve has already taken place. The size of the macula is in all saurians only modest.

On the other hand, in the Python from the former group a good part, nearly  $1/2$  of the saccular nerve has already become directed upwards, probably because this serpent is living in trees, where the demand for equilibrium are otherwise than in the terrestrial forms (fig. 50).

The lagena in the saurians is of the type already described in the lower reptiles (fig. 55 C). Its sac form with a generally downwards sloping anterior border is clearly seen in the 18 different species depicted by Miller in drawings and stereophotos too small to be reproduced. Of the *Crotaphytus wislizeni*, a lizard species, there is, however a picture sufficiently large for reproduction (fig. 53) giving a general impression of the saurian lagena. In the *Diploglossus lessonae* a near relative of the slow-worm, and as this probably limb-less, the mac. lagena is according to the picture and the description mainly limited to the downward facing inside of the lagena just as in the serpents. The macula is in the other cases generally described as sitting at the top and expanding particularly at the medial side. As it is seen through the non-opened wall and as the otoconia have been dissolved by injection of a vinegar solution, the expanding of the macula and its nerved is rather indistinct. The transverse diameter being much smaller than the longitudinal and vertical, the organ, consequently on frontal sections presents itself as a tube or tunnel, broadening somewhat downwards. And if the section has hit only a little too far posteriorly the top of the macula will not be seen, but only the part of the macula expanding on the medial and the lateral side. This is the case in prepares of the Iguana (G.) (fig. 55 C). In a horizontal section of the *Lacerta* (fig. 59) the macula in its upper part is seen forming a ring, open only at its medial side, where it leaves room for the downwards increasing organ. At the bottom the lagena is always nude, except in the gecko, where it is covered by the macula, as seen in fig. 55A, a section made from the collection of Groningen, probably the same prepare as depicted by Weston<sup>2</sup> (fig. 7) only the very lowest part of the photo has here been cut off. This very important state has not been mentioned in the text. The same photo is apparently the same, somewhat indistinctly reproduced, met with in the text-book of de Burlet. It has also escaped the notice of Hamilton and also of Miller but is not in contradistinction with his rather indistinct pictures nor with his description. This fact is of the greatest importance.

The constant endolymphatic hydrostatic pressure on the upward facing macula at the bottom will, namely according to our theory produce an upwards directed motor tendency of the gecko. This upwards directed tonus reaction from the lagena, as well as from the other sensory epithelia of the labyrinth is in certain positions probably reinforced from the large endolymphatic sac (Hamilton) lying at the side of the neck with prolongations between the muscles here (Wiedersheim). The increased pressure from here comes into play when the head comes downward, a fre-

quent situation for these animals. This may also happen when the muscles of the neck become contracted. A help in hearing, as suggested, cannot be excluded.

The *Sphenodon* (fig. 56) has a lagena which according to Miller and to my photos from Groningen, seems to be of the same type as in most saurians. The *Sphenodon* or *Hatteria*, which is only mentioned in this place to keep the order of Retzius, is in reality a more primitive reptile than the saurians, being the only living species of an extinct independent reptile order the Rhynchocephalians. That it has left the water is seen from the rather considerable size of the macula utriculi (fig. 56) with distinct relations of dominance. The macula sacculi is very large but the sensory epithelium is reduced to two rather small upper and lower parts of equal height and extension, separated by a very broad perfectly blind part (fig. 57). As the nerve is running outwards and downwards, the lower part must be regarded as representing the dominant. In the front the two separated parts seem to coalesce. The type is perhaps a further development of that described above in the *Chelydra*.

#### D Crocodiles.

Only one species, the *Alligator mississippiensis*, is represented by Retzius (fig. 60) as also between my own histological observations (fig. 55 B). The saccular as well as the utricular macula are of moderate and fairly equal size. The saccular macula is seen with an upper dominance corresponding to the upward direction of the nerve with an indication of an intermediate neutral part. The lagena is situated at the lower end of the cochlea. It forms a rather long tube directed downwards and forwards, opening a little at the lower end. The inner is covered by its macula nearly the whole way round except at the bottom and a part of its outer side. The macula lagenae spreads somewhat more on the forward than on the backward part as found on a histological preparation, horizontally cut, (L.), probably a general feature in this organ. Dubious interdentations may represent the individual toes (?).

#### V Birds.

The birds, near relatives of the reptiles, have also one nape-knot, and consequently a great mobility of their neck. Their very large semicircular canals have a strongly developed septum cruciatum on their vertical crests.

■ species are represented by Retzius: goose (*Anser domest.*) (fig. 61) goose-ender (*Mergus Merganser*), pewit (*Vanellus crist.*), snipe (*Scolopax rusticola*) hen (*Gallus domesticus*) thrush (*Turdus musicus*), sea-eagle (*Haliaeetus albicans*), all very uniform, as are the birds as a whole. A likewise very uniform series is described by Satoh (pigeon, parrot, starling, hen and duck).

The relation between the enormous flat horizontal macula utriculi already mentioned (fig. 62) and the very small, vertically standing saccular macula is very important for the general conception of the way of acting of the maculae, and further also for that of the crests and the organ of Corti. In the air most progressive



rectilinear movements are vertical, including the constant vertical influence of gravity. Horizontal alterations are on the other hand negligible. If as generally postulated the stimulation were produced by gliding and not pressure the maculae utriculi and the maculae sacculi ought to have interchanged as well as to size as to position, i.e. the general accepted conception is impossible. It is interesting to note that in an embryo penguin (L.) a bird who cannot fly but only walk and swim, I found the saccular macula, in birds ordinarily measuring a few percents of the size of the macula utriculi, being here about  $2/3$ . The semicircular canals were still well developed (diving?).

The lagena forms a long, downwards pointing tube. In a prepare by Satoh (fig. 64) the upper part exactly as in the lizard (fig. 59) is lined by the macula the whole way round except at the outer side. Further down this horse-shoe form of the sections opens more and more. But at last again the bottom is perfectly covered (fig. 63 65 66) just as we have seen in the gecko. Werner<sup>5</sup> (1940) is the only author putting stress of the unique upward facing of the bottom of the macula lagena. But he does not draw any physiological conclusion from this important fact. The ordinary form of this macula is reflected in its otolith (fig. 65). Has the narrowness of the bottom in the ostrich (fig. 66) anything to do with the disability in these animals to flight and with the strong development of their feet (running, swimming)? It would perhaps be interesting to compare the development of the macula lagena with the use of flight and of feet and toes in various birds. In the pictures of Satoh the characteristic dominance of the two other maculae is easily seen, though not noted in the text.

The pictures given by Retzius are not incompatible with this conception, but on the other hand not proving of the real relations, and the text is silent. De Burlet<sup>1</sup> gives a false picture of the lagena of the pigeon presenting it with a nude bottom. In the figure of Satoh it can be seen that the expanding of the macula is such that with an oblique direction and by not continuing the sections quite down to the bottom of the prepare it is possible to depict this as nude.

Benjamins and Huizinga found no influence on the flight of pigeons after extirpations of the lagena on one or both sides. The same experience was already made by Thornval.

In the birds the tegmentum vasculosum has undergone an enormous development. Identical formations, only on a smaller scale are also seen in the sacculus and in the utriculus underlining the necessity of an immediate regulation of the endolymphatic pressure in changing heights. The same formation is also seen in the lagena (Satoh).

## VI Mammals

### A. Monotremata

In the spiny ant-eater (*Echidna aculeata*) the mac. utriculi and mac. sacculi are of about the same size with very distinct difference of dominant, intermediate and subordinate parts (fig. 67).

The large lagena (fig. 68) forms a sack lying behind, to the inside and a little below the cochlea. The macula forms a rather broad circular ribbon, lining the middle of the interior facing more or less downwards nearly the whole way round. At the whole way round. At the lateral side the ribbon is, so to say cut and the two ends turned upwards into two hollow tops. The lagena of the *Echidna* is thus rather different from that of the birds. But in both cases, as also in the reptiles, the macula is more or less regularly or completely facing concentrically towards the downward pointing axis of the funnel or sac of the lagena, widening more or less downward (G).

### The function of the Lagena.

We have already discussed this problem as far as the fishes and the amphibians are concerned. According to the anatomy and to our principles the macula lagena, as constituting a part of a sphere, should react more or less to all rectilinear horizontal transverse as longitudinal accelerations. The hydrostatic endolymphatic continual pressure should release centripetal, rather horizontal motor reactions, combined by a more or less distinct downwards component, except in the gecko and in the birds. The tube-form of the lagena is most pronounced in the saurians, the crocodiles and particularly in the birds. It is, as already hinted at, wanting in the limb-less serpents and also according to Miller in the *Diploglossus lemniae* a relative of the limb-less slow-worm. This points to the sidewalls of the tube-formed lagena as representing the legs and probably particularly the toes.

Nearly all frogs and reptiles dig. They cling to the ground, the reptiles haking themselves firmly to their substrate by their strong, spread claws. The same is the case with the *Echidna*, who is an eminent digger with very strong digging feet and claws which enable it to disappear into the ground at a moments notice. Also its relative the duck-bill (*Ornithorhynchus*), digs with feet especially adapted and also furnished with swimming web.

And now the birds, only very few dig. But they use their separated slender but strong toes and claws. (About 1 1/2 million years ago their ancestor the *Ornithorhynchus*, had claws also on its forelimbs). Also modern birds need, however the clutching of their toes and claws for holding their prey for swimming, for scratching in the ground for food, or for balancing on a wavering branch, even during sleep. The movements needed for such manoeuvres of the toes are all concentric, centripetal. In birds it should be noted that the alternating rhythmic moving of right fore-leg and left hindleg and vice versa (strottings) has been broken, and therefore also the influence of the lagena upon flight. Notwithstanding the different appearance the anatomical-physiological principles are the same in reptiles, birds and monotremata. The frog lagena is the first suggestion of the structure and function here described.

But why has it later disappeared? Perhaps because a certain type of extremities went out of fashion during the further evolution, a type with long slender toes, furnished with strong claws, rather spread from each other bending and stretching concentrically and relatively independently of the rest of the extremity. One therefore

cannot but think over whether the macula lagense already had disappeared in the extinct, huge, walking reptiles with their high legs and short and clumsy feet of support?

## B Higher Mammals.

All mammals, also the monotremata, have two nape-knots. They therefore, have not the same mobility of their neck as the reptiles and the birds. They have also no septum cruciatum on their vertical crests. On the other hand probably in connection with the more horizontal way of moving, they have a planum semilunatum at both ends, also of the lateral crest.

The dominance of the maculae is only faintly visible in most mammals, as in the guinea-pig and the Lemmus (L.). In the conny (*Procyon*) the macula utriculi, however, shows a distinct anterior dominant middle neutral, and posterior subordinate part (fig. 70). Its macula sacculi shows in horizontal section (fig. 71) a distinct anterior somewhat curved, dominant part in contradistinction to a posterior subordinate part. The interesting is that we here as also in other cases (man swine (R)) and in the crests in the shark find that the dominant part may be the shorter. The increased curvature, however, seems to give a higher selecting sensitivity as to determining the direction of the impact.

This anterior part of the saccular macula - the saccular corner of Magnus and de Meijn furnished by its own nerve (the nerve of Oort) is often clearly separated from the rest as seen in swine and man (Retzius). In all mammals the saccular nerve branches are seen directed from below upwards, indicating the upper part as dominant. It should perhaps be noticed that already in 1951 Lorente de No has been on the way of discovering the rule of dominance, describing how in the mouse the nerve fibers in the macula utriculi were more strongly developed in the anterior and external zones, where also the otolith crystals were larger than in the external and posterior zones. In the middle the nerve fibres were smaller than elsewhere and the crystals were smaller and scanty. A difference in size of the otoconia according to dominance is, by the way, a widely spread histological finding which, quite incomprehensively has escaped general notice.

As the most typical terrestrial of all vertebrates, equally exposed to accelerations in all three spatial dimensions, the size of the two maculae is of fairly even size (ground types). As in all other vertebrates the water species have comparatively large labyrinths, being without guiding orientation from touching the ground. The sea-lion has a larger labyrinth than has a camel (Gray). In the whales (fig. 71) the semicircular canals have become greatly reduced on account of the stiffness of their neck exposing them only very little to curved accelerations. The same but in lesser degree is seen in the Dugong who also is rather stiff-necked. The sea-lion has a very wide cochlear aqueduct (fig. 72). Perhaps it makes the surrounding water pressure if it becomes too large, act on the labyrinth via the intracranial and intraspinal fluid system and by increasing the intralabyrinthine pressure and thereby the tonus, forces the animal upwards again. The opposite condition is found in the monkeys and in man where the well-known narrowness of the cochlear aqueduct hinders the

frequently strongly changing body positions with varying intracranial pressure from influencing the labyrinthine function.

Already Retzius (fig. 73) did observe that the cat, an animal of excellent dexterity has a stripe devoid of sensory epithelium across its vertical crests. And in the bats where the semicircular canals are enormous, with crestal epithelia by far exceeding their maculae, Iwata found the vertical crests with rather high transverse ridges devoid of sensory epithelium and with cupulae tending to divide into two halves (fig. 74)

As far as may be seen from his illustrations the two maculae are fairly equal in size. This would mean that circular accelerations should be of greater importance for their flight than straight vertical ones as in the birds. I found, by the way in a young animal (L) the acoustic nerve of the double size of the vestibular in correspondence with their very sharp hearing, guiding them with echo signals. The vertical crestal ridges, which according to de Burlet<sup>1</sup> also may be encountered in marsupials and insectivores seem to speak here as in the snuropsides, against the existence of a special subcupular space. In the experiments of Jerling in which by instillation of shlo-roform in the external meatus or injection of croton oil into the middle-ear an edematization was produced in every potential fluid space of the labyrinth, a subcupular space also was never seen.

The question of the hearing capacity of the vestibular labyrinth has only been peripherically touched upon in the preceding pages. That sound as consisting of rapidly and regularly changing oppositely directed rectilinear accelerations may be able to stimulate the vestibular neuroepithelium is in accordance as well with our theory as with a long series of facts, partly already mentioned. To these we may add the sensivity to sound of the saccular and probably also the lagenar macula in *Acanthias* (Viktrup<sup>1</sup>), the sensivity of the front part of the frog saccular macula to mechanical vibrations (Ashcroft and Hallpike), and the remarkably excellent hearing of several fishes, also outside the ostariophysarians (von Disselhorst). And particularly just as in several mammals there is reason to believe that the deepest frequencies are not perceived by the organ of Corti (S.H. Mygind<sup>11 12 13</sup>), but in the bulls as mechanical vibrations, so a corresponding deficiency of the hearing organ may be found in lower vertebrates. In the pigeon Rob L. Board and Grant L. Rasmussen have found the cochlear nerve dividing up in three isolated branches, starting from the basal, the middle and the apical parts of the spiral ganglion. This range of branches is regularly and in a perfectly identical way continued below into a fourth and fifth part for the lagena. This organ has besides a special relationship to the endolymphatic space in birds (de Burlet<sup>1</sup>). It is therefore likely that the lower frequencies in these and probably also in lower vertebrate species are not perceived as musical tones, but as mechanical vibrations of a more or less distinctly perceived special periodicity. A puzzling fact has been drawn forward by Bocca and Sperani. Already several years ago Bocca has been able to demonstrate nervous connections between vestibular fibres and the cochlear nerve apparently explaining an existing limited acoustic reaction in patients otherwise apparently stone deaf but with normal vestibular reactions.

## CONCLUSIONS

The fundamental factors for labyrinthine function are »pressure» and »dominance».

In this way the many anatomical variations of the vestibular labyrinth are found in harmony with the way of living and particularly of locomotion of each individual vertebrate species.

The dominant, more sensitive part of the sensory epithelium is always that which is supplied by the most peripheric part of the nerve the subordinate, less sensitive part being the opposite, often with an intermediate more or less »blind» or »neutral» part intervening. Similar dominance relations exist in the sense of touch of the skin, in the eyes and in the acoustic labyrinth. Dominance and »polarization» are different phenomena, but may in some cases coincide.

As in other senses of positional orientation the stimulation releases, besides a sensation, correcting motor reactions, directed in the axis of the individual cell stimulated and against the impact of the stimulus.

The combined motor reaction therefore depends on the degree of dominance the size and spatial position (»front») and the curvature of the individual epithelium.

The pressure causes a »downwards» displacement of the sensory cell in relation to its stiffer supporting cell. By this »downwards» displacement the giant hyaluronic acid molecules, supposed to be bridging between the two sorts of cells, become curved. This curving releases an electric output, stimulating the appertaining nerve.

An opposite displacement and therefore also an opposite curving of the giant molecules is prevented by the oppositely wedge-shaped forms of the heads of respectively sensory and supporting cells. The movements are of molecular dimensions (modified theory of J.A. Christiansen).

The tonus reaction is caused by the hydrostatic pressure of the endolymph on the maculae and crests, all facing more or less upwards and backwards, except the macula lagenae. The tonus counteracts the continuous influence of gravity and the tendency to topple by forward moving. The perception makes it theoretically possible for all vestibular epithelia to react not only to ordinary accelerations, but also to mechanical vibrations and to sounds, these consisting of rectilinear accelerations with opposite rapidly and regularly changing directions.

While in the numerous cases a difference of dominance according to rule was histologically verified, a difference in contradiction to the direction of the nerve was never found. In the crests it has not been possible histologically to demonstrate this directional difference opposite in the external and in the vertical canals, except in the lowest vertebrates, the Myxine and, less distinctly in the Acanthias.

In the utricular macula the dominance is the most evident, the anterior part being the dominant together with the outer part, the inner and back parts forming the subordinate and the middle the «blind» part. The utricular macula also presents a strong curvature except in birds. Only in the rays the anterior dominance changes over to becoming posterior corresponding to the special way of life of these animals.

In the macula sacculi the anterior part is always the dominant and the posterior the subordinate part, but the difference is here much smaller. Also the curvature is less pronounced.

In the ostariophysarian fishes the macula utriculi and lagenae probably take over a part of the function of the macula sacculi, which has become a hearing organ.

Very characteristically the saccular dominance during evolution, starting with the saurians, changes over from inferior to superior contemporaneously with the changing demands of equilibrium. The extremities become at the same time longer and tools of real walk.

The macula lagenae seems to be without dominance, a circumstance which seems to favour its possibility for perceiving the correct direction of vibrational stimulation (pseudo-hearing). An exceptional size of this macula was found in 3 fishes living in muddy water where the difficult orientation by sight may have lead to a compensating orientation by means of mechanical vibrations.

The outward facing of the macula lagenae in sharks and its upward facing in the bottom-dwelling rays point also to the existence of such pseudo-hearings.

The extraordinary development of the maculae utriculi and lagenae in the only two electric fishes observed should be remarked.

In conformity with our theory it is easy to understand that in air-vertebrates (birds), exposed to vertical accelerations, the macula utriculi is large the macula sacculi small, while the opposite is the case in water vertebrates.

In the vertebrates clinging to the ground, using their feet and claws for digging, for catching their prey for sitting, the macula lagenae is particularly large, developing from the simple downwards and outwards directed cup like macula in frogs to the sac or tube more or less downwards widening in reptiles, lined by a centripetally and downwards facing the macula lagenae as also in the *Echidna*, a master digger.

The lagena of the birds reminds very much of the reptile type with its downwards directed tube-like form and the centripetally facing macula. Only the macula here also covers the bottom, facing upwards. The same is also seen in the gecko indicating an upward directed motor tendency in both cases. The lagena disappears suddenly and perfectly traceless at the same time as a special type of feet with slender concentrically moving toes goes out of fashion.

The septa cruciata in the lamprey in the reptiles and the birds, the mentioned stripes in the cat and the ridged in the bats (all in the vertical canals) make the generally accepted idea of a gliding of the cupola impossible. The same may be concluded from the continuous common otolith membrane of the saccular and lagenar maculae in several plagiostomes and fishes.

The principles governing the vestibular function are thus the same as those stated in preceeding works on hearing and in reality the same as in other position regulating sensory systems (senses of sight, touch).

## ZUSAMMENFASSUNG

Gestützt auf einem repräsentativen komparativ-anatomischen Material, darunter auch von eigenen histologischen Untersuchungen, wird gezeigt, dass ein genauer Zusammenhang zwischen jeder Einzelheit des Labyrinthes und der speziellen Bewegungsform des betreffenden Wirbeltieres besteht. Dieses gilt nicht nur die Grössenverhältnisse des ganzen Labyrinthes, sondern auch die seiner einzelnen Teile. Entscheidende Faktoren sind weiter die Stellung im Raume der einzelnen Epithellen (»Front«), ihre Beugung und ihre »Dominanz«. Diese äussert sich als einer Sensibilitätsunterschied zwischen entgegengesetzten Teile, wodurch der eine, der von den periphersten Nervenästen versorgt ist immer der meist empfindsame »dominante« ist, während der andere, weniger empfindsame »subordinat« ist. Dieser Unterschied ist an der Maculae sacculi und besonders an der Macula utriculi in der Dimensionen der Sinneszellen wie auch in der Nervenäste deutlich. Der dominante und der subordinat Teil ist oft von einem, was sowohl Sinneszellen wie Nerven betrifft, noch weniger entwickelten, intermediären oder blinden Teil geschieden. In den Cristen ist dieser Unterschied nur bei der Lamprete ausgesprochen und bei dem Acanthias angedeutet. Bei den übrigen Wirbeltieren zeigt er sich nur in der Richtung und Ausbreitung der versorgenden Nervenäste, die mit der entgegengesetzten Wirkungsgrösse von der selben Strömungsrichtung in der horizontalen und in den vertikalen Ampullen übereinstimmen. Das Septum cruciatum der Reptilien und der Vögel repräsentieren den blinden Teil. Dasselbe gilt den entsprechenden Querleisten der Fledermäuse und den Querstreifen der Katze, alle nur auf den vertikalen Cristen. Diese Eigentümlichkeiten scheinen eine Gleitung der Cupola unmöglich zu machen. Ein Subcupularraum gibt es kaum. Dominanz und Polarität sind nicht identisch, können aber mitunter zusammenfallen. Die Macula lagenae ist ohne Dominanz, ein Vorteil vermutlich für die genaue Richtungsauffassung mechanischer Vibrationen (»pseudo-Gehör«). Von den Fröschen ab beginnt die Macula lagenae nach unten zu wenden. Bei den folgenden Formen nimmt sie Gestalt eines Sackes, eines Trichters oder eines Rohres von der nach unten wendenden Macula oben geschlossen der geotrophischen Lebensweisen dieser Tieren entsprechend, und besonders ausgeprägt bei Schlangen und gliederlosen Saurien. Bei den Geckos und bei den Vögeln aber ist die Lagna von der nach oben gewendenden Macula unten geschlossen, ganz mit den geofugalen Lebensweisen dieser Tieren wieder übereinstimmend. Das Verschwinden der Lagna bei den Stugtieren oberhalb der Monotremata, ist wahrscheinlich durch den Wegfall eines besonderen Fusstypus verursacht, durch starke wohl geschiedene Zehen mit konzentrischen Bewegungen charakterisiert. Der Mechanismus der Auslösung der vestibulären Reaktionen ist eine Druckwirkung von den Membranen auf den Sinneszellen, wodurch diese zwischen den steiferen Stützzen nach unten geschoben werden. Diese Verschiebung verursacht eine Beugung der langen Riesenmolekülen von Hyaluronsäure welche der Verfasser sich als Brücken zwischen Haarzellen und Stützzen ausgespannt denkt. Diese Beugung erlöst elektrische Potentiale die eine Stimulation der Nervenelemente hervorrufen. Die effektive Grösse diesen interzellulären Verschiebung ist von molekulären Dimensionen. Die Prinzipien der statischen Funktion stimmen mit den von anderen stellungsorientierenden Sinnen wie dem Sehen, dem Tasten und vor allem dem Gehör überein.

## RÉSUMÉ

Une série assez représentative des investigations d'anatomie comparative partiellement personnelles, révèlent une harmonie intime entre la structure détaillée du labyrinthe et la façon de se mouvoir de l'espèce de vertébré individuelle. Ce regarde les dimensions, non seulement du labyrinthe total, mais aussi de ses parts différentes. Facteurs décisifs sont la position dans l'espace de l'épithèle en question (son «front»), son courbement et sa dominance. Celle-ci se manifeste comme une différence de sensibilité entre des parts opposées, ainsi que l'une celle fournie par la part du nerf la plus périphérique, est toujours la plus sensible «dominante» tandis que l'autre part est la moins sensible «subordonnée». Cette différence est plus prononcée dans le saucule. Elle est visible anatomiquement par une différence des dimensions des cellules sensorielles et des rameaux nerveux appartenants. Les parts dominantes et subordonnées sont souvent séparées par une part intermédiaire ou aveugle avec des cellules sensorielles et des rameaux nerveux encore moins développés. Dans les crêtes les différences correspondantes sont évidentes seulement chez la lamproie et encore visible peut-être chez le requin. Dans les autres vertébrés la dominance dans les crêtes se manifeste seulement par la direction et la distribution de leurs nerfs, correspondantes aux effets différentes dans les ampoules verticales et horizontales. Le septum cruciatum des reptiles et des oiseaux, les crêtes transverses des chauves-souris, les lignes nues correspondentes chez le chat semblent de rendre un glissement de la coupole impossible. Elles représentent toutes la part intermédiaire ou aveugle. Un espace sous-coupolaire probablement, n'existe pas. La macule de la lagena est sans dominance un avantage apparemment pour la perception de la direction précise des vibrations mécaniques. Dominance et polarisation ne sont pas identiques, mais les deux phénomènes coïncident parfois. Dès les grenouilles la macule lagénnaire commence à donner à dedans. Chez les ordres suivantes la lagena prend la forme d'une tube, d'un entonnoir ou d'un sac avec la macule dominante à bas (assez plate chez les serpents et certains sauriens sans jambes) correspondante à la vie géotropique de ces animaux. Seulement chez les geckos et chez les oiseaux, la macule donne en haut, correspondante à leur vie géofugale. L'absence de la lagena chez les mammifères supérieurs est probablement due à la disparition du type du pied spéciale aux doigts forts et bien séparés, aux mouvements concentriques. Tous les épithèles vestibulaires réagissent aux vibrations mécaniques et possèdent, théoriquement, la faculté de réagir aux vibrations sonores. Le mécanisme de déclenchement des réactions vestibulaires consiste en une pression des membranes sur les cils des cellules sensorielles, les déplaçant en bas en relation de leurs cellules de support plus raides. Par ce déplacement les molécules gigantesques d'acide hyaluronique, supposées de former des ponts entre les deux sortes des cellules épithéliales, deviennent courbées. Et ce courbement fait émettre des potentiels électriques, qui déclenchent une stimulation nerveuse. Le déplacement intercellulaire est de dimensions moléculaires. La correspondance entre les principes gouvernants la fonction vestibulaire et ceux des autres sens d'orientation de position, comme ceux de la vue, de l'atouchement, et surtout de l'ouïe est frappante.



## ZUSAMMENFASSUNG

Gestützt auf einem repräsentativen komparativ-anatomischen Material darunter auch von eigenen histologischen Untersuchungen, wird gezeigt, dass ein genauer Zusammenhang zwischen den Einzelheiten des Labyrinthes und der speziellen Bewegungsform des betreffenden Wirbeltieres besteht. Dieses gilt nicht nur die Grösseverhältnisse des ganzen Labyrinthes, sondern auch die seiner einzelnen Teile. Entscheidende Faktoren sind weiter die Stellung im Raume der einzelnen Epithelien (»Front«) ihre Biegung und ihre »Dominanz«. Diese äussert sich als einer Sensibilitätsunterschied zwischen entgegengesetzten Teile, wodurch der eine, der von den periphersten Nervenästen versorgt ist, immer der meist empfindsame »dominante« ist, während der andere, weniger empfindsame »subordinat« ist. Dieser Unterschied ist an der Maculae sacculi und besonders an der Macula utriculi in der Dimensionen der Sinneszellen wie auch in der Nervenäste deutlich. Der dominante und der subordinat Teil ist oft von einem, was sowohl Sinneszellen wie Nerven betrifft, noch weniger entwickelten, intermediären oder blinden Teil geschieden. In den Cristen ist dieser Unterschied nur bei der Lamprete ausgesprochen und bei dem Acanthias angedeutet. Bei den übrigen Wirbeltieren zeigt er sich nur in der Richtung und Ausbreitung der versorgenden Nervenäste, die mit der entgegengesetzten Wirkungsgrösse von der selben Strömungsrichtung in der horizontalen und in den vertikalen Ampullen übereinstimmen. Das Septum cruciatum der Reptilien und der Vögel repräsentieren den blinden Teil. Dasselbe gilt den entsprechenden Querleisten der Fledermäuse und den Querstreifen der Katze, alle nur auf den vertikalen Cristen. Diese Eigentümlichkeiten scheinen eine Gleitung der Cupula unmöglich zu machen. Ein Subcupularraum gibt es kaum. Dominanz und Polarität sind nicht identisch, können aber mitunter zusammenfallen. Die Macula lagena ist ohne Dominanz, ein Vorteil vermutlichlich für die genaue Richtungsauffassung mechanischer Vibrationen (»Pseudo-Gehör«). Von den Fröschen ab beginnt die Macula lagena nach unten zu wenden. Bei den folgenden Formen nimmt sie Gestalt eines Sackes, eines Trichters oder eines Rohres von der nach unten wendenden Macula oben geschlossen, der geotrophischen Lebenswesen dieser Tieren entsprechend, und besonders ausgeprägt bei Schlangen und gliederlosen Saurien. Bei den Geckos und bei den Vögeln aber ist die Lagna von der nach oben gewendenden Macula unten geschlossen, ganz mit den geofugalen Lebenswesen dieser Tieren wieder übereinstimmend. Das Verschwinden der Lagna bei den Säugetieren oberhalb der Monotremata, ist wahrscheinlich durch den Wegfall eines besonderen Fussstypus veranlasst, durch starke wohl geschiedene Zehen mit konzentrischen Bewegungen charakterisiert. Der Mechanismus der Auslösung der vestibulären Reaktionen ist eine Druckwirkung von den Membranen auf den Sinneszellen, wodurch diese zwischen den steiferen Stützzellen nach unten geschoben werden. Diese Verschiebung verursacht eine Biegung der langen Riesenmolekülen von Hyaluronsäure, welche der Verfasser sich als Brücken zwischen Haarzellen und Stützzellen ausgespannt denkt. Diese Biegung erlöst elektrische Potentiale, die eine Stimulation der Nervenelemente hervorrufen. Die effektive Grösse dieser interzellulären Verschiebung ist von molekulären Dimensionen. Die Prinzipien der statischen Funktion stimmen mit den von anderen stellungsorientierenden Sinnen wie dem Sehen, dem Tastsinn und vor allem dem Gehör überein.

## REFERENCES

- ARELLANO, E.R. *Acta otolar* 26:367 1938.  
 ASHCROFT H.W. and HALLPIKE, C.S. *J Laryng.* 49:450, 1934  
 BENJAMINS, C.E. and HUIZINGA, E. *Arch. Ed. gesamm.Physiol.* 217 192, 1927  
 BENJAMINS, C.E. *Acta otolar* 15 32 1930.  
 BOCCA, E. and PERANI, G. *Acta otolar* 51 260, 1963  
 BOORD R.L. and RASMUSSEN, G.L. *J Comp. Neurol.* 120:463 1963  
 V.BUDDENBROCK. *Vergl. Physiol. I, Sinnesorgane*, Basel 1954.  
 BREUER, J. *Pflügers Arch.* 48 195, 1891  
 DE BURLET H.M.  
 1) *Handb.d.vergl.Anat. der Wirbeltiere*, I, 2. Urban und Schwarzenberg, Berlin/Wien 1934  
 2) *Anat. Anzeig.* III 26, 1974  
 DE BURLET H.M. and VERSTEEGH, P. *Acta otolar. Suppl.* 15 1930.  
 CHRISTIANSEN, J.A. *Acta otolar* 57 33 1961  
 DEDERDING, D.  
 1) *Mb. Menieri etc. Acta otolar Suppl.* 10. 1923  
 2) *Acta otolar Suppl.* 78 145 1948.  
 3) The effect of quinine on the guinea-pig labyrinth. *tc. Centraltrykkeset Cph.* 1953.  
 V DISSELHORST G. *Zellvergl.Physiol.* 25 748. 1938.  
 ENGSTRÖM, H. *Acta Otolar. Suppl.* 163:30. 1960.  
 ENGSTRÖM, H. and KOKONEN, A. *Acta otolar* 59:171 1966.  
 ENGSTRÖM, H., ADES, H.W. and ANDERSSON A. *Structural Pattern of the organ of Corti. Ak-  
 quent & Wiksell. Gebens Forlag. Stockholm* 1960.  
 EWALD J.R. *Physiol. Untersuchungen über das Endorgan des Nervus octavus. Wiesbaden, J.F. Berg-  
 mann.* 1892.  
 FAALBE-HANSEN J.  
 1) *Chir. and Expt. histol. studies on the effect of quinine and salicylate. Acta otolar Suppl.*  
 44 1941  
 2) *Acta otolar. Suppl.* 51 240. 1944  
 FLOCK, A.J. *Cell Biol.* 22 413. 1964  
 FLOCK, A. and WERSÄLL, J. *J Cell Biol.* 15 19 1962.  
 V FRISCH, K. *Zett. vergl. Physiol.* 45 703 1938.  
 V FRISCH, K. and STETTER, H. *Zett. vergl. Physiol.* 17 686. 1932.  
 GRAY ALB. *The labyrinths of animals*. J.A. Churchill, London. 1947-1948.  
 GREVE, M. *Videnskab. Medd. Dansk. Naturh. For.* 127 273 1964  
 HAMILTON H.W. *J Morphol.* 115 455 1964  
 HARRISON, V.S. *Internat. Mon. Anat. und Physiol.* 19- 57 1907  
 V HOLST E et al. 1950. *Zett. vergl. Physiol.* 32 67 1950.  
 HUIZINGA, E. *Acta otolar.* 22 359 1935  
 ISELSTOGER, H.  
 1) *Morph. Jahrb.* 86 455 1941  
 2) *Morph. Jahrb.* 89 73 1943  
 IWATA, N. *Auscha J exp. Med.* 1 41 1974  
 JERLANG E. *Unders. over exp og spont. Betænd etc (English summary) Dts. Cph.* 1949 *Muske-  
 l-gard*  
 LEDOUX, A. *Les canaux semicircul. Dissert. Acta med. belg. Bruxelles.* 1938.  
 LISSMANN H.W. *J Exp.Biol.* 35 156. 1958  
 LOEWENSTEIN O. *Zett. vergl. Physiol.* 17 806 1934.  
 LOEWENSTEIN O. and SAND A.  
 1) *J Expt. Biol.* 13 416 1936  
 2) *J Physiol.* 99 89 1940.

- LOEWENSTEIN O and ROBERTS G.M. *J.Physiol.* 110 392 1949  
 LOEWENSTEIN O., OSBORNE, M.P and WERSÄLL, J. *Proceed. Royal Soc. B* 160-1 1964  
 MACHIN K.E. and LISSMANN H.W. *J Exptl. Biol.* 37 803 1960.  
 MAXWELL, S. *Labyr and Equilib* Philadelphia Lippincott. 1928  
 McNALLY W.J and MAC NAUGHTON J.P. *J.Lar* 61 204 1946.  
 MILLER, MALCOLM R. The cochlear duct of Hairs. *Proceed. Calif Acad. Sc.* 33.255 1965

## MYGIND S.H.

- 1) *Acta otolar* 7 161 1924
- 2) *Ibidem*, 7 279 1924
- 3) *Ibidem*, 8 230 1925
- 4) *Ibidem*, *Spm.* 68 1948
- 5) *Practica otolar* 10 fasc. 1/2 1948.
- 6) *Acta otolar Spm.* 70 1948.
- 7) *Acta psych. et neurol.* 24 607 1949
- 8) *Acta otolar.* 61 235 1952.
- 9) *Arch. Ital. otol* 74 329 1963
- 10) *Acta otolar* 59 263 1965
- 11) *Arch. otolar* 82 452 1965
- 12) *Arch. otolar* 82 379 1965
- 13) *Arch. otolar* 83 29 1966

NAKAGAWA, YONE, Z. *Acta otolar* 43 596 1953

DE NO LORENTE. *Ergb d.Physiol.* 32 73 1931

OORT H. *Anatom. Anzeiger* 51 272. 1918-1919

QUIX, F.H. *J Lar* 40 425 1925

RETZIUS, G. *Gehörorgane der Wirbeltieren*, Stockholm, Samson u. Wallin 1881-1884

ROMER, A.S. *Vertebrate Paleontology* Chicago. University press. 1966.

SATO, H. *Histol. Bau der Vögelchnocke*. Basel. Schwabe. 1917

SMITH, HOMER W. *From Fish to Philosophy* Ciba Edition. 1959

STENSIOE, E. *Downtonian and Devonian Vertebrates of Spitzbergen*. I. Jac. Dybvad. Oslo. 1927

STONE, L.S. *Proc. Soc. Exptl. Biol. Med.* 57 13 1944

THORVAL, A. *Acta otolar* 7 263 1921

TRACY C. *J Comp. Neurol.* 31 219 1920.

TULLIO P. *Des Oir und die Entstehung der Sprache und Schrift*. Urban und Schwarzenberg, Berlin. Wern, 1929

ULRICH, H. *Pfl. Archl* 233 545 1934

VERSTEEGH, C. *Acta otolar* 11 393 1927

## VILSTRUP T

- 1) *Structure and Function of the Labyrinth in Acanthias*, Dissert., Munksgaard, Cph. 1951
- 2) *Commemorative writing for Prof. Thorval*, Cph. 1953
- 3) *The Membr. Sacs in the Labyrinth in Acanthias*, dissert. Cph. 1953

VILSTRUP T and JENSEN C.E. *Ann. Otolaryng.* 63 151 1954

## DE VRIES, H

- 1) *Acta Otolaryng.* 38 262, 1950.
- 2) *Experimenta* 4 215 1948
- 3) *Progr. in Biophysics*, 6 207 1956

## WERNER, CL. FR.

- 1) *Zeit. wiss.Zool* 131 512, 1928.
- 2) *Zeit. wiss.Zool* 136 484 1930
- 3) *Das Gehörorg d. Wirbeltiere u. des Menschen*. Thieme, Leipzig. 1940.

## WESTON J K

- 1) *Acta Otolaryng.* 27 457 1938
- 2) *J Anat* 73 263 1939
- 3) *J Comp Neurol* 70 355 1939

WIEDERSHEIM R. *Morphol. Jahrb.* 1 495 1875

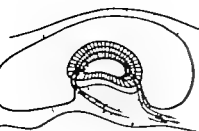


Fig. 5



6



Fig. 9



Fig. 10



Fig. 11











Fig. 16

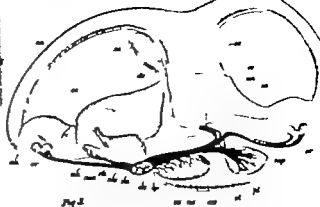


Fig. 20



Fig. 17

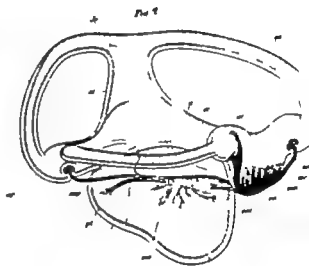


Fig. 1

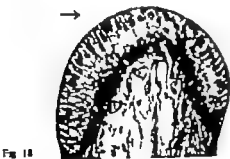
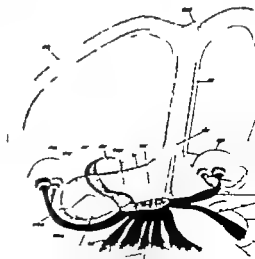


Fig. 18











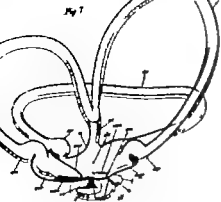


Fig. 31

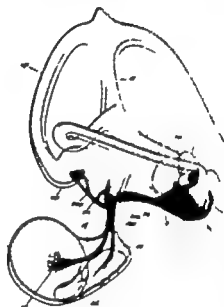
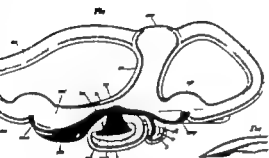
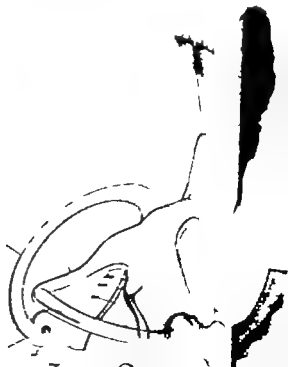
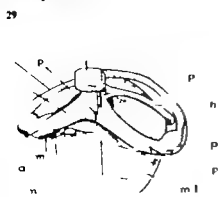
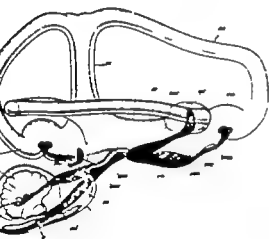


Fig. 32





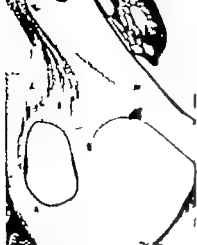


Fig. 58



Fig. 57

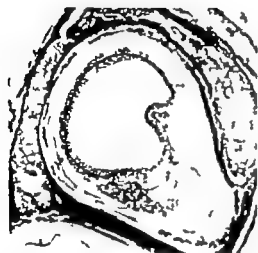


Fig. 59



Fig. 60

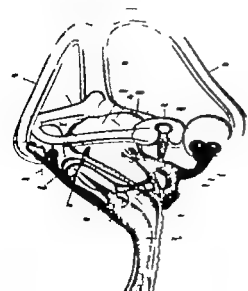












Fig. 65

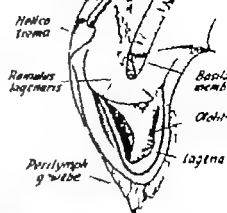


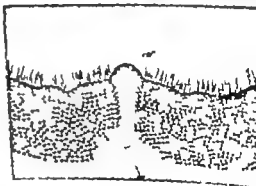
Fig. 66



Fig. 69



Fig. 70



COVER

PRINTED IN SWEDEN BY

*Almqvist & Wiksell's Boktryckeri Aktiebolag*

UPPSALA 1969

*Acta*  
**OTO-LARYNGOLOGICA**

S U P P L E M E N T U M 250

**THE VELOPHARYNGEAL MUSCLES  
IN SPEECH**

*An electromyographic and radiographic study*

S. M. S.

BJÖRN FRITZELL

ACTA OTO-LARYNGOLOGICA NARVAYÄGEN 16, 11533 STOCKHOLM



*From the Departments of Otorhinolaryngology and Clinical Neurophysiology  
of the University of Göteborg and from the Krønge Hearing Research Institute and the  
Department of Otorhinolaryngology of the University of Michigan Medical School*

# THE VELOPHARYNGEAL MUSCLES IN SPEECH

An electromyographic and cinéradiographic study

BJÖRN FRITZELL

ORSTADIUS BOKTRYCKERI AKTIEBOLAG  
GÖTEBORG 1949  
14058

# CONTENTS

<b>Introduction</b>	3
<b>I. Review of the literature</b>	4
Velo-pharyngeal closure: an historical survey of concepts and methods of study	6
Muscles of the soft palate	11
Electromyographic studies of the palatal muscles	14
<b>II. A qualitative study of the activity of the palatal muscles by means of electromyography</b>	21
Material and methods	22
Results	27
General findings	29
Speech	31
Non-speech activities	41
Discussion and conclusions	44
<b>III. A combined electromyographic and cine-radiographic study. Activity of the levator and palatoglossus muscles in relation to velar movements</b>	51
Material and methods	52
Results	54
General findings	54
Levator measurements for onset of levator activity velar movement and speech onset	57
Levator measurements for increase of EMG activity in relation to elevation and descent of velum	61
Onset of levator activity in relation to velar displacement in nasal production	64
Discussion and conclusions	65
<b>General discussion</b>	69
<b>Summary</b>	71
<b>Acknowledgments</b>	71
<b>References</b>	72





## INTRODUCTION

A normal velopharyngeal closure mechanism is of the utmost importance in speech. We must be able to control the coupling gate between the nasal resonators and the oropharyngeal part of the vocal tract in order to speak distinctly. Inability to achieve closure may seriously distort speech and constitutes one of the major clinical problems in the field of phoniatrics and logopedics.

There is much information available on the articulatory movements of the soft palate and the velopharyngeal walls. They have been studied directly and indirectly by a number of means, such as direct observation from an antero-superior direction in patients with facial defects following tumor surgery, cineradiography, aerodynamic procedures with air flow and air pressure measurements and acoustic analysis of speech.

There is considerably less reliable information available to answer the question: How are these movements controlled by the various muscles involved? Here we are left mainly with assumptions and inferences from dissections, direct observations and motion picture analyses. We do not know definitely which muscles are active in the production of velopharyngeal closure. Nor do we know whether the opening of the velopharyngeal portal in speech is an active or a passive phenomenon.

The primary purpose of the present investigation was to produce evidence of the participation of individual velopharyngeal muscles in speech by means of electromyography. Special attention was paid to their different rôles in the production of oral and nasal sound and to variations in their degree of activity for different vowels. These were the main objects of the first series of experiments.

The relationship between the electromyogram and the acoustic speech signal, however, is an indirect one. Therefore it was important to obtain information on the intermediate link, the movements of the articulators, which are produced by the muscle contractions and which shape the acoustic signal. The aim of the second series of experiments was to provide evidence of the movements of the soft palate by means of simultaneous cineradiography. With this third parameter time relationships between EMG, palatal movement and acoustic speech signal could be analyzed, and variations in the degree of EMG-activity compared with variations in palatal displacement.

# I REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

## VELOPHARYNGEAL CLOSURE, AN HISTORICAL SURVEY OF CONCEPTS AND METHODS OF STUDY

In ancient Greece rhetoric was a greatly appreciated and fostered art. Orators were held in high esteem and rules were laid down for effective public speaking. This is also the age where we find the first signs of a scientific approach to the study of speech and voice. Thus, Hippocrates (about 100 B.C.) stated that when air is expelled from the body cavities, a sound is produced because of resonance within the head and the tongue articulates against the palate and the teeth to produce distinct sounds. Aristotle (381—322 B.C.) devoted a great deal of attention to speech and voice and their disorders. He located the origin of the voice in the trachea and larynx. He also recognized the difference between vowels and consonants. The distinction between nasal and oral sounds, however, was not made in this period. Grammar still occupied a preeminent position, and attention was generally directed towards letters rather than speech sounds.

Galen (129—199) who had such a tremendous impact on medicine for more than a dozen centuries, also studied the larynx thoroughly by dissections and experiments on animals. He insisted that the voice was produced in the larynx, and he observed that pigs did not squeal after section of the recurrent laryngeal nerve. In his writings there are references to a comprehensive treatise on the voice of which now only fragments exist, however. Whereas Hippocrates and Aristotle refer to the uvula only as a seat for possible inflammation and oedema, capable of bringing about suffocation, Galen considered it of importance in speech, contributing to the volume and beauty of the voice; and he compared it to a plectrum. He noted that persons who had their uvula cut off all the way to the base manifested a voice impediment.

On the death of Galen in 199 A.D. "the active prosecution of anatomical and physiological inquiry ceased absolutely. The curtain descends at once and the Dark Ages have begun" as concluded by Singer (1925). From the "Dark" and Middle Ages there exists no evidence of progress in the study of speech and voice. Thus Berengario da Carpi (1535) in one of the very first printed textbooks of anatomy dealt with the uvula in exactly the same way as the ancients.

With the Renaissance a rapid development took place. In the manuscripts of Leonardo da Vinci (1452—1519) the soft palate *palato mobile* was mentioned and drawn for the first time as far as we now know. Regarding its function Leonardo claimed that all vowels are formed with the most posterior part of the movable palate. His anatomical drawings and notes remained unpublished for nearly four centuries, however, and he had no direct influence on the development of the anatomical and physiological sciences.

Falloppeo (1561) professor of anatomy in Padua, presented the first publication in which the soft palate was described and distinguished from the hard palate. Moreover, he stated that luetic disease of the uvula alone does not affect the voice; the soft palate must also be engaged. A perforation through the palate is very harmful to the

voice. Fabricius ab Aquapendente the famous follower of Falloppio in Padua, published a treatise on speech and its instruments (1603) where he discussed the production of speech sounds at length (and quoted Aristotle extensively). He observed that when sound passes through the nose the vowels lose much of their quality. He did not distinguish between nasal and oral speech sounds, however, and movements of the soft palate were not discussed.

It appears that the function of the soft palate and velopharyngeal closure were first recognized in the seventeenth century possibly by pioneers in the education of the deaf. Thus, Amman (1700) stated that the soft palate regulates the passage of voice through the nostrils, "for when we wish to emit voice or breath through the mouth only which may happen in the pronunciation of the letters which in the following chapter I shall name explosive, we shut the passage of the nostrils as with a valve,

" He also evidenced a clear understanding of those pathologic phenomena of speech which we now call hyper- and hyponasalities.

Van Kempelen (1791) in his famous book on the mechanisms of speech and on his speaking machine gave an accurate account of the rôle of the soft palate in speech. He established that the speech sounds or letters *m* and *n* are the only ones to be regularly pronounced through the nose. He stated that closure is accomplished by the apposition of the soft palate to the posterior pharyngeal wall. He also observed that when a vowel is followed by an *m*, it is pronounced with an open passage to the nasal cavities.

Dzondi (1831) wrote the first monograph on the soft palate. In this he objected to the claim made by several authors of this period that the soft palate was elevated to such an extent as to occlude the choanae. He tried to get additional information on the movements of the soft palate by palpation. His studies led him to believe that the soft palate remained motionless during the formation of vowels, even though he was well aware of the fact that almost all older and contemporary physiologists were of the opposite opinion.

Apparently Hilton (1836) was first to report a study of the palate from above in a subject with a facial defect. His description of velopharyngeal movements during breathing, swallowing and speech includes observations such as the following: "Upon taking a full inspiration through the mouth the palate is directed more completely upwards and backwards and adapts itself to the advancing pharynx. This adaptation remains until the expiration has nearly terminated but it should be remarked, that the sides of the pharynx do not, even in this case approximate so much as during deglutition. He noted that the soft palate is elevated during speech "to direct the air in the expiration through the mouth, and to prevent its passing through the nose."

Two years later Bidder (1838) published a report of the same kind, obviously unaware of Hilton's study. He reaffirmed that the soft palate is elevated during speech, but arrived at the conclusion that this is an accompanying movement only either completely insignificant or of secondary importance to that of the tongue. He believed that velopharyngeal closure occurred exclusively during swallowing.

Patients with maxillo-facial defects after tumor surgery still constitute one of our most important sources of information on the movements of the soft palate and pharyngeal

walls. Following Hilton and Bidder a great number of studies on such patients have been published, lately in the form of detailed analyses of motion picture films, as will be related in a following section.

The middle of the nineteenth century represents the beginning of a new era. Experiments were undertaken to give indirect evidence of velopharyngeal closure during speech. Brucke (1856) studied the emission of air through the nostrils with the flame of a candle. Czermak (1857, 1858, 1869) devised several means to demonstrate movements and closure in the velopharynx. Following a procedure used by Delrou (1811) in a study on swallowing, he introduced a specially modeled iron wire along the floor of the nasal cavity on one side and observed the deflections of its outer end brought about by the elevation of the soft palate. By means of this simple mechanical device he was able to demonstrate the differences in palatal movements and positions during the production of different vowels, the deflection of the iron wire being greatest for /u/ and smallest for /a/. A second procedure was the instillation of water in the nasal cavities during the production of sustained sounds. He noted that for /a/ the water tended to pass down into the lower pharynx more or less quickly while for other vowels tested it was kept in the epipharynx. By a third procedure, a cold mirror of glass or metal held under the nostrils, he demonstrated the absolute closure of velopharynx during the production of pure vowels as distinguished from nasalized vowels. Finally for demonstration before large audiences he used a pressure-sensitive system in the form of a rubber tube from one nostril leading to a tambour. On top of the tambour was a small mirror deflecting a beam of light towards the ceiling. Pressure changes within the nasal cavities were thus made clearly visible to the whole audience in the form of movements of the spot light in the ceiling. In this way Czermak (1869) was able to confirm and demonstrate his earlier findings of an increased elevation of the soft palate in the series of vowels /a/ /e/ /o/ /u/ /i/.

Passavant (1863) repeated and confirmed some of Czermak's tests and also reported on another series of experiments, carried out in collaboration with Moritz Schmidt, who had a very insensitive pharynx. Thus, they were the first to report on evaluation of velopharyngeal closure by means of posterior rhinoscopy. Finding that during this examination there was not always a complete closure during the production of /a/ /o/ and /u/ as their next experiment they passed a thread through the nasal cavity around the velum and out again through the mouth. By pulling the two ends of the thread they caused an insufficiency of the closure and they found that all speech sounds could still be produced correctly if the opening was not too large. As their final step they interposed 5-cm long rubber tubes of different diameters between the soft palate and the posterior pharyngeal wall. The use of a 6.8 mm thick tube with an inner cross-sectional area of 12.6 mm<sup>2</sup> did not appreciably influence speech. A 10 mm thick tube with an inner cross-sectional area of 28.3 mm<sup>2</sup> gave most of the consonants a nasal character but the vowels were still not influenced.

In the same report Passavant (1863) presented his observation of a horizontal forward bulging of the posterior pharyngeal wall during speech in a cleft palate subject. He also found that simultaneously the lateral pharyngeal walls were adducted and the medial borders of the cleft velum approached each other. He assumed that the horizontal ridge is formed also in normal subjects during speech, though con-

cealed by the soft palate and thus not seen. This theory of Passavant soon met with opposition, as described by Smith (1961).

Gentzen (1876) made the first recordings of the palatal movements by means of a kymograph, a mechanical transmission system and a lever on the upper surface of the soft palate in a subject with a maxillo-facial defect. He confirmed Czermak's findings of different degrees of palatal elevation for different vowels, and so did Voltolini (1879) by means of a delicate instrument for anterior rhinoscopy.

Hartmann (1880) studied the firmness of velopharyngeal closure by imposing a pressure in the nasal cavities during speech with nasal olives and a rubber balloon. He measured the pressure needed to overcome the closure mechanism and found variations between different sounds and between different speakers. Vogel (1881) in a subject with a considerable defect of the nose placed a thin rubber balloon filled with water in the epipharynx and recorded the pressure changes in this system brought about by the movements of the soft palate.

Gutman (1891) described a procedure for clinical evaluation of velopharyngeal closure by auditory cues still widely used. The patient is asked to produce a series of alternating /a/ and /i/-sounds. If a change in vowel quality is noted when his nostrils are pinched this indicates an insufficient velopharyngeal closure.

With the discovery of x-rays at the end of the nineteenth century a new era was started. Radiography offered new possibilities to study the vocal tract. Scheier (1898) published the first report on the use of x-rays in the study of speech and voice. He described the appearance of the soft palate during fluoroscopy and was able to confirm earlier findings of velopharyngeal closure and of a varied elevation of the velum in speech. In the following decades improved x-ray techniques were accompanied by an increasing number of studies using single-exposure radiograms in speech research and speech pathology. Gottheimer (1929) presented the first cineradiographic film of the vocal tract during speech. Carrell (1932) described a method for reduction of the radiation effect and advocated the use of cinefluorography for clinical assessment of velopharyngeal closure. Cooper & Hoffmann (1935) and Skoog & Nylén (1933) were the first to report studies of the velopharynx by means of cinefluorography with image intensifiers. Bringing the radiation effects down to insignificant levels, this technique proved a most valuable tool, and it rapidly gained widespread use as described and exemplified by Croatt & Croatto-Martinoli (1959) and Trubny (1959). In a study on vowels and disyllables, Moll (1960) presented measurements of some oral and velopharyngeal structures from cinefluorographic frames as a function of time and he also related his findings to the frequency variation of the second formant of the vowels. Björk (1961) studied connected speech in normals by means of cineradiography and synchronized speech spectrography and Nylén (1961) used the same procedures in a series of cleft palate subjects.

Thus in modern research on the soft palate and velopharyngeal closure, cineradiography in lateral projection plays a very important rôle. Valuable indirect information is also provided by refined procedures and electronic recording equipment for measurement of nasal flow and recording of oral and nasal air pressure during speech as shown by Warren & D. Bois (1961) and surveyed by Hardy (1965).

Moreover an acoustic analysis of speech can be used to supply information relevant to nasal coupling, as described by Fant (1960)

In our present-day concept of the velopharyngeal closure mechanism during speech, the following components may be distinguished

- 1) elevation and posterior movement of the soft palate
- 2) forward bulging of the posterior pharyngeal wall,
- 3) medial movement of the lateral pharyngeal walls.

The elevation and posterior movement of the soft palate obviously gives the most important contribution to closure. It can be very clearly demonstrated by fluoroscopy in a lateral projection, and it accounts for the fact that many authors refer to velopharyngeal closure as a valve function

The forward bulging of the posterior pharyngeal wall was formerly considered very pronounced and essential to speech, notably in the form of "Passavant's ridge". This ridge was held as evidence of a circular constriction effecting velopharyngeal closure, and the concept of the "palatopharyngeal sphincter" was introduced. Calnan (1957) has thoroughly and most convincingly disputed the validity of Passavant's ridge in speech, however and in a laminagraphic study by Hagerty *et al* (1958) on 80 normal subjects this ridge occurred in 9 subjects only and in 6 of these "velar contact with the posterior pharyngeal wall was made above the ridge and so strongly that it appeared Passavant's bar was not necessary for functional closure". Hagerty & Hill (1960) measured the forward displacement of the posterior wall in 50 normals and in 50 cleft palate subjects phonating /a/ and /s/ and concluded "For both clefts and normals the actual amount of forward excursion of the posterior pharyngeal wall is very small and its contribution to speech is probably insignificant."

The medial movement of the lateral pharyngeal walls in speech is well known to those engaged in the rehabilitation of cleft palate speakers, since it is very marked and easily observed through the mouth during the phonation of /a/ in some of these subjects. This movement no doubt represents an important compensation for a dysfunction of the soft palate. Its occurrence in normal speakers is more difficult to demonstrate. As mentioned, already Hilton (1836) described this approximation of the lateral walls of the upper pharynx in his subject with a maxillo-facial defect, and so did a great number of followers studying subjects of this kind. In Bloomer's tracings from cinéfilms (1953) it is clearly illustrated. Harrington (1944) studying a cleft palate subject, claimed that the "mesial" movement of the lateral pharyngeal walls occurs over a great vertical distance and moreover that "the extent of mesial movement bears a direct relationship to the extent of velar elevation during velopharyngeal closure". He rejected the idea that the velopharyngeal mechanism is in the nature of a

simple sphincter". Atley (1958) studied the movements of the lateral walls of the upper pharynx in 1 normal subjects by means of cinéradiography. He used a postero-anterior projection and produced an outline of the lateral walls by installation of radio-opaque material through the nose. He found that during the phonation of "ah" the lateral wall showed a pronounced inward shift, with maximum at about the level of the palate, where they touched together. Speech was accompanied by to-and-fro movements at the same level. Campos-Cirral & Cole (1962) attached small balloons coated internally with radio-opaque material, to a palatal retainer and with those balloons

placed in the nasopharynx they made frontal-plane radiographs in 4 cleft palate subjects. In this way they assessed the extent and nature of pharyngeal wall movement during phonation. They remarked upon the finding of asymmetries and lateral rather than mesial movement in some patients. Björk (1961) obtained information on the coupling gate between the oral and nasal cavities in 10 normal subjects by means of tomography in an antero-posterior projection. He found that during intonation of various nasalized sounds the size of the cross-section varied and that the area diminished with increasing velopharyngeal closure in both frontal and sagittal planes. However, the area was found to be in a linear relationship to the sagittal minor axis — the distance between the soft palate and the posterior pharyngeal wall. If this is true, the changes in the frontal cross length — from side to side — must be insignificant.

Thus it appears from a survey of the literature that velopharyngeal closure in speech is mainly brought about by the elevation and posterior movement of the soft palate. The forward bulging of the posterior pharyngeal wall is normally very small. Our knowledge about the extent of inward movement of the lateral pharyngeal wall is very limited, and the available evidence is somewhat contradictory.

#### MUSCLES OF THE SOFT PALATE

The palatal and pharyngeal muscles were first described by Italian anatomists in the sixteenth century in the plates, completed in 1552, which Eustachio intended for a textbook of anatomy. The tensor and the levator of the soft palate, the palatopharyngeus, the salpingopharyngeus and the constrictors can all be recognized. This anatomical and graphic masterpiece of Eustachio was not published until 1714, however, and the text is lost. The first printed description of these muscles was presented by Falloppio (1561) who distinguished three pairs of muscle of the fauces, viz., those which we now know as the tensors of the palate, the constrictors, and the levators, to which he also attributed the muscle fibers of the palatal arches. In the seventeenth century anatomists devoted a great deal of attention to the muscles of the palate and pharynx. Thus Valsalva (1704) gave a description that can almost compete with modern textbooks. He was the first to claim that the tensor of the soft palate functions as a dilator of the Eustachian tube. His follower Morgagni (1740) commented upon Valsalva's treatise in a series of "epistolae" where the contemporary literature on the subject was thoroughly surveyed, the confused terminology analyzed, and the descriptive anatomy of the palatal muscles discussed at length.

In the nineteenth century Dzondl (1831) was the first of a series of German authors to engage in the study of the palatal muscles. As mentioned earlier, in the first monograph devoted to the soft palate he reported on dissections and on examinations by palpation. He described in detail the anatomy and function of each of the muscles of this region. The importance of the superior constrictor in speech was pointed out by Petersen (1863, 1869). Luschka (1868), on the other hand, who published an extensive treatise on the human pharynx with many illustrations, upheld the importance of the palatopharyngeus muscle in velopharyngeal closure and considered the constrictor of very little significance. In the middle of the nineteenth century a great



deal of attention was also directed towards the function of the Eustachian tube, and among others Von Tröltsch (1861) made a careful study of the structure and function of the tensor and the levator as related to the opening and closure of the tube.

It is difficult to visualize the anatomy of the palatal muscles by reading and studying illustrations alone. Thus, in our century most writers in the field seem to have felt a need for making dissections of their own in order to arrive at a satisfactory three-dimensional concept. Dissections of palatal muscles have been reported by a great number of authors. Only a few of these have given a full account of their findings however and the reports are not in total agreement. To a certain extent this disagreement might be due to anatomical variations such as have been described by McMlyn (1910), Harrington (1944) and Bosma (1953) variations that on some points seem to be considerable. But there is also a difference of opinion as to classification and naming of certain muscle structures.

So far as the movements of the soft palate and velopharyngeal closure in speech are concerned, the present concept of the action of the individual palatal muscles is mainly based on information from dissections of cadavers, correlated with direct observation of palatal movements in living subjects.

Among modern authors McMlyn (1910) has given a thorough account of 6 dissections in this area, with emphasis on the salpingopharyngeus muscle. Harrington (1944) has related findings from dissections of 10 cadavers to measurements on palatopharyngeal configurations during phonation in 5 subjects. These measurements were obtained from motion picture films of one subject with a facial defect after maxillo-facial surgery and of one subject with a non-operated cleft of the palate, as well as from radiographs of 3 cleft palate subjects. Bosma (1953a) has dissected 18 cadaver specimens and correlated his anatomical observations with cinematographic studies of phonation and swallowing in 7 subjects — 6 with facial defects after tumor surgery and one with a wide cleft of the palate. Bloomer (1953) in his very detailed analysis of motion picture films from 2 subjects with facial defects, has also been able to draw certain inferences regarding the palatal muscles engaged in speech, swallowing and other activities.

A study of the literature has led to the following description of the palatal muscles and of their assumed functions, especially during speech (Fig. 1).

#### MUSCULUS TENSOR VELI PALATINI

*Anatomy.* The tensor is a flat muscle of triangular shape with its base along the anterior wall of the cartilaginous Eustachian tube, and its apex at the pterygoid hamulus. Arising partly from the spine of the sphenoid bone and the scaphoid fossa of the pterygoid process, and partly from the anterior wall of the tube, it descends almost vertically postero-medial to the medial pterygoid muscle and antero-lateral to the levator veli palatini muscle. Its tendon makes a right angle turn around the hamulus and spreads horizontally or slightly upwards forming the aponeurosis of the soft palate to which the other palatal muscles are attached.

The tensor is of a complex nature and consists of differently structured layers, where muscle and tendon fibers have a varied distribution. Some authors, like Terracol *et al.* (1919) recognized a superficial and a deep layer. Horner (1911) identified an outer

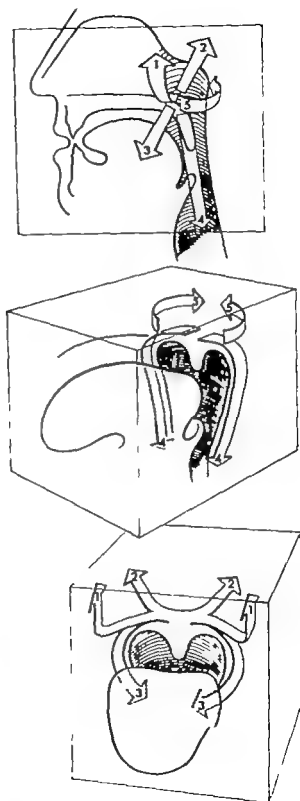


Fig. 1. Schematic presentation of the velopharyngeal muscles. The arrows indicate the approximate direction of their action and influence on the soft palate. 1. Tensor ... Levator 3. Palatoglossus 4. Palatopharyngeus 5. Superior constrictor

a middle and an inner layer while Deuschle *et al* (1960) in a study on cleft palate fetuses divided the muscle into a posterior an intermediate and an anterior part. The origin of muscle fibers from the hook of the auditory tube cartilage is generally agreed upon, while the origin of muscle fibers from the membranous wall of the tube has been disputed. Thus, McMlyn (1910) found that the tensor "usually arises from the posterior half of the membranous wall of the tube" but Körner (1911) denied this relationship. Rich (1920a) and Körner (1911) supported earlier authors by reporting the insertion of fibers on the hamulus, while McMlyn (1910) found little signs hereof.

The thickness of the fibers of the tensor muscle was studied by Körner (1911) who found that they were of approximately the same diameter as those of the trapezius muscle of the back. In his microscopic sections from the tensor he also observed muscle spindles, as did Winckler (1961).

**Innervation.** The mandibular branch of the trigeminal nerve which innervates the muscles of mastication also carries efferent motor fibers for the tensor veli palatini. This was clearly demonstrated in dogs by Rich (1920b) who stimulated the cranial nerves and observed the exposed tensor. The nerve supplying the medial pterygoid muscle gives off a small twig entering the lateral aspect of the tensor posteriorly according to Broomhead (1951).

**Function.** Some textbooks still classify the tensor as an elevator of the soft palate, but most modern researchers agree that, when the tensor muscles contract, they depress the anterior part of the velum. They also make it tense and effect an opening of the Eustachian tubes. Contraction of the tensors is known to occur during swallowing. In dogs, Rich (1920a) elicited the swallowing reflex and observed contraction of the tensor with accompanying opening of the Eustachian tube. When stimulating the tensor electrically he also noted "a tension of the fibrous expansion of its tendon in the soft palate. It can be seen that this latter effect does not actually modify the condition of the soft palate very much, for it appears to be concerned chiefly with that portion which is immediately adjacent to the hard palate — the so-called fibrous prolongation of the hard palate — and this fibrous prolongation possesses a definite stiffness even when the tensor palati is at rest." When viewing the palate from above in a human subject with a facial defect Wardill & Whillis (1936) noted that during swallowing "dimples appeared on each side indicating that the tensors were contracting to flatten and lower the level of the palatal aponeurosis, and in this way to push the bolus on its journey. In no other movement of the palate was any action of the tensors seen."

The contribution of the tensors to speech is doubtful. Rich (1920a) found no evidence of contraction of the tensors during "simple levation" of the velum. Wardill & Whillis (1936) concluded that "the tensor palati would appear to have little to do with the speech mechanism, its activity being strongest at the time of deglutition." Bloomer (1953) however registered "tensor depressions" in the anterior part of the soft palate in one of his two subjects "during speech and blowing as well as during deglutition, suggesting that the action of the tensor is synchronized and coordinated with that of the levator palatini and other pharyngeal muscle groups." Calnan (1953) also studying a subject with a facial defect, noted that during speech "the action of the

tensor palati muscles could be seen tensing the anterior half of the palate then followed a little preliminary elevation of the palate, and finally the normal full elevation as the word was uttered." Studying the movements of the soft palate in speech by means of radioecopy Wilms (1953) inferred a synergistic activity of the tensor and palatoglossal muscles during the formation of nasal sounds.

#### MUSCULUS LEVATOR VELI PALATINI

*Anatomy.* The levator is a slender muscle of even dimensions along its course from the base of the skull to the palate. It arises from a small area in front of the canalis caroticus, and descends in a fronto-medial direction along the posterior and inferior border of the Eustachian tube. It inserts into the middle third of the soft palate where its fibers spread, meet the levator fibers from the opposite side and interlace with the other palatal muscles, particularly the palatopharyngeus. The levator is one of the least variable muscles in the pharynx, according to Bosma (1953a).

When measuring the cross-sectional dimensions of the levator fibers in microscopic sections, Hörner (1911) arrived at figures close to those for the facial and ocular muscles, well below the corresponding figures for the tensor. In spite of considerable effort he was unable to identify muscle spindles in the levator nor could Vidic do so, according to Winckler (1961).

*Innervation.* The levator is innervated by the pharyngeal plexus, commonly held to supply all the palatal and upper pharyngeal muscles except the tensor and the uvular muscle, according to Broomhead (1901). The pharyngeal plexus is composed of branches from the glossopharyngeus, the vagus and the sympathetic trunk.

There has been a great deal of disagreement about the innervation of the levator as reviewed by Goweres (1919) and Vidic (1961). It now seems well established, however, that the motor fibers to the levator leave the skull with the bulbar portion of the accessory nerve as demonstrated in dogs by Rich (1920). These fibers join the vagus very soon after leaving the skull. In dissections on human cadavers Broomhead (1951) found that a twig from the pharyngeal branch of the vagus enters the levator on the lower posterior border after passing over the superior constrictor muscle. According to Vidic (1961) fibers from the glossopharyngeus consistently join the vagus fibers assigned to the levator.

*Function.* By contraction of the levator muscles the mid-portion of the soft palate is moved upwards and backwards. The levator has a crucial influence on the position of the soft palate. It is therefore no doubt the most important of the muscles accomplishing velopharyngeal closure in speech, as shown by Bosma (1953b, 1955). In his studies on patients with sequelae from bulbar poliomyelitis.

#### MUSCULUS PALATOGLOSSUS

*Anatomy.* The palatoglossus is a small muscle 1.5 mm thick and 3 mm broad at the level of the anterior pillar according to Luschka (1868). Arising from transverse fibers within the tongue it ascends in the anterior pillar of the fauces to the palate. Its fibers insert on the lower side of the palatal aponeurosis. There are no major discrepancies in the descriptions of the palatoglossus, and it has received little attention by modern researchers.

**Innervation** The palatoglossus is supplied with motor fibers from the pharyngeal plexus according to Gomez (1919) and Broomhead (1951)

**Function** When the palatoglossus muscles contract, the palate is lowered and drawn forwards. It acts as an antagonist to the levator as pointed out by van Gelder (1965). It also participates in the elevation of the posterior part of the tongue. According to Negus (1918) it effects closure of the retro-oral portal, preparatory to swallowing. Borra (1957) however attributed this activity mainly to the tensor veli palati. As mentioned above Wilms (1953) inferred that the palatoglossus muscles in cooperation with the tensors, are active in the production of nasal sounds.

#### MUSCULUS PALATOPHARYNGEUS

**Anatomy** The palatopharyngeus is considerably larger than the palatoglossus. It has a wide origin from the back and side walls of the pharynx and from the thyroid cartilage. Its fibers converge towards the palate. The vertically oriented, anterior fibers of the muscle constitute the stroma of the posterior pillars. Inserting into the palate posteriorly and laterally its fibers are divided into two strands by the descending levator muscle.

There are many variations and considerable disagreement in descriptions of the palatopharyngeus muscle. Some authors, like Wood Jones (1910) distinguish two separate muscles the palatohyoidemus and the "true" palatopharyngeus, the former anterior passing from the larynx in the posterior pillars to the palate the latter enclosing the pharynx and giving rise to a third fold behind the pillars of the fauces. A variable number of fibers from the palatopharyngeus also insert into the tip of the medial cartilaginous wall of the Eustachian tube. They may be regarded as forming a separate muscle, the salpingopharyngeus described in detail by McNally (1910). This muscle produces a sharp ridge concave medially on the lateral pharyngeal wall of the pharynx, just below and behind the tube" according to Wardill & Whillis (1936) the salpingopharyngeal fold. The caudal extension of this fold — visible in normal subject during gagging and in some cleft palate subject when phonating "ah" — is probably identical with "the third fold" of Wood Jones (1910) mentioned above "which marks the true palatopharyngeus".

There are divergent opinions regarding the upper margin of the palatopharyngeus insert on on the back wall of the pharynx. Thus following Luschka (1868) most text books of anatomy indicate that it is at the level of the hyoid bone whereas Wood Jones (1910) insisted that the upper fibers of the palatopharyngeus have a nearly horizontal course. As Borra & Fletcher (1962) pointed out, there is an intimate and intimate relationship between the palatopharyngeus and the superior constrictor at this level. Trendelenburg's (1910) is graphic "The muscles on the posterior pharyngeal wall are not as distinct and separate as the diagrams in the text books of anatomy would have one to believe. The fibers of the superior constrictor and the palatopharyngeus are often so hopelessly entangled in the human subject that it is impossible to say where one muscle begins and the other ends. It can definitely be stated, however, that the fibers that form the highest part of the muscular coat of the pharynx generally arise from the palate and if they do not, the fibers situated immediately below them have this origin. These fibers take a definitely upward course

when passing from the palate to the pharynx inferiorly they are on the same plane as and intermingled with, fibers that pass horizontally round the pharynx from the palate and these again are blended with fibers that pass more and more obliquely downwards till the most anterior ones form the posterior pillars of the fauces."

*Innervation.* The palatopharyngeus derives its motor nerve supply from the pharyngeal plexus, according to Gosserez (1919) and Broomhead (1931)

*Function.* When the palatopharyngeus muscles contract the soft palate is pulled in a dorso-caudal direction, the posterior pillars are stretched and adducted, the lateral walls of the upper pharynx are brought medially and the larynx and pharyngeal walls are elevated.

The palatopharyngeus obviously plays an important rôle in swallowing as demonstrated a series of reports by Bosma (1933 a.o.). It can also be considered commonly accepted that the palatopharyngeus is active in the production of velopharyngeal closure during speech. The simultaneous contractions of the palatopharyngeus and the levator muscles position the soft palate horizontally an interpretation brought forward by Luschka (1868) reemphasized by Podvisek (1952) repeated by Bloomer (1933) and stressed by Bosma & Fletcher (1962). The latter authors also argued that, in phonation, "the apposition of the pharyngeal wall and dorsal aspect of the palate is commonly on a rapid temporal schedule. By anatomic inference it is an action of the inner and most medial portion of the palatopharyngeus.

#### MUSCULUS CONSTRUCTOR PHARYNGIS SUPERIOR

*Anatomy.* The superior constrictor constitutes the muscular coat of the upper pharynx, forming a broad band loop open anteriorly. Its fibers are oriented in a mainly horizontal direction. Four parts are distinguished. According to classical descriptions *Pars pterygopharyngea* is attached to the lower half of the medial pterygoid plate and to the hamulus. *Pars buccopharyngea* inserts into the pterygo-mandibular raphe. *Pars mylopharyngea* attached to the inside of the mandible posteriorly. *Pars glossopharyngea* inserts into the tongue. The most cranial of these, *Pars pterygopharyngea*, is the one most closely related to velopharyngeal closure.

Whillis (1930) described a palatal origin of superior constrictor fibers and suggested a name for this portion, "the palato-pharyngeal sphincter." In none of his specimens could any constrictor fibers be found attached to the medial pterygoid plate, the bony attachment of these fibers at this level was limited to the hamulus. Harrington (1944) found constrictor origin in the palate in 8 dissections out of 10. He also reported finding a consistent interconnection between the palatopharyngeus and the pterygopharyngeus muscles. This occurred by means of many individual fibers rather than through a large separate strand. "In most cases the connection between the two muscles was so close that it was almost impossible to separate the two." Bosma (1933a) emphasized the cranial tity of the constrictor musculature particularly of its anterior origin, but also of its degree of accentuation in the lateral and posterior walls at the level of the palate.

*Innervation.* The superior constrictor derives its motor nerve supply from the pharyngeal plexus according to Gosserez (1919) and Broomhead (1931).

*Function* When the superior constrictor contracts, the upper pharynx is narrowed. This contraction is no doubt most effective in the lateral pharyngeal walls but it also gives rise to a slight forward bulging of the posterior pharyngeal wall. In some subjects this takes the form of a transversal fold, "Passavant's ridge." The palatal insertions exert a backward pull on the soft palate. In swallowing, the superior constrictor plays a very important rôle as shown by Bosma (1953b). In speech its importance has been advocated by many authors since Passavant (1863) among them Wardill & Whillis (1936), Harrington (1914), Bloomer (1953) and Calnan (1953).

When scrutinizing the literature on the functions of the superior constrictor and palatopharyngeus muscles, one must conclude that the available material is confusing. It seems wise to take the standpoint of Bosma & Fletcher (1962). "Thus, a difference of opinion exists as to whether the convergence of the pharynx about the palate represents action of the palatopharyngeus or of the constrictor. When we note that in the human and in a variety of subhuman species the palatopharyngeus originates at the dorsal and lateral walls of the pharynx and migrates toward the palate in close juxtaposition to the constrictor from which it originates, it can be seen that there is little point of profit to attempted embryologic, mechanical or nomenclologic distinctions of this sort."

#### MUSCLES UULAE

*Anatomy* The uvular muscle is a paired, slender muscle, constituting the mid-line structure of the soft palate under its nasal mucosa. It arises from the back of the hard palate and overlies the other palatal muscles on its way to its insertion into the tip of the uvula. According to Voth (1961) some fibers from the palatopharyngeus muscle pass over the uvular muscle posteriorly.

*Innervation* The uvular muscle derives its nerve supply from the lesser palatine nerves of the facial nerve, according to Bromhead (1951).

*Function* When the uvular muscles contract they shorten the uvula. The significance of the uvular muscle function is doubtful. There is no information on its possible participation in speech.

#### ELECTROMYOGRAPHIC STUDIES OF THE PALATAL MUSCLES

In the study of speech and voice production EMG has attracted considerable interest in recent years. From acoustic analyses, from aerodynamic cinefluorographic and other studies a wealth of data on the peripheral mechanisms of speech is now available. EMG, however, represent a step in a central direction, a challenging tool to approach the speech motor commands of the central nervous system.

The application of EMG in speech research has been surveyed and discussed by Cooper (1965), Fromkin (1965) and Fromkin & Ladefoged (1966). EMG-studies of the palatal muscles in humans have been reported by a number of investigators.

Li & Lundervold (1958) used concentric needle electrodes and an oral approach to the palatal muscles in 5 normal and 11 cleft palate subjects. They reported on difficulties in exploring the soft palate muscles individually but they claimed that they were able "to distinguish the tensor palati from the remaining muscles." "The ap-

pearance and behavior of the motor units registered from the tensor palati and from the remaining palatine muscle were identical." "The duration did not exceed 3 milliseconds, average 1.6 milliseconds"

Hoodbent & Swinyard (1959) used monopolar insulated needle electrodes and an oral approach in 18 cleft palate patients that had been subjected to palatopharyngeal flap operations. They recorded muscle action potentials from the flap pedicle and from other palatal muscles during swallowing. "Similar electromyographic patterns in voltage, frequency and waveform were noted in the pharyngeal flap as well as in normal tensor palatini, levator palatini and the superior constrictor. On the basis of these studies it is felt that the pharyngeal flap is a dynamic muscular unit. These authors also stated that the optical and acoustical displays of the tensor EMG were regularly different from those of the levator whereas the levator and the constrictor were found similar in this respect.

Basmajian & Datta (1961) used flexible bipolar needle electrodes and an oral approach in 10 normal subjects. Recordings were made from the levator and the superior middle and inferior constrictors while the subject was sucking water through a straw and during swallowing. They found that the levator was slightly active during suction, but the constrictors remained inactive. Data on "duration of EMG-activity" and "average amplitude" during swallowing were also presented.

Harris, Schrey *et al.* (1962) used suction cup surface electrodes in a study on oral and nasal labial stops. For the nasal /m/ no activity was observed anywhere in the palatal region. For /p/ and /b/ however there is an identical burst of activity which can be measured on either superior or inferior palatal surface.

Fritzell (1963) presented a preliminary report on a nasal approach with concentric needle electrodes in a study of connected speech.

Hering, Hoppe *et al.* (1965) used concentric needle electrodes and an oral approach in 40 cleft palate subjects. They compared the number of action potentials recorded from various parts of the soft palate during phonation with the speech proficiency of the subject.

Iwashita (1965) used a Frenchman tube catheter to design a special concentric needle which he introduced in the nasal cavity and inserted into the superior surface of the soft palate. He assigned the activity recorded by this electrode to the levator and studied its relationships to EMG-recordings from ML orbicularis oris and ML cricoarytenoides lateralis during the production of Japanese speech sounds. The delay between onset of EMG-activity and onset of audio signal was measured, as well as the "electrical potential" in  $\mu V$  for various vowels and syllables. He found considerable intra-subject and inter-subject variations.

Cooper (1965) surveying EMG-research at the Haskins Laboratories, described some pilot studies on the palatal muscles by means of surface electrodes. The preliminary findings indicated close relationship between EMG-activity in the posterior soft palate and velopharyngeal closure. A partial, but less close, relationship was found between EMG-activity in the posterior pillar and velopharyngeal closure.

Böhme-Sam *et al.* (1966) used concentric needle electrodes and an oral approach to the tensor and levator muscles claiming that optimal EMG-recording could not be obtained trans-orally. They studied respiration and sustained vowel sounds in 10 nor-



mal subjects and found a difference in EMG-activity between the levator and the tensor muscles.

Lubker & Curtis (1966) used surface electrodes and an oral approach in a study where palatal EMG and cinefluorography were carried out simultaneously. Variations in velar position and EMG-activity were studied "during the production of sustained vowel and nasal phonemes and during alterations in duration and phonetic context. The hypothesis that the velum acts in an all-or none (on-off) fashion was rejected. Lubker's more extensive accounts of this study will be commented upon in chapter III.

In conclusion, this review of the literature indicates that the overall EMG-activity recorded from the soft palate is closely related to the production of oral speech sounds and to velopharyngeal closure. The information on the discrete activity of the individual palatal muscles in speech is very limited, however, and the available data must be interpreted with great caution. The majority of the authors quoted have used needle electrodes and an oral approach. Besides the considerable difficulties in placing the electrodes correctly in the small tensor and levator muscles in this way and besides the tendency of needle electrodes to migrate in a highly mobile region like the pharynx, the procedures of this kind obviously interfere with articulation, which seriously limit their use in the study of speech.

No intra muscular recordings have been made from the superior constrictor, palatoglossus or palatopharyngeus muscles during speech, and the EMG-findings from the tensor are not in agreement. It is highly desirable to develop technique to make intra muscular recordings from all muscles that control velopharyngeal closure. Likewise it is very important that these recording procedures do not influence the movements of the vocal tract during speech.

## II A QUALITATIVE STUDY OF THE ACTIVITY OF THE PALATAL MUSCLES BY MEANS OF ELECTROMYOGRAPHY

### MATERIAL AND METHODS

The procedures used in the present investigation were developed at the University of Göteborg. To a minimum interference with articulation as much as possible it was decided to insert the electrodes for the tensor levator and superior constrictor muscles through the nasal cavities into the side walls of the epipharynx. A series of dissections on fresh human specimens were performed to study the topography of the tensor and levator muscles in relation to the orifice of the Eustachian tube. With a conventional type of concentric needle electrodes (DISA 13K53 and 13K54) recordings were made from subjects with facial defects and from normals, and the preliminary results were reported (Fritzell, 1963). Since the placement of these electrodes was very difficult and unreliable in normal subjects, another type of electrode was designed and manufactured, as described in the next section. Procedures to insert this electrode and to support it during the recordings were worked out and tested on a great number of subjects, before it was felt that the electrodes could be inserted without undue discomfort to the subjects and the muscles located with a fair degree of success.

During this long preparatory phase of the investigation, recordings were made from altogether 18 subjects with facial defects after maxillary tumour surgery and 81 normal subjects. The experimental data upon which the present report is based, were obtained at the University of Michigan, where the study was completed.

### INSTRUMENTATION

An outline of the instrumentation used in this study is presented in the block diagram of Fig. 2.

*Electrodes.* In the present study two kinds of electrodes were used. For the *transnasal approach* to the tensor levator and superior constrictor muscles a special type of "monopolar" needle electrode was designed (Fig. 3) similar to the electrode described by Iwasbata (1965). A piano wire (steel, 0.4 mm in diam.) was cut to a length of 200 mm. One end was bent to the form of a small loop to serve as a handle. The wire was coated with 6 layers of Araldite varnish, following a procedure reported by Reichmann and Jonsson (1963) to produce electric insulation. The straight end of the wire was then ground at an angle of 20–30° to form a needle for insertion. One conductor of a small, shielded, two-conductor cable was soldered to the loop of piano wire. The other conductor of the cable was soldered to a small connector. A Eustachian tube silencer catheter was used to guide the piano wire electrode to the side wall of the epipharynx during the insertion and to support it during the experiment. The catheter was externally insulated by rubber except at the very tip. A small connector was attached to it to mate with the connector of the two-conductor cable. A small plastic tube of appropriate length was used to facilitate the passage of the piano wire electrode.

This coating was performed by the Department of Anatomy, University of Göteborg, and the able help of Drs. Jonsson and Reichmann is acknowledged.

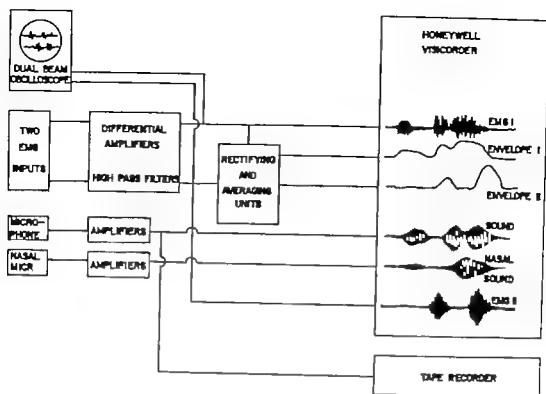


Fig 2 Block diagram of the electromyographic and sound recording equipment used in this study

through the silver catheter and to act as an extra insulation. Electromyograms obtained with this electrode represent the voltage between the tip of the piano wire in the muscle and the tip of the silver catheter in contact with the mucous membrane. The area of the uncoated tip of the piano wire was calculated to be approximately  $0.6 \text{ mm}^2$ .

For the *transoral approach* to the muscles of the pillars of the fauces a very fine flexible bipolar wire electrode was used (Fig. 4) a type of electrode described by Basmajian and Stecko (1962). Two pieces of wire (karma alloy wire polyurethane enameled,  $0.05 \text{ mm}$  in diameter<sup>2</sup>) were cut to a length of  $200 \text{ mm}$  and passed through a short hypodermic needle of small size Swedish gauge 20. The polyurethane insulation was burned off at the ends of the wires leaving approximately  $1 \text{ mm}$  bare at the needle tip where the wires bent to produce two hooks. The hypodermic needle was used to insert the wires. When it was withdrawn the hooks held the wires in the muscle. After the experiment a gentle pull caused the hooks to straighten out so that the wires were released. Electromyograms obtained with this bipolar electrode represent the voltage between the tips of the two wires. The area of the uncoated tip of one wire was

<sup>2</sup> manufactured by Driver Electric Corp., Harrison, New Jersey U.S.A. supplied to the author by Dr B. Jonsson, Department of Anatomy University of Göteborg.

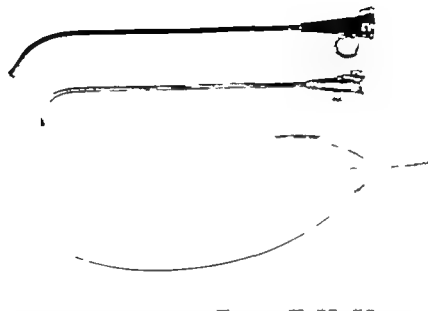


Fig. 3. Eustachian tube catheters and piano wire electrode. Note the different degrees of curvature of the catheters: the upper catheter is used for insertions into the levator and superior constrictor muscles; the lower catheter bent at an angle of  $90^\circ$  is used for the insertion into the tensor muscle. The piano wire electrode is shown with fine plastic tubing covering the whole length except for the very tip. During the passage through the catheter the plastic tubing covers and protects the sharpened tip of the piano wire.

calculated to be approximately  $0.16 \text{ mm}^2$ . The electrodes were sterilized before usage by exposure to ethylene oxide gas for 6 hours at a temperature of  $66^\circ \text{C}$  ( $148^\circ \text{F}$ ).

**Amplifiers.** A modified Honeywell Electronic Medical System was used. Each EMG channel had a differential vacuum tube amplifier driving a differential transistor amplifier. The RC coupling network between stages in the vacuum tube amplifiers was selected to provide a low frequency cut-off at  $40 \text{ Hz}$  (12-dB-per-octave rejection). Each input unit had a calibration oscillator providing a signal of  $600 \mu\text{V}$  peak to peak. The amplification of the EMG-signals was kept constant during the experiments described in this chapter. It was set to give a display of  $25 \text{ mm}$  for the  $0.6 \text{ mV}$  calibrating signal in both channels.

**Oscilloscope.** — *Monitor.* A Du Mont, type 322 dual-beam cathode-ray oscillograph was used as a monitor.

**Rectifying and averaging circuits.** Two identical electronic circuits were built to provide rectified and averaged envelope display of the muscle action potentials. (Electric circuit diagram, Fig. 5). The time constant of the RC filters was approximately  $25 \text{ msec}$ .



Fig. 4 The thin wire electrodes passed through the hypodermic needle which was used to insert them into the palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus muscles. The uncoated tips at the hooked ends of the wires are seen. (Magnification 3.4 x)

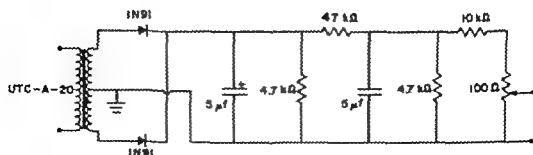


Fig. 5 A schematic diagram of the electrical stimulation unit.

From American Radio Shack.



Fig. 6. Left: A close-up of subject showing the adjustable glasses and levers supporting the Eustachian tube catheters and piano wire electrodes.

Right: An experimental subject seated in the comfortable chair in the recording room. The position of the microphone is shown, and the Oscilloscope-Monitor is seen through the window.

**Recorder.** The amplified muscle action potentials were recorded on a Honeywell 1108 Visicorder Oscillograph. The Visicorder provides a direct record on light-sensitive paper. The tracings are written by miniature galvanometers with mirrors deflecting the high intensity ultraviolet light from mercury spot lamp onto the moving paper. The records are automatically developed by a photolining process within a few seconds when exposed to fluorescent light or sunlight. The frequency response of the galvanometers used for the direct EMG-records was flat up to 1800 Hz. The rectified signal from the mean voltage circuits were fed into galvanometers with flat response up to 21 Hz. A paper speed of 50 mm per second was used in this study. Vertical time lines were produced on the record, at a frequency of 1 per second. The recording paper was Kodak Linagraph Direct Print Paper type 1813.

#### SOUND RECORDING EQUIPMENT

**Microphones.** Three types of microphones were used. For conventional recording of the speech signals a Sennheiser MD 3 dynamic, velocity type microphone was used. It was positioned close to the right angle of the mouth as seen in Fig. 6. For the recording of swallow sound a Sennheiser MM 51 magnetic throat microphone was used, placed on the side of the neck, lateral to the larynx. (Logan *et al.*, 1967). These two Sennheiser microphones were used alternately with the same amplifiers. In a few subjects recordings were also made with a small microphone inside the nasal cavity. For this purpose Knowles model 31 magnetic microphone BJ 1590 was used.<sup>1</sup> Its size was 1×5.5×7.8 mm. A thin shaft of aluminum, 15 mm long was glued to the microphone. The shaft enabled the experimenter to place the microphone in the nasal cavity. Thin plastic covers were used around the nasal microphone to prevent the spread of infections.

<sup>1</sup> The use of this miniature microphone inside the nasal cavity as an indicator of nasal resonance was suggested by Dr. Franklin Cooper, Haskins Laboratories, New York.

**Amplifiers** With the Sennheiser microphones an audio amplifier Am-1115/UNS-1 manufactured by Harvey Wells Electronics, Inc., Southbridge Massachusetts U.S.A. was used.

For the nasal microphone a small transistor audio amplifier was built, capable of amplifying the input signal 9 times.

From these audio amplifiers the signals were fed into a Honeywell Model T6GA Galvanometer amplifier.

**Recorders** The microphone signals were recorded on the Visicorder simultaneously with the EMG signal. The signals from the mouth and throat microphones were recorded by means of a galvanometer with a flat frequency response up to 1800 Hz. The nasal microphone signal was recorded by a galvanometer with a linear frequency response up to 1000 Hz.

The speech signals from the mouth microphone were also magnetically recorded on a Channel Master model 6130 tape recorder for auditory playback and correlation with the visual record from the visicorder.

## MATERIAL

The experimental subjects were 26 University of Michigan students, who had volunteered for the study. Only subjects who still had their tonsils were accepted. There were 14 males and 12 females, in ages ranging from 17 to 30 years. They originated from various parts of the U.S.A. and did not constitute a homogenous dialect group.

## PROCEDURES

**Recording room** The subjects were seated in a comfortable chair with head rest in a shielded and sound-treated room (Industrial Acoustics, model No. 60) (Fig. 6). The recording apparatus was located outside this room. A window and an intercommunication system allowed for observation and instructions from the experimenter who was also outside the room, operating the recording equipment during the experiment.

**Topical anesthesia** To avoid pain during the placement of the electrodes and during the experiment, the mucous membranes of the nasal cavities (along the inferior turbinate) and the epipharyngeal walls were painted with a solution of 5% cocaine HCl. Applicators shaped like Eustachian tube catheters were used to permit painting of the area below the tubal orifice.

**Placement of the electrodes** From dissections it has been established that the levator muscle was to be found immediately under the mucous membrane in an area below and behind the Eustachian tube orifice, and that the tensor was to be found somewhat deeper (more lateral) in an area posterior to the medial pterygoid plate; anterior to the levator and below the tube orifice (Fig. 7). To direct the piano wire electrodes to these two areas of insertion, Eustachian tube catheters of different degrees of bending were used. The catheters aimed at the tensor had an angle of 90° and those aimed at the levator were bent at an angle of 120–135° (Fig. 3).

The first step in the placement of the tensor and levator electrodes was to pass the catheter through the nasal cavity placing its inner end in the orifice of the Eustachian tube. This position was checked by inflation of air through the tube into the middle ear, and by listening to the noise produced through a rubber tube connecting the ear



Fig. 7 The right lateral wall of the epipharynx as seen on a specimen before the dissection. At the top the base of the skull is shown, and at the bottom part of the soft palate T, the left are the nasal conchae and to the right the back wall of the epipharynx. In the middle of the photo the orifice of the Eustachian tube is seen. The tensor of the soft palate can be found under the area T and the levator under the area L. (This figure is reproduced with the permission of the editor of *Folia Phoniatrica*, in which journal it was published in Vol. 15, 1963.)

canal of the subject to the ear canal of the experimenter. (The details of this routine procedure are described in textbooks of otorhinolaryngology.) During this inflation the curved end of the catheter was directed cranially and laterally at an angle of approximately 15° to the vertical plane. Following this control of the position the catheter was rotated laterally so that the curved end of the catheter had a horizontal position and the electrode would hit a point below the orifice of the Eustachian tube. The catheter was held in this position during the experiment by a pair of adjustable eyeglasses with levers and screws (Fig. 6). The electrodes were inserted in small steps under visual observation of the monitoring oscilloscope and the subjects were asked to phonate and to swallow. Recordings from the levator were obtained with depth of electrode insertion of 1–2 mm, while recordings from the tensor required an insertion of 4–5 mm. For the superior constrictor muscle a "levator-type" catheter was used. The catheter was passed through the nasal cavity to the back wall of the pharynx and its inferior end



elevated to provide an insertion of the electrode in the back wall at the estimated level of velopharyngeal closure. When a good recording from the constrictor was not obtained by this procedure the catheter was somewhat drawn back and rotated laterally to provide an electrode insertion in the side wall of the epipharynx posterior to the salpingo-pharyngeal fold. Ordinary mirror-epipharyngoscopy was made to check the position of the catheters in relation to the Eustachian tube orifice and the salpingo-pharyngeal fold. In sensitive subjects, gagging reflexes prevented the execution of this examination, however, and this check could not be carried out in all subjects. A successful examination of every subject might have been achieved by anesthetizing the mucous membrane of the throat but because minimal interference with the vocal tract was desirable this was not done.

The hypodermic needles with the fine wire electrodes used for recordings from the palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus muscles were passed through the mouth and inserted into the anterior and posterior pillar of the fauces respectively by means of a pair of Blakeley forceps for ethmoid surgery. The placement was made such that the uncoated tips of the wires became located 1–2 mm under the mucous membrane 5–10 mm from the point of insertion (Fig. 8). No topical anesthesia was used in this area.

The electrodes were inserted on the right or left side at random. It was felt that there was no difference between recordings from right and left, but this matter was not studied systematically.

The placement of the electrodes was often difficult, and a satisfactory EMG-recording was by no means always obtained. The over-all rate of success was 69%. In some subjects with deviations and bony masses of the septum a catheter could not be passed through the nasal cavity on one side. In some the dimensions of the epipharynx were such that the tensor catheter could not be rotated and properly positioned. In other subjects the catheters were properly placed as described above and still no satisfactory EMG-recordings from the levator and constrictor muscles could be obtained in spite of 2 or 3 repositionings of the electrode and attempts to locate each muscle. The rate of success was higher with the palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus muscles, most probably because the point of insertion could be observed visually. However the wire electrodes sometimes did not stay in the muscles but were pulled out by swallowing or other movements. Usually no more than 3 or 4 attempts were made to find a muscle and to obtain a good recording from it. The time limit for the whole experiment was set at 90 minutes.

A certain degree of discomfort was experienced by all subjects but there was a great deal of variation in this respect. For many the initial painting of the mucous membranes of the nose and epipharynx with the anesthetic solution was the most unpleasant part of the experiment. The passing of the catheter through the nose and the manipulation with the epipharyngeal wall was more disagreeable than the transoral approach to the pillars. A slight pain was sometimes experienced during the insertion of the piano wire electrodes into the epipharyngeal walls. A few subjects experienced discomfort from the ether and piano wire during swallowing but nobody reported discomfort or pain during speech. The fine wire electrodes in the pillars were usually not felt at all by the subjects except at the angle of the mouth. Most of the subjects tolerated

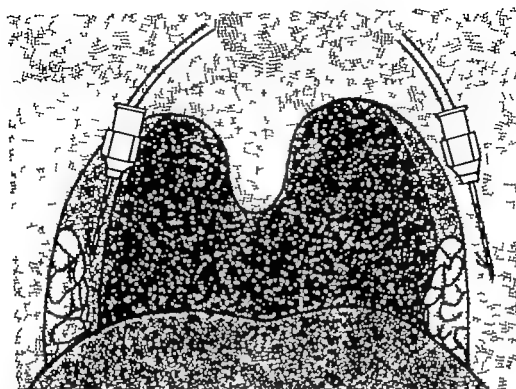


Fig. 2. A schematic drawing of the insertion of the hypodermic needles and the thin wire electrodes into the pillars of the fauces. The one on the reader's right is aimed at the palatopharyngeus muscle, and the one on his left at the palatopharyngeus.

the manipulations and electrode insertions very well and did not seem to mind at all. During the past two years the experimental subjects have routinely been asked after completion of the experiment whether they would come back for another session of the same kind. Out of some 60 subjects asked only 3 did not wish to do so.

*The recording program.* Various speech samples as well as other activities related to velopharyngeal closure were recorded. All subjects carried out the whole program.

1. Repeat the test sentences  
 "This is a foolish theory"  
 "Marilyn sneezed during every meal"  
 "It do not think so."
2. Read two lists of 18 VCV (vowel-consonant-vowel) utterances
3. Whisper say about "Mummy" "daddy"
4. Breathing — with an open mouth — through the nose — through the mouth, and through the nose
5. Oropharyngeal inflation with leak. Oral inflation with nose breathing
6. Swallow — whistle — blow — swallow  
 Suck water — swallow  
 Swallow — /a/ — swallow — /i/ — swallow  
 Chew a cracker — swallow

The VCV utterances consisted of the neutral vowel /ə/ followed by a voiced plosive sound /b/ /d/ /g/ or a nasal sound, /m/ /n/ /ŋ/ and ending with a stressed vowel /e/ /i/ or /u/. The total number of possible combinations is 18. Two lists of these were made with the order of utterances reversed.

The speech samples were primarily selected to demonstrate the differences in the production of oral and nasal sounds. The first sentence was composed by oral sounds only with a number of voiceless fricatives, for which a competent velopharyngeal closure appears to be particularly important. In the second and third sentence there were both oral and nasal sounds, the second sentence beginning with a nasal consonant. The VCV utterances were chosen to demonstrate the difference between voiced oral plosives and their corresponding nasal sounds, and the difference between low and high vowels.

*Instruction of the subjects.* Before the experiment the subject was given a short period of training in the performance of the program. During the recording an assistant gave the instructions for the various items in the recording program to the subject one by one. A signal was given to tell the experimenter to start the recorder, and following this a signal was given to the subject to go ahead with his performance of the assigned task.

*Examination of the records.* In this part of the investigation which is of a descriptive qualitative type, the records were judged mainly by visual inspection. In the case of the VCV utterances the rectified and averaged display of the electromyograms were also traced and superimposed as described by Cooper (1965) and Fromkin (1965) in order to somewhat "counteract" the random variation of the EMG curves and facilitate the evaluation.

## RESULTS

The figures 9—14 and 18—23 are representative examples of the electromyographic records. The symbols of the international phonetic alphabet have been used to indicate the nature of the speech sample, and the symbols have been lined up with the corresponding event in the microphone tracings. The phonetic transcription represents what the subject was supposed to say during the recording. Dialectal variations and omissions of sounds has not been considered. The phonetic text thus represents the target speech sample rather than a close transcription of what was actually said.

The duration of each record, from the onset to the termination of the tracings has been given in the legend.

### GENERAL FINDING

As mentioned, the overall rate of successful placement of the electrodes was 69%. Consequently, when the time limit set for the experiment allowed for attempts to record from all 5 muscles of one subject, satisfactory recordings were usually obtained only from 3 or 4 of these. The upper trapezius was more difficult to locate properly than any of the other four. Of 119 attempts to record from this muscle only 10 were successful. In the full written report on the findings for any one muscle is based upon at least 10 recordings from different subjects.

With few exceptions the electromyograms showed absence of activity in all the muscles during rest and quiet breathing. In speech and in the other activities studied, there was a varying degree of EMG-activity. The onset, presence and termination of activity varied between muscles, and more or less typical overall patterns of behavior could be distinguished.

The amplitude of the EMG varied considerably from one recording to another. Thus, measured from peak to peak, the maximum amplitude of the interference pattern records obtained from 18 levator muscles in different subjects during speech ranged from 0.3 mV to 2.5 mV with a mean of 1 mV. An amplitude variation of the same order was recorded for the various muscles within one subject. Most probably these inter individual and intra-individual voltage differences are caused by variations in the electrode placement, and they can not be held to reflect any real differences. A high amplitude signal primarily indicates that the electrode is located close to active motor units, whereas a low amplitude indicates recording at a certain distance from active motor units. This interpretation of the voltage variations is supported by the findings from repeated recordings in the same subjects at different occasions. During the recording from one muscle however the maximum amplitude usually varied within small limits and only in a few isolated records were obvious changes noted, indicating that a definite change in the position of the electrode had taken place.

### SPEECH

*Sentences.* In the recordings 15th sentences which were repeated by the subjects, the activity of the muscles during connected speech was displayed.

In the first of these sentences "This is a foolish theory" (Fig. 9) made up of oral speech sounds only the levator showed continuous activity. The onset of this activity preceded the onset of sound. The termination of the levator activity occurred slightly before or simultaneously with the termination of phonation. The degree of activity showed fluctuations during the performance. In some cases increased activity occurred with the stressed syllables of the sentence, in others the peaks of activity seemed to be primarily related to the production of the fricative sounds. During the production of "Marilyn sneezed during every meal" (Fig. 10) the levator demonstrated bursts of action potentials alternating with periods of or very little activity these latter periods being closely related to the production of nasal sounds. The levator activity always preceded the onset of the initial /m/ but the degree of this initial activity was low. The // in this sentence surrounded by nasal sounds was invariably preceded by a high peak of levator activity. In "I do not think so" (Figs. 11 and 12) the levator typically showed 3 periods of activity related to the 3 groups of oral sounds in this sentence. This on and off pattern of the levator EMG in relation to the oral and nasal sounds always preceded the corresponding event in the acoustic recording. The characteristics of the levator activity described above were very consistent and occurred in all recordings from this muscle.

The activity of the tensor during connected speech varied considerably (Figs. 13 and 14). In 11 out of the 15 recordings from this muscle there was very little activity or none at all. In those instances where a fair degree of activity was recorded, there was little agreement between subjects. Apart from the onset of activity before the onset

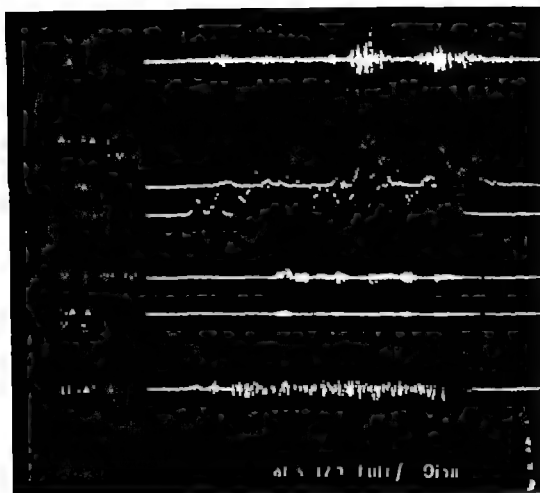


Fig. 9. A recording of the sentence "This is a foolish theory." The activity of the levator starts off before the onset of the microphone signal and continues throughout the utterance and ends at the end of phonation. The palatoglossus is initially weakly active (first period of silence). With the transition from /t/ to /r/ there is a burst of activity and to the end of phonation. There is very little response in the nasal microphone — (bottom of the recording) shown at 1 s.

of sound and a peak of activity in the beginning of the sentence; no consistent mode of "behavior" was found.

The sentence recordings from the *superior constrictor* were similar to those of the levator (Fig. 12). The constrictor was active during the production of oral sounds, and its activity was weak or absent during the production of nasal sounds. The onset of /s/ in "Marilyn needed" was always accompanied by a burst of potential of high amplitude.

The *palatoglossus* muscle showed weak activity or was completely silent in the beginning of "This is a foolish theory" (Fig. 9) but it demonstrated strong bursts of potential during with the transition from /t/ to /r/ in "foolish" and with the termination of the sentence. In "Marilyn needed during every meal" the palatoglossus was

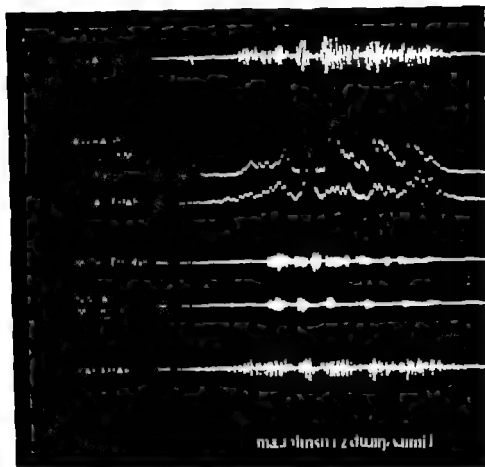


Fig. 10. A recording of the sentence "Marilyn sneezed during every meal". The levator muscle is active before the onset of phonation, but only to a moderate degree. Alternating periods of high and low activity follow related to the production of oral and nasal speech sounds, respectively. The highest peak is for the /s/ between the two nasal sounds. The palatopharyngeus activity is apparently synchronous with that of the levator; the only major difference seems to be that it shows a peak in the averaged levator EMG, but no corresponding peak in the palatopharyngeus envelope. — Duration 3.3 s.

inactive or weakly active with the onset of the sentence, but demonstrated bursts of potentials preceding the nasal sounds within the sentence and at the termination of phonation. During the production of oral sounds the activity was weak or absent. Likewise in "I do not think so" (Figs. 11 and 14) the palatoglossus was active in the beginning for the nasal sounds and at the end.

The recordings from the palatopharyngeus muscle (Figs. 10 and 13) during connected speech showed a great deal of variation. In all subjects there was some activity, but often of a low degree. In those where a more active participation was noted the activity appeared to be related mostly to nasal sounds, and bursts of potentials often occurred with the onset of /f/ nasal sound. Within a sentence were usually preceded by a decrease in activity. These features, however, were not as clear and consistent as were



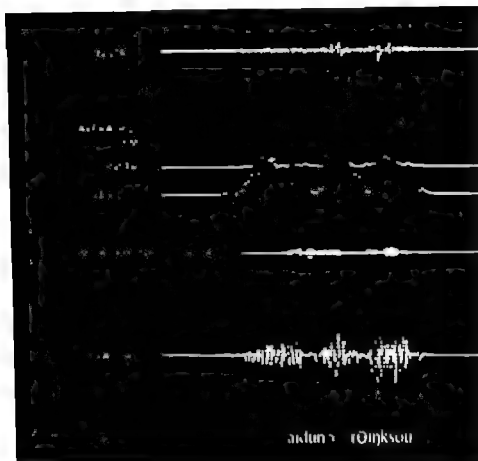


Fig. 12. A recording of the sentence "I do not think so". The top trace shows the same pattern as described for fig. 11; the constriction likewise shows three bursts of activity synchronous with the vowel bursts, but with far fewer spikes. — Duration 2.3 s.

tended to insert the plosive sound /g/ between the /p/ and the final vowel. Therefore these /p/ words were for the most part disregarded in the subsequent study of the data.

In the evaluation of the recordings from these VCV-utterances, attention was primarily directed towards the rectified and averaged displays of the electromyograms. These envelopes were traced on tracing paper and superimposed (Fig. 15). The account given below is mainly based upon the inspection of these superimposed envelopes. In a few selected cases the height of the envelopes was measured at 40-msec intervals and averaged to produce a single curve representing 1 or more envelopes (Figs. 16, 17). This is a time-consuming procedure which, as suggested by Fromki (1965) and others, should preferably be carried out with the aid of a computer.



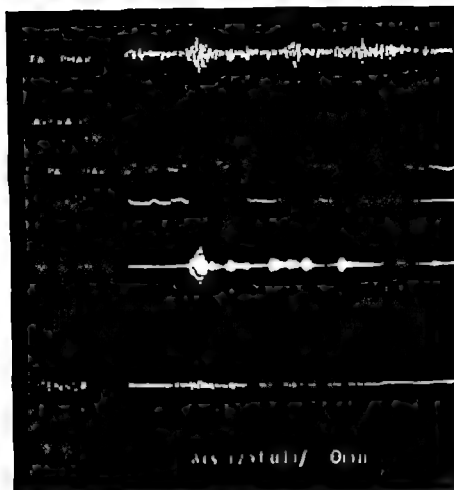


Fig. 13. A recording of the sentence "This is (switch the) ry". The palatopharyngeal group is not continuously active in this case but has a short period of relatively high activity of varying degrees of intensity. The strongest of these bursts seem to be related to the initial differences and to the end of phonation. The sensorimotor activity in the motor (mainly during the period) is related to the strong burst of the palatopharyngeal group. — Duration 3.5 s.

measuring at shorter interval from tape recorded electromyograms and a eraging over at least 20 samples of each utterance.

The activity of the levator was considerably higher in the oral consonant utterances than in those with a nasal consonant (Figs. 15, 16, 18). This was a consistent finding. When the three final vowels were compared, different degrees of levator activity were also noted the most common finding being an increase from /a/ over /i/ to /u/. These differences were more marked and more often found in the nasal consonant utterances than in the oral ones. No difference could be distinguished between the three different voiced stop sounds except in a single subject who showed a "dip" of the envelope corresponding to the production of /b/ or /g/-sound. No difference was found between the /m/ and /n/-sound productions.

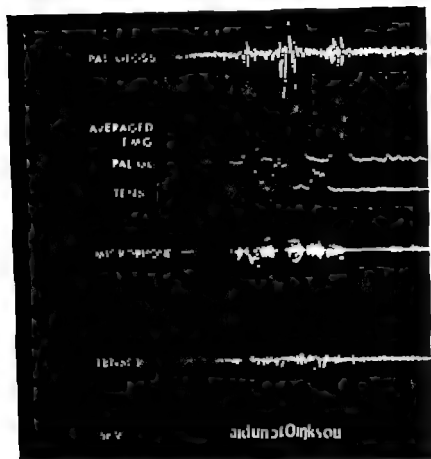


Fig. 14. A recording of the sentence "I do not think so". The palatoglossus characteristically shows some activity before the onset of phonation and then three bursts of spikes related to the nasal sounds, and the end of phonation (compare Fig. 11). The tensor here shows 3 periods of activity the first almost simultaneous with palatoglossus burst, but the two following once more and more out of phase. — Duration 2.6 s.

In 9 subjects out of 12 the tensor showed none or very little activity during the VCV utterances. In those three cases where the envelopes were of magnitude that allowed for tracings to be made there was little agreement between subjects.

The activity of the superior constrictor was similar to that of the levator. There was more activity during the production of oral than nasal utterances. Likewise, the activity during the production of the final vowel tended to increase in the series /a/ — /i/ — /u/.

The palatoglossus muscle usually showed light activity during the production of the first vowel /a/. Often the onset of this activity preceded the onset of sound. In all subjects the muscle was completely inactive or showed a very low degree of activity corresponding to the production of the /b/ and /d/-sounds, whereas a burst of palatoglossus activity occurred during the production of the /g/ and /k/-sounds.

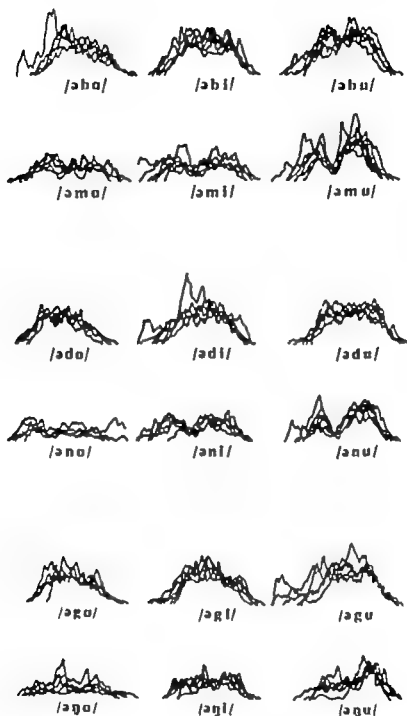


Fig. 1. Superimposed tracings of the left ear on-ear plot for 12 series of VCX-utterances by subject radiating rather high period. The tracings (one for each utterance) have been lined up at the same point, i.e., the onset of the second vowel of the monophthong record. It can be seen that there is more consistency in the oral tracings than in the nasal ones. If comparisons are made horizontally, consistent increase in the height of the envelope is seen for the final vowel, from /a/ to /i/ to /u/. The tendency is also seen for all consonant sounds, but more marked for nasal utterances. Comparisons made vertically do not show any differences except for the oral-nasal distinction: there is no essential difference between the envelopes for /ba/ /da/ and /ga/ etc.



## PALATOGLOSSUS

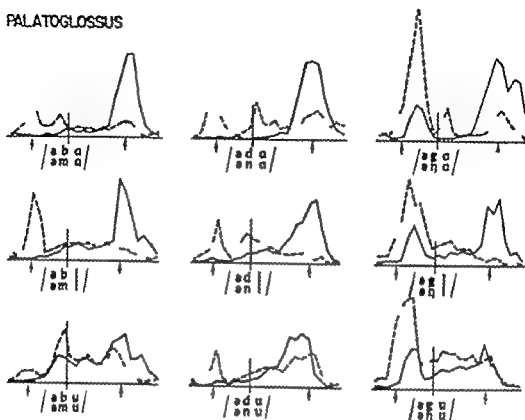


Fig. 1. A 3x3 grid of palatoglossus activity traces from the palatoglossus in one of our subjects. Each curve represents an average of 5 utterances. The solid lines represent the oral utterances and the broken lines the nasal utterances. Arrows indicate average onset and end of phonation. Vertical lines indicate the onset of the final vowel. The difference between oral and nasal utterances is marked. The peak of activity corresponding to the onset of the final vowel is marked. The peak of activity for /g/ is noticeably higher for palatoglossus activity than for /g/. These palatoglossus activity traces are markedly different from those in Fig. 16.

palatoglossus potential preceded the /g/-sound. Likewise there was always a marked activity related to the /p/ sound and this activity was more pronounced than the /g/ activity in 12 of the 16 cases. There was a great deal of variation between subjects in palatoglossus activity during the production of the final vowel; there seemed to be no consistent, systematic relationship (compare Fig. 16 and Fig. 17). Most subjects demonstrated a marked activity at the termination of phonation, and this activity was usually higher for /u/ than for /a/ and /i/.

The palatopharyngeus recordings from the VCV utterances showed no appreciable difference between the oral consonant sequences and the nasal consonant sequences. There was none or very little activity related to the oral plosive consonants. The palatopharyngeus participation in the formation of vowel was of a higher degree for /a/ than for /i/ and /u/ (Fig. 18).

*Whisper count on counting.* To give an indication of the relationship between palatal EMG and intensity the subjects were asked to say 'mummy' and

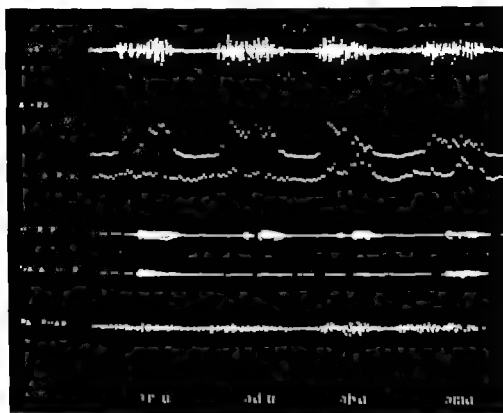


Fig 18. A recording of 4 VCV utterances, here the difference between levator palatopharyngeus activity is demonstrated. The levator veli palatini shows little difference between oral and nasal utterances, and the levator is more active for /a/ than for /u/. The palatopharyngeus on the other hand shows very small difference between oral and nasal utterances, and the palatopharyngeus is more active for /u/ than for /a/. — Duration 4.6 s.

daddy three times each, with whispered /e/, conversational /e/ and shouting /e/ respectively.

In about a third of the recordings there was no noticeable difference in the degree of EMG-activity for the three intensities. In the other two thirds the activity during shouting was more marked than during whisper and conversation. As to these latter sometimes there was more activity during whispering than conversation, sometimes it was just the opposite and often the degree of activity was the same for the two.

So far as these intensity relationships are concerned, there were no obvious differences between the various muscles.

#### NON-SPEECH ACTIVITIES

**Nasal runs and breath /g/** The subject were asked to hold the mouth open and to breathe through the nose then through the mouth, and finally through the nose again. The key was consistently marked during nasal breathing and active /g/ and /k/.

Acta otolaryng. suppl. 197

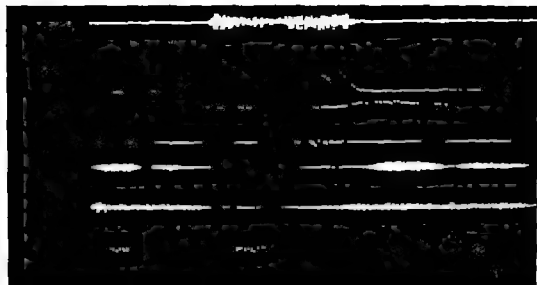


Fig. 19. A records of electrical activity of the tensor palatopharyngeus, levator palatopharyngeus, and palatoglossus muscles during oral breathing. The recordings show electrical activity of the tensor palatopharyngeus, levator palatopharyngeus, and palatoglossus muscles during oral breathing. The recordings show electrical activity of the tensor palatopharyngeus, levator palatopharyngeus, and palatoglossus muscles during oral breathing. — Duration 3 s.

breathing (Fig. 19). The tensor usually showed weak activity or none at all. The constrictor recordings were of the same type as those of the levator. The palatoglossus demonstrated a pattern exactly opposite to that of the levator and constrictor muscles (Fig. 19). In almost all subjects the palatoglossus was more active for nasal breathing than for any other item on the recording program. During oral breathing there were few or no action potentials. The palatopharyngeus muscle showed very little difference between nasal and oral breathing; most often it was weakly active for both.

**Oropharyngeal inflation.** The subjects were asked to puff out their cheeks and to let some air leak out between their lips. The levator and constrictor muscles were very active during this maneuver. This was also often the case with the tensor and palatopharyngeus muscles, whereas the palatoglossus activity varied a great deal from subject to subject.

**Oral inflation with nasal breathing.** The subjects were asked to puff out their cheeks and breathe through the nose. Typically the levator showed marked activity in the initial phase and then silence, and so did the constrictor. The palatoglossus started at the end of the initial phase and was maximally active through the nasal breathing period. The tensor and the palatopharyngeus often showed mild to moderate activity throughout the two phases.

**Whistle and blowing.** The subjects were asked to whistle and then simply to blow some air between their lips. With very few exceptions, the EMG-recordings showed no difference between these two activities. The levator and constrictor (Fig. 20) were both active to the same degree as for oral speech sounds. The tensor was also often active, whereas the palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus (Fig. 21) recordings were inconsistent.

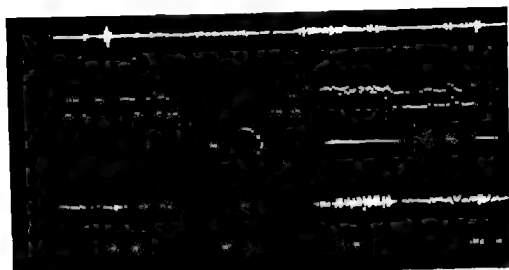


Fig. 20 A recording of swallowing, hiccuping and blowing. here the synchronous activity of the larynx and superior constrictor muscles is shown. — Duration 8.1

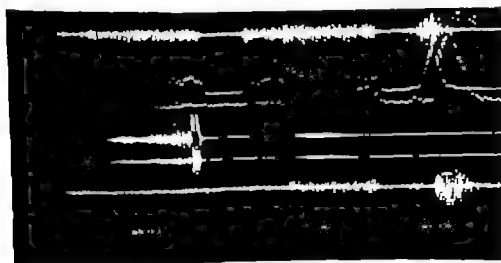


Fig. 21 A recording of hiccuping, blowing and blowing in reverse. here the difference between larynx and palatopharyngeus activity on blowing is demonstrated. The palatopharyngeus act (M) is (M) somewhat later and is of longer duration. It can be seen that the palatopharyngeus is more active for blowing than for hiccuping in this subject. — Duration 8.7



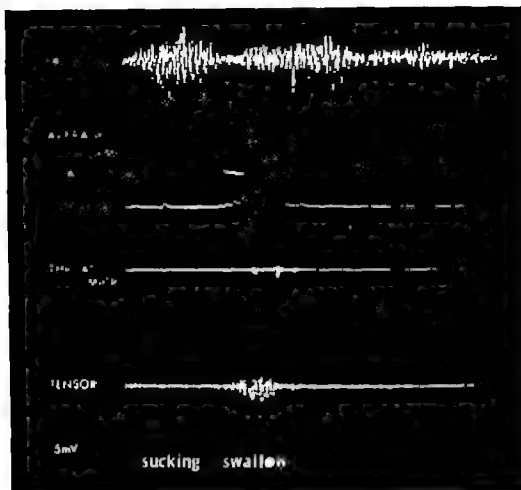


Fig. 22. A recording of sucking water through a straw and swallowing. The palatoglossus contraction is markedly strong. Flow is less so. The tensor is only active in swallowing. The throat microphone recording of the sounds of swallowing is seen. The palatoglossus is typically active after the cessation of contraction of the other muscles of flow. — Duration 3.9 s.

*Sucking.* When the subject started sucking water through a straw the palatoglossus was always active. The tensor muscle infrequently so (Fig. 22). Thus in 16 recordings from the levator there was moderate activity in 1 subject only, weak activity in 1 and no activity in the other 11.

*Chewing.* The chewing of a cracker was regularly accompanied by rhythmic contraction of the tensor and palatoglossus muscles (Fig. 23). The participation of the other muscles was irregular and varied between subjects.

*Swallowing.* Various recordings of swallowing were obtained, most of them upon instructions to the subject to swallow but also following the sucking of water through a straw and after the chewing of a cracker. Sometimes spontaneous swallowings of saliva were also recorded between or following speech samples. During most of these recordings a throat microphone was used, and an acoustic representation of the swallowing is available.



Fig. 21. A recording of chewing, cracker and swallowing. Rhythmic activities in both palatoglossus and tensor are seen. During swallowing the tensor shows its usual strong burst of short duration, whereas the palatoglossus shows any degree of activity over a much longer period of time. — Duration 7.9

Consistently all five muscles were highly activated during swallowing (Figs. 20–23). The intensity of the tensor and the palatopharyngeus contractions was always much stronger in swallowing than in any other activity. The levator and the constrictor fibers showed a slightly or moderately decreased activity in swallowing, as compared to speech, but this was not always so. As a rule, the palatoglossus was less active in swallowing than in nasal breathing.

So far as the time relationships are concerned, the levator, the tensor and the constrictor were active simultaneously in most variations occurred, but these were not constant. The palatopharyngeus activity in swallowing always appeared somewhat later (Fig. 21). In subjects in whom the levator and palatopharyngeus muscles were recorded simultaneously the average time delay from maximal levator activity to maximal palatopharyngeus activity was 300 msec (range 225–450 msec between subjects). The palatoglossus activity was more variable. Often two periods of activity occurred during swallowing, one preceding and one following the levator contraction. Sometimes there were three active periods, the middle one coinciding with that of the levator.

The duration of EMG-activity during swallowing showed moderate variations also within subject. As a rule, however, the levator, the tensor and the constrictor showed one relatively short burst of high intensity, the palatopharyngeus likewise one burst of high intensity but of longer duration, while the palatoglossus was active over a fairly long period of time showing moderate intensity with fluctuations.

The swallowing sound picked up by the throat microphone consisted of a short burst occurring at variable time for the levator contractions. This time delay was used

from the peak of the levator activity to the loudest click, was usually of the order of 200–300 msec and frequently the clicks coincided with the contraction of the palatopharyngeus muscle. Inspection of the microphone tracings and listening to the tape recordings showed that the click sound of wallowing were louder for the water than for the cracker or saliva.

### DISCUSSION AND CONCLUSIONS

In the evaluation of the descriptive data presented in this study the first and most important consideration is the *placement of the electrodes*. The levator and tensor muscles are located in close proximity in the side wall of the epipharynx and in normal subject this area cannot be observed during the insertion of the electrodes. In his preliminary report on this study in 1963, the author stated that he could not demonstrate any definite difference between levator and tensor activity in speech. With the later development and use of the piano wire electrodes and the procedure for the insertion of these, however, it became clear that this preliminary finding was incorrect. There is a marked difference between the levator and tensor activities in speech, and this was also pointed out by Liljeme *et al* (1966). It seems reasonable to conclude that the recordings upon which the report in 1963 was based, were both from the levators.

Various ways were tried to make certain that the electrodes were correctly inserted into the epipharyngeal wall in the position that were intended for them. The indirect epipharyngoscopy which was carried out routinely but not always successfully did not produce any evidence that could be used to distinguish between levator and tensor insertions, however. Nor did inspection of the area by means of an epipharyngoscope passed through the nose tell anything of value.

The most promising procedure seemed to be to stimulate the muscle through the inserted electrode and observe the palatal response through the mouth. In this way confirmation of the correct placement of the levator electrode could sometimes be obtained but stimulation did not always produce a noticeable contraction of the levator muscle even though the electrode seemed to be ideally positioned and the electromyographic signal was optimal. Never was any kind of palatal response observed when the tensor muscle was stimulated through the piano wire electrode. The reason for this failure might have been the unfavorable position of the electrode and catheter in relation to the direction of the tensor muscle fibers. After the tensor catheter with a 90° angle (Fig. 3) was made and came into use, the EMG picked up by the tensor electrode was always markedly different from the typical and consistent pattern of the levator EMG, however, leaving no room for confusion between their electromyograms. No particular problems seemed to pertain to the identification of the correct placement of the electrodes in the superior constrictor, palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus muscles.

Another factor of importance in evaluating interference pattern electromyograms from muscles of this small size is the possibility of picking up action potentials from adjacent muscles by volume conduction, a problem which was studied by Dedo & Dunke (1966). This possibility cannot be left out of consideration in evaluating the data from the present study. Thus the tensor is bordered latero-frontally by the ptery-



# III A COMBINED ELECTROMYOGRAPHIC AND CINERADIOGRAPHIC STUDY ACTIVITY OF THE LEVATOR AND PALATOGLOSSUS MUSCLES IN RELATION TO VELAR MOVEMENTS

## MATERIAL AND METHODS

### INSTRUMENTATION

*Electromyography* The electromyographic equipment used in this study was the same as that described for the previous study. The amplification of the EMG-signal was not kept constant, however, but individually set for each muscle recording to produce an optimal display on the electromyographic record. A higher paper speed was also used, viz. 250 mm per second.

*Sound recording* The same sound recording system was employed as that described for the previous study. The microphone was placed close to the left corner of the subject's mouth. The microphone signal was recorded on tape as well as on the EMG record. Tympanic and nasal microphones were not used.

*Cinéradiography* The main component of the cinéradiographic equipment made by General Electric was an x-ray tube with a pulse generator, an image intensifier, a 16 mm movie camera, and a fluoroscopic viewer.

The x-ray generator was a C.E. type KXD-32a. The x-ray tube unit had a focal spot of 0.5 mm. The radiation was pulsed, and the duration of each pulse was 1 msec. The x-ray tube factors used in this study averaged 80 kV and 1 milliamperere. The distance between the x-ray source and the image intensifier was the same in all experiments, viz. 100 cm.

The image intensifier was a "Fluorikon Image Intensifier" with a diameter of 9 inches and a nominal gain of 3000, re. Pattern II 2 screen. The fluoroscopic grid had 80 lines per inch and a 6:1 grid ratio.

The camera was a General Electric 16 mm movie camera, the motor of which was synchronized with the pulsed x-ray. A camera speed of 60 frames per second was used. The film was "Kodak Plus-X Reversal". The fluoroscopic viewer permits proper positioning of the subject before the recording, as well as observation during the recording. A Scholz head clamp was used to minimize movement of the head during the recording.

*Synchronization apparatus* For the synchronization of the electromyographic and cinéradiographic recordings, a special instrument was constructed (Fig. 21). A plexiglass disc 20 cm in diameter was mounted on the axis of a small electric motor. To this disc a small arrow of lead and a small bar magnet were attached. Another arrow of lead was fixed to the motor on a shaft of aluminium. Likewise a small electromagnet was fixed to the non-rotating part of the system. The arrow and the bar magnet on the disc were arranged in such a way that when the rotating arrow passed the fixed arrow, the rotating magnet also passed over the electromagnet and induced a voltage which was amplified and recorded as a spike on the Visicorder (Fig. 27). During the recording part of the synchronization device was placed in the radiation field close to the patient's right cheek, so that the arrows could be seen on the fluoro-

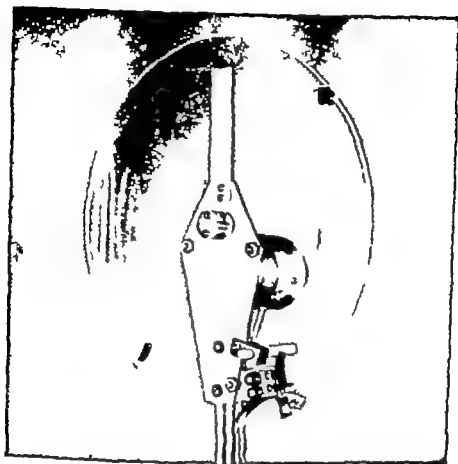


Fig. 24. The synchronization apparatus, showing the rotating plexiglas with the lead arrow and small bar magnet, the motor, the fixed arrow (critical) and the lecture magnet. It can be seen that the arrangement is such that when the rotating arrow passes the fixed arrow, the bar magnet passes over the electromagnet to induce voltage to be recorded as a synchronization spike.

scopic view and recorded on the film (Fig. 25). The speed of the motor was approximately 2 revolutions per second, and consequently the arrows met once every 30 frames on the film.

#### MATERIAL

The subjects were 13 student volunteers of the University of Michigan, 2 of whom had participated in the previous study. There were 6 males and 7 females. Age range and dialect variation were the same as the previous study.

#### PROCEDURES

**Recording room.** The experiments were carried out in a research laboratory belonging to the Department of Radiology. The room was not sound-treated. The ambient noise was moderate, however, and the positioning of the microphone close to the



Fig. 45. A print of frame from one of the electrodiagnostic films. At the upper left the mass of the masticatory apparatus as before seen, the rotating one less sharp than the fixed one. The Equarchia tube stethoscope is also seen, and below it part of the adjustable glass supporting the catheter.

subject's mouth allowed for a sound recording adequate for the purposes of the study with one minor exception as will be mentioned later in this chapter.

*Electrode placement* Topical anesthesia was administered, a piano wire electrode was inserted into the levator palatini muscle on one side and two fine wire electrodes were inserted into one of the palatopharyngeal muscles in the same manner as described for the previous study.

*Positioning of the subject* The subject was seated upright in a dental chair. Following the placement of the electrodes, the head clamp was applied and the head of the subject positioned to produce a straight lateral projection on the x-ray film. This was done under fluoroscopic control, and so was the subsequent positioning of the synchronizing device.

*Recording program* Two almost identical series of sentences and isolated vowel sounds were recorded, and the experiment was concluded by having the subject suck larynx contractions in the pharynx and swallow. Besides the aim of providing

information on the relationship between the muscle activity and velar movements in general, the speech samples were also selected to demonstrate differences in the production of low and high vowels in isolated position as well as in connected speech. The subjects read the speech samples from two series of cards, as follows

*First series*

The boot belongs to my father

Martin sneered at me

Least but not least.

/a/

Say sip again.

/æ/

Say sin again.

/i/

Say sick again

/u/

Say sing again.

*Second series*

The boot belongs to my father

Martin sneered at me

Least but not least.

/u/

I say sip again.

/i/

I say sin again.

/æ/

I say sick again

/a/

I say sing again.

It should be noted that in standard American English the word "least" is produced with a low front vowel /æst/ in contrast to the British English pronunciation with a low back vowel /la:st/

*Instruction of the subject* Before the experiment the subject was given a short period of training in reading from the cards. Since many of the subjects were not familiar with phonetic transcription, the emphasis was placed on reading the symbols for the isolated vowels correctly and on the production of these sounds. If a mistake was made by the subject during the recording, which happened a few times, the item was repeated after the reading of the series.

*Recording.* Two assistants operated the recording equipment during the experiment, while the experimenter instructed the subject and observed the oscilloscope-monitor. At the beginning of the recording a specially designed Plexiglas ruler with lead inlay was introduced into the oral cavity of the subject, in the midline. This made the calibration of the real size of the structures possible. The following analysis of the film.

*Radiation.* During the experiment the subjects were exposed to radiation of approximately 0.6 rad per minute. The total exposure for an ideal subject averaged 2 rads, with a range from 1.2 to 3 rads.

*Analysis of cineradiograph films.* A Kodak Analyst 16 mm movie projector was used. With this projector the film can be advanced or reversed frame by frame and kept still, automatically projected at rates of 1, 2, 4, 6, 8, 12, 16 or 24 frames per second in either direction. Tracings from the films were made with a millimeter ruler. One described by Moll (1960). A special stand was built, where the projector was placed at the lower end of a sloping board. At the other end of the board was a millimeter board with a glass window. The film was projected through this window on to a piece of paper. The distance between the projector and the drawing was kept constant. The distance between the projector and the drawing was slightly larger than life-size. The projected image was slightly larger than life-size. The projected image was slightly larger than life-size.

Before the analysis of film was started every tenth frame was numbered in the lower corner for identification purposes.



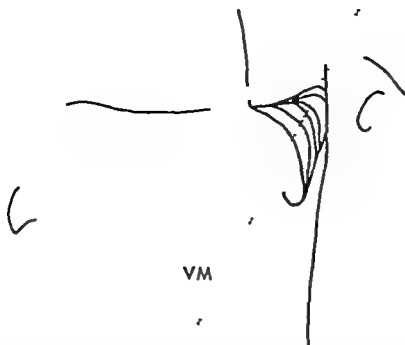


Fig. 26. Tracings of frames from a radiograph film, superimposed to demonstrate how the VML-line was drawn through the middle third of the posterior contour of the velum to represent the velar elevation movement.

The initial step in the analysis of a film was to make a preliminary record of the onset and termination of each speech sample and to identify by numbers those frames where movement started and ended. From the appropriate locations tracings of the arrow were made for those frames where the rotating arrow most nearly coincided with the fixed arrow of the synchronization apparatus. The temporal correspondence between the film and the FMG record could be established from these tracings of the arrows and the location of the synchronization spikes.

Tracings were made of the contours of the soft palate and the posterior pharyngeal wall, as well as of certain landmarks, primarily the frontal incisors of the upper jaw and the pterygomaxillary fissure. The landmarks were used to superimpose tracings from different frames. For each subject tracings from a number of selected frames were made, frames representing a series of "positions" of the palate from the physiologic rest position to "full" elevation during velopharyngeal closure. These tracings were superimposed, and an oblique line was drawn (Fig. 26) representing the direction of movement of the velum, notably of its middle third (levator eminence). The tracing for the rest position was used as a template on which each of the other tracings was superimposed. All movement of velar movement or velar displacement presented in this study was plotted along this oblique line, the velar movement (VM) line, from the point where the posterior contour of the soft palate crossed this line in

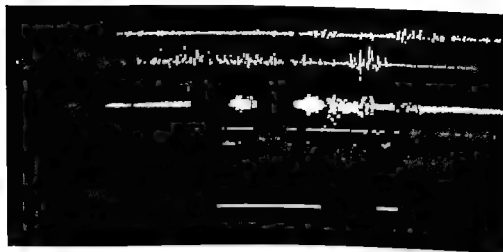


Fig. 27 A recording of the sentence, "I may sing again." The measurements of clasp displacement have been plotted below the Viasorder record, and velopharyngeal closure is indicated (broad white lines). The arrow shows the onset of levator EMG activity, and clasp movement. Calibrations to the left of the EMG curves represent 0.5 mV. There is approximately 0.5 sec between synchronization spikes.

It can be seen that velar movement starts shortly after the appearance of the first minimal spike in the levator EMG. There is a slow increase of levator activity and a slow elevation of the velum. Velopharyngeal closure is not present at the onset of phonation. The palatoglossus is weakly active in the beginning. A burst of palatoglossus activity is followed closely by the descent of the velum for the nasal sounds, and a burst of levator activity is followed closely by the elevation of the velum for the production of the following oral sounds. There is marked palatoglossus activity for the final nasal sounds and a quick drop of clasp to low rest position before phonation has ended.

the rest position tracing. This method was described and used by Mall (1967).

*Evaluation of the records.* From the recordings of few subjects, samples were selected, and tracings were made from all clem, EMG, and cinefilm measures of clasp displacement were made and plotted. Likewise, absence or presence of velopharyngeal closure was noted. The relationship between muscle activity, clasp movement, and velopharyngeal closure could be ascertained (Fig. 27). For the sake of simplicity and clarity, the EMG and the microphone recordings were traced and plotted on the same curve (Figs. 28-30) in some cases.

Three quantitative analyses were carried out:

1. Latency measurements for onset of levator EMG, relative to the onset of clasp.
  2. Latency measurements for increase of EMG activity, relative to clasp.
  3. Measurements of degree of levator activity in oral and nasal production.
- The different measurement procedures used for the above sections where the results are presented.

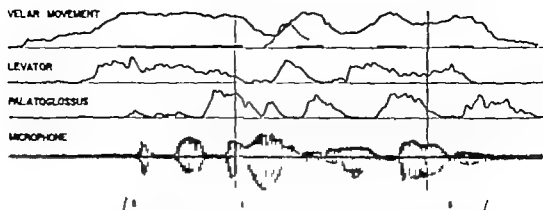


FIG. 28. Velar movement curve and laryngeal levator (broad black lines) plotted against tracings of levator and palatoglossus envelopes and microphone signal for the sentence "The boat belongs to my father." The appearance of the first split in the raw levator EMG is indicated by an arrow over the levator envelope. A short segment of movement of the levator of the tongue for the production of /p/ has been plotted on the VM curve and its relation to the palatoglossus peak corresponding to this tongue movement can be appreciated. The velar movement curve follows very closely the levator envelope. Every descent of the velum is preceded by palatoglossus activity. Velar displacement and levator activity are higher for /a/ in *boat* than for /e/ in *father* which latter sound is produced without velopharyngeal closure. — The 1, 2, 3, 4 critical lines indicate the duration of /a/.

## RESULTS

### GENERAL FINDINGS

Among the 13 subjects, satisfactory recordings from both muscles were obtained in 9 subjects. In each of the other 4 subjects only one muscle recording was successful, in 2 subjects that of the levator and in 2 that of the palatoglossus. Consequently the results presented below are based on data from 11 levator recordings and 11 palatoglossus recordings and on data from the corresponding cinefilm.

As expected, a very close relationship between levator activity and elevation of the velum was found (Figs. 27–30). There was a striking similarity between the levator envelopes and the velar movement curves. Likewise the palatoglossus activity was closely related to the descent of the velum. A fall of the velar movement curve almost always corresponded to a rise of the palatoglossus envelope.

But the palatoglossus recordings also showed periods of activity which did not seem to be related to changes in the position of the velum. Thus, for the production of dorsolateral sounds, /k/, /g/, /v/, a corresponding burst of activity could usually be demonstrated in the palatoglossus EMG. This presumably reflects palatoglossus participation in the elevation of the posterior part of the tongue (Fig. 28).

Between speech samples both muscles usually showed absence of activity. Before the onset of phonation both muscles were active to a varying degree and the velum was raised to a varying extent. This elevation of the velum started shortly after the first minimal signs of levator activity, usually before any appreciable rise of the levator envelope could be discerned. (For this reason the occurrence of the first signs of the levator activity as judged from the "raw" EMG curves, has been indicated with an arrow in Figs. 28–30.)



Fig. 29 Velar movement curv and velopharyngeal closure (broad black lines) plotted against tracings of levator and palatoglossus envelopes and microphone signal for the sentence "Martin married me". The arrow indicates the first spike in the raw levator EMG. Levator activity and velar movement start before onset of phonation, and the velum is only partly elevated during the production of the first word. Velopharyngeal closure does not occur until the production of the second, and only to brief periods of closure occurred during the production of this sentence in this subject. Palatoglossus only moderately active. — The two thin vertical lines indicate the duration of 1 s.

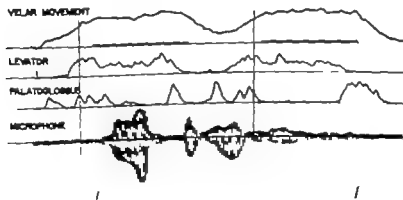


Fig. 30 Velar movement curv and velopharyngeal closure (broad black lines) plotted against tracings of the levator and palatoglossus envelopes and the microphone signal for the sentence "I am not here". The arrow indicates the presence of the first spike in the raw levator EMG. Activity in both muscles and velopharyngeal closure before onset of phonation. Velar movement curv follows the levator envelope. The palatoglossus muscle is not very active during the first two words, some activity which is not related to velar movement appears before the production of the third word. — The two thin vertical lines indicate the duration of 1 s.

As demonstrated in the previous study the muscle activities precede the corresponding event in the microphone signal. In the same way the inception of the diagrams from the present study revealed that the EMC event preceded the corresponding rise or fall of the velum (Figs 24-30).

A correspondence between the intensity of levator activity and degree of velar elevation could also be observed. This relationship was not always as conspicuous as the time relationships, but in some speech samples it was readily appreciated. Thus in Fig. 28 it can be seen that the curves representing velar movement and levator activity are both higher for /u/ than for /a/. Likewise in fig. 29 the levator activity is maximal in the first part of the utterance and its highest peak occurs prior to the production of the /u/. The velar movement curves show a similar pattern, with moderate elevation in the beginning and full elevation when the /u/ is produced.

The only non-speech activities recorded in this set of experiment were sucking and swallowing. Figure 31 illustrates an EMC record on which measurements of velar movements have been plotted. Three tracings of velar "positions" have been added to illustrate the initial phases of swallowing and particularly the forward bulging of the velum, which appears to be related to a high degree of activity in the palatoglossus muscle. This indentation of the posterior contour of the soft palate was seen in 7 of the 13 subject in this study.

#### LATENCY MEASUREMENTS FOR ONSET OF LEVATOR ACTIVITY, VELAR MOVEMENT AND SPEECH SIGNAL

*Measurement procedures.* The cinefilms of all the 11 subjects were analyzed with respect to onset of movement for each speech sample by identifying the frame in which the first change from rest position could be distinguished. This analysis was repeated a few days later. The record from these two separate determinations were then compared. In the case of the samples where the determinations were not in agreement, a third projection of the film was made and one of the two frames previously identified was selected to represent the onset of movement. The moment at which this frame was posed was then marked on the EMC recording. The author's consistency in determining the onset of movement from the cinefilms was calculated from the two sets of determinations made. The mean difference was 0.83 frame (14 msec) and the standard deviation 1.36 frames (23 msec).

The onset of levator activity was defined as that point, where the first minimal spike could be discerned in the electromyographic record (Fig. 27).

The onset of the speech signal was defined as that point in the microphone recording where the trace emerged from the background noise. In some samples, (Fig. 27) the determination of this point presented no problem, whereas in others, particularly those beginning with fricatives (/ð/ and /s/) the onset was obviously concealed by the noise from which the speech trace gradually emerged. Consequently these determinations did not represent the exact onset of the speech signal.

Measurements were made along the time axis to the nearest 0.5 mm of the distance from the onset of levator activity to the onset of velar movement, and this distance will be referred to as the EMC-VM latency. Likewise measurements were made from the onset of levator activity to the onset of the speech signal, and this distance will be referred to as the EMC-speech latency.



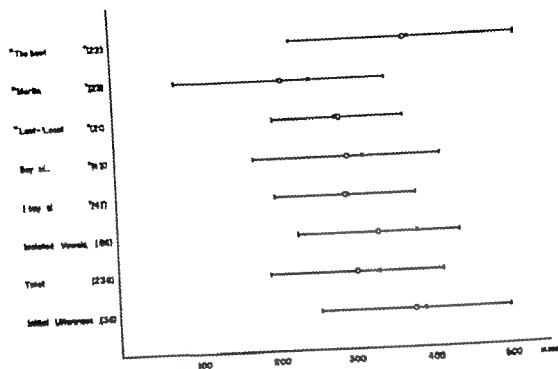


FIG. 3. Latency from onset (eye for activity to onset (speech signal for total set of samples) of subgroups. Means (x) medians ( ) and interquartile ranges plotted along the time axis. The subgroup "Martin" has shorter latency and the subgroups "The best" and "Initial Utterances" have a longer latency than the other subgroups.

beginning with "Martin" the speech signal preceded the EMG onset.) The median was 301 msec and the interquartile range 193 to 415 msec.

The total group of measurements of the EMG-speech latency was divided into subgroups with regard to the onset characteristics of the various utterances. The means for these subgroups varied from 201 to 382 msec (Fig. 32).

The subgroup beginning with "Martin" showed a mean of 201 msec and a median of 211 msec, clearly below the average. With the assumption that the samples had an approximately normal distribution, this group was tested against the total rest of samples by means of a *t*-test analysis (Dixon & Massey 1957). The difference was found to be significant at the 5% level of confidence.

The cineradiographic apparatus had an automatic switch-off system, which stopped the recording after 1 second of exposure. After such a break the subject had to wait a little while until the recording apparatus had been started again, before he could resume reading. In this way the series of speech samples became "chopped up" in sets of 5-10 utterances depending upon the speed of reading. The initial utterances from each of these sets of a film subject were separated from the rest and analyzed. Their EMG-speech latency values were well above the average of the other sub-

groups. When this group of initial utterances was tested against the total rest of sample (t-test, Dixon & Massey 1957) the difference was found significant at the 5% level of confidence.

The subgroup of utterances starting with "The boat" also had central values above the average. This was ascribed to the fact that half the number of samples in this group were initial utterances—the first item on the recording program for every subject.

*Summary.* Velar elevation began approximately 0.03–0.04 second after the first minimal spikes appeared in the levator EMG record. The onset of speech occurred approximately 0.3 second later with wide variations. The EMG-speech latency was shorter when the utterance began with an /m/-sound and longer when the subject was waiting for a signal to start speaking.

#### LATENCY MEASUREMENTS FOR INCREASE OF EMG-ACTIVITY IN RELATION TO ELEVATION AND DESCENT OF VELUM

*Measurement procedure.* To estimate the latency between the rise of the EMG curves and the corresponding rise or fall of the VBI curve the following procedure was used.

The onset and termination of velar movements related to nasal sounds in medial position of selected speech samples were determined during repeated projections of appropriate portions of the cinefilms. The "locations" of the two frames representing the beginning and the end of each particular movement were then marked along the time axis of the Visicorder record, and the midpoint between the two determined. The EMG events corresponding to these movements were subjected to a similar analysis, i.e. the lowest and highest points of the EMG envelope were identified and the midpoint between the two was determined and projected on the time axis.

Measurements were made of the distance between the two temporal midpoint determined for EMG increase and velar movement, respectively. Figure 33 serves as an illustration of the method. It should be pointed out, however, that for this illustration measurements of velar displacement have been made for all frames during the sequence and plotted as a VBI curve, whereas the measurements performed and presented in this section of the study were actually derived from determinations of the beginning and end of movement only as mentioned above.

The samples of this part of the study were selected from those portions of the records which represented the fall and rise of volume within the sentences "Say im ap n" "Say ding gu" "Say im gal" and "I say ol p gal" (p. 27). Four measurements from each subject gave a total of 44 measurements of each muscle. The measurements were repeated and the means of the two sets of measurement were used.

The analysis of the data. The author's consistency in making these measurements was determined from the two sets. The difference between the means was  $0.8 \pm 29$  msec.

*Findings.* The mean delay from the midpoint of the palatoglossus envelope rise to the midpoint of velar descent for im and ig was  $28 \pm 32$  msec. When the total group was divided into two parts, one composed of 4 im data and the other composed of 4 ig data, minor difference between the means was found, but it is different as not statistically significant (t-test, Dixon & Massey 1957).



VELAR  
MOVEMENT

LEVATOR

PALGLOSS.

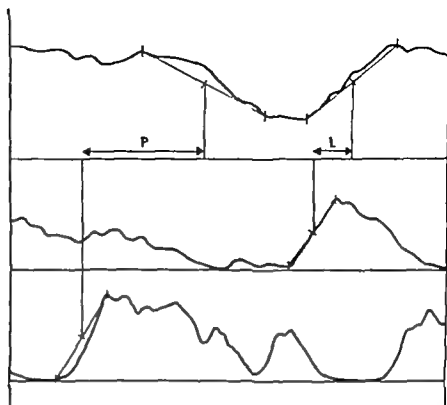


Fig. 33 Velar movement plotted against tracings of levator and palatoglossus envelopes for short section of speech to illustrate the principles used concerning the delay from EMG envelope rise to velar movement. The midpoint between onset and peak of FMG-activity is determined and the distances P and L along the time axis to the midpoint between onset and end of movements are measured.

The mean delay from the midpoint of the levator envelope rise to the elevation of the velum was  $12 \pm 3$  msec. When a division into two subgroups was made a small difference with no statistical significance was found between "silent" events and "vocal" events.

**Summary** The lowering of the velum for the production of nasal sounds with a sentence was preceded by increased activity in the palatoglossus muscle by a time factor of the order of 90 msec. The succeeding elevation of the velum for the production of oral sounds again was preceded by increased activity in the levator muscle by a time factor of the order of 10 msec. It made no difference whether a labial nasal component was involved or a dorso-velar nasal component sound.

#### DEGREE OF LEVATOR ACTIVITY IN RELATION TO VELAR DISPLACEMENT IN VOWEL PRODUCTION

**Measurements procedure** For the isolated vowel sounds as well as for the stressed /a/ /æ/ /i/ /u/ sound in "The boot belongs to my father" and "Last but not least" (and its reverse) measurements were made of the degree of levator activity and the extent of velar displacement during the first 100 msec of vowel production. 16 pairs of measurements were made from each subject, giving a total of 176 pairs of measures.

Act. at 100 msec ppd

The onset of the vowel sound was determined from the microphone record. Starting from the corresponding point on the levator EMG record, 10 measurements of the height of the rectified and averaged curve were made at 10 msec intervals along the time axis. The logarithm of the sum of these ten measurements was used as a relative measure of the degree of levator activity during the production of the vowel.

From the cinéfilms tracings were made of those 7 frames which corresponded to the first 100 msec of the vowel. Measurement of velar displacement were made from each of these tracings, and the mean was used as a measure of the extent of velar displacement during the production of the vowel.

**Findings.** The means of the measurements of levator activity for the four vowels are presented in table 1. The means for the high vowels /i/ and /u/ were exactly the same, markedly higher than the means for the low vowels /e/ and /a/ and the means for those two were approximately the same. A comparison was also made between isolated vowels and vowels in connected speech. The difference found was very small.

The means of the measurements of velar displacement for the four vowels are presented in table 2. Again, a marked difference between high and low vowels was found, but only minor differences between front and back vowels. A comparison between isolated vowels and vowels in connected speech showed a difference between the means of 0.4 mm, the isolated vowels having a lower velar position.

**Correlation.** The correlation between levator activity and velar displacement was determined by computation of the product moment correlation coefficient for each subject (16 pairs of measurements from each of them). All but 2 of the 11 correlation coefficients were significant at the 1% level (table 3). The sample correlations ranged from 0.46 to 0.91 with an average of 0.6 and a standard deviation of 0.11.

**Analysis of variance for vowel types, positions and subjects.** A factorial analysis of variance was used for testing the factors and their interactions.<sup>4</sup> The factors tested were A) front vowels versus back vowels, B) low vowels versus high vowels, C) isolated vowels versus vowels in connected speech, and D) subjects. A mixed model was used in which A, B, C were treated as fixed effects and D as random (Bennett & Franklin 1951; Oxtle 1963). This analysis was carried out for levator EMG measures (see table 4) and for measurements of velar displacement (see table 5).

The results for the levator activity show that the difference between the mean for low and high vowels was significant at the 1% level, and the variance of the subject

TABLE 1

	Front	Back	
	/i/	/u/	
High	1916	1916	2.032
	/e/	/a/	
Low	1691	1669	1.36
	1609	1585	

Relative measures of degree of levator activity  
Means for the four vowels

TABLE 2

	Front	Back	
	/i/	/u/	
High	11.3	11.23	99.20
	/e/	/a/	
Low	10.58	10.5	1.25
	96.95	97.10	

Measures of velar displacement (in mm)  
Means for the four vowels

<sup>4</sup>This analysis was carried out for the Statistical Research Laboratory of the University of Michigan.

## DISCUSSION AND CONCLUSIONS

In this second series of experiments cineradiography was added to the electromyographic and acoustic recordings. Since simultaneous recordings could be made from two muscles only and because of the time limit set by the exposure to radiation, it was decided to confine the study to the levator and palatoglossus muscles. They were selected because of their consistent mode of action and their opposite functions in regard to palatal movement. The result will be discussed below and some aspects of the procedures and comparisons will be made with the results from studies by other authors.

The only previous study of the palate in which the same three parameters were investigated is that of Lubker (1967, 1968). He used surface electrodes held in place on the oral side of the soft palate by suction, and he ascribed the EMG activity picked up by these electrodes primarily to the levator. He used the slope of the integrated EMG curve during the production of the sound *a* as a measure of palatal EMG activity. The production of isolated vowel sound and /m/ and a short set of CV utterances was studied in five subjects. Repeated references will be made to Lubker's study and these have differences between his study and the present one should be kept in mind.

The *I-V* line along which the measurements of velar displacement were made (Fig. 26) was arbitrarily chosen for each subject separately. It does not represent the axis along which any particular point of the velum moves, but rather the general direction of movement of the middle third of the velum. It also seems to have approximately the same direction as the fibers of the levator and palatoglossus muscles and is therefore particularly appropriate for the purposes of this study. This impression is also supported by the findings of Lubker who observed a slightly higher correlation for measurements along this oblique VM line than for measurements of velar height in the vertical plane.

The striking similarity between the levator envelope and the velar movement curve as demonstrated in Figs. 27-30, indicates that the relationship between the two is so close that the shape of the one can be inferred from the shape of the other. In all speech samples where sequences of frames were traced and VM measurements plotted on the EMG-records, the appearance of levator activity was accompanied by palatal elevation. Termination of levator activity was always followed by descent of the velum, and vice versa, in no instance was velar elevation observed which was not accompanied by levator activity.

The EMG-*I-V* latency was short (31-40 msec). As mentioned, in 40 samples out of 236 the velar movement seemed to start before the onset of levator activity in spite of the fact that the onset of the levator activity was defined as the first minimal discernible spike in the EMG record. Most of these improbable "reversed" measurements can possibly be accounted for by the error involved in determining the onset of velar movement. The author's inconsistency in this respect was  $14 \pm 45$  msec, as mentioned. The onset of movement may also have been caused by other muscles, the superior constrictor or palatopharyngeus muscles.

The EMG-speech latency findings are of the same order as those of Iwashita (1965) who studied isolated /-l/ sound and monosyllables and found a mean for vowels of

270 msec and a mean for CV-syllables of 190 msec. His total range was from —200 to 500 msec. He also found that utterances starting with a nasal sound had shorter latencies than other utterances, which is in agreement with the findings of the present study. These latency measurements from the levator can also be compared to those of the laryngeal muscles, reported by Faaborg Andersen (1957). He found an EMG-speech latency ranging from 18 to 990 msec with an average of 350–550 msec. This might indicate that the laryngeal EMG-speech latency is longer than the palatal. However the present study has shown that the recording situation influences the EMG-speech latencies (e.g. subject waiting for signal to start speaking) and the small differences in the results of the two studies may be due to a factor of this type.

The measurements of the delay between the increased activity of the levator and the rise of the velum showed a mean of the same order as the EMG-VM latency (42 msec vs. 40 msec). The average delay from palatoglossus increase to lowering of the velum was twice as long. It can also be seen in Figs. 28–30 that lowering of the velum does usually not start until the levator activity has ceased completely or come to a standstill at a certain level, although the palatoglossus may show a great deal of activity long before that moment. This indicates that the levator is the stronger of the two and the more influential muscle as far as palatal movements are concerned.

It was first shown by Lippold (1952) and Bigland & Lippold (1954) that integrated EMG potentials vary directly with the strength of contraction in a muscle. In the present quantitative analysis of levator activity and velar displacement during vowel production the area under the envelope was used as a relative measure of the degree of levator activity. In a few subjects there were isolated instances of very intense levator activity out of proportion to the extent of velar displacement. To somewhat counteract the distorting effect of these very high measurements the logarithm of the area under the envelope was used in the statistical analysis of the relationships between EMG velar displacement and vowels.

The evaluation of the VCV utterances in the previous study had indicated that in most subjects the levator was more active for /u/ than for /i/. In the present quantitative analysis of isolated vowels in connected speech, however, no difference was found. The relative measures of levator activity were the same for /u/ and /i/.

The reason for this disagreement between the two studies may be the fact that different speech samples were used. As pointed out in the preceding chapter the nasal VCV utterances demonstrated a clearer difference in levator activity than the oral utterances and in the present study none of the vowels were connected to nasal consonants. Lulick found a higher degree of palatal EMG activity for /u/ than for /i/. The measurement of velar displacement showed a clear difference between low and high vowels, but minimal differences between front and back vowels, which is in agreement with the findings of Moll (1962) and Lulick (1968).

The correlation between levator activity and velar displacement varied from 0.16 to 0.91 between subjects. The reason for this somewhat wide variation is not clear, but at least two plausible explanations present themselves. The position of the electrode might have been such that a representative sample of the levator activity was not obtained, and levator activity might have contributed to the recorded EMG signal.

the superior constrictor palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus might play a more important role in some subjects, reducing the influence of the levator and its correlation with velar displacement. The average score of 0.76 is close to Lubker's 0.83 for isolated vowels and 0.80 for CV-syllables computed over his 5 subjects. Lubker did not report the correlation coefficients for each individual.

The analysis of variance of palatal activity during vowel production, carried out separately for levator activity and for velar displacement, gave almost exactly the same results for the two parameters. This is in agreement with Lubker's findings. Highly significant differences were found between subjects. Lubker did not report on interpersonal variations but in his "raw" data (Lubker 1967) such variation are found.

Recently Moll & Shriner (1961) presented a simple theoretical model for velar activity during speech. They hypothesized a two-mode control at the muscular level, one mode for velopharyngeal closure (oral sounds) and one mode for partial elevation (nasal sound). The number of intermediate velar positions observed could be caused by variations in timing and the inherent restraints of the mechanical system. On the basis of the findings from his study Lubker rejected this model. The results of the present study do not support it either. The motor nerve signals to the levator muscle appear to operate along a continuum rather than in a two-mode fashion.

In conclusion, these quantitative analyses have shown that the movements of the soft palate follow very closely the activity of the levator muscle. The levator appears to have the primary control of the velum when compared to the palatoglossus muscle and as may be inferred from the previous study when compared to the other muscles as well. Velar movement starts within 40 msec after the onset of levator activity and speech sounds follow about 300 msec later with wide variations, depending to a certain extent upon the initial sound and the speaking situation.

## GENERAL DISCUSSION

### BACKGROUND

The soft palate cannot be directly observed in normal subjects during speech, and the velopharyngeal closure mechanism apparently remained unknown until the seventeenth century. Today, as a consequence of the advanced development of medical technology, we are equipped with refined procedures to record and analyse movements in the velopharyngeal region. An impressive effort to study several parameters simultaneously is reported by Subtelny *et al.* (1968). They describe instrumentation and procedures for 240-frames-per-second-cineradiography synchronized with recordings of audio, intraoral and intranasal air pressure as well as oral and nasal air flow, and they also outline analogue computer techniques for additional parameters of sound power and volumetric information from sound and volume velocity recordings.

With the accumulation of data on the peripheral functions, linguists have directed more and more attention to the mechanisms that control the movements of the articulators. What kind of information do the muscles receive? Which are the motor commands for speech? How are speech sounds coded by the central nervous system? Challenged by these questions, speech researchers make increased use of electromyography as demonstrated in the reports by Cooper (1965), Fromkin & Ladefoged (1966) and Ohman (1967).

The discrete function of the individual muscles that control the movements of the palate is not altogether clear. Everyone seems to agree on the crucial importance of the levator and on the participation of the superior constrictor in accomplishing velopharyngeal closure, and no one has disputed the elevating function of the palatopharyngeus muscle. The rôle of the tensor of speech, however, is doubtful, and the contritoglossus muscle. The rôle of the palatopharyngeus muscle in velopharyngeal closure remains hypothetical.

From a clinical point of view there is also a need for more information on the basic mechanisms and for diagnostic tools to ascertain the function of specific muscles. In recent decades the surgical management of velopharyngeal incompetence has made considerable progress, but complete restoration of the closure mechanism is still not always obtained. Primary operations for cleft palate, fracturing of the hamulus of the pterygoid bone is a routine procedure. What effect does this have on tensor function and on speech? Cleft palate patients with incompetent closure show great deal of variation in their ability to compensate by adduction of the lateral pharyngeal walls, and this function seems to influence the success of secondary operations such as palatopharyngeal flap surgery. To what extent can such compensation be trained by speech therapy? Case recordings of muscle activity be of help in evaluating the effect of such training?

Thus from linguistic, physiological and clinical points of view velopharyngeal electromyography is called for. However, few EMG studies of the palatal muscles have been published, and the value of the information conveyed by them is limited.

## CONTRIBUTION OF THE PRESENT INVESTIGATION

In the present investigation, techniques have been elaborated to make intra muscular recordings from all muscles that insert into the soft palate. In order to avoid interference with articulation as much as possible a nasal approach was used for the levator tensor and superior constrictor muscles and the electrodes were inserted into the walls of the epipharynx. The only other author who has used the nasal approach successfully is Iwashita (1965). He inserted his electrodes into the soft palate however and not into the epipharyngeal walls. The very fine wire electrodes first described by Rajmajan & Stecko (1962) offer great advantages in the study of mobile structures like those of the pharynx and made recordings from the palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus possible. Intra muscular recordings from these muscles have not been reported previously.

With these new techniques it has been possible to obtain gross information on the participation of each of these muscles in speech and some non-speech activities with particular attention to the differences between oral and nasal sound production. The current assumptions as to the function of the levator superior constrictor and palatoglossus muscles could be substantiated. The soft palate is actively lowered by the palatoglossus for nasal sound.

The recordings from the tensor during speech varied a great deal between subjects, in most of them there was very little activity or none at all. In those subjects where activity was recorded, no consistent mode of action was found. Thus it seems as if the tensor is of minor importance in speech production. Neither Calnan's (1953) presumption about a preparatory tensor contraction before the onset of speech, nor Wilm's (1953) theory about tensor participation in the production of nasal sound were corroborated. More research is needed however before the rôle of the tensor in speech can be considered definitely settled.

The palatopharyngeus muscle is obviously not as consistently active in the production of velopharyngeal closure as Poulsson (1952) and others postulated. The recordings of the present study made from the vertically directed fibers in the posterior pillars of the fauces always showed some degree of activity during speech, but the pattern deviated from that of the levator and there were marked variations between subject. There is evidently no simple synergism between the two muscles. Besides its influence on the velum, it can be inferred from the findings of the present study that the palatopharyngeus muscle also assists in the narrowing of the pharynx for the production of the vowel /a/.

In the second series of experiments, the simultaneous recording of EMG velar movement and speech sounds made possible analyses of time and intensity relationships, that had previously been studied to a very limited extent only. Gross examination of the record in which the palatal movements were plotted against the electromyogram and the microphone signal, confirmed the inferences made in the first part of the investigation concerning the close relationship between levator activity and velar elevation, and palatoglossus activity and velar descent, respectively.

The measurements of the latencies between the onset of levator EMG and microphone signal showed very large variations, of the same order as those reported by Faalborg-Andersen (1957) for laryngeal EMG and Iwashita (1965) for labial, palatal and

laryngeal EMG and sound. The measurements varied considerably within, as well as between, individuals. The cause of these large variations is not clear. Iwashita (1965) found that the EMG-speech on-set latencies for the levator varied with the initial sound, but he used few subjects and did not test the differences for statistical significance. In the present investigation it was shown that for utterances beginning with a nasal sound the onset latency is shorter than for other utterances, and that waiting for a starting signal leads to a longer onset latency than speaking at will. These differences were significant at the 5% level of confidence. The wide ranges for each individual and each subgroup still remain unexplained. It is known from various detailed instrumental analyses of speech, however, that it is virtually impossible for an individual to speak a sentence in exactly the same way twice.

Attempts to measure time relationships between increase of EMG-activity and movements of the articulators in speech do not seem to have been made before. The findings indicated a quicker palatal response to increased levator activity than to increased palatoglossus activity. This might simply reflect the fact that the levator is the larger muscle of the two. Only one type of speech sample was used for these determinations, however, and the relationship might be influenced by the context.

The analysis of the relationship between degree of levator activity and velar elevation gave results in agreement with those of Lubker (1967, 1968). It can be concluded that the variations in velar elevation during speech, which also occur during prolonged velopharyngeal closure as observed by researchers using cineradiography, is determined by variations in the degree of levator muscle activity and not by variations in timing and movements of adjacent structures as hypothesized by Moll & Shriber (1967).

#### CLINICAL IMPLICATIONS

The findings of the present investigation indicate that the tensor is of minor importance in speech. Thus, it appears that the fracturing of the hamulus of the pterygoid bone in primary cleft palate surgery would not have harmful consequences so far as speech is concerned.

It has been demonstrated in this report that the palatoglossus muscle is very active in speech production, with a function opposite to that of the other velopharyngeal muscles. Although tonsillectomy is seldom accompanied by lasting speech problems, it seems important that the surgeons take great care not to damage the palatoglossus muscle during tonsillectomy. In the present study only subjects who still had their tonsils were used. It would be of interest to study whether the palatopharyngeus muscle has taken over some of the palatoglossus functions in those tonsillectomized patients who have no tensor pillars left.

#### FUTURE RESEARCH AREA

The techniques worked out in the present investigation were used in normal subjects to explore the main characteristics of velopharyngeal muscle activity in speech. From this line of formation, future research may depart in various directions to specific areas of interest. Such studies may focus on parameters and detail which were not controlled or investigated in depth in the present study, e.g. rate of speaking.



sound intensity level, transitions between oral consonants requiring high intra-oral pressure and nasal consonants, etc. It is also of interest to study subjects speaking other languages. The data presented in this report were obtained from subjects speaking American English, in which a relatively high degree of nasalization of vowels appears to be present. Is the seemingly greater articulatory effort of German speaking subjects reflected in the electromyograms? What are the differences in velopharyngeal muscle activity between oral and nasalized vowel in French?

The timing of the velopharyngeal motor events in relation to those of the larynx, tongue and lips is of considerable interest from a theoretical as well as from a clinical point of view. What is the time schedule for the speech motor commands in different parts of the vocal tract? Iwashita (1965) compared the onset of velar muscle activity with that of the orbicularis oris and lateral cricoarytenoid muscles. He found that the velar activity started later than the lateral cricoarytenoid activity for the production of vowel and voiced consonant syllables and later than the orbicularis oris for labial consonant syllables. His findings should be corroborated and supplemented by statistical analyses before clinical application is considered.

The tensor veli palatini muscle is responsible for the opening of the Eustachian tube and ventilation of the middle ear. Electromyographic recordings from the tensor with the technique described in this report would add valuable and new information when combined with tests for Eustachian tube function.

#### CLINICAL APPLICATIONS

Although the present study was not undertaken with direct clinical applications in mind, velopharyngeal electromyography represents a tool that can be used in clinical research and diagnosis. Velopharyngeal mistiming appears to be present in various types of velopharyngeal incompetence, particularly in dysarthria. Electromyographic analysis would add valuable data for the diagnostic evaluation of patients with these dysfunctions. Another application of direct therapeutic value would be an electromyographic assessment of the results of speech and voice therapy in patients with velopharyngeal incompetence and particularly an evaluation of the results of training on specific muscles.

## SUMMARY

The investigation reported here consists of three parts. The first part is a review of the literature with an historical survey of older concepts regarding the soft palate and the development of methods to study its function, a description of the muscles of the soft palate and a report on previous electromyographic studies of the soft palate. The second part gives an account of a qualitative study of the levator and tensor veli palatini, superior constrictor palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus muscles by means of electromyography. The third part describes combined electromyographic and radiographic study of the levator and palatoglossus muscles in relation to various movements and speech, and some quantitative analysis of these relationships.

## REVIEW OF THE LITERATURE

There is no evidence that the soft palate was recognized I understand. Middle Ages. Only references to the uvula are found. So far as we know, Vinci was the first person to describe and depict the soft palate. In 1600, Galileo gave the first printed account of the soft palate and its muscle, the velum. The first century is probably the era when the function of the soft palate was first described. In the second half of the nineteenth century, Cæsmak was the first to study the movements of the soft palate by indirect experiments. In the twentieth century, particularly after the first world war, recordings of palatal movements date from this period. At the end of the century, x-rays were first used to study the soft palate and this has become an important research tool. In the twentieth century, particularly after the first world war, the image intensifier in the fifties. In recent decades, acoustic and electrical procedures have also given valuable contributions to our knowledge of the soft palate. The soft palate is controlled by a pair of muscles.

[illegible]

1 anatomy usually do not recognize these three muscles  
recognize them argue about the question whether these three  
constrictor is the palatopharyngeus. The latter muscle is a  
closes the pharynx by contracting in synchrony with the  
constrictor is posteriorly directed and the palatopharyngeus

Electromyography has become a major focus of interest for researchers in the field of speech in the last decade. Since 1958 there have been published at least 10 reports on electromyographic studies of the soft palate.

The results indicate that the overall EMG-activity recorded from the soft palate is closely related to the production of oral speech sounds and to velopharyngeal closure. Information on the discrete activity of the individual palatal muscles, however, is limited and to some extent controversial and the available data must be interpreted with great caution. The majority of the authors have used needle electrodes and an oral approach, a procedure which does not lend itself very well to the production and study of speech.

#### A QUALITATIVE STUDY OF THE PALATAL MUSCLES BY MEANS OF ELECTROMYOGRAPHY

Guided by a Lufschian tube catheter a specially designed "monopolar" electrode was inserted through the nasal cavities into the tensor levator and superior constrictor muscles respectively. Very thin wire electrodes were inserted through the mouth into the palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus muscles. Two EMG-signals at a time were fed into a modified Honeywell Electronic Medical System and recorded on a Visicorder. Rectifying and averaging circuits also provided envelopes of the EMG signals. A Du Mont dual beam oscilloscope was used for visual monitoring of the EMG signals. Sound was recorded on the Visicorder as well as on tape.

The subjects were 26 university students, who repeated a series of test sentences read lists of VC utterances and performed a number of non-speech activities involving soft palate movements.

The placement of the electrodes was difficult and not always successful. The overall rate of success was 69%. The descriptive report is based on recordings from 10 or more subjects for each muscle.

The levator muscle demonstrated a close relationship to the production of oral speech sounds and hence to velopharyngeal closure. The production of nasal sounds within a sentence was preceded by decrease and disappearance of levator activity. With initial nasal sounds a low to moderate degree of levator activity preceded the speech signal. In the non-speech activities the levator was active to about the same degree as for speech. The superior constrictor muscle showed an EMG activity pattern of exactly the same type as the levator. The palatoglossus muscle showed the opposite function, closely related to the production of nasal sounds and lowering of the soft palate. The palatoglossus was also active at times which did not seem to involve velar movements, presumably participating in the elevation of the middle and posterior part of the tongue. The palatopharyngeus activity varied between subjects and sometimes showed very little relation to speech. When the palatopharyngeus muscle was active in speech, it seemed to be involved mainly in the production of oral speech sounds, but less consistently than the levator. The palatopharyngeus was much more active for swallowing than for any other activity. The same was true for the tensor, which was often completely silent during speech, and when it was active there was very little agreement between subjects.

The placement of the electrodes is the primary consideration in the evaluation of the data. The procedures which had been developed over the years consistently gave characteristic responses from the different points of insertion, however leaving no doubt as to the source of the EMG activity. The speech produced by the subject during the experiments did not differ noticeably from their normal speech.

#### A COMBINED ELECTROMYOGRAPHIC AND CINERADIOGRAPHIC STUDY OF THE ACTIVITY OF THE LEVATOR AND PALATOGLOSSUS MUSCLES IN RELATION TO VELAR MOVEMENTS

The EMG and sound recording equipment were the same as for the first study. The cineradiographic apparatus had an x-ray tube with a pulse generator, image intensifier and a 16-mm movie camera. A special synchronizer was constructed in such a way that when a rotating arrow of lead was at a point in the radiation field a spike was produced on the EMG recording.

The subjects were 13 university students who read ten almost identical sentences and isolated vowel sounds during the experiment.

For the analysis of the cineradiographic films a special stand was built. The image was projected onto tracing paper and tracings were made of the soft palate and certain landmarks from selected sequences. A frame was drawn representing the main direction of movement of the palate. Measurements of velar displacement were made along this axis.

When these measurements of velar displacement were plotted on the EMG, a striking similarity was found between the levator envelope and the EMG. The palatoglossus activity demonstrated a close relationship to the EMG as well as to the production of the /k/ /g/ and /ŋ/ sounds. In the latter following forward bulging of the soft palate was seen with an indistinct, irregular contour in more than half of the cases. This seemed to be a local contraction of the palatoglossus.

Determination of onset of levator activity and movement of the palate were made and the time delays measured. A mean latency from onset of levator activity to onset of movement of  $10 \pm 61$  ms was found. From onset of levator activity to onset of movement of the palate was  $11 \pm 7$  ms. The group of speech samples was divided into subgroups according to the type of sound. The group of speech samples which had also the EMG speech envelope which started with a nasal sound /m/ had also the EMG speech envelope which started with a nasal sound /m/ had also the EMG speech envelope which started with a nasal sound /m/.

It is attempted to estimate the delay between the onset of levator activity and the onset of movement of the palate. The onset of levator activity and the onset of movement of the palate were measured. The mean delay between the onset of levator activity and the onset of movement of the palate was  $10 \pm 61$  ms. The mean delay between the onset of levator activity and the onset of movement of the palate was  $10 \pm 61$  ms. The mean delay between the onset of levator activity and the onset of movement of the palate was  $10 \pm 61$  ms.

The degree of levator activity and the extent of velar displacement was studied for four vowel sounds (/a/ /æ/ /i/ /u/) in isolated position and in connected speech.

The average correlation coefficient between the two parameters was 0.76. Analysis of variance for vowel types, positions and subjects showed statistically significant differences between low and high vowels and between subjects for both parameters. There was no significant difference between front and back vowels. Isolated vowels had a slightly smaller velar displacement than vowels in connected speech, significant at the 5% level, but no such difference was found in the EMG measurements.

The velar movement follows the levator activity very closely. The levator muscle appears to have the primary control of the position of the soft palate. The other muscles seem only to assist the levator or to modify slightly the gross pattern of velar movements as determined by the levator.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This investigation was started at the Departments of Otorhinolaryngology and Clinical Neurophysiology of the University of Göteborg, Sweden, and completed at the Kresge Hearing Research Institute (KHRI) of the University of Michigan Medical School, Ann Arbor Michigan, USA. My sincere gratitude goes to the staff, personnel, students and patients of these institutions, who by their generous support and participation have enabled me to carry out this investigation. My special thanks are due to:

Professor Gösta Herberts, head of the Department of Otorhinolaryngology of the University of Göteborg, for his kind encouragement and stimulating criticism throughout the course of this work.

Docent Ingemar Petersén, head of the Department of Clinical Neurophysiology of the University of Göteborg, for his patient teaching, constructive advice and helpful supervision during my electromyographic work in his laboratories.

Dr Merle Lawrence, professor and director of the KHRI, and Dr Walter P. Work, professor and chairman of the Department of Otorhinolaryngology and chairman of the board of directors of the KHRI of the University of Michigan Medical School, for the invitation to work in their institute and for their generous and encouraging support during my stay in Ann Arbor.

Dr Walter M. Whitehouse, professor and chairman of the Department of Radiology of the University of Michigan Medical School, for placing the cineradiographic research laboratory of his department at my disposal.

Dr Joseph E. Hawkins, Jr, professor of physiological acoustics at the KHRI, for initiating my appointment as research associate at the KHRI for his unfailing and insightful advice and for sharing with me his masterly sense of English style and scientific writing in correcting the language errors of my manuscript.

Professor Gunnar Fant, head of the Department of Speech Communication, Royal Institute of Technology, Stockholm, professor Osborne Bartley, head of the Department of Radiology and docent Olle Hallén, Department of Otorhinolaryngology, University of Göteborg, for constructive criticism and review of my manuscript.

Dr Paul S. Dwyer, professor and director and Miss Esther B. Schaeffer of the University of Michigan Statistical Research Laboratory and Dr Dean Clark of KHRI for their statistical help and advice.

Miss Len Åberg, Mr Herbert H. Isman, Mr Göst. Björkman, Mr John Brown, Mr Günther Ickert and Mr Larry Griewank for their expert engineering advice and help during various phases of the investigation.

Mr Robert E. Stone, Mr William B. Litrente, Jr, Mr Allan Zeichner, Mrs Seattle Kindermann and my wife Margareta for their able assistance during the experiment.

Mr M. W. Tedford, Mr James R. Parks, Mr Vernon T. Mitchell, Mr Gerald E. Evans and Mr Fredrik Johansson for their skilful assistance in the preparation of the illustrations.

Mrs June C. Ludvig for her secretarial help with the manuscript.

This investigation was supported by grant from the Faculty of Medicine, University of Göteborg, the Swedish Medical Research Council, and the National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, Md., USA (grant no. NR-05785, Career Development to KHRI).

# REFERENCES

- ARNAUT, J. C. 1700 *Disertatio de loquela*. (transl. Charles Baker S. Low M. Aston, Low and Searle, London, 1873 Reprinted 1965 by North Holland Publishing Co., Amsterdam.)
- ARISTOTLE, 381-322 B. C. (The Works of Aristotle translated into English, Oxford at the Clarendon Press, 1908-1952 and from PARCO CELSI-CALZI Earlier History of Phonetics, in L. A. Her Manual of Phonetics, North Holland Publ. Co., Amsterdam, 1957)
- ASTLEY R., 1938 The movement of the larynx with the epipharynx A cine-radiographic study *J Laryng & Otol* 72, 3-5
- BALAJI R. J. V. and DEVERA C. R. 1961 Electromyography of the pharyngeal constrictors and levator palati in man. *Ann Rec* 139 861
- BALAJI R. J. V. and STEIN G. 1961 A new bipolar electrode for electromyography *J Applied Physiol* 1 819
- BEYER C. A. and FRAHM, R. L. 1951 Statistical analysis in chemistry and the chemical industry John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York. (page 391)
- BENNETT, D. CARL J. 1935 *Imagines breves*. (transl. L. R. Lind, 1959 Univ. of Chicago Press, Chicago.)
- BIDDER, F. H. 1838 *Neue Beobachtungen über die Bewegungen des menschlichen Gaumens und über den Geruchssinn*. C. A. Meier Dorpat.
- BIOLAND, B. and LIPPOLD, O. C. J. 1951 The relation between force, velocity and integrated electrical activity in human muscles. *J Physiol* 1 3, 211
- BIDDER, L. 1961 Velopharyngeal function in converted speech. *Acta Otol.* suppl. 202.
- BLOOMER, H. H. 1953 Observations on palatopharyngeal movements in speech and deglutition *J Speech & Hearing Dis.* 18 230
- BÖRKE, G. RIAN F. and HALMOS, E. 1966 Elektromyographische Untersuchungen über das Verhalten der Mm. levator und tensor veli palatini bei der Atmung und bei Phonation von Vokalen (V. ridung Mitteilung) *Folia phoniat* 18, 9
- BOURA, J. F. 1953a A correlated study of the anatomy and motor activity of the upper pharynx by cadaver dissection and by cineradiography of patients after maxillo-facial surgery *Ann Otol* 62, 2
- 1953b Studies of disability of the pharynx resultant from poliomyelitis. *Ann. Otol* 62, 559
- 1957 Studies of the pharynx. I. Poliomyelitic disabilities of the upper pharynx. *Pediatrics* 19 281
- BOURA, J. F. and FLETCHER, S. G. 1961 The upper pharynx. A review Part I. Embryology *Anatomy & Otol* 70 933.
- 1962 The upper pharynx. A review Part II Physiology *Anatomy & Otol* 71 134
- BOWEN, T. R. and WYWARD, C. A. 1959 The dynamic pharyngeal flap. Its selective use and electromyographic evaluation. *J Plast Reconstr Surg* 23 301
- BOWEN, T. W. 1951 The nerve supply of the muscles of the soft palate. *Brit J Plast Surg* 4 1
- BRUCKE, F. W. 1856 *Grundzüge der Physiologie und Systematik der Sprachlaute* Carl Gerold'sohn, Wien
- CALAN, J. S. 1955 Movement of the soft palate. *Brit J Plast. Surg* 8 286.
- 1957 Modern work on Palato-ridge. *Brit. J. Plast. Surg.* 10 89
- CAMPUS, C. L. R. and COLE, R. M. 1963 A method for evaluating the degree of nasal movement of the lateral pharyngeal wall. *Cl. Plast. Surg.* 13 64
- CARROLL, J. 195 A cinefluorographic technique for the study of laryngeal closure *J Speech & Hearing Dis* 27 224

- COOPER, F. S., 1965 Research techniques and instrumentation. EMG Proc. conf. Communicative problems in cleft palate. *Amer Speech & Hearing Ass., Report No. 1*
- COOPER, H. L., and HOFFMANN, F. A., 1955 The application of cinefluorography with image intensification in the field of plastic surgery dentistry and speech. *Plast Reconstr Surg.*, 16, 155.
- CRISTO, L., and CRISTO-MARTINELLI, C., 1959 *Fisiopatologia da cavidade do palato*. *Folia Phoniat* 11, 124
- CIERMACK, J. N. 1857 Ueber das Verhalten des weichen Gaumens beim Hervorbringen der reinen Vocale. *Wiener akad Sitzungsberichte* 1857 and in JAC. MALLERBACH Untersuchungen zur Naturkunde des Menschen und der Thiere. vol. 5, p. 1
- 1858 Ueber reine und nasalisierte Vocale. *Wiener akad. Sitzungsberichte*, vol. 28.
- 1869 *Veren und Bildung der Stimm und Sprachlaute*. *Germanisch germanische Schriften*, vol. 2, p. 6. V. Debes Engmann, Leipzig, 1879
- DIDO, H., and DUCKER, E., 1966 The olivine conduction of motor unit potentials. *Electroencephalogr. Neurophysiol* 20, 608.
- DESSOU, T. 1811 Des muscles qui concourent au mouvement du voile du palais. *Diss. Faculté de médecine Paris* No. 966.
- DEUSCHLE, F. M., de STEFANO, G. A., LANGE, C. J. J. and HOLMSTEDT, H., 1960 Soft palate muscular an anatomical study of full term soft palate fetuses using stereoscopic dissection microscope. *Cleft Palate Bull.* 10, 60.
- DIXON, W. J. and MASSY, F. J. JR., 1955 Introduction to statistical analysis. McGraw-Hill Book Co., Inc., New York, Toronto, London. (page 124)
- DREYER, K. H., 1851 Die Funktionen des weichen Gaumens beim Atmen, Sprechen, Schlucken, Schlagen, Erbrechen u. s. w. C. A. Schwetschke & Sohn, Halle
- EDDY, C. B., 1520—1574 in B. S. ALPHABET Explicatio tabularum anatomicarum Barthol. Eustachii, Langens & Verbeek, Leyden, 1741 See also
- STRICK, C. The Evolution of Anatomy below
- FABRE, ANDRÉAS, H., 1957 Electromyographic investigation of intrinsic laryngeal muscles in humans. *Acta Physiol. Scand.* 41 Suppl. 140.
- FABRICIUS AB AQUAPENDENTE, H., 1603 De locutione et organo instrumentis. (in Opera omnia anatomica et physiologica, 306. C. Gorman, Lipsie 1667)
- FALLGREN, G. 1961 *Observationer anatomiska* VI A. Vinnans, Vasteras.
- FETTER, G. 1960 A acoustic Theory of Speech Production. Mouton & Co. Graubuegg
- FITZGERALD, B., 1963 An electromyographic study of the movement of the soft palate in speech. A preliminary report. *Folia Phoniat.* 15, 307
- FROST, V. A. 1964 Some phonetic specifications of laryngeal muscle. A electromyographic investigation. Working papers in phonetics, No. 2. Univ. Calif. Los Angeles.
- FROST, V. and LADENBERG, P. 1966 Electromyography in speech research. *Phonetica*, 15, 1
- GALLIE, C. 129—199 (from *Opera omnia anatomica, physiologica et medica* de Galieno, traductio per C. DANKERHEIM, 1851 J. B. Baillière, Paris and from R. SCOTT JR. and D. GUTHRIE, 1919 A history of Otolaryngology E & Livingston, Edinburgh)
- GELBER, L. 1965 Het zachte gehemelte bij de spraak. *Ann. de l'Enf. P. Ped.* 11, 1
- GEYER, F. G. A., 1876 Beobachtungen am weichen Gaumen nach Entfernung einer Gewebeschicht in der Versuchsreihe E. J. Dalkon-ka, Hamburg, 1877 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851, 852, 853, 854, 855, 856, 857, 858, 859, 860, 861, 862, 863, 864, 865, 866, 867, 868, 869, 870, 871, 872, 873, 874, 875, 876, 877, 878, 879, 880, 881, 882, 883, 884, 885, 886, 887, 888, 889, 890, 891, 892, 893, 894, 895, 896, 897, 898, 899, 900, 901, 902, 903, 904, 905, 906, 907, 908, 909, 910, 911, 912, 913, 914, 915, 916, 917, 918, 919, 920, 921, 922, 923, 924, 925, 926, 927, 928, 929, 930, 931, 932, 933, 934, 935, 936, 937, 938, 939, 940, 941, 942, 943, 944, 945, 946, 947, 948, 949, 950, 951, 952, 953, 954, 955, 956, 957, 958, 959, 960, 961, 962, 963, 964, 965, 966, 967, 968, 969, 970, 971, 972, 973, 974, 975, 976, 977, 978, 979, 980, 981, 982, 983, 984, 985, 986, 987, 988, 989, 990, 991, 992, 993, 994, 995, 996, 997, 998, 999, 1000



- HAERTY R. F. and HILL, M. J. 1960 Pharyngeal wall and palatal movement in postoperative cleft palate and normal palates. *J. Speech & Hearing Res.*, 3, 59.
- HARDY J. C., 1965: Air flow and air pressure studies. Proc. conf. Communicative problems in cleft palate Amer. Speech & Hearing Ass., Report No. 1.
- HARRIST, R. L., 1944: A study of the mechanism of velopharyngeal closure. *J. Speech Dis.*, 9, 325.
- HARRIS, A. G., and SCARFF, M. M. 1962 Component gestures of the production of oral and nasal labial stops. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 34, 743.
- HARTMANN, A. 1880 Ueber das Verhalten des Gaumensegels bei der Artikulation und über die Diagnose der Gaumensegelparese. *Centralblatt f. d. med. Wissensch.* 18, 274.
- HEN, G. H. H. P. W. and KRAFT, E., 1965 Über elektromyographische Untersuchungen an Patienten mit Gaumensegelparese. *Stoma*, 18, 1.
- HILY, C., 1836 Case of a large bony tumour in the face completely removed by spontaneous separation. Observations upon some of the functions of the soft palate and pharynx. *Gay's Hosp. Rep.*, 1, 493.
- HIPPOCRATES around 400 B. C.: (transl. R. Fuchs) Hippokrates, *Sämtliche Werke*, 11 Das Fleisch. Kapitel XVIII. H. Lüneburg, Nürnberg, 1895.)
- IKENITA, A., 1965: Electromyographic study on the articulation mechanism of Japanese speech sounds. (Japanese text) *Acta Otol. Kyoto* 58, 71.
- KARPELIS, W. R., 1911: Le mécanisme de la parole. J. V. Degen, Wien.
- KÖRNER, F. 1911 Die Musculi tensor und levator veli palatini. *Zachr. Anat. Entw. gesch.* 111, 508.
- LEONARDO DA VINCI, 1452—1519 (ed. G. P. and E. L. CALDERA Leonardo da Vinci: The Engineer, Architect, Sculptor, Painter, Designer, Inventor, and Scientist. H. W. Reuther, New York, 1938.)
- LE, C. L., and LUNDSTROM, A., 1958 Electromyographic study of cleft palate. *Plast. Reconstr. Surg.* 21, 427.
- LEPPOLD, O. C. J. 1932: The relation between integrated action potentials in human muscle and its isometric tension. *J. Physiol.* 11, 492.
- LOO, C. W. J. H. A. C. M. J. F. and W. L. A. W. 196 Some correlates of human deglutition. *J. Appl. Physiol.*, 23, 279.
- LOEBER, J. F. 1967 An electromyographic-cinefluorographic investigation of the function during speech production. Unpublished doctoral diss., Univ. of Iowa.
- 1968 An electromyographic-cinefluorographic investigation of the function during normal speech production. *Cleft Palate J.* 5, 1.
- LOEBER, J. F. and CARTER, J. F. 1966 Electromyographic-cinefluorographic investigation of the function during speech production. *J. Acoust. Soc. Amer.* 40, 1272.
- LORENZ, H., 1868 Der Schlundkopf des Menschen. H. Laupp, Buchhandlung, Tübingen.
- McVIE, J. A., 1940 The anatomy of the salpingo-pharyngeal muscle. *J. Laryng. Otol.* 55, 1.
- MOUL, L. L., 1960 Cinefluorographic techniques in speech research. *J. Speech & Hearing Res.* 3, 227.
- 1962 Velopharyngeal closure on vowels. *J. Speech & Hearing Res.* 5, 30.
- 1965 A cinefluorographic study of velopharyngeal function in normals during various activities. *Cleft Palate J.* 11, 112.
- MILL, K. L. and SWINER, T. H., 1967 Preliminary investigation of a new concept of velar activity during speech. *Cleft Palate J.* 4, 58.
- MICHELSON, G. B. 1740 Epistola anatomica VII. Epistola anatomica X. Spectral ad omnes musculos uvulae. F. Pitteri, Venetia.
- NATHAN, J. F. 1948 The second stage of swallowing. *Acta Otolaryng. Suppl.* 78, 8. (printed 1949).
- NATHAN, J. F. 1948 The palate and speech. *Acta Radiol. Suppl.* 203.
- NATHAN, J. F. 1960 Peripheral motor commands in labial articulation. *STL-QSP* (8), 50.
- OSTER, B. J. N. S. *Scientific research* Low State Univ. Press. (page 325).
- PAGANINI, C. 1863 Leber die Verschlüsselung des Schlundes beim Sprechen. J. D. Sauerländer, Frankfurt, M.
- 1869 Leber die Verschlüsselung des Schlundes beim Sprechen. *Arch. f. pathol. Anat. Physiol.* 10, 1.

- PEO ITEL, S. 1952 The physiology and pathology of the soft palate. *J Laryng Otol.*, 66, 452.
- REICHMAN, S., and JAMES, R. 1967 Contrast radiography with carbon dioxide for the location of intramuscular EMG electrodes. *Electromyography* 103.
- ROCK, A. R. 1920a A physiological study of the Eustachian tube and its related muscles. *Laryng. Rhinol. Hals. Bull.*, 31, 206.
- 1920b: The innervation of the tensor veli palatini and levator veli palatini muscles. *Laryng. Rhinol. Hals. Bull.*, 31, 305.
- SCHÖER, M. 1898 Die Verwertung der Röntgen-Strahlen für die Physiologie der Sprache und Stimme. *Archiv Laryng. Rhinol.*, 7, 116.
- SEIFF, T. DEATON, W. W. and R. BERTHOFF, KATHARINE, 1968 A technique for electromyographic recording of deep muscle activity. *Laryngoscope*, 78, 418.
- SEWELL, C. 1925 The Evolution of Anatomy. Alfred A. Knopf, New York.
- SILSON, T. and NYLEN, B. O., 1955 Röntgenkymographische analyse komplizierter. *Vord. Med.* 54, 136.
- SMITH, S. 1964 100 years since PARMEYER. *Folia Pharmacol.*, 16, 189.
- SOUTHWELL, J. DANIEL, MCCORMACK, R. M., SOUTHWELL, JOANNE D. WORTH, J. H., CHAMBER, L. M., B. VYER, J. C., and ROBERTS, R. M., 1968 Synchronous recording of speech with associated physiological and pressure flow dynamics. Instrumentation and procedures. *Cleft Palate J.* 3, 93.
- TERRACCI, J. COS. DE, A., and G. FREYER, J. 1939 La structure d'Eustache. *Mem. Soc. Parth.*
- TEYSSIER, R. H. 1940 The formation of Paramecium. *J Laryng* 35, 154.
- TRILLING, von, 1864 Beiträge zur anatomischen und physiologischen Würdigung der Tuben und Gegend. *Mündelst. Arch. Ohrenheilk.* 1, 15.
- TRUBY, H. M., 1959 Acoustic-chefradiographic analysis considerations. *Acta Radiologica. Suppl.* 182.
- VALLE, A. A. M., 1704 Tractatus de ure humana. F. Pitteri, Venetia, 1740.
- VINCE, B., 1964 L'innervation des muscles releveur de voile du palais chez l'Homme et chez certains mammifères. *Arch. d'Anatomie, d'Histologie et d'Embryologie* 47, 337.
- VOWEL, G. von, 1881 Beobachtungen an schlafende sowie am vollständigsten Defect der Nase behafteten Individuen. H. Laackmann, Dorpat. (cit. GUTTEN, H., 1899).
- VOUTRIER, F. E. R., 1879 Rhinoskopie und Pharyngoskopie 2 Aufl. E. Morgenstern, Breslau. (cit. GUTTEN, H., 1899).
- VOTE, D. 1961 Zur funktionellen Morphologie des menschlichen Gaumens. *Ann. Anat.*, 118, 163.
- WARDLE, W. E. M. and WILLIS, J. 1936 Movements of the soft palate. With special reference to the function of the tensor palati muscle. *Surg. Gyn. Obstetr.* 62, 836.
- WARRICK, D. W. and DUBOIS, A. B., 1964 A pressure — flow technique for measuring oropharyngeal orifice area during continuous speech. *Cleft Palate J.* 1, 52.
- WILLIS, J. 1930 A note on the muscles of the palate and the superior constrictor. *J. Anat.* 65, 92.
- WINKLER, G. 1964 L'équipement nerveux du muscle releveur du voile du palais. *Arch. d'Anatomie, d'Histologie et d'Embryologie* 47, 311.
- WILMS, F. J. 1953 La radioscopie des mouvements de voile du palais. *Acta Oto-Rhino-Laryng. Belg.* 7, 294.
- WOOD, J. VAN, F. 1940 The Nature of the soft palate. *J. Anat.* 74, 137.



